This Volume is presented *by the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury*

to _____

and will, in the event of the Library being broken up, be returned to the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Westminster.

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES CENTRAL

W., 10,000—20/9/98.

Croydon Public Libraries.

Central Reference Library.

Accession No. 5447 Class No. 942

Besides the class topic, other topics treated of in this book are as follows:—

Topic No.	Pages.	Topic No.	Pages.

BROMLEY LIBRARIES
3 0128 01867 6307

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/rerumbritannicar0002will

CROYDON PUBLIC LIBRARIES
CENTRAL

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

MEMORIALE FRATRIS WALTERI DE COVENTRIA.

THE

HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS

OF

WALTER OF COVENTRY.

EDITED,

From the MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge,

BY

WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A.,

REGIUS PROFESSOR OF MODERN HISTORY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD,
FELLOW OF ORIEL COLLEGE, AND SOMETIME LIBRARIAN
TO THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.

OXFORD FREE PUBLIC LIBRARY
CENTRAL

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMAN & Co., AND TRÜBNER & Co., PATERNOSTER ROW;
ALSO BY PARKER & Co., OXFORD;
MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE;
A. & C. BLACK, EDINBURGH; AND A. THOM, DUBLIN.

1873.

6R 5447

BROMLEY PUBLIC LIBRARIES
AL
LS
CLASS
L65
ACC.
01867 6307
[942]

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers,
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE - - - - - - -	vii
MEMORIALE FRATRIS WALTERI DE COVENTRIA -	3
INDEX - - - - - -	281

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

The Annals of 1202–1225.

THE annals of the reign of John, which are comprised in the last eighty pages of this volume, are one of the most valuable contributions in existence to the history of that eventful period; and although they do not appear in this edition as an original work, or indeed in their earliest form, they will be undoubtedly regarded as the most valuable portion of the *Memoriale*.

They are found first in the Barnwell Book, and then in the compilation used by Walter of Coventry.

In the preface to the first volume I have stated the little that is at present known of their origin: they appear first in the little Chronicle of the monastery of Barnwell, which was drawn up within the first thirty years of the thirteenth century; they were incorporated soon after the middle of the century in a compilation of historians transcribed in one of the fen monasteries, probably either Crowland or Peterborough, and from that compilation were transferred, with none but the slightest variations of readings, into the volume known to us as the *Memoriale* of Walter of Coventry. A careful collation of the text of the *Memoriale* with the original MS. of the Barnwell Chronicle shows that they have suffered hardly anything in the process of migration; and the notes to the present edition furnish the original text in the very few cases in which it has been tampered with. I may then venture to claim for this portion of the work the value of an *editio princeps*. A considerable part of it has indeed appeared in the *Recueil des Historiens de France*,[1] but only in a frag-

[1] Bouquet, xviii. pp. 164–187.

mentary shape, and without any attempt at textual criticism.

Were these Annals written at Barnwell?

To the question which may not unreasonably be asked, was this part of the work written originally in the monastery or by a canon of Barnwell, I can give no positive answer. It appears first, as I have said, in a chronicle of that house, almost contemporary with the events it recounts; it is accompanied in that volume by several marginal notices of the change of officers in the same monastery, and it was from that MS., almost certainly, that it was copied into the larger compilation. The internal evidence favours the theory of its composition at Barnwell; the continual and precise references to the history of the eastern midland counties, and the great importance given to the episode of Fawkes de Breauté, the central interest of which lies in the county of Bedford, are enough to show that its author had his home or his means of information at no great distance from Cambridge. It is, however, of course possible that it existed in an earlier form before it was incorporated in the Barnwell book; and that volume contains very little else that is original. It may very reasonably be quoted as Stow quotes it, as the work of the Canon of Barnwell.

They are nearly contemporaneous.

However this may be, it may be confidently affirmed that the history was composed at a very early period after the events occurred which it narrates. It is not exactly contemporaneous, for it has not the incidental haphazard character either of the strict registral form of monastic annals, or of the quickly changing narrative of such a writer as Roger of Hoveden. The author was near enough to the times to retain an exact knowledge of the sequence of events without recalling the precise dates by month or week; but he was also far enough removed, at all events, from the reign of John to be able to take a comprehensive view of the great consti-

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 253–272.

tutional struggle, and to present it to his readers with impartial fairness and in the due proportion of its several parts. It can scarcely have been written later than 1227; it is therefore a few years earlier than the corresponding portion of Roger of Wendover, and with the exception of the Chronicle of Ralph of Coggeshall,[1] which was composed in or about that year, it is the earliest narrative of the concluding years of John's reign. With the Chronicle of Ralph,[2] also drawn up in an eastern county, it has much matter in common; without any verbal coincidences it goes over the same ground and

They must have been written about 1227.

[1] In connexion with the name of Ralph of Coggeshall I may put on record a curious piece of literary history. Tanner (*Bibliotheca*, sub voce) says that he had been a canon of Barnwell. Oudinus (iii. 95) makes the same statement, referring to Stow as the authority. Pits (p. 301) had made the same. On examining Stow, however, this is found to be a mistake. That most laborious and careful writer, in giving a list of his authorities, mentions (p. 175, ed. 1614) "R. Niger; Rad. " Cogshall; a nameless chanon of " Barnwell;" &c. Pits, not considering that a *nameless chanon* was a strange description of a person whose name and home had just been given, made Ralph of Coggeshall and the nameless canon the same person. And from Pits, without any reference to Stow, the statement has been handed down. It has, however, a further importance as showing that Stow had used the Barnwell book as well as the *Memoriale* of Walter of Coventry. Of course if it could have been shown that Ralph had any connexion with Barnwell, we might have got fresh light on the authorship of this portion of the book. But it is not so, and it was in endeavouring to find the authority for the statement that I met with this curious illustration of literary bookmaking.

[2] One noteworthy coincidence may be here mentioned as being likely to escape the eye of even a careful reader. Our author, among the events of the year 1217, mentions the capture by Lewis of a castle called *Odingeham*. Ralph of Coggeshall describes amongst the last acts of John the capture of a castle of the earl of Oxford, de Vere, called (in the editions) *Hinderingham*. The Barnwell MS., however, reads, instead of Odingeham, *Hidingeham*, and as the events described in the passage are all taking place in the eastern counties, there can be no doubt that Castle Hedingham, the stronghold of the Veres, is meant in both places. We find from John's Itinerary that he was at Castle Hedingham on Sept. 18, 1216; doubtless on the occasion referred to by abbot Ralph. It has, however, been confounded with Odiham in Hampshire, as Orford castle in the same passage has with Oxford.

This portion of the work is of great value and authority.

mentions prominently the same events, and the two ought to be read together. But great as the value of abbot Ralph's Chronicle undoubtedly is, the work of the Barnwell scribe excels it very much, both in vividness of narration and in clearness of sequence; whilst in historical penetration, in the perception of cause and consequence, in the admirable proportion or perspective, if I may use the word, of the picture which it presents to us, and in the accuracy of political definition, it comes very far ahead of it.[1] I do not, I think, claim too much for it when I say that it comes both in time and rank nearest of all our chronicles to the model of William of Newburgh's admirable history.

The proof of this assertion must be left for the careful reader to gather from every page of the work. To attempt here a careful chronological commentary on the text would be foreign to the plan of the present series; and it is unnecessary, as we possess, in the very admirable survey of the reigns of John and Henry III. contained in Dr. Pauli's History of England,[2] a thorough examination of the period, both in its political and in its philosophical aspects. Nor am I disposed, in a re-examination of the early years of Henry III., to intrude into the region already so finely illustrated in this series by the research of the lamented Dr. Shirley, who has in the preface to the first volume of the Royal Letters presented us with a very complete view of those years of that reign which are contained in this chronicle. Instead of this, I propose in the following pages to attempt such a sketch of the character and reign of John as I have, in the preceding volumes of the series on which I have been employed, essayed in the cases

[1] I am glad to be able to quote Dr. Pauli's opinion of the value of this part of the work; he speaks of the writer as "dieser Zeitgenosse "der Magna Charta, der mit offenen "augen wie kein anderer und mit "echt englischem herz und sinn, "die ereignisse geschildert hat." Geschichte von England, iii. 873.

[2] Vol. iii. pp. 294 sqq.

of his father and brother; taking in the notes an opportunity of illustrating the points of chronology, politics, and miscellaneous interest, which turn up on a comparison between this and other contemporary or nearly contemporary histories.

John the worst of the kings of England.

What marks out John personally from the long list of our sovereigns, good and bad, is this—that there is nothing in him which for a single moment calls out our better sentiments; in his prosperity there is nothing that we can admire, and in his adversity nothing that we can pity. Many, most perhaps, of our other kings have had both sins and sorrows; sins for which they might allege temptations, and sorrows which are not less meet for sympathy because they were well deserved: but for John no temptations are allowed to be pleaded in extenuation of guilt, and there is not one moment, not one of the many crisises of his reign, in which we feel the slightest movement towards sympathy. Edward III. may have been as unprincipled, but he is a more graceful sinner; William Rufus as savage, but he is a more magnificent and stronger-willed villain; Ethelred the Unready as weak, false, and worthless, but he sins for, and suffers with, his people. John has neither grace nor splendour, strength nor patriotism. His history stamps him as a worse man than many who have done much more harm, and that, for his reign was not a period of unparalleled or unmitigated misery to his subjects, chiefly on account of his own personal share in the producing of his own deep and desperate humiliation.

No contemporary character of John.

None of the contemporary historians has left us a portrait of John that can be compared for minuteness and graphic reality with those drawn of Henry II. by Peter of Blois, Ralph Niger, William of Newburgh, and Giraldus Cambrensis. The last-mentioned writer, in his book, "*De Instructione Principum*," published at the beginning and revised at the end of his own long career, has recorded his early impressions, and his by no means

Opinions of Giraldus and Matthew Paris.

sanguine hopes, together with their bitter disappointment. When he began to write John was young; his levity might, he thought, pass away and leave the elements of greatness unimpaired.[1] But when he registers his final sentence it is that of all the tyrants of history John was the very worst.[2] Ralph of Coggeshall ventures on no inferences from his acts to his character.[3] Matthew Paris, after averring that it is not safe to write of him even when he is dead, puts his opinion of him into the mouth of another critic, and a most trenchant one it is; he was a tyrant rather than a king, a destroyer rather than a ruler; an oppressor of his own and a favourer of strangers; a lion to his subjects, a lamb to his enemies and to foreigners; he had lost Normandy and his other lands by his sloth, but England he thirsted to overthrow and destroy; he was of money an insatiable exactor, of his own natural possessions the invader and destroyer; he was a corrupter of daughters and sisters, and spared not the honour of his peers and kinsmen. As to the Christian faith, he

---

[1] See the passage in which he is compared with his brother Geoffrey of Brittany, in the *De Instructione*, ii. 11 (p. 35, ed. Brewer); and in the *Topographia Hiberniæ*, iii. 52; *Opp.*, v. 199. "Ille in spica, hic "messis in herba." History seems fully to confirm Giraldus's notion of the similarity of the two brothers in character, whilst it entirely belies the good auguries which he imagines in the case of John.

[2] "Longe atrocius cæteris tyran- "nis omnibus, tam in sacerdotium "quam regnum Anglicanum suis "insanire diebus et debacchari."— "Dictus enim Johannes . . . . quo- "niam fratres egregios atque pa- "rentes in bonis æquiparare non "potuit, puta sicut annis inferior, "sic animis amaris et actibus pravis "longe deterior existens, non so- "lum ipsos in malis verum etiam "in vitiis enormibus vitiosos vin- "cere cunctos, et maxime tyrannos "omnes quos vel præsens ætas vel "longævæ memoriæ recolere potuit "antiquitas, detestandis pravæ ty- "rannidis actibus totis transcendere "nisibus elaboravit." *De Inst. Pr.* iii. 28; p. 162.

[3] This writer although generally prone to run into descriptions of character, draws none of John; only an occasional adverb, "dolose," "crudeliter," or "ignaviter," shows what he thought.

was unstable and unfaithful.[1] Matthew of Westminster long afterwards, when it was possible to record the common belief, specifies his sacrifice of his kingdom by tribute, his extortionate tyranny, his vile impurity, and his cruelty to Arthur, as the chief points of his history.[2] Opinion of historians.

But although these writers either dared not or could not draw a full-length picture of John, they are unsparing of comment on his acts as the occasion for comment arises. His vanity, his atrocious ingratitude to his father and brother, his unprincipled and purposeless avarice, his mercenary meanness,[3] his utter lack of truth and honour; his inertness in the defence and recovery of his dominions;[4] the insincerity with which he treated his barons, and which more than warranted them in their distrust of his most solemn assurances[5]; His great faults frequently remarked on.

---

[1] Ed. Wats, pp. 244, 288. It is difficult to regard the embassy of John to the emperor of Morocco as altogether fabulous, in the teeth of the evidence adduced by Matthew Paris. Thomas of Herdington, Ralph Fitz Nicolas, and Robert of London, whom he names as the envoys, were real persons, and the first of them was employed on an embassy to Rome in the very year, 1213, in which this transaction is placed. Rot. Claus. ed. Hardy, i. 126. It is observable that Innocent III. comments on the absence of three out of the six envoys sent in 1213, and of these three Thomas of Erdington was one. Ep. xv. 234. The words, however, which are put in the mouth of the envoy are probably Matthew Paris's own.

[2] Ed. Howard, p. 276. "Et quia "iste Johannes se multis exosum "præbuit, cum propter mortem ne- "potis sui Arturi, tum propter suam "incontinentiam qua fœdus lecti "matrimonialis dirupit, tum propter "suam tyrannidem, tum propter "tributum quo sub perpetua servi- "tute regnum Angliæ compedivit, "tum propter guerram quam sua "merita provocarunt, vix alicujus "meruit lamentationibus deplorari. "Istæ sunt terræ quas rex Johannes "amisit scilicet pro angariis et op- "pressionibus, multimodis fornica- "tionibus et variis injuriis quæ com- "muniter non cessavit. . . ."

[3] As early as 1185, it was remarked that in Ireland he defrauded his mercenaries of their pay, Hoveden, ii. 305. M. Westm. speaks of his "insatiabilis avaritia," p. 268.

[4] "desidiam regis torpentis incor- "rigibilem." M. Westm. 265; M. Paris, 209.

[5] R. Coggeshall, who is not generally severe upon him, repeatedly accuses him of forging letters; "fraudulosam pro more suo stro-

Censures of the historians.

his reckless neglect of his opportunities; his desperate impotency of rage under defeat that he had not troubled himself to avert; his cruelty, his obstinacy,[1] his idiotic vindictiveness wreaking itself on the innocent to his own harm; his real incapacity for any great design; all these are frequently remarked on by writers who saw the daily proofs of them. The acts that call forth the censure are not of the class which may allege the misrepresentations of interested writers as a reason for mitigation. They are too manifest to be doubted, and their character too obvious to be excused. Adultery, falsehood, extortion, ill success, are matters on which the public censors cannot have two opinions.[2]

Abundant memorials of the reign.

It is, however, fortunate for us that the history of the time furnishes us with more than these generalities; that we have not only the comment but the text as well, in abundant records of all John's proceedings, and that from the study of his actions we can evolve a more real, lifelike, and individual presentment.

John then, as far as I can read his character from his acts, was a mean reproduction of all the vices and

---

"pham commentatus," p. 253; cf. p. 250. See also M. Paris, p. 255.

[1] "proterva obstinacia," Wykes, 56; Ann. Wav. 282.

[2] No one can have failed to notice that the most damning charges against John are stated most fully by Matthew Paris; that they do not appear in Wendover or in the earlier contemporary annalists. When it is considered that they would touch the honour of many noble houses, we cannot wonder that they are passed over by those who lived in the first generation. Enough, however, remains, without the circumstantial charges of Matthew Paris, to condemn the wretched king; nor is there any reason to suppose that that historian uttered more than the intelligent opinion of his own time justified. John's career must be read as a whole, including the portion of it preceding his accession, to be rightly comprehended. Of course the notion that Matthew wrote in the papal interest is absurd; he was strongly antipapal, and the papal interest was marshalled on John's side. He often gives point to otherwise vague accusations, but in most particulars he is borne out by other evidence. See further on this point, pp. lxxxii. to lxxxiv.

of the few pettinesses of his family, of their intellectual as he was of their physical conformation.[1] I say a mean reproduction, because although his crimes were really greater, they are on a smaller scale, from smaller motives, significant of that more unbridled vice that checks at no obstacle and yields to the least temptation. Like his father he is a profligate,[2] but his sins are complicated with outrage and ingratitude;[3] like Richard he is an extortioner, but unlike him he is meanly mercenary, parsimonious, unsuccessful. Like Geoffrey he is faithless, but unlike Geoffrey he is obstinate rather than impulsive. He never repents, even if it be only to sin again; he has no remorse, even for his failures. He contemns both the spirit and the form of law; of religion he has none, scarcely sense enough of it to make him found a monastery; he neither fears God nor cares for the souls of his people, but he is amenable to superstitions that his father would have spurned. He is passionate, like the rest of the Conqueror's descendants, but it is not the lion-like transport of Henry and Richard; he is savage, filthy, and blasphemous in his wrath;[4] but he sulks where he

John was a mean copy of his family type.

[1] Gir. Camb. *De Inst. Pr.* ii. 11; p. 35. Exp. Hib. p. 199. "Ambo "hi (sc. Geoffrey and John) staturæ "modicæ, pauloque mediocri plus "pusillæ." The word "lubriculus" applied by Wykes to one feature of his character is very significant.

[2] Wykes, p. 53, "quod nobilium "regni sui filias et consanguineas "rapuit et concubitu polluit adul- "terino, erat enim lubriculus, æqui- "parans vel excedens petulantiam "Salomonis." So also *Ann Wav.* p. 282, "uxores filiasque eorum "violabat." M. Westm. 265, "ef- "feminatus et fluens in libidinem." "Nonnullos uxoribus suis zelotypa- "vit, filias defloravit;" "etiam exo- "sum habuit uxor propria quam de "adulterio adulter defamavit," *ib.* 268. See also Wendover, iii. 240; M. Paris, 232; M. Westminster, 271.

[3] In 1216 his brother William Longespee joined Lewis, "hac sola "speciali causa ductus quia ei certo "innotuit relatore, dictum Johan- "nem regem cum ipsius uxore, "rupto fœdere naturali, commisisse "incestum, dum ipse esset in Fran- "cia incarceratus." Will. Arm. Bouquet, xvii. 110.

[4] John's oaths, "per dentes Dei," M. Paris, 226; "per pedes Domini," M. Paris, 243, compared with the Conqueror's "By the splendour of "God," are characteristic enough.

His conspicuous ingratitude.

dare not reply, and takes his revenge on the innocent and in the dark. His ingratitude is not the common ingratitude of kings, to forget a benefactor when the benefit has grown cold; he heaps neglect on insult, and scatters scorn on the dead, whose chief fault has been that they have served him too well.[1] Unlike his father and brother, he makes no friends among his ministers; they are faithful to him, but his only friends are his own creatures, whom he has raised and whom he need not fear to sacrifice.

Pettiness of John's general character.

In the neutral tints of common character his pettiness is not less apparent. The favourite son of Henry II. and the pupil of Glanville could hardly be without a taste for law; the instinct that in his father produced great legal reforms, in John works only to the multiplication of little methods of extortion,[2] or the devising of new forms of torture;[3] like him he sits in the judgment seat,[4] but only for the wages of unrighteousness. Henry's promptness and energy is in John undignified fussi-

---

M. Paris gives an instance of his capacity for profane jesting, p. 245; he mentions also John's false opinions on the resurrection of the dead. This may be an invention, but it reminds one of the debate between his kinsman Amalric of Jerusalem and William of Tyre on the same subject. W. Tyr. xix. 3.

[1] See his remark on the death of Geoffrey Fitz Peter, M. Paris, 243. His treatment of William de Braiose, who had greatly helped in securing the succession, is remarked on in the Annals of Margam, p. 25.

[2] M. Westm. 265. He took of the Jews in 1210, 66,000 marks, Madox, Hist. Exch. p. 151. Abundant instances of the expansion of the system of fines will be found in the same work.

[3] "Multa mala et pessimas crude-"litates fecerat, quæ non sunt "scripta in libro hoc." Liber de Ant. Legg, p. 202. For example, the "capa plumbea," in which Geoffrey the archdeacon of Norwich was starved to death, R. Wendover, iii. 229; the punishment of the suspected servant of queen Isabella, Chron. Lanercost, p. 13; the torture of the Jews, M. Paris, 229; the 22 noble prisoners starved to death at Corfe, Ann. Margam, 26; the fate of Matilda de Braiose and her son, Ann. Theokesb. p. 59. He intended to starve Oliver of Argentan to death also, R. Coggesh. 251.

[4] See Madox, Hist. Exch. p. 129, "præceptum est per regem qui "præsens fuit super scaccarium." Rot. Pip. 6 Joh.

ness; the lofty self-assertion of conscious strength is represented in him by the mere vaunt that can plead no justification;[1] his recklessness in running into danger is only equalled by the shamelessness with which he retreats before the evils that he has provoked. Of himself he does nothing great, and what is done for him by others he undoes by alienating or insulting them.[2]

His recklessness and shamelessness.

Although the faults which come out in this form in him are faults so ingrained in the Angevin family that they can scarcely be regarded, except in the particular manifestation, as distinctive of John, somewhat of the result is no doubt to be attributed to his age and training. The youngest of the sons of Henry and Eleanor, he was born[3] long after the arrangement was made

His faults increased by his education.

---

[1] When in 1203 Philip was overrunning Normandy, John's remark was, "Sinite illum facere, ego quic- "quid modo rapit uno die recu- "perabo." Wendover, iii. 171. When Philip took Rouen, "rex Jo- "hannes cachinnando comminaba- "tur, jurans per pedes Dei quod "sterlingi Anglorum omnia restau- "rarent." M. Westm. 266.

[2] John's greatest exploit was the subjugation of Ireland in 1210, the conquest with a magnificent army, of a half armed and divided population, exhausted already by war and plunder. Our author, who (ii. 202, 203) makes the most of his successes at this period, mentions also victories in Wales and Scotland: no great glory could be won from either: he had in 1211 to retreat from the former; and sold a peace to the latter in 1209. He was not, however, devoid of personal valour or of skill in arms; but his rashness and irresolution constantly brought him into situations in which he must either fight or fly, and he chose the latter. R. Coggeshall describes him on Lewis's landing in 1216, "perterritus fugit flens et la- "mentans et omnis exercitus ejus "cum eo," p. 258. Yet he had been waiting to intercept Lewis, and had a superior force.

[3] The date of John's birth is fixed by Robert de Monte (ed. Pistorius, i. 903) in 1167; by Ralph de Diceto (c. 540) in 1166. The compiler from whom the author of the present work borrows placed it in 1166, vol. i. p. 186. Robert de Monte is the best authority, especially as he has just mentioned queen Eleanor's return to England. Diceto, however, who may be regarded as correcting Robert de Monte, is followed by the Annalists generally. The common statement that he was born on the 24th of December, and that two meteors were seen the same evening, is taken from the margin of Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle (ed. Hearne, p. 486); both the

He had a bad political education.

by them for the distribution of their states, and consequently lost that education for government which his elder brothers had, and which made a Norman of Henry, a Poictevin of Richard, and a Breton or Angevin of Geoffrey. The title of lord of Ireland did not make John an Irishman; although a stay-at-home, he did not learn the feelings of an Englishman; he remained, until he became king, without local connexion, a plotter and conspirator against his father and brother, unidentified with any national or provincial interest, representing no party but his own.

He was more or less of an adventurer.

And the result of this was that it stamped him more or less with the character of an adventurer. In his earliest childhood his father was busy in seeking to make him a fortune by marriage; the rebellion of his brother Henry was provoked by an attempt to carve out a portion for John; for John's sake the attack on Ireland was carried out and the crown of peacock's feathers obtained from Rome;[1] the final rebellion of Richard was caused by the demand that Poictou should be given up to John; and during the whole of Richard's reign John was trafficking on the jealous hostility of Philip.

He was born too late to be impressed by the Becket quarrel.

Further, he was born too late to be much affected by the Becket quarrel. The archbishop was murdered when John was not four years old, and the matter was condoned before he was six. He thus missed the impression which, partly perhaps unconsciously, but in a measure no doubt through the instructions of Lewis and Eleanor, produced in Richard and in the younger Henry something approaching to a religious feeling, or at least the desire to stand well with the dominant ecclesiastical sentiment of the day. He reproduces in the

---

facts appear to be taken from Robert de Monte, with the alteration of a year, and placed in the 13th of Henry II., i.e., 1166 instead of 1167. Trivet, p. 60, follows Robert de Monte and gives the right date, Dec. 24, 1167.

[1] Hoveden, ii. 306, 307.

utmost coarseness the blasphemous profanity of his father's ancestors; his whole education, such as it was, was carried on during the most unsettled part of his father's reign; from the time he was eight years old to his twenty-third year his mother was practically a prisoner, and if he were allowed to associate with her, we may be sure that her lessons were not of the wisest sort. If, as is more probable, she was kept in seclusion, she lost that influence over him during the time when it would have been most beneficial, which it is but justice to her to say was always exercised, where it is at all traceable, in the direction of honesty and manly energy.

He had no good home influences.

His early history is distinctly affected by these facts, especially the former. The name of *Sansterre* or *Lackland*,[1] whenever and however it was given him, affords one clue at least to the reading of his character and career. Even his infancy is rendered eventful by his father's anxiety to provide for him.

Appropriateness of his surname *Lackland*.

He was born in England in 1167,[2] and seems to have remained under his mother's charge until her imprisonment. Afterwards he is generally found in attendance on his father. In 1170, when Henry believed himself at the point of death,[3] he commended him to his eldest brother, with strict injunctions to make for him such a provision as he would himself have done; and immediately on his recovery he set to work to obtain a settlement for him, entertaining the idea, possibly as early as this, of fixing him in Ireland and securing

His father's anxiety to provide for him.

---

[1] William of Armorica (lib. vi. p. 303, ed. Pith.) says that the name was given by Henry II. He seems to have shared it before the middle of the thirteenth century with John of Brienne, king of Jerusalem, to whom it is given in the *Chronique de Rains* (ed. Paris), p. 84. Matthew of Westminster (p. 276) explains it with a further reference to his losses in France, and his deposition in England, p. 270. Cf. Liber de Antiquis Legibus, pp. 200, 202.

[2] See above, p. xvii, note 3. Like Richard he is said to have been born at Oxford. Rob. Gloucester (ed. Hearne), p. 486.

[3] Bened. i. 7.

The Maurienne marriage project.

him the county of Mortain.[1] In 1173 he arranged a marriage for him with the heiress of the county of Maurienne and Savoy, by which John was to succeed to the possessions and claims of the marquis of Italy, and consolidate the power of the Angevin house from the Atlantic to the Alps.[2] It was the very natural question of the count, what provision would be made for the little bridegroom to answer to so great a portion,[3] that provoked the revolt of the other sons of Henry, none of whom would consent to part with a single fief for the endowment of their father's darling. John was too young to take part in the war that followed, but he was old enough to understand that it was for his sake that his father had incurred it, a fact which seems to have inspired him rather with a feeling of his own importance than with any idea of gratitude. On the peace of 1174,[4] his interests were secured, although not liberally enough to satisfy Henry's wishes; and in 1175 the revenues of the earldom of Cornwall, which was vacant by the death of earl Reginald, were detained in his favour.[5] The next year, the Maurienne settlement being endangered by the fourth marriage of the count, and a better opportunity being opened at home by the prospect of the inheritance of Gloucester,[6] John was betrothed to the eldest daughter of earl William, the lady Hawis,[7] whom he discarded soon after his accession to the throne, and who afterwards, as wife of Geoffrey de Mandeville, helped to swell the tide of national feeling against him in 1215.[8] In 1177 he was made lord of Ireland, and received the homage of the native chiefs

Provision from the earldom of Cornwall.

Marriage with the heiress of Gloucester.

[1] On the date at which the county of Mortain was given to John, see Hoveden, ii. p. 6, note; and iii. p. xxiv. note.

[2] Bened. i. 36, 37, &c. Gir. Camb. *De Inst. Pr.* lib. ii. c. 1. Rob. de Monte, ad ann. 1171.

[3] Bened. i. 41.

[4] Bened. i. 78.

[5] Robert de Monte, (ed. Pistorius, i. 917) ap. Pertz, viii. 524.

[6] Earl William of Gloucester died in 1183. R. de Monte, ap. Pertz, viii. 534. His son Robert in 1170, *ib.* 519.

[7] Bened. i. 124.

[8] Walt. Cov. ii. 225.

as their future king,[1] not, however, being entrusted with real authority until many years later. In 1185 he was knighted and sent to Ireland,[2] where he signally failed. He lost his forces in petty struggles with the Irish, and devoted himself to the plundering of all who came within his reach.[3] He was therefore recalled in disgrace, but only to be used as before for his father's political ends. Two of his elder brothers, Henry and Geoffrey, were now dead; the king mistrusted Richard and pitted John against him,[4] partly no doubt in the hope of keeping him faithful from a sense of interest, but partly with the view of providing more lavishly for his favourite child. The result of this policy was most unfortunate in every way; John threw himself on the side of his father's enemies, and rendering himself eternally infamous for his ingratitude, broke his father's heart and hastened his death.[5]

John lord of Ireland; where he fails completely.

Becomes a rival to Richard in his father's hands.

Up to this date, then, Henry had made of him, as he had in a less degree of his brothers, a plaything of policy; one of his stakes in the great game he played, but the favourite plaything, the most precious stake. He could scarcely have had a worse political education. It made him a gambler, through his partnership and interest in his father's game. Devoid of sound principle and incapable of reading the secrets of Henry's design, he learned to grasp at the advantage of the moment, to trust as no other prince of his age did to

Wretched result of this training.

---

[1] Bened. i. 161, 165; Walt. Cov. i. 308.

[2] Bened. i. 339; Hoveden, ii. 303, 305.

[3] Gir. Camb. *Exp. Hib.* ii. 36 (Opp. v. 388).

[4] As early as 1183 Henry proposed that John should have his mother's inheritance, Richard being now his father's heir. Richard refused, Bened. i. 308. The next year he is allowed to invade Richard's states, Bened. i. 311. The jealousy of the brothers goes on increasing, and in 1189 Richard, believing that his father intended to disinherit him, refused to go to Palestine unless John were sent with him, Bened. ii. 66. The same year the king proposed to marry him to Alesia, who had been long betrothed to Richard, Hoveden, ii. 363.

[5] Gir. Camb. *De Inst. Pr.* iii. 26; Hoveden, ii. 366.

John a political gambler.

the chapter of accidents; having as yet nothing very great to risk, to hazard what he had on the throw of the instant or, without troubling himself about present losses, to leave all to the chances of the future. Richard and Eleanor saw probably that this was the case, and that, devoid as he was of either force of character or strength of principle, the only chance of keeping him safe and innocuous was to entrust him with a substantial gift of power. He might be steadied by permanent and engrossing interests of his own. His marriage was accordingly pressed on, and that done, Richard, in the lavish improvidence of his heart, touched, perhaps, by remorse for his conduct to his father, and showing it in his bounty to the favourite, heaped on him an enormous appanage,[1] merely guarding himself by the retention of some of the castles of his honours.

Richard tries to steady him by the gift of power.

Notwithstanding the plausibility of the view that prompted this measure, Richard showed his usual short-sightedness by such exaggerated confidence, or else he was over-persuaded by Eleanor's influence in John's favour. Richard had a most contemptuous opinion of his brother's abilities,[2] and perhaps was not quite aware of the extent to which he was himself influenced by the spirit of hazard. John, it might seem, would be faithful if entrusted with the substance of power; if not, he was too weak to be dangerous. But there were other elements of danger besides John, and Richard really risked the welfare of his kingdom on the issue. So long as he was by Eleanor's side, he might be kept in order; but the return of Philip from the crusade, and his obstinate underhand policy, which Richard might have learned, so long and persistently had it been tried upon himself, he, clearly, had not calculated on.[3]

Bad policy of this liberal treatment.

---

[1] Bened. ii. 73, 78, 99.

[2] "Johannes frater meus non est "homo qui sibi vi terram subjiciat, "si fuerit qui vim ejus vi saltem "tenui repellat." Hoveden, iii. 198.

[3] Hoveden, iii. pref. pp. lii. sqq. lxxxvii. sqq.

But in the true gambling spirit, John, instead of contenting himself with his improved position, used it simply to play a still more dangerous game. The oath which Richard had demanded from him on his departure for the crusade, binding him to absent himself for three years from England, was remitted at his mother's request,[1] and no sooner had the king fairly started than John returned. And here he immediately found himself in a situation full of temptation and full of opportunity. Rich beyond his earlier dreams, holding the actual administration of a broad belt of territory covering the fairest counties of middle and southern England; already, as the eldest adult prince of the royal house, attracting to his court all the elements of opposition to the royal officials; entitled, by his titular sovereignty of Ireland, to all the retinue and pomp, if not to the name of royalty; he yet saw himself with no recognised position of authority; the most powerful baron, but not the regent; the nearest in blood, but not the heir; close to the throne in both ways, but with no definite claim on the succession or inherent hold on power. Between him and the throne stood young Arthur, the recognised heir, growing more dangerous every year; and between him and the regency, not only his mother, whom even her love for him could not bend beyond a certain point of compliance, but the rough, unpopular, yet very able justiciar, the king's constitutional lieutenant, a man unscrupulous, insolent, unjust, but indisputably faithful.[2]

John's rashness and ingratitude during Richard's absence on the crusade.

His position somewhat tantalizing.

To secure the succession to the exclusion of Arthur was John's first aim; had not king Henry purposed to exclude Richard to make him king?[3] Next, to sup-

His first object is to supplant Arthur as heir.

---

[1] Ric. Devizes, p. 15.

[2] Hoveden, iii. pref. xl.–xliii.

[3] Hoveden, ii. 363. The words of the historian may be interpreted merely of Henry's intention to exclude Richard from the succession to the continental estates, as in Gir. Camb. *De Inst. Pr.* p. 91; but it is observable that he never allowed homage to be done to Richard as

Next to supplant Richard himself.

plant Richard himself by Philip's aid, and trust to the chances of his death or captivity for an escape from his vengeance. A hazardous game, but not the less tempting. The first step was to unseat the justiciar.

He obtains recognition as heir, and intrigues against Richard.

After two desultory struggles John succeeded in effecting this, and in obtaining from the baronage a more or less occult engagement to accept him as heir to the crown.[1] So great a success was too much for him; he could not wait; if he had let England alone, Richard might and probably would never have returned from Palestine. He took the readiest way to bring him home. In vain the warning voice of Eleanor pleaded, commanded, and reproached;[2] as soon as the king of France returned John entered into his designs at once. The threat of forfeiture brought him to his mother's side, but he was not proof against a bribe. The exiled chancellor purchased his promise to consent to his return; the barons offered a higher sum;[3] John withdrew the promise and left his old competitor in the lurch. Then came the news of Richard's capture, and again John was in France conspiring with Philip. Now raising money for the ransom and putting it in his own pocket;[4] now offering the emperor a bribe to prolong the captivity;[5] now brought by his mother to reason, now tempted by Philip to hazard a larger stake; unable to defend his own servants, and unwilling to make the least sacrifice, he fails signally on both sides. The barons, who had clung to him as the leader of the constitutional opposition, will have nothing to say to him as a traitor; even those who were afterwards

His conspiracy with Philip of France.

---

his successor either in England or in Normandy.

[1] Hoveden, iii. pref. lix, lxxix.

[2] *Itiner. R. Ricardi*, p. 359; Ric. Devizes, p. 57; Bened. ii. 237.

[3] R. Devizes, p. 59; Bened. ii. 239; Hoveden, iii. 188; Gir. Camb. V. *Gaufr.* Ang. Sac. ii. 402.

[4] The measures taken in 1193 for ascertaining the amount of his receipts on this head put the fact beyond a doubt. Hoveden, iii. 217.

[5] Hoveden, iii. 229, 232.

the most faithful to him took the leading part in his discomfiture: the same week[1] saw him excommunicated and condemned to forfeiture by the man who was afterwards to be his prime minister, and the return of Richard, which he had been unable to prevent, found him an abject suppliant. Humiliated as he was, he was too mean for Richard's vengeance.[2] He pardoned and enriched him, but he trusted him no more.

Failure of his attempt against Richard.

Up to the time of Richard's death it may be safely affirmed that John had shown none of the qualities that would have fitted him to reign; not even the energy which comes out on one or two occasions in his later career. If it had in any considerable degree depended on himself, he would never have reigned. The uncertainty of the rule of succession, which is so often adduced in illustration of our early history, is scarcely anywhere brought out more clearly than on this occasion. It is probable that Richard had never seriously considered the subject before he received his death wound. Arthur had been, early in the reign, put forward as the heir, in the idea possibly of repressing the ambition of John, for Richard was not of an age to despair of having children of his own; and later on there were indications that Otho of Saxony, to whom he had given the county of Poictou, and for whom he had tried to secure the succession to the throne of Scotland, might be substituted for the nearer claimant.[3]

Uncertainty of John's prospect of succeeding to the crown.

---

[1] Hoveden, iii. 236, 237.

[2] *Itin. R. Ricardi*, p. 449. "Ex- "cellentia siquidem animi dedigna- "batur inferiorem punire; reputans "sibi sufficere se posse vendicare."

[3] Richard left Otho his jewels, Hoveden, iv. 83. Otho's presumptive claim is recognized by the pope in 1216, although his elder brother Henry the count Palatine was alive, R. Wendover, iii. 375. It is observable also that Otho had already, early in Richard's reign, been promised the counties of York and Poictou, and that, although he was elected king of Germany by his uncle's influence, that influence Richard had intended to be used in favour of his elder brother Henry, thus leaving Otho free for any further provision that might be made for him. Hoveden, iv. 38. Henry, however, was in Palestine when the election took place.

He is recognised as heir, at Richard's death-bed.

But in the year before Richard's death Otho had been chosen king of Germany, and Arthur only remained in John's way. Richard on his death-bed set Arthur finally aside,[1] and that we may suppose for good reasons, although John did his best to discredit them. Eleanor's influence was used for John, and the most faithful of Richard's ministers made it their business to carry out his final disposition.

Opposition to his succession, in Anjou and Maine;

But for this John would have had little chance of being king. Both in England and on the continent there were strong parties against him. In France the barons of Maine and Anjou were anxious to have Arthur for their count; they had been in the interest of his father, and had a close connexion with Brittany, which his mother Constantia had striven to maintain. At her instigation they rose on the news of Richard's death, declared for Arthur, and placed him in the hands of Philip as his legal guardian.[2] Eleanor thereupon took the command of Richard's mercenaries and reduced Anjou to obedience,[3] whilst John enforced the submission of Maine. In England there was a strong party which was unwilling to accept John at all, or prepared to accept him only under very definite conditions; and there the securing of the crown depended on the services of Richard's ministers.

put down by himself and his mother.

Opposition among the English barons.

It would be very interesting if we could ascertain the exact standing ground and programme of the opposition, but only the names of the leaders are known, and they seem to have been only partially actuated by dislike to John. In truth the administration of the last few years of Richard's reign had been somewhat rigorous,[4] and his absence from England a matter of policy. Hubert Walter had carried out Henry's system of abridging the power of the great nobles: not a few of

---

[1] Hoveden, iv. 83.
[2] Hoveden, iv. 86, 87.
[3] Hoveden, iv. 88.
[4] Hoveden, iv. pref. xcv.

the heirs to earldoms had been for some years uninvested,[1] and therefore deprived of a portion of their revenues; and the adjustment of their rights, which was to become an important rallying point in the later part of the reign, was loudly called for.[2] It is not unlikely that, whilst accepting John as an ultimate necessity, they would still try to make good conditions. Besides these there were a few who had always hated him: Richard de Clare, earl of Hertford, the husband of one of the disinherited daughters of Gloucester, and the ally of the justiciar in the struggle of 1191;[3] the earl of Chester, who had married Constantia of Brittany, and whose policy halted between the temptation of being stepfather to a king and the hatred of his unfaithful wife;[4] David of Huntingdon, whose line would be dictated by his brother the king of Scots, and who would attempt by prolonged neutrality to keep open the question of restoring Northumberland and Cumberland to him. The heads of the houses of Mowbray, Ferrers, and Beaumont were also suspected, on the general ground, it would seem, of their hereditary opposition and strong feudal antecedents. But the prompt action of the ministers of Richard decided the point. Hubert Walter, Geoffrey Fitz Peter, and William Marshall summoned the barons to Northampton before they had had time to communicate with one another, and there by promises and arguments obtained their adhesion.[5] Not a voice was raised in England for Arthur, and Hubert on the day of coronation was enabled to appeal safely to

Rigorous administration of Richard's last years.

Attempt of the barons to make terms with John.

His political and personal foes.

They are brought over by Hubert Walter.

[1] It is observable that even William Marshall and Geoffrey Fitz Peter were not formally invested until the coronation of John, Hoveden, iv. 90.

[2] Hoveden, iv. 88.

[3] Hoveden, iii. 137.

[4] Hoveden, ii. 325; iv. 7, 97.

[5] Hoveden, iv. 88. Ralph of Coggeshall, however, seems to say that the country was already in the greatest confusion; and that the barons or some of them broke into open ravages on Easter day, having received the news of Richard's death the day before, ed. Dunkin, 170.

John elected.

the assembled baronage on behalf of John as the elective king.[1]

Important position of Eleanor, Hubert Walter, Geoffrey Fitz Peter, and William Marshall.

The strength of John at the beginning of his reign consisted chiefly in the support of four persons: his mother Eleanor, who maintained by prestige and intrigue his hold on the continent; Hubert Walter, Geoffrey Fitz Peter, and William Marshall, who, as the chief officers in church and state, continued the regime of Henry II. in England. Their support was strong enough not merely to obtain his succession, but to keep up his position for many years, notwithstanding his neglect of their advice and the many acts of tyranny and folly which they strove in vain to counteract. And it is important to note that just as the position of the Angevin dynasty in France collapses on the death of Eleanor, so in England the death of Hubert Walter marks the break-up of friendly relations between the king and the church, and the death of Geoffrey Fitz Peter the final rupture with the baronage; after which the very existence of the royal line depends for years on the adhesion of William Marshall and on the political influence of a new agency, the direct interference of the popes. Under these heads it may be convenient to range the points of remark which present themselves in this general view of the reign.

John's power collapses on the death of his mother and his ministers.

Career of Eleanor.

Few women have had less justice done them in history than Eleanor. I do not speak of her moral qualities: although probably her faults have been exaggerated, she can hardly be said to shine as a virtuous woman or a good wife; but of her remarkable political

[1] Doubt is thrown on Hubert's famous speech on this occasion, in which he distinctly declares the elective character of the English crown, because it is not mentioned by Roger of Wendover, but is inserted by Matthew Paris, and, considering his strong views on constitutional points, might be regarded as a composition of his own. But it is referred to distinctly by Lewis of France in his declaration against John in 1216. Fœd. i. 140. See also Dr. Pauli's note, Gesch. v. Engl. iii. 297.

power and her great influence, not only in her husband's states, but in Europe generally ; of her great energy, not less conspicuous than her husband's, both in early youth and in extreme old age, there can be no question. In an age of short-lived heroes one scarcely realises the length of her adventurous life or the great area of her wanderings. Fifty years before this she had gone on crusade, and by her undisguised flirtations had spread confusion and dismay and discord in the noblest host that ever went to the East.[1] Her divorce had overthrown

Her energy and long activity.

[1] Richard of Devizes, who writes with a barbed pen, says of her, "Regina Alienor, femina incompa- "rabilis, pulchra et pudica, potens "et modesta, humilis et diserta, "quod in femina solet inveniri ra- "rissime ; quæ non minus annosa "quam quæ duos reges maritos ha- "buerat et duos reges filios, adhuc "ad omnes indefessa labores, posse "cujus ætas sua mirari potuit . . . . "Multi noverunt quod utinam nemo "nostrum nosset. Hæc ipsa regina "tempore prioris mariti fuit Hiero- "solymis. Nemo plus inde loqua- "tur: et ego bene novi. Silete." p. 25. The facts of the case seem to be these: Eleanor and her first husband went together on the second crusade, he as a monk, she in the usual spirit of a gay and courtly pilgrim. Her extravagance was encouraged by her uncle, the prince of Antioch, who hoped through her influence to sway the councils of Lewis ; and in this he failed. Lewis was made doubly miserable by the levity and by the political meddling of his wife. William of Tyre puts the case well (lib. xvii. c. 8): "injuriarum me- "mor, quas in via et in toto peregri- "nationis tractu uxor ei irrogave- "rat." The king divorced her on his return home. The divorce took place in 1154, so that he must have nursed his grievances for nearly seven years. From William of Newburgh, however, it would seem more probable that Eleanor herself desired the divorce, owing to incompatibility of temper, or to a passion she had formed for Henry. From the fact of the divorce originated the stories of her criminal misbehaviour : for these William of Tyre is answerable, though not intentionally, his statement being clearly based on his inference from the divorce, "erat, ut præmisimus, "sicut et prius et postmodum mani- "festis edocuit indiciis, mulier im- "prudens, et contra dignitatem re- "giam legem negligens maritalem, "thori conjugalis fidem oblita," lib. xvi. c. 27. On this basis the Romancers very early concocted an amour of Eleanor with a Saracen knight, and later identified the knight with Saladin himself : "la ducoise "Elienor qui fu male feme . . . . "quant la roine Elienor vi la defaute "(moleche et nichete) que li rois "avoit en lui, et elle oï parler de la "bonté et dou sens et de la prou- "eche Salhedin," she offered to elope with him. Chron. de Rains, pp. 4, 5.

Career of Eleanor.

the balance of power in two kingdoms, producing in one of them a disruption which it required four hundred years of warfare to remedy. Her quarrel with her second husband long retarded the reforming schemes of his great administrative genius, and consigned her to fourteen years of captivity. Yet those fourteen years appear but a short episode in her long life. Henry's death brought her from prison to supreme power.[1] As Richard's representative in England, she repressed the ambition of John and thwarted the designs of Philip; she found time and strength, at seventy, to journey to Messina with a wife for her son,[2] to Rome on an embassy,[3] and to Germany with the ransom that her energy had helped to accumulate.[4] After a few years of rest she is again on foot at Richard's death. To her inspiration John owed his throne; her influence excluded, no doubt, the unhappy, misguided Arthur; she herself took the command of the forces that reduced his friends in Anjou to submission;[5] she travelled to Spain to fetch the grand-daughter whose marriage was to be a pledge of peace between France and England.[6] She outlived, it would seem, the grand-child who had outraged her. She lived long enough to see Philip's first attacks on Normandy;[7] from her deathbed she was writing to the barons to keep them in their allegiance,[8] and her death at the age of eighty-two was followed

Her long journeys in her old age.

The divorce was the origin not the result of the accusations. The innuendos of Giraldus, *De Instr. Pr.* iii. 152, are of the same value.

[1] Benedict, ii. 74; Hoveden, iii. 4.

[2] Bened. ii. 157; Hoveden, iii. 95.

[3] Hoveden, iii. 100.

[4] Hoveden, iii. 226, 233.

[5] Hoveden, iv. 88.

[6] Hoveden, iv. 107, 114.

[7] On the 22nd of July 1202, Eleanor had licence to dispose of her revenue by will, Rot. Pat. i. 14. A few days after, she was besieged in Mirabel and rescued by John, on the 1st of August, R. Coggeshall, ed. Dunkin, p. 210.

[8] There are two letters enrolled on the Charter Rolls of 1201 of great interest: one from the viscount of Thouars and another from

by the subversion of all the continental projects of her husband. But her own dominions in great part remained to her son's son, as if her mighty shade were able to defend them at least from the hated offspring of Lewis VII.

Her dominions preserved to John's descendants.

Eleanor no doubt loved John as her youngest son; she seems to have disliked Arthur and his mother, moreover, for their own sakes. Further, little as she had loved Henry II., she was naturally averse to the dismemberment of his empire. Hence, notwithstanding her great age at the time of Richard's death, she set herself heartily to work to remedy the existing dangers, to resume the negotiations for peace which had been begun by Richard just before, and to complete the pacification by detaching Philip from Arthur's side. And this she succeeded in doing, although not without aid from other sources. Philip had for the moment discarded the pretext of helping Arthur, and was warring on his own account;[1] the Angevins were thus induced to throw themselves and their chosen count into the arms of John; the example was followed by a crowd of French nobles who had quarrelled with Philip, and he himself was at the moment threatened with an interdict.[2] Taking advantage of the crisis, Eleanor brought hastily from Spain her grand-daughter Blanche of Castille, and by the bestowal of a few Norman counties as her marriage portion, John obtained a peace which lasted until Philip's difficulties ended. Then in 1202 war broke out again; Philip declared John

Her exertions for the reconciliation of John and Philip.

Conclusion of peace in 1200.

Eleanor, both addressed to John, and giving an account of an interview between the two writers at Fontevraud, where Eleanor had invited the viscount to visit her, and had obtained from him a promise of fidelity to John. Rot. Chart. pp. 102, 103.

[1] Hoveden, iv. 96. Philip's refusal to surrender Ballon to Arthur opened the eyes of the Angevins. The French malcontents were in treaty with John before (*ib.* p. 95), as they had been with Richard.

[2] Hoveden, iv. 94, 112.

Attack and extinction of Arthur.

to be, as a contumacious vassal,[1] deprived of his fiefs; Arthur in the most foolish and wanton way attacked his grandmother at Mirabel; there he was defeated and taken by John;[2] his imprisonment at Falaise followed, and his final disappearance; which left the disaffected and alienated barons of Normandy no alternative but the choice between Philip and John.[3]

---

[1] The summons was addressed to John as Philip's liegeman for Anjou and Poictou, and the day fixed for the second Sunday after Easter, 1202; Rigord, p. 202 (ed. Bouquet, xvii. 54); R. Coggeshall, p. 208; R. Wendover, iii. 167. The sequence of events is very obscure. According to William of Armorica (Bouquet, xvii. 75), John pledged two castles, Tillieres and Botteavant, for his compliance with the summons; on John's non-appearance the castles were seized. So also Alberic of Trois Fontaines, p. 423. Ralph of Coggeshall asserts that the summons was made at the suit of Hugh le Brun and Ralph of Eu, "de nimia infestatione," p. 208.

[2] R. Coggeshall, pp. 210, 211 (ed. Dunkin).

[3] Le Baud, in his history of Brittany (Paris, 1638), gives a circumstantial account of the proceedings taken by the Bretons on the news of the death of Arthur: they assembled at Vannes in great force, the historian naming the barons and bishops who were present. They determined to complain to Philip, and sent by bishop Peter of Rennes a formal charge against John, demanding that he should be summoned before a court of the peers of France; "et, non comparant, fut "fait son procez solemnellement, et "par celle Cour des Pers, fut donnee "contre luy sentence diffinitive par "arrest, de la quelle il fut dit et de-"claré que pour sa desloyaute et "pour son crime de parricide et de "majesté leze, toutes et chacunes "ses seigneuries qu'il tenoit du dit "Roy Philippe, estoient et seroient "confisquees à la coronne de France "et y furent unies," p. 210. See also Morice, *Hist. de Bretagne*, i. 132, who says that the charge was made fifteen days after the murder. Le Baud quotes as his authority Robert Blondel, who wrote the *Reductio Normanniæ* in the fifteenth century. This work is published in the present series; it contains no mention of the matter; and le Baud's reference is probably to Blondel's *Oratio Historialis*, which is yet in MS. The value of le Baud's account consists simply in its circumstantial character. Knighton, c. 2420, gives the same account less circumstantially, but without date. The earliest statement seems to be that contained in Lewis's proclamation, in 1216, Fœd. i. 140; "satis "notum est quomodo de murdro Ar-"turi nepotis sui, in curia karissimi "domini regis Franciæ, cujus ambo "erant homines ligii, per pares suos "citatus et per eosdem pares tandem "condempnatus." See Wendover, iii. 373; M. Paris, p. 283. The second process must have taken

The Norman kings had never ruled without a competitor.

And this was a state of things which had not existed since the early days of William Rufus; and even then, in Stephen of Aumâle, the Norman barons had found a competitor for their support in rivalry with the son of the Bastard. Henry I. during the whole of his reign knew that there was a strong party in favour of his brother and nephew. Stephen and Matilda had fought out the quarrel. Against Henry II. his own sons had been set up, and John had been utilised to thwart and irritate Richard, as Arthur in his turn had been used to rouse the fears and compel the good behaviour of John. The disappearance or death of Arthur not only shocked the Norman and English nobles, who were now far advanced beyond the barbarism which had tolerated the brutal cruelties of Henry I.; but it also showed them that they must face for the first time a king who would rule without a competitor. Among the descendents of Henry in the female line there was not as yet anyone recognised as fit to succeed on John's defeasance. The Saxon dukes had claims enough of their own to struggle for. Raymond of Toulouse was out of the question. King Alfonso was too far away, and his rights had devolved (so the French said) on his daughter; and to accept Lewis was the same thing as to accept Philip. And this the Normans seem to have thought the best course; a series of defections begins immediately on Arthur's capture. John showed no intention of repelling the attacks of Philip, and his English barons took leave of him in shame and disgust. The second sentence of

The barons have no choice but between John and Philip.

---

place in 1203, where it is placed in the Chronicle of Lanercost, p. 2. "Rex Johannes citatus ad parlia- "mentum super forisfacturis suis "et semper procrastinans, tandem "ibi conventus, Normanniam pro "nece innocentis amisit." If Arthur's death was believed to have occurred in Holy Week, 1203 (Apr. 3, Ann. Margam, 27), and Philip's march began a fortnight after Easter (Rigord, 204), the date may be closely approximated to. The account of the trial in the Margam Annals is noteworthy.

Second sentence of forfeiture.

forfeiture issued by Philip, a thing which in ordinary times would have roused the vassals to an indignant assertion of the rights of their lord, seems to have had now the effect of an ecclesiastical excommunication. It paralysed John's few friends and gave his many enemies the excuse for desertion or open hostility which they were anxiously seeking. In the meantime the southern provinces were bitterly provoked by the circumstances of John's second marriage, and only the life of Eleanor stood between him and entire forfeiture there also.[1]

Alienation of the south.

Eleanor dies in 1204.

It is unfortunate that the historians have not preserved the dates of the death of Arthur and the second sentence of forfeiture. It seems, however, certain that Eleanor, who died in the spring of 1204, must have survived both events; but we lose sight of her personal action after the battle of Mirabel.[2]

---

[1] Eleanor made over Poictou to John as her heir in September 1199, Rot. Chart. p. 30; but wisely received his homage for it, so that during her life there could be no hazard of forfeiture to the suzerain. She had previously the same year done homage for it to Philip, Rigord, ap. Bouquet, xvii. 50. The possession of the fief of Poictou must always have been complicated by its union with the duchy of Aquitaine. Richard had been made both duke and count in 1176 or 1179: whether or not to the exclusion of his mother's title: but in 1185 he had been compelled to restore Poictou and probably the duchy also to his mother. Her rights, whether lost for the time or not, reverted to her at the end of his reign. During that reign, however, she was still duchess of Aquitaine, Richard was also duke, and under him Otho was count of Poictou. On Richard's death, Otho's tenure being supposed to lapse at his election in Germany, she renewed her own title by doing homage to Philip (for the duchy), and then received that of John as count. Yet John also calls himself duke of Aquitaine. It would be tedious, if not uninteresting, to work out the legal bearing of the several titles, all different, by which the duchy of Normandy, the counties of Anjou and Maine, and the duchy of Aquitaine and county of Poictou, were held; certainly the legal difficulties were much greater than Philip's hasty sentences of forfeiture could solve; John did homage to Philip for Brittany as well as for his other lands in 1200, R. Coggeshall, 172.

[2] The date of Eleanor's death is given by Sandford (p. 60) as June 26, 1202, at Mirabel, the year being certainly two years wrong. The day seems to depend on an entry in the Necrology of the monastery of Fontevraud, printed in Bouquet

John's fortunes in France could not survive his contemptuous negligence; after that victory his vanity became insufferable, and when he had alienated the barons by whose sword and counsel it was won, it became contemptible. The whole of his continental dominion slipped out of his hand.[1] The grand inheritence of the sons of Rollo, the conquests of William in Maine and the Vexin; all the peculations of the Angevins in Brittany and Touraine; the coveted and but lately secured superiority of Brittany: all that Henry and Richard had plotted and fought for, was lost without one strong blow struck to save it. And it was lost needlessly; notwithstanding the turbulent insubordination which was inherent in the Norman baronage, so many of them still had estates in England that, at the very lowest estimate, revolt must have cost them dear; all the relations of the clergy were with England rather than with France: the commons of Normandy had enjoyed under their dukes a semblance of English liberty. Henry II. had legislated for Normandy as well as for England,[2] and had never touched the rights that set the free Norman on most social and legal points far above

Decline of John's fortunes in France.

He throws away Normandy.

The Normans were more closely connected with England than with France.

among the notes to Ralph of Coggeshall, vol. xviii. p. 98. The Annals of Waverley, however, say distinctly (p. 256), "Alienor regina obiit "in kalendis Aprilis." And this would seem to be the true date, for John, in an ordinance for the bakers of Winchester (Rot. Pat. i. 41), issued April 15, 1204, says, "facta est autem hæc constitutio ad "Pascha proximum post obitum "Alienoræ Reginæ matris meæ." Easter fell on the 25th of April in 1204. On the 2nd of May John confirms a gift to Fontevraud "pro "salute animæ Alienoræ Reginæ," Rot. Chart. p. 127.

[1] When the castellans of Normandy applied to him in 1204, "per nuncios significavit omnibus, "ut nullum ab ipso exspectarent "auxilium, sed facerent singuli "quod sibi melius videbatur." Wendover, iii. 181; M. Paris, 212.

[2] See the passage quoted from Robert de Monte in the preface to Benedict, vol. ii. p. lix., which shows that Henry was employed in legal reforms in Normandy as early as 1160. Geoffrey's ordinance on primogeniture in Brittany is also probably his handywork. The similarities and differences between Norman and English law at the middle of the thirteenth century will be seen well illustrated in the *Codex Legum Normannicarum*, printed in J. P. de Ludewig's Reliquiæ Manuscriptorum, vol. vii. pp. 149–418.

Absence of any feeling for John in Normandy.

the mere Frenchman. Nor could the hostility of three centuries, during which Norman and Frenchman had been continuously struggling, have failed to create an abiding feeling of separate interests and traditions. But neither self interest nor sentiment availed to save John. The great families began to divide their heritages: the French estates, impoverished by neglect and non-residence, might go to the younger sons and cousins, if they could avoid forfeiture; and they might do homage to king Philip:[1] the English barons were rich enough to spare their Norman farms, and not unwilling to escape the responsibility of defending them. The great earls could make their own bargains;[2] the bishops,[3] the slowest to move because safest and strongest in neutrality, made no sign of adhesion to the fallen house. The two limbs of the great inheritance parted without a struggle. In Anjou and Touraine there was not even a sign of reluctance;[4] no great English estates had been accumulated by the barons of those lands, nor had their separation from the body of France ever been so com-

[1] A list of the barons of Normandy who, like Baldwin Wake, adhered to John; who like the Hommets adhered to Philip; or like the Longchamps divided into two branches, would be an invaluable help to the reading of the earlier as well as the later history; and considerable materials for it are already in print in the *Rotuli Normanniæ* of Stapleton, and in the Rolls of the Reign of John, edited by Sir T. D. Hardy, especially the *Rotuli Normanniæ*, i. 122–143. The county of Aumâle is the best known and most curious instance of the effects of the change of lords; the conquest of Normandy having turned the English estates of the dignity into an English earldom with a foreign title, the earldom of Albemarle.

[2] The earl of Chester received Richmond and Dovedale in compensation for his Norman estates, Ann. Wigorn. 393.

[3] Among them Walter of Coutances, whose early career was entirely English. who had been vice-chancellor, bishop, and justiciar in England; Henry de Beaumont of Bayeux, who had been on the closest terms with Henry II. and Geoffrey of York, and was a kinsman of the earls of Leicester and Warwick; and Jordan de Humet of Lisieux, a member of the family which gave constables to Normandy under Henry and Richard.

[4] W. Cov. ii. 197. "Johannes "quippe a suis destitutus Norman-"nia recesserat." It is one story of mutual mistrust; the garrison of Andeli surrendered "eo quod de "subventione regis sui diffidebant."

plete as that of Normandy. Aquitaine with the exception of Gascony went for the moment the same way.[1]

John's loss of Normandy undoes the territorial work of William the Conqueror.

Thus the territorial work of the Conquest was undone.[2] With how great advantage to the English it is unnecessary now to work out at length. It is sufficient to observe that the kings could no longer look on Normandy as their natural home, but found themselves obliged to live face to face with their people. The people, gaining strength at the same time from other causes, learned to look with less tolerance on the vices, and to endure with less patience the extortions, of the kings. The long existing confusion between the duties of the barons as English and as Norman feudatories ceased: the constant influx of foreigners regarded as half English because they were Norman was stopped; and England began to be ruled more distinctly on national principles, for English purposes and by Englishmen. The crown became more distinctly dependent on the goodwill of the nation, and the nation became, more than it had been since the Conquest, both in church and state, in law and revenue, in war and peace, distinctly conscious of its unity, and, so to speak, of its personal identity. The fusion of the races was accomplished under Henry II.; but the loss of Normandy had the effect of separating the consolidated mass from the extraneous matter which was still mechanically attached to it.

Benefits arising to England from the separation.

John could bring them no succour, "eo quod suorum proditionem sem- "per timeret." R. Coggeshall, 217, 218. Rouen and Verneuil were lost for the same reason, "eo quod quo- "rundam suorum proditionem sus- "pectam haberet." *Ib.* 219. This seems on some occasions to have amounted to a panic on the king's part; as when he shut himself up for a fortnight in Nottingham castle, Ann. Margam, 32. The story is repeated again in 1214 in Poictou, where Wendover amusingly describes John and Lewis, both at the head of strong armies, running away from each other. Wend. iii. 287; M. Paris, 250.

[1] R. Coggeshall (ed. Dunkin), p. 220; W. Cov. ii.

[2] The prophecy of Merlin was fulfilled. "Gladius a sceptro sepa- "ratus est." R. Cogg. p. 219; Ann. Wigorn. p. 407.

The death of archbishop Hubert causes the breach between John and the clergy.

The death of Eleanor, who had impersonated and concentrated the political influence of the family in France and on the continent generally, was followed in little more than a year by that of the archbishop Hubert Walter, who had played the Lanfranc to the second Rufus. The parallel is by no means merely superficial, different as were the antecedents and the characters, probably, of the two prelates. As Lanfranc had placed William Rufus on the English throne [1] in spite of the deficiency of title and the opposition of a considerable body of nobles who maintained the rights of the heir, so Hubert had secured the succession of John. And the authority which Lanfranc as long as he lived exercised over William, Hubert exercised as long as he lived over John: by personal influence with him he repressed his more extreme attempts at tyranny,[2] and by his influence with the baronage he obtained the most patient toleration, and put the best colour on the character, of his acts. Hubert had done this in the affairs of the state as well as in those of the church. As finance minister to Richard he had learned how the country could be taxed with the least outcry and with the greatest profit; and of the credit which his financial successes procured him he had availed himself to improve the facilities for the administration of justice, and to secure the promotion of good men.[3] Richard had had an unfeigned respect for him, earned no doubt by the common endurance of great perils and privations in Palestine, and by the services which had gained the regard of Saladin in the East [4] and Henry VI. in the West.

Great reputation and ability of Hubert.

---

[1] Eadmer (ed. Selden), pp. 13, 14.

[2] As, for example, in his attack on the Cistercians in 1200, R. Coggeshall, p. 181.

[3] Hoveden, ii. pref. pp. lxxxi–cii.

[4] *Itiner. R. Ricardi*, p. 437. "Tam in militia transmarina quam "in regimine sanctæ sedis Cantua-"riensis ecclesiæ floruerat." R. Coggeshall, p. 234.

Everything that Hubert had done for Richard he had done for John, having as chancellor even a more intimate intercourse with him and more constant occasion for remonstrance and reproof. John might have been sensible of the merits, ungrateful as he was for the support of Hubert, for notwithstanding the decisive line that he had taken against him when in arms against Richard, he had never maintained, as William Longchamp had done, the claims of Arthur to the English succession: he, as his uncle Ranulf Glanville had been,[1] seems to have become through old association at Henry's court, and perhaps by the unconscious influence of the king's affection for his youngest son, personally attached to John; and his brother Theobald, the chief butler of Ireland, was one of John's ministers long before he came to the crown. But John was incapable of gratitude as of every other better sentiment. He had felt the indispensable and irrefutable counsels of the archbishop to be a curb on his instinct for unbridled tyranny.

Hubert's services to John.

There are indications that Hubert's influence was on the wane in political affairs before his death. But the immediate result of it, and it is this that gives force to the parallel with Lanfranc, was the rupture of that tacit concordat between the hierarchy and the sovereign, which had been instituted by the Conqueror and his great adviser, and which had, with the two great exceptions of S. Anselm and S. Thomas, been maintained by the representative men of the church for a century and a half.

His influence diminished before his death. His death was the signal for the break up of the concordat between king and clergy.

The principle of this arrangement had been the permission of as much spiritual and ecclesiastical liberty to the clergy as was consistent with the fulfilment of the obligations of citizenship, as understood under a mainly feudal constitution. The Anglo-Saxon system had been too hierarchical. In that respect, as in some

Relation of church and state under the Norman kings.

[1] Gir. Camb. *Exp. Hib.* p. 380.

Church measures of William the Conqueror and Lanfranc.

others, it was possible only in a state in which the differences of race and religious and political views were few. The Danes had accepted it as a part of English Christianity; but the Norman Conquest introduced a foreign race, a foreign baronage, and a hierarchy obnoxious to the influences of the Hildebrandine awakening. And it was to meet this that the king and archbishop on the one hand organized the spiritual courts as distinct from the secular, whilst on the other hand they bound the conquered and the conquerors by the feudal tie, covering uniformly the ecclesiastical as well as the merely territorial relations. The bishops became on the one side barons and on the other free and spiritual judges; as barons they were bound to the feudal obligations, as spiritual judges they claimed for themselves and for their clergy immunity from the secular tribunals. Such a concordat left, however, very many points unsettled, especially that of election to bishoprics, which had been the bone of contention in all the countries of the West, and was ultimately settled, on different principles, and in the course of many centuries, according to the particular circumstances of each national church. It was in England left to the good understanding between the king and the higher clergy, being in theory free, but in practice a matter of arrangement between the king, the chapters, and the consecrating primate: and of course a pacific carrying out of such an arrangement required delicate handling on the part of each.

Election of bishops left to the good understanding between king and primate.

Only one serious dispute, before the reign of Henry II.

It had been in the main a successful device, although in the Norman reigns the terrors of the king's court had at least as much to do with the submission of the chapters as had the manipulation of the archbishop. The only serious case of disputed election which had yet occurred was that to York[1] in the reign of Stephen, at

[1] See the account in John of Hexham (ed. Twysden), cc. 269, sqq.; Tho. Stubbs, cc. 1721, 1722; Will. Newb. lib. i. cc. 17, 26; Raine, Fasti Ebor. i. 210–233.

a moment when the king was very weak, when the emancipation of the disputed see from the obedience of Canterbury had been just vindicated, and when the hands of both king and archbishop were tied by the legation of Henry of Winchester. The death of Hubert Walter not only made the vacancy which proved the object of contention, but removed the influence by which only the contention could under other circumstances have been allayed.

Hubert's death peculiarly unfortunate in this point.

It is necessary, however, to take a wider view of the circumstances, and to regard the extent to which the quarrel that followed Hubert's death was the break up of the old relations between the church and the crown. The particular circumstances are in this aspect less important; indeed the power of monasticism, and it was monasticism that provoked the struggle, was so much on the wane that it ceases henceforth to be one of the motive forces or colouring influences of English political history.[1]

Its effects still more extensive and important.

During the long struggle which the Norman kings and their successors had waged against aggressive feudalism, the clergy had stood almost to a man on the royal side. In the best of them, nay in the great majority, it is probable that this attitude was suggested by the conviction that the strength of the king was the salvation of the people. With this mingled, no doubt to a large extent, the desire of vindicating their class immunities, which could only be done by making their support valuable to the king; but much more than this is implied in their constant maintenance of the crown against the great feudatories. It was not this that placed S. Wulfstan at the head of the Worcestershire fyrd to put down the rebellion of the earls;[2] or that kept the bishops faithful to William Rufus and Henry I.; or that united the whole of the clergy in the support of

Hitherto the clergy had adhered to the king against the feudatories.

[1] See Epistt. Cantuar. pref. cxviii–cxx.

[2] Flor. W. ap. W. Covent. i. 91.

Employment of clerical ministers by the Norman kings.

Henry II. against his sons. The victory of the barons would, as they saw, have been, at that time the destruction of the people. From this resulted the constant employment, by the early kings, of clerical ministers; and their monopoly of state offices of course increased the attachment of the prelates to the crown as the fountain of honour, profit, and power. Not only were bishoprics the appropriate reward of official labours, but bishops were felt by the kings to have so many interests in common with themselves, that they were the safest men to trust. And even the great quarrels with Anselm and Becket did not interrupt this relation; for although after Becket's desertion (as Henry deemed it) of the royal cause, the king tried to commit himself less and less to the bishops as state servants,[1] and to educate a legal nobility of his own to take their place, the bishops supported the crown against their primates in the latter case as much as in the former; and the archbishops found more sympathy among the barons than among their brethren. Nor should it have been otherwise so long as the primates were, with the highest motives it may well have been, risking the destruction of national in defence of ecclesiastical liberties. What is true of the bishops is true for other reasons of the lower clergy, who, mostly of English birth and in thorough sympathy with their flocks, viewed the aggressions of the baronage with terror and hatred, and on every occasion supported the government against them. The monks also had until the middle of the twelfth century maintained a national attitude[2]; but from the reign of Stephen, partly in consequence of the great increase of foundations by barons, who took this method of compounding for their religious duties, and partly because they felt that their obligations to the papacy were stricter than either to the king or to the nation, they either became neutral or tried to thwart

The bishops had not sympathized with Anselm or Becket.

The lower clergy also faithful to the kings.

The monks cease to maintain a national attitude.

[1] Bened. i. 346.

[2] Epp. Cantuar. pref. pp. xix–xxi.

the royal policy with respect to the church. Notwithstanding great local influence they were opposed in view and interest to the seculars, whom on every occasion they misrepresented, and out of whose revenues they were endowed. Rivalry of seculars and regulars.

But the days were come in which a continuance of this relation was no longer possible. Henry II. had not only humiliated the feudal baronage, but created a new one from the ministerial houses, free from the traditions of French feudalism. The machinery of government had been so arranged as very largely to increase the safety and comfort of society, the speedy attainment of justice, and the education of the people in its administration. But the power of the sovereign had enormously increased at the same time and by the same causes, and no adequate checks upon its still further growth were provided in the new system, which had been devised by a royal brain and carried out by men who saw in the royal power the only safeguard of the church and people. Such power had been safely entrusted to the great monarch who created it, and who throughout his life felt the restraining influence of the old checks which actually he had destroyed. And even Richard, who had spent so few days during his whole reign in England, and had administered the government by safe men, had possessed this power, masked though it may have been in the using. But John stood face to face with his people, an unmitigated tyrant; a sovereign whose power no constitutional limits as yet restricted, and whom no scruples, no counsel, held back in the exercise, the abusive exercise, of it. The ecclesiastical struggle of his reign comes in then most happily to break the old connexion, to make it impossible for the church to become the tool of a despotic king; and perhaps no less shock would have sufficed. Reforms of Henry II. had greatly strengthened the crown. He had used his power under strong checks; and Richard also. John played the tyrant, and the breach with the clergy was most fortunate.

From this date the clergy had to choose between the crown and the nation, and they chose the side of the They chose the side of the nation.

The clergy take the side of the nation against the king.

nation; in spite of, or irrespective of the attitude of the papacy; sometimes in sympathy with it and sometimes in opposition to it, they maintained the cause of liberty hand in hand with the barons against the king, as they had before maintained the cause of liberty hand in hand with the king against the barons. Stephen Langton, S. Edmund, Robert Grosteste, Adam Marsh, the Cantilupes, Robert Winchelsey, John Stratford, and William of Wykeham, although men of very different character, struggling in the most dissimilar circumstances and for the most dissimilar proximate ends, form a string of episcopal statesmen whose claims on national gratitude nothing but professional jealousy can overlook or disparage. After the wars of the Roses the constitutional cycle recurs; again the baronage is annihilated and the king becomes all powerful; but then, most unfortunately, the prelates, unsupported either by a new nobility or by a strong and righteous policy at Rome, placed themselves at the mercy of the crown; the balance of the estates was overthrown, never to be restored, and England after the fall of Wolsey saw both her political and her religious constitution made the plaything and victim of a tyrant.

Contrast of the thirteenth and sixteenth centuries in this respect.

The barons fail to support the clergy against John, in a short-sighted way.

When, however, we say that the church struggle of John's reign was in its result a happy thing for English liberty, it must not be forgotten that the parties who waged the struggle were by no means conscious of the line which events were taking, nor even contemplated the result as a contingency. The baronage in particular, although their turn in the battle was to begin as soon as that of the clergy was over, do not seem in the least to have anticipated it.[1] They had their grievances, but

---

[1] "Orta est statim discordia inter "papam Innocentium et Johannem "tyrannum Angliæ, faventibus ei "et consentientibus omnibus laicis "et clericis fere universis, sed et "viris cujuslibet professionis mul-"tis." Ann. Margam, p. 28.

they saw no connexion between them and the clerical grievances; did not even see that the victory which should place the church under the king's feet, would make him too strong for them to resist. And it is probable that they were not much to blame in this; for in the first place the adroit management of Hubert Walter had covered many of John's worst faults, and the loss of Normandy, which had occupied the king's time largely up to the year 1205, had only just become a certainty; but secondly, the circumstances of the ecclesiastical quarrel were not such as to invite the sympathies of men like the barons, who had been brought up in the principles of the Constitutions of Clarendon, and saw in appeals to Rome a breach of national organization, in the triumph of Innocent III. an unprecedented national humiliation. As the struggle proceeded, it was only those of them who had a real zeal for righteousness that would move to thwart the king, who by his usurpation of ecclesiastical revenue was enabled to dispense with heavy general taxation, or that would incur the risk of the injuries which he never hesitated to inflict. The suspension of general taxation must have been really the secret how the king was able to prolong the struggle. The people were under interdict, but the pecuniary burdens were comparatively light.[1] And the interdict was probably observed but loosely[2] after the

Probable reason for their supineness.

[1] Or to put it in the homely way of the monastic annals, ann. 1209, "Magna tribulatio fuit hoc anno et "præterito super omnes ecclesias- "ticas personas quia a cura Chris- "tianitatis omnes fere laici pedem "reflectebant; sed victualium plena "fuit abundantia." Ann. Wigorn. 397.

[2] Roger of Wendover states that it was strictly kept, iii. 222. See also *Gesta Innoc.* iii. c. 131: but this must not be strictly interpreted, cf. Ann. Dunst. ed. Luard, p. 30. And even better evidence exists in the letters of Innocent himself. One of these (Martene and Durand, Thesaurus, i. 810) contains the *forma interdicti.* Prayers are to be said and sermons preached on Sundays in the churchyards; baptisms are to be performed with full service, but in private houses; confessions may be said as usual; burials are forbidden in the churchyards, but may be performed anywhere

The people bore the interdict with equanimity.

flight of the bishops. The great confiscations affected the prelates far more than the parochial clergy, and the latter would in many cases prefer the spiritual welfare of their flocks to a hazardous compliance with the papal sentence. But even if it were not so, it is not to be supposed that the majority of an uneducated population would balance the loss of religious rites against a comparative freedom from taxation such as seems to have prevailed from 1208 to 1213. To this we may attribute the absence of anything like popular rebellion, and the postponement of the general rising until the end of the religious struggle; the influence of the chief ministers Geoffrey Fitz Peter and William Marshall, both of them men of great experience and great territorial importance, being unquestionably both exercised and felt. But some caution is necessary in speaking of the financial history of these years, because our records and chronicles furnish

---

else; the priests may not attend the funerals of the laity, but may say the offices of the dead in private houses. The chief burden was of course the cessation of the Eucharistic service, the closing of the churches and churchyards to the laity, and the prohibition of the ceremonies of marriage and extreme unction. Marriages, however, according to the Annals of Dunstable, did take place in the porches of the churches, and the viaticum was given to the dying. In another letter (Ep. xi. 102), dated June 14, 1208, the pope allows the use of chrism in baptism, the old, if new cannot be got; in the case of the dying, where the viaticum cannot be obtained, "in hoc casu credimus "obtinere, 'Crede et manducasti'," and greatest of all, "si tamen viris "religiosis ab initio licuisset juxta "suorum privilegiorum tenorem, "exclusis excommunicatis et inter- "dictis, clausis januis, non pulsatis "campanis, suppressa voce *divina* "*officia celebrare*, nec nobis fuisset "molestum, nec absonum exstitisset: "possetque per illud tam in hoc "quam in aliis congruum remedium "adhiberi, præsertim ut per obla- "tionem hostiæ salutaris Divina "placaretur in hac necessitate ma- "jestas." Where privileged orders and monasteries were so many, the hearing of mass must have been within the power of most people, see Ann. Oseney, p. 54; Wigorn, 397; W. Cov. ii. 201, 205; Wilkins, *Conc.* i. 526; but at the worst, the observance of the interdict would not reduce the mean religious services below the model voluntarily adopted by some protestant communities at the present day.

us with but little trustworthy or exact information upon it.

Conduct of Innocent and John.

It is not, however, difficult to form an accurate estimate on the two points which have been most frequently controverted in relation to this crisis of our history; the conduct and policy of Innocent III. and the conduct and policy of John. In John's conduct there is no occasion to suspect any special criminality greater than imprudent levity and wilful obstinacy in the treatment of a matter of the highest constitutional importance. It is a signal illustration of the extreme measures into which an unprincipled man may be drawn, without any definitely malicious intention, by his own lack of counsel and unscrupulousness in circumstances which require patient, conscientious, and yet politic treatment. There is no reason to suppose that John had conceived, or was capable of conceiving, a deliberate plan for suppressing the liberty of the church or throwing off the influence of the pope; at the worst his design in the first instance was but to place a creature of his own on the archiepiscopal throne, a measure which was only twice attempted during the middle ages by any English sovereign, and in both instances with the greatest danger to the state. And on the other side we should not exaggerate the aggressiveness of Innocent III. The curiously elaborate and persistent policy of the court of Rome has invested that body, in the mind of historians and politicians, with a sort of personal idiosyncrasy, which is very slightly affected by the special characteristics of the individual who happens to be pope; and so with one school the papacy is a standing conspiracy against the freedom of mankind, with another a divinely guided organization for the religious regeneration and moral discipline of the world. And thus sometimes it seems as if there were very little difference between the ecclesiastical acts of a good pope and those of a bad one. But it is quite unnecessary to antedate the existence of

John was gradually drawn into his extreme position.

Innocent followed the traditional policy of the Curia.

Neither of them contemplated the actual result.

the political system of the Jesuits, or to suppose a definitely elaborated plan of aggression even in a far-seeing pontiff like Hildebrand or his most successful follower. Innocent III. in 1205 no more thought of reducing England to the condition of a fief of the apostolic see, than John did of enriching himself with the spoils of the bishops. But the Roman court has a policy in which Innocent himself had been educated, and of which he is, perhaps in all medieval history, the most illustrious exponent; the policy of never overlooking an advantage, or any course of events that might be turned to advantage to the Roman court. In England, where, as we have seen, the secular clergy had until now been consistently ranked on the royal side in questions of church and state alike, the monastic interest was that which it was most important for the papacy to promote; for the monastic interest was most opposed to the authority of the bishops, most ready to appeal against the crown, most influential among the people, and both from traditionary religious feeling and from the hope of advantage most kindly disposed to Rome. The monastic interest in England was moreover now in close communication with the monastic interest on the continent, where it was fighting with varied circumstances the same battle.[1]

The two principal actors in the struggle were ill-matched.

It was most unfortunate for John that he had to deal with such a man as Innocent III. So sound and astute a lawyer, so ingenious and plausible a politician, so high principled a man, acting in behalf of a cause in which he entirely believed, was unlikely either to leave an opening for his own discomfiture, or to spare the exercise of the power which he thought he was using beneficially, when his own opportunity came. But he neither made nor snatched at the opportunity; every step of his proceeding was strictly legal, and if in the decisive act of the

[1] See Epp. Cantuar. pref. pp. xliii, xliv.

struggle, the election of Langton, his legality verges on captiousness or chicanery, it must be remembered that his course was provoked by the detected fraud of John. If Innocent had had to deal with Henry II., or even with Hubert Walter, he would have been met with his own weapons, the delays and evasions of the canon law would have been made serviceable on both sides; the crisis would have been staved off, and the result almost certainly would have been a compromise. John's policy in the matter was simply the blundering, floundering, pettifogging, obstinate, and yet irresolute procedure of a violent man, devoid of real courage or counsel, and ignorant of the strength of his cause. It is unnecessary to enter into the details, but a clear notion of the string of the story is indispensable.

Innocent found his most tempting opportunities in John's folly.

Hubert Walter died July 12, 1205; before he was buried,[1] the younger monks of Canterbury, without asking the royal licence, elected their sub-prior Reginald to succeed him, enthroned him and sent him to Rome for confirmation, with strict injunctions of secrecy as to the purpose of his journey. Reginald, as soon as he landed in Flanders, announced himself as the archbishop elect and so exposed the plot. The news reached England in due time; the king was enraged; the bishops were provoked at the contempt of their claim to share in the election; and the monks frightened at their own temerity, and divided into two factions. The bishops appealed to Rome on behalf of their rights, and the monks appealed on behalf of theirs.[2] John announced

Disputed election to the see of Canterbury.

[1] "Antequam corpus ejus sepul-" turæ traderetur." R. Wendover, iii. 183.

[2] The agents of both the appealing parties appeared before the pope before any mention was made of the election of the bishop of Norwich; a deputation of five monks from the convent and Master Peter of Ingleham on behalf of the bishops. Peter was robbed of his credentials at Parma, but the pope accepted a caution of 1,000 marks from him, and the security of the bishop of Winchester and Master John, canon of St. Paul's, and admitted him to a hearing. From his statement the pope concluded that the election of the sub-

John tries to influence the final decision whilst the appeals are pending.

his intention of nominating John Gray bishop of Norwich, and both the bishops and the senior party among the monks were ready to elect him. The king, unwilling to wait for news from Rome, obtained in December from the resident monks a renunciation of their appeal and transacted the formal election, placed John Gray in possession of the archiepiscopal revenues,[1] and sent envoys to Rome to demand the papal recognition.[2] Here then John took his first false step; he had not acted with sufficient promptness to stop the election and appeal of the sub-prior, he had not patience to consider that no pope could allow a suit that was brought before him to be stopped by the renunciation of it in the king's court by men whose interest in it was one of the points to be debated; and he threw over the rights of the bishops on which his father had always insisted, placing the formal right unreservedly in the hands of the monks.[3] Although then three appeals may be said to have been pending, he acted in contempt of them all, and yet

---

prior had been made (1), in spite of an appeal; and (2), in contempt of the rights of the bishops; and (3), in breach of engagement made between the bishops and the monks, to meet for the election on the 30th of November. Accordingly he wrote to the abbots of Reading and S. Alban's, and to the dean of S. Paul's, to examine witnesses, and to send the necessary persons and depositions to Rome before the 1st of May 1206. Innoc. III. epp. lib. viii. ep. 161, dated Dec. 11, 1205. A few days before, Dec. 8, he had written to the bishops, ordering them not to molest the monks. M. Paris, 212, 213.

[1] M. Paris, 213; Wendover, iii. 185.

[2] On the very day that Innocent wrote for the witnesses, Dec. 11, John wrote to him, saying that both parties had on Dec. 6 renounced their appeals; he had himself gone to Canterbury on the following Sunday, and then and there, the monks acting with his consent, had elected John, bishop of Norwich, to be archbishop. Rot. Pat. Joh. i. 56. On the 20th of the same month he sent to Rome archdeacon Honorius, Master Columb, Geoffrey of Derham, and six monks of Canterbury, on behalf of the bishop of Norwich, and issued a letter to the bishops desiring their seals to a letter to the pope for the same purpose. Rot. Pat. i. 57.

[3] Although he desired the bishops to seal the letters on behalf of the bishop of Norwich, he distinctly says that the election was made by the prior and convent, *ib.* p. 56.

forwarded a fourth appeal to the very tribunal whose cherished jurisprudence he was ignoring. Innocent on the other hand accepted all the appeals, ignored the renunciations, and set to work to inform himself of the merits of the case, adjourning the hearing of it from time to time,[1] and urging on the several parties concerned to prepare their evidence carefully and to accredit their representatives with full power. John made a show of complying, but he forwarded with the evidence a large sum of money to bribe the papal officials,[2] and whilst he pretended to give the monks whom he sent full powers to complete the election, and a formal assent to any election they might make, he bound them secretly to elect no one but Gray. The imbecile cunning of this policy practised on a man like Innocent is very characteristic of John. In the week before Christmas 1206 the cause was finally heard, before the representatives of

Innocent acts on the supposition that the appeals are *bonâ fide*.

John tries to impose on the pope.

---

[1] On the 30th of March 1206, Innocent writes to the convent. After rehearsing his letter of Dec. 11, he announces the arrival of archdeacon Honorius and his companions with the news of the election of John Gray; the agent of the sub-prior had insisted that that election should be quashed, alleging that it was made during appeal, that the person chosen was a stranger to the convent, and that it was made under undue influence. On the last ground he declined to confirm the election. Archdeacon Honorius then demanded the rejection of the claim of the sub-prior; and the latter having replied, the pope summons sixteen monks, ten by name, and six to be named by the convent, with full powers to act for the whole body, to appear at Rome on the 1st of October. The bishop of Rochester and the abbot of S. Augustine's are to see the mandate obeyed (Ep. ix. 34). He also orders the suffragans to send their proctors, and requests the king to do the same, (Epp. 35, 36, 37.) W. Cov. ii. 198.

[2] On the 8th of May, John writes to the bishops desiring their seals to the letters written by the bishops of London, Rochester, Winchester, Ely, and Norwich, Rot. Pat. i. 64. On the 26th he gave letters of credit to the amount of 3,000 marks to Thomas of Erdington and Anfrid of Dene, who were going to the court of Rome, Rot. Pat. i. 65. The letter which he wrote to the pope bears the same date, *ibid.* The abbot of Beaulieu followed, with letters of credit for 40 marks only, on the 26th of August, *ibid.* 67. Of the sum entrusted to them, the envoys spent 2,025 marks before they returned.

Final decision of Innocent.

all the parties.[1] The election of the sub-prior was annulled as informal; the election of bishop Gray was also null because it had been transacted during the appeal; the claims of the bishops were condemned, as it would seem on an *ex parte* statement at which the king had connived. The see was therefore vacant; and the only body that had a right to elect was plenarily represented at Rome, with the royal consent already obtained to ratify their choice. It had been vacant now a year and a half, to the great detriment of the church; it was desirable that there should be no more delay. The pope suggested Cardinal Stephen, an Englishman and a scholar; not a monk but also no courtier. And the representatives of the chapter, forgetful with one exception of their secret bond to the king, elected the Cardinal. We may strongly suspect that Innocent knew both of the corrupt arrangement by which he was to be hoodwinked, and of the bribes that were lavishly spent

Stephen Langton elected by the monks at Rome.

---

[1] The letter condemning the claims of the bishops is in M. Paris, pp. 214, Epp. Innoc. ix. 205, dated Dec. 20. The letter to the king announcing the definitive sentence and the election of Langton, is in *Innoc. Epp.* ix. 206; and that to the monks, nearly in the same words, is in *Innoc. Epp.* ix. 207, dated Dec. 21. In these the king's envoys, the abbot of Beaulieu (Hugh, afterwards bishop of Carlisle), Thomas (of Erdington), sheriff of Staffordshire, and Anfrid (Dene), knight, are mentioned. They refused to give the royal assent; but the deputation of monks had full powers from the convent. The pope writes at the request of the king's envoys for an express assent, although it was not necessary for an election at Rome. The secret history is told by Matthew Paris: "Rex posuerat verbum suum in "ore duodecim monachorum Cantuariensium ut quemcunque eligerent ipse acceptaret. Convenerat "autem inter Regem et eos, præstito "juramento et fidei interpositione "quod nullo modo alium quam "Johannem episcopum Norwicensem eligerent. Habebant et simi"liter regis litteras." M. Paris, p. 222. And this statement is, in one part at least, abundantly confirmed by the language of the Barnwell canon (Walt. Cov. ii. 198): "a conventu Cantuariensi et epi"scopis Angliæ, necnon et a rege "sufficienter esset cautum, quod "eorum apud sedem apostolicam "acta rata haberentur et indis"cussa."

on his kinsmen:[1] it is probable also that he regarded bishop Gray as a mere creature of the king, and was anxious for the sake of the church to place in the seat of Augustine the first scholar of the first University of Christendom, a man on whom he could rely in the interests of religion, and whom John himself respected so much that he had thrice congratulated him by letter on his elevation to the Cardinalate.[2] But he did nothing in haste, nothing underhand, or in defiance of the common understanding between the Christian princes and their spiritual guide. Where he verges towards over-legality, it is that he may defeat fraud. Nor when Langton was elected did he proceed hastily; he would not consecrate him before he had attempted to obtain from John a real instead of the fraudulent assent to the act.[3] John replied to the announcement with an absolute refusal, supported only by special pleading and unhesitating falsehood. He did not so much as know the obscure person who was forced upon him.[4] Then the successor of S. Peter clad himself in the zeal that so well became him, and consecrated the archbishop.[5]

Strict legality of Innocent's proceedings.

He acts leisurely but finally takes his own course.

---

[1] The letters patent of Feb. 20, 1207 (Rot. Pat. i. 69), mention fees of 230 marks to Peter, son of Richard, the pope's brother; 60 marks to P. Hannibalis; Stephen Rom. Cassolii, 50 marks; and 20 marks to the nephew of the bishop of Porto. The pension was still paid to P. Hannibalis in 1214 (Rot. Pat. i. 108); so also that of Octavian Rom. Cassolii (*ibid.* p. 117).

[2] So Innocent says in the letter addressed to John, dated May 26, 1207. Wilkins, Conc. i. 517, 518; Innoc. Epp. x. 219.

[3] This he asks for in the letter of Dec. 21, Ep. ix. 206.

[4] John's letter is known chiefly from the pope's answer, Ep. x. 219; Wendover, 216; Wilkins, Conc. i. 517. Wendover gives an abstract of it, pp. 215, 216; M. Paris, 224. The messengers would arrive home towards the end of January. They were immediately dispatched back again with recommendatory letters dated Feb. 20; and letters of credit of the same date for 2,000 marks, and a strict charge not to spend any of it, "sicut diligunt corpora "sua, ante consummationem negotii "pro quo remittuntur ad curiam." They had also to give account of 1,000 marks which were still in their hands. Rot. Pat. i. 69.

[5] Innocent's letter in answer to John's threat is dated May 26: Langton being not yet consecrated,

John's want of policy in this matter.

John had thus contrived, not without cunning but without any true policy, to place himself in the wrong in every possible way. He had carried an appeal to a tribunal by whose decision he did not intend to be bound; he had attempted, by an illusory undertaking on his own part and a corrupt bargain with his nominal opponents, to deceive the judge, and such a judge as Innocent. The pope defeated him by treating him as if he were an honest man. Further, he had failed ignominiously, he had lost the cause, he had wasted his bribes, and he had been betrayed by his own tools.[1] But even now there were ways open by which a king like his father or a minister like Hubert would have gained time, or even a reversal of the sentence: even in Scotland William the Lion had managed to keep a similar trial for ten years in suspense; but John had not self-command enough to temporize. He declared that no earthly consideration should ever make him receive the archbishop, and directed the severest measures to be taken for the punishment of the monks.[2] And it was

---

Wilkins, Conc. i. 517. John had said that he had never received the papal letters requiring him to send proctors, and had never been asked by the monks for his consent. The pope accounts for this by saying that the two monks sent for the assent had been stopped at Dover, but that their letters had been forwarded to the king by his own messengers. He should ask for that consent no more, but proceed to do his duty. Langton was consecrated at Viterbo on the 17th of June, and the fact was announced in a letter to the convent dated June 24. Wilkins, i. 517.

[1] "Dixit enim quod in præjudi- "cium suæ libertatis sine ipsius as- "sensu suppriorem suum elegerant, "et postmodum, ut quod male ges- "serant quasi sibi satisfaciendo pal- "liarent, elegerunt episcopum Nor- "wicensem, et pecuniam de fisco "accipientes ad itineris expensas, "ut electionem de episcopo memo- "rato factam apud sedem apostoli- "cam impetrarent confirmari, in "cumulum iniquitatis suæ elegerunt "ibi Stephanum de Langetune." Wendover, iii. 214; M. Paris, 223.

[2] Fulk Cantilupe and Reginald of Cornhill were sent to Canterbury to seize the goods of the monks on the 11th of July, Rot. Pat. i. 74. The bishop of Worcester was also in trouble about the business, Rot. Claus. i. 92. Langton's prebend at York was given away on Nov. 8, *ibid.* 96.

this that provoked the pope to the use of that most fearful and suicidal weapon of the medieval church, the interdict, which was proclaimed in the spring of 1208.[1] The interdict.

It is difficult to say with certainty what effect this produced on the king, who although without religion, was not without superstition; whether for the moment he was staggered in his resolution, or merely dissembled in order to test the result of the cessation of religious rites among the people generally: anyhow he offered to allow Langton to receive the royalties of his see,[2] and even gave him permission to visit England provided John hesitates about receiving the archbishop.

[1] On the 27th of August 1207 the pope wrote to the bishops of London, Ely, and Worcester, begging them to use their influence to prevail on John to receive Langton; and ordering them in case of his refusal to impose an interdict, and threatening still severer measures. Wilkins, Conc. i. 519; Innoc. Ep. x. 113. He had heard it would seem already the hardships of the monks. On the 19th of November he wrote to the same prelates to enforce the interdict, Wilkins, Conc. i. 524; to the bishops generally reproving their inertness (*ib.* p. 523); and to the barons urging them to advise the king to comply, *ibid.* 524; Epp. Innoc. x. 159, 160, 161. On the 21st of January John signified to the three bishops that he was willing to comply, Rot. Pat. i. 78. On March 12 Simon Langton, who had had a safe conduct on the 19th of February, presented himself to the king at Winchester, and prayed him to receive his brother as archbishop; and when the king spoke of saving his own rights, Simon insisted that he should place himself altogether at the archbishop's mercy. Such is the king's statement, Rot. Pat. i. 80 (Mar. 4). The interdict was formally proclaimed on the 23rd, M. Paris, 226; or on the 24th, R. Coggeshall, 238.

[2] The abbot of Beaulieu was again the envoy, and had orders for his passage from Dover on the 4th of April, ten days after the promulgation of the interdict. The pope's letters in answer are dated May 27. From these we learn the proposals made through the abbot. John was willing to accept Stephen as archbishop and to reinstate the monks; the royalties of the see he placed in the pope's hands. He could not, however, prevail on himself to receive him as a friend, "nondum animus "tuus poterat inclinari ut familia- "rem eidem archiepiscopo gratiam "exhiberes." The pope in reply urges him to confer the royalties himself and receive the archbishop's fealty; if he still declines, the bishops of London, Ely, and Worcester are to receive the royalties and confer them in the pope's name, Epp. xi. 89, 90. At the same time he wrote to the three bishops directing them, when the terms of the agreement were fulfilled, to relax the interdict, Ep. xi. 91.

Failure of negotiations.

that he were not expected to receive him as a friend.[1] But the pope suspected deceit in this; the refusal to receive Langton was too like Henry's refusal of a kiss to Becket. John was not the man to risk a second martyrdom, but there were many ways of silencing an enemy besides murder. Langton came to Dover, but all attempts at a reconciliation failed.[2] John found that the

---

[1] On the 14th of July John granted safe conduct to Simon Langton and the three bishops to pass to and fro between Dover and the continent in the process of negotiation until Sept. 8, Rot. Pat. i. 85; and this is renewed for three weeks from Sept. 8; on the 11th of August, Rot. Pat. i. 82; on the 9th of September Stephen himself has a safe conduct from Sept. 29, for three weeks, Rot. Pat. i. 86. This he did not use, but the three bishops waited in vain for two months for an interview with John; Ann. Wav. 261. Long before this, however, the pope's suspicions as to John's sincerity were aroused; on the 22nd of August he had written to the three bishops forbidding them to relax the interdict until all promises were fulfilled, Ep. xi. 141. See also R. Coggeshall ad ann. 1208. "Rex Anglorum misit Ro-" mam et se satisfacturum . . . . " promisit, sed minime tenuit," p. 238.

[2] The news of the failure of negotiations having reached Rome, the pope wrote to John on the 12th of January 1209, and distinctly imputing to him the breaking off of the pacification, insisted on his performing the promises made by the abbot of Beaulieu. If this were not done within three months after the receipt of this letter, he is declared excommunicate and the three bishops are ordered to publish and execute the sentence, Ep. xi. 211; Wilkins, i. 528. At the same time he wrote to the bishop of Winchester enjoining on him to obey the three bishops, Ep. xi. 218. He had not, however, quite given up hopes: for writing to the archbishop about the same time he gives him leave to modify the interdict and to absolve the officers who had dispossessed the monks of Canterbury, Ep. xi. 216, 217; and on the 23rd of January wrote a letter rather remonstrating with the king than threatening him, Ep. xi. 221. The excommunicatory letter, being enclosed in a letter to the three bishops, was regarded as an ultimatum; and that of Jan. 23rd would reach the king first. Simon Langton had on the 23rd of March safe conduct for three weeks after Easter that he might confer with the bishops of Winchester and Bath and the justiciar on the pope's last letter, Rot. Pat. i. 90. There is no evidence of anything being done in this interview. In the meantime the bishops who had fled from England committed the task of publishing the excommunication to their brethren, who of course declined to do so, M. Paris, 228. On the 21st of June the sentence was still unpublished, and the pope wrote, Ep.

country bore the interdict with equanimity, or at least with submission, and made or allowed no more advances towards reconciliation.[1] Then came the full burst of the storm; the bishops relieved from their duties fled from their flocks, and John seized their revenues; the inferior clergy were for a moment practically outlawed and the convents reduced to starvation; and although on second thoughts the king interfered to protect the former, and allowed a fraction of their income for the maintenance of the latter,[2] the result of the infliction was in every way calamitous. Yet strange to say whilst

John seizes the estates of the bishops.

---

xii. 57, to the abbot of S. Vedast at Arras, empowering him to promulgate it in conjunction with any two of the three bishops, whenever the archbishop should demand it. Soon after another interview was proposed, and during the preliminary negotiations matters seem to have advanced so far that a beginning of restitution was made, Ann. Waverley, p. 263. It was otherwise when the archbishop presented himself at Dover, where he landed on the 2nd of October. The king came to Chilham on his way to meet him, and sent the justiciar and the bishop of Winchester to discuss matters with him. These ministers refused to ratify the articles drawn up in the earlier stages of the business, and the archbishop left without seeing the king, Ann. Wav. 264. John made another attempt soon after, summoning the archbishop again to Dover. But to this Stephen replied in a letter still preserved, Wilkins, i. 529; refusing to comply until the terms before arranged were fulfilled, but offering to see the king's agents at Witsand or Gravelines. R. Coggeshall mentions an invitation sent by John to the archbishop in 1210, which failed because he did not give a safe conduct, p. 239; Ann. Winton. 81; Ann. Waverl. 266; W. Covent. ii. 200. The excommunication, according to the Annals of Dunstable, was published in France but not in England, p. 32.

[1] Especially after the quarrel of the pope with Otho, W. Cov. ii. 202.

[2] M. Paris, 226, 227. On the 6th of April 1208 the king orders a reasonable maintenance to be allowed to the religious, Rot. Claus. i. 109, 110, where several measures of confiscation are ordered of lands seized on account of the interdict. The abbots of Abingdon and Michelney are respited. On the 11th of April the king issues an edict which shows the length to which the outlawry of the religious and the clergy had proceeded: "Præcipimus tibi "quod clamari facias sine dilatione "per comitatum tuum, quod nulli, "sicut diligunt corpora et catalla "sua, malum faciant vel dicant viris "religiosis vel clericis contra pacem "nostram, et si quem inde attingere "possimus ad proximam quercum "eum suspendi faciemus. Rot. Claus. i. 111. See also W. Covent. ii. 200.

Intercourse with Rome was not at first stopped by the interdict.

the people were perishing, negotiations on other matters went on between England and Rome, though not without disturbance.[1] The new bishop of Lincoln[2] sought confirmation from the pope and consecration from Langton; the machinery of the court of final appeal went on; the nation was under interdict, but the king's excommunication was suffered to be in suspense; they perished, he grew rich. At last in 1212[3] the special excommunication was pronounced, and with it the sentence of deposition.[4]

Sentence issued against John.

---

[1] Not of course on so extensive a scale as usual. But the letters of Innocent III., if not misplaced and misdated, show that long after the interdict was proclaimed and the sentence of excommunication issued, the pope was writing to John on the claims of Berengaria, Ep. xi. 223. He wrote also to the chapters of the vacant churches urging them to elect, Ep. xi. 212; other business is treated of in Ep. xi. 248; xii. 100, 166; xiii. 52, 74, 208; xv. 141.

[2] He went to France, according to Wendover, to be consecrated by the archbishop of Rouen, but went instead to Langton. Several letters of Innocent concern this election, Ep. xii. 56, 91.

[3] In 1211, "Reges et alios omnes tam pauperes quam potentes, ad coronam Angliæ spectantes, a regis fidelitate et subjectione absolvit." M. Paris, 231; Wendover, iii. 237. In 1212 he issued the bull of deposition, the execution being committed to Philip. M. Paris, 232; Wendover, iii. 241; W. Cov. ii. 209.

[4] According to the Annals of Waverley (ed. Luard, p. 266), in 1211, soon after S. James's day, Pandulf and Durand landed in England; and on the Thursday after the feast of S. Bartholomew held a conference with the king at Northampton. The conference is, however, placed both in the Burton and in the Waverley Annals in the year 1212; so that some mistake is certain, and unfortunately the Rolls of the year are missing. As, however, John was at Northampton on the 29th of August 1211, and not at all during that month in 1212, the conference if it ever took place must have been in 1211; and with this conclusion agree the words of the Barnwell book (W. Cov. ii. 204): "Duo nuncii a sede apostolica ad Anglicanæ ecclesiæ reconciliationem in Angliam missi sunt, sed pace infecta redeuntes nihil afflictis contulerunt." This enables us to understand the letter of Innocent III. dated Feb. 27, 1213, in which he tells John that he has received letters in which the king promises to perform all that the abbot of Beaulieu, A. Marcel, and four other messengers shall undertake on his behalf. Of these messengers, however, only three have presented themselves: "ii vero tres nuncii nobis ad ultimum obtulerunt quod secundum illam formam satisfacere promittebas quam per dilectos filios Pandulfum subdiaconum

Even against this John was obstinate; the dread of treason too failed to subdue him; but the prophecy of Peter of Wakefield,[1] as the contemporary writers assert, effected what the successor of the apostle had attempted in vain. John's submission was as abject as his conduct hitherto had been wilful; and he obtained the support of the pope, not merely to disarm Philip Augustus, or to justify him in hanging Peter of Wakefield, but to turn it against his own people. He gives in at last.

I have stated by anticipation the effect of this struggle on the English church; its effect on the relations between England and the papacy is read in the history of the country from 1213 to this day. It may be true that Important consequences of John's submission.

"et fratrem Durandum familiares "nostros tibi curavimus destinare. "Verum cum per te steterit quo "minus secundum eandem formam "pax fuerit reformata, et postea pe- "jora prioribus attentaveris, nos ad "eam . . . minime tenemur." Fœdera, i. 108; Ann. Burton, 218; Ep. Innoc. xv. 234. Of the envoys, the abbot of Beaulieu, Thomas of Erdington, and Philip of Worcester had expenses allowed for their journey, on the 11th of November 1212. Rot. Claus. i. 126. The others were W. de S. Audoeno and Richard de Merton. The pope thus declares that the mission of Pandulf and Durand had failed, and that severer measures had been taken against the king in consequence. These can scarcely have been other than the absolution of his subjects from their allegiance, and the direction to Philip to depose John, W. Cov. ii. 209; Wendover, 241. Possibly these commands were given in the letter "exspectantes hactenus exspectavi- "mus," all copies of which were ordered, after the homage done to Nicolas of Tusculum, to be destroyed, Ep. xvi. 133. Dr. Pauli rejects the earlier mission of Pandulf and Durand, iii. 365, 374. But the authority of our chronicle is very strong; and it is confirmed by the Annals of Tewkesbury under the year 1211: "Nuncii domini papæ "venerunt in Angliam propter pa- "cem ecclesiæ, sed infecto negotio "redierunt," p. 60: and those of Margam mention the discussion at Northampton, p. 31; also Ann. Wikes and Oseney, p. 55; M. Paris, 230; Ann. Winton. p. 81. But I fear the details are too graphic to be true, especially the story of Pandulf going out of the council to look for a candle to excommunicate the king, whereon John forthwith yielded his point. Ann. Burton, 217.

[1] Walt. Cov. ii. 208; Ann. Margam, p. 60; Wendover gives four reasons for his submission: his long excommunication; his fear of Philip; his apprehension of treason; and "quartam vero causam aliis "plus omnibus timebat," namely, the approach of the day of the fulfilment of Peter's prophecy. Wendover, iii. 248; M. Paris, 235.

The result was imminent, but was precipitated by John.

John's struggle was in this, as it was in the other contests of his reign, the logical conclusion of a series of events that must have had some conclusion of the kind, that he really bore the brunt of the battle which the policy of the Norman sovereigns had necessitated; but it is not the less true that he provoked the crisis which they had contrived to avert, at a moment the most unfavourable for himself; and that he fought it with weapons which they would have scorned; and thus, although the result was to the ultimate benefit of England, it was to the immediate humiliation of the sovereign and to the permanent embittering of every element in the complication.

Measures taken, after the pacification with the pope, to ensure good government.

The pacification with the pope was arranged in May 1213, and measures were forthwith taken for the satisfaction of the pecuniary claims of the clergy and the relaxation of the interdict. The negotiations lasted more than a year, and have a constitutional importance of their own on which we cannot now enter in detail. The king on the occasion of his absolution in July[1] renewed his coronation oath with additional promises of good government. In August an assembly was held at S. Alban's under the justiciar Geoffrey Fitz Peter, in which those promises were fully stated, and directions for their fulfilment were laid on the sheriffs;[2] and the same month archbishop Langton at S. Paul's laid the charter of Henry I. before the clergy,[3] as affording a programme upon the lines of which the king's reforms should be undertaken. Unfortunately for John, on the 2nd of October the justiciar died, and from that moment

Production of the charter of Henry I.

[1] July 20. M. Paris, 239.

[2] August 4, Wendover, iii. 261; M. Paris, 239: where in an assembly of the magnates, attended by the archbishop and bishops and the reeve and four men out of each of the king's demesne townships, it was ordered "quatenus leges Henrici avi sui ab omnibus in regno "custodirentur." What those laws were does not seem to have been ascertained until the 25th of the same month, when the archbishop produced the charter of Henry I.

[3] August 25. M. Paris, 240; Wendover, iii. 263.

he seems to have either lost or deliberately cast away the hold which he had until then retained on the baronage.[1]

John quarrels with the barons.

We know too little of Geoffrey Fitz Peter to allow us to describe him as a model or as a representative minister. The few notices preserved of his personal character lead us to regard him rather as a vigilant and astute man of business than as a statesman or a patriot. His origin is somewhat uncertain; he was, however, probably one of those obscure persons whose fortune was made by Henry II. and Richard I. through the marriage of heiresses. He had obtained the hand of one of the co-heiresses of William de Mandeville, and in her right the succession to the earldom of Essex. In the following out of this claim he had shown a grasping and litigious spirit which may or may not have been brought out by a legal education;[2] and it is far from improbable that he suggested some of the captious and pettifogging

Geoffrey Fitz Peter; one of the legal barons.

---

[1] The words of Matthew Paris are so remarkable that I give the passage entire: "Anno vero sub eodem Gaufridus filius Petri totius Angliæ justitiarius, vir magnæ potestatis et auctoritatis, in maximum regni detrimentum diem clausit extremum, secunda die Octobris. Erat autem firmissima regni columna, utpote vir generosus, legum peritus, thesauris reditibus et omnibus bonis instauratus, omnibus Angliæ magnatibus sanguine vel amicitia confœderatus. Unde rex ipsum præ omnibus mortalibus sine dilectione formidabat; ipse enim lora regni gubernabat. Unde post ejus obitum facta est Anglia quasi in tempestate navis sine gubernaculo. Cujus tempestatis initium fuit mors Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, viri magnifici et fidelis: nec post mortem istorum duorum potuit Anglia respirare. Cum dicti Petri mors regi Johanni nunciaretur, cachinnando dixit, 'Cum venerit in infernum salutet Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, quem procul dubio ibi inveniet.' Et conversus ad circumsedentes subintulit dicens. 'Per pedes Domini nunc primo sum rex et dominus Angliæ.' Habuit igitur ex tunc potestatem liberiorem, juramentis suis et pactis quæ cum ipso Gaufrido dolente fecerat contraire, et initæ pacis vinculis quibus se involverat denodare. Pœnituit igitur ipsum graviter et amarissime quod ad prædictæ pacis consensum inclinaretur." M. Paris, 243.

[2] See Hoveden, iii. pref. p. xlviii; Mon. Angl. iv. 145.

Career of Geoffrey Fitz Peter.

exactions of John. He had been in the Exchequer under Henry II;[1] in the commission of the justiciarship under Richard I.,[2] and was made by him chief justiciar on the archbishop's resignation in July 1198.[3] With the exception of a campaign against the Welsh in the same year,[4] his exploits seem to have been achieved rather in the council than in the field; and his financial policy is marked by the increased stringency of the exactions under the forest law, and the severe measures against the regular clergy which were taken directly after his appointment;[5] the augmentation of the carucage at the beginning of John's reign may also have been suggested by him, for it was a measure unlikely to recommend itself to a newly crowned king as either popular or necessary.[6] Besides these slight and early indications, there is quite enough in the history of the reign to show that Geoffrey was neither a scrupulous minister nor a man of rigid principles, religious or political. He seems not to have hesitated to carry out the king's orders against the clergy, nor to have interposed to alleviate the severe measures of precaution which John took against the suspected barons. Comparatively free from class influences, and yet closely connected with the nobles, he was able with a very little holding back to make himself necessary to his master. As John Gray and Peter des Roches served his purposes in the church, Geoffrey had with less guilt and less responsibility served him with the baronage; his great fault being that he served him too well. But although Geoffrey, like Hubert Walter, had been willing no doubt to strain the law to its full extent and to take the fullest reasonable responsibility

He had been a faithful minister, but had acted as a check on his master.

---

[1] He was one of the forest justices in the 31st of Henry II., Madox, *Hist. Exch.* p. 380.

[2] Hoveden, iii. 16, 28, 96.

[3] Hoveden, iv. 48. July 11, Fœdera, i. 71.

[4] Hoveden, iv. 53. The Dunstable Annals mention an expedition into Wales in 1209; but no fighting, p. 32.

[5] Hoveden, iv. pref. xcv.

[6] See Hoveden, iv. pref. xcv.

for the measures of the government, he could not forget that he was a baron and a lawyer, and the necessity of being served by him had been irksome to John. Untaught by the lessons of the last eight years to feel either gratitude or respect, John, on hearing of the death of the justiciar, scoffingly observed that when he got to hell he would meet Hubert Walter there and might carry him his greetings. Then turning to his courtiers he said, "By the feet of God now for the first "time am I king and lord of England;" words which, spoken of Henry I. in reference to the banishment of Robert of Belesme, have so different a meaning.[1] With Henry the joy was felt for the riddance of a tyrant who was persecuting alike the king and the people; with John it was for the death of a faithful servant who stood between him and his destined victims. Matthew Paris records the story, and adds that "after his death Eng- "land became a ship in a storm without a helm. The "beginning of the tempest was the death of Hubert; "after the death of Geoffrey the country could not even "breathe."[2] It is clear that Geoffrey's influence had had the effect of keeping the king under some sort of restraint, although what the extent of the restraint may have been can be gathered only by a calculation of the difference between the preceding and following acts of tyranny and extortion. John, however, probably regarded Geoffrey as responsible for the mention of the laws of Henry I. at S. Alban's, and as having put a most dangerous weapon in the hands of the barons. Anyhow with Geoffrey's death the loss of all remaining influence over the barons does in point of time coincide, and the

John's joy on hearing of his death.

[1] Ord. Vit. XI. iii. "Omnis An- "glia, exulante crudeli tyranno, "exultavit, multorumque congratu- "latio regi Henrico tunc adulando "dixit, 'Gaude, rex Henrice, Do- "'minoque Deo gratias age, quia "'tu libere cœpisti regnare, ex quo "'Rodbertum de Belismo vicisti, et "'de finibus regni tui expulisti,'" ed. Duchesne, 808.

[2] M. Paris, p. 243, quoted in note to p. lxi.

The death of the justiciar followed by the breach between John and the barons.

series of events begins which, broken in the middle by the extortion of Magna Carta, lasts throughout the remainder of the reign of John and the early years of his successor. During these years, had it not been for the support of the papacy, they must have lost England as John had lost his continental states before.

The growth of the baronial grievances.

The grievances of the barons are not now heard of for the first time; but it is the first time that they see it necessary to throw them into the same scale with those of the church and the nation at large. It is necessary to look back to the beginning of the reign, and at the risk of a little repetition to trace the growth of them. The old feudal gravamina had most probably ceased to be felt: he would have been a bold man who had refused to admit the royal justices into his franchise, or claimed to exercise the right of coinage or high judicature among his own vassals. True the constable Roger de Lacy had, in 1193, hanged two of his knights as traitors, but Roger was on the king's side at the time the act was committed, when the country was in a state of civil war, and the excitement which, notwithstanding the palliating circumstances, followed the execution, was such as shows it to have been in the highest degree exceptional.[1] But under the system of Henry II. there were some points which were felt to be abuses, and which the new nobility as well as the old feudatories, as soon as they had made good their footing, attempted to reform. Such were the disparagement of heiresses by unequal marriages,[2] common under both Richard and his father; the continued retention of the castles of the earls who had ceased to be formidable; the postponement of the investiture of heirs

Their jurisdictions were already limited.

The disparagement and detention of estates.

---

[1] Benedict, ii. 232, 233; Hoveden, iii. 172.

[2] Ralph Niger, p. 169: "Filias "miseræ conditionis corruptas et "oppressas copulans clarissimis, "hæredes omnes mechanicos crea- "vit. Servis generosas copulans "pedaneæ conditionis fecit univer- "sos. Hæreditates retinuit aut "vendidit." This is of course rhetorical, but the grievance was real. See Benedict, ii. 71, 72.

by the exaction of enormous reliefs, or the wanton detention of their estates irrespective of the reliefs; the whole traffic in wardship and marriage; all these have their exact analogies in ecclesiastical affairs, from which the abuses had been probably borrowed; the constant occupation of the estates of the prelates and monasteries by the king's officers, and the prolonging of vacancies of sees that the revenue might run into the Exchequer.

Great exactions, wardship, and marriage.

It seems to have fallen to the lot of the great earls to act as spokesmen of the baronage on these and the like heads. It was by a promise that the king would redress their grievances that Hubert Walter obtained their adhesion to the cause of John and their consent to his succession;[1] and in 1201, when their services were demanded for the war in Normandy, they met at Leicester and refused to follow the king unless their rights were restored to them.[2] They had been then summarily and peremptorily silenced.

Discontent of the great earls at the beginning of the reign.

But to these grievances John's own reign had added the increase of taxation to a degree before unimagined, and the exaction by way of fines of sums arbitrarily demanded, assessed, and enforced; and the question of foreign service entered into and complicated most of the other questions of taxation and finance. It is unfortunate that we are only able to account by way of inference for the present state of this question. The obligation of the royal vassals to serve in foreign warfare did not and could not come into dispute so long as those vassals owed allegiance to the sovereign as duke of Normandy and Aquitaine. And in the earlier Norman reigns, under William Rufus at least, there is some evidence to show that the obligation was regarded, or construed, as binding not on the vassals only, but on

New grievances under the rule of John.

Obligation to foreign service.

---

[1] Hoveden, iv. 88: "redderet "unicuique illorum jus suum."

[2] Hoveden, iv. 161: "ex communi "consilio mandaverunt regi quod "non transfretarent cum illo nisi "ille reddiderit eis jura sua."

How the obligation to foreign service had grown up.

the national militia, the old fyrd of the Anglo-Saxon times. Although that force had never been actually taken across the Channel, it had been brought down to Hastings for the purpose and had there been dismissed, on surrendering its travelling money for the king's necessities.[1] In the war of Toulouse, the first war waged by him as duke of Aquitaine, Henry II. had come upon all the English baronage; and the application of the rule of scutage for the purpose of that war,[2] both to the bishops, who could have no foreign fiefs, and to the entire body of the knights, who in most instances were exclusively English, would show that in 1158 no legal difference was made between service on the continent and service in Britain, in all parts of which, Scotland, Galloway, Wales, and perhaps in Ireland also, it was rendered or accounted for without hesitation. Still

Scutage.

the introduction of the scutage for the first Aquitanian war may be interpreted as implying a misgiving as to the right of demanding service from the English in a land where they had no fiefs. In 1177 Henry II. summoned to Portsmouth all the tenants of the crown in arms for the invasion of France:[3] the purpose was not carried out in consequence of the peace negotiations opened with Lewis VII., but the summons was obeyed, the earls, barons, and knights crossed the Channel, and there is no record of any show of reluctance on the part of the feudatories. The reign of Richard does not afford any evidence of such occasion having arisen until 1198.

Refusal of a grant to Richard.

A scutage was raised for war in Normandy in 1195,[4] but three years after, when the justiciar proposed in the great council that a grant should be made for the maintenance of 300 knights for war in France, the bishops of Lincoln and Salisbury declared that their estates were

[1] Floren. Wig. ad ann. 1094.
[2] Ben. Pet. ii. pref. xciv–xcvi.
[3] Benedict, i. 160, 167, 168, 190.
[4] See Hoveden, iv. pref. lxxxviii. Red Book of the Exchequer (ap. Hunter, Three Catalogues, p. 15); Madox, Hist. Exch. 444.

held on a tenure of military service within the borders of England and there only.[1]

Result of the military policy of Henry II.

It would appear then that the present phase of the question had been thus produced. In the first place Henry II. had introduced great reforms into the military and financial administration, re-creating for internal defence the national militia, which could not be expected to serve abroad, and using for foreign warfare an army of stipendaries whom he did not bring to England, but whom he paid by funds raised by scutage from the whole landed interest of the country.[2] The vassals had thus got into the way of leaving the king to manage his foreign wars in his own way: the few who went with him to France either had French interests to maintain or received from him pay for their men if not for themselves. In the second place, the number of vassals who held land on both sides of the Channel was diminished, many of the Norman families having already broken up into two branches, a French one and an English one, while the new nobility of Henry II. either had, as a rule, a very small stake in Normandy compared with their possessions at home, or else possessed no Norman estates at all.[3] It cannot be pretended that the law spoke very distinctly on the subject of obligatory service, for it is clear that it was unsettled in the reign of Edward I., when the recalcitrant earls Bohun and Bigod raised the same cry as had been so potent under their predecessors in 1214.

Indistinctness of the state of the law.

---

[1] Hoveden, iv. 40; Magna Vita S. Hugonis, p. 248; Hoveden, iv. pref. xci, xcii.

[2] Dialogus de Scaccario, i. 9.

[3] The passage of the canon of Barnwell, preserved by Walter of Coventry, ii. 217, is of the greatest importance on this point; the northern barons insist that they owe no service abroad, or scutage for foreign service. John replies that he has a right to it, for it was done in the days of his father and brother. John was right as to the fact; the barons as clearly had the reason of the thing on their side. Compare R. Coggeshall, p. 243.

Increase of direct taxation.

Another of the new grievances was the increase in direct taxation which had been demanded immediately upon the king's accession. The rate of carucage was then raised from two to three shillings,[1] and that of scutage from twenty shillings to two marks, and the latter impost was levied for six years in succession. In 1203 a seventh of moveables was exacted from the baronage;[2] in 1204 an aid was taken from all the knightly landholders of the country;[3] in 1207 a thirteenth of moveables,[4] the amount of which may be estimated by the fact that in 1224, when the country was much more impoverished than it was in 1207, a fifteenth so raised amounted to nearly 60,000*l.*[5] Besides these general taxes enormous sums were exacted from individuals, especially the Jews,[6] and the persons on whom John

Irregular exactions.

---

[1] "Exiit ergo edictum a justitia- "riis regis per universam Angliam "ut quælibet caruca arans tres per- "solveret solidos: quæ nimirum "gravis exactio valde populum "terræ extenuavit, cum antea gravis "exactio scutagii præcessisset; nam "ad scutum duæ marcæ persolve- "bantur, cum nunquam amplius "quam viginti solidi ad scutum exi- "gerentur." R. Coggeshall, ed. Dunkin, p. 180; Ann. Winton. 73; M. Paris, 200. The scutages of John's reign are thus enumerated in the Red Book of the Exchequer (apud Hunter, p. 15;) "A°. 1. pri- "mum scutagium post coronatio- "nem regis; on each fee two "marks; 3°, 4°, 5°, 6°, 7°, 8°; six "assessments of two marks each, "pro exercitu Normanniæ; 12°, "Pro passagio regis in Hiberniam, "on each fee two marks; 13°, pro "exercitu Walliæ, on each fee two "marks; eodem, pro exercitu Sco- "tiæ, on each fee two marks." Notwithstanding the great authority for this statement it is impossible not to suspect that some of the scutages were merely arrears of past years. The scutage of Wales in 1211 is mentioned by M. Paris, 230.

[2] Matt. Paris, p. 209.

[3] Two marks and a half. M. Paris, p. 209.

[4] Ann. Waverley, 258; M. Paris, 221; Rot. Pat. i. 72.

[5] Liber Ruber (ap. Hunter, p. 22): "Summa xv^mæ assisæ per Angliam "anno regni regis Henrici filii regis "Johannis octavo, 86,758 marc. "et 2d."

[6] From the Jews in 1209 he raised 66,000 marks; and from the Cistercians the next year 33,333 marks, Liber de Ant. Legg. p. 201. M. Paris states the latter sum as 40,000 pounds, p. 230; and adds to it 100,000 pounds obtained the same year from the regular clergy. Cf. W. Covent, ii. 200, 201, 202.

could bring his legal chicanery to bear, by the system of fines which was elaborated under his directions into that minute and grotesque instrument of torture which all the historians of the reign have dwelt on in great detail. It is further to be observed that much of this money was raised unconstitutionally: the taxation imposed not with the silent or sulky acquiescence of the council, but in opposition to the protest of the barons. Archbishop Geoffrey of York, an unfortunate person to be chosen as a champion of law, provoked an attack on himself as early as 1200 by his opposition to the carucage,[1] and in 1207 the thirteenth was exacted although the clergy had absolutely refused to grant it,[2] and Geoffrey went into exile in consequence.[3] On these occasions although the clergy are put forward as the objectors, it is not on ecclesiastical grounds that they oppose: the taxes were no more popular with the baronage, but the bishops were personally safe from the ungovernable savagery of the king; being protected from corporal harm and having no children to seize as hostages, they could speak with comparative boldness, where a temporal baron would

System of fines.

Money raised in spite of refusal by the payers.

The clergy put forward as objectors.

---

[1] Hoveden, iv. 140.

[2] Ann. Waverley, p. 258.

[3] M. Paris, p. 221; Ann. Margam, p. 28; Ann. Wigorn. 395; Ann. Winton. 79; Ann. Waverl. 258, 259; Walt. Cov. ii. 198, 199. The northern primate was engaged in this his last struggle with his brother just at the same time that the negotiations on the interdict were going on; and the quarrel is much less known. On the 18th December 1207, the pope wrote to the bishops of Worcester, Ely, and Hereford to urge John to make amends to the archbishop for his extortions, under pain of interdict, Ep. x. 172; and on the 27th of May 1208, he wrote to the bishops of London and Rochester and the dean of Lincoln, telling the whole story; John had exacted a thirteenth from the religious and the clergy of the province of York, contrary to the liberty of the church: Geoffrey had left England to appeal to the pope, and John had immediately seized all his temporalities, although the pope had written six months before to the bishops of Ely, Worcester, and Hereford without result: the recipients are to admonish the king, and if that fails, after three months, to put the province under interdict, Ep. xi. 87. In 1210, May 6, the pope was still writing on the thirteenth to Geoffrey, Ep. xiii. 67.

have had to take his choice between civil war, imprisonment, and forfeiture.

John's meanness and tyranny more intolerable than his exactions.

What, however, was far more galling to a proud and not illiberal body of men like the barons, whom Henry had trained to government and Richard to perfect skill in warfare, was the fact that the money extorted and the service demanded from them was extorted and demanded on false pretences; whilst any attempt at remonstrance on their part was met by the exercise of irresponsible tyranny. The taxes were raised for the defence of the country and the recovery of his inheritance,[1] yet John made no real attempt to recover Normandy, and England was not yet assailed. The forces summoned to Portsmouth in 1201 were allowed to return home on a payment of money to the king;[2] in 1202 and 1203, having reached Normandy, they found the king indisposed to fight and left him in disgust, for which on his return he forced them to atone by the infliction of enormous fines.[3] In 1205 he assembled another great army and fleet at Portsmouth, and there made a feigned start for France. He sailed from Portsmouth and landed at Wareham; as soon as he returned to Portsmouth he dismissed his forces and took a pecuniary grant instead of service.[4] On this occasion the historians tell us that archbishop Hubert dissuaded the king from the expedition, and that the barons were offended and disgusted at the final resolution taken after the labour and expense had been incurred.[5] But if this were really done, we can only suppose that the archbishop made, as he had often done before, a sacrifice of his own dignity to save the character of the king,

His treatment of the barons when prepared for foreign service.

[1] "Ad recuperandam hæreditatem suam in Normannia et in aliis terris suis," Ann. Wav. 258. Of the thirteenth, W. Cov. ii. 198.

[2] Hoveden, iv. 163. Two marks on the knight's fee, M. Paris, 206.

[3] M. Paris, p. 209.

[4] M. Paris, 212; R. Coggeshall (ed. Dunkin), p. 227.

[5] R. Coggeshall, 228.

or, if his appeal were *bonâ fide*, that he in common with the baronage[1] mistrusted John's capacity and used his influence to prevent an unnecessary sacrifice. The barons too may well have been disinclined to follow John, and yet irritated by the facile way in which after all their exertions they were thrown over. But more than irritation at this moment they could not show, for they saw themselves in his power. Any sign of resistance he met by demanding their children as hostages.[2] So fortified against the men who would have been his surest defence, he filled his treasury with the spoils of his subjects, and letting go all that he had inherited of territory and honour, consoled himself with his money bags, his vicious indulgences, and his petty acts of spite and vengeance. And the mingled shame and malignity of this policy wrought its effects in the long run, although it was not until the great church struggle was over that the long endurance of evil united all parties against the tyrant.

John's measures for silencing opposition.

The beneficial provisions of the great charter were not confined to the clergy and the baronage. There was a third estate with distinct interests, and trained under the system of Henry II. for a distinct future of its own. The hardships of the commons were one set of grievances that called for remedy, and the co-operation of the commons was needed if a remedy were to

Grievances of the commons.

[1] The earl Marshall is mentioned as joining in the appeal of the archbishop, R. Coggeshall, 227: all the *optimates*, by the Annals of Margam, p. 28; Ann. Waverl. 256; M. Paris, 212; Wendover, iii. 182.

[2] In 1201 William of Albini saved his castle of Belvoir by giving his son as hostage, Hoveden, iv. 161. In 1208, when John demanded hostages, in fear of the pope's absolving the barons from their oaths of fealty, "alii filios, alii vero nepotes et carnaliter propinquos nunciis tradebant," Wendover, iii. 224, 225; M. Paris, 227. "Erant insuper hac tempestate multi nobiles in regno Angliæ, quorum rex uxores et filias illis murmurantibus oppresserat; alii quos indebitis exactionibus ad extremam inopiam perduxerat; nonnulli quorum parentes et carnales amicos exulaverat, eorum hæreditates in suos usus convertens; unde factum est ut idem rex tot fere habuit hostes quot habuit magnates." M. Paris, p. 232; Wendover, iii. 240.

Character of the grievances of the commons.

be possible. The people alienated by the sufferings which, in common with the clergy, they had endured under the interdict, and, in common with the baronage, during the abeyance of justice, were willing and able to assert their rights, and for the first time since the Conquest ranged themselves on the side of the barons against the king. The text of Magna Carta shows what their grievances were. As the king had treated the barons of the opposite party, he had allowed the barons of his own party to treat the people: what little support he had, he had purchased by allowing his favourites the full sway of feudal tyranny.[1] The royal exactions by which all alike suffered were reproduced in the baronial taxation by which the commons in particular suffered over and above the rest. Under one or the other of these two principles almost all the gravamina of the commons came, for the incidence of feudal hardships was uniform, and of course the accumulation pressed most heavily on the lowest rank. Hence the force and propriety of the clauses by which the barons insist that the king shall secure for their vassals as regards them the same liberties that they obtained for themselves.[2]

Altered attitude of the crown and commons.

It was not enough that the status of the commons should depend on the mere benevolence of the great feudatories, who might at any moment purchase from the crown the liberty of tyrannising: the barons of Runnymede guard the people against themselves as well as against the common tyrant. The provision which Henry I. forced on the nobles on behalf of the people[3] is

---

[1] It is to this that the 15th article of the charter refers, "Nos non "concedemus de cetero alicui quod "capiat auxilium," &c.

[2] Art. Baronum, 48; Magna Carta, art. 60. "Omnes autem istas consuetudines et libertates quas rex "concessit regno tenendas quantum "ad se pertinet erga suos, omnes "de regno tam clerici quam laici ob"servabunt quantum ad se pertinet "erga suos." Compare M. C. art. 15.

[3] M. Carta Henrici I., art. 2: "Similiter et homines baronum me"orum justa et legitima relevatione "relevabunt terras suas de dominis "suis." Art. 4: "Et præcipio quod "barones mei similiter se contineant

now forced by the nobles upon the king, in order to make it impossible for the future that class should be set against class.

Special provisions of the Great Charter in favour of the commons.

But besides these, a great number of the articles of the charter have a meaning only when viewed in relation to the rights of the commons. The provision for the city of London is made applicable to all the towns of the country;[1] the freeholders' interests are everywhere coupled with those of the knights and the barons;[2] the ancient courts of the nation in which the barons have little or no direct share are restored to full efficiency;[3] the stock in trade of the merchant, the land qualification of the freeholder, and the wainage of the villein, are preserved from over-amercement, as well as the settled estate of earldom or barony.[4] If the knight is freed from compulsory exaction of service, the freeholder is freed from compulsory cartage.[5] If it is to the freeholder of land chiefly that the boon is given, it must be remembered that it was in and through the holding of land that a man became obnoxious to the demands that are now restricted. The non-landholding free man was protected by his own status; he had nothing on which feudal tyranny could prey directly; nor could the feudal interest obtain for itself a remission of taxation which would not be directly applicable to all the population. Hence it is, no doubt, that there is so little notice of villeins in the charter; it was not that they had no spokesman, but that they were free from the more pressing grievances and benefited by every general provision. The provisions for equal justice are applicable to the commons as to the baronage; the relief from forest tyranny is a boon to all classes alike.[6] Clause for clause the rights of the freeholders are stated with the rights

---

"erga filios et filias vel uxores ho-
"minum suorum."

[1] Magna Carta, Art. 13.

[2] Articles 14 and 15.

[3] Art. 17, 18, 19, 24, 25, 38, 45.

[4] Articles 20, 21, 22, 23.

[5] Articles 29 and 30.

[6] Art. 44-48.

of the barons, and analogous remedies are provided wherever one rule seems inapplicable to both.

Amount of co-operation between the barons and the commons.

It may very naturally be asked, how came this accord to be effected; was there a treaty made by the barons with the commons previous to the drawing up of the articles by the barons to be presented to the king, or were the demands of the barons for the people the mere outcome of a political stratagem for isolating the public enemy? Read, I think, by the light of the preceding history, the circumstances scarcely allow of either supposition. No doubt when the assembly of the commons of the royal demesne met the bishops and barons under Geoffrey Fitz Peter at S. Alban's,[1] the three estates learned much of each other's desires; and we cannot question that when Langton at S. Paul's expounded to the clergy the great charter of Henry I.,[2] he pointed out the duty there enforced that they should do to their vassals as they would have the king do to them. But the accord lay deeper than this; in fact they could not have entered at all into each other's views if it had not been for the feeling that the English were now become one people, and that the benefits of institutions rapidly becoming spontaneous, instinctive, and free, were making that unity a fact too certain to be controverted, too prominent to be ignored. If we run through the list of the barons who took the leading part in resisting John and in drawing up the charter, we shall see that although it may contain the names of a few who were moved by personal feelings, or by the old leaven of feudal opposition, the great majority are men of English interests, sprung from the English patriots of 1173, the northern barons[3] who had saved

The Northern or constitutional party.

---

[1] M. Paris, 239.

[2] M. Paris, 240.

[3] "Barones Northumbriæ," R. Coggeshall, p. 246. "Contradixerunt ex Aquilonaribus nonnulli, "illi videlicet qui anno præterito "regem ne in Pictaviam transiret "impedierunt; dicentes se propter "terras quas in Anglia tenent non "debere regem extra regnum sequi

the country in that year, and who refused to follow John to Poictou in 1213. True John had united every sort of hostility against himself: there is Geoffrey de Mandeville, the son of Geoffrey Fitz Peter and husband of the king's divorced wife;[1] Giles de Braiose, bishop of Hereford, who had the cruel wrongs of his family to avenge; there is the earl of Clare, who from the beginning of the reign had maintained an attitude of suspicion; Bigod and Mowbray and Aumâle, the hereditary representatives of feudal insubordination;[2] but they are a small element by the side of the northern barons, who had never been ranged against the king before,[3] the loyal Lacies, the Percies, the Vescies, the Bohuns, the Stutevilles, the Veres, the Vauxes, and the Multons; the men who sprang from the chosen servants of Henry II. and his most valued ministers, whose descendants were the strength of that great Lancastrian party which maintained the spirit of freedom in the darkest days of the fourteenth century; the barons who invariably led and were followed by the commons.

Other elements of hostility to the king.

Magna Carta is then the first corporate act of the nation roused to the sense of its unity; the first act of the three estates discovering the true oneness of their interests and sinking their differences under the pressure

Importance of Magna Carta.

"nec ipsum euntem scutagio jn-
"vare," Walt. Cov. ii. 217. The canon of Barnwell, indeed, generally speaks of them as the northern party, ii. 219, 221; Transhumbrani, p. 222; the Annals of Dunstable call them Norenses, pp. 40, 43; "licet fuissent de diversis partibus "Angliæ tamen omnes fuerunt vo-
"cati Norenses," Lib. de Ant. Legg. p. 201.

[1] W. Covent. ii. 225; Ann. Dunst. 45. John it is said had made him marry her. She married after his death Hubert de Burgh.

[2] W. Covent. ii. 225.

[3] "Aquilonaribus supradictis et "pluribus aliis quos longum esset "enumerare," Walt. Cov. ii. 219; M. Paris, 254. The Vescies, the Stutevilles, the Vauxes, the Lacies, the lords of Kyme and Lanvalei, were of northern houses risen by the service of Henry II.: the Percies and the Bruces were northern barons less closely connected with official life. The list will bear the severest analysis.

Part taken by the commons in securing it; the barons acting as leaders.

of the common enemy. That the historians have recorded less of the action of the third estate is accounted for by the fact that at this period and from this period to the Reformation the baronage acts as advocate for it; and there is as yet no division between the town and country parties. But the barons could not have done what they did without the help of the people, and the king would not have been so helpless as he was, if he could, as William Rufus and Henry I. had done, have made himself strong in the support of the people against the barons. The effect of his fifteen years of misrule had been to undo all that had been done to strengthen the royal power since the reign of Henry I.; to undo the work of the twelfth century in England, as he had done in the continental territories of his house; and thus to set the nation at one with itself, in a way in which it had not since the Conquest realised its identity. The sentence of Runnymede reversed the sentence of Hastings.

The king and pope instinctively hostile to liberty on this occasion.

That John saw what he was doing it would be rash to affirm: it cannot be said that even Innocent III. fully realised the position of affairs;[1] but both showed an instinctive hostility to the claims of the nation which forms a clue to the later history. John attempted to divide his enemies before as well as after the concession. Now he would grant the liberties of the church if the clergy would detach themselves from the cause of the barons.[2] Now he would treat with the barons in the idea of escaping from their constitutional demands by purchasing their adhesion with the gift of feudal

---

[1] John's idea of the pope is thus interpreted by Matthew Paris: "Noverat autem et multiplici didi-"cerat experientia, quod papa "super omnes mortales ambitiosus "erat et superbus, pecuniæque siti-"tor insatiabilis et ad omnia scelera "pro præmiis datis vel promissis "cereus et proclivus," p. 245.

[2] On the 21st Nov. 1214, and again on Jan. 25, 1215. See Blackstone's remarks, *Charters*, Introduction, p. x.

privileges.[1] Now he would disarm all hostility by declaring himself a crusader, and involving all opponents in the excommunication resulting from his sacrosanctity.[2] But he failed in each plan, and the bloodless issue of the contest proves, if there were need of proof, the unity of the nation and the isolation of the king. Nor has he the credit of accepting the terms forced upon him with the intention of observing them. When he seals the charter he is demanding absolution from his undertaking,[3] and as soon as he has concluded the reconciliation he sets to work to destroy those whom from that moment he might have made friends. Nor do they trust him any more than he deserves. Already perhaps they saw that they had obtained in word more than they could secure in reality. The history of the century shows that it was so; the very men who had won the constitutional articles of the charter were, when the supreme power fell into their own hands, unable or unwilling to ratify them; and it was only after eighty years of striving that they became permanently a part of the law, in the hand of a king who knew how to keep faith, and who saw in a clearer light and with a juster precision the truth of the national unity. The unity which the barons at Runnymede had realised as against the king, Edward, not without a struggle, but, when the struggle was over, with a firm faith and righteous purpose, crowned by the adhesion of royalty itself.

John tries to temporize and fails.

The benefits of the charter only partially secured at first.

Edward the First really secures liberty.

The popes now had the choice between the people and the king, and threw in their lot with the latter in a way that affects the history of England to the present

Conduct of the papacy.

---

[1] See his letter of May 10, 1215, Fœd. i. 128.

[2] March 4, 1215, Ann. Theokesb. p. 61; W. Cov. ii. 219. "Sinistre "hoc interpretabantur alii, dicentes "eum non intuitu pietatis aut amore "Christi hoc fecisse, sed ut eos a "proposito fraudaret."

[3] "Dum hæc agerentur," Ann. Dunstapl. p. 43; and see at greater length the statement of the canon of Barnwell; W. Cov. ii. 222.

Important result of the pope's adoption of John's cause.

moment. Had they chosen to support the barons against the crown, the complications of the reign of Henry III. would have been avoided, but then Henry III. would never have reigned, and England might, after all her early glories and later discipline, have shared the fate of France. Thus much the papal alliance did for John; it saved the throne for his son, and saved the son's throne in the evil days in which the constitutional struggle was renewed. But when Edward I. found himself in the position in which he chose to conquer by yielding, he cast to the winds the compact in which his father and grandfather had sought their strength. The papal alliance had maintained the Plantagenet hold on England, but it had almost destroyed its hold on the English. Edward, too, had to choose between the continuance of his vassalage and his glorious status as a national king. Unlike John he chose the latter, to the enormous increase of his own power in church and state, and to that adjustment of the relations between the papacy and England, which continued to the Reformation, and which, read politically, without reference to the spiritual questions, continue in the direction of their course to the present day. The statutes of Præmunire and Provisors, the principle of which was, politically speaking, the germ of the Reformation, followed naturally from the determination of 1297. The Bull *Clericis laicos* stands to the Confirmation of Charters in the same relation as the submission of Dover stands to the Great Charter itself. The first dissolved the concordat which was established by Pandulf, the second crowned the work that was made feasible at Runnymede.

Importance of the action of Edward I. in this view.

Innocent III. would scarcely have acted as his successors did.

Innocent III. had no successor even second to himself. He would not like Honorius III. have attempted the ignoble policy of supporting the foreign malcontents against the patriot ministers of Henry III. He would not have descended to the sordid contrivances, or allowed

himself to be forced into the self-defeating arbitrary impotence of Gregory IX. He would not have broken the heart and spirit of S. Edmund, or connived at the faithless tyranny of Henry III., or the cruelties of Charles of Anjou. Nor would he, like Boniface VIII., have precipitated a crisis that threw the papacy into exile, and opened the way to the general disruption of the Western Church at the Reformation. But he would not have been able in all probability to alter the result, or to thwart the policy of tradition. The high Hildebrandine policy would have sought realisation by nobler but not more effective devices, and with regard to England, only a king like Edward I. was required to undo what John had done, as well as to complete what he and Innocent together had failed to prevent.

But he would have been obliged to yield to circumstances.

For John even in the abject humiliation of his end we have no word of pity as we have had none of sympathy. He has deserved none. He has no policy of either aggression or defence. We do not credit him with a deliberate design on the rights of his people, simply because he never showed the consciousness of any rights they had, but took his own evil way in contempt of law, and in a wilful ignoring of dangers he dared not face. He made no plans and grasped at no opportunities. He was persistent only in petty spite and greedy of easy vengeance. He staked everything on the object of the moment and made no effort to avert his ruin until it was consummated. He looked neither before him nor behind him, drew as little from experience as he sacrificed to expediency, or as he utilised the present for the ends of the future. He had not sufficient regard for virtue to make him play the hypocrite, and lost even the little defence that such a cloak gives to kings. He had neither energy, capacity, nor honesty; he availed himself neither of the help of those who had common interests, nor of the errors of those whom he regarded as his enemies. He met honest service with contempt, and the best advice

John deserves no commiseration.

Selfishness and isolation of John.

with the treatment due to dangerous conspiracy. He is an exception to the class of men who are well hated only in this that none even pretended to love him. And as he is without wisdom for himself, he has no care for his people; on them, the weaker and more innocent the better, he wreaks the vengeance, the savage vengeance, that the stronger and less innocent have provoked,[1] as if burning villages and slaying peasants was an enjoyment to be set against defeat in council and disgrace in the field. And now the heart that was obdurate against the sufferings of the people, that had been unmoved by the cries of the tortured as it was inexorable to the prayers of friendship, virtue and sorrow, is broken by the loss of his treasure.[2] And he who had defied God by word and deed all his life, sought shelter from the terrors with which superstition, not conscience, had inspired him, by being buried in the habit of a monk; a posthumous tribute to religion, which he had believed only to outrage.[3]

Reticence of contemporary writers.

I have already remarked that Ralph of Coggeshall in his annals of John's reign very seldom ventures on a criticism of the king's character, although he speaks without any reserve of his acts. The same is true of Roger of Wendover, although he preserves the most severe accusations against him, and records some of his most outrageous actions, and true also of the work of the

[1] This is a marked feature in John's proceedings both in his French wars and in the cruel measures he adopted in the last year of his reign: for example he burnt Tours most wantonly in 1202, R. Coggeshall, p. 211; and le Mans the same year: compare his treatment of Rochester in 1215, R. Coggeshall, p. 252; and the work of his mercenaries in the fens, p. 254; his ravaging of Axholm in 1216 (Walt. Cov. ii. p. 231), and of Lincolnshire generally: after setting up the dragon standard at Winchester, he fled before Lewis, and set the city on fire in four places, R. Coggesh. 258. Instead of relieving Rochester, "perambulabat terram "et incendiis ac rapinis quæcunque "potuit consumpsit," *ib.* p. 259.

[2] "Quia res ei minime cesserant "ad votum," Ann. Wav. 286; cf. M. Paris, p. 287.

[3] It was Merlin's prophecy: "inter "sanctos collocabitur," Wikes, 59.

canon of Barnwell. It is to Matthew Paris the historian, the traveller, the politician, of half a century later, that we owe the commentary, so to speak, on the events of the drama, the sequence of whose causes and effects is dispassionately drawn out by the three contemporaries. And in order to estimate the temper of mind and careful veracity of their narration it is necessary to have a definite idea of the value of Matthew Paris's work. Into this, a subject which involves many points of literary and historical controversy, on some of which new light cannot but be cast through the searching examination which the *Historia Major* is now undergoing, it would be highly presumptuous in me to attempt to go in detail. It is clear, on even a superficial reading, that Matthew Paris was a much more enthusiastic politician than any English historian who had preceded him; that he was much more outspoken, much freer in criticism of men and actions, and much less scrupulous in interpreting the course of events by his own impressions. And such characteristics in a writer of history naturally make the careful reader cautious and critical in his acceptance of even the mere string of facts so presented to him. Matthew Paris writes, with a strong bias against both king and pope; I had nearly written, against kings and popes; for his remarks on the class are little less severe than his censures of the individual. He writes moreover with a strong feeling against the foreign favourites whose misdoings and ever-recurring influence for evil had been such a feature of English history during all his life. To him the extortions of John are monstrous oppressions, and the submission to Innocent a degrading humiliation. The king's advisers are in themselves unscrupulous and tyrannical, but in contrast with John himself, whose despotism they attempted to soften, patriotic ministers, and the columns of the falling state. John's personal vices are spoken of, not in the euphemistic terms of the schools as luxury and excess, but in the plain language

Open speaking of Matthew Paris.

His strong political feelings.

of the everyday life of homely men. It is far otherwise with the earlier writers.

Credibility of Matthew Paris.

Without wishing to dogmatize I may be allowed to say that I am perfectly satisfied of both the good faith and the credibility of Matthew Paris's history. He is not the interpolator, as he has been sometimes called, of Roger of Wendover, but his interpreter. He lived long enough after the events that he narrates to be able to take a comprehensive view of their bearings, and he lived from day to day in an atmosphere almost created by their consequences. He lived long enough after them to see men's mouths opened, and names and dates given to events which, whilst the actors and sufferers lived, were only matters of dark suspicion. He lived into a period in which England had tasted the sweetness of independence, of the liberty whose consummation she had yet to struggle for, and he reflected accordingly with more shame on the bondage she was escaping from, chafing the more violently under the remaining chains that hung upon her. The forty years which had elapsed since the submission of Dover and the sealing of the charter had been years of bitter salutary discipline, and they had educated the men who were afterwards to give a tone to English institutions in church and state. The sufferings of S. Edmund had helped to nerve the spirit of Grosteste, and the teaching as well as the antagonism of Simon de Montfort were giving form and consistency to the youthful aspirations of Edward the First. Matthew Paris wrote the Annals of John whilst he breathed the air of the Provisions of Oxford. He recorded the petty intermeddlings and mercenary tergiversations of the court of Innocent III. and Honorius III., for the reading of men who had drained the dregs of royal and papal tyranny united under Henry III. and Innocent IV. and Alexander IV., men who, as S. Edmund had termed it, had barely escaped the grinding of the upper and nether millstone.

Atmosphere of his times.

But with all due allowances made for the bracing of the hand and the clearing of the eye of the historian in the higher air into which Englishmen were rising, I fail to see any sign of exaggeration or misrepresentation in Matthew Paris's narrative. He is anti-royalist and anti-papalist without the slightest inclination to be a republican or a schismatic. The king is the head of the suffering people, the pope the prime minister of the afflicted church; he, as an Englishman and a Catholic, suffers and is afflicted, groans in the humiliation, waxes indignant at the shame inflicted on what he loves so well. Sometimes he falls back into the position of the cynic for very bitterness of spirit. But there is nothing in this to make him exaggerate what he would have been thankful to find less shameful than it seemed, or to misrepresent that of which the reality was intolerable. As to matters of fact in which he has enlarged upon or interpreted the language of his predecessors, there is nothing which fuller knowledge of secret history, or the lapse of time unsealing men's lips, or the experience of the real meaning of public events in the endurance of their results, will not account for.

He does not exaggerate.

Will not this explain the tone and spirit of the preceding writers? They read the events that went on before their eyes in the light of past history. Up to the reign of John the influence of the papacy had been on the whole exerted for the good of England: at all events it had curbed the spirit of her kings and taught them that there was one form of liberty which could not be trodden out, which could not be trampled on with impunity. To them, to the barons of the time, to John himself, it might not seem a very shameful thing to accept the suzerainty of the vicar of Christ,[1]

The earlier writers were guided by the light of the past, but great changes had already taken place.

[1] Yet there were some to whom it did seem so, as our author himself states, although the unprecedented power of the popedom in the person of Innocent seemed to him to take away the shame of it. W. Cov. ii. 210.

They could not anticipate the events of the next reign.

at all events as an alternative to revolution and foreign conquest. The pope was overlord of Sicily and Naples; he had given Ireland to Henry II.; he claimed to bestow the full investiture of the empire itself, to whose patronage Richard I. had consented to commend even England. They could not see that within a few years England would be taxed like an Italian demesne, that English influence would be used to further schemes of aggression in continental politics most opposed to the wishes of Englishmen, the thwarting of the crusade, and the humiliation of the empire; or that the very revenues of England would be mortgaged without the leave of her parliament, to pay a debt to the pope incurred in obedience to the arbitrary orders of the creditor. And they may be fairly excused for incompetency to anticipate the portentous strides of Italian assumption.

They are justified in not trusting too much to the barons.

Nor on the other hand is much fault to be found with the reserved or neutral attitude which they take up with regard to the baronial party in the struggle which reaches from 1213 to 1215. Just as the past taught them to trust the papacy, it taught them to distrust the feudatories. Never yet, as we have seen, had the barons been found on the side of peace or law in their struggles with the king. The people, the free towns, the church, even the monastic bodies, in all constitutional quarrels had been on the king's side. Nor was the balance of good and evil by any means so even, in the view of the characters of the actors. Not all the barons were of the mind of Langton; not all the king's party were like Fawkes de Breauté or Savaric de Mauleon. The great earl Marshall himself was on the king's side. It might fairly be questioned whether the triumph of the nobles would not have been a return to the feudal anarchy of Stephen's reign. The old idea of feudal government in which every baron could judge his vassals, fortify his castle, coin his money, hang his enemies, talliage his demesnes, at his

will, was not extinct even in England, and on the continent it flourished in all its baneful splendour, all its logical completeness. The right of private war had become, by the very means taken to check it, the privilege of every German vassal: in France the royal judicatures were but beginning to accroach to themselves the supreme or appellate jurisdiction, the want of which made that kingdom practically lawless. Every foreigner, and how many men were there still among the barons like Aumâle, Vescy, and Fitz Walter, who were foreigners in connexion and ideas, was a feudalist. The king was a bad man, indolent, luxurious, extravagant, extortionate, faithless, unbelieving; but he was one tyrant: these were or might be many. His life was worth no more than the life of any common man, but their system was or might be eternal. The absolute ignorance of the charter of Henry I. which seems to have prevailed among the barons is surprising, and its production by Langton seems scarcely less of a historical wonder[1] than the re-discovery of the Books of the Law under Josiah. But the principles which that charter embodied had been growing with the growth of the people for a century, and the inhabitants of the monasteries at least were unprepared for a state of things which placed the barons on the side of true liberty. When Matthew Paris wrote, all this had been cleared up, and the three estates were rapidly uniting in support of national independence and free institutions.

The earlier history of the barons did not lead them to do so.

Matters which were uncertain under John were cleared up before Matthew Paris wrote.

In both these respects the three writers to whom I refer, Roger of Wendover, Ralph of Coggeshall, and the nameless canon of Barnwell, have much in common. The Cistercian has of course in view the special wrongs

The contemporary writers have much in common.

[1] Our author well characterizes the sensation created by its production. "Ex quo autem primo vulgata "est carta hæc, assertoribus ejus "omnium conciliati sunt animi, et "erat vox hæc omnium et sententia "una quod isti opponerent se mu- "rum pro domo Domini et starent "pro libertate ecclesiæ et regni," ii. 218. See II. Chron. c. 34.

Comparison of the contemporary annalists.

and sufferings of the Cistercians; the Benedictine holds the balance with a sterner and more condemning impartiality; the Austin canon is perhaps, most of the three, inclined to the side of John.[1] Though none of them palliate the iniquities of the king, none of them distinctly assert any sympathy with the barons. Cause and consequence they detail conscientiously, with more or less of real insight, as the case may be, but not one seems to have much intelligence as to the real tendency of the events he narrates. And this, whilst it derogates somewhat from their interest, does set the seal of honesty and faithfulness on their narrative. The history of the thirteenth century, in this as in many other respects, will be found one of the most remunerative of all historical studies to the careful student.

Special notes of the Barnwell annals.

Further than this the work of the Barnwell canon seems to call for little criticism. The death of Arthur is regarded as the cause of the misfortunes of John,[2] but the loss of Normandy is represented as an inevitable necessity; John was deserted by his friends, and defence was impossible.[3] The appointment of Langton is reviewed without comment, but the statement of Matthew Paris that the king had undertaken to ratify the election made by the monks at Rome is strongly and simply confirmed.[4] The sufferings of the expelled monks of Canterbury are pitied, but are ascribed to the sins of the nation quite as much as to the violence of the king.[5]

---

[1] So at least we may gather from his character of him, "princeps "quidem magnus, sed minus felix, "et cum Mario fortunam utramque "expertus: munificus et liberalis "in exteros sed suorum depræda- "tor; plus in alienis quam in suis "confidens, unde et a suis ante "finem derelictus est; et in fine "modicum luctus." W. Cov. ii. 232.

[2] W. Cov. ii. 196; "non absque "vindicta Dei, Qui frangit omne "superbum."

[3] W. Cov. ii. 197: "Johannes "quippe, a suis destitutus, Norman- "nia recesserat, malens ad horam "cum quodam dispendio et nominis "et rerum cedere, quam se cum "suis omnibus exterminio tradere."

[4] W. Cov. ii. 198. Above, p. lii.

[5] W. Cov. ii. 199: "minas eis in- "tentat terribiles," but "peccatis "nostris exigentibus."

The exactions and excommunication of John, stated calmly as matters of fact in 1208 and 1209, in 1210 are commented on chiefly as parts of the general unhappiness of Christendom. In 1211 John's successes in Ireland, Scotland, and Wales are dwelt upon as greater than those of any of his fathers, but they are compensated for by the loss of his foreign estates and his own excommunication.[1] In 1212 our author has a pregnant sentence on Scottish history, which shows that he read past history at least with penetration;[2] the same year he mentions to John's credit the amelioration in the execution of the forest laws, which no other writer has I think so prominently referred to; and notices some other administrative acts that showed a desire to propitiate the people.[3] After this year the narration becomes more spirited; the canon writes throughout as an Englishman, and regards John as justified[4] in the means he took to avoid conquest, although, he adds, "there were some to whom it appeared ignominious and an enormous yoke of slavery." But although the submission might be a necessity, the yoke of the legates was galling. Nicolas distributed the patronage of the church unfairly,[5] and allowed too much influence to the king, but his presence was useful in preventing an outbreak among the barons as long as he remained in England.[6] The quarrel of 1215 the two parties are about equally responsible for, but the blame of the miseries which followed the outbreak of war seems rather to fall on the barons. The singular spectacle of an English king maintained by foreign mercenaries, and a French invasion contrived and supported by English politicians, keeps the writer's judgment in suspense. His sympathies are against Lewis, but John dies without a word of pity. After John's death, as the air begins to clear, the historian's view is more

John is occasionally commended.

General tone of the Barnwell annals, patriotic.

[1] W. Covent. ii. 203.
[2] W. Cov. ii. 206.
[3] W. Cov. ii. 207.
[4] More than justified; "inspiratus ab Eo, in Cujus manu corda sunt regum," ii. 210.
[5] W. Cov. ii. 216.
[6] W. Cov. ii. 218.

Calm judgment of the Barnwell scribe.

perspicuous. He condemns the French invaders, and the impolicy and avarice of the legates; he has no sympathy with the timeserving among the barons, nor does he give even to the patriotic party more credit than they seem from time to time to deserve. Fawkes de Breauté's career is described with marked severity, but his own statement of his case is given at full length. The history closes, noticeably, with an account of those papal claims of the year 1225, which would, if the writer had lived to see the issue of them, probably have opened his eyes to the iniquity of much that he had so far tolerated as at least not loudly to condemn.

In so short a chapter of history, for the real interest lies only in the eventful years 1212 to 1216, it can scarcely be expected that much variety of view can be found. I have fully stated my own opinion of the value of this work as a connected narrative, fairly and moderately written. It would be to demand too much were we to expect an insight or power of interpretation which the next fifty years did so much to create and illuminate.

This volume completes a series.

The present volumes may be regarded as the completion of a series of which the chronicle ascribed to abbot Benedict of Peterborough, and the chronicle of Roger of Hoveden, were the earlier portions. As eight years have now elapsed since I began to work on the first of the set, it may be allowable and indeed advisable to put on record here the most important facts that reflexion and criticism during that period have brought to light with respect to the formation and history of these works, in addition to what has been already stated in the several prefaces.

Note on the "Gesta" of Benedict.

And first, with respect to the so-called Chronicle of Benedict. No new manuscript of the second portion of this chronicle, that, namely, which extends from the year 1177 to the year 1191, has come to light, and the text and its connexion with the earlier part, 1170–1177, still rest on the authority of the mutilated Cottonian MS.

Vitellius E. xvii. Of the earlier portion the text given in the present work as part of the Memoriale of Walter of Coventry may be regarded as a new recension; but a much better text is found in the MSS. Magdalen Coll. xxxvi., and Cotton Vitellius E. xiii., which contain the whole compilation which Walter of Coventry abridged. These, however, do not furnish us with any improvements on the text already printed from the MS. Julius A. xi., which is, no doubt, a very early copy of the original MS. of the work. The interesting fact, mentioned in the preface to the first volume of the Memoriale, that the MS. of the Gesta Henrici II. (the portion of Benedict's Chronicle which extends from 1170 to 1177), was in the possession of the monks of Crowland at the time of Edward the First's search for historical MSS., may as well be repeated here.[1] Whether that MS. was the identical volume, now the MS. Julius A. xi., or a careful copy of it, can scarcely now be determined; it is, however, clear that it was a copy of the earlier work only, and did not contain the continuation to 1191.

No new light on the authorship of the "Gesta."

No light has been thrown on the most interesting question connected with this book, whether the continuation did or did not proceed from the same hand as the earlier portion.[2] Nor can I say that my own opinion has been altered by the many journeys I have taken over the same ground. I am still of opinion that the whole is the work of one hand; but an opinion is not a conviction. Nothing has occurred either to shake or to strengthen the opinion; and until further materials turn up, which is now scarcely to be hoped for, the matter must remain undecided.

Note on Roger of Hoveden.

With respect to the chronicle of Roger of Hoveden, some interesting particulars have been ascertained which throw new light on the author and on the work.

I have stated in the preface to the first volume of Roger's chronicle, that in my opinion, after the accession

[1] W. Cov. i. pref. p. xliii.

[2] Ben. Pet. i. pref. p. l.

Roger was parson of Howden.

of Richard I., when he ceased to attend the court as clerk or chaplain to the king, "it is not improbable "that Howden was the place of his retirement, and "that there, either as parson of the church or as a "proprietor on his own estate, he lived whilst he drew "up the latter portion of the chronicle before us."[1] In the earlier part of the preface I had stated with complete confidence the connexion of Roger with the church of Durham, which is indeed too obvious to escape the most superficial examination. Since the publication of the fourth volume my friend Mr. Raine has placed in my hands a document discovered in the registry of the cathedral church of Durham, which turns my conjecture into a certainty, and both proves that Roger was the parson of the church of Howden, and shows distinctly one point in which his connexion with Durham consisted. As this document has great interest of its own I shall give it here in extenso, although it may very probably see the light soon in another collection. It is from the Cartulary of the Prior and Convent, III., pt. ii., ff. 10–11.

Illustrative document.

"Hugo Dei gratia Dunelmensis episcopus priori et "archidiaconis, et omnibus clericis et laicis totius "episcopatus sui, Francis et Anglis, salutem. Sciatis "nos reddidisse et concessisse et hac præsenti carta "confirmasse Rogero de Hoveden et ecclesiæ Sancti "Petri de Hoveden in perpetuum omnes decimas et "obventiones, tam in frugibus quam in aliis rebus de "quibus decimæ dari debent, de sartis, paludibus et "mariscis, quocunque modo pervenerint, et de omnibus "terris quæ modo cultæ sunt vel in posterum colentur "infra terminos parochiæ ecclesiæ de Hoveden a "quocunque cultæ fuerint. Et quia decimas de terris, "quas de paludibus et frutectis et marescis arabiles "fecimus, Hospitali Sancti Egidii de Dunelmo dede-

[1] Hoveden, i. pref. p. xxii.

" ramus, et cartis domini papæ et domini regis con- Charter illustrating the personal history of Roger of Hoveden.
" firmari feceramus, assensu et concessione Adæ de
" Karrum, qui tunc temporis procurator erat ejusdem
" Hospitalis, prædictam donationem revocamus, et car-
" tam nostram quam prædicto Hospitali de supradictis
" decimis dederamus, in præsentia nostra et multorum
" aliorum frangi fecimus, cartis domini papæ et domini
" regis quantum ad illas decimas adversus ecclesiam de
" Hoveden nullum unquam robur habentibus vel habi-
" turis. Nos autem indempnitati ecclesiæ de Hoveden
" in posterum præcaventes, sæpedicto Hospitali Sancti
" Egidii de nostro satisfecimus; et ne aliquo tempore
" quicquam sibi de decimis infra parochiam ecclesiæ
" de Hoveden vindicare possit, dampnum quod de re-
" vocatione decimarum illarum sustinuit ei recompen-
" savimus. Volumus etiam quod ecclesia de Hoveden
" omnes rectitudines et decimationes tam de terris
" illis quæ tempore illo quo hanc cartam fecimus
" cultæ fuerunt, quam de illis quæ in posterum erunt
" colendæ, et de omnibus aliis rebus infra parochiam
" suam de quibus decimæ dari debent, sicut de ceteris
" terris cultis dari solent, libere et sine ulla diminu-
" tione percipiat. Et quicunque hanc nostræ confir-
" mationis paginam infirmare vel infringere temptaverit,
" indignationem Dei omnipotentis et beatorum Petri
" et Pauli apostolorum et beati Cuthberti et nostram
" se noverit incursurum."

In this curious charter we find the great bishop characteristically declaring the letters of king and pope to have no validity when his own had been formally cancelled; and in like manner threatening the infringers of the present document with his own indignation as well as with that of the apostles and S. Cuthbert, and even the Divine vengeance. But it is even more interesting to note that the restoration of the tithe of Howden to the use of its own parish church is made to the parson and doubtless in consequence of the influence of the

Importance of this document.

Other charters connected with it.

great chronicler. The hospital of S. Giles known as the Kepier Hospital had been founded by Ranulf Flambard, burnt in the reign of Stephen, and restored by Hugh de Puiset.[1] In the sixth volume of the Monasticon we have three charters of bishop Hugh in favour of it. In the first of these he grants "quandam partem de peterio nostro de Neutone per illas divisas quibus Willelmus de Howedene et Philippus Forestarius eis seisivit ex parte nostra." The second is probably the grant cancelled in the document given above, as it grants to the hospital the tithes "de omnibus novalibus nostris" in the province of York, in the diocese of Durham, and in the parish of Howden.[2] The third grants other lands and tithes and may be the compensation for the cancelled one.[3] The first charter gives us one more link between William[4] and Roger of Hoveden; and the comparison of the three furnishes an illustration of the importance which the tithes of the parish of Howden would have in the eyes of the parson;[5] and of the influence which Roger must have had with his bishop when he procured the revocation of an endowment made to an establishment which stood so high in his patron's favour. For

[1] Mon. Angl. vi. 732. Surtees, Hist. of Durham, vol. iv. pt. 2, pp. 61–64. Adam was the first warden of the hospital. Is it possible that William de Howedene was father rather than brother of Roger? Bishop Hugh, a married man himself, might well have a married chaplain, and it would account for Roger bearing the surname as well as holding the church of Howden.

[2] Mon. Angl. vi. 732.

[3] Mon. Angl. vi. 733.

[4] Hoveden, i. pref. p. xiv.

[5] The point illustrated by the introduction into the body of the chronicle of the document touching the synodals payable by the churches subject to Durham, in the diocese of York, to the archbishop, Howden being one of them. I may add with reference to this document that the Alverton mentioned in it, in connexion with Hexham, is not Northallerton, as I supposed, in the General Index, vol. iv. p. 367, but Alwenton, near Hexham. See *Memorials of Hexham*, ed. Raine, vol. ii. pref. p. viii. The claims of the see of York on Howden, although not elsewhere mentioned by Hoveden, are noticed in the Chronicle of Benedict, ii. 226.

the other grants to the hospital show not only the munificence of Hugh de Puiset, but the real importance and wealth of the foundation which he had restored. Unfortunately the document is not dated and cannot be made to throw light on the chronology of Hoveden's life. Mr. Raine has informed me, however, that in another document in the same registry, the death of Roger is spoken of as having occurred during the pontificate of Archbishop Geoffrey, that is, before 1212.

Note on a MS. of the *Historia post Bedam.*

Another point of interest is this: one of the MSS. of the compilation which was used by Hoveden for the basis of his own work, and which I have called the "Historia post Bedam," is the volume now preserved in the library of S. John's College, Oxford, as No. 97. It was collated for the Rolls edition under the signature "b;" and in describing it, I stated that an inscription on the first folio entitled it "Cronica regum Northan-" hymbrorum, de communi *libro* monachorum Dunel-" mensium." On looking at it again I find that the wood is not *libro*, but *libr*° an abbreviation for *librario*; and that the note should be read "K. Cronica regum " Northanhymbrorum e communi librario monachorum " Dunelmensium," being meant to signify that the volume belonged to the monastic library. On reference to the ancient Catalogue of the Library of the monks of Durham, drawn up in 1395 and printed by Dr. Raine for the Surtees Society, I found at p. 56 of the volume the following entry, under the head of "Libris Historiarum;" "K.,[1] Cronica Regum Northumbriæ, seu regum Angliæ; II°. fo. — cione sua." The latter words signify that the second folio of the MS. begins with the syllables "cione sua." Immediately I looked at the S. John's MS. and found that it exactly answers this description, and it is thus shown to be identical

[1] This book mark is still legible in the S. John's MS.

Note on the S. John's MS. 97.

with the Durham MS.[1] This MS. was written not much later than the middle of the twelfth century, and it is possible that it passed through the hands of Hoveden himself. How the MS. came to S. John's College is not known, but not improbably it may have been one of the books which from time to time were transmitted from the mother monastery at Durham to Oxford for the use of her students in Durham College. The index described as drawn up in 1532 by T. Swalwell was probably the work of the monk of that name, whose devotion to the rood and altar in the porch over the entry of the north aisle of the choir is described by the writer of the Rites of Durham.[2]

The history of the MSS. of Roger of Hoveden is I think so clear that it is scarcely to be expected that more light will be thrown upon it: more MSS. may very probably be forthcoming, but it seems almost certain that in the Cottonian and Laudian MSS. we have the original work as it left the study of its compiler. Neither have I anything to add to the account already given of the Memoriale of Walter of Coventry.[3]

---

[1] I do not remember ever to have seen it noted that the earliest catalogue of the Durham Library, drawn up before 1195, contains several notices of volumes which could be none other than MSS. of the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles; at p. 5, among the *Libri Anglici*, are "Historia Anglorum, Anglice;" which may stand for Bede in Alfred's version; but "*Cronica duo Anglica*," are surely the venerable chronicle itself, and not to be identified with any known MSS.

[2] Rites of Durham (ed. Surtees Soc.), p. 16.

[3] I may as well correct here a mistake made in the correction of the Anglo-Saxon chronology in the preface to the first volume of Hoveden. I have ascribed to Kinewulf of Wessex a reign of 33 years. It should be 31, and the calculations referring to it should be corrected accordingly. The authorities give various years, but none of them 33, as I seem to have supposed. The last sentence but two on p. xcix should be erased altogether. I may add that my suggestion on that page, that the now unquestioned error of two years in the computation of the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles, in most years between the death of Bede and the birth of Alfred, originated in a miscalculation of the regnal years of Ethelwulf, was only intended as a conjecture; and that

I have not thought it necessary to add a geographical index or glossary to this edition. So little of the text contains original matter that it seems better to refer the reader at once to the glossaries appended to the Chronicles of Benedict and Roger of Hoveden for the obscure forms or names of places which are common to them. In the portion taken from the Barnwell book, such few local names as occur either speak for themselves, or will be found explained in the marginal abstract. The general index is drawn up on the same plan as that of Roger of Hoveden's chronicle, the personal references being placed under the head of the chief official title in the case of earls, bishops, and barons, and in other cases under that of the best known name borne by the person in question.

Oxford,
Dec. 27, 1872.

I do not wish it to be regarded as a deliberate attempt to explain the difficulty. There are charters in which Ethelwulf is called king much earlier than 835; and although it is possible that the computation was dislocated by some such accident as I have suggested, it is quite as likely that the cause may have been quite different. Those who are curious in the exact chronology of the period I would refer to my notes in the third volume of the Councils and Ecclesiastical Documents (Oxford, 1871).

MEMORIALE FRATRIS WALTERI DE COVENTRIA.

MEMORIALE FRATRIS WALTERI DE COVENTRIA.

PARS SECUNDA.

ANNALES ANGLIÆ.

De consecratione et de adventu Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi in Angliam.

Hoveden, iii. 138.

Eodem anno, paulo post supradictam pacem inter cancellarium et comitem factam, Eboracensis electus consecratus est a Willelmo Turonensi archiepiscopo per mandatum Cœlestini summi pontificis; qui statim post consecrationem suam, immemor sacramenti quod fecerat domino regi fratri suo, scilicet quod non rediret in Angliam antequam tres anni fuissent elapsi postquam rex Angliæ ab Anglia recesserat, in Angliam venire festinavit. A.D. 1191. September. Geoffrey of York, after his consecration, returns to England.

Cumque ipse venisset ad Wysant in Flandria ad transfretandum in Angliam, prohibitum est ei ex parte cancellarii, ne in Angliam, contra sacramentum quod ipse regi fecerat, venire præsumeret: sed Eboracensis archiepiscopus a proposito suo propter mandatum illud desistere noluit. Unde idem cancellarius præcepit illum comprehendi, si in Angliam venisset. He is forbidden by the chancellor to land; but persists.

Archiepiscopus itaque Eboracensis venit in Angliam, et applicuit apud Doroverniam mense Septembris, et servientes cancellarii stabant in littore, ut eum comprehenderent. Sed ille inde præmunitus, antequam de navi exiret, mutavit vestes suas, et equo ascenso in cujus velocitate confidebat, ad monachorum cœnobium ejusdem villæ confugit. Et erat quasi hora He lands at Dover in September, and flies to the monastery of St. Martin.

A.D. 1191. September. He enters the church during mass.

diei sexta, et monachi missam inchoaverant; et cum legeretur epistola, et perventum esset ad locum ubi per Beatum Apostolum dicitur, "Qui conturbat vos, portabit judicium, quicunque est ille;" et alibi in eadem epistola, "Utinam "abscidantur qui vos conturbant," intravit archiepiscopus Eboracensis ecclesiam, confidens in Domino, et pro munere gratum habuit prænosticum illud, referens illud ad perpetuam beatitudinis suæ quietem, et ad cancellarii venturam confusionem. Ministri autem cancellarii, quos ipse misit comprehendere eum, obsederunt ecclesiam per circuitum, ita quod ille exire non potuit, nisi per manus illorum. Hoveden, iii. 138. Gal. v. 10, 12.

He is arrested by the officers of the chancellor.

Quadam vero die, post celebrationem missæ, dum adhuc idem archiepiscopus indutus vestimentis sacerdotalibus staret ad altare, funesti satellites illi intraverunt ecclesiam, et manus violentas injecerunt in illum, et extraxerunt[1] illum extra ecclesiam; et sic extractum, immo distractum, viliter et ignominiose duxerunt per lutum platearum et per vicos; populus autem stabat clamans post illos, "O ignavi, quare ita ducitis "illum? quid mali fecit? Archiepiscopus est, et regis filius, "regisque frater." Sed illi, non exaudientes vocem populi, duxerunt eum in castellum Doroverniæ, et tradiderunt eum Mathæo de Clere constabulario custodiendum. Hoveden, iii. 139.

John insists on his release.

Quod cum comiti Johanni fratri ejusdem archiepiscopi nunciatum esset, quæsivit a cancellario si per eum hæc facta fuissent; et confessus est, et non negavit: et præcepit comes ut liberaretur archiepiscopus, et liberatus est.

October. He complains to the barons against the chancellor.

Et cum Londonias venisset, conquestus est Johanni comiti, et episcopis, et aliis magnatibus regni, de injuria a cancellario et suis illata. Et præcepit comes ut cancellarius juri staret in curia regis super injuria illa quam archiepiscopo Eboracensi fratri suo fecerat, et Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo. Quod cum ipse cancellarius facere de die in diem distulit, comes Johannes, archiepiscopus Rotomagensis, episcopi, et principes regni, statuerunt illi diem peremptorium apud Radingges. Ad diem autem illum venerunt illuc comes Meretonii, et fere omnes episcopi et comites et barones regni. Et post diem peremptorium moram fecerunt ibi exspectantes adventum cancellarii; sed ipse venire noluit, nec nuncium mittere.

They summon the chancellor to Reading, but he does not come.

Both parties hasten to London.

Deinde comes Johannes, et episcopi qui cum eo erant, paraverunt se Londonias ire, ut ibi in majori audientia Londoniensium fruerentur consilio, quid eis faciendum esset de cancellario illo, qui sic conturbaverat regnum, et juri stare noluit. Hoveden, iii. 140.

[1] *extraxerunt illum*] traxerunt, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 140.

Quod cum cancellarius audisset, recessit a Windesoveres, et Londonias ire properavit; et dum iter faceret, contigit quod familia et milites illius, et milites comitis Johannis, obviaverunt sibi et acriter congressi sunt. Et in illo congressu unus de militibus comitis Johannis, nomine Rogerus de Planes, interfectus est: tamen comes prævaluit, et cancellarius cum suis in fugam conversus Londonias ingressus est, et recepit se et suos infra turrim Londoniarum. A.D. 1191. Oct. 7. Skirmish between the retinues on the way.

Et comes Johannes, et fere omnes episcopi et comites Angliæ, eadem die, scilicet tertia die post octavas Sancti Michaelis, intraverunt Londonias, et in crastino prædictus Johannes, frater regis, et archiepiscopus Rotomagensis, et omnes episcopi et comites et barones, et cives Londonienses cum illis, convenerunt in atrio ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli. Et accusabant dictum cancellarium in multis, et præcipue in injuriis quas fecit[1] Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et domino Dunelmensi episcopo. Socii autem prædicti cancellarii, quos rex associaverat illi in regimine regni, accusabant eum in multis; dicentes quod ille, spretis eorum[2] consiliis, omnia negotia regni cum impetu et voluntaria dispositione faciebat. Archiepiscopus vero Rotomagensis, et Willelmus Marescallus, comes de Strigul, tunc primo ostenderunt coram populo litteras domini regis sigillatas: per quas dominus rex mandavit a Messana, quod ipsi associarentur cancellario in regimine regni, et ut cancellarius sine illorum consilio, et aliorum assignatorum, nihil de negotio regis et regni tractasset, et ut prædictus cancellarius, si ipse quicquam in detrimentum regni, vel sine consilio prædictorum, fecisset, deponeretur, et loco[3] substitueretur[4] Rotomagensis archiepiscopus. John reaches London. Oct. 8. Meeting at St. Paul's. The archbishop of Rouen and William Marshall produce their commission, and the barons determine to depose the chancellor from the justiciarship.

Placuit ergo Johanni fratri regis, et omnibus episcopis, comitibus et baronibus regni, et civibus Londoniarum, quod cancellarius deponeretur; et deposuerunt eum: et loco illius instituerunt Rotomagensem archiepiscopum, qui nihil operari voluit in regimine regni, nisi per voluntatem et consilium sociorum suorum assignatorum, et per consilium baronum scaccarii. Their decision.

Hoveden, iii. 141.

Et eodem die comes Moretonii, et archiepiscopus Rotomagensis, et alii regis justitiarii, concesserunt civibus Londoniarum habere communam [suam. Et comes Moretonii et archiepiscopus Rotomagensis, et fere omnes episcopi et comites et The council confirms the privileges of the city of London.

[1] *fecit*] domino, ins. M., H.
[2] *eorum*] illorum, M., H.
[3] *loco*] illius, ins. M., H.
[4] *substitueretur*] restitueretur, M.; institueretur, H.

A.D. 1191. Oct. 8. barones regni, juraverunt communam][1] illam firmiter et inconcusse se servaturos, quamdiu domino regi placuerit: et cives Londoniarum juraverunt fidele servitium domino regi Ricardo, et hæredi suo; si ipse sine prole decessisset, reciperent comitem Johannem, fratrem Ricardi regis, in regem et dominum; et juraverunt ei fidelitatem contra omnes homines, salva fidelitate regis Ricardi fratris sui. Hoveden, iii. 141.

The Londoners take oaths to Richard and John.

The chancellor surrenders the Tower and Windsor.

Cancellarius itaque depositus juravit quod redderet castella Angliæ; et statim reddidit[2] illi turrim Londoniarum; et ipse tradidit archiepiscopo Rotomagensi, et Windesoures, et alia quædam, sed non omnia.[3]

Oct. 24. Deinde transfretavit cancellarius in Normanniam;[4] sed per mandatum Rotomagensis archiepiscopi habebatur ibi pro excommunicato, et omnis locus in quo ipse [erat],[5] in toto archiepiscopatu Rotomagensi, cessabat a Divino officio, quamdiu ipse moram ibi fecit. At ille nuncios suos misit ad Cœlestinum papam, et ad dominum suum regem Angliæ, significans eis qualiter Johannes comes Moretonii, et complices illius, ejecerant eum a regno: et conquerens sibi de vindicta restitutionem ablatorum petebat, offerens se juri pariturum, et quod si domino regi factum ejus et expensæ non placuissent, ipse in omnibus satisfaceret ejus voluntati. Unde summus pontifex ad iracundiam provocatus, universis archiepiscopis, episcopis Angliæ scripsit[6] pro Willelmo Elyensi episcopo et apostolicæ sedis legato Angliæ; ut omnes in unum convenientes prædictum comitem Moretonii, consiliarios, complices, et fautores suos, vinculo excommunicationis, accensis candelis et pulsatis campanis, tenerent astrictos, donec jam dicto legato tam a captione quam a juramento primitus absoluto, et regno ipso in statum a prænominato rege in recessu suo dispositum reformato, cum

Hoveden, iii. 150.

He goes to Normandy, where he is treated as excommunicated.

He complains to the king, and to the pope.

Hoveden, iii. 151, 152.

The pope orders John and his advisers to be declared excommunicate.

---

[1] *suam . . . communam*] om. C.

[2] *reddidit*] redderet, C.

[3] *omnia*] Here follows in Hoveden the long letter of invective against the chancellor written by bishop Hugh of Nunant; which is omitted in MSS. M. and V., and of course in C. After it comes in the editions of Hoveden, the letter of Peter of Blois in defence of the chancellor, also omitted in these MSS. See Hoveden, iii. 141–150; Benedict, ii. 215–220. On the chronology of this transaction see my preface to the third volume of Hoveden.

[4] *Deinde . . . Normanniam*] Here our MS. closely follows MS. M., omitting the account of Longchamp's landing in Flanders and subsequent troubles, given in Benedict, ii. 220; Hoveden, iii. 150.

[5] *erat*] om. C.; venit, H.

[6] *scripsit*] The following passage is an extract from the letter of the pope, dated at the Lateran, Dec. 2, 1191: given in full in MS. M. from Hoveden. See Hoveden, iii. 151; Benedict, ii. 221.

Hoveden, iii. 152.

testimonio litterarum ipsius legati et illorum[1] pariter, ad sedem veniant apostolicam absolvendi. A.D. 1191.

Unde idem legatus[2] Hugoni Lincolniensi episcopo scripsit in hac forma;

Epistola Willelmi Eliensis episcopi.

"Willelmus, Dei gratia Elyensis episcopus, apostolicæ sedis "legatus, et domini regis cancellarius, venerabili fratri et "amico carissimo, H., eadem gratia Lincolniensi episcopo, etc.[3] "Quanto de dilectione vestra pleniorem fiduciam obtinemus, "majorem constantiam in vobis invenimus, tanto confidentius "discretioni vestræ et ecclesiæ Dei negotia, domini regis, et "nostra committimus exsequenda, confidentes de vobis in "Domino, quod præceptis apostolicis et nostris vestra caritas "pontificaliter respondebit. Mandamus igitur vobis in virtute "obedientiæ, et ea qua fungimur auctoritate præcipimus, "quatenus ad exsequendum mandatum apostolicum, universis "archiepiscopis et episcopis Angliæ destinatum, cum cæteris "fratribus vestris omnibus vel quibusdam, cito conveniatis, ne

The chancellor, in the strength of the papal letters, writes to the bishop of Lincoln, to order the execution of the mandate.

Hoveden, iii. 153.

"diutius in ecclesiam Dei, et sacerdotes ejus, laicalis iniquitas "malignetur; ne tergiversatione vel dissimulatione aliqua illo- "rum malitia vobis debeat imputari. Ea vero quæ dominus "papa mandavit de persona Johannis comitis Moretonii tem- "peravimus, differentes usque ad Dominicam qua cantatur, "'Esto mihi,' ut si forte vellet interim resipiscere, nos inde "Deo gratias redderemus, et pro eo in conspectu domini papæ, "et domini nostri regis Angliæ, athletæ Crucifixi, preces "funderemus affectuosas, ut delicti sui veniam mereretur, et "modis omnibus honori et commodo ejus, salva fidelitate "domini regis, et honestate sacerdotii nostri, operam adhibere- "mus et diligentiam efficacem. In terris autem excommuni- "catorum nulla Divina permittatis celebrari, præter baptismata "parvulorum et pœnitentias. Nomina autem eorum qui a "domino papa excommunicati sunt, et a nobis denunciata, "quorum factum ita evidentia facti notorium fit, quod nulla "possunt tergiversatione inficiari, scilicet hæc:

He defers the sentence against John until Quinquagesima, Feb. 16, 1192;

and sends a list of the other excommunicated persons.

"Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, Godefridus Win- "toniensis, Hugo Coventrensis, pluresque alii episcopi, comites

[1] *illorum*] Originally written *nostrarum* and corrected: a clear proof that the writer of MS. C. was abridging as he proceeded.

[2] *Unde idem legatus*] Auctoritate igitur litterarum istarum summi pontificis, prædictus Eliensis episcopus, M., H.

[3] *etc.*] salutem et sinceræ dilectionis affectum, M., H.

A.D. 1191. " et barones, et[1] Stephanus Ridel, cancellarius comitis More- Hoveden, iii. 153, 154.
" tonii, quem ut episcopus, et ejus legatus, vobis denuncia-
" mus excommunicatum; et magistrum[2] Johannem archi-
John of Coutances to be declared excommunicate; also the bishop of Coventry. " diaconum Oxenfordensem. Ad hæc vero vobis specialiter
" et distincte præcipimus, quod Hugonem Coventrensem epi-
" scopum, quem solemniter excommunicavimus, non solum
" quia verbo et opere episcopum diffitetur, et quia in manu
" piæ recordationis Baldewini, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi,
" fidem corporaliter præstitit de comitatibus non tenendis;
" verum quia totius subversionis regni Angliæ consulator ex-
" stitit manifestus et auctor, et turbator pacis, et contra regiam
" dignitatem et utilitatem publicus advocatus; publice denun-
" cietis excommunicatum, et faciatis ab omnibus arctius evitari,
" ne de cætero ovis tam morbida gregem Domini valeat inficere
" et maculare.[3] Prohibeatis etiam universis in diocesi vestra
" constitutis, sub interminatione anathematis, ne pro illis, qui
" se in Anglia justitiarios gerunt, aliquid faciant, nec in aliquo
" violentæ et usurpatæ obediant potestati. Valete, etc."

The chancellor in another letter orders the revenues of the archdeacon of Oxford to be sequestrated. Idem vero Willelmus[4] Elyensis episcopus[5] et legatus eidem Hugoni, Lincolniensi episcopo, scripsit; quod archidiaconatum et omnes redditus Johannis archidiaconi Oxenfordensis saysiaret, reciperet, et conservaret, donec apostolicum aut suum inde Hoveden, iii. 155. mandatum acciperet: quoniam cum avunculo suo, Rotomagensi Pilato, pacem et tranquillitatem regni Angliæ perturbavit, et malum quodcunque potuit domino regi et regno, tanquam hostis regni et nobis, perquisivit. Unde auctoritate domini papæ illum excommunicationis vinculo dictus Elyensis innodavit.

---

[1] *pluresque . . . barones et*] Willelmus Marescallus, Gaufridus filius Petri, Willelmus Bruere, Hugo Bardolf, Ricardus Malebisse, et Hugo frater ejus, Jacobus et Simon filii Simonis, Simon de Averenchis, Rogerus filius Reinfrei et Gilebertus et Reinfrei filii ejus; et Girardus de Camvilla, comes de Saresbiria, Johannes Marescallus, comes de Mellent, Gilebertus Basset, Henricus de Veer, Gocelinus filius Rainfrei, M., H.

[2] *magistrum*] Benedictum qui sigillum domini regis contra statuta regis et regni, et contra prohibitionem nostram, ferre præsumpsit, et ins. M., H.

[3] *maculare*] Hugonem vero Bardolf, qui ad præsens non fuit in ejectione et captione nostra, a prædicta denunciatione excipimus, si statim admonitus Willelmo de Stutevilla resignaverit castella de Scardeburga, et de tota Eboracisyra, et de Westmerlande, quæ detinet occupata, ins. M., H.

[4] *vero Willelmus*] prædictus, M., H.

[5] *episcopus*] The following passage is a clumsy extract from the letter which is given in full in M. and in Hoveden, iii. 154.

Hoveden, iii. 155.

Similiter idem Elyensis scripsit quibusdam aliis episcopis Angliæ, sed nullus eorum exsecutus est mandatum apostolicum, neque suum. Non enim habebant eum pro legato, neque pro regis cancellario. Prædictus vero Rotomagensis,[1] et cæteri justitiarii Angliæ, dissaisiaverunt illum ab episcopatu suo, et redditus ejus collegerunt ad opus regis, propter thesauros regis quos adnihilaverat. Deinde prædicti justitiarii, et omnes episcopi et comites et barones Angliæ, in communi scripto mandaverunt regi, qualiter cancellarius suus regnum Angliæ et thesauros suos destruxerat, et qualiter ipse per commune consilium regni dejectus est. Ipse vero cancellarius hæc contra scripsit regi, significans quod Johannes frater ejus regnum occupaverat, et quod regni diadema capiti suo imponeret, nisi ipse celerius venire festinasset. Tamen rex, confidens in Domino, servitium Dei noluit deserere donec pecunia et homines defecerunt ei.

A.D. 1191. The bishops decline to execute the mandate. The justiciars seize the property of the see of Ely, and write to the king. The chancellor also complains to the king.

De recessu[2] *Philippi regis Franciæ de Accon.*

Interim rex Franciæ, imperfecta peregrinatione sua, a terra Jerosolimitana recessit cum xiv. galeis, transitum faciens ante civitatem de Baruc, quæ tunc erat in manu paganorum, quos non invasit.

August. Philip's journey home.

Hoveden, iii. 156.

Deinde transivit ante Gibelet civitatem, et ante Buterun castellum, et ante Neffin castellum. Deinde ad civitatem Tripolis venit, et ibi moram fecit per aliquot dies.

He passes Berytus, Jebeil, Botrun, Enfeh, Tripoli.

Et sic de civitate in civitatem transivit, quousque venit ad civitatem quæ est super fluvium Salef, in quo Fredericus submersus est cum exiret de terra Soldani de Yconio.

He comes to the Salef.

De tribus Magis qui obtulerunt Domino aurum, thus et myrrham.

Sciendum est, quod a finibus illis egressi sunt illi tres reges, qui obtulerunt Domino tria munera pretiosa, aurum scilicet, thus et myrrham. Quorum nomina hæc sunt; Jespar, Pabtizar, Melchior; quorum unus erat rex de Salef, quæ dicitur insula; et alter erat rex de Malmistre; et tertius erat rex de Terzol, id est, Tharsis: unde in Psalmo: "Reges Tharsis et insulæ

The country of the Three Kings.

Hoveden, iii. 157.

They came from Seleucia, Malmistra, and Tarsus.

Ps. lxxii. 10,

---

[1] *Rotomagensis*] archiepiscopus, ins. M., H.

[2] *De recessu*] The following is but a brief abstract of the long detail, given by Benedict and Hoveden, of Philip's route. See Benedict, ii. 192–199; Hoveden, iii. 155–161. It is given in full in MS. M.

A.D. 1191. August.

" munera offerent." Et est sciendum, quod hii tres fluvii, scilicet Salef et Curck et Thil, oriuntur in Turkia, quæ dicitur terra Turcorum, qui sunt homines Soldani de Yconio; et dividunt terram Turcorum a terra Rupini de la Muntayne; et descendunt in mare prope gulfum Sataliæ. Et fluvius Salef dictus est oppositus insulæ de Cipre. Cum autem rex Franciæ a fluvio de Salef recessisset, transivit juxta montes excelsos Catimerdes dictos, et alia loca multa quousque venisset ad civitatem de Rodes, ubi per aliquot dies permansit: quam quidem Herodes ædificavit qui fecit amputari caput Sancti Johannis Baptistæ et in disco dari præcepit saltatrici. Hoveden, iii. 157.

He goes from the Salef to Rhodes.

Hoveden, iii. 160.

De Roberto Viscard et ejus adquisitis.

History of Robert Wiscard.

Et sciendum[1] est quod inter prædicta loca et Rodes est quidam portus Wiscardi, qui natus fuit in Normannia, et miles fuit,[2] et de familia Henrici regis Angliæ, filii Willelmi Bastardi. Qui licet fuisset miles probus in armis, tamen nullam gratiam potuit invenire ditandi apud regem illum. Unde factum est quod, cum uxore sua et filiis et fratre suo, reliquit Normanniam et Romam adiit: et accepta a summo [pontifice] licentia et consilio subjicere sibi barbaras nationes, confluebat ad eum multitudo magna virorum ei adhærentium. Et recedens inde, intravit Apuliam, et videns eam terram bonam et fertilem, et habitatores illius indoctos armis, sæpe invasit eos in manu forti et armata, et vicit eos, et obtinuit terram. Et totam Apuliam, et Calabriam, et principatum Capuæ, subjugavit sibi, et eripuit eas de imperatore Romanorum, et dedit eas Tancredo filio suo. Hoveden, iii. 161.

His conquests in Italy.

His war with Constantinople.

Deinde magnum congregavit navigium, jactans quod ipse imperium Constantinopolitanum invaderet, et totum sibi subjugaret. Sed interim dum navigium ejus præpararetur, contigit quod ipse, et Tancredus et Boymundus filii ejus, in una die prælium commiserunt contra dominum papam, et contra imperatorem [Romanorum, et contra imperatorem][3] Constantinopolitanum, ita quod ipse Robertus Wiscard commisit prælium contra imperatorem Constantinopolitanum,[4] et unus filiorum suorum contra papam, et alter contra imperatorem Romano-

---

[1] *Et sciendum*] Our compiler having omitted the details of the journey between Rhodes and Otranto, the words *prædicta loca* must be understood of the omitted names, not to imply that portus Wiscardi was between Palestine and Rhodes.

[2] *fuit*] factus, diu, ins. M., H.

[3] *Romanorum . . . imperatorem*] om. C.

[4] *Constantinopolitanum*] prædictum, C., the compiler having omitted the name of the Roman emperor above.

Hoveden, iii. 162.

rum: et ille et uterque filiorum suorum, in una eademque die, obtinuerunt victoriam. Deinde Robertus Wiscard intravit navigium suum, et uxor ejus cum eo, et subjugavit sibi insulam de Cuverfu, et insulam de Crete, et insulam de Rodes, et alias[1] multas, eripiens eas de manu imperatoris Constantinopolitani. A.D. 1191. History of Robert Wiscard.

De proditione quam uxor Roberti Wiscardi fecit.

Deinde venit ad portum qui nunc nomine suo nuncupatur portus Wiscardi. Et cum inde progredi vellet, et intrare Romaniam, imperator Constantinopolitanus, timens valde adventum illius, mandavit uxori suæ, quod si ipsa prædictum Robertum morti tradidisset, et sic terram suam de eo liberasset, ille duceret eam in uxorem, [et faceret eam imperatricem Constantinopolitanam].[2] Concessit autem mulier se facturam quod imperator petebat; et nacta opportunitate temporis et loci, porrexit dicto Roberto Wiscard marito suo venenum ad potandum,[3] et mortuus est; et in insula[4] Wiscardi sepultus est; et totus exercitus ejus dissipatus est. Mulier autem fugit ad imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, qui statim omnes conventiones quas ei fecerat[5] adimplevit, ipsam in uxorem ducendo,[6] et in imperatricem coronando:[7] et cum omnis solemnitas debita facta fuisset,[8] dicebat illa, "Imperator domine, vestri gratia jam perfecisti "mihi omnem conventionem nostram;" tunc imperator facto coram omnibus in nuptiis existentibus silentio, ostendit dictam conventionem quam ei[9] fecerat, repetendo[10] qualiter[11] maritum suum morti tradiderat; et petiit ab eis judicium de illa: et judicaverunt eam morti.[12] Et sic translata est a[13] nuptiis ad supplicium, accenso[14] rogo injecta est, et in cinerem redacta. Story of his death.

Hoveden, iii. 163.

Rogerus vero, frater prædicti Roberti Wiscardi, debellavit Siculos, et totam subjugavit sibi Siciliam, et factus est comes inde; quæ[15] est insula magna, et antequam Rogerus prædictus[16] Roger Wiscard conquered Sicily.

---

[1] *alias*] insulas, ins. M., H.

[2] *et . . . Constantinopolitanam*] om. C.

[3] *ad potandum*] bibere, M., H.

[4] *in insula*] ibidem, et in insula quæ usque in hodiernum diem dicitur portus Wiscardi, M., H.

[5] *quas ei fecerat*] suas, M., H.

[6] *ipsam . . . ducendo*] et duxit eam in uxorem, M., H.

[7] *coronando*] coronavit, M., H.

[8] *fuisset*] et in desponsatione et in coronatione et in nuptiis ita solenniter quod illa diceret, M., H.

[9] *ei*] cum illa, M., H.

[10] *repetendo*] et, M., H.

[11] *qualiter*] illa, ins. M., H.

[12] *morti*] ream esse mortis, M., H.

[13] *est a*] de, M., H.

[14] *accenso*] concenso, C.

[15] *inde; quæ*] Siciliæ. Sicilia, M., H.

[16] *prædictus*] præfatus, M., H.

A.D. 1191. History of Roger Wiscard.

eam debellasset, inhabitata fuit a paganis, et erat de dominio imperatoris de Africa. Sed idem[1] Rogerus, expulsis inde paganis, legem Christi instituit, et fecit in ea duos archiepiscopatus, et sex episcopatus. Hoveden, ii. 163.

His son Roger.

Deinde uxorem duxit, de qua unum solum genuit filium, quem vocavit nomine suo Rogerum; et fecit illum ducem Apuliæ, et dedit illi Calabriam, et principatum Capuæ, defuncto Tancredo, Roberti Wiscardi filio, sine prole.

Roger, son of Roger Wiscard, becomes king of Sicily.

Deinde obiit prædictus Rogerus comes Siciliæ, et Rogerus filius ejus, dux Apuliæ, successit ei in comitatum Siciliæ. Et paulo post, per consilium comitum et baronum suorum, fecit se coronari in regem Siciliæ. Et iste Rogerus factus est ita primus rex coronatus in Sicilia; qui uxorem duxit, ex qua genuit duos filios, et unam filiam; quorum primus vocatus est Rogerus, alter Willelmus; et filia[2] Constantia. Et ipse dedit filio suo primogenito ducatum Apuliæ, et principatum Capuæ. Qui uxorem duxit inconsulto patre suo, et genuit ex ea filium unum, quem vocavit Tancredum. Deinde obiit, patre suo adhuc vivente. Deinde obiit pater suus, rex Siciliæ, cui successit in regno Willelmus filius ejus, qui uxorem duxit, de qua genuit unum tantum[3] filium, quem vocavit[4] Willelmum.

His family.

William I.

De Constantia, filia Rogeri regis Siciliæ, data in uxorem Henrico regi Alemannorum, filio Frederici Romanorum imperatoris.

William II.

Iste Willelmus ultimus successit patri suo in regnum: et dedit Tancredo, fratri avi sui, comitatum de la Liche. Et Constantiam, sororem avi sui, dedit Henrico regi Alemannorum filio Frederici Romanorum imperatoris, in uxorem. Et fecit jurari sibi regnum Siciliæ post illum, si ille decessisset sine prole. Et deinde ipse Willelmus, rex Siciliæ, duxit in uxorem sibi Johannam, filiam Henrici regis Angliæ, filii Matildis imperatricis: sed ille Willelmus rex Siciliæ obiit sine prole. Hoveden, iii. 164.

Usurpation of Tancred.

Quo defuncto, Tancredus prædictus comes de la Lyche, immemor sacramenti, quod cum cæteris fecerat Henrico regi Alemannorum, usurpavit sibi regnum Siciliæ, et factus est inde rex coronatus. Quod cum Henricus Romanorum imperator audisset, magno congregato exercitu, intravit terram regis Tancredi, et adducens secum uxorem suam Constantiam, hæredem regni Siciliæ, obsedit Salernum, et infra xv. dies reddita

[1] *idem*] prænominatus, M., H.
[2] *filia*] ejus vocata est, M., H.
[3] *tantum*] solum, M., H.
[4] *vocavit*] nomine suo, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 164.

est ei, et uxori suæ, et ipse dimisit eam ibi; et ipse procedens inde obsedit Neapolim, ubi cum ipse moram fecisset per vi. septimanas, amisit fere totum exercitum suum, ex corruptione aeris; et ipse ægrotabat usque ad mortem. Et cum vidisset se nihil proficere adversus eam, recessit, et abiit ad civitatem suam Melan. A.D. 1191. War of Henry VI. and Tancred.

De captione Constantiæ imperatricis.

Quod cum audissent Salernitani, injecerunt manus in dominam suam Constantiam imperatricem, et tenentes tradiderunt eam Tancredo regi Siciliæ. Et imperator Alemannorum, dolens et confusus de amissione uxoris suæ, scripsit Cœlestino papæ, ut per auxilium illius recuperasset eam; quæ postmodum reddita est ei per auxilium domini papæ. Capture of Constance.

De itinere[1] *regis Franciæ.*

Hoveden, iii. 165.

Sequitur:—Cum Philippus rex Franciæ recessisset de Rodes, et venisset ad costeram de Rumania, transivit per montem magnum Meliæ dictum. Deinde in gulfo de Witun, et transivit per castellum de Maine. Deinde ad civitatem Curun dictam, et sic de civitate in civitatem quousque venisset ad insulam de Cuverfu. Philip's journey resumed: Cape Malio; gulf of Kolokythia, Maina; Coron; Corfu.

Hoveden, iii. 166.

Quo cum venisset[2] misit nuncios suos ad regem Tancredum, et petiit ab eo licentiam transeundi per terram suam, et obtinuit.[3] Deinde venit in Apuliam, et applicuit apud Ottrente.[4] Et procedens inde, præambulos suos misit ad Henricum Romanorum imperatorem, et petiit licentiam transeundi per terram suam, et data est ei.[5] Qui cum venisset Romam, mala multa locutus est de rege Angliæ, in conspectu domini papæ et omnium cardinalium; dicens quod rex Angliæ coegit eum a terra Jerosolimitana recedere; et appellavit de proditione sua. Sed nec dominus papa nec ejus cardinales fidem habuerunt verbis ejus, scientes hæc magis ex invidia processisse, quam ex delicto regis Angliæ. Dominus vero papa cum Philip lands at Otranto.

His visit to Rome, and calumnies against Richard.

Hoveden, iii. 167.

---

[1] *De itinere*] Here again our compiler sums up very briefly the very long details of Hoveden and Benedict. Hoveden, iii. 165, 166; Benedict, ii. 203–206. They are given in full in M.

[2] *Quo cum venisset*] Cum igitur rex Franciæ venisset in insulam de Cuverfu, M., H.

[3] *obtinuit*] data est ei licentia, M., H.

[4] *Ottrente*] vi. idus Octobris feria quinta, ins. M., H.

[5] *ei*] licentia, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1191. The pope's treatment of Philip and his pilgrims.

omni honore et diligentia recepit eum, et per octo dies ministravit ei necessaria. Et pro amore Dei et suo, novum fecit remedium peregrinis; scilicet, quod eum, et omnes qui cum eo venerunt, vel post eum venerunt, absolvit a voto suo et ab itinere [professionis] Jerosolimitanæ: et licet votum non solvissent, tamen palmas eis distribuit, et cruces collis eorum suspendit, statuens quod essent peregrini. Hoveden, iii. 167.

Philip conspires with the emperor against Richard.

Deinde rex Franciæ effecit adversus Romanorum imperatorem, quod ipse regem Angliæ caperet, si terram suam transiret. Deinde rex Franciæ veniens in terram suam, defamavit regem Angliæ adversus proximos suos, imponens ei crimina multa. Et proferens cartam regis Angliæ, quæ facta

On reaching home he demands the restoration of his sister.

fuit apud Messanam, petiit a Willelmo filio Radulfi, senescallo Normanniæ, Alesiam sororem suam, quam rex Angliæ in uxorem ducere debuerat, et senescallus Normanniæ noluit tradere eam illi.

S. Hugh of Lincoln removes the tomb of Fair Rosamond at Godstow.

Eodem anno Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus, faciens visitationes suas per domos religiosorum in sua diocesi, venit ad abbatiam sanctimonialium de Godestouwe, quæ est inter Oxoniam et Wodestoke. Et cum intrasset ecclesiam ut oraret, vidit tumbam in medio chori ante altare, sericis pannis velatam, et lampadibus et cereis circumdatam: et quæsivit episcopus cujus esset tumba, et dictum est illi, eam [1] esse tumbam Rosemundæ, quondam amicæ [2] Henrici regis, filii [3] imperatricis; et quod ipse pro amore illius multa bona ecclesiæ illi fecerat. Et respondit episcopus: "Tollite eam hinc, "quia scortum fuit, et sepelite eam extra ecclesiam cum "cæteris, ne [4] Christiana religio vilescat, et ut exemplo illius "cæteræ mulieres exteritæ caveant sibi ab illicitis et adul- "terinis concubitibus." Et factum est ita. Hoveden, iii. 168.

Expulsion of monks from Coventry.

Eodem anno Hugo, Coventrensis episcopus, expulit monachos Coventrenses ab ecclesia cathedrali, et in ea instituit canonicos sæculares.

Election and death of Archbishop Reginald.

Eodem anno monachi Cantuarienses elegerunt sibi in archiepiscopum Reginaldum Batoniensem episcopum, qui statim incidit in ægritudinem, et infra quindecim dies post electionem suam obiit, et apud Ba sepultus est.[5]

---

[1] *illi, eam*] ei illam, M., H.

[2] *amicæ*] quæ exstiterat amica, M., H.

[3] *filii*] Angliæ, filii Matildis, M., H.

[4] *ne*] videatur, ins. C.

[5] *sepultus est*] The details given by Hoveden, and omitted in MSS. C., M., and V. (Hoveden, iii. 168-172), refer to the quarrel between the archbishop elect of York and the bishop of Durham on the question of the profession of obedience demanded of the latter.

Hoveden, iii. 172.

A.D. 1191. Roger de Lacy hangs two traitors.

Eodem anno constabularius Cestriæ Rogerus, cui cancellarius tradiderat castella de Nottingham et de Tikeil in custodia, cepit duos (scilicet Alanum de Lec, et Petrum de Bovencurt) ex illis quibus commiserat prædicta castella in custodia, et quia consenserant proditioni Roberti de Crokestun, et Eudonis de Divilla, qui castella [1] tradiderunt Johanni comiti Moretonii, suspendit utrumque. Unde dictus comes [2] iratus, totam terram illius, quæ in sua potestate erat, devastavit.[3]

John devastates his lands.

Hoveden, iii. 174.

Richard gives Joppa and Ascalon to Geoffrey of Lusignan.

Eodem [4] anno rex Angliæ, post reædificationem Cæsareæ et Joppen, dedit utramque Gaufrido de Lizinant, fratri Wydonis regis. Deinde rex Anglia firmavit [castellum] [5] des Plains; deinde firmavit castellum Maen.

Advance towards Jerusalem.

Deinde secunda die ante Natale Domini, perrexit rex Angliæ usque ad Turronum des Chevalers,[6] et ibi fuit in Natali Domini; et voluit inde procedere post Natale ad obsidendum civitatem Jerosolimam; sed dux Burgundiæ et Franci noluerunt eum sequi, dicentes quod rex Franciæ, dominus eorum, prohibuit eis in recessu suo, ne ipsi ulterius moram facerent in terra illa; unde oportebat regem Angliæ a proposito suo deficere, quia homines et pecunia defecerunt ei.

Hoveden, iii. 175.

December. The French crusaders desert Richard.

De reditu imperatoris Affricanorum cum exercitu in terram Sanctii regis.

The emperor of Morocco recovers the cities in Portugal which he had lost in 1190.

Eodem anno Boyac Almiramoli, imperator Affricanorum, qui anno præcedenti intraverat terram regis Portugalensis cum exercitu suo magno, et ceperat castellum quod dicitur Turres Noves, et obsederat castellum Tumar dictum,[7] et utrumque reliquerat Christianis, propter metum peregrinorum qui in navigio regis Angliæ venerant, et fugiens finxerat se mortuum;[8] isto anno, postquam totum navigium regis Angliæ præterierat, magnum congregavit exercitum, et iterum intravit terram regis Portugalensis, et cepit per vim civitatem Silviæ, et Alcaz, et Almade, et Palmade, et Palmele, et devastavit terram Christianorum. Rex autem Portugalensis non potuit illius resistere viribus: et ipse Boyac præ-

---

[1] *castella*] illa, ins. M., H.

[2] *comes*] Moretonii, ins. M., H.

[3] *devastavit*] Here follows in Hoveden the letter of Celestine III. freeing the Scottish church; on which see the note on Hoveden, iii. 173. It is omitted in M. as it is in several of the MSS. of Hoveden.

[4] *Eodem*] *Sequitur de rege Angliæ*, rubric in M.

[5] *castellum*] om. C., M.

[6] *Chevalers*] Chanaleis, C., M., with three MSS. of Hoveden.

[7] *dictum*] quod dicitur, M., H.

[8] *mortuum*] ut supra dictum est, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1191. dictus[1] dedit prædictas civitates, quas acquisierat, fratri suo regi de Cordres.[2] Hoveden, iii. 175, 176.

Navarre has only one episcopal see, Pampeluna.

Et est notandum, quod in terra regis Navarræ est quædam sola civitas episcopalis, quæ dicitur Pampelune; sed multa castella sunt in terra sua, quorum unum dicitur Tudele, super fluvium de Ebera, et alterum dicitur Lesteyle, et alia multa.

Castile, an archbishopric at Toledo.

In terra autem regis Castellæ est una sola civitas archiepiscopalis, Tulete, quæ sedet super fluvium Thagi, et ipsa habet primatiam Hispaniæ: et in eadem civitate est alia episcopalis,

Wonders of Toledo.

qui dicitur episcopus de Muscerans, id est Suriens. Et in eadem civitate est mons quidam, de quo quotidie sumuntur plusquam mille camelorum onera, et tamen nunquam decrescit; quia quamvis spelunca fiat profundissima, tamen cras implebitur, si pluvia ceciderit super eum. Et terra inde sumpta defertur per circumjacentes provincias, et venditur ad lavandum capita et pannos hominum.[3]

Præterea in regno regis Castellæ sunt plusquam cc. castella bona.[4]

Suffragans of the archbishop of Compostella.

In terra regis de Sancto Jacobo est unus archiepiscopatus, scilicet, apud Sanctum Jacobum; cujus archiepiscopus habet sub se xi. suffraganeos.[5] Præterea in eodem regno de Sancto Jacobo sunt castella multa. Hoveden, iii. 177.

Archbishopric of Braga.

In terra regis Portugalensis est unus archiepiscopatus, qui est apud civitatem Braga; cujus archiepiscopus habet sub se septem suffraganeos.[6]

Saracenic Spain, kingdom of Cordova, and its cities.

Deinde protenditur Hispania Saracenica dicta,[7] sub imperatore Affricanorum: et ibi incipit terra quam rex de Cordres, id est frater prædicti Boyac,[8] tenet; scilicet, Corduba civitas, de qua Lucanus ait:

> " Corduba me genuit, rapuit Nero, prælia dixi,
> " Quæ gessere pares, hinc socer, inde gener;"

et alia multa loca, civitates et castella.[9]

Kingdom of Jaen and its cities.

Deinde incipit regnum regis de Gahant, in eadem Hispania, sub imperatore Affricanorum; et rex ille est frater Almira-

---

[1] *prædictus*] Almiramimoli, M., H.

[2] *Cordres*] id est Corduba, M., H.

[3] *hominum*] tam Christianorum quam paganorum, ins. M., H. M. proceeds to give the names of the suffragan sees of Toledo. See Hoveden, iii. 176.

[4] *bona*] quorum unum est Legruin, ins. M., H.

[5] *suffraganeos*] M. gives the names, as in Hoveden, iii. 176, 177.

[6] *suffraganeos*] M. gives the names as in Hoveden, iii. 177.

[7] *dicta*] quæ dicitur, M., H.

[8] *Boyac*] Almiramimoli, M., H.

[9] *et alia . . . castella*] M. gives the names as in Hoveden, iii. 177.

Hoveden, iii 177. moli; qui habet in dominatione sua Gehen castellum, et alia multa, et civitates plures.[1] A.D. 1191.

Hoveden, iii. 178. Deinde in eadem Hispania Saracenica incipit terra regis de Murcia, qui est frater dicti[2] Almiramoli: in cujus dominatione sunt Murcia civitas, et Oriole castellum, et alia plura et civitates.[3] Kingdom of Murcia.

Deinde in eadem Hispania Saracenica incipit terra regis de Valencia, qui est frater prædicti Almiramoli; in cujus dominatione sunt Oedeeb castellum, et alia castella, civitates et loca.[4] Kingdom of Valencia.

Deinde incipit Hispania terra regis Arragoniæ. In cujus principio sunt Ampost castellum, Turtusa civitas, et alia castella multa et loca diversa, et civitates.[5] Kingdom of Arragon and its cities.

E. ℣. D.——MºCºXCºIIº.

Annus tertius regni Ricardi regis Angliæ.

Hoveden, iii. 179. Anno gratiæ MºCºXCºIIº., qui erat tertius annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ, Philippus rex Franciæ fuit in Francia, sanus et incolumis apud Funtaine Blaud, die Natalis Domini, quæ feria quarta evenit, impudenter jactans se in proximo vastaturum terras regis Angliæ. Dec. 25. Philip at Fontainebleau.

Eodem die Natalis Domini, Johannes comes Moretonii, frater Ricardi regis Angliæ, fuit apud Hovendene, cum Hugone Dunelmensi episcopo; et[6] Alienor, mater ejusdem Ricardi regis,[7] fuit in Normannia apud Boneville sur Toke. John at Howden. Eleanor at Bonneville.

Eodem die Natalis Domini, Ricardus rex Angliæ fuit in terra Suliæ apud Thurun as chevalers,[8] volens post Natale Domini obsidere civitatem Jerusalem; et in die Sancti Hilarii habuit ibi colloquium cum Templariis et Hospitalariis, et cum toto exercitu, de civitate Jerusalem obsidenda; sed non fuit de consilio illorum ut ipse procederet, sed ut rediret ad firmandam Ascalonam; [et sic perrexit ille ad Ascalonam,] et firmavit eam, et eam in firmando fecit moram magnam. Richard at Latroon. A.D. 1192. Jan. 13. Richard goes to Ascalon.

---

[1] *et . . . . plures*] M. gives the names as in Hoveden, iii. 177.

[2] *dicti*] prædicti, M., H.

[3] *et . . . civitates*] M. gives the names as in Hoveden, iii. 178.

[4] *civitates et loca*] M. gives the names as in Hoveden, iii. 178.

[5] *et alia . . . civitates*] M. gives the names as in Hoveden, iii. 178.

[6] *et*] Eodem die Natalis Domini, M., H.

[7] *regis*] Angliæ, ins. M., H.

[8] *chevalers*] Chavaleis, C.

A.D. 1192. March 22. Departure of the French.

Et quindecim diebus ante Pascha, recesserunt ab eo dux Burgundiæ et Franci, dicentes quod cum eo diutius non remanerent, nisi ipse invenisset eis necessaria, et noluit rex eis invenire quicquam. Hoveden, iii. 179.

Richard fortifies the strongholds,

Infra vero Quadragesimam, rex Angliæ firmavit la Blanchewarde, et Galaciam, et Gazere. Hoveden, iii. 180.

keeping Easter, April 5, at Ascalon.

Et in die Paschæ, tenuit ibi commune festum extra villam in tentoriis. Et post Pascha fecit ipse equitationes per terram paganorum, et invenit segetes eorum maturas, et fecit omnes colligi per manus Christianorum[1] pro medietate segetum. Et in planitie de Scalona moram fecit usque Pentecosten: et

He goes to Darum.

in die clausi Pentecostes equitavit apud Darun, castellum forte, juxta magnum fluvium Euphraten; et cepit in equitatione illa xxiv. paganos, et unum Reneez, qui quondam Christianus fuerat, et[2] Jesum Christum negaverat; et rex posuit eum ad sagittandum, et sagittatus est.

He takes Darum.

Et rex die Lunæ post clausum Pentecosten obsedit le Darun, et die Veneris sequenti cepit eam per vim; et cepit in ea MD. et CCCC. paganos vivos, et dedit illos statim comiti Henrico de Campania.

Quarrels at Acre.

Interim post Pascha orta est gravis dissensio inter Pisanos et Januenses, qui erant in Accon, et mutuo se interfecerunt: et dux Burgundiæ, per exhortationem Genuensium, misit Tyrum pro Conrado Marchione, volens levare eum in regem; et Pisani miserunt pro rege Angliæ, qui tunc[3] morabatur in Scalona, significantes ei propositum ducis Burgundiæ. Et rex

Richard visits Acre, and returns to Ascalon.

venit Accon, et exegit a duce Burgundiæ M. et D. libras argenti, quas ipse ei commodaverat; et dux ille non habens unde redderet, tradidit regi Karrakois Saracenum pro quieta clamantia debiti. Hoveden, iii. 181.

Assassination of Conrad, April 27.

Deinde rediit rex ad Scalonam, ubi dum ipse moram fecisset, duo de servientibus regis Acinorum, id est de Ausasis,[4] qui multo tempore servierant in curia Conradi marchionis, et familiares illius diu exstiterant, interfecerunt dictum[5] Conradum in Tyro civitate sua, et statim capti sunt a circumstantibus V^to. kalendas Maii. Et interrogati, dixerunt se hoc fecisse per præceptum regis Accinorum domini sui; et unus illorum statim capitalem subiit sententiam, et alter excoriatus est. Franci vero dixerunt hoc totum factum fuisse per consilium

---

[1] *per manus Christianorum*] a Christianis, M., H.

[2] *et*] Dominum nostrum, ins. M., H.

[3] *tunc*] temporis, ins. M., H.

[4] *Ausasis*] Aussasis, M.; Assasis, H.

[5] *dictum*] prædictum, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 181.

regis Angliæ. Post interfectionem vero prædicti Conradi, uxor illius nupsit Henrico comiti Campaniæ, nepoti regis Angliæ et regis Franciæ; et statim, per communem totius exercitus electionem, prædictus Henricus est electus in regem Jerosolimitanæ terræ. Et rex Angliæ dedit in escambium regi Wydoni insulam de Cipre, in vita sua tenendam. A.D. 1192. Henry of Champagne elected king of Jerusalem.

Post captionem del Darun, eodem scilicet die Veneris quo rex Angliæ ceperat eam, Franci redierunt ad regem Angliæ in misericordia ejus usque ad Scalonam, et rex venit illuc usque ad eos, et inde per consilium totius exercitus processit ad obsidendum Jerosolimam. Et cum venissent ad Betenoble, rex cum quibusdam illorum fecit equitationem ante Jerusalem; et perrexit inde ad capellam Sancti Elyæ, quæ distat a Jerosolimis per tres leucas; et invenit ibi crucem quandam de ligno Domini sigillatam infra murum capellæ, quæ vocatur crux Siriorum, et asportavit eam, et rediit ad exercitum suum. The French return to the camp (May 22).

Hoveden, iii. 182.

June. Richard at Beit-Nuba. He acquires a portion of the True Cross.

Interim redierunt ad regem Angliæ exploratores sui, et indicaverunt ei quod carvana Salaadini veniebat de Babilone in Jerusalem, ad muniendum eam victu et armis; et credidit illis rex, et assumens secum quinque millia hominum electorum, occurrit dictæ[1] carvanæ, quam undecim millia paganorum conduxerunt: et occurrit eis in Vigilia Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, circa horam diei primam, et cum eis commisit prælium, et habuit de illis victoriam; et fere omnes interfecit, et spolia eorum possedit, et cepit tria millia camelorum, et quatuor millia equorum et mulorum et mularum, exceptis interfectis. Et sic cum victoria rediit rex ad Betenoble, unde recesserat, et ex spoliis interfectorum dedit militibus exercitus. Capture of the great caravan, June 23.

Et habito colloquio cum duce Burgundiæ et Francis, obtulit se juraturum, quod ipse Jerosolimam iret, et obsideret eam, et inde non recederet, quamdiu haberet unum runcinum ad manducandum, donec capta fuisset civitas; et petiit ut Franci, et omnis exercitus, illud idem sacramentum facerent. Dux autem Burgundiæ et Franci responderunt ei, quod sacramentum non facerent, neque in terra illa diutius remanerent; sed inde[2] recederent quam citius possent, sicut præceperat illis rex Franciæ dominus illorum. Et sic per discordiam recesserunt a rege, et redierunt usque Accon, et rex secutus est eos. Richard proposes to besiege Jerusalem.

Hoveden, iii. 183.

The French refuse, and the army returns to Acre. (July 4.)

Et Salaadinus statim descendit de montibus, et obsedit Joppen, quam rex Angliæ tradiderat Alberico de Reyns[3] in custodia, et cum ipse eandem defendere nequivisset, tradidit Saladin besieges Joppa, and compels the

[1] *dictæ*] prædictæ, M., H.
[2] *inde*] a terra illa, M., H.
[3] *Reyns*] Reins, M.; Rains, H.

A.D. 1192. garrison to capitulate. Salaadino pro licentia abeundi cum vita et membris: qui cum a Salaadino recepisset sagittam electam in signum pacis suæ, et cum audivisset adventum regis Angliæ, regressus est ad Salaadinum, et reddidit ei sagittam suam, et renunciavit paci suæ; et Salaadinus statim cepit eum, et captivavit, et villam cepit totam, excepta munitione castri, in qua pauci receperunt se, et mandaverunt regi Angliæ eventum rei. Qui statim tradidit exercitum[1] equestrem comiti Henrico de Campania, ad conducendum per terram; et ipse rex cum septem galeis tantum perrexit per mare: et in die tertia venit ad Joppen Sabbato, mane, post festum Sancti Petri ad Vincula; et intravit castellum, et locutus est cum suis, docens eos quomodo sequerentur eum. Deinde exivit et pauci cum illo, et ex improviso fecit impetum in exercitum Salaadini, et exclamans signum suum, fortiter percussit eos, et ejecit eos a civitate, et multos eorum interfecit in ore gladii, et civitatem illam liberavit de manibus eorum. Hoveden, iii. 183.

Richard comes to the rescue (Aug. 1), and enters the castle.

He delivers the city.

August. Challenge of Saladin. Post triduum Salaadinus mandavit regi, quod præliaretur cum illo in prælio campestri: et mandatum illud multum[2] placuit regi. Et cum omnia hinc inde præordinata essent ad prælium campestre, venerunt ad regem de Accon quinque galeæ cum viris armatis ad succurrendum illi, et tunc noluit Salaadinus bellum inire contra regem. Interim Hugo dux Burgundiæ, et Radulfus de Cusci, et vicedominus de Pinkeny, obierunt[3] apud Accon, octava die qua venerunt illuc. Hoveden, iii. 184.

Death of the duke of Burgundy.

Saladin proposes a truce for three years. Deinde Saladinus mandavit regi Angliæ, quod ipse redderet ei omnes expensas quas fecerat in firmatione Ascaloniæ, et daret ei, et cæteris Christianis qui in terra Jerosolimitana remanerent, treugas a Pascha proximo venturo per triennium, et pacem eis servaret usque ad præfinitum tempus, si ille redegisset Scalonam in eum statum quo ipse eam dimiserat.

September. Richard concludes the truce. Videns ergo rex quod homines et pecunia et sanitas corporis defecerunt ei, per consilium Templariorum et totius exercitus, recepit supradicta quæ Salaadinus obtulerat ei; et ipsi sacramentis pacem illam usque ad terminum[4] præfixum servandam firmaverunt. Et ex tunc rex Angliæ, traditis omnibus in manu Henrici comitis de Campania, redire in regnum suum properavit, propter sinistros rumores quos audierat, tam de rege Franciæ, et[5] de cancellario suo expulso, quam de fratre suo comite Moretonii, qui castella regni occupaverat, et totum occuparet si posset. Hoveden, iii. 185.

He proposes to return home.

---

[1] *exercitum*] suum, ins. M., H.
[2] *multum*] plurimum, M., H.
[3] *obierunt*] obviaverunt, C.
[4] *terminum*] tempus, M., H.
[5] *et*] quam, C.

Hoveden, iii. 185.

Venit itaque rex Angliæ ad Cayphas, et ægrotavit ibi, et perrexit inde Accon,[1] et ibi intravit busciam magnam, post festum Sancti Michaelis, octavo idus Octobris, feria quinta, et infra mensem post diem illum applicuit in insula de Cuverfu, et intravit naviculam, et navigavit usque ad tres galeas, quas vidit ex opposito in Romania, et conduxit eas usque ad Raguse pro ducentis marcis argenti; et postea rediit ad busciam suam, et prædictæ galeæ cum eo, et ipse pacavit eos; et assumpsit secum Baldewinum advocatum Betuniæ, et alios viginti socios, et intravit unam de prædictis galeis: et cum applicuisset prope Gazere apud Raguse, noluit indicare quod esset rex Angliæ, sed peregrini essent: et quamvis ipse barbam haberet prolixam, et capillos prolixos, et vestes et omnia cætera ad similitudinem gentis terræ illius, tamen celari non potuit, propter nimias expensas quas faciebat, contra consuetudinem terræ illius. Et statim homines provinciæ illius, conjicientes illum esse regem Angliæ, proposuerunt illum capere, et Romanorum imperatori tradere, qui eum odio habuit, propter auxilium regi Tancredo factum, et propter necem Conradi marchionis, consanguinei sui.

A.D. 1192. He sails from Acre, Oct. 8; lands at Corfu; sails thence to Ragusa, and lands at Zara.

Hoveden, iii. 186.

He proceeds in disguise.

The people of the country suspect him, and propose to seize him.

Quod cum regi Angliæ per quendam suorum constaret, tradidit familiam suam advocato Betuniæ, præcipiens ut in illo loco per quatuor dies moram fecisset, expendentes profusius quam ipse fecerat. Et ipse cum uno solo comite, velocibus equis ascensis, sero viam carpsit, et properans die ac nocte venit prope Wenam; et non longe ab ea, in quadam parva villa, ipse et comes suus hospitium ceperunt. Et dum comes regis pergeret ad emendum cibum, rex a labore itineris fatigatus statim incubuit super lectum, et dormivit. Interim comes suus, dum intenderet concambire denarios, a quodam serviente ducis Austriæ cognitus est, et captus, et ductus ante ducem; et cum diutius celare non potuit, indicavit eis hospitium regis: et venientes invenerunt eum dormientem, et ceperunt.

He hurries on to Vienna, where he is recognized, and taken prisoner by the duke of Austria.

Hoveden, iii. 187.

Advocatus vero Betuniæ, et qui cum eo erant, cum exire vellent a villa in qua rex dimiserat eos, capti sunt, et abire permissi.

December. The advocate of Bethune released.

Interim rex Franciæ, habito colloquio cum senescallo et proceribus Normanniæ, petiit ab eis Alesiam sororem suam, quam habebant custoditam in turre Rotomagensi; et castellum de Gizortio, et comitatum de Auca, et comitatum de Albemarlia: et ostendit ei cyrographum, factum inter ipsum et regem Angliæ apud Messanam. Cui proceres Normanniæ respon-

The steward of Normandy refuses to surrender Gisors (January).

[1] *Recessus regis Ricardi de Accon, et postea statim captio ejusdem a duce Austriæ*, M. in marg.

A.D. 1192. January. derunt, quod ipsi nullum receperant mandatum inde a domino suo, et ideo facere noluerunt quod petebat. Hoveden, iii. 187.

Philip prepares to invade Normandy.

Deinde rex Franciæ, magno congregato exercitu, voluit Normanniam hostiliter invadere: sed primates regni sui noluerunt ei consentire, dicentes, quod dominus papa excommunicaverat omnes qui guerram facerent in terra regis Angliæ ante reditum suum; et quod ipsi juraverant tenere ei et terræ suæ pacem, donec rediisset.

March. The archbishop of York comes to Westminster with his cross erect in defiance of the bishops of the province of Canterbury.

Eodem anno, in Quadragesima, archiepiscopus Eboracensis venit Londonias, per mandatum justitiariorum regis: et cum pervenisset ad Westmonasterium cum cruce sua, prohibitum est ei a Londoniensi episcopo, et cæteris episcopis Angliæ, ne ipse amodo præsumeret crucem suam portare in Cantuariensi diocesi. Et contumaciter respondit eis, quod propter illos non dimitteret: tamen, suorum fretus consilio, abscondit eam a facie populi, ne tumultus fieret in populo et clero. Londoniensis vero episcopus, illum pro excommunicato habens propter transgressionem illam, suspendit Novum Templum a Divini celebratione officii, et a sonitu campanarum, ubi prædictus archiepiscopus fuerat hospitatus; unde oportebat illum a civitate exire. Sed antequam exiret, Alienor regina, et archiepiscopus Rotomagensis, et ipse, et omnes magnates regni convenerunt in unum, et juraverunt fidelitatem et fidele servitium Ricardo regi Angliæ, et hæredi suo, contra omnes homines.

The new Temple suspended.

Oaths of fealty taken to Richard.

The chancellor lands at Dover.

In eadem Quadragesima Elyensis episcopus, cancellarius, rediit in Angliam, per mandatum comitis Moretonii, et mansit per aliquot dies in castello Doroberniæ, non ausus ulterius procedere. Comes autem Moretonii, pro quingentis libris argenti, quas cancellarius promiserat ei pro restitutione officii sui, modis omnibus tentavit inducere principes regni, ut recepissent cancellarium in pristinum statum: et noluerunt, sed mandaverunt cancellario, quod nisi ipse celerius a regno recederet, caperent illum. Quo audito, cancellarius, non ausus moram facere in Anglia contra voluntatem principum, transfretavit in Cœna Domini. Hoveden, iii. 188.

John fails to persuade the barons to receive him.

He leaves again, April 2.

The nuns of Clementhorpe refuse to be subject to Godstow.

Eodem anno, Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus dedit, et carta sua confirmavit abbatiæ de Godestoue, prioratum Sancti Clementis in Eboraco; sed moniales Sancti Clementis, quæ semper ab ipsis ecclesiæ suæ fundamentis liberæ exstiterant, noluerunt obedire abbatiæ de Godestoue, facta appellatione ad dominum papam pro libertatibus ecclesiæ.[1]

---

[1] *ecclesiæ*] Here Hoveden inserts the long report of the archbishop of Rouen's agents at Rome, and the accompanying details, as found in Benedict, ii. 241–245; and the story of the same, relating to the

Hoveden, iii. 193.

Eodem anno misit dominus papa a latere suo duos cardinales, scilicet, Octovianum Hostiensem episcopum, et Jordanum de Fossa Nova, ad dirimendam litem quæ erat inter cancellarium et Rotomagensem archiepiscopum. Qui cum venissent in Normanniam usque ad Gizorcium, clausa est eis janua, et intrare non potuerunt. Et cum cognovissent hoc factum fuisse per Willelmum filium Radulfi, senescallum Normanniæ, illum excommunicaverunt, et omnes complices suos, fautores, et consiliarios et auctores prædictæ præsumptionis: et totam Normanniam sub interdicto posuerunt. Quod cum nunciatum esset in Anglia, regina Alienor et Rotomagensis archiepiscopus miserunt ad eos Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum, ut relaxarent sententiam quam dederant in senescallum Normanniæ, et in ipsam Normanniam. Primo vero invenit eos Dunelmensis episcopus apud Parisius, deinde secutus est eos usque Vizeliacum; sed nullo modo relaxare sententiam suam voluerunt, nisi recepti fuissent in Normanniam. Sed dominus papa Normanniam[1] relaxavit, et relaxari fecit a legatis, nec tamen intraverunt in Normanniam.

A.D. 1192. Arrival of the legates at Gisors.

They excommunicate the Steward, and put Normandy under interdict.

Hoveden, iii. 194.

The bishop of Durham mediates.

Eodem anno, dum senescallus Gasconiæ ægrotaret, comes Petragoriensis, et vicecomes de Marchia, et fere omnes barones Gasconiæ, terras regis Angliæ vastare cœperunt. Senescallus vero nec pacem nec treugas interim habere potuit, licet id pluries et perpluries requisisset. Convalescens tandem, invasit castra et munitiones prædicti comitis, et ea omnia debellavit et cepit, quædam ad opus regis muniendo, quædam funditus subvertendo. Similiter omnia castra prædicti vicecomitis cepit, et totum comitatum illius in perpetuum dominationi regis mancipavit. Postmodum filius regis Navarræ affuit illi in auxilium cum octingentis militibus; et terram comitis Tolosæ pariter ingressi sunt, multaque castra circa[2] ceperunt, et capta ad opus domini regis munierunt; et multas alias munitiones funditus subverterunt; et usque ad portas Tolosæ progressi sunt, et fere sub ipsis muris pernoctaverunt.

Rebellion in Gascony, during the sickness of the Steward.

On his recovery he seizes the castles of Perigord and la Marche.

He is succoured by the son of the king of Navarre.

Eodem anno multi peregrini, qui recesserunt cum rege de terra Suliæ, redierunt ante Natale Domini in Angliam, sperantes se invenisse regem in Anglia, et interrogati de rege, ubi esset, responderunt: "Nescimus; sed navem ejus, quam intraverat, "vidimus applicatam apud Brundusium in Apulia."

December. Reports of the returning pilgrims, of Richard's progress homewards.

---

rumours of Richard's movements, which is not in Benedict. See Hoveden, iii. 188–193. The whole is omitted in M.

[1] *Normanniam*] interdictum Normanniæ, H.

[2] *circa*] Tolosam, ins. H.; om. C., M.

A.D. 1193. March. Richard is given up to the emperor.

Interim Limpoldus dux Austriæ, qui regem Angliæ ceperat, tradidit eum Henrico Romanorum imperatori. Unde idem imperator in hac forma scripsit Philippo regi Francorum; Hoveden, iii. 194.

A.D. 1192. Dec. 28.

Epistola Henrici Romanorum imperatoris ad Philippum regem Franciæ de captione Ricardi regis Angliæ.

Henry VI. writes to Philip the news of the capture of Richard.

"Henricus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, et semper Hoveden, iii. 195.
" Augustus, dilecto et speciali amico suo Philippo, illustri
" Francorum regi, salutem, et sinceræ dilectionis affectum.
" Quoniam imperatoria celsitudo non dubitat regalem magni-
" ficentiam tuam lætiorem effici de universis quibus omnipo-
" tentia Creatoris nostri nos ipsos et Romanum imperium
" honoraverit et exaltaverit; nobilitati tuæ præsentium tenore
" declarare duximus, quod inimicus imperii nostri, et turba-
" tor regni tui, rex Angliæ, cum esset in transeundo mare, ad
He was ship-wrecked between Aquileia and Venice; pursued by Mainard of Goritz:
" partes suas reversurus, accidit ut ventus, rupta navi sua in
" qua ipse erat, duceret eam versus partes Histriæ, ad locum
" qui est inter Aquileyam et Venetias, ubi ipse rex, Dei per-
" missione, passus naufragium cum paucis evasit. Quidam
" itaque fidelis noster comes Maynardus de Gorze, et popu-
" lus regionis illius, audito quod in terra erat, et considerato
" diligentius qualem nominatus rex in terram promissionis
" proditionem et traditionem et perditionis suæ cumulum
escaped capture at Frisach:
" exercuerat, insecuti sunt, intendentes eum captivare. Ipso
" autem rege in fugam converso, ceperunt de suis octo milites.
" Postmodum processit rex ad burgum in archiepiscopatu
" Salzeburgensi, qui vocatur Frisorum, ubi Fredericus de
" Betosowe,[1] rege cum tribus tantum versus Austriam pro-
but was taken near Vienna.
" perante noctu, sex milites de suis cepit. Dilectus autem
" consanguineus noster Limpoldus, dux Austriæ, observata
" strata, impositis ubique custodibus, sæpedictum regem juxta
" Wenam, in villa viciniori, in domo despecta captivavit.
Philip will be pleased with the news.
" Cum itaque nunc in nostra habeatur potestate, et ipse
" semper tuæ molestiæ et turbationibus operam præstiterit;
" ea, quæ præmisimus, nobilitati tuæ insinuare curavimus,
" scientes ea dilectioni tuæ beneplacita existere, et animo tuo Hoveden, iii. 196.
" uberrimam importare lætitiam. Valete, etc.[2]

---

[1] *Betosowe*] Betesowe, M., H.

[2] *Valete, etc.*] Datum apud Rithiencie, v^to^ kalendas Januarii, M., H.—Hoveden here gives a letter of the archbishop of Rouen to the bishop of Durham, transmitting a copy of the emperor's letter, and summoning him to a council at Oxford on Feb. 28, 1193. It is not in M. See Hoveden, iii. 196, 197.

De nunciis missis per justitiarios Angliæ ad quærendum Ricardum regem Angliæ captum. A.D. 119 . March.

Hoveden, iii. 198.

Audita itaque regis captione, Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, et cæteri domini regis justitiarii, miserunt abbatem de Boxeleya, et abbatem de Ponte Roberti, in Alemanniam, ad quærendum regem Angliæ. Qui cum totam Alemanniam peragrassent, et regem non invenissent, Baveriam ingressi sunt, et obviaverunt regi in villa quæ dicitur Oxefer, ubi ducebatur ad imperatorem, habiturus cum eo colloquium in die Palmarum. Et comperto quod prædicti abbates venissent de Anglia, rex præbuit se illis hilarem et affabilem, quærens de statu regni sui, et de fidelitate hominum suorum, et de salute et prosperitate regis Scotiæ, in cujus fide fiducialius innitebatur. Ipsi vero quæ audierant et viderant testificati sunt. Conferentibus itaque illis ad invicem, conquestus est rex super proditione Johannis fratris sui, comitis Moretonii, cui tot beneficia et honores contulerat immensos; qui se regi Franciæ contra eum dederat, et rupto fraternitatis fœdere, fœdus cum morte, et pactum cum inferno [fecerat].[1] Super hoc itaque rex valde contristatus subito in vocem consolationis erupit, dicens; "Jo- "hannes frater meus non est homo qui sibi vi terram subjiciat, "si fuerit qui vim ejus vi saltem tenui repellat."

The abbots of Boxley and Robertsbridge, sent to seek the king, find him shortly before Palm Sunday, March 21, at Ochsenfurth.

He complains to them of the conduct of his brother John.

Is. xxviii. 15.

Hoveden, iii. 199.

In itinere autem per tres dies, usque dum [ad] imperatorem pervenisset, quomodo se habuerit strenue, eleganter et prudenter, mirati sunt universi, judicantes illum dignum imperatoria celsitudine, qui ita novit animo imperare, et fortunæ biformes eventus uniformi constantia superare.

March 19–21 Dignified behaviour of Richard.

Die vero constituto, habito colloquio per internuncios cum imperatore, non potuerunt illo die confœderari, eo quod imperator multa petierat, quibus etiam nec pro mortis periculo rex consentiendum judicavit.

March 21. He fails to satisfy the emperor.

In crastinum autem, omnibus desperantibus, cum successu læto successit læta consolatio. Nam imperatore regem impetente in multis, et objiciente plurima, tum de proditione terræ Suliæ, tum de morte Marchionis, tum de quibusdam conventionibus ad invicem habitis, et non observatis; rex libere, et constanter, et ita intrepide respondit, quod non solum eum imperator gratia vel venia dignum, sed etiam laude judicavit. Nam inclinantem se regem erexit, et suscepit in osculo pacis, et confœderavit eum sibi; et ampliando honoribus et auxiliis,

March 22. He argues his case before the emperor, and convinces him.

[1] *fecerat*] ins. M.; inicrat, H.; om. C.

A.D. 1193. He promises a ransom of 100,000 marks: the emperor is to make peace between him and Philip.

circumstante populo,[1] præ gaudio promisit, asserens quod confœderaret regem Angliæ regi Franciæ. Et tunc quasi pro mercede rex Angliæ centum millia marcarum, mediante duce Austriæ, pro sua liberatione promisit imperatori. Promisitque imperator quod, si [per] operam ejus rex Angliæ et rex Franciæ non possent confœderari, ipse regem Angliæ ad propria remitteret sine pecunia.[2] Hoveden iii. 199.

Richard resigns the kingdom of England to the emperor; and receives it again, under tribute of £5,000 a year.

Ricardus[3] rex Angliæ, in captione Henrici Romanorum imperatoris detentus, ut captionem illam evaderet, consilio Alienor matris suæ, deposuit se de regno Angliæ, et tradidit illud imperatori sicut universorum domino, et investivit eum inde per pilleum suum: sed imperator, sicut prælocutum fuit, statim reddidit ei, in conspectu magnatum Alemanniæ et Angliæ, regnum Angliæ, tenendum de ipso pro quinque millibus librarum sterlingorum singulis annis de tributo solvendis; et investivit eum inde imperator per duplicem crucem de auro. Hoveden, iii. 202, 203.

The emperor at his death released him from this.

Sed idem imperator, in morte sua, de omnibus hiis et aliis conventionibus quietum clamavit ipsum Ricardum regem Angliæ, et hæredes suos.

C.——MºCºXCºIIIº.

Annus quartus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ.

A.D. 1192. Dec. 25. Philip attempts to draw John into fresh treason against his brother.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo tertio, qui erat quartus annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ, Philippus rex Franciæ erat in Francia, die Natalis Domini, quæ feria sexta evenit, multum contristatus et confusus propter hoc, quod senescallus Normanniæ noluit tradere ei Alesiam sororem suam; et frequenter misit nuncios suos in Angliam ad Johannem fratrem regis, comitem Moretonii, mandans ei qualiter rex captivus tenebatur, et quod ipse nunquam exiret de captione imperatoris Alemanniæ; adnectens quod, si ille voluntati illius et consilio adquiesceret, daret ei Alesiam sororem suam in uxorem, et redderet ei Normanniam, Acquitanniam, et Andegaviam, et omnes alias terras transmarinas quas rex Angliæ, pater suus, unquam tenuit; et quod ipse adquireret ei regnum Angliæ.

---

[1] *populo*] et in lacrymas ruente, ins. H.

[2] *pecunia*] Here Hoveden inserts the pope's letter of Jan. 11, 1193, on the crusade, &c. See Hoveden, iii. 199–202. It is not in M. or V.

[3] *Ricardus*] Ricardus rex deposuit se de regno Angliæ, et tradidit Henrico imperatori, qui illud sibi reddidit tenendum de eo pro quinque millibus librarum per annum. M. in marg.

Hoveden, iii. 204.

Ricardus vero rex Angliæ tenebatur in captione imperatoris Alemanniæ. A.D. 1192. Dec. 25.

Richard in prison.

Johannes autem frater regis, comes Moretonii, post[1] Natale Domini transfretavit in Normanniam. In cujus adventu senescallus Normanniæ, et cæteri fideles regis Angliæ, occurrerunt ei, et petierunt ut ipse venisset cum illis ad colloquium apud Alenceun, ad tractandum de negotiis regis, et liberatione ejus. Quibus ille respondit: "Si receperitis me in domi- "num, et juraveritis mihi fidelitatem, vobiscum veniam, et "ero defensor vester apud regem Franciæ; sin autem, ad vos "non veniam." Hiis auditis, proceres Normanniæ noluerunt ei obedire, neque fidelitatem jurare; sperantes dominum suum regem Angliæ, per auxilium Dei, sanum et incolumem reversurum. Deinde Johannes frater regis profectus est ad regem Franciæ, et homo suus devenit de Normannia et cæteris fratris sui terris transmarinis, et de Anglia, ut dicebatur; et juravit quod ipse Alesiam sororem illius in uxorem duceret; et ipse quietum clamavit regi Franciæ in perpetuum Gizorcium, et totum Velgesin de Normande:[2] et rex Franciæ concessit ei, cum prædicta sorore sua, illam partem Flandriæ quæ eum contingebat; et juravit ei, quod pro posse suo juvaret eum ad Angliam, et cæteras terras regis fratris sui, ad opus illius perquirendas.

A.D. 1193. January.

John goes to Normandy.

The Norman barons refuse to swear fealty to him.

He joins Philip, and does homage to him.

He promises to marry Alais, and she is to have part of Flanders for dowry.

Deinde prædictus comes Moretonii rediit in Angliam, multos alienigenas secum adducens; et statim reddita sunt ei castellum de Walingford et de Wyndesovers.

He returns to England, and takes Wallingford and Windsor.

Deinde ipse comes venit Londonias, et [a] Rotomagensi archiepiscopo, et cæteris justitiariis Angliæ, petiit sibi regnum, et fidelitates hominum regni; affirmans quod rex Angliæ frater suus mortuus erat: sed non crediderunt verbis ejus. Ipse [autem a] justitiariis et aliis magnatibus regni repudiatus recessit; et furia invectus castella et munitiones suas munivit, et terras regis fratris sui hostiliter invasit. Confluebant ergo multi ad eum, fallentes semetipsos, quia digno Dei judicio flagellati amiserunt omnia quæ habuerunt. Nam justitiarii Angliæ, et fideles domini regis, viriliter restiterunt comiti Moretonii prædicto, et fecerunt ei damna plurima; et munierunt custodibus portus maris et omnia maritima ita caute, quod Franci et Flandrenses, et cæteri multi, qui præfato comiti auxilium promiserunt, in Angliam applicare ausi non fuerunt. Quidam tamen de cœtu eorum in Angliam applicantes capti fuerunt, et vinculis mancipati.

Hoveden, iii. 205.

He meets the justices at London, and affirms that Richard will never return.

The justices take measures of defence, and attack John.

Invasion prevented.

[1] *post*] Statim post, H., M.

[2] *Velgesin de Normande*] Velgesin le Normand, H.

A.D. 1193. March. Philip invades Normandy, which is defended by the earl of Leicester.

Rex vero Franciæ, immemor sacramenti quod in recessu suo de terra Suliæ fecerat regi Angliæ de pace servanda, hostiliter intravit Normanniam, et terram regis combussit, et prædas abduxit. Tamen Robertus comes Leyrcestriæ,[1] qui paulo ante redierat de terra Suliæ, et cæteri magnates Normanniæ, restiterunt ei viriliter. Hoveden, iii 205.

After Easter, March 28, the abbots of Boxley and Robertsbridge return with the news of the agreement between Richard and the emperor; and of the conduct of Philip.

Interim prædicti abbates de Boxeleia et de Ponte Roberti, quos justitiarii Angliæ ad quærendum regem miserant, redierunt in Angliam post Pascha, narrantes pacem factam fuisse inter imperatorem et regem Angliæ in Cœna Domini, in hunc modum; Quod rex Angliæ dabit imperatori Romanorum centum millia marcarum argenti de redemptione, et inveniet ei quinquaginta galeas cum omni apparatu per unum annum in servitio suo, [et cc. milites per unum annum in servitio suo];[2] et quod ipsi interfuerunt paci illi. Et jam facta concordia venerunt nuncii regis Franciæ, et diffidaverunt dominum regem ex parte ipsius. Quibus imperator continuo respondebat, quod quicunque regem Angliæ inquietaret, et ipsum imperatorem læderet; Hoveden iii. 206.

The emperor attempts to mediate between Richard and Philip.

tantus amor et firma concordia perpetuatur inter eos. Et quia rex Angliæ obtulerat se juri pariturum in curia domini sui regis Franciæ de omnibus quæ rex Franciæ vel aliquis alius de suis partibus [ei] imponeret, imperator cepit colloquium inter ipsum et regem Franciæ, sed non fuit prosecutus.

Richard sends for Alan Trenchemer.

Rex autem Angliæ misit in Angliam pro navibus, et pro Alano Trenchemer, gubernatore suæ navis, et pro obsidibus dandis imperatori super pactis inter illos contractis. Mandavit, et facta sunt universa.

Arrival of Robert de Turnham.

Deinde venit Londonias Robertus de Thurnham, familiaris regis, missus ab eo cum hernesio suo in Angliam.

Windsor besieged by the barons. Doncaster fortified by the justices.

Tunc convenerunt omnes principes regni, et obsederunt Windesovers, castellum comitis Moretonii; Gaufridus vero Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et Hugo Bardulphus justitiarius regis vicecomes Eboraci, et Willelmus de Stotevile, congregatis exercitibus venerunt usque Denecastre, et firmaverunt eam. Et cum archiepiscopus Eboracensis vellet inde procedere, et obsidere Tikeil, castellum comitis Moretonii, Hugo Bardulf et Willelmus de Stotevile consentire noluerunt, quia erant homines comitis Johannis. Tunc recessit ab eis archiepiscopus Eboracensis cum gente sua, vocans eos proditores regis et regni.

The archbishop of York is prevented from besieging Tickhill.

April. Philip takes Gisors and Neaufle by treachery of Gilbert of Vacoeuil.

Interim rex Franciæ in manu forti intravit Normanniam, et obsedit Gizorcium. Gilbertus vero de Wascoil habuit in cus-

[1] MS. C. has a marginal note calling attention to the history of the earl of Leicester. See vol. i. pref. p. xxvi.

[2] *et . . . suo*] om. C., M.

Hoveden, iii. 206.

todia castellum de Gizortio, et castellum de Nefle; et tradidit utrumque regi Franciæ, et adhæsit ei; sed nihili [1] habitus est inter illos, propter proditionem quam fecerat domino suo regi Angliæ; qui miserat eum a Messana cum plenitudine gratiæ suæ in Normanniam, ad prædicta castella custodienda. A.D. 1193. April.

Hoveden, iii. 207.

Deinde venit rex Franciæ Rotomagum, et dixit habitantibus in ea: "Johannes comes Moretonii devenit homo meus de "Anglia, et Normanniam totam et omnes alias terras cisma- "rinas mihi clamavit quietas: et veni huc, ut civitatem "istam, quæ caput est totius Normanniæ, accipiam; et per- "mittite me pacifice intrare, et ero vobis dominus mansuetus "et justus." Cui illi responderunt: "Ecce apertæ sunt "januæ; intrate si vultis; nemo resistit vobis." Et ait rex: "Ego loquar inde cum gente mea." Habito itaque consilio [2] intrare noluit. Rex autem Franciæ ita fraudatus a desiderio suo, recessit a Rotomago cum exercitu suo; et perrarias suas numero xxiiii., quas in circuitu civitatis locaverat, combussit; et fractis vasis vinariis totum vinum suum fudit; et abiit, mandans civibus, quod visitaret eos in virga ferrea. Philip comes to Rouen. The inhabitants bid him enter; but on consideration he retires, and burns his engines.

Rege autem Angliæ moram faciente in custodia imperatoris Romanorum, mirati sunt universi de mora illius; et quidam, per prædicationem comitis Moretonii, qui semper prædicabat illum nunquam rediturum, dubitaverunt de illo, et de reditu illius. Unde factum est, quod Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, et cæteri justitiarii Angliæ, licet comitem Moretonii ad deditionem coegissent, et castellum suum de Windesovers, quod obsederant, fere cepissent, ceperunt a comite Moretonii inducias usque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum, castellis de Notingham, de Tykehil remanentibus in custodia comitis, sicut antea fuerant. Castella vero de Windesovers, et de Walingford, et de Pecco, tradita sunt in manu reginæ Alienor, matris ejusdem comitis Moretonii, et aliorum custodum, qui tradent ea in manu illius, si rex frater suus interim non redierit. Rumours about Richard's prolonged absence. The justices make a truce with John until November. Windsor, Wallingford, and the Peak entrusted to Eleanor.

Hoveden, iii. 208.

Quod cum Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, qui castellum de Tikehil interim obsederat, audisset, doluit vehementer, quia jam securus erat de illo capiendo; et per mandatum prædictorum justitiariorum inde recessit imperfecto negotio. The bishop of Durham unwillingly retires from Tickhill.

Et paulo post venerunt in Angliam nuncii regis cum litteris illius, missi ab eo ad omnes archiepiscopos, episcopos, abbates, comites, barones, et clericos, et francos tenentes: per quos rex humiliter postulavit ut universi, tam clerici quam laici, tale auxilium facerent ei ad redimendum eum, unde Richard demands an aid for his ransom.

[1] *nihili*] vilis, M., H.

[2] *consilio*] cum gente sua, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1193. April.

ipse sciret eis grates: et ut ipsi [hoc] securius facerent, imperator Romanorum scripsit generaliter omnibus[1] hominibus regis Angliæ, mandans eis quod dominus illorum rex Angliæ cum eo[2] composuerat de redemptione sua pecuniaria; sed summam pecuniæ non manifestavit. Dominus vero papa Cœlestinus similiter pro ipso rege scripsit universis viris ecclesiasticis regni Angliæ, ut imperator et totum ipsius regnum subjicerentur anathemati, nisi rex Angliæ celerius liberaretur a captione illius. Similiter præcepit, ut rex Franciæ et regnum ejus anathemati subjacerent, nisi ipse desisteret a persecutione regis Angliæ, quamdiu fuisset in captione imperatoris. Hoveden, iii. 208.

The pope threatens to excommunicate the emperor and the king of France.

Agreement between Richard and the emperor.

Hiis et aliis admonitionibus domini papæ et universorum cardinalium, et consilio virorum sapientium, imperator Romanorum et rex Angliæ facti sunt amici. Unde rex Angliæ in hac forma scripsit universis suis fidelibus per Angliam;[3]

Epistola[4] *Ricardi regis Angliæ ad Elienor reginam matrem suam, et justitiarios Angliæ.*

April 19. Letter of Richard to Eleanor and the justices.

"Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, etc., Alienor eadem "gratia reginæ Angliæ, carissimæ matri suæ, justitiariis "suis, et omnibus fidelibus suis per Angliam constitutis, "salutem.

The bishop of Ely has negotiated an interview with the emperor at Hagenau.

"Notum sit universitati vestræ, quod postquam recesserunt "a nobis dilecti nostri, Hubertus[5] venerabilis episcopus Saresbiriensis, et Willelmus de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia protonotarius noster, venit ad nos carissimus cancellarius noster "Willelmus Elyensis episcopus; et eo inter dominum imperatorem et nos fideliter interloquente, eo usque res pervenit, "quod de castello de Trivellis, in quo detinebamur, obviam "venimus imperatori apud Hagenou, ubi honorifice ab ipso "imperatore et tota curia recepti fuimus. Ibi dominus "imperator et[6] imperatrix nos magnis et variis muneribus "honoraverunt; et, quod præcipuum est, mutuum fœdus "amoris et indissolubile inter dominum imperatorem con- Hoveden, iii. 209.

Formation of a league with the emperor; and terms of ransom.

"tractum est et nos, ita quod uterque nostrum alterum "contra omnes viventes, in jure suo obtinendo et retinendo, "juvare debet. Honeste autem circa ipsum imperatorem

---

[1] *omnibus*] universis, M., H.

[2] *eo*] illo, M., H.

[3] *Angliam*] constitutis, ins. M., H.

[4] *Epistola*] Litteræ regis Ricardi de auxilio habendo ad deliberandum eum, M. in marg. The salutation is given in full in M., as in Hoveden.

[5] *Hubertus*] Hugo, C., M.

[6] *et*] domina, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 209.

" moram facimus, donec ipsius et nostra quædam negotia per- A.D. 1193. April 19.
" ficiantur, et donec ei septuaginta millia marcas argenti
" solverimus. Quare vos rogamus, et in fide, qua nobis tene- The king charges his faithful to do their utmost to raise the money; and promises repayment.
" mini, adjuramus, quatenus in hac pecunia perquirenda
" solliciti sitis; et vos justitiarii nostri, qui aliis in regno
" nostro præestis, exemplum aliis præbeatis: ut ita honorifice
" et magnifice de proprio nobis subveniatis, et[1] etiam de hiis
" quæ de aliis mutuo accipere poteritis, ut aliis fidelibus
" nostris exemplum detis similia faciendi. Universum autem
" aurum et argentum ecclesiarum diligenti observatione, et
" scripti testimonio, ab ecclesiarum ipsarum prælatis acci-
" piatis; eisque per sacramentum vestrum, et aliorum baronum
" nostrorum, quos volueritis, affirmetis, quod eis plenarie re-
" stituentur. Universorum etiam baronum nostrorum obsides The barons are also to furnish hostages to go to Germany.
" recipiatis, ut cum fidelissimus cancellarius noster, quam
" cito peractis in Alemannia negotiis nostris, in Angliam
" venerit, eosdem obsides penes carissimam matrem nostram
" reginam reperiat, ut eos, de quibus inter nos et dominum
" imperatorem convenit, expedite possit ad nos transmittere;
" ne liberatio nostra per absentiam obsidum et negligentiam
" vestram moram patiatur. Pecunia autem collecta similiter
" matri meæ, et illis quibus illa[2] voluerit, tradatur. Quem The king will be grateful.

Hoveden, iii. 210.

" autem in necessitate nostra promptum inveniemus, in suis
" necessitatibus amicum nos reperiet et remuneratorem;
" gratiusque nobis erit, si quis in absentia nostra in aliquo
" nobis subveniat, quam si in præsentia nostra in duplo quis
" nobis subveniret. Volumus autem ut singulorum magna-
" tum nomina et subventiones qui præsentialiter fient, per
" sigillum matris nostræ nobis significentur, ut sciamus
" quantum unicuique in gratiarum teneamur actione. Sciatis The terms made with the emperor are well worth the money.
" pro certo quod si in Anglia in potestate libera nostra
" essemus constituti, tantam vel majorem pecuniam domino
" imperatori daremus, quam modo damus pro pactionibus
" consequendis, quas per Dei gratiam consecuti fuimus;
" et si etiam pecuniam non præ manibus haberemus, pro-
" prium corpus nostrum imperatori traderemus, donec pe-
" cunia solveretur; antequam quod factum est relinqueretur
" imperfectum. In bulla autem domini imperatoris aurea
" fert vobis cancellarius noster prædictam testificationem.
" Testibus,[3] etc."

---

[1] *et*] ut, C.
[2] *illa*] ipsa, H.; om. M.
[3] *Testibus*] nobismet ipsis apud Hagenou, xiii. kalendas Maii, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1193. April.

De auxilio ad redemptionem regis statuto.

Great aid levied in England for the king's ransom, by the queen and justices.

Auctoritate autem[1] litterarum istarum, mater regis et justitiarii Angliæ statuerunt, quod universi, tam clerici quam laici, quartam partem redditus sui de hoc anno darent ad redemptionem domini regis, et tantum superadderent de mobilibus suis, unde rex deberet eis grates scire; et de unoquoque feodo militis viginti solidos, et de abbatiis ordinis Cisterciensis, et de domibus ordinis de Sempingham, totam lanam suam de hoc anno; et universum aurum et argentum ecclesiarum, sicut rex in mandato suo præceperat. Hoveden, iii. 210. Hoveden, iii. 211.

Return of the chancellor with the emperor's letter.

Deinde venit in Angliam ex parte domini regis prædictus cancellarius suus, afferens litteras domini imperatoris, aurea bulla imbullatas, in hac forma;

Epistola Henrici imperatoris Romanorum ad magnates Angliæ pro Ricardo rege.

April 19. The emperor writes to the prelates and barons.

"Henricus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, et semper "Augustus, dilectis sibi archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus, "baronibus et nobilibus, et omnibus ad quos præsens scriptum "pervenerit, in Anglia constitutis, salutem et bonam voluntatem.

He urges them to show their faith to their king; and promises gratitude.

"Dignum judicavimus, et nostræ celsitudini gloriosum, si "universitatem vestram sollicitius inducamus ad ea modis "omnibus quibus potestis agenda, quæ ad honorem carissimi "nostri illustris regis Ricardi, domini vestri, debeantur; ne "devotionis vestræ constantia et meritum fidei circa ipsius "commoda appareat mortuum, sed in suis et in regni sui "obsequiis vivere videatur. Sane omnibus, quorum devotio "dicto regi absenti sincera exstiterit et pura, uberes refe- "remus gratiarum actiones; ad universitatis vestræ notitiam "devenire volentes, quod imperialis[2] sublimitas cum regia "ipsius nobilitate in concordia et bona pace consistit. Unde "quæcunque ipsi irrogata fuerint contraria, pariter cum eo "nobis parient molestiam et gravamen. Quare ad devotorum "suorum et fidelium honorem et profectum, et turbatorum "suorum damnationem et exterminium, operam præstabimus "semper efficacem, et quia corde et animo uniti sumus, facta "regis vestri specialiter nostri et imperii nostri penitus re-

The two have made alliance, offensive and defensive.

[1] *autem*] igitur, M., H. | [2] *imperialis*] imperatoria, H.

Hoveden, iii. 211, 212.

" putabimus; et gravamina ejus nobis et coronæ imperiali " illata censemus; nec ea, Deo concedente, sine ultione, et " eorum, qui ea intulerint, gravi damno et destructione, trans- " ibimus. Datum, etc." [1] A.D. 1193. April.

Deinde post pacem istam inter imperatorem et regem Angliæ ordinatam, ipse imperator cepit colloquium inter ipsum et regem Franciæ, de pace facienda inter illum et regem Angliæ, mediante Willelmo Remensi archiepiscopo, regis Franciæ avunculo, et regis Angliæ consanguineo; et statuerunt diem colloquii inter Valculur et Tulun, in crastino Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, feria sexta. Proposed interview, on June 25, between Philip and the emperor, which does not come off.

Cancellarius vero regis cum in Angliam intravit, cum humilitate magna ad Sanctum Albanum accessit; ubi occurrerunt ei domina regina mater regis, et [2] Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, et alii justitiarii domini regis. Ibi etiam bullam domini imperatoris auream, fœdus indissolubile inter dominum imperatorem et dominum regem continentem, prædictus cancellarius justitiariis porrexit; asserens, quod nec ut justitia, nec ut legatus, nec ut cancellarius, sed ut simplex episcopus in Angliam venit; sed nec ut incola, sed ut hospes, immo tantum ut nuncius domini regis. Injunxit etiam quibusdam baronibus, quod cum eo ad dominum regem venirent: cum [3] Gilberto episcopo Roffensi, et Seegfredo episcopo Cicestrensi, et Benedicto abbati de Burgo, et Ricardo comiti de Clare, et comiti Rogero Bigot, et Gaufrido de Say, et aliis quamplurib us. The chancellor received at St. Alban's by the queen and the justices. The king summons certain prelates and barons.

Ibi etiam dispositum est, penes quem pecunia collata debeat residere: scilicet sub custodia Huberti Walteri Cantuariensis electi, et domini Ricardi Londoniensis episcopi, et Willelmi comitis de Arundel, et Hamelini comitis de Warenna, et majoris Londoniarum, sub sigillo dominæ reginæ matris regis, et sigillo domini Rotomagensis archiepiscopi. Guardians of the ransom appointed.

Hoveden, iii. 213.

Et est notandum, quod post adventum Huberti Walteri Saresbiriensis episcopi in Angliam, convenerunt in unum monachi metropolitanæ ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, et elegerunt sibi in archiepiscopum prædictum Hubertum [4] episcopum. Contra cujus electionem Herbertus [5] Cantuariensis archidiaconus appellavit ad summum pontificem; tum quia rex in captione erat, tum quia episcopi Angliæ, quorum est interesse May. Election of Hubert Walter as archbishop of Canterbury. Protest of the archdeacon.

[1] *etc.*] apud Hagenou (Agenou, M.), xiii. kal. Maii, M., H.

[2] *et*] dominus, ins. M., H.

[3] *cum*] videlicet, M., H.

[4] *Hubertum*] Saresbiriensem, ins. M., H.

[5] *Herbertus*] Hubertus, C., M.

A.D. 1193. electioni Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, non interfuerunt electioni illi. Hoveden, iii. 213.

Death of Saladin, in March. Eodem anno, [dum] rex Angliæ erat in captione imperatoris, Salaadinus obiit in prima hebdomada Quadragesimæ. Unde dux Venetiæ in hac forma scripsit;[1]

Epistola Dandoli, ducis Venetiæ, Dalmatiæ, ad Ricardum regem Angliæ, de morte Saladini.

Letter of the Doge of Venice to Richard on Saladin's death. "Serenissimo domino suo Ricardo, Dei gratia regi Angliæ, "etc.,[2] Henricus Dandolus, eadem gratia Venetiæ, Dalmatiæ, "atque Chroatiæ[3] dux, salutem et sinceræ dilectionis obsequium. Certa nobis relatione noveritis intimatum quod "inimicus ille Christianæ religionis Saladinus interiit. "Cujus quidam filiorum, quem totius dominii sui dicitur "constituisse hæredem, in Damasco versatur. Alter vero "Babiloniæ et Alexandriæ dominatur. Frater autem ejus "est in circuitu Babilonis cum exercitu copioso; et est "dissensio maxima inter eos. Valete."

June. On the approach of the day fixed for Philip's interview with the emperor, the German princes take alarm, and Richard fears for his release. Interim appropinquante termino colloquii inter imperatorem et regem Franciæ, rex Angliæ per certa indicia cognovit quod, si colloquium illud haberetur, imperator et rex Franciæ confœderarentur contra archiepiscopos Coloniensem et Maguntinum, et contra duces de Luvain, et de Lemburc, et Saxoniæ, et multos alios magnates et nobiles, qui conspiraverant contra imperatorem propter necem episcopi de Leges, fratris ducis de Luvain, quam[4] imperator machinatus erat. Timebat etiam rex Angliæ quod, si colloquium illud haberetur, ipse sine dubio traderetur in manus regis Franciæ. Unde rex Angliæ plurimum se intromisit, ut colloquium[5] deficeret, et pax inter imperatorem et prædictos magnates fieret. Ad illius igitur instantiam imperator et prædicti magnates inter se pacis fœdus et concordiæ inierunt in hunc modum, videlicet: "Quod imperator jurare fecit episcopos quamplures, et "comites et barones, in animam suam, quod ille nec præ-"cepit nec voluit ut prædictus episcopus de Leges occide-"retur; et quando hoc scivit, vehementer inde doluit. Et "de satisfactione reddidit unicuique prædictorum virorum, Hoveden, iii. 214.

He procures a reconciliation between the emperor and the kinsmen of the murdered bishop of Liege.

---

[1] *scripsit*] prædicto regi Angliæ, ins. M., H.

[2] *etc.*] duci Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, comiti Andegaviæ, M., H.

[3] *Chroatiæ*] Cher., C., M.

[4] *quam*] quem, C., M.

[5] *colloquium*] illud, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 214.

" qui contra eum conspiraverant, omnia castella quæ pater A.D. 1193.
" suus vel quæ ipse eis abstulerat, et sic facti sunt amici;
" excepto duce Saxoniæ." Et colloquium illud, quod inter The conference is prevented.
illum et regem Franciæ esse debuit apud Valculur, adnihilatum est.

Hiis itaque peractis, imperator die Veneris proxima post June 25-29.
festum Nativitatis Sancti Johannis venit Wermasiam, ubi Interview of Richard with the emperor at Worms.
dominus rex Angliæ erat. Et ibi colloquium celebratum
est inter eos per quatuor dies; cui interfuerunt episcopi de
Hoveden, iii. 215. partibus illis, et duces de Luvain et de Lemburc, et comites On the fourth day Richard's friends arrive.
et barones multi: et ex parte regis Angliæ interfuerunt
episcopi Bathoniensis et Elyensis; et quarta die, scilicet
vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli, venerunt ad regem Angliæ
Willelmus Briwere, et Baldewinus de Betun,[1] et adhuc omnes
penitus desperaverunt de liberatione regis Angliæ. Sed per June 29.
Dei misericordiam ipso die apostolorum[2] omnino convenit New terms of ransom.
inter imperatorem et regem, hoc modo; "Dominus rex dabit
" imperatori centum millia marcarum puri argenti ad pondus
" Coloniæ, et alia quinquaginta millia marcarum argenti pro
" auxilio, quod deberet conferre imperatori ad Apuliam
" acquirendam. Præterea rex dabit sororem Arthuri ducis New marriage for Eleanor of Brittany.
" Britanniæ, nepotis sui, uxorem filio ducis Austriæ. Et
" liberabit imperatorem Cypri sine restitutione imperii;
" similiter et filiam ejusdem imperatoris, quam faciet tradi
" duci Ostricii, ut avunculo suo. Prædicta vero centum The conduct of the ransom money.
" millia marcarum debet dominus rex conducere suo periculo
" usque ad terminos imperii; et quam cito intrabunt in
" aliquam partem imperii, dominus rex libere et quiete
" redibit cum salvo conductu in Angliam." Et hoc jura- Exchange of oaths.
verunt in animam imperatoris episcopi, duces, comites, et
omnes nobiles qui interfuerunt. Unde cirographum factum est
inter imperatorem et regem Angliæ sic ;[3]

Forma compositionis factæ inter Henricum Romanorum imperatorem et Ricardum regem Angliæ.

" In nomine Patris, etc.[4] Hæc est forma compositionis inter Form of treaty between Henry VI. and Richard
" dominum imperatorem, semper Augustum, et dominum Ri-
" cardum, illustrem regem Angliæ. Dominus imperator mittet
" nuncios suos cum nunciis domini regis, qui Londonias ibunt,

[1] *Betun*] Betonia, M.
[2] *apostolorum*] Petri et Pauli, ins. M., H.
[3] *sic*] in hac forma, M., H.
[4] *etc.*] Filii, et Spiritus Sancti, Amen, M., H.

A.D. 1193. June 29. Arrangement for the safe conduct of the ransom; 100,000 marks;

"et ibi recipient centum millia marcarum puri argenti ad pondus Coloniæ. Quæ pecunia a nunciis imperatoris accepta, et ponderata, sigillabitur in præsentia nunciorum ipsius, et in conductu regis per regni sui terminos ducetur: ita ut si eam in regno suo perdi contigerit, periculo regis perdatur. Postquam vero ad terminos imperii venerit dicta pecunia, per nuncios regis nunciis domini imperatoris præsentabitur, qui eam illico ibi recipient, et si forte in partibus imperii eam perdi contigerit, periculo imperatoris perdetur, et rex in ea non tenebitur, nec obsides sui. Alia quoque quinquaginta millia marcarum argenti dabit rex imperatori et duci Austriæ, et pro illis ponet obsides: scilicet, domino imperatori pro triginta millibus marcis sexaginta obsides; duci vero Austriæ septem obsides pro viginti millibus marcis. Solutis ergo centum millibus marcis, et datis obsidibus, rex libere recedet. Si autem dominus rex solverit promissionem, quam domino imperatori de Henrico quondam duce Saxoniæ fecerat, imperator, de quinquaginta millibus marcis regem liberum dimittens et absolutum, pro ipso rege solvet duci Austriæ viginti millia marcarum, et rex non tenebitur dare duci Austriæ septem obsides, nec imperatori sexaginta. Cum igitur rex prædictam promissionem de Henrico quondam duce Saxoniæ impleverit, et centum millia marcarum solverit, libere recedet. Præterea rex fecit jurare in animam suam, quod neptem suam, filiam comitis Britanniæ, tradet nuptui filio ducis Austriæ, infra septem menses postquam liberatus fuerit, et in terram suam redierit; et eam transmittet usque ad introitum imperii, si eam recipere voluerint; et si noluerint, erit absolutus. Item si promissio de Henrico prædicto[1] duce Saxoniæ completa non fuerit, quinquaginta millia marcarum, quæ residua sunt, solventur infra septem menses postquam dominus rex in terram suam redierit. Cum autem rex liberatus fuerit, et redire voluerit, imperator dabit ei conductum per terram suam usque ad fines imperii, et in portu illo, ubi mare intrabit, quamdiu ibi stabit, donec prospero vento recedat. Præterea ea omnia, quæ tam in hiis quam in aliis familiaribus sigillatis litteris sigillis imperatoris et regis, super contractibus qui inter eos ordinati sunt, uterque pro parte sua rata et firma habebit, et bona fide observabit."

Hoveden, iii. 216.

hostages to be given for 50,000 marks.

Arrangement for the marriage of Eleanor with a son of the duke of Austria.

The emperor is to give the king a safe escort.

Dismay of Philip and John.

Quod cum rex Franciæ audisset, statim mandavit comiti Johanni, ut ipse sibi caveret, quia diabolus jam solutus erat. Comes autem Johannes, sciens hoc de rege fratre suo dictum

Hoveden, iii. 217.

[1] *prædicto*] quondam, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 217.

fuisse, statim transfretavit de Anglia in Normanniam, et adhæsit regi Franciæ, non ausus exspectare adventum regis fratris sui in Angliam.

A.D. 1193. July. John joins Philip in Normandy.

Deinde rex Angliæ misit Willelmum Elyensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, et Willelmum Briwere, et alios[1] sapientes ad regem Franciæ, ad pacem cum illo faciendam qualemcunque. Qui pacem fecerunt cum illo in hac forma;

Peace arranged between Richard and Philip.

Pax facta inter regem Franciæ et regem Angliæ, per Willelmum Eliensem episcopum et cæteros regis Angliæ nuncios, sed non servata.

July 9. The ambassadors, the chancellor, William des Roches, John des Preaux, and William Brewer, made the peace.

"Noverint universi ad quos litteræ præsentes pervenerint, "quod Willelmus, regis Angliæ cancellarius, Elyensis episco- "pus, sedis apostolicæ legatus, et cum eo Willelmus de Ru- "pibus, et Johannes de Pratellis, et Willelmus Briwere, ex "parte regis Angliæ cum litteris ejusdem regis patentibus ad "regem Franciæ accesserunt: in quibus continebatur, quod "ipsi ea quæ cum ipso agerent et ordinarent, ipse rex An- "gliæ rata prorsus et firma haberet. Ipsi autem hoc modo "egerunt, et istas conventiones cum rege Franciæ ex parte "domini sui regis Angliæ fecerunt. Rex Angliæ Ricardus "mittit se super dominum suum regem Franciæ de tota terra "quam rex Franciæ adquisivit super se et homines suos, de "qua ipse et homines sui sunt tenentes, quod ipse tantum "inde retinebit, quantum ipse voluerit, sibi et suis. De comite "autem Johanne sic erit; quod si homines regis Angliæ po- "terunt sufficienter monstrare in curia domini regis Franciæ, "quod idem Johannes juraverit ad perquirendam pecuniam "ad liberationem regis Angliæ, et de hoc dederit litteras suas, "ipse Johannes tenebitur ad solvendum, et totam terram "quam ipse tenebat quando rex Angliæ frater ejus iter arri- "puit ultra mare, tenebit, citra mare et ultra, ita libere sicut "prius tenebat; excepto eo, quod liber erit a sacramento quod "fecerat de non intranda terra Angliæ; et de hoc dictus rex "Angliæ faciet dominum Johannem securum per se, et per "barones, et per archiepiscopos et episcopos terræ suæ, et "insuper per regem Franciæ. Si autem comes Johannes vellet

Arrangement as to the late captures.

As to John: he is to pay the money he has collected for the king's ransom, and to be freed from his oath not to visit England.

Hoveden, iii. 218.

"negare, quod litteræ illæ non essent suæ, aut quod illud non "jurasset, homines regis Angliæ sufficienter in curia domini "regis Franciæ monstrabunt, per idoneos testes, quod jura- "verit ad quærendam pecuniam ad liberationem regis Angliæ. "Si autem monstratum fuerit, sicut dictum est, quod comes

[1] *alios*] viros, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1193. July 9. Terms as regards John.

" juraverit ad quærendam pecuniam ad liberationem regis, " vel si defecerit ad recipiendam monstrationem, rex Franciæ " non intromittet se de comite Johanne, si pacem de terra " sua prædicta recipere voluerit. Hoveden, iii. 218.

As regards the count of Blois.

" De comite Lodowico sic fiet:[1] rex Angliæ assignabit ei in " terra sua, ad laudem et consilium regis Franciæ et archi- " episcopi Remensis, quingentas libratas Andegavensium de " redditibus annuatim, aut plus si plus fuerit, et faciet affi- " dare ei, quod ipse comiti faciet Lodowico justitiam, et ser- " vitium quod pater suus fecit comiti Theobaldo, et ipse rex " Angliæ comiti Lodowico reddet tantum pecuniæ, quantum " retinuit post mortem comitis Theobaldi, de eo, quod debebat " ei reddere.

As regards Hugh de Gurnay.

" De Hugone Gurnay sic erit: Hugo totam terram, quam " alicubi tenebat, tenebit de rege Franciæ, nisi sit quod Hugo " bona voluntate, absque coactione aliqua, et sine defectu " regis Franciæ, voluerit redire ad regem Angliæ; et rex " Franciæ Hugonem super hoc libenter rogabit, absque inde[2] " faciendo, et aliquid de suo mittendo. Si autem Hugo no- " luerit redire ad regem Angliæ, cum terra quam de rege " Franciæ tenet, et aliam terram suam de Anglia et de Nor- " mannia vellet tenere de rege Angliæ, neque excambium " pro illa terra recipere, nec aliquam pacem exinde per re- " gem Franciæ et regem Angliæ recipere, oportebit regem " Angliæ facere grantum Hugoni rationabiliter.

As regards the counts of Angoulême;

" Comes Engolismus et sui liberabuntur, et salvo redibunt " in terram suam; et ipse et sui erunt in eo statu quo fue- " runt ante guerram; neque propter aliquid quod de guerra " fecerit, malum eis aut suis fiet.

Perche;

" Comes Perticii redditus suos in Anglia integre habebit, " et rex Angliæ et sui pacem ei tenebunt.

and Meulan.

" Comes Mellenti terram suam rehabebit, quæ est in terra " regis Angliæ.

" Quando rex Angliæ revenerit in pacem regis Franciæ, " ipse faciet regi Franciæ servitia et justitias in curia regis " Franciæ de singulis feodis quos ab eo tenet, sicut singulus " feodus apportat. Præterea rex Angliæ dat regi Franciæ " viginti millia marcarum boni argenti et puri ad pondus " Trecensis, persolvendas per duos annos ibidem, hiis termi- " nis: ad primum dimidium annum a die liberationis suæ " de captione imperatoris quinque millia marcarum; et ab " eo termino ad proximo sequentem dimidium annum quin- " que millia marcarum: et exinde ad proximo sequentem " dimidium annum quinque millia marcarum; [et exinde ad Hoveden, iii. 219.

Payments to be made by Richard to Philip, for which Loches, Chatillon-sur-Indre, Driencourt, and Arques are pledged.

[1] *fiet*] erit, M., H.

[2] *inde*] So C., M.; vim, H.

Hoveden, iii. 219.

" proximo sequentem dimidium annum quinque millia mar- A.D. 1193. July 9.
" carum][1] argenti. Et pro hiis conventionibus omnibus ob-
" servandis rex Angliæ tradet regi Franciæ Locas, et Castel-
" lionem supra Edriam; et archiepiscopo Remensi Driencurt
" et Arches. Hæc autem quatuor castella custodientur ad
" expensas regis Angliæ; ita tamen quod pro Lochis et Castel-
" lione custodiendis, Willelmus de Rupibus, aut ille qui loco
" ejus erit, tradet regi Franciæ duo millia librarum Andega-
" vensium singulis mensibus, quantum ad mensem continget,
" et semper de victualibus apponet in illis duobus castellis
" ad duos menses; in Luches ad undecim milites et centum Arrange-
" et quadraginta servientes, in Castellione ad quatuor milites ments for their secu-
" et quadraginta servientes. De Driencurt et de Arches se- rity.
" nescallus Normanniæ faciet, pro victualibus et custodia, ad
" grantum et voluntatem archiepiscopi Remensis. Similiter
" victualia apponentur a senescallo Normanniæ in istis duobus
" castellis semper sufficientia ad duos menses, secundum quod
" archiepiscopus Remensis dicet.

" Si omnes prædictæ conventiones integre observatæ fuerint Arrange-
" regi Franciæ; et quando ex parte regis Angliæ solutæ ments for their restor-
" fuerint regi Franciæ quinque millia marcarum argenti, rex ation.
" Franciæ reddet ei unum de prædictis quatuor castellis,
" quod rex Franciæ voluerit. Et iterum quando quinque
" millia marcarum solutæ fuerint regi Franciæ ex parte regis
" Angliæ, rex Franciæ reddet illi[2] unum de illis quatuor cas-
" tellis, quod rex Franciæ voluerit. Si vero decem millia
" marcarum redditæ fuerint simul egi Franciæ ex parte
" regis Angliæ, rex Franciæ reddet illi duo de illis quatuor
" castellis, quæ rex Franciæ voluerit. Si vero quindecim
" millia marcarum simul redditæ fuerint regi Franciæ, rex
" Franciæ reddet illi tria de illis quatuor castellis, quæ rex
" Franciæ voluerit. Si simul viginti millia marcarum redditæ
Hoveden, iii. 220. " fuerint regi Franciæ, prædicta quatuor castella reddentur
" regi Angliæ. Rex autem Franciæ nullum de illis quatuor
" castellis reddet, nisi prædictæ conventiones ei et suis fue-
" rint observatæ, de præfata sibi pecunia reddenda, de comite
" Johanne, de comite Lodowico, de comite Engolismi et suis,
" de comite Perticii, de comite Mellenti. Quando vero rex
" Franciæ habuerit Locas et Castellionem, et archiepiscopus
" Remensis Driencurt et Arches, rex Franciæ recipiet regem
" Angliæ in gratiam suam pro exsequendo conventiones præ-
" dictas, sicut carta præsens dicit, et rogabit imperatorem de
" liberatione regis Angliæ.

---

[1] *et exinde . . . marcarum*] om. C. | [2] *illi*] ei, M., H.

A.D. 1193. July 9. Oaths of the envoys; and of the sureties.

"Prædictus autem cancellarius, et Willelmus de Rupibus, et Johannes de Pratellis, et Willelmus Briwere, in animam regis Angliæ juraverunt, quod rex Angliæ conventiones, quæ in carta præsenti continentur, observabit; et quando rex Angliæ redierit, ipse in propria persona jurabit, infra rationabilem terminum postquam a rege Franciæ summonitus fuerit, se prædictas conventiones servaturum, et literas suas patentes ei inde daturum. Præfati autem quatuor, et cum eis constabularius Normanniæ, et Robertus de Harencurt, et Stephanus de Longo-campo, juraverunt, quod si rex Angliæ dictas conventiones non observaret, se mitterent Parisius in captione regis Franciæ. Hoveden, iii. 220.

Oaths of the bishops and barons of England to be taken.

"Archiepiscopi, episcopi, barones terræ regis Angliæ, quos rex Franciæ voluerit, quando requisiti fuerint, jurabunt quod ipsi se Parisius in captione regis Franciæ ponent, si rex Angliæ prædictas convèntiones non servaverit, sicut præsens carta dicit: et si rex Angliæ moreretur antequam rex Franciæ reddidisset præfata quatuor castella, rex Franciæ illa quatuor castella reddet recto hæredi pro exsequendo prædictas conventiones, sicut præsens carta continet, et salvo jure regis Franciæ.

Sealing by the envoys.

"Quæ omnia prædicta, ut rata permaneant,[1] ego Willelmus Elyensis, etc."[2]

De archiepiscopatu Cantuariensi dato Huberto Saresbiriensi episcopo.

Ecclesiastical appointments made by Richard during his captivity.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ, dum adhuc esset in captione Romanorum imperatoris, dedit Huberto Walteri, Saresbiriensi episcopo, archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem; et Savarico, archidiacono Northamtoniæ, episcopatum Batoniensem; et Henrico Marescallo, Eboracensis ecclesiæ decano, episcopatum Exoniensem; et magistro Philippo,[3] clerico suo,[4] archidiaconatum Cantuariæ; et Henrico abbati Glastingburiensi,[5] episcopatum Wygornensem; et prædicto Savarico,[6] abbatiam de Hoveden, iii. 221.

---

[1] *permaneant*] et inconcussa, ins. M., H.

[2] *etc.*] "episcopus, regis Angliæ "cancellarius, et ego Willelmus de "Rupibus, et ego Johannes de Pra- "tellis, et ego Willelmus Briwere, "per præceptum regis Angliæ, do- "mini nostri, sigillorum nostrorum "attestatione roboravimus. Actum "Meduntæ (Meduneæ, M.), anno ab "Incarnatione Domini M°C°XC°III°., "vii°. (viii°. M.) idus Julii." M., H.

[3] *Philippo*] Pictavensi, ins. M., H.

[4] *suo*] dedit rex, ins. M., H.

[5] *Glastinburiensi*] dedit, ins. M., H.

[6] *Savarico*] Bathoniensi episcopo dedit, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 221.

Glastingburia. Electo itaque Henrico Marescallo, Eboracensis ecclesiæ decano, ad episcopatum Exoniensem, Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, tunc temporis moram faciens apud Ripunt, dedit Petro fratri suo decanatum Eboraci.[1] Sed quia prædictus Petrus tunc[2] Parisius erat, et Ricardus rex Angliæ instanter petebat ut archiepiscopus daret decanatum illum Johanni præposito de Duay, fratri advocati de Betun, idem archiepiscopus, consilio suorum fretus, dedit decanatum illum Simoni Apulo, clerico suo, et sic liberavit se a petitione regis.

A.D. 1193. Disputes about the deanery of York. It is given first to Peter, the archbishop's brother; then to John de Bethune; then to Simon of Apulia.

De discordia inter Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum et canonicos suos.

Hoveden, iii. 222.

Sed postmodum archiepiscopus cum vellet contra factum suum venire, dicens præfato Simoni quod non dederat ei decanatum illum, nisi in custodia ad opus Petri fratris sui, canonici Eboracensis ecclesiæ communiter elegerunt sibi præfatum Simonem in decanum contra voluntatem archiepiscopi.

The canons elect Simon of Apulia as dean.

Unde factum est quod idem archiepiscopus, ut placeret regi, dedit prædicto magistro Philippo, clerico[3] domini regis, dictum[4] decanatum; et sic orta est discordia inter ipsum archiepiscopum et canonicos suos.[5]

The archbishop gives the deanery to Philip of Poictou.

Eodem tempore, cum Ricardus rex Angliæ in reditu suo a terra Jerosolimitana captus esset, et in Alemannia detentus, et jam inter imperatorem et ipsum de se per pecuniam redimendo convenerat, ipsi archiepiscopo terræ suæ custodiam præcipue, et corporis sui liberationem litteris suis commisit. Quo mandato suscepto, fraternæ captionis miseria commotus, canonicos, quos magis familiares habebat, quos etiam ditaverat et exaltaverat, vocavit, monuit, et rogavit, ut quartam partem reddituum suorum ad præfati regis liberationem conferrent, sicut in aliis partibus regni factum est. Qui renuentes, et concanonicos suos in partes suas trahentes, asserebant eum in hoc casu et in consimilibus libertates ecclesiæ suæ velle subvertere; et sic ab ejus familiaritate, colloquio, et consortio discesserunt.

Exactions of the archbishop from the canons for the king's ransom.

Their complaints.

[1] *Eboraci*] præsentibus Hamone præcentore, et Simone Apulo, et aliis clericis suis quampluribus, ins. M., H.

[2] *tunc*] temporis, ins. M., H.

[3] *clerico*] et familiari, ins. M., H.

[4] *dictum*] præfatum, M., H.

[5] *suos*] cujus hæc fuit origo et initium, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1193. The appointment to the deanery disputed.

Tunc temporis, ut supra dictum est, vacabat Eboracensis ecclesiæ decanatus; cujus donationem ad se pertinere archiepiscopus, electionem vero suam esse capitulum asserebat. Ideoque ad sedem apostolicam ex parte archiepiscopi est appellatum. Capitulum nihilominus ad electionem magistri Simonis Apuli in decanum processerunt. Hoc facto, dictus Simon ad regem, qui, ut dictum est, erat in Alemannia, transfretavit. Missi sunt etiam ad sedem apostolicam ab archiepiscopo nuncii ad prosequendam appellationem, ita tamen ut per Alemanniam usque ad regem transitum facerent. Illis ad regem venientibus, eoque salutato, et itineris sui causis expositis, interdixit rex statim, ne alterutra partium ob has causas ad curiam accederet Romanam; inhibens ne regnum suum ingrederetur qui sine ejus assensu hoc aggredi præsumeret, proponens se pacem inter illos sine dilatione reformaturum. Rediit itaque unus ex nunciis archiepiscopi ad ipsum, cum litteris regis continentibus ut ad eum cum omni festinatione veniret; sicut etiam proposuerat, sed casu emergente præpeditus est.

Hoveden, iii. 222.

Geoffrey appeals to the pope.

Hoveden, iii. 223.

Simon goes to the king in Germany.

Richard forbids the appeal to the pope.

The canons suspend all service in the Cathedral, and lock out the archbishop.

Medio siquidem tempore canonici Eboraci ecclesiam majorem a consueta Divina celebrandi solemnitate, campanas etiam a solito pulsandi officio suspenderunt; et ob id tota civitas commota fuit: altaria etiam denudaverant; stallum archiepiscopi in choro sera præcluserant; ostium per quod ei a palatio suo et capella descendenti in ecclesiam patebat ingressus, sera obstruxerant; et alia plura in ejus contumeliam fecerant. Unde et ipse a mari, ubi transfretare paratus erat, ad ecclesiam suam rediens, clericos quosdam præmisit, monens et præcipiens ecclesiæ ipsius ministris, ut, antiqua forma servata, in ea ministrarent. Qui ejus admonitionem et præceptum contemnentes, ecclesiam vacuam reliquerunt, et a Divino officio destitutam.

The pall sent to archbishop Hubert.

Eodem anno Clemens papa misit Huberto Walteri, Cantuariensi electo, pallium.

August. Marriage of Philip with a Danish princess.

Et[1] Philippus rex Franciæ desponsavit[2] Batildam, filiam Waldemari quondam regis Dacorum, sororem Canuti regis Dacorum,[3] mense Septembris, apud Amiens, Sabbato: et in crastino fecit eam coronari et consecrari in reginam Franciæ, coram nunciis [regis] Dacorum, qui eam ad eum duxerant: scilicet ea intentione, quod prædictus rex Dacorum veniret in Angliam cum navali exercitu. Sed in crastino primæ noctis, qua dictus[4] rex Franciæ illam uxorem suam cognoverat,

Hoveden, iii. 224.

He takes a dislike to her.

---

[1] *Et*] Eodem anno, M., H.

[2] *desponsavit*] sibi, ins. M., H.

[3] *regis Dacorum*] modo regnantis, H.; om. M.

[4] *dictus*] prædictus, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 224.

voluit eam dimittere secreti sui conscius. Et cum ipse vellet eam tradere in manu nunciorum fratris sui, ad reducendam in patriam suam, noluerunt eam recipere, sed abeuntes cum festinatione, reversi sunt in regiones suas, et illa remansit in custodia regis Franciæ mariti sui. Et paulo post factum est divortium inter illos per Willelmum Remensem archiepiscopum, et per sacramentum Reginaldi Carnotensis et Philippi Belvacensis episcoporum, et aliorum comitum,[1] et aliorum multorum; qui juraverunt quod prædicta filia regis Dacorum erat consanguinea comitis de Hennou, cujus filiam idem rex Franciæ uxorem habuerat: sed idem rex Franciæ hoc fecit fieri, ut acciperet sibi conjugem filiam comitis Palatini.[2] Quæ cum regi Franciæ[3] esset concessa, refutavit eum; et consilio matris suæ nupsit Henrico duci Saxoniæ, Ricardi regis Angliæ nepoti.

A.D. 1193. August.

He is divorced from her on the ground of consanguinity.

Hoveden, iii. 225.

He proposes another marriage, and is refused.

Interim Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, et cæteri justitiarii Angliæ, ceperunt ad redemptionem regis, de unoquoque feodo militis viginti solidos, et quartam partem universorum laicorum reddituum, et omnes ecclesiarum calices, et cæteros earum thesauros. Episcopi vero quidam ceperunt de clericis quartam partem reddituum suorum, et quidam decimam.[4] Similiter factum est per omnes terras regis transmarinas; et sic infinitam adquisiverunt pecuniam. Deinde venerunt Londonias nuncii imperatoris, et receperunt ibi maximam partem redemptionis regis in pondere et mensura, eisdem traditam, periculo regis Angliæ usque ad fines imperii, sicut prædictum est, deferendam.[5]

The justices exact enormous sums for the king's ransom.

It is paid in great part.

Præterea prædictus imperator dedit regi Angliæ has terras, carta sua confirmatas:[6] scilicet, Provenciam, et Vianam, Vianeis, Marsiliam, Nerbonam, Arleleblanc, et Leun supra Rodanum usque ad Alpes, et quicquid imperator habet in Burgundia, et homagium regis Arragoniæ, et homagium comitis de Disders,[7] et homagium comitis de Sancto Egidio. Et sciendum, quod in hiis terris sunt quinque archiepisco-

The emperor gives the kingdom of Arles with its dependencies to Richard

---

[1] *et aliorum comitum*] per sacramentum Roberti comitis de Drues, et comitis de Nevers, et Walteri camerarii regis Franciæ, ins. M., H.

[2] *Palatini*] de Reno in Alemannia, avunculi supradicti Henrici Romanorum imperatoris, ins. M., H.

[3] *Franciæ*] a patre et aliis parentibus suis, ins. M., H.

[4] *decimam*] partem ad redemptionem prædicti regis, ins. M., H.

[5] *eisdem . . . deferendam*] et tradiderunt eam sub sigillorum suorum testimonio illis qui eam deferrent usque ad fines imperii periculo regis Angliæ, M., H.

[6] *confirmatas*] confirmavit . . . . subscriptas, M., H.

[7] *Disders*] Disclers, C.

A.D. 1193. The emperor had no real hold on these lands.

patus, et xxiii. episcopatus. Et sciendum est, quod prædictus[1] imperator nunquam prædictis terris et hominibus dominari potuit; neque ipsi aliquem dominum ad præsentationem imperatoris recipere voluerunt. Hoveden, iii. 226.

Richard sends for his mother, and makes Hubert Walter justiciar.

Rex autem Angliæ statim misit in Angliam pro Alienor regina matre sua, et pro Waltero Rotomagensi archiepiscopo, et pro aliis multis, ut venirent ad eum in Alemanniam: et constituit Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum summum justitiarium in Anglia.

The day of Richard's release fixed for three weeks after Christmas.

Interim Henricus Romanorum imperator, per consilium principum imperii sui, statuit Ricardo regi Angliæ diem liberationis suæ, a secunda feria post diem Natalis Domini in tres septimanas. Unde idem rex Angliæ in hac forma scripsit Huberto;

Epistola Ricardi regis[2] *ad Hubertum*[3] *archiepiscopum de liberatione sua.*

Dec. 22. Letter of Richard to the archbishop.

"Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, etc., venerabili patri in
" Christo, et amico carissimo Huberto, eadem gratia Cantuariensi
" archiepiscopo, salutem, et sinceræ dilectionis plenitudinem.
" Quoniam certi sumus, quod liberationem nostram plurimum
" desideratis, et quod liberatio nostra admodum vos lætificat;
" idcirco volumus quod lætitiæ nostræ participes sitis. Inde
The day of release is fixed for Monday, Jan. 17.
" est, quod dilectioni vestræ dignum duximus significare, Hoveden, iii. 227.
" dominum imperatorem certum diem liberationis nostræ
" nobis præfixisse in die Lunæ proxima post vicesimam diem
" Natalis Domini: et die Dominica proximo sequenti corona-
" bimur de regno Provenciæ quod nobis dedit. Unde mittimus
" in Angliam litteras domini imperatoris super hiis patentes
" vobis, et cæteris amicis nostris et benivolis; vos autem
" interim pro omni posse vestro, quos scitis nos diligere,
" consolari velitis, et quos scitis promotionem nostram
" desiderare. Datum etc."[4]

Epistola Henrici Romanorum imperatoris ad magnates Angliæ, de deliberatione regis[5] *Ricardi.*

Dec. 20. Letter of the emperor to

"Henricus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, et semper
" Augustus, dilectis suis archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus,

[1] *prædictus*] supradictus, M., H.
[2] *regis*] Angliæ, ins. M., H.
[3] *Hubertum*] Cantuariensem, M., H.
[4] *Datum, etc.*] Teste meipso apud Spiram, xxii. die Decembris, M., H.
[5] *regis*] Angliæ, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 227.

" baronibus, militibus, et universis aliis fidelibus Ricardi[1] " regis Angliæ, gratiam suam, et omne bonum.

A.D. 1193. Dec. 20. the English barons.

"Universitati vestræ duximus intimandum, quod dilecto " amico nostro Ricardo, illustri regi Anglorum, domino vestro, " certum diem liberationis suæ statuimus, a secunda feria " post diem Nativitatis Domini in tres septimanas, apud " Spiram, sive apud Wermaciam; et inde in septem [dies][2] " disposuimus ei diem coronationis suæ de regno Provenciæ, " quod ei promisimus; et hoc certum habeatis et indubi- " tatum. Nostri siquidem propositi est et voluntatis, præfatum " dominum vestrum sicut amicum nostrum specialem promo- " vere, et magnificentius honorare. Datum, etc."[3]

The day of the king's release is fixed for Jan. 17, and on the 24th he is to be crowned king of Arles.

Sed antequam pax ista confirmata esset inter imperatorem et regem, rex misit Willelmum Elyensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, et alios nuncios suos in Franciam, ad comitem Johannem fratrem suum, et effecit adversus eum quod ipse rediit in Normanniam, et juravit regi fratri suo fidelitatem et pacem contra omnes homines: et rex præcepit quod omnia castella honorum quos ipse ei dederat traderentur illi, citra mare et ultra: sed custodes illorum noluerunt tradere illi aliquod castellum per breve. Unde comes iratus regressus est ad regem Franciæ, et adhæsit ei: et rex Franciæ tradidit illi castellum de Driencurt, et castellum de Archis.[4]

Richard prevails on John to return to his fealty.

Hoveden, iii. 228.

The wardens of his castles refuse to give them up, and he returns to Philip.

Eodem anno Berengera regina Angliæ, et Johanna quondam regina Siciliæ, et filia imperatoris de Cypre, venerunt Romam sub custodia Stephani de Thurnham;[5] et a domino papa Cœlestino et nobilibus Romanis honorifice sunt susceptæ; et moram fecerunt ibi fere per dimidium annum,[6] propter metum imperatoris: et cum recessissent, tradidit eas dominus papa in conductu magistri Melliur[7] cardinalis; et perrexerunt usque Pisam. Deinde usque Jeneues. Deinde usque Marsiliam. Apud Marsiliam suscepit eas rex Arragoniæ, et exhibuit eis omnem honorem et reverentiam; et conduxit eas usque ad fines regni sui: et comes de Sancto Egidio conduxit eas per terram suam. Et sic pervenerunt Pictavim.

Berengaria arrives at Rome, and stays there half a year.

She is escorted safely to Poictiers.

[1] *Ricardi*] illustris, ins. M., H.

[2] *dies*] om. C.; blank in M.

[3] *Datum, etc.*] Datum apud Cheallusam, vigilia beati Thomæ apostoli, M.; Gheallusam, H.

[4] *Archis*] Hoveden adds—quæ tradenda erant Willelmo Remensi archiepiscopo; om. C., M.

[5] *Thurnham*] Turnham, M.

[6] *annum*] anni spatium, M., H.

[7] *Melliur*] Meilliur, M.

B.——M°C°XC°IIII°.

Annus quintus[1] *regni Ricardi regis Angliæ.*

A.D. 1193. Dec. 25. Richard keeps Christmas at Spcyer.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonogesimo quarto, qui erat secundus annus captionis Ricardi regis Angliæ, idem Ricardus fuit adhuc in captione Henrici Romanorum imperatoris, in Alemannia apud Spiram, die Natalis Domini, quæ Sabbato evenit; et ibi mansit usque ad tempus liberationis suæ, quod statuerat ei imperator, videlicet, a secunda feria post diem Natalis Domini in tres septimanas. Hoveden, iii. 228. Hoveden, iii. 229.

De impedimento liberationis regis.

A.D. 1194. January. Philip and John propose to the emperor that he shall retain Richard in captivity until Michaelmas.

Cumque imperator venisset illuc, una cum archiepiscopis, episcopis, et ducibus et magnatibus imperii sui, et diu tractasset de liberatione regis Angliæ, venerunt ad imperatorem nuncii regis Franciæ, et nuncii comitis Johannis fratris regis Angliæ; et obtulerunt imperatori ex parte regis Franciæ quinquaginta millia marcarum argenti, et ex parte comitis Johannis triginta millia marcarum argenti, tali conditione, ut ipse teneret regem Angliæ in captione sua usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis proxime sequens; aut si imperator mallet, darent ei in fine uniuscujusque mensis, quamdiu ipse regem Angliæ teneret in captione, mille libras argenti; aut si imperator mallet, rex Franciæ daret ei centum millia marcarum argenti, et dictus comes Johannes[2] quinquaginta millia marcas argenti, tali conditione, ut ipse traderet eis regem Angliæ, vel saltem in captione sua teneret ab illo tempore per spatium unius anni. Ecce quomodo amabant eum!

The emperor delays the release until Feb. 2.

Quibus auditis, imperator distulit diem liberationis suæ,[3] et alium diem liberationis suæ statuit ei in Purificatione Sanctæ Mariæ, apud Maguntum.

On Jan. 1 Geoffrey, archbishop of York, places new clerks in the cathedral, which was without ministers.

Interim Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, octava die Natalis Domini, Eboracum venit, et consilio virorum prudentium ministros constituit in metropolitana ecclesia Eboraci, quam vacuam invenit: qui in ipsa ecclesia, sicut decebat, solemniter deservirent. Et hoc ita observatum est, donec canonici et eorum capellani per laicam potestatem et violentiam essent restituti. Post hæc quatuor ex majoribus ecclesiæ,

---

[1] *quintus*] quartus, C., M.
[2] *Johannes*] daret ei, ins. M., H.
[3] *suæ*] regis Angliæ, H.

Hoveden, iii. 229. ob prædictam ecclesiæ suspensionem excommunicati, ad regem, tunc temporis liberatum, transfretaverunt; et licentia ab eo accepta, qui commotus fuerat quia archiepiscopus, sicut in mandatis acceperat, ad eum non venerat, Romam profecti sunt. Contra quos nuncii ab archiepiscopo sunt illuc destinati. A.D. 1194. January.

Hoveden, iii. 230. Appeal to Rome.

Utraque autem parte in præsentia Cœlestini papæ constituta, de electione decani diutius est agitatum et deliberatum, quoniam post appellationem rite interpositam factam esse dinoscebatur, et ideo irritanda, vel potius irritata erat denuncianda. Dominus vero papa cognitioni causæ, utrum si ad archiepiscopum decanatus donatio, an ad capitulum decani electio spectaret, tunc temporis volens supersedere; fretus sua potestate, de cujus amplitudine disputare fas non est, præfato Simoni Apulo, salvo in posterum tam ipsius archiepiscopi quam capituli jure, decanatum contulit, confirmavit, et per annulum suum aureum investivit. Quo articulo ita exposito, statim processerunt ad diffamationem ipsius archiepiscopi, et accusationem; proponentes eum esse suum et aliorum clericorum spoliatorem violentum, exactorem improbum, et ecclesiarum fores manu armata frangere, ecclesiastica beneficia Simoniace dividere et retinere, appellationibus non deferre, privilegia Romani pontificis contemnere; et, ut breviter dicatur, asserebant eum omne episcopale officium vilipendentem, aucupitio, venationi, et aliis curis militaribus deditum esse. Et hiis et aliis causis intendebant eum deponere; illi maxime, quos ipse maximis honoribus et inæstimabilibus divitiis et redditibus in Eboracensi ecclesia ditaverat, et, ultra quam debuerat per Deum, exaltaverat. De talibus dicit Dominus, "Filios enutrivi et "exaltavi, ipsi autem spreverunt Me." Caveant ergo sibi, ne spernat eos justus Judex; et ne cum Juda proditore condemnentur in jehenna.

The pope waiving the question of right, nominates Simon of Apulia to the deanery.

The canons bring heavy charges against Geoffrey.

Isa. i. 2.

Hiis propositis, scripsit dominus papa Hugoni Lincolniensi episcopo, et conjudicibus suis, ut si essent qui archiepiscopum super objectis accusarent, audirent diligenter hinc inde proposita, et veritatem inquisitam sigillis suis signatam ad sedem destinarent apostolicam. Si vero accusator non appareret, et archiepiscopus fama publica laboraret, ei purgationem cum tribus episcopis et totidem abbatibus indicerent. Sed quia archiepiscopus ante citationem judicum appellaverat, et iter ad prosequendam appellationem arripuerat, dicti judices ei spatium trium mensium, secundum quod in rescripto domini papæ continebatur, ad ejus prosecutionem assignaverunt, diem præfigentes kalendas Junii. Sed archiepiscopus ad terminum illum non venit, tum propter regis prohibitionem, tum

The pope appoints judges to inquire into the truth of the charges.

Hoveden, iii. 231.

The judges fix June 1 (1195) for the hearing of the appeal at Rome.

A.D. 1194. Geoffrey does not go to Rome.

propter aeris intemperiem, quæ tunc temporis est Romæ. Clerici vero ejus eodem tempore in curia Romana existentes, et has causas absentiæ suæ prætendentes, impetraverunt, ut quicquid contra archiepiscopum post appellationem medio tempore factam fuerat, in irritum revocaretur, quia per eum non stetit quo minus ad curiam venisset Romanam; et terminus quo se apostolico præsentaret conspectui, infra octavas Beati Martini proximo sequentis, est ei a domino papa præfixus: et quoniam nec tunc in curia Romana per se vel per sufficientem responsalem comparuit, ad Natale Domini proximo sequens, ab omni administratione episcopali suspensus fuit. Hoveden, iii. 231.

The day postponed to Nov. 18 (1195), but he does not appear, and is suspended.

Feb. 2. Meeting of the king and emperor at Mentz.

Interim Henricus Romanorum imperator, cum magnatibus imperii sui, et Ricardus rex Angliæ, cum Alienor regina matre sua, et Waltero Rotomagensi archiepiscopo, et Willelmo Elyensi episcopo cancellario suo, et Savarico Batoniensi episcopo, convenerunt apud Maguntum in Purificatione Beatæ Mariæ; et celebrato ibi concilio de liberatione regis Angliæ, imperator voluit a pacto resilire, propter cupiditatem pecuniæ quam rex Franciæ et Johannes comes ei obtulerant. Et adducens secum nuncios regis Franciæ et nuncios dicti Johannis comitis, de quorum numero erat Robertus de Nunaunt, frater Hugonis Coventrensis episcopi, tradidit regi Angliæ litteras regis Franciæ et dicti comitis legendas, quas ei[1] miserant contra liberationem illius. Quibus visis et lectis, rex plurimum turbatus est et confusus, desperans de liberatione sua. Convenit ergo per cancellarium suum super hoc Maguntinum, et Coloniensem, et Saxeburgensem archiepiscopos, [et Wermaicensem,[2]] et de Spire, et de Legis episcopos; et de Suave, fratrem imperatoris, et de Ostricio, et de Luvayn duces; et comitem Palatinum de Reno, et cæteros magnates imperii, qui constituti fuerant ex parte imperatoris fidejussores inter illum et regem Angliæ super pactis inter illos contractis. Hoveden, iii. 232.

The emperor shows Richard the proposals of Philip and John.

Richard engages the emperor's counsellors in his favour.

They urge Henry to fulfil his agreement.

Qui audacter introierunt ad imperatorem, et plurimum increpaverunt eum de cupiditate sua, qui ita impudenter a pacto suo resilire volebat; et effecerunt adversus eum quod liberum et quietum dimisit regem Angliæ a captione sua; ita tamen quod rex Angliæ tradidit imperatori Walterum Rotomagensem archiepiscopum, et Savaricum,[3] et Baldewinum Wac, et alios multos, filios comitum et baronum suorum, obsides de residuo pecuniæ redemptionis suæ, et de pace servanda imperatori et Hoveden, iii. 233.

Interchange of hostages and release of the king.

---

[1] *ei*] ipsi, M., H.
[2] *et Wermaicensem*] om. C., M.
[3] *Savaricum*] Savaricum Bathoniensem episcopum, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 233.

imperio suo, et omni terræ suæ dominationis. Et Maguntinus et Coloniensis archiepiscopi tradiderunt eum in manu Alienor matris suæ liberum et quietum ex parte imperatoris, pridie nonas Februarii, feria sexta, die Ægyptiaca, quam moderni diem malam vocant, et sic in die mala liberavit eum Dominus. A.D. 1194. Feb. 4.

Ps. xli. 1.

Cum autem idem rex rogaret dictum Robertum de Nunaunt,[1] ut pro illo obses esset, respondit[2] quod ipse erat homo comitis Johannis, et ideo noluit.[3] Unde rex iratus præcepit illum capi, et in carcerem mitti; et factum est ita. Robert of Nunant refuses to be a hostage.

Eodem vero die, quo rex liberatus est de captione imperatoris, misit Salt de Bruil,[4] nuncium quendam, in terram Suliæ, ad Henricum comitem Campaniæ nepotem suum, et ad alios Christianorum principes, mandans eis diem liberationis; et quod ipse, si Deus fecerit ei vindictam de inimicis suis, et pacem dederit, veniet ad terminum statutum ad succurrendum illis contra paganos. Promisit etiam prædicto Salt de Bruil, quod quadraginta libratas terræ daret ei in reversione sua de terra Suliæ. Richard sends a message into Syria, that he will return at the time appointed.

Eodem die summonuit rex, per litteras suas, Hugonem Coventrensem episcopum, quod ipse veniret in curia sua, et staret judicio episcoporum in eo quod ipse episcopus erat, et judicio laicorum in eo quod ipse de eo laicalem tenuerat balliam, super hiis quæ adversus eum loqueretur. He summons Hugh bishop of Coventry, to appear in his court.

Hoveden, iii. 234.

Eodem die Romanorum imperator, et archiepiscopi et episcopi, duces et comites imperii, facto communi scripto, et sigillis suis appositis, mandaverunt regi Franciæ et comiti Johanni, quod statim visis litteris illis redderent regi Angliæ castella, munitiones, villas, prædia, et alia universa, quæ ipsi super eum ceperant, quamdiu ipse in captione imperatoris fuerat; et nisi fecerint, scirent pro certo, quod ipsi juvarent regem Angliæ pro posse suo ad reccipiendum omne quod amiserat. The emperor and princes give notice to John and Philip to surrender Richard's castles now in their hands.

De homagiis factis Ricardo regi Angliæ a magnatibus Alemanniæ.

Deinde rex Angliæ promisit, et cartis suis confirmavit, quibusdam archiepiscopis, episcopis, et ducibus, comitibus, baronibus, et aliis multis de imperio, redditus annuos pro homagiis Richard makes friends and allies among the German princes.

[1] *Nunaunt*] fratrem Hugonis Coventrensis episcopi, ins. M., H.

[2] *respondit*] Robertus, ins. M., H.

[3] *noluit*] pro illo obses esse, ins. M., H.

[4] *Bruil*] Bruyl, M.

A.D. 1194. February. et fidelitatibus, et auxiliis eorum contra regem Franciæ. Recepit itaque homagium de archiepiscopo Maguntino, et de archiepiscopo Coloniensi, et de episcopo de Legis,[1] et de aliis multis, salva fide quam imperatori prædicto debuerant.[2] Hoveden, iii. 234.

Length of his captivity. Et est sciendum, quod rex Angliæ fuit in captione imperatoris per unum annum[3] et sex hebdomadas et tres dies. Quo liberato,[4] omnes qui aderant præ gaudio lacrymati sunt. Deinde imperator tradidit regi salvum conductum, usque ad portum de Amvers. Hoveden, iii. 235.

His reception at Cologne. Cumque rex Coloniam venisset, archiepiscopus Coloniæ recepit eum cum gaudio; et pro exultatione liberationis suæ celebravit Missam. Cujus officium[5] "Nunc "scio vere quia misit Dominus angelum Suum," etc.[6] Et cum rex inde recederet, prædictus archiepiscopus conduxit eum usque ad portum de Amvers, ubi Renus fluvius cadit in mare. Et illuc convenit multitudo navium, quæ de Anglia venerant contra regem. Et portus ille de Amvers est in terra ducis de Luvain. Quo cum rex venisset, intravit galeam Alani Trenchemer, ut cum ea facilius transiret inter insulas; singulis autem noctibus exiens de galea illa intravit navem[7] pulcherrimam, quæ venerat de Rie, et in ea jacuit;[8] et in die rediit ad galeam, donec perveniret ad portum de Swiene, qui est in Flandria, in terra comitis de Hennou,[9] et ibi fecit moram quinque dierum; et sexta die circa horam tertiam recessit a dicto portu de Swiene, et in crastino post horam diei nonam applicuit in Angliam apud Sandicum portum, die Dominica, tertio idus Martii. March. Acts, xii. 11.

He reaches Antwerp, and goes thence to Swine.

He sails from Swine, and lands at Sandwich, Mar. 13.

Feb. 9. John sends a foolish messenger to England, who boasts to the archbishop of his Interim non longe ante adventum regis in Angliam, venit Adam de Sancto Edmundo, clericus et familiaris comitis Johannis, missus ab eo in Angliam cum litteris ad castella sua munienda contra regem fratrem suum. Qui cum Londonias venisset, et sine impedimento transire potuisset, accessit ad Hoveden, iii. 236.

---

[1] *Legis*] et de duce Ostricii, et de duce de Luvain, et de marchiso de Munferant, et duce de Nemburc, et de duce Suaviæ fratre imperatoris, et de comite Palatino de Reno, et de filio comitis de Hennou, et de comite de Holande. Ins. M., H.

[2] *fide quam imperatori prædicto debuerant*] fidelitate imperatoris, M., H.

[3] *unum annum*] spatium unius, anni, M., H.

[4] *Quo liberato*] liberato autem rege, M., H.

[5] *Cujus officium*] in hunc modum, M., H.

[6] *etc.*] et eripuit me de manu Herodis, et de omni exspectatione plebis Judæorum, etc., M., H.

[7] *navem*] magnam et, ins. M., H.

[8] *jacuit*] in nocte, ins. M., H.

[9] *Hennou*] et fecit quatuor dietas a portu de Amvers usque ad portum de Swiene, et in portu de Swiene, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 236.

hospitium Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et comedit cum illo, multa jactans de prosperitate domini sui, et de familiaritate regis Franciæ quam habebat adversus dominum suum, dicens quod rex Franciæ tradiderat domino suo castellum de Driencurt, et castellum de Archis, quæ tradenda erant archiepiscopo Remensi, sicut in supradicto scripto continetur; et plura tradidisset domino suo, si ejus dominus habuisset homines in quibus confidisset.[1] A.D. 1194. Feb. 9. master's friendship with Philip.

Hiis itaque et aliis jactantiis prædictus Adam plurimum exasperavit dominum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, et omnes qui audierunt verbum illud; sed nemo misit in eum manum propter reverentiam mensæ. Attamen cum idem[2] Adam, post prandium, ad hospitium suum rediret, major Londoniarum injecit manus in eum, et tenuit; et cepit omnia brevia sua, in quibus mandata comitis Johannis continebantur, et tradidit ea Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. Qui in crastino convocatis coram eo episcopis, comitibus, baronibus et aliis regni, ostendit eis litteras comitis Johannis, et earum tenorem. Et statim per commune consilium regni diffinitum est quod comes Johannes dissaisaretur de omnibus tenementis suis in Anglia, et ut castella sua obsiderentur: et ita factum est. The mayor of London arrests the messenger. Council held Feb. 10. John dispossessed of his lands.

Hoveden, iii. 237.

Eodem die Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Hugo Lincolniensis, et Ricardus Londoniensis, et[3] multi alii episcopi, et clerici, tam abbates quam alii, Cantuariensis diocesis, convenerunt in capella monachorum infirmorum apud Westmonasterium, et sententiam anathematis tulerunt in comitem Johannem, et in omnes fautores ejus et consiliarios, qui pacem et regnum regis Angliæ turbaverant vel turbarent, nisi relicta hostilitate ad satisfactionem venirent. Deinde appellaverunt ad præsentiam domini papæ contra Willelmum Elyensem episcopum, ne ipse de cætero fungeretur officio legationis in Anglia; et appellationem suam sigillis suis confirmaverunt, et miserunt illam domino regi, deinde summo pontifici confirmandam. Facta est autem hæc appellatio quarto idus Februarii, feria quinta. The bishops excommunicate him; and appeal to the pope against the bishop of Ely's legation.

Omnes igitur, quibus commissa fuerant comitis Johannis castella obsidenda, reversi sunt in patrias suas. Episcopus vero Dunelmensis, cui commissum fuit castellum de Tikeil The bishop of Durham besieges Tickhill castle; the

---

[1] *ejus dominus . . . confidisset*] si dominus suus haberet homines in quibus confideret, M., H.

[2] *idem*] prædictus, M., H.

[3] *et*] Gilebertus Roffensis, et Godefridus Wintoniensis, et Wigornensis et Herefordensis episcopi, et Henricus Exoniensis electus, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1194. February. earls of Huntingdon and Chester, Nottingham; and the archbishop takes Marlborough. Lancaster and S. Michael's mount are surrendered.

obsidendum, magnum congregavit exercitum Eboraci syræ, et de Northumbria, et de aliis terris suis, et obsedit illud. Et comes David, frater regis Scotiæ, et Ranulfus comes Cestriæ, et comes de Ferreres, cum magno exercitu obsedit castellum de Notingham. Et archiepiscopus Cantuariensis cum magno exercitu obsedit Merleberge; quod infra paucos dies redditum est ei, salvis vita et membris inclusorum. Similiter redditum est ei castellum de Leancastre, quod Teobaldus Walteri, frater ejus, custodierat ex parte comitis Johannis; et Mons Sancti Michaelis in Cornubia redditus est ei, quem Henricus de la Pumeray, expulsis inde monachis, contra regem munierat. Idem vero Henricus, audito adventu regis Angliæ, obiit timore perterritus. Hoveden, iii. 237. Hoveden, iii. 238.

Hæc autem tria castella, scilicet, Marleberge et Leancastre et Mons Sancti Michaelis, reddita fuerunt ante adventum regis: cætera vero, scilicet Notingham [et] Tikeil, viriliter restiterunt impugnantibus. Sed audito adventu regis, illi de castello de Tykehil, per licentiam Dunelmensis episcopi, miserunt duos milites ad videndum si rex venisset, et ad offerendum ei castellum illud. Et noluit rex recipere, nisi ponerent se in misericordia ipsius sine aliqua exceptione. Et sic redeuntes narraverunt Roberto de la Mare, constabulario, et cæteris inclusis, voluntatem regis.

Nottingham and Tickhill hold out until the king's arrival. March. Then Tickhill surrenders.

Captio castelli de Snotingham.

Qui inito consilio cum Dunelmensi episcopo, qui eis vitam et membra promisit, tradiderunt ei ad opus regis castellum de Tikehil.

Illi autem qui in castello de Notingham erant, non miserunt quenquam suorum obviam regi. Unde rex iratus venit apud[1] Notingham, die Annunciationis,[2] feria sexta, cum tanta hominum multitudine, et sonitu tubarum et buccinum, quod illi qui in castello erant, audientes hoc et videntes, admirati sunt, conturbati et commoti sunt; nam tremor apprehendit eos: et tamen credere non poterant quod rex venisset, sed sperabant hoc totum factum fuisse a principibus exercitus ad illudendum eis. Rex vero hospitatus est prope castellum; ita quod sagittarii de castello sagittabant homines regis ante pedes ejus. Unde rex iratus armavit se et exercitum suum ad faciendum insultum in castellum; et factus conflictus magnus est inter illos et homines castelli; et multi

March 25. The king comes to Nottingham.

[1] *apud*] ad, M., H.

[2] *Annunciationis*] Dominicæ, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 239.

ceciderunt ex utraque parte vulnerati et mortui. Rex vero interfecit unum militem sagitta. Prævaluit itaque rex, et retrusis illis in castellum, cepit quasdam præparationes, quas barbecans vocant, quas fecerant ante portas, et portas exteriores combussit. A.D. 1194. March 25. He takes the barbicans.

Eo die venit illuc Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et crucem suam ante se portari fecit. Gaufridus vero Eboracensis archiepiscopus crucem suam non portavit; sed conquestus est regi de archiepiscopo, qui crucem suam portare fecit in archiepiscopatu[1] Eboracensi. Quod cum Cantuariensis archiepiscopus audisset, et vidisset quod Eboracensis archiepiscopus crucem suam non portasset, dixit, "Ego crucem meam per "totam Angliam porto, et portare debeo, sicut totius Angliæ "primas; tu autem crucem tuam non portas, et forsitan por-"tare non debes. Et ideo sic rebus existentibus appello ad "dominum papam."[2] The archbishop of Canterbury has his cross carried in the province of York.

Vicesima sexta die mensis Martii rex Angliæ fecit perarias suas fieri, habens in proposito quod amplius insultum non faceret in castellum, donec machinæ suæ bellicæ pararentur; sed furcas levari fecit prope castellum, in quibus suspendit quosdam servientes Johannis comitis extra castellum captos. March 26. Richard prepares for a siege.

Vicesima septima die mensis Martii Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, et illi qui cum eo erant in obsidione castelli de Tikehil, venerunt ad regem apud Notingham, adducentes secum captivos qui capti fuerant in castello de Tikehil; et rex processit obviam illis. Et viso rege, episcopus Hugo prædictus descendit, et rex similiter,[3] et osculatus est eum. Deinde ascendentes equos[4] venerunt ad obsidionem. March 27. The bishop of Durham arrives from Tickhill.

Hoveden, iii. 240.

Eodem anno et die, cum rex sedisset ad prandium suum, Radulfus Murdak et Willelmus de Wendeval, constabularii castelli de Notingham, miserunt duos ex sociis suis ad videndum regem. Quo viso regressi sunt in castellum, nunciantes eis qui miserant eos, ea quæ audierant et viderant, de rege et statu ejus. Quæ cum dicti Willelmus de Wendeval et Rogerus de Muntbegun[5] audissent, cum aliis duodecim exierunt a castello, et posuerunt se in misericordia regis, et amplius non redierunt in castellum. The defenders of Nottingham castle prepare to submit.

Vicesima octava die Martii, mediante Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, Radulfus Murdac, et Philippus de Wyrcestre et Radulfus March 28. They surrender.

---

[1] *archiepiscopatu*] diocesi, M., H.

[2] *appello . . . papam*] Altered in a later hand to "appellatio ad do-"minum papam facta fuit." C.

[3] *similiter*] obviam ei, ins. M., H.

[4] *equos*] suos, ins. M., H.

[5] *Muntbegun*] Mundegum, C., M.

A.D. 1194. de Wyrcestre, fratres ejus, et universi qui in castello erant, tradiderunt regi castellum, et posuerunt se in misericordia regis de vita et membris et terreno honore. Hoveden, iii. 240.

March 29. Richard views Sherwood forest. Vicesima nona die mensis Martii, Ricardus rex Angliæ profectus est videre Clypestune et Shirewude, quas antea nunquam viderat; et placuerunt ei multum: et eodem die rediit ad Notingham.

March 30. Great council held at Nottingham. Tricesima die mensis ejusdem, feria quarta, Ricardus rex Angliæ celebravit primum concilii sui diem apud Notingham; cui interfuerunt Alienor regina mater ejus, et Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, qui in dextris regis sedebat in concilio illo, et Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et alii multi episcopi et comites.[1]

The sheriffdoms of Lincoln and Yorkshire, and the castles of York and Scarborough put up for sale. Eodem die rex disseysiavit Girardum de Caumvilla de castello et vicecomitatu Lincolniensi, et Hugonem Bardulf de vicecomitatu Eboraci syræ, et de castello Eboraci, et de castello de Scardeburc, et de custodia de Westmerelande; quæ[2] omnia exposuit venditioni. Unde factum est, quod cum cancellarius conventionasset, se daturum regi pro vicecomitatu Eboraci et vicecomitatu Lincolniensis syræ, et pro vicecomitatu Northamptonsyræ, mille et quingentas marcas in principio conventionis, et singulis annis de unoquoque prædictorum comitatuum centum marcas de incremento; Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus obtulit regi tria millia marcarum pro vicecomitatu Eboracensi, et singulis annis centum marcas de incremento: et sic abjecto cancellario, Eboracensis archiepiscopus obtinuit vicecomitatum Eboracensem, et ita factus est regis serviens, et præcipitavit se in potentias regis. Hoveden, iii. 241.

The archbishop buys the sheriffdom of Yorkshire.

March 31. The king demands sentence against John and the bishop of Coventry. Tricesima prima die mensis Martii,[3] rex Angliæ celebravit secundum diem concilii sui; in quo ipse petiit sibi fieri judicium de comite Johanne fratre suo, qui, contra fidelitatem quam ei juraverat, castella sua occupaverat, et terras suas transmarinas et cismarinas destruxerat, et fœdus cum inimico suo rege Franciæ contra eum inierat. Similiter etiam de Hugone de Nunaunt Coventrensi episcopo,[4] qui secreti sui

---

[1] *et . . . comites*] qui a sinistris ejus sedebat, et Hugo Dunelmensis, et Hugo Lincolniensis, et Willelmus Eliensis regis cancellarius, et Willelmus Herefordensis, et Henricus Wigornensis, et Henricus Exoniensis, et Johannes Candidæ Casæ episcopi, et comes David frater regis Scotiæ, et Hamelinus comes de Warenna, et Ranulfus comes Cestriæ, et comes de Ferreres, et Willelmus comes de Salesbiri, et Rogerus Bigot.—M., H.

[2] *quæ*] et supradicta, M., H.

[3] *Martii*] scilicet pridie kalendas Aprilis, ins. M., H.

[4] *episcopo*] sibi fieri judicium postulavit, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 241.

conscius eum reliquerat, et regi Franciæ et comiti Johanni inimicis suis adhæserat, omne malum in perniciem regni sui machinans. A.D. 1194. March 31.

Hoveden, iii. 242.

Et judicatum est, quod Johannes comes et episcopus Coventrensis peremptorie citarentur; et si infra quadraginta dies non venerint, nec juri steterint, judicaverunt dictum comitem Johannem demeruisse regnum, et episcopum Coventrensem subjacere episcoporum judicio, in eo quod ipse episcopus erat, et judicio laicorum, in eo quod ipse vicecomes regis exstiterat. They are summoned to appear within forty days.

Kalendis Aprilis, prima die mensis ejusdem, dictus rex Angliæ celebravit tertium colloquii sui diem: in quo constituit sibi dari de unaquaque carucata terræ totius Angliæ duos solidos, quod ab antiquis nominatur Tementale.[1] Deinde præcepit quod unusquisque faceret sibi tertiam partem servitii militaris, sicut singulus feodus apportat, ad transfretandum cum eo in Normanniam. Deinde exigebat a monachis ordinis Cisterciensis totam lanam suam de hoc anno; sed quia hoc facere erat eis grave et intolerabile,[2] fecerunt cum eo finem pecuniarium.[3] April 1. Richard imposes a tax of two shillings on each carucate; and makes other exactions.

Secunda die mensis Aprilis, scilicet Sabbato, celebravit diem quartum et concilii sui ultimum: in quo omnes, tam clerici quam laici, qui volebant sibi conqueri de archiepiscopo Eboracensi, fecerunt querimonias multas de rapinis et injustis exactionibus: sed archiepiscopus Eboracensis nullum dedit eis responsum. April 2. He hears complaints against the archbishop of York.

Deinde per consilium et machinationem cancellarii, ut dicitur, Girardus de Caumvilla fuit retatus de receptione prædonum, qui rapuerunt bona mercatorum euntium ad nundinas de Stamford; et ab eo recesserunt ad rapinam illam faciendam, et de rapina illa redierunt ad eum. Præterea appellaverunt eum de læsione regiæ majestatis, in eo quod ipse Gerard Camville indicted for treason and robbery.

Hoveden, iii. 243.

ad vocationem justitiarum regis noluit venire, nec juri stare de dicta receptatione raptorum, neque eos ad justitiam regis producere, sed respondit se esse comitis Johannis hominem, et velle in curia sua juri stare. Præterea appellaverunt[4] quod ipse fuit in vi et adjutorio cum comite Johanne, et aliis inimicis regis, ad castella regis de Notingham et de Tikehil capienda. Girardus vero de Caumvilla negavit omnia quæ objiciebantur ei ab illis; et illi dederunt vadium [de prosequendo, et Girardus dedit vadium][5] de defendendo se per unum de liberis hominibus suis. Other charges against him.

---

[1] *Tementale*] Temantale, M., H.

[2] *intolerabile*] importabile, M., H.

[3] *pecuniarium*] pecuniariam, C., M.

[4] *appellaverunt*] eum, ins. M., H.

[5] *de . . . vadium*] om. C., accidentally.

A.D. 1194. April 2. The king fixes April 17 for his coronation; and meets the king of Scots at Clipstone.

Eodem die statuit rex[1] diem coronationis suæ apud Wintoniam in clauso Pascha. Hoveden, iii. 243.

Eodem die perrexit rex usque Clipestune contra Willelmum regem Scottorum: et præcepit ut omnes qui capti fuerant in castello de Notingham, et castello de Tikehil, et castello de Merleberge, et Lancastre, et in Monte Sancti Michaelis, convenirent ad eum apud Wintoniam in crastino clausi Paschæ.

April 3. He keeps Palm Sunday at Clipstone.

Tertia die mensis Aprilis, scilicet in Dominica Palmarum,[2] fecit rex Angliæ moram apud Clipestune, et rex Scottorum apud Wyrcsope[3] propter diem solemnem.

April 4. Southwell.

Quarta die mensis Aprilis rex Angliæ et rex Scotiæ venerunt ad Suwelle.

April 5. Malton. The king of Scots demands Northumberland, Cumberland, and Westmoreland.

Quinta die mensis ejusdem,[4] iidem reges[5] venerunt ad Maltonam, ubi rex Scotiæ petiit a rege Angliæ dignitates et honores quos prædecessores sui habuerunt in Anglia. Petiit etiam comitatum Northumbriæ, et Cumberlande et Westmerelande, et comitatum Lancastriæ, sibi reddi de jure prædecessorum suorum. Cui rex respondit, se satisfacturum per consilium baronum suorum.

April 6. Rutland.

Sexta die mensis Aprilis venerunt prædicti reges ad domum Petri forestarii de Rotelande.

April 7-8. Gaitington.

Septima die mensis ejusdem[6] venerunt[7] apud Gayndintoniam.[8] Hoveden, iii. 244.

April 9. Northampton. Richard refuses the king of Scots' request.

Octava die mensis ejusdem[9] ibidem[10] moram fecerunt[11] ob[12] reverentiam Parasceuæ Domini. In[13] vigilia Paschæ venerunt dicti reges ad Northamptoniam: die decima et undecima[14] moram fecerunt[15] ibidem:[11] ubi rex Angliæ, habito cum episcopis, comitibus et baronibus[16] consilio cum deliberatione, respondit regi Scotiæ, quod petitionem suam, quam fecerat de Northumbria, nulla ratione facere debuerat, et maxime illis diebus, in quibus omnes fere principes regni Francorum facti sunt ei inimici. Nam si hoc fecisset, videretur quod hoc ex timore magis procederet, quam ex dilectionis affectu.

---

[1] *rex*] dominus rex, M., H.

[2] *Palmarum*] in ramis Palmarum, M., H.

[3] *Wyrcsope*] Wirkesope, M., H.

[4] *ejusdem*] Aprilis, M., H.

[5] *iidem reges*] rex Angliæ et rex Scottiæ, M., H.

[6] *ejusdem*] Aprilis, M., H.

[7] *venerunt*] prædicti reges, ins. M., H.

[8] *Gayndintoniam*] Gaidinton, H.

[9] *ejusdem*] Aprilis, M., H.

[10] *ibidem*] apud Gaindintoniam, M., H.

[11] *fecerunt*] prædicti reges, ins. M., H.

[12] *ob*] propter, M., H.

[13] *In*] Nono die mensis Aprilis, præf. M., H.

[14] *undecima*] die mensis Aprilis, ins. M., H.

[15] *ibidem*] apud Northamptoniam, M., H.

[16] *baronibus*] suis, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 244.

A.D. 1194. April 11. He makes arrangement for the honourable escort of the king of Scots to and from court.

Tamen rex Angliæ coram Alienora matre sua, et archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, et aliis multis utriusque regni,[1] concessit, et carta sua confirmavit dicto[2] regi Scotiæ, et hæredibus suis in perpetuum, quod quandocunque ipsi per summonitionem regis Angliæ ad curiam suam venient, episcopus Dunelmensis et vicecomes Northumbriæ recipient eum ad aquam de Tuede, et in salvo conductu ducent eos usque ad aquam de Tese; et ibi recipient eos archiepiscopus Eboracensis et vicecomes Eboraci, et in salvo conductu ducent eos usque ad fines comitatus Eboracensis; et sic per episcopos et vicecomites ducentur de comitatu in[3] comitatum, donec perveniant ad curiam regis Angliæ.

De honore et conductu qui fieri solet[4] *regi Scotiæ, quoties*[5] *venerit in Angliam ad*[6] *mandatum regis Angliæ.*

Hoveden, iii. 245.

Allowances of the king of Scots whilst he is at court.

Ex quo rex Scottorum intraverit terram regis Angliæ, habebit quotidie de bursa regis Angliæ centum solidos de liberatione. Cum autem rex Scotiæ ad curiam regis Angliæ venerit, quamdiu ibi[7] moram fecerit, quotidie habebit de liberatione triginta solidos, et duodecim wastellos dominicos, et duodecim simenellos dominicos, et quatuor sextaria de dominico vino regis, et octo sextaria de vino expensabili, et duas libras piperis, et quatuor de cumino, et duas petras de cera, vel quatuor cereos, et quadraginta grossos et longos colpones de dominica candela domini regis, et quater viginti colpones de alia candela expensabili; et cum ipse in patriam suam redire voluerit, conducetur per episcopos et vicecomites de comitatu in comitatum, donec pervenerit ad aquam de Tuede: et habebit similiter quotidie centum solidos de bursa regis Angliæ ad liberationem. De quibus rex Scotiæ cartam habuit confectam anno Domini[8] M°C°XC°IV°., et anno regni regis Ricardi quinto.

---

[1] *coram . . . regni*] in præsentia Alienor matris suæ, et Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et Hugonis Dunelmensis episcopi, et Gocelini Glascuensis episcopi, et aliorum multorum tam clericorum quam laicorum utriusque regni, M., H.

[2] *dicto*] Willelmo, M., H.

[3] *in*] ad, M., H.

[4] *solet*] debet, M., H.

[5] *quoties*] quotiescunque, M., H.

[6] *ad*] per, M., H.

[7] *ibi*] ipse in curia regis Angliæ, M., H.

[8] *De quibus . . . . anno*] Carta autem hujus concessionis et confirmationis regis Angliæ tradita fuit Willelmo regi Scottiæ in villa de Northamptonia feria ii^a. in hebdomada Paschæ, per manum Willelmi Eliensis episcopi regis cancellarii, anno ab Incarnatione Domini nostri Jesu Christi,—M., H.

A.D. 1194. *De discordia inter Willelmum regem Scotiæ et Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum.*

April 12. The king goes to Selston.

Duodecima die mensis Aprilis, feria tertia in hebdomada Paschæ, Ricardus rex Angliæ recessit de Northamptonia, et perrexit usque[1] Selvestune; et Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, perrexerunt ad Brackelay, ubi præparatum erat hospitium Dunelmensi episcopo, quod ipse a triginta annis retro tenuerat ex liberatione marescallorum regis Henrici. Et ubi procuratio sua præparata fuerat, supervenerunt servientes regis Scotiæ volentes ejicere servientes episcopi, sed non poterant. Emerunt tamen cibaria regis, et in quadam domo ejusdem curiæ præparaverunt. Quo cum Dunelmensis episcopus venisset, et dictum esset ei a suis ita contigisse, noluit pedem referre, sed audacter hospitium suum intravit, et mensas apponi fecit.[2] Et dum pranderet supervenit Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et obtulit ei hospitium suum: et consuluit ei ut ipse, relicto hospitio illo regi Scotiæ, abiret. Cum autem rex Scotiæ a venatu sero redisset, et nunciatum esset ei ita contigisse, grave tulit, et noluit illo ire: sed præcepit procurationem suam dari pauperibus, et ipse venit ad regem apud Silvestune, et conquestus est ei de injuria quam fecerat ei Dunelmensis episcopus; unde rex iratus valde[3] increpavit episcopum.

Hoveden, iii. 245.

Quarrel of the king of Scots and the bishop of Durham at Brackley.

Hoveden, iii. 246.

April 13. Richard comes to Woodstock.

Tertia decima die[4] Aprilis venit rex ad Wodestok.

April 14. Fremantle.

Quartadecima die venit rex ad Freidmantel; quintadecima die mensis Aprilis venit rex Angliæ ad Wintoniam, et eo die dissaisiavit Godefridum Wintoniensem episcopum de castello et comitatu Wintoniæ, et de illis duobus maneriis quæ episcopus Wintoniensis ab illo emerat ante iter suum Jerosolimitanum.[5]

April 15. Winchester. He takes the castle from the bishop.

April 16. He visits the monastery of S. Swithun.

Sextadecima die mensis Aprilis, post prandium, transtulit se rex Angliæ de castello Wintoniæ ad prioratum Sancti Swithuni, et ibi pernoctavit,[6] et se balneari fecit; et mandavit Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, ne ipse in crastino ad coronationem suam accederet cum cruce sua, ne forte tumultus fieret inter ipsum et Cantuariensem archiepiscopum. Et quia prohibitum erat ei crucem suam portare, noluit coronationi regis interesse.

Preparations for the coronation.

Hoveden, iii. 247.

---

[1] *usque*] ad, ins. M., H.

[2] *fecit*] jussit, M., H.

[3] *valde*] multum, M., H.

[4] *die*] mensis, ins. M., H.

[5] *Jerosolimitanum*] et de magna parte patrimonii sui, ins. H.; om. M.

[6] *pernoctavit*] nocte illa jacuit, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 247.

A.D. 1194. April 17. Coronation of Richard, at Winchester.

Septima decima die mensis Aprilis, in octavis Paschæ, convenientibus in unum in ecclesia Sancti Suytthuni Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et Johanne Dublinensi archiepiscopo, et aliis episcopis quampluribus,[1] abbatibus multis, cum[2] clero et populo; Ricardus rex Angliæ vestimentis regalibus indutus, coronam auream habens in capite, processit de thalamo suo coronatus, gestans in manu[3] dextra sceptrum regale, in cujus summitate habebatur signum crucis, et in[4] sinistra virgam auream, in cujus summitate habebatur columbæ species; et a dextris ejus ibat Willelmus Eliensis episcopus, cancellarius suus, et a sinistris Ricardus Londoniensis episcopus. Præcedebat quoque eos ordinata processio archiepiscoporum, episcoporum, abbatum, monachorum et clericorum. Comites vero, et barones, et milites, et magna plebis multitudo, sequebantur regem.

He appears crowned in procession.

Hoveden, iii. 248.

Canopy borne by four earls.

Et pannus sericus quatuor lanceis superpositus ferebatur supra regem a[5] Rogero Bigot comite Nortfolkiæ, a Willelmo comite de Insula Weitæ, et comite Saresbiriensi, et comite de Ferrers. Et tres gladii de thesauro regis sumpti gestabantur ante regem; quorum unum gestabat Willelmus rex Scottorum, et alterum[6] comes Hamelinus de Warenna, tertium[7] Ranulphus Cestriæ: [medius autem illorum ibat rex Scottorum, et comes Warennæ a dextris ejus, et comes Cestriæ][8] a sinistris regis.

Three swords carried before him.

He receives a blessing from the archbishop;

Et sic coronatus ductus est in metropolitanam ecclesiam Sancti Suytthuni[9] usque ad altare; et ibi flexis genibus devote recepit benedictionem ab Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et inde ductus est ad sedem suam.

who celebrates the mass.

Alienor vero regina mater ejus, cum puellis suis, sedebat in boreali parte ecclesiæ ex opposito regi. Cantuariensis vero archiepiscopus Missam celebravit; et rex ductus est a prædictis episcopis ad oblationem, et reductus est in sedem suam.

The king returns to his chamber

Post celebrationem Missæ reductus est rex in thalamum suum, præcedente ordinata processione, ut superius. Rex vero

---

[1] *et aliis . . . . quampluribus*] et Hugone Dunelmensi, et Hugone Lincolniensi, et Ricardo Londoniensi, et Gileberto Roffensi, et Willelmo Eliensi, et Sefrido Cicestrensi, et Henrico Exoniensi, et Willelmo Herefordensi, et Wigornensi, et Sancto David et Pangornensi episcopis, M., H.

[2] *cum*] et, M., H.

[3] *manu*] sua, ins. M., H.

[4] *in*] manu, M., H.

[5] *a*] quatuor comitibus, scilicet, ins. M., H.

[6] *alterum*] portabat, M., H.

[7] *tertium*] gestabat, M., H., H.

[8] *medius . . . . Cestriæ*] om. C., M., accidentally.

[9] *Suytthuni*] Swithuni, M., H.

A.D. 1194. April 17. and changes his crown.

depositis gravioribus vestimentis suis et corona, leviora sumpsit indumenta et coronam leviorem, et ita ad prandendum intravit refectorium monachorum; et præfati archiepiscopi et episcopi, et rex Scotiæ, comites et barones, sedebant ad mensam, unusquisque in locum suum, secundum ordinem et dignitatem suam, et epulabantur splendide. Cives autem Londoniarum, data regi mercede ducentarum marcarum, servierunt de pincernaria, contra calumniam civium Wintoniensium. Cives vero Wintoniæ servierunt de coquina. Hoveden, iii. 248.

The banquet.

He returns to the castle.

Eo[1] die post prandium sero rediit in domum suam, quæ est in castello Wintoniæ. Hoveden, iii. 249.

April 18. Jollan de la Pumerai goes into exile.

Decimo octavo die mensis Aprilis, in crastino coronationis regis, Jollanus frater Henrici de la Pumerai, appellatus quod proditiose interfuerat captioni Montis Sancti Michaelis in Cornubia, elegit magis ejectus[2] esse ab Anglia, quam stare inde juri in curia domini regis.

Pax facta inter Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum et Willelmum Elyensem episcopum regis Anglicæ cancellarium.[3]

April 19. The bishop of Durham surrenders the county of Northumberland. The king of Scots renews his claims.

Nonodecimo die mensis Aprilis, Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, sponte sua, nullo cogente, reddidit regi comitatum Northumbriæ, cum castellis et[4] pertinentiis suis: et præcepit ei rex ut ea ipse traderet Hugoni Bardulpho. Quod cum Willelmus rex Scotiæ audisset, statim obtulit regi Angliæ quindecim millia marcarum argenti pro Northumbria et pertinentiis suis, dicens quod comes Henricus pater suus eam tenuit ex dono Henrici regis secundi, et post eum rex Macolinus filius ejus quinque annis eam pacifice possedit. Unde rex Angliæ, habito cum suis consilio, respondit regi Scotiæ, quod daret ei totam Northumbriam, exceptis castellis, pro memorata pecunia: sed rex Scotiæ noluit eam recipere sine castellis.

April 20. Disposal of the prisoners taken at Tickhill and Nottingham.

Vicesima die mensis Aprilis fecit rex Angliæ segregari ab aliis ditiores, qui capti erant[5] in castellis de Notingham, de Tikehil, et aliis castellis comitis Johannis, et poni in carceribus ad redimendum: cæteros autem abire permisit per plegios veniendi ad vocationem suam, et standi judicio curiæ; et unusquisque illorum invenit plegios de centum marcis, si non rediret ad[6] curiam regis.

---

[1] *Eo*] Eodem, M., H.

[2] *ejectus*] electus, C.; abjectus, M., H.

[3] This rubric occurs in this place in MS. M. as well as in C. Hoveden has it further on, in closer connexion with the subject matter.

[4] *et*] aliis, ins. M., H.

[5] *erant*] fuerant, M., H.

[6] *ad*] in, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 250.

A.D. 1194. April 21. Richard refuses to give any castles to the king of Scots.

Vicesima prima die mensis Aprilis, Willelmus rex Scotiæ iterum tentabat si ipse modo quolibet obtinere posset comitatum Northumbriæ cum castellis: sed non erat de consilio regis Angliæ ut ipse ei aliqua castella traderet, sed tamen dedit ei spem habendi ea in futuro, post reditum suum de Normannia.

April 22. The king of Scots goes home.

Vicesima secunda die mensis Aprilis, feria sexta, Willelmus rex Scotiæ recessit a curia regis Angliæ, versus patriam suum rediturus, dolens et confusus propter repulsam ei factam.

Richard goes to Waltham.

Eodem die rex Angliæ recessit a Wintonia versus mare ad transfretandum, propter sinistros rumores quos audierat de Normannia, et jacuit apud Waltham.

April 23. He refuses to arbitrate between the two archbishops; and restores to Geoffrey his lands in Anjou.

Vicesima tertia die mensis Aprilis rex Angliæ fecit moram apud Waltham, et Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus venit illuc ad regem, et crucem suam ante se portare fecit. Unde Hubertus Walteri, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, plurimum conquestus est regi: sed rex respondit, quod hoc non pertinebat ad eum, immo ad dominum papam.

Eodem die reddidit rex Gaufrido archiepiscopo Eboracensi Baugi et Langis in Andegavia, et carta sua confirmavit.

April 24. Reconciliation of the archbishop of York with the bishop of Ely.

Vicesima quarta die mensis Aprilis, dominus rex fecit pacem et finalem concordiam inter Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum et Willelmum Elyensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, de omnibus controversiis quæ inter illos erant, tam de captione Eboracensis archiepiscopi apud Doroberniam, quam de abjectione cancellarii ab Anglia; ita quod dictus Elyensis,[1] ad summonitionem Eboracensis archiepiscopi, jurabit cum centesima manu sacerdotum, quod ipse nec præcepit nec voluit ut idem Eboracensis archiepiscopus caperetur. Et post concordiam illam, eodem die recessit rex de Waltham, et perrexit ad Portesmue ad transfretandum, et regina Alienora cum illo mater sua.[3]

Hoveden, iii. 251.

Richard goes to Portsmouth, and stays there from the 25th to the 27th.

Vicesima quinta, sexta, et septima diebus mensis Aprilis, fecit rex moram apud Portesmue.

April 28. He goes to Stansted.

Vicesima octava die mensis Aprilis recessit rex a Portesmue, et perrexit usque Stanstede causa venandi. Quo abeunte, Walenses et Brabaceni hostiliter congressi sunt, et mutuo se interfecerunt.

April 29. Portsmouth.

Vicesima nona die mensis Aprilis rediit rex [ad Portesmue], ad extinguendam malitiam Walensium et Brabacenorum: et factum est ita.

---

[1] *Elyensis*] episcopus, ins. M., H. | [2] *sua*] ejus, M., H.; matre sua, C.

A.D. 1194. April 30 and May 1. Portsmouth.

Tricesima die mensis Aprilis, et prima die mensis Maii, festo apostolorum Philippi et Jacobi, fecit rex ibidem moram, et videbatur ei nimis tædiosa. Hoveden, iii. 251.

May 2. The king attempts to set sail.

Secunda die mensis Maii rex, tædio affectus, fecit totam classem suam carcari hominibus, equis et armis, feria secunda: contra consilium nautarum suorum intravit quandam navem suam longam, sperans transfretare navigando; et quamvis ventus esset ei contrarius noluit reverti. Cæteræ autem naves remanserunt in portu; rex vero, et qui cum eo erant, jactabantur fluctibus. Erat enim tempestas valida, et erat cor eorum pavens.

May 3. He returns to Portsmouth.

May 12. He sails to Barfleur.

Et in crastino sequenti rediit in insulam Wettæ,[1] deinde ad Portesmue. Et facta ibi et in provincia illa octo dierum mora, nono die, feria quinta, festo Sanctorum Nerei et Achillei sociorumque ejus[2] martyrum, iterum naves intravit ipse cum exercitu suo, et transfretavit in Normanniam, et applicuit apud Barbefleth cum centum magnis navibus onustis viris bellicosis, equis et armis; et statim properavit Vernolium ire, quod rex Franciæ obsederat. Cujus adventu audito, rex Franciæ ab obsidione Vernolii recessit, in vigilia Pentecosten, nesciente exercitu suo, postquam ipse ibidem moram octodecim dierum in obsidione fecerat.

The king of France deserts the siege of Verneuil.

Hoveden, iii. 252.

Concordia facta inter Ricardum regem et Johannem fratrem regis.

Reconciliation of Richard and John.

Interim Johannes frater regis, comes Moretonii, rediit ad regem fratrem suum; et mediante Alienora matre eorum regina, facti sunt amici;[3] sed rex nullum castellum neque terram aliquam ei reddere voluit. Exercitus vero regis Franciæ, quem ipse dimiserat in obsidione Vernolii, cum vidisset quod rex suus abierat, secutus est eum feria secunda[4] in hebdomada Pentecosten. Rex vero Angliæ impiger, et "torto Balearis verbere fundæ" ocior, audito quod rex Franciæ obsedisset Vernolium, illuc festinanter advenit; et non invento ibi rege Franciæ, in ore gladii secutus est exercitum ejus fugientem. Deinde properavit rex Angliæ ad Vernolium, et partes debiliores firmavit. Deinde properavit

May 30. Richard pursues Philip from Verneuil.

Luc. Phars. i. 229.

---

[1] *Wettæ*] Wectæ, M.; Vectæ, H.

[2] *sociorumque ejus*] atque Pancratii, M., H.

[3] *amici*] rex et ille, ins. M., H.

[4] *feria secunda*] die Lunæ, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 252.

rex Angliæ ad castrum Montis Mirabilis, quod Andegavenses et Cenomannenses obsederant; sed priusquam ipse illuc veniret, ceperunt illud, et funditus diruerunt. Deinde rex Angliæ cum festinatione properavit ad castrum de Luches, transitum faciens per castrum Toronum, ubi duo millia marcarum a burgensibus dono spontaneo recepit.

A.D. 1194. May. Montmirail taken by the Angevins and Manceaux. Richard goes by Tours to Loches.

Milites vero Navarræ, et Brabanceni, obsederunt castrum de Luches. Quorum dux et prævius[1] exstiterat Anfuns, filius Sanctii regis Navarræ, frater Berengeræ reginæ Angliæ:

Siege of Loches.

Hoveden, iii. 253.

sed ipse non perduxit eos usque Luches, quia antequam illuc veniret, nunciatum est ei quod pater suus rex Navarræ obisset; et hac de causa reversus est in regionem suam, et receptus est in regem ab hominibus regni.

Succours from Navarre.

Cumque rex Angliæ ad castrum de Luches veniret, invenit ibi prædictos Navarrenses et Brabacenos, jam in vigiliis, jejuniis, et laboribus multis, in captione illius castelli in vanum laborantes; et statim cum suis, cæterisque qui aderant, die noctuque in eo insultum faciens, tandem cepit illud vi et armis, et cepit in eo quinque milites, et quater viginti[2] servientes, feria secunda post festum Sancti Barnabæ apostoli.

June 13. Richard takes Loches.

Interim consiliarii regis Franciæ ceperunt colloquium cum senescallo et constabulario et proceribus Normanniæ, ad Pontem Archæ. Ubi die statuto, cum Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, una cum prædictis senescallo et constabulario et proceribus, veniret ad locum colloquii, et ibi frustra cum illis adventum nunciorum regis Franciæ exspectaret, rex Franciæ cum exercitu non modico venit ad castellum modicum,[3] quatuor milliaribus distans a Rotomago, Fontaines,[4] et obsedit illud; et in obsidione illa per quatuor dies plus quam credi posset laborans, tandem cepit illud, et demolitus est. Interim comes Johannes, frater regis Angliæ, et Robertus comes Leyrcestriæ, et alii multi barones convenerant Rotomagum: sed quia non habebant cui principaliter tanquam domino regi adhærerent, et quia impares multitudine et viribus multum a rege Franciæ differebant, non præsumpserunt infestare regem Franciæ. Cum autem rex Franciæ destructo castello illo inde recederet, et versus Franciam remearet, incautum invenit comitem Leyrcestriæ, qui ad insidias ei parandas de nocte Rotomagum exierat, et usque in terram Hugonis de

Proposed conference at Pont de l'Arche between the king of France and the Norman barons.

Philip takes Fontaines.

The Norman barons dare not attack Philip.

---

[1] *prævius*] primus, C.

[2] *quater viginti*] quatuor et viginti, H.

[3] *modicum*] non modicum, C.

[4] *Fontaines*] nomine Fontaines, H.

A.D. 1194. June 15. The earl of Leicester captured.

Gurnay[1] ad deprædandam eam, evagationem fecerat inconsultam, et sic a rege Franciæ cum paucis suorum detentus est. Hoveden, iii. 254.

June 17. Conference at Vaudreuil.

Deinde ex communi assensu utriusque regis, Willelmus Remensis archiepiscopus, et comes de Neverz, et comes de Bar, et magister Anselmus decanus Turonensis, et alii multi ex parte regis Franciæ; et Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus, et senescallus Normanniæ, et constabularius, et alii multi ex parte regis Angliæ, convenerunt prope vallem Rodolii, sexta feria post festum Sancti Barnabæ, de treugis inter prædictos reges ad invicem firmandis tractatum habituri. Post longam itaque deliberationem inter eos habitam, in hoc tandem convenit: quod treugæ, quæ usque ad finem triennii ex parte regis Franciæ requirebantur, tantum per unum annum essent duraturæ; ita quod rex Angliæ teneret, in nullo obnoxius regi Franciæ, omnes terras quas habet in manu propria: et rex Franciæ similiter oppida, quæ occupavit vel tenet, pacifice teneret: et interim liceret utrique eorum[2] munire et roborare omnes munitiones quas integras et infractas retinuisset, cæteras vero dirutas reædificare interim non liceret eorum alicui. Si quis vero alius, præterquam in castris reædificandis, domos vastatas vel combustas ædificare affectaret, licite posset vel in ædificiis, vel in colligendis segetibus vel aliis fructibus, sibi pacifice providere.

Terms of truce agreed on.

Fortifications that have been destroyed are not to be rebuilt.

Goods of churchmen to be restored.

Cæterum vero compromissum fuit, quod omnes ecclesiæ, vel ecclesiasticæ personæ, quæ suis bonis vel redditibus per violentiam hujus guerræ privatæ fuerant, in omni loco terrarum utriusque regis, restituerentur in integrum. Sed quia rex Franciæ volebat quod omnes illi qui ei adhæserant, vel regi Angliæ, clauderentur in treugis istis, ita quod a neutro illorum molestarentur, vel quod etiam nemo conversorum in alterutrum hostiliter moveretur, impeditæ sunt treugæ; quia videlicet rex Angliæ violare nolebat consuetudines et leges Pictaviæ, vel aliarum terrarum suarum, in quibus consuetum erat ab antiquo, ut magnates causas proprias invicem gladiis allegarent.

Richard refuses to compel the barons of Poictou to peace.

Hoveden, iii. 234.

Et sic imperfecto negotio ab invicem separati sunt omnes qui colloquium illud ceperant, et ex illo die prædicti reges inimiciores facti sunt, et acrius inter se alter adversus alterum congressus est, in rapinis et iniquis combustionibus. Rex quidem Franciæ venit ad civitatem Ebroicarum, et eam

The conference fails, and the war is renewed.

---

[1] *Gurnay*] Garnagio, H.

[2] *eorum*] illorum, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 255.

penitus subvertit, et ecclesias destruxit, non parcens ætati vel sexui: et reliquias sanctorum inde asportavit. Hæc autem fecit eo quod cives Ebroicenses, relicto eo, reversi fuerant ad fidem et servitium domini sui regis Angliæ. A.D. 1194. June. Philip destroys Evreux.

Cum autem Franciæ rex, destructa civitate Ebroicensi, inde recederet, et ad Freteval[1] veniret, rex Angliæ ad insidias ei parandas venit Vendomiam. Et quia locus ille non erat clausus muro, nec ad defendendum aptus, fecit rex tendere extra villam tentoria sua; et in eis, ita securus ac si esset clausus muro, exspectabat mandatum regis Franciæ, qui mandavit ei quod die illo visitaret eum in manu hostili. Cujus mandatum rex Angliæ lætus suscipiens, renunciavit illi quod ipse exspectaret eum; et nisi venisset, ipse visitaret eum in crastino mane. Quod cum rex Franciæ audisset, non visitavit regem Angliæ illo die. Mane autem facto rex Angliæ fecit exercitum suum armari, et processit, ut cum exercitu regis Franciæ congrederetur. Quo audito, rex Franciæ et exercitus ejus fugit ante faciem regis Angliæ subsequentis. In fuga autem illa multi de exercitu regis Franciæ interfecti sunt, et multi capti. Captus est etiam regis Franciæ thesaurus magnus, et capella regia, et cartæ universorum hominum regis Angliæ, qui se dederant regi Franciæ[2] contra eum. July. Richard comes to Vendome Philip to Freteval. Messages between the two. Richard prepares to fight. Philip flies and loses his treasure.

Hoveden, iii. 256.

In fuga vero illa rex Franciæ declinavit se a turba, et intravit quandam ecclesiam, ut Missam audiret, longe a recta via. Rex vero Angliæ, nesciens quod rex Franciæ se absconderet, ibat adhuc spirans minarum et cædis in homines regis Franciæ, et quærebat eum, ut morti traderet, vel vivum caperet; et dictum est ei a quodam Flandrensi, quod rex Franciæ jam longe præcesserat: et ita rex Angliæ deceptus processit in equo velocissimo modicum ultra fines Franciæ et Normanniæ; et deficiente ei equo illo, Marcades princeps Brabacenorum tradidit illi alium equum: et sic rex Angliæ, non invento rege Franciæ, rediit Vindomiam, cum præda magna hominum et equorum, et pecunia magna. Narrow escape of Philip.

Deinde perrexit rex in Pictaviam, ad debellandum[3] Gaufridum de Rancune,[4] et vicecomitem de Engolismo, qui se dederant regi Franciæ et comiti Johanni contra eum; et ipse expugnavit eos. Unde et ipse in hac forma scripsit Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo; Richard reduces Poictou.

---

[1] *ad Freteval*] ad villam quæ dicitur Freteval, M., H.

[2] *Franciæ*] et comiti Johanni, ins. M., H.

[3] *debellandum*] bellandum, C.

[4] *Rancune*] Racune, M.

A.D. 1194. July 22.

Epistola Ricardi regis ad Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum de castellis captis.

Letter to the archbishop of Canterbury.

"Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, et dux Normanniæ et "Acquitanniæ, comes Andegaviæ, venerabili in Christo patri "Huberto, eadem gratia Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, totius "Angliæ primati, salutem. Hoveden, iii. 256.

The king has taken the castles of Geoffrey of Rancon and the count of Angoulême.

"Sciatis quod nos, Dei gratia, Qui in omnibus rectum con- "siderat, Talleburgum, et Marciliacum, et omnia castella, et "totam terram Gaufridi de Rancona cepimus; et civitatem "Engolismi, et Castellum Novum, et Muntiniacum, et La "Chese, et omnia alia castella, et totam terram comitis En- "golismi, cum omni integritate cepimus; civitatem autem "Engolismi et Burgum in una vesperata cepimus; in terris "vero, quas in partibus illis cepimus, bene ad trecentos "milites et quadraginta millia armatorum cepimus. Teste "meipso," etc.[1] Hoveden, iii. 257.

A truce between the kings agreed on.

Interim familiares regis Franciæ, et familiares regis Angliæ, ex consensu utriusque regis, convenerunt inter Vernolium et Tilers ad colloquium, ad tractandum de treugis inter illos; et convenit[2] sicut inferius notatum est;

Litteræ Drogonis de Merloto, et Anselmi decani Turonis, de treugis factis inter reges Franciæ et Angliæ.[3]

July 23. Dreux de Merlo and dean Anselm declare the conclusion of a truce.

"Drogo de Merloto constabularius Franciæ, et Anselmus "beati Martini Turonis decanus, et Ursio domini regis "Franciæ camerarius, omnibus ad quos præsentes litteræ "pervenerint, salutem. Noveritis, quod nos de mandato do- "mini nostri Philippi regis Franciæ juravimus, et fidem manu "legati dedimus, quod dominus noster rex Franciæ treugas, "sicut inferius scriptæ sunt, et conventiones treugarum "observabit. Treugæ autem in hunc modum datæ sunt. "Dominus noster rex Franciæ, intuitu Dei, ad preces cardi- "nalis et abbatis Cisterciensis, concedit regi Angliæ et suis "treugas: et concedit, quod firmare possit, si firmare volu-

[1] *Teste . . . etc.*] Teste me ipso apud Engolismum, xxii[a]. die Julii, ins. M., H.

[2] *convenit*] inter eos, ins. M., H.

[3] Only a small portion is here given of the long document inserted by Hoveden and copied from him in M. and V. The principal omissions are the names of the persons and places, on both sides, included in the truce; the arrangements for arbitration, and for the oaths of ratification; and the date; "Actum inter "Vernolium et Tilers anno Incar- "nati Verbi M°C°XC°IIII°., xxiii[a]. "die Julii." See Hoveden, iii. pp 257–260.

Hoveden, iii. 257.

" erit, Novum Burgum, et Driencurt, et Concas, et Britol- A.D. 1194. July 23.
" lium. Aliæ munitiones, quæ dirutæ sunt per guerram per Richard is to fortify four places.
" regem Franciæ, aut per suos, non firmabuntur in hiis
" treugis, nisi ea contigerit firmari per pacem quæ fiet
" inter regem Franciæ et regem Angliæ. Rex Franciæ et
" sui erunt de omnibus in ea tenatura, in qua erant die qua
" treugæ datæ fuerunt. De valle Rodolii in hunc modum Philip is to hold Vaudreuil.
" erit; rex Franciæ tenens erit de valle Rodolii sicut erat

Hoveden, iii. 258.

" prius: scilicet, de ipso Rodolio et de ipsa tota villa cum
" ecclesiis: et de Lovers, et de Aquigeniaco, et de Laire, et Frontier drawn.
" de aliis usque ad Hayam Malherbe, et usque ad pontem
" Archiæ. De Haia vero Malherbe, et de ultra, et de ponte
" Archiæ, et de ultra, erit tenens rex Angliæ.

" De omnibus fortelescis, et de quibus rex Franciæ est The kings may do what they please with fortresses in their hand on the day of the truce.
" seysiatus die treugarum, sic erit: quod rex Franciæ eas
" infra treugas poterit infortiare, vel diruere, vel comburere
" si voluerit, et de tota terra, quam tenet, voluntatem suam
" facere. Et rex Angliæ similiter illas fortelesces, de quibus
" est tenens die treugarum, poterit infortiare, vel diruere,
" vel comburere: sed rex Angliæ de dirutis fortelescis per
" regem Franciæ aut per suos nullam poterit firmare, nisi
" illas quatuor quæ superius dictæ sunt.

Hoveden, iii. 260.

" De prisonis ita erit utrobique, quod illi prisones quos rex Arrangement about prisoners.
" Franciæ habet, ostigabuntur per securitatem quam obtulerunt,
" si prædicto regi placuerit; si autem non placet, dictatores
" sui sub adjuratione sacramenti sui dicent quæ securitas fa-
" cienda esset ad hoc, quod rex Franciæ securus esset, quod
" priso reveniret in prisonam regis Franciæ quindecim diebus
" ante terminum, si vivus esset priso: et de prisonis regis
" Angliæ similiter erit per suos dictatores. Hæc autem omnia Oaths to be taken by both kings.
" bona fide servanda ambo reges jurabunt et affidabunt, inde-
" que litteras suas patentes et de treugis per annum duraturis
" et de conventionibus contractis[1] conficient."

Post transfretationem[2] regis, cum Hugo Dunelmensis epi- Hugh Bardulf requires the bishop of Durham to resign Northumberland.
scopus domum rediret, Hugo Bardulfus petiit ab eo comitatum
Northumbriæ, et Novum Castellum super Tynam, et castellum
Hoveden, iii. 261. de Bamburc, sicut idem episcopus promiserat regi se traditu-
rum. Sed episcopus id facere distulit, quia nuncius suus, per

---

[1] The language of this clause varies somewhat from that of the document as given by Hoveden, in consequence of the omissions in the earlier portion. See Hoveden, iii. 260.

[2] *transfretationem*] autem, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1194. July. The bishop has offered 2000 marks to have the grant continued, and declines to surrender the county.

quem ipse obtulerat regi duo millia marcarum argenti pro comitatu illo cum supradictis castellis sibi retinendo, nondum redierat. Qui cum rediret, attulit secum litteras regis, per quas rex mandavit Hugoni Bardulpho, quod, si prædictus Dunelmensis episcopus fecisset eum securum de duabus millibus marcis reddendis, traderet dicto [episcopo] comitatum prædictum[1] cum castellis. Cum igitur litteræ regis traderentur Hugoni Bardulfo, respondit ipse Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo, dicens: "Si vultis ut ego præceptum regis "faciam, tradite mihi castella, et ego retradam ea vobis, "sicut rex præcepit; si feceritis me securum de illis duabus "millibus marcis habendis ad opus regis." Cui episcopus Dunelmensis respondit: "Non est opus ut ego vobis ea "tradam ad retradendum mihi, quia ego habeo illa et teneo." Hiis auditis, Hugo Bardulphus statim mandavit regi[2] responsum episcopi; unde rex iratus præcepit Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum disseysiari de castellis[3] et de comitatu supradictis, et ut duo millia marcarum ab eo exigerentur; præcepit etiam rex in furore iræ suæ, ut ipse Dunelmensis episcopus disseysiaretur de manerio de Sadberge,[4] cum feodis militum et wapentaco, quæ idem rex beato Cuthberto, et ecclesiæ Dunelmensi, et præfato episcopo et successoribus ejus, dederat in puram et perpetuam eleemosynam, et carta sua confirmaverat, sicut superius notatum est: et factum est ita. Hoveden, iii. 261.

Hugh Bardulf, by the king's order, seizes the county, and demands 2,000 marks and the manor of Sadberge.

The archbishop of Canterbury sends a commission of judges to York;

Interim conquerentibus canonicis Eboracensis ecclesiæ Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, regis justitiario, de injuriis quas Eboracensis archiepiscopus eis faciebat; idem archiepiscopus, auctoritate regia, qua fungebatur, misit Eboracum comitem Rogerum Bigot, et Willelmum de Warenna, et Willelmum de Stutevilla, et Hugonem Bardulf, et Willelmum Briwere, Hoveden, iii. 262.

to settle the quarrel between Geoffrey and the canons.

et Gaufridum [Haget], et Willelmum filium Ricardi clericum, ad audiendam controversiam inter archiepiscopum Eboracensem et canonicos suos, et, secundum quod jus dictaverit, terminandam. Qui cum venirent, et audirent appellationes clericorum,[5] et responsa archiepiscopi et suorum, præceperunt homines archiepiscopi, qui calumniati fuerant de roberia, capi et incarcerari. Et quamvis archiepiscopus opera eorum warantizaret, non tamen eos potuit[6] plegiare. Deinde summonuerunt archiepiscopum ut veniret judicio pariturus,

They summon archbishop

---

[1] *prædictum*] prænominatum, M., H.

[2] *regi*] domino regi, M., H.

[3] *castellis*] catallis, C.

[4] *Sadberge*] Sandberge, C.

[5] *clericorum*] canonicorum, M., H.

[6] *potuit*] archiepiscopus, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 262.

et quia noluit, disseisiaverunt eum de omnibus maneriis suis, excepto unico solo[1] de Ripun, in quo archiepiscopus se receperat. Deinde fecerunt canonicos introduci in stallos suos, de quibus archiepiscopus eos disseisiaverat. Et sic recedentes statuerunt Willelmum de Stutevilla et Gaufridum Haget custodes in Eboracensi sira super archiepiscopum, et super vicecomitatum suum.

A.D. 1194. July or August. Geoffrey, and seize his lands. William Stuteville and Geoffrey Haget, keepers of the county.

Paulo post, in mense Septembris, missi sunt ex parte regis per singulos comitatus Angliæ justitiæ errantes, qui secundum subscriptorum formam capitulorum processerunt in justitiis exsequendis;

September. Itinerant judges sent through the country.

Forma qualiter procedendum est in placitis coronæ regis.

"In primis eligendi sunt quatuor milites de toto comitatu, "qui per sacramentum suum eligant duos legales milites de "quolibet hundredo vel wapentaco, et illi duo eligant, super "sacramentum suum, decem milites de singulis hundredis vel "wapentacis, vel, si milites defuerint, legales et liberos ho- "mines, ita quod illi xii. in simul respondeant de omnibus "capitulis de toto hundredo vel wapentaco."

Way of electing the jury for the hundred or wapentake.

Capitula placitorum coronæ regis.

Hoveden, iii. 263.

"(I.) De placitis coronæ novis et veteribus, et omnibus "quæ nondum finita sunt coram justitiariis domini regis.

Questions to be entertained by the itinerant judges.

"(II.) Item de omnibus recognitionibus, et omnibus placitis, "quæ summonita sunt coram justitiariis per breve regis, vel "capitalis justitiæ, vel a capitali curia regis coram eis missa.

"(III.) Item de escaetis, quæ sint, et quæ fuerint post- "quam rex arripuit iter versus Jerusalem, et quæ fuerunt "tunc in manu regis, et utrum sunt modo in manu ejus, "vel non, et de omnibus escaetis domini regis, si a manu "sunt remotæ, quomodo, et per quem, et in cujus manus de- "venerunt, et qualiter, et quis exitus habuerit, et quos, et "quid valuerint, et quid modo valent;[2] et si aliqua escaeta "sit, quæ ad dominum regem pertineat, quæ in manu ejus "non sit.

Escheats.

"(IV.) Item de ecclesiis quæ sunt de donatione domini "regis.

Churches.

"(V.) Item de custodiis puerorum quæ ad dominum regem "pertinent.

Wardships.

---

[1] *solo*] manerio, ins. M., H.

[2] *valent*] valeant, M., H.

A.D. 1194. September. Marriages. "(VI.) Item de maritagiis puellarum vel viduarum, quæ ad dominum regem pertinent." Hoveden, iii. 263.

Malefactors. "(VII.) Item de malefactoribus, et eorum receptoribus, et eis consentientibus."

Forgers. "(VIII.) Item de falsionariis."

Murderers of Jews. "(IX.) [1] Item de interfectoribus Judæorum; et de catallis et vadiis eorum, terris, et debitis, et cartis, qui sint, et qui ea habuerint, et qui debita debuerint; et qui terras eorum tenuerint, et quantum valent, et qui exitus earum habuerint, et per quod tempus; et qui ad occisionem Judæorum fuerunt, et finem non fecerunt cum rege vel justitiis suis, capiantur, et sine rege vel suis non deliberentur.

Aids for the king's ransom. "(X.) Item de omnibus auxiliis datis ad redemptionem domini regis, quis quantum promiserit, et quantum reddiderit, et quantum a retro sit.

Favourers of John. "(XI.) Item de fautoribus comitis Johannis, qui finem cum domino rege fecerunt, et qui non.

Chattels of John. "(XII.) Item de catallis dicti comitis, vel fautorum ejus, quæ ad usum domini regis non sunt conversa, et quantum vicecomites perceperunt,[2] vel ballivi sui, et quis aliquid contra antiquas consuetudines regni dederit. Hoveden, iii. 264.

John's possessions. "(XIII.) Item de omnibus terris dicti comitis Johannis, de dominicis, de wardis, de escaetis, et de donis suis, et qua de causa data sunt ei illa dona; et omnia dona ejusdem Johannis comitis capiantur in manu domini regis, præterquam illa quæ per regem confirmata sunt.

His debts. "(XIV.) Item de debitis et finibus quæ debentur eidem comiti, et qua de causa; et omnia exigantur ad opus regis.[3]

Usurers. "(XV.) Item de fœneratoribus, et eorum catallis, qui mortui sunt.

Wines. "(XVI.) Item de vinis venditis contra assisam, et de falsis mensuris tam vini quam aliarum rerum.

---

[1] *Item de interfectoribus*] This clause stands thus in M., H. :— "Item de interfectoribus Judæorum, "qui sint; et de vadiis Judæorum "interfectorum, et catallis et terris "et debitis et cartis; et quis ea ha- "buerit, et quis quantum eis debue- "rit; et quo vadio habuerint; et "quis ea teneat, et quantum valeant, "et quis exitus inde habuerit, et "quos, et omnia vadia et debita Ju- "dæorum interfectorum capiantur "in manu regis; et qui ad occisi- "onem Judæorum fuerunt, et non "fecerunt finem cum domino rege "vel justitiariis suis, capiantur, et "non deliberentur nisi per dominum "regem vel justitiarios suos."

[2] *perceperunt*] receperunt, M., H.

[3] *regis*] domini regis, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 264.

"(XVII.) Item de cruciatis mortuis ante iter suum arreptum versus Jerusalem, et quis eorum catalla habuerit, et quæ, et quanta. A.D. 1194. September. Crusaders dead.

"(XVIII.) Item de magnis assisis, quæ sunt de centum solidatis terræ, et infra. Great assize.

"(XIX.) Item de defaltis.

"(XX.) Præterea in quolibet comitatu eligantur tres milites et unus clericus custodes placitorum coronæ. Coroners.

"(XXI.) Et nullus vicecomes sit justitiarius in vicecomitatu suo, nec in comitatu quem tenuerit post primam coronationem domini regis. Sheriff not to be a justice in his county.

"(XXII.) Præterea tailleantur omnes civitates, et burgi, et dominica domini regis." Talliage to be levied.

(XXIII.) *De maneriis regis instaurandis.*

"(1.) Justitiarii vero nominati una cum ballivis Willelmi de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia, et Gaufridi filii Petri et aliorum,[1] et vicecomitum locorum, summoneri faciant milites in comitatu in rotulo nominatos; ut ad diem et locum, quem eis scire faciant, veniant, et coram eis jurare faciant illos, quod legale posse suum ponent ad wardas et escaetas domini regis instaurandas et adpretiandas ad commodum domini regis, nec alicujus odio, favore, vel gratia illud omittent; et quod prædicti milites nominati super sacramentum suum eligent duodecim legales milites, vel liberos et legales homines, si milites ad hoc non inventi fuerint, per diversas Provision for restocking the king's demesne lands.

Hoveden, iii. 265.

partes singulorum comitatuum in itinere prædictorum justiariorum, sicut expedire viderint; qui similiter jurent, quod ad wardas et escaetas de partibus illis instaurandas et appretiandas et affirmandas suum legale posse, et consilium, et auxilium apponent ad commodum regis, ut prædictum est; et prædicti jurati super sacramentum suum eligent de liberioribus hominibus escaetarum et wardarum quot et quales noverint esse sibi necessarios, ad prædicta domini regis negotia, sicut melius fieri potest, ad opus domini regis et commodum illius[2] exsequenda. (2.) Et sciendum quod dictæ escaetæ et wardæ instaurabuntur de exitibus ex eis provenientibus, usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis; et etiam Inquest to be made by jury into the king's rights. Lands in ward and escheat to be restocked.

---

[1] *et aliorum*] et Willelmi de Chimelli, et Willelmi de Briwere, et Hugonis Bardolfi et vicecomitis locorum, M.

[2] *opus . . . . illius*] commodum domini regis, M., H.

A.D. 1194. September. " de exitibus ejusdem termini. Et si hæc non sufficiunt, sup- Hoveden, iii. 265.
" plebitur deficiens de toloneo domini regis, ita quod illi qui
" tenebunt wardas et escaetas illas ad firmam, respondebunt
" inde a festo Sancti Michaelis et deinceps tanquam de stau-
Fermers to hold their wardships and escheats to the end of the term; " ratis. (3.) Dominus autem rex illis, qui wardas illas et
" escaetas ad firmas tenebunt, eas usque ad terminum suum
" de anno in annum warantizabit; ita quod licet rex[1] ali-
" quam illarum alicui dedisset, firmarius firmam suam tenebit
" usque ad finem anni, per firmam ei reddendam, cui rex
" eam dederit, quam dominus rex inde perceperit. Justitia
" vero escaetæ, quam dederit, remaneat domino regi, nisi
and then to render account of stock. " rex[1] illud nominatim dederit. (4.) Firmarius etiam, cum
" firmam suam dimiserit, instauramentum suum, et omnia sua
" quæ in firmis posuerit ultra instauramentum regis, libere
" et sine diminutione habebit, et inde habebunt litteras do-
" mini archiepiscopi patentes, continentes tenorem cartæ
Assized rents. " regis[2] super hoc factæ. (5.) Inquiretur etiam diligentis-
" sime quantus sit assisus redditus per singula maneria in
" demenyo, et quantum valeant omnia alia in prædictis ma-
" neriis assisa, et quot sunt carucæ, et quantum singulæ
" valeant, non æstimantes eas ad pretium viginti solidorum
" tantum; sed secundum quod terra fuerit vel bona vel mala,
" crescat vel decrescat pretium. Illi vero qui firmas sus-
" cipient, firmas suas instaurabunt, ut dictum est, secundum
" pretium supradictum de exitibus escaetarum et wardarum.
Cows and horses. " (6.) Inquiratur etiam de quot bobus et averiis singulæ
" carucæ valeant instaurari, et quot et quantum instauramen-
" tum singula maneria possunt sustinere. Et tunc aperte et
Values regulated. " distincte in scriptum redigantur.[3] (7.) Erit autem pretium
" bovis quatuor solidi, et vaccæ similiter, et averii similiter,
" et ovis crispæ decem denarii, et ovis grossioris lanæ sex Hoveden, iii. 266.
" denarii, et suis duodecim denarii, et verris duodecim de-
" narii; et cum firmarii firmas suas dimiserint de prædicto
" pretio respondebunt, vel de animalibus pacabilibus in op-
" tione firmariorum; et cum omnia prædicta instaurata fue-
" rint et appretiata, omnia imbrevientur aperte et distincte,
Exceptions from the assize. " et deferantur ad scaccarium. (8.) Excipiuntur autem de
" hac assisa episcopatus et abbatiæ, et terræ baronum qui
Wards and escheats to be taken into the king's hands. " proximi sunt ætati. (9.) Inquiratur etiam per sacramentum
" prædictorum de omnibus wardis et escaetis, quæ non sunt
" in manu domini regis, et capiantur in manu regis,[4] et de
" illis fiat, sicut de aliis escaetis et wardis.

---

[1] *rex*] dominus rex, M., H.
[2] *regis*] domini regis, M., H.
[3] *redigantur*] diligantur, C.
[4] *regis*] domini regis, M., H.

(XXIV.)

A.D. 1194. September.

Hoveden, iii. 266.

"(1.) Omnia debita et vadia Judæorum inbrevientur, terræ, domus, redditus, et possessiones. Judæus vero qui aliquid horum celaverit, sit in forisfactura domini regis de corpore suo, et concelamento, et de omnibus possessionibus suis et catallis,[1] nec unquam concelamentum Judæo recuperare licebit. (2.) Item provideantur sex vel septem loca in quibus facient præstita sua, et provideantur duo legales Christiani, et duo legales Judæi, et duo legales scriptores, et coram illis, et clerico dicti[2] Willelmi de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia, et Willelmi de Chimely, fiant præstita. Et cartæ præstitorum fiant in modum cyrographi; et altera pars remaneat Judæo, sigillata sigillo illius cui pecunia traditur; et altera pars remaneat in arca communi, in qua sint tres seruræ, unde duo Christiani habeant unam clavem, et duo Judæi unam clavem, et clericus dicti[2] Willelmi de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia unam;[3] et præterea tria sigilla, et qui claves habuerint sigilla apponent; clerici autem prædictorum Willelmi et Willelmi habeant rotulum de transcriptis omnium cartarum, et sicut cartæ mutabuntur, mutetur rotulus: de singulis cartis dentur tres denarii, medietas a Judæo, et medietas ab eo cui pecunia creditur; unde duo scriptores habeant duos denarios, et custos rotuli tertium. Et de cætero nullum fiet præstitum, nulla Judæis fiat solutio, nulla fiet cartarum mutatio, nisi coram prædictis vel majori parte, si omnes interesse nequiverint. Et prædicti Christiani duo habeant unum rotulum de recepta Judæorum solutionis eis de cætero faciendæ, et duo Judæi unum, et custos rotuli unum. (3.) Item quilibet Judæus jurabit super rotulum suum, quod omnia debita sua, et vadia, et redditus, et omnes res, et possessiones suas inbreviari faciet, et quod nihil celabit, ut prædictum est; et si scire poterit quod aliquis aliquid celaverit, illud justitiis ad eos missis secreto revelabit, et quod falsionarios cartarum, et retonsores denariorum, ubi eos scient, detegent et monstrabunt, et de falsis cartis similiter.

Possessions of the Jews to be registered.

How the payments of the Jews are to be made, and the deeds kept.

Hoveden, iii. 267.

The Jews are to swear to conceal nothing.

"(XXV.) Præterea inquisitio, quæ quærenda erat de prisis et tenseriis omnium ballivorum domini regis, tam justitiariorum quam vicecomitum, et constabulariorum et forestariorum, et eorum servientium, post coronationem domini regis

The inquest into the exactions of the king's officers is postponed.

[1] *catallis*] omnibus catallis suis, M., H.

[2] *dicti*] om. M., H.

[3] *unam*] et magistri Willelmi de Chimeli tertiam, M., H.

A.D. 1194. September.

"Ricardi primam, et quare prisæ illæ captæ fuerunt, per "quem, et de omnibus catallis, donis, et promissis factis oc- "casione seysinæ factæ de terris comitis Johannis, et fautorum "suorum, et quis ea receperit, et quæ, et quantum,—dilationem "cepit[1] per mandatum Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, "tunc temporis capitalis justitiarii domini[2] regis." Hoveden, iii. 267.

Richard puts his officers in Anjou and Maine to ransom.

Interim Ricardus rex Angliæ, peractis negotiis suis in Pictavia pro voluntate sua, rediit in Andegaviam, et redemit omnes ballivos suos, id est, ad redemptionem coegit. Similiter in Cenomannia.

He annuls the truce and all the acts of the chancellor passed under the old seal,

Deinde veniens in Normanniam moleste tulit quicquid factum fuerat de supradictis treugis, et imputans cancellario suo hoc per eum fuisse factum, abstulit ab eo sigillum suum, et fieri sibi fecit novum,[3] et mandavit per singulas terras suas, quod nihil ratum foret, quod fuerat factum per vetus sigillum suum in hoc; tum quia cancellarius operatus fuerat inde minus discrete quam esset necesse, tum quia sigillum illud perditum erat, quando Rogerus Malus Catulus, vicecancellarius suus, submersus erat in mari ante insulam de Cypre. Et præcepit rex, quod omnes, qui cartas habebant, venirent ad novum sigillum ad cartas suas renovandas.

and requires charters to be confirmed by the new one.

De torniamentis statutis in Anglia per Ricardum regem Angliæ.

August. Tournaments allowed in England, on purchase of licence.

Præterea rex statuit torniamenta fieri in Anglia, et carta sua confirmavit; ita quod quicunque torniare vellet, daret ei pecuniam secundum formam subscriptam: videlicet, comes[4] pro licentia torniandi xx. marcas argenti, baro x.,[5] miles terram habens iiii. marcas; miles terram non habens ii. marcas.[6] Et præcepit rex ne aliquis miles accederet ad loca torniamentorum, nisi prius tradidisset ei memoratam pecuniam. Cartam hujus concessionis tradidit rex Willelmo comiti Saresbiriensi custodiendam. Hubertus[7] summus regis justitiarius constituit Teobaldum, fratrem suum, hujus pecuniæ collectorem. Hoveden, iii. 268.

The money to be collected by Theobald Walter.

Roger, son of Tancred king of Sicily, dies.

Eodem anno Rogerus, filius Tancredi regis Siciliæ, quem pater suus coronari fecerat in regem Siciliæ, qui etiam filiam Tursac[8] imperatoris Constantinopolitani in uxorem duxerat,

---

[1] *cepit*] ceperit, C., M.
[2] *domini*] om. M., H.
[3] *novum*] sigillum, ins. M., H.
[4] *comes*] daret, ins. M., H.
[5] *x.*] marcas argenti, ins. M., H.
[6] *marcas*] argenti, ins. M., H.
[7] *Hubertus*] Sed et Hubertus Walteri, M., H.
[8] *Tursac*] Chursac, H.

Hoveden, iii. 268. obiit; quo defuncto, Tancredus rex fecit Willelmum filium suum et fratrem dicti regis defuncti,[1] in regem Siciliæ coronari, et paulo post dictus Tancredus obiit. A.D. 1194. Death of Tancred.

Henricus Romanorum imperator intravit Apuliam cum exercitu.

Quo audito, Henricus Romanorum imperator, magno congregato exercitu, intravit Apuliam in principio mensis Augusti, et eam sibi subjugavit; et xv. diebus ante festum Sancti Michaelis cepit Salernum per vim. Et quia Salernitani proditiose egerant adversus eum, ut supra dictum est, tradentes Hoveden, iii. 269. Constantiam imperatricem in manu regis Tancredi, in vindictam illius proditionis omnes illius civitatis potentiores aut morti tradidit, aut in exilium damnatos relegavit, et uxores et filias eorum exposuit exercitui. Et invenit in turre majori magnum thesaurum valentem ducenta millia unciarum auri; et exercitus ejus factus est dives spoliis Salernitanorum. Deinde perrexit imperator ad civitatem Melfe, quæ statim reddita est ei; et dum ipse moram ibi fecit, redditæ sunt ei[2] civitates Apuliæ; ex quibus ipse tres subvertit, scilicet Salernum, et Spineole,[3] et Policor. Deinde ante festum Omnium Sanctorum venit in Siciliam usque Messanam cum tanta gloria et honore, quod non est auditum quod aliquis unquam antea gloriosius vel honorificentius illam terram intraret. Et ipse ibi honorifice susceptus est ab archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus et baronibus regni Siciliæ; et recedens inde perrexit Panormum.

Henry VI. takes Salerno, Sept. 15.

Cruel revenge of the emperor.

He takes Amalfi, and destroys Salerno and other places.

His reception in Sicily.

Quo cum venisset, regina Siciliæ, quondam uxor Tancredi regis, et Ricardus de Therne, frater ejus, tradiderunt ei palatium regis Siciliæ, et Willelmum regem, filium Tancredi,[4] et uxorem Rogeri regis, filiam Thursac imperatoris Constantinopolitani, et thesaurum auri et argenti inæstimabilem, quem reges Siciliæ thesaurizaverant sibi. Deinde traditæ sunt ei omnes civitates et munitiones regni Siciliæ: et Margaritus admiralis tradidit ei castrum de portu Panormi; et imperator dedit ei ducatum de Duraz et principatum de Tarenta, et principatum maris. Venerunt etiam ad prædictum Romanorum imperatorem omnes pagani et Judæi qui erant in regno Hoveden, iii. 270. Siciliæ, et satisfacientes illi remanserunt in regno, unusquisque in locum suum, sub ea conditione qua ante fuerat.

The treasures of Tancred surrendered to him.

He occupies Sicily and gives Durazzo to Margarit.

---

[1] *defuncti*] Rogeri, M., H.
[2] *ei*] omnes, M., H.
[3] *Spineole*] Spinehole, M.
[4] *Tancredi*] regis Tancredi, M., H.

A.D. 1194. Coronation of Henry and Constantia at Palermo.

Deinde imperator fecit se, et Constantiam imperatricem, uxorem suam, coronari in civitate Panormi, præsentibus et consentientibus archiepiscopis, episcopis, et principibus regni. Hoveden, iii. 270.

He disinters Tancred.

Deinde imperator fecit effodi a terra corpora Tancredi [1] et Rogeri filii ejus regis, et spoliavit eos coronis, sceptris et cæteris regalibus ornamentis; dicens quod ipsi non erant de jure reges, immo regni invasores, et violenti detentores.

He gives the widow of Roger to Philip of Swabia; and mutilates the son of Tancred.

Deinde imperator dedit Philippo fratri suo, duci de Suave, præfatam filiam Thursac imperatoris Constantinopolitani in uxorem; et Willelmum regem, filium Tancredi regis, excæcavit et ementulavit.

Change in the municipal government at Rome.

Eodem anno cives Romani elegerunt lvi. senatores, et constituerunt eos supra se; prius enim habebant unum solum senatorem, qui cognominabatur [2] Benedictus carus homo, qui regnavit super eos duobus annis, et deinde habuerunt alium senatorem, qui cognominatus [3] est Johannes Capuche, qui similiter regnavit [4] aliis duobus annis: in quorum temporibus melius regebatur Roma, quam nunc temporibus lvi. senatorum.

De prima coronatione regis Nortweyæ.

Swerre, king of Norway, crowned, June 29.

Eodem anno Swerus princeps Northweyæ, contra prohibitionem domini papæ, fecit se coronari in regem Northweyæ. Quo audito, Eustachius archiepiscopus de Nidros maluit exulari, quam interesse illius coronationi; abiit; et prædictus Swerus, filius Siwardi quondam regis Northweyæ, præcepit ut omnes episcopi Northweyæ convenissent apud Berges in festo apostolorum Petri et Pauli, ad coronandum eum. Erat autem inter eos quidam episcopus de Wyc, Nicolaus nomine. [5] Hic dicebat quod ipse interesse noluit illius coronationi propter absentiam archiepiscopi sui; quo audito, Swerus fecit episcopum illum comprehendi, et in mari supra monticulum ligari, ita quod unda maris fluens fere intravit in os ejus; et sic episcopus ille perterritus assensum præbuit voluntati Sweri Berkebayn, et coronavit eum, et in regem consecravit, apud Berges in festo apostolorum Petri et Pauli, præsentibus et consentientibus Martino de Berges, et Airico de Stavengre, et aliis. [6] Eodem die, cum idem Swerus, rex et sacerdos, Hoveden, iii. 271.

He compels an unwilling bishop to crown him.

On the day of coronation he

[1] *Tancredi*] regis, ins. M., H.

[2] *cognominabatur*] cognominatus erat, M., H.

[3] *cognominatus*] vocatus, M., H.

[4] *regnavit*] super eos, M., H.

[5] *nomine*] qui vocabatur, M., H.

[6] *et aliis*] et Thore de Burgunde et Absalon episcopis, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 271.

pranderet more regio cum episcopis et principibus regni, fecit amputari caput Siwardi, filii Adelstan quondam regis Northweyæ, et coram se et convivantibus fecit caput[1] deferri. A.D. 1194. June 29. orders the execution of one of his competitors.

Est autem notandum, quod iste Swerus Birkebayn quindecim reges in quindecim navalibus præliis devicit, et interfecit cum omni sequela eorum, antequam ipse coronam regni potuisset adipisci, quorum nomina hæc sunt: Magnus rex, Borgher rex, Siwardus rex, Orde rex, Guthorn rex, Johannes Cuvelung rex, Belue rex, Zether rex, et alii sex, et iste Siwardus filius Adelstani. Et est sciendum, quod consuetudo regni Norweyæ est usque in hodiernum diem, quod omnis qui alicujus regis Norweyæ dinoscitur esse filius, licet sit spurius et de ancilla genitus, tantum sibi jus vendicat in regnum Norweiæ, quantum filius regis conjugati, et de libera genitus. Et ideo fiunt inter eos prælia indesinenter, donec unus illorum vincatur et interficiatur. This Swerre conquered and slew fifteen kings. Rule of succession among the kings of Norway.

Hoveden, iii. 272.

Eodem anno, paulo ante festum Sancti Michaelis, venerunt Eboracum Hamo præcentor Eboracensis ecclesiæ, et Gaufridus de Muschamp archidiaconus de Clivelande, et magister Willelmus Testard archidiaconus de Notingham, qui Romam profecti [fuerant] cum magistro Simone Apuliensi, et cum Radulfo archidiacono de Westrithing, propter injurias quas Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus illis et concanonicis suis fecerat, qui eos et omnes illis communicantes excommunicaverat, et ecclesias eorum interdixerat, super appellationem ad summum pontificem factam. Et attulerunt secum litteras absolutionis tam de excommunicatione quam de interdicto; et litteras de restitutione ablatorum, quarum executionem faciendam Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus ex mandato Cœlestini papæ suscipiens, Eboracum venit: et in die Sancti Michaelis celebravit Missam in matrice ecclesia; denuncians clero et populo, sententiam, quam Gaufridus archiepiscopus Eboracensis in canonicos suos et eis communicantes dederat, nullam fuisse. Radulfus vero archidiaconus de Westrithing in redeundo a Roma obiit: cujus archidiaconatum Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus dedit primum Petro fratri suo, deinde Petro de Dinant.[2] Præfatus vero archiepiscopus facta appellatione contra canonicos suos, et eorum adquisita, transfretavit de Anglia in Normanniam ad Ricardum regem Angliæ fratrem suum, et ab eo litteras impetravit in hac forma; September. Arrival from Rome of the envoys sent on behalf of the chapter against the archbishop of York; with letters of absolution. Hugh of Durham declares the archbishop's sentence null, Sep. 29. The archbishop goes to see the king in Normandy.

Hoveden, iii. 273.

---

[1] *caput*] illud, ins. M., H. | [2] *Dinant*] Clinant, C., M.

A.D. 1194. Nov. 3.

Epistola Ricardi regis Anglicæ.

The king writes that his brother Geoffrey has made his peace by a gift of 2,000 marks.

"Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Hoveden, iii. 273.
"Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, Willelmo de Sanctæ
"Mariæ Ecclesia et Hugoni Bardulf, dilectis et fidelibus
"suis, salutem. Notum facimus vobis, quod Gaufridus Ebora-
"censis archiepiscopus, frater noster, venit ad nos, et præter
"illas mille marcas quas reddidit in Anglia, fecit nobis volun-
"tatem nostram de aliis mille marcis; ipse autem, ut nobis per
"quendam innotuit, libenter, si posset, ante de debito suo
"satisfecisset, et moleste diu tulit quod tam diu distulit.
"Inde est quod eum in gratiam et protectionem nostram
"recepimus, et benivolentiam nostram ei plenarie concessi-
"mus. Nos autem nuncium nostrum mittimus in Angliam
"cum nuncio suo, ut videat qualiter de residuis mille marcis
"nobis satisfecerit. Promisit enim nobis, ut inde nobis satis-

He orders that his lands shall be restored to him.

"faciet, quam citius poterit. Unde vobis mandamus, ut ei
"terras suas et omnia sua integra restitui faciatis sine
"dilatione; quod autem de redditibus suis vel de rebus suis
"venditum fuerit nomine hujus debiti, quod inde habuimus,
"rationabili compoto computari faciatis in residuo debiti sui;
"et si aliquid inde venditum fuerit minus justo pretio quam
"debuerat, vel amore vel odio alicujus, id faciatis emendari
"ab illis qui hoc fecerunt, et archiepiscopo in debito suo
"computari: homines autem ejus captos vel retentos, tam
"clericos quam laicos, secundum consuetudinem Angliæ fa-

He is to have all his archiepiscopal rights.

"ciatis sine dilatione replegiari et deliberari. Non patiamini Hoveden, iii. 274.
"autem quod laica potestas eum disturbet, quin ecclesiasticam
"censuram per totum archiepiscopatum suum posset exercere,
"sicut de ratione debet. Distringatis autem[1] homines de
"Beverlaco, quod damna ab eis illata ei restituant, et ei faciant
"quod ei facere debent, et quæ facere consueverunt anteces-
"soribus suis. Teste meipso, etc."[2]

Another letter.

Item dictus archiepiscopus Eboracensis impetravit alias litteras a rege[3] in hac forma;

Item epistola ejusdem.

The king annuls presentations made under his father's

"Ricardus Dei gratia, etc., Willelmo de Sanctæ Mariæ
"Ecclesia, et Hugoni Bardulfo, salutem. Sciatis quod di-
"dicimus, quod in morte patris nostri, sine præcepto suo et

[1] *autem*] etiam, M., H.
[2] *etc.*] iii^tio^. die Novembris, apud Mamerz, M., H.
[3] *rege*] domino rege, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 274.

" conscientia, habuerunt litteras de sigillo suo Gaufridus de " Muschamp de habendo archidiaconatu de Clivelande, et Wil- " lelmus de Stigandeby et magister Erardus de præbendis " habendis in ecclesia Eboracensi, quæ tunc vacabat, et erat " in manu nostra; et ideo præcipimus, quod præfatos ab archi- " diaconatu et præbendis dictis sine mora dissaisietis, repe- " tentes ab eis quicquid exinde perceperunt, postquam illos " redditus ita fraudulenter et per surreptionem sunt adepti. " Teste meipso, etc."[1]

A.D. 119. Nov. 3. seal at the time of his death.

Proh pudor.

Turpe est doctori, cum culpa redarguit ipsum.

Idem enim archiepiscopus, dum adhuc esset cancellarius regis patris sui, sigillum illud in custodia habuit: per quod præfatus archidiaconatus et præbendæ illæ datæ fuerant præ- nominatis personis.

These had been sealed by Geoffrey himself as chancellor.

Eodem anno Johannes Belemeyns, archiepiscopus de Liuns supra Rodanum, deposuit se de archiepiscopatu suo; et con- tentus centum librarum esterlingorum redditibus pertinentibus ad archiepiscopatum de Liuns, in domo Clarevalensi vitam immaculatam, Deo et hominibus placentem, usque ad consum- mationem vitæ suæ duxit.

John, archbishop of Lyons, resigns and retires to Clairvaux.

De plagis Limpoldi ducis Austriæ.

Hoveden, iii. 275.

Eodem anno, cum Limpoldus dux Austriæ adhuc permaneret in sententia excommunicationis, quam dominus papa in eum tulerat propter captionem regis[2] Ricardi, nec pœniteret, fla- gellavit Dominus terram suam in hunc modum. In primum quidem incensæ sunt omnes civitates terræ suæ, nec alicui nota fuit causa incendii. Secundo, ex inundatione Danubii fluvii submersa est quædam terra adjacens, in qua decem millia hominum, vel eo amplius, perierunt. Tertio, cum in media æstate soleat et debeat omnis terra virere, tota terra ejus tunc temporis, contra solitum cursum et debitum, exaruit. Quarto, cum semina frugum deberent in herbam processisse, in vermes conversa sunt. Quinto, nobiliores terræ suæ morta- litate percussi sunt. Et quamvis tot et tantis flagellasset Do- minus terram suam plagis, noluit tamen pœnitere; sed indu- ratum est cor ejus, adeo quod ipse juravit, quod omnes obsides regis Angliæ, quos ipse habebat, capitalem subirent sententiam, nisi in proximo perficerentur ei a rege Angliæ omnes conven-

Chastise- ments that fell on duke Leopold of Austria; conflagra- tions, floods, blight, bad harvest, pestilence.

He threat- ens to put Richard's hostages to death.

[1] *etc.*] iii^tio. die Novembris, apud Mamerz, M., H.

[2] *regis*] Angliæ, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1194. Baldwin of Bethune sent home to Richard, who sends to the duke his niece Eleanor and the princess of Cyprus.

tiones quas cum illo fecerat. Unde factum est quod Baldewinus de Betun, qui unus erat ex illis qui dati fuerant duci Austriæ pro redemptione regis Angliæ obsides, ex communi obsidum consilio missus est ad regem Angliæ ad indicandum ei ducis propositum; qui cum venisset, misertus illorum rex, tradidit ei sororem Arturi ducis Britanniæ, et filiam imperatoris de Cipre, ad ducendum eas usque ad ducem Austriæ; sororem scilicet Arturi ad maritandam filio ducis Austriæ, et filiam imperatoris de Cipro tradendam in manu ducis Austriæ quietam. Hoveden, iii. 275.

A.——MCXCV.

Annus sextus regni regis Ricardi.

Richard keeps Christmas at Rouen.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo quinto, qui erat annus sextus[1] Ricardi regis Angliæ, qui[2] fuit in Normannia apud Rotomagum die Nativitatis Dominicæ, quæ die Dominica evenit, sollicitus providere sibi necessaria in pecunia et hominibus adquirendis contra Philippum regem Franciæ. Hoveden, iii. 276.

The truce with Philip was not kept.

Treuga enim, quæ inter eos statuta fuerat, duratura usque ad festum Omnium Sanctorum, minime tenebatur, quia homines utriusque regni rapinas faciebant iniquas.

Henry VI. at Palermo.

Eodem anno, die Natalis Domini, Henricus Romanorum imperator fuit in Sicilia apud Panormum, coronatus corona regni Siciliæ.

De ultima plaga quam Dominus fecit Limpoldo.

Dec. 26. The duke of Austria breaks his leg.

Eodem anno, die Sancti Stephani protomartyris infra Natale, cum induratum esset cor Limpoldi ducis Austriæ, nec propter prædictas plagas, quas Dominus fecit terræ suæ, posset adhuc emolliri, flagellavit Dominus corpus suum in hunc modum: convocatis majoribus terræ suæ ad celebrandum Natale[3] Domini, dum idem dux die Beati Stephani exiret, ut cum militibus suis luderet, cecidit equus suus super eum, et confregit pedem ejus; adeo quod ossa hinc inde confracta per mediam cutem exeuntia ad latitudinem palmæ exterius comparuerunt; et accedentes medici, quæ credebant ei expedire, pedi apposuerunt. In crastino pes ejus denigratus inventus est, et in eum statum conversus, quod oportuit eum, assentientibus medicis, obtruncari: quod cum ipse fieri postularet,

Dec. 27. He can find no one to amputate it.

[1] *sextus*] regni, ins. M., H.
[2] *qui*] idem rex Ricardus, M., H.
[3] *Natale*] festum Natalis, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 276. non est inventus qui voluntati ejus adquiesceret. Non enim ausus est aliquis, vel potuit pro dolore, in dominum suum manum imponere. Tandem filium et hæredem suum convenit, rogans et præcipiens quod pedem suum amputando dolori suo finem imponeret: quod cum ipse facere nollet,[1] accersito camerario suo, et ad hoc coacto, dux ipse dolarium manu propria tibiæ apposuit, et ipse camerarius malleo vibrato vix trina percussione pedem obtruncavit: medici vero, appositis medicaminibus, cum eum in crastino visitarent, non invenerunt in eo spem vitæ. Dux igitur desperatus, archiepiscopos et episcopos, et terræ suæ magnates, qui solemniis illis intererant, convocari fecit; et cum petiit absolvi a sententia quam dominus papa in eum tulerat, pro injuriis quas ipse regi Angliæ fecerat, responsum est ei ab universo clero, quod nullatenus absolveretur, nisi jurando caveret quod super memoratis injuriis judicio ecclesiæ staret, et nisi majores alii de ducatu suo id idem cum eo jurarent: et si de eo humanitus contingeret, quo minus judicium ecclesiasticum per eum procederet, ipsi omnino[2] procurarent, quod sanctæ ecclesiæ English hostages. satisfaceret;[3] qui absolutus, mediante judicio, omnes obsides regis Angliæ, quos habuit, liberari præcepit, et pecuniam sibi debitam regi Angliæ remisit; quo facto cum ipse decederet, et hæres ipsius cum quibusdam magnatibus resisteret, quo minus prædicta fierent, clerus ejusdem ducis corpus nullo modo sepeliri permisit: immo per octo dies detentum est super terram corpus illius, donec omnes obsides regis Angliæ liberarentur; quorum quidam in Angliam venientes narraverunt hæc omnia, sicut ea quæ viderant et audierant; qui etiam asserebant, quod in recessu suo exposita eis erant et oblata quatuor millia marcarum et amplius, reportanda, de pecunia regis Angliæ accepta; quæ propter viarum pericula nullatenus ausi sunt[4] recipere. Hæc omnia fecit Dominus, ut superbos contereret, et ut potentiam Suam mortalibus manifestaret; et cum injurias Sibi et Suis illatas digna prosequitur ultione, illud non propter nos tantum, sed etiam propter Se credamus advenisse; nec nobis jactanter ascribamus, quod ex sola benignitate Sua operatus est Dominus.

A.D. 1194. Dec. 27. He compels his chamberlain to hew off his foot.

Hoveden, iii. 277.

Dec. 28. He despairs of life and desires absolution.

His bishops bid him release the

The clergy refuse to bury him until this is done.

Hoveden, iii 278.

Interim cum Baldewinus de Betun appropinquasset terræ prædicti ducis Austriæ, et audisset mortem illius, non processit ulterius, sed ad regem Angliæ rediit, et reduxit præfatas puellas, et tradidit eas regi.

Baldwin of Bethune brings back the ladies.

Eodem anno Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus dedit Philippo regi Franciæ mille libras Andegavensis monetæ, pro

The archbishop of Rouen ransoms his

[1] *nollet*] nec vellet, M., H.
[2] *omnino*] omnimodis, M., H.
[3] *satisfaceret*] satisfieret, M., H.
[4] *sunt*] fuerant, M., H.

A.D. 1194. December. lands from Philip.

redemptione terrarum suarum quas idem rex[1] per guerram suam occupaverat. Hoveden, iii. 278.

Robert, earl of Leicester, sacrifices his castle of Pasci and 1000*l.* for his liberty.

Eodem tempore Robertus comes Leyrcestriæ obtulit eidem Philippo regi Franciæ pro redemptione sua mille libras sterlingorum, et clamare ei quietum in perpetuum ab ipso et hæredibus suis castellum de Pasci cum omnibus pertinentiis suis, et perquirere ei inde confirmationem domini papæ, et[2] confirmationem regis Angliæ. Sed quia nondum finis erat werræ inter ipsum et regem Angliæ, in respectum posuit ea quæ comes Leyrcestriæ obtulit ei.[3]

A.D. 1195. January. Richard captures a band of Assassins, who declare that they are sent by Philip.

Eodem anno, dum rex Angliæ moram faceret apud Chinun in Andegavia, accesserunt ad curiam regis quidam Accini numero xv. Et cum vellent ad regem accedere, ut eum interficerent, quidam illorum capti sunt et retenti, dicentes quod rex Franciæ eos miserat ad regem Angliæ interficiendum; sed rex Angliæ dissimulans regem Franciæ hoc velle, distulit judicium facere de illis, donec socii illorum comprehenderentur. Hoveden, iii. 283.

February. Simon of Apulia, returning to York with letters from Rome, is forbidden by the archbishop's people to act as dean or to enter the church.

Eodem anno mense Februarii, cum magister Simon Apuliensis, Eboracensis ecclesiæ decanus, rediret a transmarinis partibus, cum plenitudine gratiæ regis, et ejus confirmatione super decanatum Eboracensis ecclesiæ, et cum appropinquaret civitati Eboracensi, exierunt obviam ei clerus et populus civitatis in multitudine magna; inter quos erant quidam familiares Gaufridi archiepiscopi, videlicet, magister Johannes Otui, et Willelmus de Bonavilla, et duo alii, et prohibuerunt eidem decano, ex parte domini papæ et Eboracensis archiepiscopi, ne ipse tanquam decanus accederet ad matricem ecclesiam, donec controversia, quæ vertebatur inter archiepiscopum et illum de decanatu illo, terminaretur fine debito per Romanum pontificem: et super hoc appellaverunt ad dominum papam.

They appeal to Rome.

He perseveres however and is received by the canons, Feb. 12.

Et quia præfatus decanus a proposito suo desistere noluit, ipsi injecerunt in eum manus violentas; sed statim ipsi propter violentiam illam excommunicati permiserunt eum abire; et ipse procedens pervenit ad matricem ecclesiam; et canonici ecclesiæ receperunt eum cum solemni processione, die Domi-

---

[1] *rex*] Franciæ, ins. M., H.

[2] *et*] ad, C.

[3] *obtulit ei*] Here Hoveden introduces an account of the papal commission sent to York, Jan. 15, 1195, to inquire into the truth of the charges brought by the canons against archbishop Geoffrey: with the papal letters, dated June 8, 1194; and the proceedings thereupon. The whole of this is omitted in MS. M., as in most of the MSS. of Hoveden, and consequently in C. also. See Hoveden, iii. 278–283.

Hoveden, iii. 284.

nica proxima ante caput Jejunii; et in capite Jejunii venit Eboracum Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus, et sententiam excommunicationis, quæ data erat in illos qui manus violentas injecerunt in decanum, confirmavit. A.D. 1195. Feb. 15. Hugh of Durham excommunicates the dean's assailants.

Et cum idem Dunelmensis episcopus inde procederet versus Londonias, et veniret Donecastre, ægrotavit; et ulterius procedere non valens, delatus est per navem ad villam suam de Hovedene. Hugh falls sick at Doncaster, and is carried to Howden.

Eodem mense Februarii, in terra regis Scottorum, obiit Gregorius Rosensis[1] episcopus; cui successit Reginaldus dictus Macer, monachus de Malros. Dicitur autem, quod in cathedrali ecclesia episcopatus Rosensis, quæ dicitur Rosmarcin, Beatus Bonefacius, papa, qui fuit quartus a Beato Gregorio, sepultus est. Death of the bishop of Ross in Scotland.

De quo Bonefacio legitur in ecclesiasticis historiis, quod ipse a Phoca[2] Cæsare, Romanorum imperatore, impetravit donari ecclesiæ Dei templum Romæ, quod Panteon ante vocabatur; quod et ipse, eliminatis dæmoniorum spurcitiis, dedicavit in honore Beatæ Dei genitricis,[3] et virginis Mariæ, et Omnium Sanctorum, statuens illud festum celebrari singulis annis in capite kalendarum Novembris. Legend of Ross.

Hoveden, iii. 285.

Eodem anno mense Martii, tertia die ejusdem mensis, feria sexta, obiit Hugo Dunelmensis episcopus in villa de Hovedene, et sepultus est Dunelmi in capitulo monachorum: sed antequam corpus ejus Dunelmum intraret, Walterus de Ferlingtun tradidit Hugoni Bardolf castellum Dunelmi, et claves castelli suspendit supra feretrum Sancti Cuthberti; ad quas cum Radulfus de Staneby capiendas inconsulte irrueret, irruit super eum pavor, et regressus suspendit claves[4] ubi prius erant; sed antequam ab ecclesia exiret digno Dei judicio nimia ægritudine flagellatus, parum post[5] obiit. March 3. Hugh de Puiset dies at Howden. Hugh Bardolf takes possession of the castle of Durham.

Postea vero prædictæ claves traditæ sunt per manum prioris et monachorum Hugoni Bardolf, qui juravit quod ipse fideliter custodiret eas ad honorem beati Cuthberti, et regis. Deinde Henricus de Ferlingtune tradidit Hugoni Bardolf castellum de Norham, per præceptum justitiarii regis.[6] Norham delivered to him.

[1] *Rosensis*] Roffensis, C.; Rofensis, M.

[2] *Phoca*] Foca, C., M.

[3] *genitricis*] et semper, ins. M., H.

[4] *claves*] super feretrum, ins. M., H.

[5] *parum post*] paucis post elapsis diebus, M., H.

[6] *justitiarii regis*] Here Hoveden gives an account of the papal commission, dated May 31, 1194, on the assessment of the damages due from the archbishop to the canons; and of the proceedings thereupon. Hoveden, iii. 285, 286. These details are omitted in most of the MSS. of Hoveden, and likewise in M. and C.

A.D. 1195. March. Richard forgives Hugh of Nunant.

[1] Eodem anno rex remisit iram et malivolentiam suam Hugoni Coventrensi episcopo, et reddidit ei episcopatum suum, pro quinque millibus marcis[2] quas ei dedit; sed Robertus frater ejusdem episcopi obiit in captione regis apud Dovram. Similiter dominus rex remisit Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, fratri suo, iram et malivolentiam suam, et recepit eum in osculo pacis; unde idem archiepiscopus supra modum elatus, regem ipsum opprobriis ita exasperavit, quod ipse præcepit illum disseyisiari de archiepiscopatu suo, et de vicecomitatu Eboraci. O utinam legisset ille archiepiscopus commonitionem sapientis, qui ait: "Ignem gladio ne confodias:" et Dominus informans nos ad humilitatem per os apostoli, ait: "Servi, [subditi][3] estote in omni timore dominis vestris; "non tantum dico sapientibus et modestis, sed etiam dysco-"lis:" "Subditi estote regi quasi præcellenti, sive ducibus "tanquam ab eo missis ad vindictam malorum, laudem vero "bonorum." Et, "Ecce naves cum magnæ sint, et a ventis "validis minentur, circumferuntur tamen a modico guberna-"culo,[4] ubi impetus dirigentis voluerit; ita et lingua modi-"cum[5] membrum est, et magna exaltat." Et, "Ecce quam "parvus ignis, quam magnam sylvam incendit; et certe lin-"gua ignis est, et omnis iniquitas ex lingua ad effectum "venit, quæ maculat totum corpus et inflammat; linguam "nullus domare potest," nisi sapiens et circumspectus. Circumcidamus ergo nostra corda: ex corde enim incircumciso procedunt fornicationes, adulteria, homicidia, furta, et falsa testimonia, blasphemiæ, contentiones, et rixæ, et cætera hiis similia, quæ coinquinant hominem. Et, hæc contra, ex mundo corde et circumciso exeunt caritas, gaudium, pax, patientia, longanimitas, mansuetudo, fides, modestia, continentia, castitas,[6] et alia hiis similia, quæ animæ fructus sunt, et eam ad Deum Creatorem suum perducunt. "Ex abundantia "enim cordis os loquitur," sive bonum sive malum.

Hoveden, iii. 287.

He also pardons Geoffrey, but quarrels with him again.

The archbishop will not learn to be humble, or to curb his tongue.

1 S. Peter, ii. 18.

1 S. Peter, ii. 13.

The lessons that Geoffrey ought to have learned.

S. James, iii. 4.

Hoveden, iii. 288.

S. James, iii. 5.

S. Matt. xv. 19.

Gal. v. 22.

S. Matt. xii. 34.

Richard is reconciled with John, and reendows him.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ remisit Johanni fratri suo omnem iram et malivolentiam suam; et reddidit ei comitatum de Moretonia, et honorem de Eya, et comitatum Gloucestriæ, cum omni integritate eorum; exceptis castellis; et pro omni-

Hoveden, iii. 286.

---

[1] *Eodem anno*] The two following passages, both beginning with the same words, Eodem anno, pp. 84 and 84-85, are given in inverse order in MS. A. and G. of Hoveden. Our MSS. follow B., D., and I.

[2] *marcis*] argenti, ins. M., H.

[3] *subditi*] om. C., M.

[4] *gubernaculo*] gubernatore, C., M.

[5] *modicum*] extra modum, C.

[6] *caritas . . . castitas*] tr. C., M.

Hoveden, iii. 286.

bus aliis comitatibus et terris suis dedit ei rex per annum octo millia librarum Andegavensis monetæ. A.D. 1195. March.

Eodem anno appropinquante Cœna Domini, cum Johannes episcopus Candidæ [Casæ], suffraganeus et officialis Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi, appropinquasset Eboraco, ut ibi in Cœna Domini more solito chrisma et oleum consecraret, decanus et personæ ecclesiæ Eboracensis noluerunt eum recipere. The bishop of Whithern comes to York to consecrate chrism.

Hoveden, iii. 287.

Unde factum est quod ipse ad Suwelle accessit, et ibi in Cœna Domini chrisma et oleum consecravit, et tradidit ea officialibus archiepiscopi ad distribuendam per ecclesias archiepiscopatus. Dicitur etiam quod Gaufridus de Muschamp, archidiaconus de Cliveland, recepit chrisma et oleum, sed statim projecit ea in sterquilinio. Cæteri autem canonici ecclesiæ Sancti Petri noluerunt inde recipere; sed miserunt ad Hugonem Lincolniensem episcopum, ut ab eo reciperent oleum et chrisma; sed fraudati sunt a desiderio suo. Petrus autem[1] archidiaconus Lincolniæ, frater Gaufridi archiepiscopi, prohibuit episcopo ne illis oleum et chrisma daret, et super hoc ad Romanum pontificem appellavit. Not being received there, he does it at Southwell, but the clergy refuse to receive the chrism, and apply to the bishop of Lincoln for it, in vain.

De commonitione salutifera facta regi Ricardo Angliæ.

Hoveden, iii. 288.

Eodem anno venit quidam heremita ad regem Ricardum, et prædicans ei verba salutis æternæ dixit: "Esto memor sub- "versionis Sodomæ, et ab illicitis te abstine; sin autem, veniet "super te ultio digna Dei." Sed rex inhians terrenis, et non hiis quæ Dei sunt, non potuit tam cito revocare animum ab illicitis, nisi datum fuisset ei desuper, vel signum videret. Despiciebat enim personam monentis, non intelligens quod quandoque Dominus revelat parvulis quæ a sapientibus absconduntur: leprosi etiam nunciaverunt salutem Samariæ, et subjugalis Balaam dominum suum revocavit a via illicita. Abiit ergo heremita relicto rege, et abscondit se a facie ejus. Procedente autem tempore præfatus rex, licet pauperis heremitæ commonitionem respueret, tamen ex Divina inspirante gratia memoriter aliquam illius commonitionis partem retinuit, fiduciam habens in Domino, quod Ipse, Qui publicanum et Cananæam revocavit ad pœnitentiam, et secundum magnam misericordiam Suam daret ei cor pœnitens. Unde factum est, quod die Martis in hebdomada Paschæ visitavit eum in virga ferrea, non ut contereret, sed ut flagellatum in Sua reciperet. Flagellavit enim eum Dominus ægritudine magna in die illa, Solemn warning given to Richard by a hermit.

Hoveden, ii. 289.

April 4. Richard acknowledges his sins and takes back his wife

[1] *autem*] enim, M., H.

A.D. 1195. April 4. whom he had neglected.

adeo quod ipse convocatis coram se viris religiosis vitæ suæ fœditatem confiteri non erubuit, et accepta pœnitentia, mulierem suam, quam a multo tempore non cognoverat, recepit; et abjecto concubitu illicito, adhæsit uxori suæ, et facti sunt duo in carne una; et dedit ei Dominus sanitatem tam corporis quam animæ. O felicem filium, quem Pater cœlestis in hac peregrinatione flagellat ad castigationem, et non ad mortem! corripit enim pater filium nunc blandis, nunc asperis, ut sic vel sic revocet eum ad bene faciendum. Et sic examinat in fornace justitiæ Dominus aurum Suum; sic probat in adversitatibus sanctum Suum, et eum provehat ad coronam. Vere magna et inenarrabilia sunt opera Domini, et miserationes [Ejus] super omnia opera Ejus. Rex enim iste, cujus caput supergressæ erant iniquitates suæ, a Christo adoptatur in filium, et a pravitate sua ad Dominum conversus recipitur in filium. Deus enim, in Cujus manu corda regum sunt, et quocunque voluerit vertit ea, cordi regis instillavit, quod ipse tam cito vitam et conversationem suam mutavit in bonum.

Hoveden iii. 289.

Ps. cxlv. 9.

His repentance and amendment.

Ps. xxxviii. 4

Prov. xvi. 1.

He goes daily to church.

Ipse enim [mane][1] consurgens quotidie, primum quærebat regnum Dei et justitiam Ejus, et ab ecclesia non discedebat, donec more ecclesiastico omne Divinum perageretur officium. Gloriosum siquidem est in principe quotidianos actus suos et ab Eo incipere, et finire in Eo, Qui est principium sine principio, et judicat fines terræ.

S. Matt. vi. 33.

Hoveden, iii. 290.

His works of mercy.

Famine in his dominions.

Præterea idem rex, memor verbi illius "Beatus qui intelligit super egenum et pauperem, in die mala liberavit eum Dominus," fecit quotidie pascere pauperes multos, tam in curia sua, quam in civitatibus et villis suis, quos quotidie numero augebat secundum quod opus fuerat. Fames enim magna erat in terra illa, et confluebant ad eum pauperes ut alerentur. Exemplo siquidem talium confirmatur fides, spes erigitur, nutritur caritas, deprimitur superbia, humilitas custoditur, augetur devotio, et bene operandi desiderium excitatur.

Ps. xli. 1.

He replaces the vessels taken from the churches for his ransom.

Præterea idem rex fecit fieri calices multos; quos ipse ecclesiis distribuit, a quibus calices sui abstracti erant ad redemptionem illius. "Væ homini illi, per quem scandalum venit." Non enim imputandum est regi, quod calices illi in redemptione sua dati fuerant; sed magis eis[2] qui consilium illud ei dederunt; quia prava consilia bonos mores corrumpunt; et in Evangelio,[3] "[Majus] peccatum habent qui Me tradiderunt tibi."

S. Matt. xviii. 7.

1 Cor. xv. 33.

S. John xix. 11.

[1] *mane*] om. C.

[2] *eis*] illis imputandum est, M., H.

[3] *Evangelio*] legitur, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 290.

Eodem anno Cœlestinus papa, ad petitionem Ricardi regis Angliæ, constituit Hubertum, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, totius Angliæ legatum; et sibi super hoc litteratorie scripsit.[1] A.D. 1195. Hubert Walter made legate.

Hoveden, iii. 293.

Quarum[2] auctoritate litterarum prædictus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, misit Eboracum Petrum priorem de Bineham in Nortfolk et magistrum Gervasium cum litteris domini papæ, et suis, ad canonicos Eboraci, et ad officiales Eboracensis archiepiscopi, mandans eis, se illuc ex auctoritate legationis suæ in proximo venturum, ad emendandum ea quæ essent emendanda, et ad statuenda quæ secundum Deum fuerint statuenda; et præcepit eis, ut ipsi convocato clero exhiberent ei, tanquam apostolicæ sedis legato, reverentiam debitam et honorem; adjungens se jam sententiam excommunicationis dedisse in omnes qui in hac parte mandato domini papæ contradicerent. Et super hoc misit litteras suas patentes Symoni Eboracensi decano, ut si quos ipse inveniret huic domini papæ mandato rebelles, denunciaret excommunicatos. Unde factum est, quod tam canonici quam officiales archiepiscopi Eboracensis responderunt nunciis legati, quod eum reciperent tanquam apostolicæ sedis legatum, sed non tanquam archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, nec tanquam primatem.

The new legate sends two clerks to York to announce his coming; and asking to be received with due honour, under pain of excommunication. The canons and officials consent to receive him.

Venit ergo legatus ille Eboracum die Dominica, festo sancti[3] Barnabæ, et cum solemni processione susceptus est a clero, introductus in ecclesiam sedis cathedralis. Sequenti die Lunæ fecit ipse teneri assisas de omnibus placitis coronæ regis, de nova disseisina, et de morte antecessoris, per ministros suos: ipse vero et officiales sui tenuerunt placita Christianitatis.

Hoveden, iii. 294.

June 11. The legate arrives at York. He holds both assizes and court Christian.

In sequenti die, feria tertia, perrexit legatus ille ad abbatiam Sanctæ Mariæ Eboraci; et ibi receptus est a monachis ejusdem[4] cum solemni processione. Deinde intravit capitulum monachorum, et conquerentibus monachis, quod Robertus abbas eorum propter debilitatem corporis et sui ægritudinem domui suæ prodesse non potuit, deposuit eum a cura pastorali, et ab administratione domus, reclamantem, et ad summum pontificem appellantem.

June 13. He visits S. Mary's abbey and deposes Robert the abbot.

[1] *scripsit*] Here Hoveden inserts the two letters of Celestine III., announcing the legation of Hubert, to Hubert himself and to archbishop Geoffrey, dated March 18, 1195. Of these, MSS. M. and V. contain the first and omit the second. MS. C. omits both. See Hoveden, iii. 290–293.

[2] *Quarum*] Harum igitur, M., H.

[3] *sancti*] apostoli, ins. M., H.

[4] *a monachis ejusdem*] ab ejusdem ecclesiæ monachis, M., H.

A.D. 1195. June 14–15. He holds a legatine council in the Minster.

In sequentibus autem diebus duobus, scilicet feria quarta et feria quinta, congregatis in ecclesia Sancti Petri Eboraci, Simone ejusdem ecclesiæ decano, Hamone præcentore, et Willelmo Testard, cum aliis pluribus,[1] et fere omnibus abbatibus, prioribus, officialibus, decanis, et personis ecclesiarum Eboracensis diocesis, ipse legatus in eminentiori loco cathedratus sedit, et concilium celeberrimum celebravit.[2] Hoveden, iii. 294.

Peter of Dinan demands the archdeaconry of the West Riding.

In concilio autem illo magister Petrus de Dinan exigebat sibi fieri plenariam restitutionem de archidiaconatu de Westricghing,[3] quem Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus ei dederat, mandans capitulo Eboraci per litteras suas, ut eum reciperent, et in stallum[4] mitterent; cui Simon ecanus et capitulum Eboracense responderunt, quod archiepiscopus non potuit archidiaconatum illum alicui dare, quia ultra terminum statutum in concilio Lateranensi dare distulit; in quo concilio Alexander papa tertius constituit, quod "cum præbendas, "ecclesias, seu quælibet officia in aliqua ecclesia vacare con- "tigerit, non diu maneant in suspenso, sed infra sex menses per- "sonis, qui digne administrare valeant, conferantur. Si autem "episcopus, ubi ad eum spectaverit, conferre distulerit, per "capitulum ordinetur; quod si ad capitulum pertinuerit electio, "et infra præscriptum terminum hoc non fecerit, episcopus "secundum Deum, cum religiosorum virorum consilio exequa- "tur: aut si forte omnes neglexerint, metropolitanus de episcopi "secundum Deum absque illorum contradictione disponat." Hujus ergo dispositionis auctoritate, et privilegii sui munimine a Cœlestino papa tertio ecclesiæ Eboracensi indulto, asserebant dictus decanus et capitulum Eboracense, quod ad illos spectat donatio prædicti archidiaconatus et aliorum reddituum vacantium in ecclesia Eboracensi, quos archiepiscopus suus non dederat infra fixum Lateranensis concilii terminum; sed officiales Eboracensis archiepiscopi, scilicet, magister Girardus de Rowelle, et magister Honorius, appellaverunt contra privilegium illud, et appellationem, quam dominus eorum archiepiscopus in recessu suo fecerat pro statu ecclesiæ suæ, renovaverunt coram legato et toto concilio; et quamvis in privilegio illo continebatur, "remota appellatione," tamen Hoveden, iii. 297.

The dean and chapter claim the appointment on the ground of lapse. Hoveden, iii. 298.

The archbishop's officials appeal against this, and the legate defers to them.

[1] *cum aliis pluribus*] "et Gaufrido "de Muschampe de Notingham, et "de Clivelande archidiaconis, et "Johanne cancellario, et Roberto "præposito Beverlaci, cum quibus- "dam ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicis." M., H.

[2] *celebravit*] Hoveden gives here the decrees of the council of York in full. They are omitted in M. and V., and also in several MSS. of Hoveden; and of course do not occur in C. See Hoveden, iii. 294–297.

[3] *Westricghing*] Westrithing, M. Westrihing, H.

[4] *stallum*] castellum, C.

Hoveden, iii. 298.

legatus detulit appellationi officialium Eboracensis archiepiscopi. A.D. 1195. June 14–15.

Illness of the king of Scots.

Eodem anno Willelmus rex Scottorum ægrotavit in villa sua quæ dicitur Clacmanan; et statuit Othonem filium Henrici ducis Saxoniæ, nepotem Ricardi regis Angliæ, sibi successurum in regnum Scotiæ, ita quod ipse Otho filiam suam primogenitam in uxorem cum regno duceret. Et quamvis rex plures haberet qui voluntati suæ in hoc consentirent, tamen comes Patricius et alii multi contradixerunt, dicentes quod filiam suam non reciperent reginam, quia non erat consuetudo regni illius, quod mulier regnum illud haberet, quamdiu frater vel nepos esset in progenie sua, qui regnum de jure habere posset. Et paulo post per Dei misericordiam rex Scottorum convaluit de illa infirmitate, manens in eodem proposito quod habebat, de filia sua maritanda prædicto Othoni cum regno suo.

Hoveden, iii. 299.

He wishes to marry Otho of Saxony to his daughter and make him his heir, but the barons forbid.

Recovery of the king.

The abbot of Thorney deposed.

Eodem anno Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, et totius Angliæ justitiarius, deposuit Robertum abbatem de Tornay[1] reclamantem, et ad præsentiam domini papæ appellantem: et in carcere et[2] vinculis eum tenuit per annum et dimidium[3] apud Gloucestre.

Judicial measures of the arch bishop.

Eodem anno prædictus archiepiscopus, totius Angliæ justitiarius, misit per totam Angliam hujusmodi formam juramenti, videlicet;

Proclamation for the capture and trial of malefactors.

"Quod omnes homines regni Angliæ pacem domini regis
" pro posse suo servabunt; et quod nec latrones nec roba-
" tores nec eorum receptatores erunt, nec in aliquo eis con-
" sentient; et quod cum hujusmodi malefactores scire poterunt,
" illos pro toto posse suo capient, et vicecomiti liberabunt;
" qui nullo modo deliberentur nisi per dominum regem, vel
" capitalem justitiarium suum: et si illos capere non poterunt,
" ballivis[4] domini regis[5] scire facient. Levato autem clamore
" insequendi uthlagos, robatores, latrones, aut eorum recep-
" tores, omnes sectam illam plenam[6] facient pro toto posse
" suo; et si quem viderint, vel manifestum fuerit sectam
" illam non fecisse, vel sine licentia se ab ea subtraxisse, eos
" tanquam malefactores[7] capient, et vicecomiti liberabunt, non
" deliberandos nisi per regem, aut ejus capitalem justitiarium.
" Milites vero ad hoc assignati facient venire omnes de ballia
" sua coram se a quindecim annis et supra; et jurare facient

Hue and cry.

Hoveden, iii. 300.

Knights assigned to receive the oaths of all over fifteen,

[1] *Tornay*] Thorney, M.
[2] *et*] in, ins. M., H.
[3] *dimidium*] anni, ins. M., H.
[4] *ballivis*] eos, præf., M., H.
[5] *regis*] quicunque fuerint, ins. M., H.
[6] *plenam*] plene, M., H.
[7] *malefactores*] ipsos, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1195. to maintain the king's peace.

" quod pacem domini regis, ut supradictum est, servabunt; Hoveden, iii. 300.
" et quod nec uthlagi, nec robatores, nec latrones, nec eorum
" receptores erunt, nec in aliquo eis consentient; et quod
" sectam, ut prædictum est, plenam facient, et quod si cum
" malefactione aliquem ceperint, militibus in ballia sua
" super se positis, et ad hoc assignatis, eum liberabunt, qui
" eum vicecomiti liberabunt ad custodiendum; similiter si
" aliquem viderint, vel eis notum fuerit, levato clamore inse-
" quendi malefactores prædictos, qui sectam non fecerit, vel
" se a secta illa subtraxerit sine licentia, eum tanquam male-
" factorem[1] capient, et militibus prædictis et illi[2] vicecomiti[3]
" liberabunt, ad[4] custodiendum, ut ipsum malefactorem; nec
" liberandum nisi per præceptum domini regis vel ejus capi-
" talis justitiarii."

Effect of this provision.

Ad hæc igitur exsequenda missi sunt per singulos comitatus Angliæ viri electi et fideles, qui per sacramentum fidelium hominum de visnetis multos ceperunt, et carceribus regis incluserunt. At multi inde præmuniti et sibi male conscii fugerunt, relictis domibus et possessionibus suis.

After June 24. The emperor sends Richard a crown, and charges him to invade Philip's dominions.

Eodem anno, post Nativitatem Sancti Johannis[5] Henricus Romanorum imperator misit Ricardo regi Angliæ coronam magnam auream, et[6] pretiosam, in mutuæ dilectionis signum; mandans ei in fide quam illi debebat, et sicut obsides suos diligebat, ne perirent, quod ipse terram regis Franciæ hostiliter invaderet, et ipse imperator succursum ei faceret competentem ad injurias sibi a rege Franciæ [factas][7] ulciscendas; sed rex Angliæ, timens quod in hoc mandato aliquid proditionis lateret, misit ad imperatorem Willelmum Elyensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, ad inquirendum qualem succursum, et quantum, ubi, et quando imperator ei faceret contra regem Franciæ. Notum enim erat regi Angliæ, quod prædictus imperator super omnia desiderabat, ut regnum Franciæ Romanorum imperio subjaceret; et exinde conjiciebat rex Angliæ, quod si imperator et rex Franciæ confœderarentur, totum in detrimentum suum redundaret. Rex vero Franciæ sciens quod cancellarius regis Angliæ per terram suam transiret, apposuit[8] apprehendere illum; sed fraudatus a desiderio[9] mandavit regi Angliæ treugam dissolutam; et statim concurrentes utriusque exercitus damna fecerunt hinc et inde maxima,

Richard hesitates.

Hoveden, iii. 301.

The chancellor sent to inquire what help the emperor will give.

Philip tries to arrest him, and announces that the truce is broken.

[1] *malefactorem*] ipsum, ins. M., H.
[2] *et illi*] om. M., H.
[3] *vicecomiti*] liberandum, ins. M., H.
[4] *ad*] et, M., H.
[5] *Johannis*] Baptistæ, ins. M., H.
[6] *et*] valde, ins. M., H.
[7] *factas*] om. C., M.
[8] *apposuit*] opposuit, C.
[9] *desiderio*] suo, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 301.

in interfectione hominum, in rapinis, et in incendiis. Rex autem Franciæ videns se nequaquam defendere posse contra regem Angliæ, castella multa Normanniæ subvertit, quæ rex Angliæ postmodum refirmavit, et fortiora fecit quam prius fuerant. A.D. 1195. July. Philip destroys several castles in Normandy.

Quadam autem die, ante subversionem castelli de Valle Rodoli, prædicti reges venerunt ad colloquium prope castellum illud, et dum colloquerentur, cecidit maxima pars murorum castelli per suffossores regis Franciæ. Quod rex Angliæ videns, relicto colloquio, impetum fecit in exercitum regis Franciæ, et rex Franciæ cum suis versus est in fugam; et cum transiret pontem, pons corruit, et ipse cum gente sua pene submersus est in Secana fluvio; sed vix tandem ulteriorem ripam attingens ibidem in ripa fluminis castra metatus. Et rex Angliæ ad castellum Rodoli rediit, et multos de familia regis Franciæ cepit; et congregans exercitum magnum de omnibus terris suis cismarinis et transmarinis, intravit terram regis Franciæ in pluribus locis, et fecit stragem magnam ex obstantibus, et segetes non maturas messuit, et vineas et arbores fructiferas exstirpavit, et villas combussit. Conference at Vaudreuil. Narrow escape of Philip. Capture of Vaudreuil. Richard invades France.

Hoveden, iii. 302.

Eodem anno, ex occasione dissensionis quæ erat inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Ricardum regem Angliæ, Boyac Almiramimoli, imperator Africanorum, magno congregato exercitu, intravit fines Christianorum qui[1] sunt in Hispania; et expugnavit eos, et cepit civitates et castella et munitiones eorum, et comminuit omnia, et Aldefonsum regem Castellæ devicit in prælio campestri, et a campo fugatum obsedit in Toleto civitate sua; sed nihil ibi proficiens cum exercitu suo inde recessit. The emperor of Morocco invades Spain, wins a great battle, and besieges the king of Castile in Toledo.

Quod cum rex Franciæ et rex Angliæ audissent, convenerunt ad colloquium de pace inter eos facienda, in quo inter eos convenit in hunc modum: quod Lodowicus, filius et hæres regis Franciæ, duceret in uxorem sororem Arturi ducis Britanniæ, neptem dicti[2] regis Angliæ; et idem[3] rex Angliæ quieta clamaret ei et hæredibus eorum Gizortium, et Neafle, et Baudemunt, cum Veugesin Normannico, et Vernun, et Yvere, et Passi, et insuper daret eis viginti millia marcarum argenti; et hæc contra rex Franciæ quieta clamaret regi Angliæ omnia quæ sibi petebat in comite de Engolismo, et redderet ei comitatum de Albemarlia, et comitatum de Augo, et castellum de Archis, et alia castella multa, quæ ceperat super eum in Normannia et in aliis terris suis per guerram. Terms of peace arranged between Richard and Philip.

[1] *qui*] quæ, C., M.
[2] *dicti*] præfati, M., H.
[3] *idem*] ipse, M., H.

A.D. 1195. August. Peace deferred until Nov. 8.

Sed hæc omnia dilationem ceperunt usque ad octavas Omnium Sanctorum, propter prohibitionem Romanorum imperatoris, qui prohibuerat regi Angliæ ne ipse pacem cum rege Franciæ faceret, nisi de consensu et consilio suo. Præterea rex Angliæ in eodem colloquio reddidit Philippo regi Franciæ Alesiam sororem suam, quam ipse mox dedit in uxorem Johanni comiti de Pontif. Hoveden, iii. 302. Hoveden, iii. 303.

Alais at last surrendered.

Massacre of monks by the Saracens at Alcobaça.

Interim pagani, terram Sanctii regis Portugalensis devastantes, venerunt ad abbatiam de Alkubaz, et monachos de ordine Cisterciensi ibidem Deo servientes, et eis resistentes, interfecerunt, et procedentes inde venerunt ad aliam domum ejusdem ordinis; et monachi exeuntes eis obviam, ceciderunt ad pedes paganorum, vitam et misericordiam postulantes, et pagani illorum miserti vitam donaverunt illis; et audientes vitam et conversationem eorum,[1] laudaverunt eos, dicentes quod salvarentur in ordine suo, si mulieres haberent. Est enim sciendum quod summa paganorum religio est luxuriosa.[2]

They spare a monastery for the good lives of the monks.

Hugh, bishop of Lincoln, frees his church from the annual tribute of a furred mantle.

Eodem anno Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus dedit Ricardo regi Angliæ mille marcas argenti, pro libertate Lincolniensis ecclesiæ redimenda: rex vero, ex consuetudine regum Anglorum prædecessorum suorum, petiit ab episcopo Lincolniensi singulis annis unum mantellum furratum de sabelinis, et pro hujus mantelli quieta clamantia in perpetuum ab ipso rege et hæredibus suis, prædictus Lincolniensis episcopus dedit præfato regi præfatam pecuniam, et recepit a rege cartam suam de quieta clamantia.

The bishop of Ely reports that the peace displeases the emperor.

Interim Willelmus Elyensis episcopus, et cæteri nuncii regis Angliæ, qui missi fuerant ad imperatorem, redierunt, dicentes quod forma illa pacis, quæ inter ipsum et regem Franciæ formata erat, non placebat imperatori, quia ignominiosum esse videbatur imperatori, si rex Angliæ quicquam quietum clamaret quod in potestate sua non erat; et ad recuperandum [quod] rex Angliæ amiserat per captionem suam, perdonavit ei imperator de redemptione sua septemdecim millia marcarum argenti. Hoveden, iii. 304.

The emperor remits 17,000 marks of the ransom.

Item colloquium inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Ricardum regem Angliæ.

Nov. 8. Conference of Richard and Philip at Verneuil.

Adveniente igitur termino colloquii, quod statuerunt inter se rex Angliæ et rex Franciæ, convenerunt prope Vernolium in octavis Omnium Sanctorum; et appropinquante hora colloquii, rex Angliæ appropiavit, ut cum rege Franciæ loquere-

[1] *eorum*] illorum, M., H. | [2] *luxuriosa*] luxuria, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 304.

tur; sed Willelmus Remensis archiepiscopus venit obviam ei, et dixit ex parte regis Franciæ, quod non oporteret eum festinare, quia rex Franciæ adhuc cum suis in consilio erat. Credidit itaque illi rex Angliæ, et reversus est ad locum unde venerat, et exspectans usque ad horam nonam noluit diutius exspectare; sed appropiavit, ut cum rege Franciæ loqueretur; et Philippus Belvacensis[1] dixit ei coram rege Franciæ: "Dominus rex Franciæ clamat[2] te de fide læsa et de perjurio, "quia jurasti, et fidem dedisti, quod venires hodie ad colloquium hora tertia, et non venisti, et ideo ipse te defidat:" et sic finito colloquio uterque rex reversus est in terram suam.

A.D. 1195. Nov. 8.

The bishop of Beauvais accuses Richard of treachery in not coming earlier.

Et tertia die sequenti homines regis Franciæ faciebant in Normannia, et in aliis terris regis Angliæ, violentas prædationes cum tumultu: et venientes ad villam de Depe, quam rex Angliæ paulo ante reædificaverat, combusserunt eam, et naves quæ in portu erant, injecto igne Græco, in cineres redegerunt.

Nov. 10. The French burn Dieppe.

Hoveden, iii. 305.

Deinde Philippus rex Franciæ, post multos variosque bellorum casus, venit cum exercitu suo ad Ysoudun, et villam cepit, et castellum obsedit. Quod cum regi Angliæ nunciatum esset, qui tunc temporis in Normannia morabatur apud Vallem Rodoli, omnibus aliis negotiis suis prætermissis, trium dierum itinera in unum concludens venit Ysoudun, et castellum suum, quod rex Franciæ obsederat, intravit. Confluebant ergo ad eum armatorum copiosa multitudo. De cujus adventu rex Franciæ valde perterritus, petiit ab eo licentiam recedendi inde cum exercitu suo sine impedimento; quod cum ei negatum fuisset, petiit colloquium habere cum rege Angliæ, et factum est ita.

Philip comes to Issoudun, and takes it.

Richard comes to the rescue.

Philip asks for a parley.

In colloquio autem illo mandantibus archiepiscopis, episcopis, et viris utriusque partis quampluribus, præstitum est sacramentum hinc et inde, quod a die illo[3] Sabbati proxima post festum Sancti Nicholai, pacem et concordiam inter se et homines suos et terras suas haberent, usque ad festum Sancti Hilarii proximo sequens; et tunc convenerunt[4] apud Lovers, ad pacem et finalem concordiam inter se et homines suos, ut dictum est,[5] faciendam in majori audientia suorum. Et quia Nativitas Domini instabat, et prædicti reges non habebant in partibus illis, quod in tanta solemnitate regalibus expensis

Dec. 9. Truce made until Jan. 13, when the kings are to meet at Louviers.

Richard goes to Poictiers for Christmas.

---

[1] *Belvacensis*] episcopus, ins. M., H.

[2] *clamat*] calumniatur, M., H.

[3] *die illo*] videlicet a die, ins. M., H.

[4] *convenerunt*] convenirent, M., H.

[5] *se . . . est*] eos, M., H. Our compiler seems to be anticipating the events of the next year.

A.D. 1195. Dec. 25. sufficeret, reversi sunt in regiones suas. Et rex Angliæ perrexit inde Pictavim; et fuit ibi in Nativitate Domini, quæ in secunda feria evenit. Hoveden, iii. 305.

Victory of the king of Castile. Interim Aldefonsus rex Castellæ congregato exercitu, in sola virtutis Dei misericordia fiduciam habens, commisit prælium cum exercitu paganorum, et eos convicit, et maximam illorum partem gladio interfecit, et cæteros a finibus suis fugavit.

The canons of York pray for a sentence against the archbishop. Eodem anno canonici Eboracensis ecclesiæ sæpe et multum sollicitaverunt Hugonem Lincolniensem episcopum, ut ipse sententiam interdicti et suspensionis proferret in Gaufridum Eboracensem archiepiscopum. Constabat enim quod prædictus archiepiscopus non comparuit in conspectu domini papæ ad terminum sibi præfixum.[1] Quibus[2] Lincolniensis episcopus respondit, quod mallet suspendi quam archiepiscopum illum suspendere. Quo audito præfati canonici miserunt nuncios suos Romam ad Cœlestinum papam, conquerentes quod Lincolniensis episcopus, et cæteri judices sui delegati, non processerunt secundum formam apostolici mandati. Hoveden, iii. 306.

The bishop of Lincoln refuses to suspend him, and the canons complain to the pope.

Death of the bishop of Worcester. Eodem anno obiit Henricus Wygornensis episcopus; cui successit[3] Johannes de Constantiis, Rotomagensis ecclesiæ decanus; et[4] Willelmus de Forz, comes Albemarliæ, obiit; cui successit[5] Baldewinus de Betun, dono Ricardi regis Angliæ; et duxit uxorem comitissam Albemarliæ.

Death of William de Fortibus.

Death of Isaac of Cyprus; and of Guy of Lusignan. Eodem anno obiit Ysakius quondam imperator Cipri, quem Ricardus rex Angliæ expugnavit; et[6] Guido quondam rex Jerusalem, cui Ricardus rex Angliæ vendiderat insulam de Cipre. Quo defuncto, Aymeri frater suus factus est dominus Cipri.

New marriage of Philip. Eodem anno Philippus rex Franciæ duxit sibi in uxorem filiam ducis de Genest in Alemannia: quo facto Cnut rex Dacorum, frater dictæ Botildæ reginæ Francorum, conquestus est Cœlestino papæ de injuria quam dictus[7] rex Franciæ fecerat sorori suæ, qui eam dimisit sine causæ cognitione.[8] Conquestus est etiam de Willelmo Remensi archiepiscopo, qui sine auctoritate apostolica, sedens pro tribunali, divortium fecit inter dictum regem Franciæ et Botildam prædictam.[9] Hoveden, iii. 307.

Complaint of the queen to the pope against the bishops who pronounced the divorce.

---

[1] *præfixum*] constitutum, M., H.

[2] *Quibus*] præfatus, ins. M., H.

[3] *successit*] in episcopatu illo, ins. M., H.

[4] *et*] Eodem anno, M., H.

[5] *successit*] in comitatu illo, ins. M., H.

[6] *et*] Eodem anno obiit, M., H.

[7] *dictus*] præfatus, M., H.

[8] *causæ cognitione*] causa cognita, M., H.

[9] *prædictam*] sponsam suam sine causæ cognitione, M., H.

Hoveden, iii. 307.

questus est etiam de Stephano de Noyun, Philippo Belvacensi,[1] et Reginaldo Carnotensi, et Guidone Aureliensi, et Rothrodo de Chaluns episcopis, et de Roberto de Drues, et Lodowico de Bleys, et de aliis comitibus;[2] qui juraverunt coram Remensi archiepiscopo, quod prædicta Botilda, [et] filia comitis de Hanou, quæ fuerat uxor præfati regis Franciæ, ita affines erant in consanguinitate, quod idem Philippus rex Franciæ nulla ratione debuit aut potuit præfatam Botildam habere uxorem. Et quamvis prædictus [rex] Dacorum paratus esset probare, illos falsum contra eam dixisse[3] testimonium, et quod divortium illud nullum fuit, nec teneri debuit; tamen, propter favorem regis Franciæ, noluit eum Cœlestinus papa in hac parte exaudire.

A.D. 1195.

The pope favours the king of France.

G. ℟. F.——MCXCVI.

Annus septimus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ. Dec. 25.

Hoveden, iii. 308.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo sexto, qui est annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ septimus, idem rex fuit apud Pictavim die Natalis Domini, quæ feria secunda evenit. Et Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, totius Angliæ justitiarius, et apostolicæ sedis legatus, fuit eodem die apud Eboracum, missus ex parte regis loqui cum Willelmo rege Scottorum de matrimonio contrahendo inter Othonem filium Henrici ducis Saxoniæ, nepotem Ricardi regis Angliæ, et Margaretam filiam suam. Convenerat enim inter Ricardum regem Angliæ, et Willelmum regem Scotiæ, quod idem rex Scotiæ daret prædicto Othoni Margaretam filiam suam in uxorem cum toto Leoneys;[4] et quod rex Angliæ daret Othoni, et filiæ regis Scotiæ, et eorum hæredibus, totam Northumbriam et comitatum Karleoli; et rex Angliæ haberet in custodia totum Leoneys cum castellis suis; et rex Scotiæ haberet in custodia totam Northumbriam et comitatum Karleoli cum castellis suis. Sed quia regina Scottorum tunc temporis prægnans erat, noluit rex

Richard keeps Christmas at Poictiers.

The archbishop of Canterbury at York.

Proposed marriage of Otho of Saxony.

---

[1] *Belvacensi*] archiepiscopo, ins. C.

[2] *et de aliis comitibus*] et Theobaldo de Campania, et Stephano de Neverz comitibus, et de Simone castellano de Insula, et Petro de Maynil, et Waltero camerario regis Franciæ, baronibus, M., H.

[3] *contra . . . dixisse*] dixisse adversus, M., H.

[4] *Leoneys*] Leonays, M.; Loennais, H.

A.D. 1195. Scotiæ stare dictæ conventioni, sperans quod Dominus daret ei filium. Hoveden, iii. 308.

Dec. 29. Election of Philip of Poictiers as bishop of Durham.

Eodem anno, quinto die Natalis Domini, Bertramnus, ecclesiæ Dunelmensis prior, occurrit Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Alvertonam; et ibi coram eo elegit magistrum Philippum clericum et familiarem Ricardi regis Angliæ, in episcopum Dunelmensem.[1]

A.D. 1196. January. Conference between Richard and Philip at Louviers.

Eodem anno, post festum Sancti Hilarii, Philippus rex Franciæ et Ricardus rex Angliæ convenerunt apud Lovers ad colloquium; ubi inter eos consilio hominum suorum ita convenit, quod rex Franciæ quieta clamavit regi Angliæ et hæredibus suis,[2] Ysoudun cum pertinentiis suis, et totum jus quod habuit in Berria, et Alvernia, et Gasconia; et reddidit ei quieta castellum de Arches, et comitatum de Augo, et comitatum de Albemarlia, et cætera castella multa, quæ occupaverat per guerram. Et hæc contra rex Angliæ quieta clamavit regi Franciæ castellum de Gizorcio, et totum Vogosin Normannicum: et ut hæc omnia rata haberentur, statuerunt inter se pœnam xv. millia marcarum argenti, ita quod ille, qui hanc pacem frangeret, daret alteri xv. millia marcarum argenti, et super hoc invenerunt sibi invicem[4] fidejussores. Hoveden, iv. 3.

Terms of the peace made there.

Claims of Philip on the archbishop of Rouen, who appeals to the pope.

Præterea rex Franciæ petiit ad opus suum Andeli, manerium Rotomagensis archiepiscopi. Quod cum nulla ratione fieri posset, rex Franciæ postulavit sibi fieri fidelitatem a Waltero Rotomagensi archiepiscopo de illa parte archiepiscopatus quæ est in regno Franciæ, scilicet de Vogosin le Franceys. Videns igitur Rotomagensis archiepiscopus hoc sibi grave et ignominiosum esse, appellavit ad dominum papam pro statu ecclesiæ suæ, et abiit, timens ne dominus suus rex Angliæ ipsum ad hoc faciendum propter favorem regis Franciæ cogeret. O ambitio, quam cæca semper! O quam præsumptio pessima! O quam perdit concessa qui inconcessa captat! Philippus itaque rex Franciæ terrenum obsidens regnum, impugnat cœleste; terrenis inhians irruit in Divina; destinatus ad scelus, ad periculum promptus, paratus ad crimen, causas innocentiæ non requirit, jus abnegat; confundit fasque nefasque, cui nequitia Hoveden, iv. 4.

---

[1] Here Hoveden gives a series of papal letters on archbishop Geoffrey and his disputes with the dean and chapter of York, which fill several pages of his work; vol. iii. 308–319. They are all omitted in MSS. M. and V., as likewise in several MSS. of Hoveden, and of course are not found in C.

[2] *hæredibus suis*] ab ipso et hæredibus suis, ins. H.; om. M.

[3] *invicem*] ad invicem, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 4.

est sodalis, cui odiosa[1] est æquitas, iniquitas semper est amica, qui cædibus vivit, qui se munit sanguine, qui crudelitatibus sævit, cui de morte stat totum, de amore constat nihil. O! A.D. 1196. January.

Ovid. *Trist.* ii. 33, 34.

Si quoties peccant homines sua fulmina mittat
Jupiter, exiguo tempore inermis erit.

Procedente itaque tempore, pœnituit regem Franciæ se talem fecisse cum rege Angliæ conventionem: magnum congregavit exercitum, et obsedit Albemarliam: quo facto, rex Angliæ præcepit saisiari in manu sua, in loco omni dominationis suæ citra mare et ultra, omnes res et possessiones abbatum de Majurmuster, et de Clunni, et de Sancto Dionisio,[2] et de la Charite. Erant prædicti abbates fidejussores erga regem Angliæ, quod rex Franciæ supradictam pacem servaret; et nisi fecerit, darent regi Angliæ xv. millia marcarum argenti. Philip resumes hostilities and Richard seizes the property of the sureties of the peace.

Hoveden, iv. 5.

Eodem anno Robertus comes Leyrcestriæ, datis Philippo regi Franciæ duabus millibus marcis argenti, et quieto clamato ei castello suo de Pasci, liberatus est a captione illius. The earl of Leicester liberated.

Eodem anno rex Angliæ misit Philippum Dunelmensem electum, et abbatem de Cadomo in Angliam, ad inquisitionem faciendam de prisis justitiarum, et vicecomitum, et ministrorum suorum. Cum autem prædictus abbas de Cadomo in Dominica Passionis pranderet cum Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et[3] summo justitiario, ægrotavit in mensa, et quinta die sequenti obiit Londoniis. The elect of Durham and the abbot of Caen sent to visit the justices. Death of the abbot, April 11.

Interim Philippus rex Franciæ cepit per vim castellum de Albemarle, et subvertit illud, et rex Angliæ dedit ei tria millia marcarum argenti, pro redemptione militum et servientium suorum, qui capti fuerunt in Albemarle. Philip takes Aumâle,

Deinde rex[4] cepit per vim Nonancurt, et Johannes comes Moretonii, frater Ricardi regis,[5] cepit castellum de Gameges. and Nonancourt. John takes Gameges.

Eodem anno orta est dissensio inter cives Londoniarum. Frequentius enim solito propter regis captionem et alia accidentia imponebantur eis auxilia non modica, et divites propriis parcentes marsupiis volebant ut pauperes solverent universa. Quod cum legis quidam peritus, Willelmus scilicet cum Barba,[6] [videret,] zelo justitiæ et æquitatis accensus, factus est pauperum advocatus; volens quod unusquisque, tam dives quam pauper, secundum mobilia et facultates suas daret ad universa civitatis negotia; et abiit ad regem trans mare, et impetravit ab eo pacem sibi et populo. Unde Hubertus[7] Cantuariensis archi- Disturbances in London. William Longbeard, the champion of the poor.

Hoveden, iv. 6.

The archbishop's

[1] *odiosa*] otiosa, C.
[2] *Dionisio*] Dyonisio, M.
[3] *et*] totius Angliæ, M., H.
[4] *rex*] Franciæ, ins. H.; om. M.
[5] *regis*] Angliæ, ins. H.
[6] *cum Barba*] filius Osberti, ins. M., H.
[7] *Hubertus*] Walteri, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1196. April. severity towards the discontented.

episcopus, et regis justitiarius, plurimum in iram commotus, [præcepit,][1] ut ubicunque aliquis de plebe inveniretur extra civitatem, caperetur tanquam regis et regni hostis. Contigit autem quod in medio Quadragesimæ, apud nundinas Stamfordiæ,[2] capti sunt quidam mercatores de plebe Londoniensi per præceptum justitiarii regis. Deinde præcepit idem justitiarius, ut supradictus Willelmus cum Barba ad eum duceretur etiam invitus, ad quem capiendum cum quidam de civibus, Gaufridus nomine, veniret, prædictus Willelmus cum Barba interfecit eum; cumque alii eum capere vellent, ipse aufugit cum quibusdam suorum, et incluserunt se in ecclesia[3] Sanctæ Mariæ de Arche; qui cum inde exire nollent, factus est insultus in eos: et cum nec sic reddere se vellent, ex præcepto archiepiscopi Cantuariensis et regis justitiarii, appositus est ignis, ut per fumum et vaporem ignis exirent. Cumque prædictus Willelmus exiret, quidam extracto cultello evisceravit eum, et sic ductus est ad turrim Londoniarum, et ibi judicatus est suspendi. Alligatus est etiam caudæ equi, et trahitur per vicos civitatis[4] ad patibulum, ac suspensus est, cum octo sociis suis. Cæteri vero cives Londonienses, qui adhæserant ei, posuerunt se in misericordia regis, et obsides dederunt de pace servanda regi et regno.

Hoveden, iv. 6.

London merchants arrested at Stamford Fair, at Midlent, March 31.

Attempted arrest and flight of William Longbeard.

He is dragged from Bow church and hanged.

Indignation of the monks of Canterbury at the violation of Bow church.

Monachi autem Sanctæ Trinitatis Cantuariensis, scientes quod ecclesia sua Londoniis, del Arche,[5] ita violaretur per præceptum archiepiscopi sui, qui, quamvis regi serviret, tamen jura ecclesiastica deberet servare illæsa, indignati sunt, et gravatum est cor eorum super eum, et non potuerunt cum eo quicquam pacifice loqui.

Otho made count of Poictou.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit Othoni nepoti suo comitatum Pictavis.

Hoveden, iv. 7.

The countess of Brittany imprisoned by her husband.

Arthur joins Philip, and Richard invades Brittany.

Eodem anno cum comitissa Britanniæ, mater Arturi, veniret per mandatum Ricardi regis in Normanniam loqui cum eo, venit obviam illi Ranulphus comes Cestriæ, maritus ejus, ad Pontem Ursonis, et cepit eam, et inclusit eam in castello suo apud Sanctum Jacobum de Beverun;[6] quam cum Arturus filius suus liberare non potuit, adhæsit regi Franciæ, et terras regis patrui sui combussit; deinde rex Angliæ magno congregato exercitu intravit hostiliter Britanniam, et eam devastavit.

---

[1] *præcepit*] om. C., M.

[2] *Stamfordiæ*] de Stanforde, M., H.

[3] *ecclesia*] quæ dicitur ecclesia, ins. M., H.

[4] *civitatis*] et plateas, ins. M., H.

[5] *del Arche*] quæ dicitur Sancta Maria del Arche, M., H.

[6] *Beverun*] Bevertone, C.; Bevertun, M.

Hoveden, iv. 7.

Interim Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus tandem ad sedem apostolicam accedens, diutinam moram ibi fecit, dominumque papam in omnibus agendis suis valde sibi difficilem, et contra se supra modum commotum, invenit. Processu vero temporis ipsi et adversariis suis tunc præsentibus data est audientia; et cum prædicta et alia plura ei objicerentur, quæ omnia archiepiscopus falsa esse constanter asseruit, requisiti adversarii utrum proposita probare vellent, post deliberationem petitam et concessam, responderunt se onus probationis nolle suscipere. Archiepiscopus vero se ab objectis immunem esse sufficienter ostendit; unde dominus papa eum de consilio totius curiæ ad officium et beneficium[1] restituens, omnibus prælatis et aliis clericis per Eboracensem diocesim constitutis dedit in mandatis, ut ei tanquam archiepiscopo in omnibus debitam exhiberent reverentiam et obedientiam; insinuans in rescripto suo qualiter archiepiscopus se ab objectis immunem esse, et omnia ab adversariis de eo disseminata falsa et fictitia esse declaravit. Restitutionis vero ejus notitia ad regem Angliæ perveniente, qui archiepiscopum temporalibus jampridem spoliaverat, et ad ejus, ut dicebatur, cum adversariis suis aspirabat depositionem, valde turbatus fuit, et duobus adversariis suis præcepit, ut se de cura spiritualium intromitterent, nec archiepiscopum nec officiales suos aliquam habere administrationem permitterent. Ipse etiam rex præbendas Eboracensis ecclesiæ, et alia beneficia vacantia, pro voluntate sua clericis suis concessit et distribuit. Archiepiscopus vero a curia Romana rediens, et in Gallia moram faciens, non ausus terram regis ingredi, cum non posset in conspectu regis gratiam invenire, ut vel temporalium vel spiritualium possessione gauderet, reversus est, et ad curiam Romanam eundi iter arripuit.

A.D. 1196. The archbishop of York meets his adversaries at the court of Rome.

The pope restores him to his see.

Consternation of Richard and his counsellors.

Hoveden, iv. 8.

The king forbids him to administer his diocese.

The archbishop returns to Rome.

Interim dominus rex Angliæ, prece ducis Arturi Britanniæ, et aliorum virorum potentum, dedit Petro de Dinant licentiam agendi contra Adam de Tornevere super archidiaconatu de Westrithing,[2] quem rex præfato Adæ dederat. Inter quos tandem convenit in hunc modum, quod magister Simon Apulus, Eboracensis ecclesiæ decanus, et capitulum ejusdem ecclesiæ, concessione et voluntate prædicti Adæ, receperunt Petrum de Dinant in archidiaconatum de Westrithing,[2] et in stallum[3] miserunt tam in choro quam in capitulo; et ipse Petrus vices suas, et illius archidiaconatus administrationem, commisit Adæ de Tornevere sub annua pensione xl. marcarum; statuens

Agreement between Peter of Dinan and Adam of Thornover touching the archdeaconry of the West Riding.

[1] *beneficium*] beneplacitum, C.

[2] *Westrithing*] Westrithriging, C.

[3] *stallum*] written originally *castellum* in C., and corrected.

A.D. 1196. Partition of the revenue and duties.

quod prædictus Adam archidiaconatum illum in integrum habeat et teneat omnibus diebus vitæ suæ, et reddat ei singulis annis inde xl. marcas argenti de pensione; et si Petrus supervixerit Adam, recipiat archidiaconatum de Westrithing[1] sine aliqua contradictione vel diminutione. Præterea inter illos statutum est, quod quandocunque simul fuerint in Eboraco, unus illorum una die tenebit stallum in choro nomine archidiaconi, et alter[2] altera die similiter, et sic mutabunt vices suas de die in diem quamdiu simul fuerint[3] in Eboraco. Hoveden, iv. 8. Hoveden, iv. 9.

June 15. Ordination of Philip elect of Durham.

Eodem anno, mense Junii, Philippus Dunelmensis electus ordinatus est in sacerdotem ab Henrico episcopo de Landaf, apud Dunelmum, in ecclesia Sancti Cuthberti, xvii°. kalendas Julii, Sabbato in hebdomada Pentecostes. Hoveden, iv. 10.

War between the king of Scots and the earl of Orkney.

Eodem anno Willelmus rex Scottorum, magno congregato exercitu, intravit Moreviam ad debellandum Haroldum Macmadit,[4] qui terram illam occupaverat. Sed antequam rex Cathaniam intraret, Haroldus fugit ad naves suas, nolens contra regem bellum inire. Tunc misit rex Scottorum exercitum suum ad Turseham, villam dicti[5] Haroldi, et castellum suum ibidem situm prostravit. Videns autem Haroldus quod rex terram suam ex toto devastaret, venit ad pedes regis, et posuit se in misericordia regis[6] maxime quia tempestas sæviebat in mare, et ventus erat ei contrarius, volenti ad Orcadam insulam ire; et juravit regi quod adduceret illi omnes inimicos suos, cum rex alia vice rediret in Mureviam; et per illam conditionem permisit eum rex tenere medietatem Cathaniæ, et aliam[7] medietatem dedit rex Haroldo juniori, nepoti Reginaldi quondam comitis de Orkeneya et de Cathania. Deinde reversus est rex in terram suam, et Haraldus in Orkeneyam.

Submission of the earl; his promises.

The earl fails to fulfil his engagements.

Deinde in autumno rediit rex Scottorum in Murreviam usque ad Dilvernarran, ut reciperet ab Haraldo inimicos suos; quos cum Haraldus produxisset usque ad portum de Locloy prope Dilvernarran, permisit eos abire; et sero, redeunte rege de venatu, venit ad eum Haraldus adducens secum duos pueros nepotes suos ad tradendum regi in obsides; et interrogatus a rege ubi essent inimici ejus, quos tradere debuerat, et ubi esset Torphinus filius ejus, quem obsidem dare promiserat, Hoveden, iv. 11.

---

[1] *Westrithing*] Westrithriging, C.

[2] *alter*] illorum, ins. M., H.

[3] *simul fuerint*] moram simul fecerint, H. Hoveden proceeds to mention the confirmation of this compromise by the chapter of York, and then gives the document in which the archbishop annuls it. This is omitted in MS. M., and of course in C. See Hoveden, iv. 9.

[4] *Macmadit*] Macinadit, C.

[5] *dicti*] prædicti, M., H.

[6] *regis*] ejus, M., H.

[7] *aliam*] illam, C., M.

Hoveden, iv. 11.

respondit, "Permisi eos abire, sciens quod, si eos vobis tradi- A.D. 1196.
" dissem, non evaderent manus vestras; filium autem meum He is taken and im-
" adducere non potui, quia in illa terra non est alius hæres." prisoned at Edinburgh.
Igitur quia ipse conventiones, quas cum domino suo rege fecit, non servaverat, judicatum est eum in captione regis remansurum, donec filius ejus veniret, et obses fieret. Et pro eo quod ipse permisit inimicos regis abire, adjudicatum est ipsum demeruisse terram quam ille de rege tenebat. Et reduxit secum Haraldum usque ad castellum Puellarum, et tenuit eum in vinculis, donec homines sui de Orchadia[1] adduxerunt filium The men of Orkney seize his son and deliver him to the king in his father's place.
suum Torphinum: et tradentes eum regi[2] obsidem, liberaverunt Haraldum de captione regis. Et Haraldus reversus est in Orchadiam, et ibi mansit in pace et quiete, donec Haraldus junior, accepta a Swero Birkebayn, rege Norweyæ, licentia calumniandi medietatem Orchadiæ, adduxit secum Siwardum War between the two Harolds.
Murd de Hegland, et alios multos bellatores, et Orchadiam invasit; et noluit Haraldus senior cum eo pugnam ingredi, sed abiit in insulam de Man, relicta Orchadia; et ibi congregavit magnum navigium, et homines multos. Similiter fecit Haraldus junior, et adiit insulam de Man, volens congredi cum Haraldo seniore; sed Haraldus senior ante adventum Haraldi junioris in Man, per aliam viam reversus[3] est Orchadiam, cum navigio suo, et interfecit omnes quos in Orchadia invenit. Quo audito, Haraldus junior reversus est in Catheneis Defeat of the younger Harold.
apud Wic, et commisit prælium cum Haraldo seniore: et in prælio illo Haraldus junior et omnis exercitus ejus interfecti sunt. Interfecto itaque Haraldo juniori, Haraldus senior venit Negotiation for the earldom of Caithness.

Hoveden, iv. 12.

ad regem Scottorum per conductum Rogeri et Reginaldi, episcoporum Sancti Andreæ et Rosmarkyn, et obtulit regi copiam auri et argenti pro Cathenia, id est, Catheneis, rehabenda; cui rex respondit, quod terram illam sibi traderet, si uxorem suam filiam Macolini Machaz dimisisset, et priorem sponsam suam, sororem Dunecani comitis de Fif, resumpsisset, et tradidisset ei in obsidem Laurentium clericum suum, et Honaver[4] filium Iggemundi; quod Haraldus facere noluit. Venit ergo Reginaldus filius Sumerled, rex de Man, ad Willel- It is bought by Ronald.
mum regem Scottorum, et emit ab eo Catheniam, salvo regis redditu annuo.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit Willelmo de Chimeli, William de Chimely made bishop of Avranches.
archidiacono Richmundiæ, episcopatum Albricarum in Normannia; et idem rex dedit magistro Eustachio, sigillifero suo, archidiaconatum de Richemund.

---

[1] *Orchadia*] Archadia, C., M.
[2] *regi*] domino regi, M., H.
[3] *reversus*] ingressus, M., H.
[4] *Honaver*] Hanover, C., M.

A.D. 1196. The archbishop of Canterbury offers to resign the Justiciarship.

Eodem anno Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus,[1] sedis apostolicæ legatus, et regis[2] Angliæ summus justitiarius, sæpe et multum sollicitavit per internuncios suos dominum suum Ricardum regem Angliæ, ut eum liberaret a regimine regni, ostendens ipsum non posse sufficere regimini ecclesiæ et regni. Cum igitur rex, licet invitus, eo quod non erat inventus similis illi, qui conservaret leges et jura regni, precibus tamen ejus inclinatus, illum a sollicitudine regiminis regni removere vellet, pœnituit eum tale fecisse regi mandatum, expertus quod in custodiendis illis est retributio multa, et inspectis scriptis et computationibus auditis mandavit regi, quod infra biennium proximo præteritum adquisierat ad opus illius undecies centena millia marcarum argenti de regno Angliæ; subjungens, quod si servitium ejus videretur illi necessarium, non recusaret laborem, nec fatiscentem causaretur ætatem. O felicem[3] præsulem! licet sæpius legisset "Neminem posse "duobus dominis servire; aut [enim] unum odio habebit, et "alterum diliget; aut unum sustinebit, et alterum contemnet;" præelegit tamen officium sacerdotale postponere, quam regi terreno non adhærere: et sic accepta regni regiminis potestate, officii administrationem,[4] cui professionis voto astrictus fuerat, parvipendens, pro castris regis Angliæ stare non recusavit.

Hoveden, iv. 12.

He changes his mind and retains it.

Hoveden, iv. 13.

S. Matt., vi. 24.

The bishop's mint re-established at Durham.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit Philippo Dunelmensi electo licentiam fabricandi monetam in civitate sua Dunelmensi, quod prædecessoribus suis a multo tempore retro non erat permissum.

Famine.

Eodem anno exstitit in Anglia, et in omnibus finibus ejus, fames magna, et hominum mortalitas.

Raymond of Toulouse marries queen Johanna.

Item[5] comes de Sancto Egidio duxit in uxorem Johannam sororem Ricardi regis Angliæ, quondam reginam Siciliæ.[6]

William son of Henry II. made earl of Salisbury.

Eodem anno obiit Willelmus, comes Saresbiriæ, filius comitis Patricii: cujus filiam et hæredem Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit in uxorem cum comitatu Saresbiriensi Willelmo fratri suo notho.[7]

The queen of Hungary takes the

Item eodem anno obiit Bela rex Hungariæ; post cujus obitum Margareta uxor ejus, soror Philippi regis Franciæ,

Hoveden, iv. 14.

---

[1] *archiepiscopus*] totius Angliæ primas, ins. M., H.

[2] *regis*] totius, M., H.

[3] *felicem*] infelicem, H.

[4] *administrationem*] ecclesiastici, ins. M., H.

[5] *Item*] Eodem anno, M., H.

[6] *Siciliæ*] Here our MS. C., with M. and several MSS. of Hoveden, omits the notice of the death of the bishop of Worcester, which has been recorded before, and which is repeated by Hoveden.

[7] Here is omitted the notice of the death of Maurice bishop of Paris, given by Hoveden, but omitted in the same MSS.

Hoveden, iv. 14.

quæ fuit[1] regina Angliæ, uxor Henrici[2] junioris, accepit crucem Jerosolimitanæ profectionis, et in terra Jerosolimitana apud Accon in Dei servitio permansit, usque ad consummationem vitæ suæ. A.D. 1196. cross and goes to Palestine.

Item eodem anno obiit Bucardus, Eboracensis ecclesiæ thesaurarius, cujus thesaurariam Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit magistro Eustachio sigillifero.[3] Death of Bouchard de Puiset;

Item eodem anno obiit Petrus de Ros, quo defuncto, Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit Aimerico, nepoti Philippi Dunelmensis electi, archidiaconatum Carleoli, et dictus Philippus[4] dedit dicto[5] Aimerico nepoti suo archidiaconatum de Dunelmo, et ecclesiam de Acclet, quæ prædictus Bucardus habuerat. and of Peter de Ros. Promotions in consequence.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex firmavit novum castellum in insula de Andeli, contra voluntatem et prohibitionem Walteri Rotomagensis archiepiscopi; et, quia rex ab inceptis desistere noluit, prædictus archiepiscopus dedit sententiam interdicti in Normanniam, et abiit ad summum pontificem. Richard fortifies the isle of Andely, and Normandy is put under interdict.

Eodem anno facta congressione inter familiam regis Franciæ et regis Angliæ, Hugo de Chaumunt, miles probus et dives, et valde familiaris regi Franciæ, captus est, et regi Angliæ traditus; quem rex Angliæ tradidit Roberto de Ros custodiendum, et Robertus de Ros[6] Willelmo de Espinai servienti suo, Hugh of Chaumont captured and imprisoned at Bonneville.

Hoveden, iv. 15.

custodiendum in castello de Bona Villa supra Toke; qui cum minus caute custodiretur, per murum de nocte demissus est, permissione et consensu dicti Willelmi.[7] Unde rex Angliæ valde iratus, eo quod Hugo de Chaumunt sic manus suas evasit, cepit Robertum de Ros, et incarceravit, et cepit de eo M. et CC. marcas[8] de redemptione; et Willelmus[9] suspensus est[10] quia proditor domini sui. He escapes. Richard hangs William of Espinai.

Eodem anno Radulfus de Wygetoft, clericus Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi, infirmabatur Romæ usque ad mortem, et coram domino papa Cœlestino et universis cardinalibus confessus est, quod ipse multas litteras falsas in curia Romana adquisierat, tam de negotio domini sui Eboracensis archiepiscopi, quam de suo[11] proprio; et quod jam illas in Angliam Ralph of Wigetoft, at Rome, confesses that he has sent forged letters to England.

Hoveden, iv. 15.

---

[1] *fuit*] quondam exstiterat, M., H.

[2] *Henrici*] regis, ins. M., H.

[3] *sigillifero*] suo, ins. M., H.

[4] *Philippus*] Dunelmensis electus, ins. M., H.

[5] *dicto*] eidem, M., H.

[6] *de Ros*] tradidit eum, ins. M. illum, H.

[7] *Willelmi*] del Espinai, ins. M., H.

[8] *marcas*] argenti, ins. M., H.

[9] *Willelmus*] del Espinai, ins. M., H.

[10] *est*] patibulo, ins. M., H.

[11] *suo*] negotio, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1196. præmiserat. Unde dominus papa in mandatis dedit Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ut si aliquæ litteræ super negotio Eboracensis archiepiscopi inventæ fuissent, continentes aliquid citra æquitatem et justitiam, retinerentur. Unde factum est, quod Rogerus de Ripunt, clericus, portitor harum, qui toxicum portabat, inventus est Londoniis, dicens quod Radulfus de Wygetoft tradidit ea illi. Dicebat etiam quod toxicum illud traditum sibi[1] fuerat ad perdendum magistrum Simonem Eboracensis ecclesiæ decanum, et quosdam alios ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicos. Ad vocationem igitur Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, regis justitiarii, venit Londonias dictus decanus Eboraci, et tradita sunt ei venenum illud, et annuli aurei, et zona pulcherrima toxicata, ad comburendum; quibus traditis, convenit multitudo maxima virorum et mulierum, in loco qui dicitur Totehil, ut testes fierent combustionis illorum; et sic igni tradita sunt;[2] portitor autem illorum in carcere servabatur; et adversarii Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi omne crimen ei objiciunt.

Roger of Ripon arrested at London, carrying poison and forged letters.

The letters and poison are burned at Tothill.

The crime charged against Geoffrey.

Hoveden, iv. 16.

May 19. John captures the bishop of Beauvais and William de Merlou.

Eodem anno Johannes comes Moretonii, frater regis, et Marcades princeps nefandæ gentis Brabacenorum, fecerunt xiv^to^ kalendas Junii, feria secunda, equitationem ante civitatem Belvaci, et dum intenderent prædæ capiendæ, Philippus episcopus Belvacensis, et Willelmus de Merlo,[3] una cum filio suo, et militibus multis et plebe armata, exierunt et ipsi armati; sed mox confecti sunt in prælio et capti Belvacensis episcopus, Willelmus de Merlo, et filius ejus, et milites nonnulli, et ex plebe maxima pars interfecta est. Et eodem die, post captionem illam, comes Johannes et Marchades processerunt usque Milli, castellum prædicti Belvacensis episcopi, et per insultum ceperunt illud, et prostraverunt; et sic gloriosi triumphatores redierunt in Normanniam, et tradiderunt regi Angliæ Belvacensem episcopum, Willelmum de Merlou, filium ejus, et alios captivos multos.

---

[1] *sibi*] ei, M., H.

[2] *tradita sunt*] et redacta in cineres, ins. M., H.

[3] *Merlou*] Merlow, M.

C.——MCXCVII.

Annus octavus Ricardi regis Angliæ.

Hoveden, iv. 16.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo septimo, qui est annus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ octavus, idem Ricardus fuit in Normannia apud Burum die Natalis Domini, quæ feria quarta evenit; plurimum confusus, eo quod Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus noluit relaxare sententiam interdicti quam in Normanniam tulerat. Corpora enim defunctorum insepulta jacebant per vicos et plateas civitatum Normanniæ. Misit ergo rex Willelmum Elyensem episcopum cancellarium suum, et Lexoviensem episcopum, et Philippum Dunelmensem electum, ut coram domino papa causam suam defenderent contra dictum Rotomagensem archiepiscopum.

Hoveden, iv. 17.

A.D. 1196. Dec. 25. Richard keeps Christmas at Bur.

Normandy is still under interdict.

De obitu Willelmi cancellarii Eliensis episcopi.

Qui cum Pictavim venissent, Willelmus Elyensis episcopus, regis cancellarius, ægrotavit usque ad mortem, et mortuus [est], et sepultus; et quamdiu ipse in extremis laborasse videretur, quædam crux lignea in cathedrali ejusdem civitatis ecclesia, crux Sancti Martialis dicta,[1] plorasse videbatur ita vehementer, quod quasi rivulus aquæ, ab oculis ejus defluens, faciem illius irrigavit. Populus autem dicebat hoc jam tertio evenisse; primo in obitu ejusdem civitatis episcopi; secundo in recessu Johannis Belemeyns, ejusdem civitatis episcopi; tertio in obitu istius Willelmi Elyensis episcopi.

A.D. 1197. January. The bishop of Ely dies at Poictiers on the way to Rome. (Jan. 31.)

The cross of S. Martial sheds tears.

Quo defuncto, Lexoviensis episcopus et Dunelmensis electus processerunt in negotio domini sui. Dominus autem rex, non immemor servitii quod prædictus cancellarius ei fecerat, dedit Roberto fratri illius, priori Eliensi, abbatiam Sanctæ Mariæ Eboraci, quem Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, benedixit in abbatem.

The bishop of Lisieux and elect of Durham go to Rome.

Robert Longchamp made abbot of S. Mary's York.

Convenientibus igitur in præsentia domini papæ Cœlestini præfato Rotomagensi archiepiscopo, et episcopo Lexoviensi, et electo Dunelmensi; archiepiscopus Rotomagensis protestatus est jus suum, quod habebat in Andeli, et injuriam quam Ricardus rex Angliæ ei fecerat firmando castellum in patrimonio ecclesiæ Rotomagensis injuste et contra voluntatem et assensum illius. Ad quod supradicti regis nuncii responderunt,

Plea of the archbishop of Rouen at Rome; and reply of Richard's agents.

[1] *dicta*] quæ dicitur, M., H.

A.D. 1197. Argument of Richard for fortifying Andely.

quod dominus rex sæpe et multum obtulerat ei per internuncios suos, videlicet viros venerabiles et discretos, episcopos et abbates, comites et barones, se in omnibus satisfacturum illi ad æstimationem proborum virorum. Asserebant enim ex parte regis, quod ipse insulam illam de Andeli, in qua castellum firmaverat, nullo modo dimittere posset, quia rex Franciæ et sui perinde transitum fecerunt[1] in Normanniam, et sæpius eam devastabant; et ideo rex Angliæ locum illum munierat ad defensionem terræ suæ contra regem Franciæ. Et super hiis prædictus archiepiscopus Rotomagensis et præfati regis nuncii compromiserunt se examini domini papæ et Romanæ ecclesiæ. Unde factum est, quod dominus papa et cardinales post diutinam deliberationem, attendentes damna et importunitates quæ acciderent Normanniæ, nisi locus ille de Andeli firmaretur, consuluerunt præfato Rotomagensi archiepiscopo, quod cum domino suo rege amicabiliter componeret, et ab eo sufficienter recompensationem ablatorum reciperet, secundum proborum et sapientum virorum æstimationem; dicentes bene licere regi et cuilibet potenti infirmiora terræ suæ munire, ne perinde damnum sibi et terræ suæ contingat. Hoveden, iv. 17, 18.

The archbishop consents to receive compensation.

April 20. Philip elect of Durham consecrated.

Interim dominus papa Cœlestinus consecravit Philippum Dunelmensem electum in episcopum ejusdem,[2] Dominica qua cantatur "Misericordias Domini;" quæ eodem anno contigit duodecimo kalendas Maii. Consecrato itaque Dunelmensi episcopo, dominus papa Cœlestinus relaxavit interdicti sententiam, quam Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus in Normanniam tulerat, propter infirmationem castelli insulæ de Andeli, et dimisit eos.

The interdict of Normandy raised.

Agreement between Richard and the archbishop of Rouen.

Redeuntibus autem ad dominum Ricardum regem Angliæ supradicto Rotomagensi archiepiscopo et Lexoviensi et Dunelmensi episcopis, cum forma pacis inter prædictum regem et Rotomagensem archiepiscopum de consilio domini papæ et cardinalium ordinata; idem rex, convocatis episcopis,[3] abbatibus, comitibus, baronibus Normanniæ, dedit Waltero Rotomagensi archiepiscopo et ejus successoribus, in recompensationem villæ suæ de Andeli, villam de Depe cum omnibus pertinentiis suis, et vallem de Malauni,[4] et molendina de Robec in civitate Rotomagi, et Luvers cum pertinentiis suis, et carta sua confirmavit. Hæc contra Walterus Rotomagensis archiepiscopus quietum clamavit Ricardo regi Angliæ, et hæredibus suis, Andeli cum pertinentiis suis, ab ipso et successoribus suis. Hoveden, iv. 19.

---

[1] *fecerunt*] faciebant, M., H.
[2] *ejusdem*] Dunelmensem, M., H.
[3] *episcopis*] rep. C.
[4] *Malauni*] So also MS. M.; Malaunai, H.

Hoveden, iv. 19.

A.D. 1197. Richard burns S. Valery and removes the relics.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ venit ad Sanctum Walericum, et villam combussit, et destructis monachis ibidem Deo servientibus, asportavit secum in Normanniam feretrum cum reliquiis Sancti Walerici: et in portu illo invenit naves, quæ de Anglia venerant, onustas frumento et victualibus, et cepit eas, et earum nautas fecit suspendi, et naves combussit, et frumentum et victualia suis distribuit.

Richard makes alliance with the French nobles against Philip.

Eodem anno Campani, Flandrenses et Britones, relicto rege Franciæ, adhæserunt Ricardo regi Angliæ, datis hinc inde obsidibus, quod non facerent pacem neque concordiam cum rege Franciæ, nisi de communi illorum consilio. Rex enim Angliæ illos, et fere omnes potentiores de regno Franciæ, allexit muneribus: nam ejus prælarga manus donis cætera vincebat dona;

Hoveden, iv. 20.

"Nec tamen in dando mensuram deserit, immo,
"Singula describit certo moderamine finis."

Alliance with the count of Flanders.

Dedit itaque Baldewino comiti Flandriæ quinque millia marcarum;[1] et ipse obsides dedit quod ipse cum rege Franciæ pacem non faceret, nisi de consensu regis Angliæ; similiter fecit ei rex Angliæ.

Surrender of Dangu to Richard: it is besieged by Philip.

Deinde Willelmus Crispyn, constabularius de Dangu, vi compulsus, tradidit Ricardo regi Angliæ castellum de Dangu, quod ipse rex Angliæ statim sufficienter munivit hominibus, armis et victualibus; et rex Franciæ mox magno congregato exercitu obsedit illud. Et dum hæc fierent, Ricardus rex Angliæ perrexit in Alverniam, et decem de castellis regis Franciæ et suorum cepit. Sed antequam rex Angliæ rediret in Normanniam, rex Franciæ cepit castellum de Dangu, concessis militibus et servientibus qui in eo erant vita et membris; et accepit de eis quingentas marcas argenti de redemptione, et permisit illos liberos abire, et castellum illud firmavit, et in manu sua retinuit.

Richard invades Auvergne, and Philip takes Dangu.

The count of Flanders besieges Arras.

Philip attempting to relieve it, narrowly escapes capture.

Interim Baldewinus comes[2] obsedit civitatem de Araz; quo audito, rex Franciæ venit illuc cum copioso exercitu; in cujus adventu comes Flandriæ, relicta obsidione, rediit in terram suam, et rex Franciæ secutus est eum: cumque rex Franciæ longius processisset, comes Flandriæ fecit pontes diruere ante regem Franciæ et retro, ita quod neque victus neque exercitus ejus potuit ad eum accedere. Tunc rex Franciæ in arcto positus supplicavit comiti Flandriæ, ne ipse coronam Franciæ contaminaret, quod ipse asserens ea intentione Flandriam in-

[1] *marcarum*] argenti, ins. M., H. | [2] *comes*] Flandriæ, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1197. traverat, ut cum illo amicabiliter componeret; jurans quod ipse redderet illi totum jus suum, si dimisisset Ricardum regem Angliæ extra pacem. Et quia comes Flandriæ contra pactum quod cum rege Angliæ fecerat venire noluit, cepit colloquium inter regem Franciæ et regem Angliæ, feria quarta post festum Exaltationis Sanctæ Crucis, inter Gwallun et Andeli; et sic rex Franciæ liberatus a captione comitis Flandriæ rediit in Franciam, sed nullam conventionem, quam comiti Flandriæ fecit, tenere voluit. Hoveden, iv. 20, 21.

Conference proposed between Richard and Philip for Sept. 17.

Eustace made bishop of Ely.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit magistro Eustachio, vicecancellario suo, episcopatum de Ely.

Queen Johanna bears a son.

Eodem anno Johanna soror Ricardi regis Angliæ, uxor Reimundi comitis de Sancto Egidio, peperit filium suum primogenitum, qui vocatus est Reymundus.[1]

Archbishop Hubert invades Wales.

Eodem anno obiit Resus filius Griffini rex; post cujus obitum facta est discordia inter filios suos, quis eorum loco patris regnaret: ad quam exstinguendam Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, regis justitiarius, fines Walliæ adiit, et pacem inter illos fecit.

The bishop of Beauvais writes to the pope.

Interim Philippus Belvacensis episcopus, misso Aurelianensi episcopo fratre suo Romam, dum adhuc esset in captione regis Angliæ, super qua Cœlestino summo pontifici lacrymabiliter scripsit, ut pro eo regi Angliæ scribendo supplicaret. Qui regi Angliæ litteras suas direxit pro eo supplicatorias.[2]

Death of the bishop of Poictiers.

Eodem anno obiit Willelmus Pictavensis episcopus; et quamvis vita illius videretur hominibus valde reprehensibilis, tamen[3] post obitum[4] claruit[5] miraculis. Hoveden, iv. 24.

Truce for a year between Richard and Philip.

Item eodem anno Philippus rex Franciæ, et Ricardus rex Angliæ, statuerunt inter se treugas a festo Sancti Hilarii in unum annum; habentes in proposito, quod interim pacem et concordiam finalem inter se facerent.

The count of Flanders visits Canterbury.

Deinde Baldewinus comes Flandriæ venit in Angliam in peregrinatione ad Sanctum Thomam Cantuariensem martyrem.

Baptism of Frederick of Sicily.

Eodem anno filius Henrici Romanorum imperatoris, quem pepererat ei Constantia imperatrix, filia Rogeri quondam regis Siciliæ, puer septem annorum, baptizatus est, et vocatum est nomen ejus Fredericus.

---

[1] *qui . . . Reimundus*] et vocatum est nomen ejus Raymundus, M., H.

[2] *supplicatorias*] Here MSS. M. and V. and all the MSS. of Hoveden give the spurious letter of the bishop of Beauvais to the pope, and that of the pope in answer. See Hoveden, iv. 21–24. They are omitted in C.

[3] *tamen*] ipse, ins. M., H.

[4] *obitum*] ejus, ins. M., H.

[5] *claruit*] in, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 25.

Item eodem anno Jordanus de Curci, frater Johannis de Curci principis regni de Ulvestre in Hibernia, a quodam Hiberniensi familiari suo interfectus est. In cujus vindictam prædictus Johannes frater ejus commisit prælium cum Hibernensibus regulis; ex quibus partem fugavit, partem stravit, et terras eorum sibi subjugavit; quarum partem magnam dedit Dunecano filio Gilberti filii Fergus, qui eo tempore, quo dictus Johannes præliaturus erat cum Hiberniensibus, venit ad eum in Hibernia cum gente non modica auxiliaturus ei. A.D. 1197. Jordan de Courcy killed in Ireland. John de Courcy gives lands to Duncan of Galloway, who assists in avenging him.

Item eodem anno Nicholaus episcopus de Wic in Norweya commisit prælium cum Swero Birkebain, et ab eo victus fugit, omnibus suis fere interfectis. Defeat of the bishop of Wic by by Swerre.

Item eodem anno præfatus Aurelianensis episcopus, qui pro liberatione Philippi fratris sui Romam profectus fuerat, obiit apud Senes-la-vielle. Death of the bishop of Orleans.

Eodem anno Henricus Romanorum imperator magnum exercitum misit in terram Suliæ, sub principibus Maguntino archiepiscopo, et Henrico duce Saxoniæ comite Palatino de Reno, et aliis ducibus[1] et comitibus multis, cum Walranno fratre ducis de Lamburg, qui[2] ante alios applicuit in terra Jerosolimitana cum gente sua, et statim invasit paganos, et quotquot invenit de paganis interficiens, pacem violavit et treugas quas rex Angliæ in recessu suo de terra Jerosolimitana statuit inter Christianos et paganos. Unde Saphadin frater Salaadini et cæteri pagani, plurimum commoti, interfecerunt omnes quos attigerant Christianos, et obsederunt Joppen. Henry VI. sends an army into Palestine. Waleran of Limburg breaks the peace with the Saracens. Hoveden, iv. 26. Saffadin besieges Joppa.

Comes autem Henricus de Campania, qui per electionem regum Franciæ et Angliæ, Templariorum et Hospitalorum, præerat terræ Jerosolimitanæ, exercitum Christianorum paravit ad obsidionem illam solvendam: et dum ipse, nixus columnæ cujusdam fenestræ in thalamo superiori, loqueretur ad turbas, fracta est columna illa, et ille corruens in terram, fractis cervicibus, exspiravit. Saraceni vero ceperunt Joppen, et interfecerunt in ea plus quam viginti millia Christianorum. Post obitum vero Henrici comitis de Campania, dux de Luvain et Henricus dux de Saxonia receperunt se in civitate Accon; sed nihil [possederunt extra portas civitatis, et nihil][3] victus potuit eis afferri propter metum paganorum. Exercitus autem imperatoris, qui de Alemannia et cæteris terris ejus iter Jero- Death of Henry of Champagne king of Jerusalem. Joppa is taken. The crusaders shut themselves up in Acre.

---

[1] *et aliis ducibus*] et duce de Luvein, et duce de Saringes, et duce de Ostricio filio Limpoldi ducis, et duce de Swthede, et duce de Baveria, et Walrammo fratre ducis de Lamburge, M., H.

[2] *qui*] Præfatus autem Walrammus, M., H.

[3] *possederunt . . . nihil*] om. C.

A.D. 1197. The German army retakes Silvia.

solimitanum per mare susceperat, transitum fecit in Normaniam et Angliam; et sic rectum cursum tenens usque in Hispaniam, eripuit civitatem Silviæ de manu paganorum; quam penitus destruxerunt, non relinquentes lapidem super lapidem: timebant enim quod, si eam tradidissent regi Portugalensi, ipse eam amitteret, sicut prius fecerat. Hoveden, iv. 26.

Miracle in the German army.

[1]In peregrinatione autem peditum gentis ejusdem imperatoris, contigit quoddam miraculum novum et a sæculo inauditum. Accidit itaque, quod duo Alemanni, vicini et compatres, consortium inierunt quod simul irent in illa peregrinatione,[2] in uno hospitio et una expensa consortes. Cum igitur tempus motionis instaret, unus illorum venit ad domum alterius nocte una hospitaturus, et cum illi ostenderet pecuniam, quam secum in via deferret, paterfamilias consilio uxoris suæ interfecit illum et pecuniam illius cepit; et imponens collo suo cadaver interfecti, profectus est ut illud in aquam projiceret; sed nullo modo potuit illud a se projicere; et in diluculo domum rediens cum cadavere collo suo inhærente per tres dies in absconso latuit; sed cum diutius sustinere hoc non potuit, perrexit ad pontificem suum, ut eum consuleret quid sibi super hoc esset agendum; et præcepit ei pontifex in virtute obedientiæ, ut ipse cadaver illud secum in terram Jerosolimitanam ferret, ut sic expiatis sordibus redderet animam suam cœlorum sedibus: et sic pœnitentia ductus processit cum aliis peregrinis, portans in collo suo defunctum illum, ad laudem bonorum, et malorum terrorem. Hoveden, iv. 27.

Henry VI. imprisons the Sicilian nobles and mutilates Margarit.

Eodem anno Henricus Romanorum imperator cepit magnates Siciliæ, ex quibus quosdam incarceravit, quosdam diversis pœnis afflictos morti tradidit; Margaritum etiam admiralem, cui ipse dederat ducatum de Duraz, et principatum de Tarente, et principatum maris, evulsis oculis et abscisis testiculis, excæcari et ementulari fecit.

The empress Constance conspires against her husband.

Constancia vero imperatrix videns [mala][3] quæ imperator gesserat, cum gente sua fœdus iniit contra imperatorem maritum suum; et Panormum pergens, cepit thesauros imperatoris, quos reges Siciliæ a multo tempore thesaurizaverant; unde principes regni animosiores effecti injecerunt manus in Alemannos imperatoris, et interfecerunt eos.

Henry is besieged by the Sicilian barons.

Imperator vero fugiens inclusit se in munitione forti, volens, si posset, repatriare; sed adversarii ejus ita vias ei præcluserant, quod nusquam securus illi patebat egressus.

---

[1] Nota magnum miraculum, M. in marg. Mirabilis Dei vindicta, C. in marg.

[2] *peregrinatione*] Jerosolimitana, ins. M., H.

[3] *mala*] om. C.

Hoveden, iv. 28.

Interim Saphadin frater Saladini, post captionem Joppen, magno congregato exercitu paganorum, commisit prælium cum supradictis ducibus et comitibus, et exercitu imperatoris Romanorum, quem ipse in terram Jerosolimitanam miserat; et prævaluit exercitus Christianorum; et ceperunt in prælio illo Christiani duos filios Saladini, et plus quam sexaginta admirales; et dictus Saphadinus[1] lethaliter vulneratus vix evasit. Ceperunt etiam Christiani civitatem Sidonem, et Laliche, et magnum Gibel; et erat spes Christianorum quod filius Salaadini tenens civitatem Jerosolimæ vellet Christianari; sic enim erat interlocutum per internuncios mediantes.

A.D. 1197. Saffadin is defeated by the crusaders; they recover Sidon, Laodicea, and Byblus.

Interim pagani qui erant in civitate de Barrut,[2] timentes incursum Christianorum, muros civitatis prostraverunt, et traxerunt in castellum victus necessaria, et arma et lapides murorum ad defensionem castelli. Quadam autem die, dum ad hoc perficiendum diligentius instarent, relictis tantummodo in castello quinque Christianorum captivis compeditis, et uno solo Saraceno janitore, repente supervenit archiepiscopus Maguntinus, imperatoris Romanorum cancellarius, cum exercitu magno navali; et Aimericus dominus insulæ de Cipre, et præfati duces et principes Alemannorum venerunt cum exercitu equestri et pedestri. Quod videntes Christiani qui erant in castello, cucurrerunt, ut poterant, et clauserunt portas castelli, et janitorem interfecerunt, et ascendentes in altum, clamaverunt alta voce signum Christianorum, videlicet, "Adjuvet nos "Christus Dei Filius, et sanctum sepulcrum Ejus." Ad hanc vocem pagani exterriti fugerunt ad montana, relicto castello et civitate, victu et armis suis; et Christiani recepti sunt in civitate et castello cum gaudio.

The Saracens fortify themselves in the castle of Beirout. It is surprised by the crusaders.

Hoveden, iv. 29.

Flight of the Saracens.

Deinde præfatus Maguntinus archiepiscopus, consilio et voluntate principum Alemanniæ, tradidit Aimerico domino Cipri Accon et Tyrum et Barud, et cæteras civitates quas ceperant; deinde dedit ei Milisent in uxorem, quæ fuerat uxor Henrici comitis de Campania, et coronavit eos in civitate Barud; et ipse Aimericus devenit homo Henrici Romanorum imperatoris de insula Cipri.

Amalric of Cyprus takes charge of Palestine.

[3] Eodem anno Hamo de Valonis, et cæteri custodes Hiberniæ, homines comitis Johannis fratris Ricardi regis Angliæ, injurias magnas fecerunt Johanni Cumin Dublicensi archiepiscopo. Unde idem archiepiscopus, malens exulari, quam enormitates illas sibi et ecclesiæ suæ factas diutius sustinere impunitas,

The archbishop of Dublin is driven into exile by John's ministers in Ireland.

[1] *Saphadinus*] frater Salaadini, ins. M., H.

[2] *Barrut*] Barruc, C., M.; Barhut, H.

[3] Nota miraculum mirabile de cruce apud Dublinam. M. in marg.

A.D. 1197. excommunicavit prædictos præsumptores, et interdicti sententiam dedit in archiepiscopatum suum, et abiit; præcepitque cruces et imagines cathedralis ecclesiæ in terram deponi, et spinis circumdari, ut sic malefactores illi terrerentur, et a voluntate sæviendi in bona ecclesiæ revocarentur. Sed dum adhuc in proposito malignandi perseverarent, contigit miraculum nostris temporibus inauditum. Erat siquidem in cathedrali ecclesia Divelini quædam crux, in qua imago Christi expressius erat incisa, quam omnes tam Hibernenses quam cæteri maxima veneratione habebant. Cum autem hæc imago Crucifixi esset humi prostrata et spinis circumsepta, feria sexta[1] apparuit facies ejus suffusa rubore vehementi, velut esset in camino ardenti; et sudor magnus exivit a facie ejus, et ab oculis ejus cadebant guttæ, ac si fleret: hora autem diei sexta, a dextro illius latere et a dextra ejus mamilla exivit sanguis et aqua; quæ ministri ecclesiæ diligenter colligentes, miserunt legationem post Johannem Cumin archiepiscopum suum, mandantes ei hujus rei eventum sub sigillorum venerabilium virorum testimonio, domino papæ insinuandum. Cæteri autem episcopi Hiberniæ, licet sæpius legissent,

Hoveden, iv. 29.

Miracle in the cathedral of Dublin.

Hoveden, iv. 30.

The other Irish bishops give way to the officers of John.

" En tua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet,"

tamen clausis oculis transierunt damna et injurias, quæ ministri præfati Johannis comitis Moretonii coepiscopo suo fecerant, et facti veluti arietes non habentes cornua, cedebant a facie subsequentis. Johannes vero Dublinensis episcopus exulans venit ad Ricardum regem Angliæ, et ad Johannem comitem Moretonii fratrem ejus; sed nullam potuit habere justitiam, vel ablatorum restitutionem.

Lament. i. 6.

Henry VI. sends bishop Savaric to propose a compensation to Richard for his ransom.

Eodem anno Henricus Romanorum imperator, facta reconciliatione cum uxore sua et magnatibus Siciliæ, incepit ægrotare, et misit Savaricum Batoniensem episcopum, consanguineum et cancellarium suum [de] Burgundia, ad Ricardum regem Angliæ, et obtulit ei recompensationem pecuniæ quam de eo ceperat pro redemptione sua, sive in auro et argento, sive in terris. Dum autem prædictus Savaricus iret in ista legatione, prædictus Romanorum imperator obiit in Sicilia apud Messanam, in vigilia Sancti Michaelis, excommunicatus a Cœlestino papa propter captionem Ricardi regis Angliæ, et redemptionem ejus, et ideo prohibuit idem papa ne corpus illius sepeliretur, licet archiepiscopus Messanæ pro eo multum orasset. Venit itaque præfatus archiepiscopus ad Cœlestinum papam tribus de causis. Prima, ut corpus imperatoris sepeliretur; secunda, ut Marchowaldus, summus imperatoris justitiarius,

Hoveden, iv. 31.

Death of the emperor still excommunicate, September 28.

Negotiations of the archbishop.

[1] *sexta*] facta est in agone, et, ins. H.; om. M.

Hoveden, iv. 31.

liberaretur ab obsidione Romanorum, qui eum obsederant in Marchia Guarneri, non permittentes eum inde exire; tertia, ut Fredericus præfati imperatoris filius coronaretur de regno Siciliæ. Ad primam [1] respondit [2] papa Cœlestinus, quod non permitteret corpus imperatoris sepeliri, nisi de consensu regis Angliæ, et nisi pecunia, quam ipse ceperat de rege Angliæ, redderetur. Ad secundam dixit [3] quod prædictus Marcowaldus per ipsum liberari non potuit, nisi de voluntate Romanorum. Ad tertiam [4] respondit,[5] quod consentiret, si cardinalibus fratribus suis placeret, ut Fredericus præfati imperatoris filius coronaretur de regno Siciliæ. Et factum est ita, datis domino papæ mille marcis et cardinalibus tantum.[6] Juravit etiam imperatrix, tactis sacrosanctis Evangeliis, quod prædictus Fredericus natus fuit legitimo matrimonio Henrici imperatoris et ipsius.

A.D. 1197. of Messina with the pope.

The pope consents to the coronation of Frederick as king of Sicily.

Eodem anno Rogerus, frater Roberti comitis Leycestriæ, electus episcopus Sancti Andreæ in Scotia, ordinem sacerdotis et pontificalem consecrationem suscepit a Mathæo episcopo de Aberden.

Consecration of the bishop of S. Andrews.

Hoveden, iv. 32.

Item eodem anno Margareta, quondam regina Angliæ, et postea regina Hungariæ, obiit apud Accon.

Death of Queen Margaret.

Defuncto itaque Henrico Romanorum imperatore, magna pars Tusciæ, quam idem imperator et prædecessores sui abstulerant Romanis pontificibus, reddita est Cœlestino [7] summo pontifici; videlicet Eke-Pendente et Sancta Christina, et Mons-Flascun et Redecok, et Seynt Cleyre, cum [8] pertinentiis eorum; redditæque sunt ei Sicilia, Calabria, Apulia, et omnes terræ quæ fuerunt regis Siciliæ, sicut proprium patrimonium Sancti Petri; de quibus ipse, ut supradictum est, constituit Fredericum,[9] Romanorum imperatoris filium, regem.

The pope recovers great part of Tuscany.

Frederick is made king of Sicily.

Deinde dominus papa Cœlestinus ante Natale Domini paulatim cœpit ægrotare, et convocatis coram se cardinalibus universis, præcepit ut tractarent de successore suo eligendo. Ipse enim nitebatur modis omnibus, ut dominus Johannes [10] de Sancto Paulo, presbyter cardinalis tituli Sanctæ Priscæ virginis, ei

Pope Celestine, feeling his death approaching, tries to secure the election of John of S. Paul as his successor,

---

[1] *primam*] vero petitionem, ins. M., H.

[2] *respondit*] dominus, ins. M., H.

[3] *dixit*] petitionem respondit dominus papa, M., H.

[4] *tertiam*] petitionem, ins. M., H.

[5] *respondit*] dominus papa, ins. M., H.

[6] *et cardinalibus tantum*] argenti ad opus ipsius, et mille marcis argenti ad opus cardinalium, M., H.

[7] *Cœlestino*] domino Cœlestino, M., H.

[8] *cum*] omnibus, ins. M., H.

[9] *Fredericum*] Henrici, ins. M., H.

[10] *Johannes*] papa, C. A word has been erased in M., over which *Johannes* is written.

A.D. 1197. succederet in papatu: de cujus sapientia, sanctitate, et justitia plurimum confidebat. Adeo enim ipsum præ cæteris diligebat, quod illum loco sui constituerat ad omne officium suum exsequendum, nisi in consecratione episcoporum, quod pertinebat ad officium Ostiensis episcopi et cardinalis. Præterea præfatus papa obtulit, quod seipsum deponeret a papatu, si cardinales consentirent in electione dicti[1] Johannis de Sancto Paulo. Sed omnes cardinales responderunt una voce, quod illum conditionaliter non eligerent; dicentes quod inauditum erat quod summus pontifex se deponeret; et sic erat schisma inter eos.[2] Dominus enim episcopus Hostiensis cardinalis nitebatur, ut ipsemet papa fieret, similiter[3] Portuensis episcopus cardinalis, similiter[4] multi alii, qui omnes, pro posse suo, nitebantur ut ipse fieret summus pontifex. Hoveden, iv. 32. Hoveden, iv. 33.

and offers to resign the papacy.

The cardinals refuse the proposal.

Efforts in favour of the bishop of Ostia.

Eodem anno Willelmus rex Scottorum de bono sumens exemplum, fecit homines regni sui jurare quod pacem pro posse suo servabunt, et quod nec latrones, nec robatores, nec uthlagi, nec eorum receptores[5] erunt, nec in aliquo eis consentient, et quod hujusmodi malefactores cum scire poterunt, illos pro posse capient et destruent.

The king of Scots makes his people swear to keep the peace.

Hæc est assisa facta per dominum Ricardum regem Angliæ per petitionem et consilium episcoporum et[6] *baronum suorum, de mensuris per totum regnum Angliæ,*[7] *anno vii°. regni regis Ricardi.*

Nov. 20. Assize of measures.

" Constitutum est quod omnes mensuræ totius Angliæ sint " ejusdem quantitatis, tam de bladis, quam de leguminibus, " et de rebus consimilibus, scilicet, una bona summa equi; et " hæc mensura sit rasa tam in civitatibus quam in burgis " quam extra. Mensura etiam vini et cervisiæ, et cunctorum " liquorum sit ejusdem quantitatis [secundum diversitatem " liquorum. Pondera etiam et libræ et cæteræ pesiæ sint " ejusdem quantitatis] in toto regno, secundum diversitatem " mercaturarum. Mensuræ etiam bladorum et liquorum, vini " et cervisiæ, inclaventur in eis claves, ne per dolum possint " falsari. Constitutum est ut lanei[8] panni, ubicunque fiant, fiant

---

[1] *dicti*] præfati, M., H.

[2] *eos*] illos, M., H.

[3] *similiter*] dominus, ins. M., H.

[4] *similiter*] dominus Jordanus de Fossa Nova; similiter dominus Gracianus et cæteri omnes nitebantur, unusquisque, M., H.

[5] *receptores*] recettores, C.

[6] *et*] cunctorum, ins. M., H.

[7] *Angliæ*] in festo Sancti Edmundi apud Westmonasterium, ins. M., H., anno viii°. H.

[8] *lanei*] linei, C.

Hoveden, iv. 34.

A.D. 1197. Nov. 20. Assize of measures.

" de eadem latitudine, scilicet, de duabus ulnis infra lisuras, " et ejusdem bonitatis in medio et in lateribus. Eadem etiam " ulna sit in toto regno, et ejusdem quantitatis, et ulna sit " ferreæ. Prohibitum est omnibus mercatoribus per totum " regnum, ne quis mercator prætendat seldæ suæ rubeos pan- " nos vel nigros, vel scuta, vel aliqua alia, per quæ visus " emptorum sæpe decipiuntur ad bonum pannum eligendum. " Prohibitum est etiam, quod nulla tinctura vendenda, nisi " solummodo nigra, fiat alicubi in regno, nisi in civitatibus " aut capitalibus burgis. Constitutum est etiam, ut in sin- " gulis civitatibus aut burgis, quatuor aut sex legales homines " de ipsa villa, secundum quantitatem villæ, similiter in vice- " comitatu, aut cum præpositis civitatis aut burgi, si in " manu vicecomitis non fuerint, assignentur ad assisam cus- " todiendam, scilicet hac forma; ut ipsi videant, et certi sint, " quod omnia vendantur et emantur per eandem mensuram, et " omnes mensuræ sint ejusdem quantitatis secundum diversi- " tatem mercium. Et si aliquem invenerint, qui confessus " vel convictus fuerit, quod per aliquam nisi [1] per mensuram " statutam vendiderit, corpus ipsius capiatur, et in prisonem " mittatur, et omnia catalla sua in manu domini regis sai- " siantur, nec deliberetur, nisi per dominum regem vel ejus " capitalem justitiam. De ipsis custodibus statutum est, quod " si ipsi hanc custodiam ita negligenter fecerint, quod per " alios quam per eos convincantur [2] coram justitiariis domini " regis, aliquam [3] assisam transire, vel de mensuris victualium " vel aliarum mensurarum, vel latitudine pannorum, ipsi cus- " todes de catallis suis in misericordia domini regis remaneant. " Præceptum est etiam, ut post festum Purificationis Sanctæ " Mariæ nullus in aliquo comitatu vendat aliquid nisi per præ- " scriptam mensuram, quæ ejusdem sit quantitatis; nec post " feyram Mediæ Quadragesimæ quæ erit apud Stamforde, vendat " aliquem pannum minoris latitudinis quam duarum ulna- " rum." [4]

---

[1] *aliquam nisi*] aliam quam, M., H.

[2] *convincantur*] attenientur, H.

[3] *aliquam*] transcriptam, ins. M., H.

[4] *ulnarum*] infra lisuras, ins. H.; om. M.

D.——MCXCVIII.

Annus nonus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ.

A.D. 1197. Dec. 25. Richard keeps Christmas at Rouen.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo octavo, qui est annus regni regis[1] Ricardi nonus, fuit idem rex Ricardus Angliæ in Normannia apud Rotomagum die Natalis Domini, quæ quinta feria evenit. Hoveden, iv. 35.

The archbishop at Hereford.

Eodem die Natalis Domini Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus,[2] apostolicæ sedis legatus, et summus regis[3] Angliæ justitiarius, fuit[4] apud Hereford, et recepit in manu sua castellum ejusdem,[5] et castella[6] de Briges et de Lodelauwe, expulsis inde custodibus qui ea diu custodierant: et tradidit ea aliis custodibus, custodienda ad opus regis.

The archbishop restores the monks of Coventry.

Deinde venit idem archiepiscopus ad Coventre, et per mandatum Cœlestini summi pontificis introduxit monachos in ecclesiam ejusdem villæ cathedralem, quos Hugo de Nunant, ejusdem loci episcopus, ab eadem ecclesia vi et armata manu expulerat, et loco illorum in ea canonicos sæculares instituerat, et eos de bonis ecclesiæ, quæ ad sustentationem monachorum ibidem Deo servientium collata fuerunt, præbendaverat; sed canonicis inde expulsis, bona ecclesiæ redierunt in usus monachorum.[7]

De electione Othonis regis Alemanniæ.

A.D. 1198. Richard is summoned to Cologne to elect an emperor on the 22nd of February.

Infra Natale Domini venerunt Rotomagum nuncii archiepiscopi Coloniæ, et nuncii archiepiscopi Maguntini, et aliorum magnatum Alemanniæ, ad Ricardum regem Angliæ, dicentes ei ex parte prædictorum virorum, quod omnes magnates Alemanniæ convenirent apud Coloniam octavo kalendas Martii, ad eligendum imperatorem; et præceperunt ei in vi sacramenti et fidei, quibus astringebatur imperatori et imperio Romano, quod omni contradictione et occasione remota, veniret Coloniam ad Hoveden, iv. 37.

---

[1] *regis*] Angliæ, ins. M., H.

[2] *archiepiscopus*] totius Angliæ primas, ins. M., H.

[3] *regis*] totius, M., H.

[4] *fuit*] in Wallia, ins. M.; in Gwallia, H.

[5] *ejusdem*] de Hereforde, M., H.

[6] *castella*] castellum . . . castellum. M., H.

[7] *monachorum*] Here MS. M. has the letter of Celestine III. to the archbishop of Canterbury and others directing the restoration of Coventry cathedral to the monks, which is an interpolation in the later MSS. of Hoveden. It is not in C. See Hoveden, iv. 35-37; and the Annals of Burton, *ad annum*.

Hoveden, iv. 37.

prænominatum terminum, ut ipse, sicut præcipuum membrum imperii, esset simul cum illis ad eligendum imperio idoneum, Deo auxiliante, imperatorem. Quibus auditis Ricardus rex Angliæ, habito cum suis consilio, misit cum prædictis nunciis Alemannorum Philippum Dunelmensem episcopum, et Eustachium Elyensem electum, et Willelmum de Chimeli Andegavensem electum, et Ebroicensem electum, cum pluribus aliis,[1] ut ipsi interessent electioni imperatoris loco ipsius. Ipse enim timebat plurimum illuc ire, et iterum incidere in manus eorum, nisi securitas daretur ei de salvo conductu eundi et redeundi. Nec mirum; ipse enim, quæ promiserat magnatibus terræ se daturum pro liberatione sua, non solverat, et quia corpus imperatoris propter eum erat inhumatum. Ipse vero rex Angliæ modis omnibus nitebatur efficere, quod Henricus dux Saxoniæ, nepos ejus, fieret imperator. Sed quia ipse nondum de peregrinatione sua redierat, et mora ad se periculum trahebat, præfatus rex Angliæ effecit adversus archiepiscopos Coloniensem et Maguntinum, et adversus quosdam aliorum magnatum Alemanniæ, quod ipsi eligerent Othonem nepotem suum, fratrem prædicti Henrici ducis Saxoniæ, in imperatorem.

A.D. 1198.

He sends representatives to the election.

Hoveden, iv. 38.

Richard tries to obtain the election of the duke of Saxony; and, as he is absent, that of his brother Otho.

Est autem sciendum, quod in electione Romanorum imperatoris taliter est procedendum;

Defuncto itaque imperatore, archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, duces, comites, et omnes cæteri magnates Alemanniæ in unum convenientes, debent duodecim viros eligere communiter, et eos præsentare archiepiscopo Coloniensi, et archiepiscopo Maguntino, et duci de Saxonia, et comiti Palatino de Reno; et quemcunque illi quatuor eligerent[2] de duodecim prædictis electis erit rex Alemannorum, et coronabitur apud Hays capellam, ubi Carolus Magnus sepultus requiescit.

Mode of electing an emperor.

Hoveden, iv. 39.

Factum est autem quod cum præfatus Otho esset unus de præfatis duodecim communiter electis, ad instantiam precum et servitii Ricardi regis Angliæ, receptus est ab archiepiscopis Coloniensi et Maguntino, et ab eisdem coronatus est in regem Alemanniæ apud Hays capellam, præsentibus ducibus de Lamburc et de Luvain, et aliis ducibus[3] et episcopis,[4] et comitibus multis. Prædictus autem Otho duxit sibi in uxorem filiam

Election of Otho, the king's nephew, as emperor.

His coronation as king of Germany.

---

[1] *cum pluribus aliis*] et Baldewinum de Betun comitem Albemarliæ, et Willelmum de Pratellis, et Willelmum de Estang [Lestang, H.], et Bricium camerarium, M., H.

[2] *eligerent*] elegerint, M., H.

[3] *ducibus*] multis, ins. M., H.

[4] *episcopis*] multis, et præsentibus Baldewino comite Flandriæ, et Henrico comite de Namur, fratre ejus, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1198. His marriage.

ducis de Luvain, quæ die coronationis prædicti Othonis sedit simul cum eo in cathedra regali, sed non tunc coronata. Hoveden, iv. 39.

Henricus vero dux Saxoniæ, comes et Palatinus de Reno, frater prædicti Othonis, post reditum suum de terra Suliæ, ratum et gratum habens quod de fratre suo factum fuerat, electionem suam confirmavit. Cum autem Philippus dux Swaviæ, filius Frederici quondam Romanorum imperatoris, frater quoque Henrici Romanorum imperatoris proximo defuncti, esset unus de supradictis duodecim electis, noluit electioni suæ cedere,[1] sed Othonem modis omnibus, quibus potuit, impugnavit; et quamvis Otho illum sæpius in bello campestri expugnasset, tamen ab inceptis desistere noluit.

Opposition of Philip of Swabia.

The archdeacon of Durham seizes Hersewell;

Eodem anno Aimericus, Dunelmensis archidiaconus, disseisiavit monachos Dunelmensis ecclesiæ de villa de[2] Hersewelle, quam Henricus de Puteaco eis dederat in puram et perpetuam eleemosynam, ad sustentationem monachorum in Fincheale Deo servientium. Servientes vero, qui missi fuerant ad præfatam disseisinam faciendam, fregerunt ostia domorum monachorum, et monachos ibi inventos violenter ejecerunt. Cum autem idem Aimericus, interrogatus si violentia illa per illum facta fuisset, et respondisset quod non, monachi Dunelmenses, convocatis clero et populo civitatis in ecclesia beati Cuthberti, excommunicaverunt omnes hujus violentiæ auctores, consiliarios, fautores, accensis candelis, et pulsatis majoribus ecclesiæ campanis. Hoveden, iv. 40.

the monks of Finchale ejected.

The aggressors excommunicated.

Richard asks the English to maintain a force of 300 knights in foreign service.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ petiit, per Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, ut homines regni Angliæ invenirent ei trecentos milites uno anno moraturos secum in servitio suo, vel tantam pecuniam ei darent, unde ipse posset per unum annum trecentos milites in servitio suo retinere, videlicet unicuique militi tres solidos Anglicanæ monetæ[3] in die; ad quod faciendum cum cæteri omnes proni essent, non audentes resistere voluntati regis; solus Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus, verus Dei cultor, abstinens se ab omni opere pravo, respondit pro se, quod ipse in hoc voluntati regis nequaquam adquiesceret, tum quia processu temporis in ecclesiæ suæ detrimentum redundaret, tum quia successores sui dicerent, "Patres nostri comederunt uvam acerbam, et dentes filiorum obstupescunt." Et conversus ad Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, admonet instanter Ezek. xviii. 2.

Opposition of Hugh of Lincoln.

"....ut nil agat unde pudendum;
"Unde pudor frontem signet, mentemque reatus
"Torqueat, aut famæ titulos infamia lædat."

[1] *cedere*] consentire, C.
[2] *de*] quæ dicitur, M., H.
[3] *monetæ*] de liberatione, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 40, 41.

A.D. 1198. Queen Eleanor begs for an interview with the bishop of Beauvais.

Eodem anno Alienor regina, mater Ricardi regis Angliæ, venit Rotomagum, et misit pro Hugone filio Ernisi de Nevilla, et pro aliis custodibus, qui custodiebant in turre Rotomagensi Philippum Belvacensem episcopum, et precata est eos, ut pro amore illius[1] permitterent præfatum episcopum venire ad hospitium suum, loqui cum ea; qui, licet hoc esset eis periculosum, tamen petitioni reginæ resistere nolentes, permiserunt præfatum episcopum compeditum portas turris egredi, et ipsi comitabantur eum. Dum autem irent, contigit eos transitum facere per atrium cujusdam ecclesiæ; ad cujus ostium, licet esset clausum, præfatus episcopus, ut potuit, cucurrit, et arrepto ecclesiæ annulo, alta voce exclamavit, dicens, "Peto pacem "Dei et ecclesiæ." Ad hanc igitur vocem custodes sui plurimum conturbati, injecerunt in eum manus, et traxerunt eum ab ostio ecclesiæ, et reduxerunt eum in turrim unde exierat, et arctius custodierunt, imponentes reginæ hoc factum fuisse per consilium ipsius. Quo audito, rex Angliæ misit præfatum episcopum ad Chynun, sub arctiori custodia custodiendum.

He attempts to escape, and is recaptured, and imprisoned at Chinon.

Eodem anno Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus consecravit Londoniis Eustachium Elyensem episcopum, Dominica qua cantatur "Lætare Jerusalem," apud Westmonasterium, octavo idus Martii.

Eustace bishop of Ely consecrated Mar. 8.

De obitu Cœlestini papæ.

Jan. 8. Celestine III. dies.

Eodem anno Cœlestinus papa, senio et gravi morbo laborans, obiit Romæ mense Januarii, viii^vo.[2] idus ejusdem mensis, feria sexta, septimo anno papatus sui, et Laterani sepultus est.

De electione Innocentii papæ tertii.

Election of Innocent III.

In crastino autem obitus illius convenientes in unum cardinales elegerunt in summum pontificem Lotharium diaconum cardinalem, juvenem triginta annorum, vel paulo amplius; qui vocatus est papa Innocentius.[3]

Hoveden, iv. 44.

March 11. Death of the countess of Champagne.

Eodem anno, quinto idus Martii, obiit Maria comitissa Campaniæ, mater comitis Henrici de Campania, qui fuit

[1] *illius*] ipsius, M., H.

[2] *viii^o.*] vi^to., H.; with which the letter of Innocent, announcing his election, agrees; Hoveden, iv. 42. The day of the week is wrong in either case.

[3] *Innocentius*] Here MSS. M. and V., following Hoveden, give in full the letter of Innocent III. announcing his election, dated Jan. 9, 1198; and a brief notice of his reforms: all omitted in MS. C. See Hoveden, iv. 41–44.

A.D. 1198. dominus Accon. Hæc eadem comitissa fuit soror Philippi regis Franciæ ex parte patris, et soror Ricardi regis Angliæ ex parte matris. Hoveden, iv. 44.

Archbishop Geoffrey visits the king in Normandy, and makes his peace.

Eodem anno Gaufridus archiepiscopus Eboracensis venit in Normanniam per mandatum Ricardi regis Angliæ fratris sui, in spe pacis faciendæ cum rege. Rex namque misit pro decano et canonicis Eboracensis ecclesiæ,[1] ut venirent ad eum in Normanniam, volens pacem facere inter archiepiscopum et illos; sed archiepiscopus ille, antequam canonici venirent, fecit pacem cum rege fratre suo; ita quod rex concessit illi plenariam archiepiscopatus sui restitutionem, et præcepit Roberto capellano suo transfretare in Angliam, una cum magistro Honorio, clerico[2] dicti archiepiscopi,[3] ad interesse prædictæ restitutioni. Archiepiscopus autem dedit magistro Honorio clerico archidiaconatum Richemundiæ. Promiserat enim rex archiepiscopo, quod de cætero non impediret donationes suas. Et quia decanus et canonici Eboraci ad terminum statutum non venerunt coram rege, nec sufficientem pro eis miserunt responsalem, archiepiscopus, accepta a rege licentia, a curia recessit, Romam iturus tam pro negotiis regis quam pro suis. Tertia vero die sequenti, venerunt ad regem decanus et canonici Eboracenses, et fecerunt adversus eum, quod restitutio, quam ipse fieri præceperat archiepiscopo, dilationem caperet usque ad reditum archiepiscopi; et sic impedito archiepiscopi negotio, decanus et canonici Eboracum redierunt, plurimum jactantes de familiaritate regis, dicentes se habere cartam regis, quod rex non componeret ad plenum cum archiepiscopo, nisi ipsi fuerint infra pacem illam.

The dean and canons of York arrive after this,

and disturb the arrangement.

Hoveden, iv. 45.

They return in triumph to York.

Feb. 15. Consecration of Innocent III.

Eodem anno, Dominica prima Quadragesimæ, Innocentius, Romanæ sedis electus episcopus, consecratus est Romæ apud Sanctum Petrum in Romanum pontificem, ab Octoviano Hostiensi episcopo, xv^to. kalendas Martii; et statim post consecrationem suam, præfectus et senatores, et tribuni urbis, et cæteri Romani, exegerunt ab eo reditus et consuetudines, quas prædecessores sui Romani pontifices eis impendere solebant: quibus ipse respondit, se hoc nunquam facturum, quoniam si fecisset, contra Deum et in præjudicium Romanæ ecclesiæ faceret. Quod Romani audientes, irruerunt in bona ipsius, et diripuerunt ea, et ipse excommunicavit eos.

He quarrels with the Romans.

Hugh of Nunant dies, Mar. 27.

Eodem anno, mense Martio, Hugo de Nunant, Coventrensis episcopus, obiit in Normannia apud Bec Herlewyn, die Para-

---

[1] *Eboracensis ecclesiæ*] Eboraci, M., H.

[2] *clerico*] et officiali, ins. M., H.

[3] *dicti archiepiscopi*] prædicti archiepiscopi Eboracensis, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 45.

sceues Domini, sexto[1] kalendas Aprilis, et ibidem in cœnobio monachorum sepultus est: cui successit in dicto[2] episcopatu Gaufridus de Muschamp, archidiaconus Clivelandæ, dono Ricardi regis Angliæ, et consecratus Cantuariæ ab Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. A.D. 1198. Geoffrey de Muschamp bishop of Coventry.

Hoveden, iv. 46.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ, et comes de Sancto Egidio, et Johanna uxor ejus, quondam regina Siciliæ, fuerunt Cenomannis in solemnitate Paschali, quæ quarto kalendas Aprilis evenit. March 29. Richard keeps Easter at Le Mans.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ accepit, de unaquaque carucata terræ sive hida totius Angliæ, quinque solidos de auxilio; ad quos colligendos misit idem rex per singulos comitatus unum clericum et unum militem; qui, cum vicecomite comitatus ad quem mittebantur, et legalibus militibus ad hoc electis, præstito juramento quod fideliter exsequerentur negotium regis, fecerunt venire coram se senescallos baronum illius comitatus, et de qualibet villa dominum vel ballivum villæ, et præpositum cum quatuor legalibus hominibus villæ, sive liberis sive rusticis, et duos milites legaliores de hundredo, qui juraverunt quod fideliter et sine fraude dicerent, quot carucarum wannagia fuerint in singulis villis; quot scilicet in dominico, quot in villenagio, quot in eleemosynis viris religiosis collatis, quas ipsi donatores vel eorum hæredes tenentur warantizare vel adquietare, vel unde viri religiosi debent servitia facere; et super [singula] carucarum wannagia ponebant ex præcepto regis primo duos solidos et postea tres solidos: et hæc omnia in scriptum redigebantur; et habebat clericus inde rotulum [unum] et miles[3] alterum, et vicecomes[4] tertium, senescallus baronum rotulum quartum de terra domini sui. Hæc pecunia recipiebatur per manus ducrum legalium militum de singulis hundredis et per manum ballivi de hundredo; et ipsi inde responderunt vicecomiti, et per prædictos rotulos respondebat vicecomes inde ad scaccarium coram episcopis, abbatibus, et baronibus ad hoc assignatis. Richard exacts a carucage of five shillings on the carucate. Method of assessment and collection.

Hoveden, iv. 47.

Ad pœnam vero juratorum, qui aliquid contra juramentum suum celaverint in hoc negotio, statutum erat, quod quicunque rusticus convictus fuisset de perjurio, daret domino meliorem bovem de caruca sua, et insuper responderet de proprio, ad opus domini regis, tantum pecuniæ quantum fuisset declaratum per suum perjurium fuisse celatum: si vero liber homo convictus fuisset, esset in misericordia regis, et insuper re- Punishment of all attempts to evade the tax.

---

[1] *sexto*] vii°., C.
[2] *dicto*] Coventrensi, M., H.
[3] *miles*] rotulum, ins. M., H.
[4] *vicecomes*] rotulum, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1198. funderet de proprio, ad opus regis,[1] quantum fuerit per eum celatum, sicut et rusticus. Statutum etiam fuit, quod quilibet baro cum vicecomite faceret districtiones super homines suos; et si per defectum baronum districtiones factæ non fuissent, caperetur de dominico baronum, quod super homines suos restaret reddendum, et ipsi barones ad homines suos inde caperent: et libera feoda ecclesiarum parochialium de hoc tallagio excipiebantur; et omnes escaetæ baronum, quæ fuerunt in manu domini regis, communicaverunt. Sergantiæ vero domini regis, quæ non erant de feodis militum, excipiebantur; sed tamen imbreviabantur et numerus carucatarum terræ, et valentiæ terrarum, et nomina servientium; et omnes servientes illi summonebantur esse apud Londonias in octavis clausi Pentecostes, audituri et facturi præceptum domini regis. Ipsi vero qui electi fuerant et constituti ad hoc negotium regis faciendum, statuerunt, per æstimationem legalium hominum, ad uniuscujusque carucæ wannagium centum acras terræ. Hoveden, iv. 47.

Exemptions.

The collectors summoned to London for May 31.

The monks of Canterbury complain of the archbishop to the pope.

Eodem anno monachi Sanctæ Trinitatis Cantuariæ, Romam profecti, sunt, et conquesti sunt Innocentio papæ, quod Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, contra ordinem et dignitatem suam, gerebat se justitiarium regni, et judicem sanguinis, et ita sæcularibus negotiis implicitum, quod minime possit sufficere ecclesiasticis causis regendis, cum a sapiente dictum sit: Hoveden, iv. 48.

"Pluribus intentus minor est ad singula sensus."

Charges of the monks against archbishop Hubert.

Accusabant etiam eum dicentes, quod ex præcepto illius violata fuit pax ecclesiæ Sanctæ Mariæ del Arche Londoniis, et Willelmus cum Barba inde violenter extractus, et caudis equorum alligatus, et ad patibulum tractus cum novem de suis, similiter ab ecclesia violenter extractis, morti addictus est, et in patibulo suspensus: unde dominus papa paterna exhortatione diligenter monuit dominum Ricardum regem Angliæ, ut pro salute animæ suæ non permitteret præfatum archiepiscopum diutius fungi administratione sæculari, neque de cætero ipsum, vel alium episcopum sive sacerdotem, in administratione sæculari admitteret; præcepit etiam in virtute obedientiæ universis ecclesiarum prælatis, ne ipsi ausu temerario sæculares administrationes susciperent. Et sic Cantuariensi archiepiscopo a regimine regni deposito, Gaufridus filius Petri successit ei in regimine regni. Accusabant etiam eum dicentes, quod ipse in præjudicium matricis ecclesiæ Cantuariæ capellam novam construxerat apud Lamee in Londoniis,

The pope desires the king to dismiss him from the office of justiciar.

Geoffrey Fitz-Peter succeeds him.

[1] *regis*] domini regis, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 48.

et in ea canonicos sæculares, de bonis et redditibus monachorum Cantuariensium ditatos, constituerat:[1] et nisi remedium celerius adhiberetur, timuerunt quod dignitas Cantuariensis ecclesiæ minueretur, et ad capellam illam apostatricem transferri videretur. Unde dominus papa plurimum commotus,[2] significavit per litteras suas universis suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, quod ipse in mandatis dederat Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, quod infra triginta dies post litterarum suarum susceptionem suis propriis expensis non differret demoliri capellam de Lamee, et in irritum revocare quicquid de instituendis canonicis et aliis circa prædictam capellam factum est, et cætera, quæ in litteris suis continentur; præcepitque supradictis suffraganeis, quod si archiepiscopus Cantuariensis[3] quicquid illorum, quæ in litteris suis continentur, facere differret, illi ei de cætero nullam impendant obedientiam vel reverentiam. Sed præfatus archiepiscopus regio munimine septus, sperans se ab adversariis non posse superari, universos monachorum redditus, et oblationes tumbæ beati martyris Thomæ, fecit saisiari in manu regis, et mandata summi pontificis parvi pendens, non permisit monachos Sanctæ Trinitatis septa templi exire. Tandem tamen, consilio suorum, demolitus est capellam de Lamee propriis sumptibus.

A.D. 1198. May. The complaint about the church at Lambeth.

Hoveden, iv. 51.

The pope orders the bishops to enforce the destruction of the new church.

The archbishop resists for a time, but finally submits and destroys the church.

Eodem anno Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo et Symone decano, una cum canonicis Eboraci in præsentia domini[4] regis Angliæ in Normannia apud Andeli constitutis, unusquisque proponebat injurias sibi hinc et inde illatas; et cum de voluntate regis processisset ut idem archiepiscopus, decanus, et canonici Eboracenses se subjicerent de supradictis controversiis examini domini Rotomagensis archiepiscopi, et dominorum Wintoniensis et Wygornensis episcoporum; et cum præfatus archiepiscopus in hoc voluntati regis consentiret; decanus et canonici Eboracenses responderunt, quod non ponerent se in judicio alicujus, nisi in judicio canonicorum sæcularium, et effecerunt adversus regem quod pax illa dilationem cepit,[5] quia archiepiscopus confirmare noluit donationes quas rex ei

The archbishop of York meets his enemies in the king's presence at Andely.

Hoveden, iv. 52.

The canons refuse to submit to arbitration.

[1] *constituerat*] et in ea contra consuetudinem et dignitatem Cantuariensis ecclesiæ episcopos consecraverat, ins. M., H.

[2] *commotus*] Here MSS. M., V., following Hoveden, give in full the letter of Innocent III. to the archbishop, ordering the demolition of the new church, dated at Rome, May 8, 1198. It is omitted in C. See Hoveden, iv. 48–51.

[3] *Cantuariensis*] ecclesiæ, ins. M., H.

[4] *domini*] Ricardi, ins. M., H.

[5] *cepit*] maxime, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1198. Roger of S. Edmund made archdeacon of Richmond by the king, in opposition to Honorius.

fecerat in Eboracensi ecclesia. Unde rex iratus dedit Rogero de Sancto Edmundo, clerico suo, archidiaconatum Rychemundiæ, quem Eboracensis archiepiscopus dederat magistro Honorio clerico suo; qui quamvis fidelitates clericorum prædicti archidiaconatus recepisset per mandatum archiepiscopi, et quamvis idem archiepiscopus litteris suis mandasset generaliter universo capitulo Eboraci, præcipiendo in vi obedientiæ, ut præfatum Honorium recepissent et in stallum mitterent, tamen refutatus est: Simone Apulo contradicente, ea ratione, quod archiepiscopus specialiter de eo mentionem non fecerat in litteris suis, sicut de decano ejusdem ecclesiæ. Et factum est quod præfatus decanus, turbator pacis, et immemor professionis, quam prædicto archiepiscopo fecerat, Rogerum de Sancto Edmundo recepit, et in stallum misit, et de archidiaconatu Richemundiæ investivit, post appellationem a magistro Honorio ad summum pontificem factam. Clerici autem de archidiaconatu prædicto[1] per prædicti Simonis Apuli violentam coercionem, et propter regis feralia mandata, fidelitates fecerunt ipsi Rogero de Sancto Edmundo, contra canonicam obedientiam quam prius fecerant magistro Honorio. Deinde convenientibus in capitulo Eboraci Symone decano et cæteris canonicis ecclesiæ ejusdem, præfatus decanus in impetu iræ suæ non deferens appellationi ad summum pontificem factæ, excommunicavit Hugonem Murdac, concanonicum suum, eo quod ipse noluit consentire eis, nec aliquid de suo mittere in conspiratione facta contra archiepiscopum suum. Dicebat enim, "Vehementer emungit, qui sanguinem ejicit." Eodem die cum idem Hugo ad vesperas audiendas intraret chorum, præcepit ei decanus ut exiret, tanquam excommunicatus; sed quia exire noluit, decanus fecit candelas exstingui, et exivit a choro.

Hoveden, iv. 52.

The dean installs him and the clergy submit to him in spite of Honorius's appeal to Rome.

Hoveden, iv. 53.

The dean excommunicates Hugh Murdac.

Prov. xxx. 33.

Geoffrey Fitz Peter defeats the Welsh at Maud's Castle.

Eodem anno Gaufridus Filius Petri, justitiarius Angliæ, magno congregato exercitu, profectus est in Walliam ad succurrendum hominibus Willelmi de Brause, quos Wenhunwin frater Chadwalani obsederat in castello Matildis; quo cum venisset, commisit prælium campestre cum prædicto Wenhunwen et suis; et licet plurimi Wallanorum armati essent, non tamen valentes resistere exercitui Anglorum, versi sunt in fugam, et projicientes arma sua, ut levius citiusque fugerent, occisi sunt ex illis plusquam tria millia et septingenti, exceptis illis et retentis, qui lethaliter vulnerati evaserunt a campo. Ex parte autem Anglorum unus solus, ex [in]opinato

[1] *prædicto*] de Richemunde, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 53, 54.

sagittæ ictu a quodam socio suo incaute directæ vulneratus, interiit. A.D. 1198. August.

Eodem anno, mense Augusti, Ermengard regina Scottorum peperit filium suum primogenitum, et vocatum est nomen ejus Alexander; quem Jocelinus venerabilis ecclesiæ Glascuensis episcopus baptizavit. Birth of an heir of Scotland.

Eodem anno, finitis treugis quas rex Franciæ et rex Angliæ statuerant inter se, donec segetes hinc et inde colligerentur; statim exarsit eorum nefanda rabies, et postpositis omnibus colloquiis hostiliter intravit uterque alterius regnum, et depopulando terras eorum prædas abduxerunt,[1] homines ceperunt, villas combusserunt. Rex autem Franciæ novum genus grassandi in populo reperiens, fecit quamplures ex hominibus regis Angliæ, quos captivos tenebat, excæcare; et sic provocabat regem Angliæ, licet invitum, ad consimile impietatis opus.[2] The war between Richard and Philip breaks out again. Cruel treatment of prisoners.

Eodem anno dux de Luvain, et comes de Brene, et Baldewinus comes Flandriæ, et comes de Gynes, et comes Boloniæ,[3] et multi alii comites, relicto rege Franciæ, adhæserunt Ricardo regi Angliæ, jurantes ei, et ipse illis, quod nullam pacem cum rege Franciæ facerent, nisi de communi eorum consilio. Comes Flandriæ obsedit villam de Sancto Audomaro, et per vim cepit eam; similiter Arye, et alias quamplures villas regis Franciæ. Richard makes new alliances among the nobles of France and Flanders. The count of Flanders takes S. Omer and Aire.

Hoveden, iv. 55.

Eodem anno Henricus dux Saxoniæ, nepos Ricardi regis Angliæ, venit in Normanniam apud Andeli ad prædictum regem Angliæ avunculum suum, rediens de terra Suliæ; quem rex honorifice suscepit, sicut decebat tantum virum, nepotem suum. Visit of Henry of Saxony to Richard.

Eodem anno, mense Septembris, Philippus rex Franciæ et Ricardus rex Angliæ congressi sunt in prælio inter Gameges, castellum regis Angliæ, et Vernun, castellum regis Franciæ; in quo congressu rex Franciæ cum suis, in fugam conversus, amisit viginti de militibus suis, et plusquam lx. servientes, equites, et pedites multos; et rex Angliæ secutus est regem Franciæ in ore gladii, donec se inclusit in castello suo de Vernun. September. Richard defeats Philip between Gameges and Vernon.

Eodem anno Philippus Dunelmensis episcopus recepit, per mandatum regis Ricardi, manerium de Sadbere, cum wapentaco, et feodis militum, et omnibus aliis ad illud pertinentibus, Sadberge restored to the see of Durham.

---

[1] *abduxerunt*] adduxerunt, C., M., H.

[2] "Opus execrabile." C. in marg.

[3] *Boloniæ*] et Gaufridus comes de Pertico, et comes de Sancto Egidio, et comes de Blays, et Arturus comes Britanniæ, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1198. Cliff and Crayke disforested.

ita plenarie et integre sicut carta ejusdem regis testatur illud fuisse concessum Hugoni Dunelmensi episcopo. Præterea dedit ei rex licentiam claudendi fossato et sepe boscum de Clif, et boscum de Craic, et utrumque quietum clamavit de rewardo forestæ, et ab omni inquietatione forestariorum. Hoveden, iv. 55.

Sept. 27. Richard takes Courcelles and Burriz.

Eodem anno, mense Septembris, quinto kalendas Octobris, die Dominica, rex Angliæ cepit per insultum castellum regis Franciæ quod dicitur Curceles, et aliud castellum ejusdem regis, dictum [1] Burriz:[2] et in crastino captionis castellorum illorum, videlicet, iv^to. kalendas Octobris, feria ii^a., Philippus

Sept. 28. Philip tries to recover Courcelles, and is defeated.

rex Franciæ magno exercitu congregato militum et communarum suarum, exiens de Mantua profectus est versus Curceles. Quo audito, rex Angliæ venit obviam ei, et commisit cum eo prælium campestre, inter Curceles et Gizorcium; in quo prælio rex Franciæ confectus fugit ad castellum de Gizorz; et cum ascendisset pontem villæ de Gisorz, fractus est pons præ multitudine intrantium, et ipse rex cecidit in rivera de Ethe, et bibit ex ea, et nisi celerius extraheretur, submersus fuisset in ea. In illo autem prælio Ricardus rex Angliæ tres milites una lancea prostravit. Hoveden, iv. 56.

He narrowly escapes drowning.

Prisoners taken by Richard.

In quo etiam [3] capti sunt ex militibus regis Franciæ viri famosi, scilicet,[4] Galis de Porta, Mathæus de Mummorenci,[5] Alanus de Rosci, cum aliis multis numero triginta ix.[6]

Et præter supradictos milites, multos cepit rex Angliæ, scilicet centum milites, et septies viginti equos coopertos ferro, et servientes equites, et pedites multos. Unde idem Hoveden, iv. 58.

---

[1] *dictum*] quod dicitur, M., H.

[2] *Burriz*] Burtiz, C.

[3] *In quo etiam*] et in prælio illo, M., H.

[4] *scilicet*] quorum nomina hæc sunt, M., H.

[5] *Mummorenci*] Mumercorci, C.; Mummorci, M.

[6] *cum aliis multis numero triginta ix.*] MS. M. gives the names after Hoveden:—"Girardus de Chori, Philippus de Nantuil, Petrus Lieschans, "Robertus de Sancto Dionisio, Theobaldus de Walagugardun, Chedu- "lad de Trie, Rogerus de Modlent, Aymer Tiers, Reginaldus de Ascy, "Baldewinus de Lenny, Thomas de Asgent, Ferri de Paris, Petrus de la "Truie, Gwido de Levers, Fermentin, Terricus de Aucies, Aunfridus de "Baalan, Eborardus de Muntenny, Punchardus, Walterus Rufus, Ernul- "phus de Lenny, Odo de Muntinni, Willelmus de Sauceai, Jollenus de "Bray, Petrus de Poncy, Dembertus, Punchardus de Castello Empurrayn, "Willelmus de Merlou, Johannes de Grangia, Theobaldus de Breun, Ro- "bertus de Beauburc, Gaufridus de Borhay, Petrus de Maidnil, Fulco de "Gilerval, Johannes de Serny de Loenays, Radulfus de Valucel, Ferri de "Brunay, Thomas de Castel, Willelmus de Rochemunde, Theobaldus de "Missy."

Hoveden, iv. 58.

rex hoc factum litteratorie Philippo Dunelmensi episcopo significavit.[1] A.D. 1198.

Hoveden, iv. 59.

Philippus rex Franciæ intravit Normanniam cum exercitu multo, et rex Angliæ non habuit secum nisi sexaginta homines; disperserat enim exercitum suum per loca diversa; tamen ipse secutus est Francos post tergum cum paucis suorum, donec ad mandatum suum convenerunt ad eum circiter cc. milites, et Marchadeus cum ruta sua. Franci igitur cum multo plures essent, videntes regem Angliæ et suos, cum incendissent circiter xviii. villas, bono passu abierunt, et rex Angliæ a tergo fugavit eos, et Marchadeus cum ruta sua prævenit illos, et capti sunt ex Francis circiter xxx. equites et servientes, et centum equi, præter occisos. Quod factum est versus Vernun; non enim per viam qua venerant abierunt, id est per vadum de Dangu; sed timore conversi sunt versus Vernun: ita quod probrum adhuc est inter Francos, quod rex illorum, relictis illis, præfugit[2] super Morellum senem, quem, inquiunt, decem annos habuit; nec aliquid tulerunt de Normannia nisi forte tres vel quatuor milites, et unum servientem.

Ravages of the French in Normandy.

Disgraceful flight of Philip on his old horse.

Postea rex Angliæ, collecto exercitu, transivit per[3] Galliam per vadum de Dangu, et cepit, ut supra dictum est, Burriz et Curceles, et aliud castellum; hominesque sui duobus diebus continuis rapinis et incendiis Vogesin Gallicum devastaverunt: et cum rex Angliæ subverteret turrim de Curceles, rex Franciæ adunatis suis supervenit; et congressi sunt duo reges, et rex Franciæ effusis habenis versus est in fugam in medio terræ suæ, et persecutus est eum rex Angliæ cum exercitu suo, et comprehendit de militibus regis Franciæ ad minus octoginta tres, præter servientes alabastarios, et præter suffocatos in fluvia Ethe: præ nimia enim fuga Francorum pons Ethe ante Gysortium fractus est sub illis, ita quod rex Franciæ cecidit in aquam, et vix per pedem extractus pene suffocatus est; alii autem suffocati sunt quam plurimi, inter quos Milo de Puteaco, comes de Bar, et Johannes frater Willelmi de Barres, miles probus, suffocati sunt in fluvio Ethe. Willelmus autem castellanus et dominus de Curceles statim post captionem suam mortuus est.

Summary of Richard's successes in this war.

Hoveden, iv. 60.

Narrow escape of king Philip.

Postea rex Franciæ congregato exercitu intravit Normanniam, et combussit Ebroicas et septem alias villas. Comes autem

Philip burns Evreux.

---

[1] *significavit*] Here Hoveden gives the king's letter dated Sept. 30 at Dangu; MSS. M. and V. follow Hoveden in this. It is omitted in C. See Hoveden, iv. 58, 59.

[2] *præfugit*] præfugerit, M., H.

[3] *per*] in, M. H.

A.D. 1198. John burns Neufbourg.

Johannes, frater Ricardi regis, combussit Novum Burgum; quod rex Franciæ sperans a suis fieri, milites misit ad prohibendum suis ne procederent; ex quibus capti sunt xviii. milites et servientes multi. Hoveden, iv. 60.

Abbeville plundered by Richard's mercenaries.

Postea Marchadeus cum ruta sua intravit Flandriam, et invasit nundinas prope Abbeville, et spoliavit mercatores Franciæ, et cum præda magna rediens in Normanniam replevit terram spoliis Francorum, et multos eorum interfecit, et multos captivos secum duxit redimendos.

The earl of Leicester fails in an attempt to recover Pasci, and is compelled to fly.

Postea Robertus comes Leyrcestriæ venit cum xl. militibus et paucis servientibus ante castellum de Pasci, quod suum fuerat; et milites castelli exierunt, cum multis servientibus et communa villæ, ut eum[1] comprehenderent; sed ipse non valens eis resistere, vix evasit, et amisit de militibus suis quatuor. In crastino autem iterum idem comes, associatis sibi pluribus de familia regis Angliæ militibus, venit ante castellum de Pasci, dispositis prius militibus, et servientibus multis per diversa loca ad insidias parandas hominibus castelli. Cum autem milites castelli, qui eum[2] pridie fugaverant, vidissent eum,[3] exierunt cum impetu, et ipse fugit ante illos, donec inciderunt in insidiantes, et capti sunt ex eis xviii. milites et plebs multa.

The archbishop of Canterbury is sent to Philip to treat for peace.

Interim Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus transfretavit de Anglia in Normanniam,[4] per mandatum regis Franciæ, et per licentiam[5] regis Angliæ, perrexit in Galliam ad tractandum de pace facienda inter illos duos reges; et cum rex Franciæ offerret se redditurum regi Angliæ, pro bono pacis, omnes terras et castella sua quæ occupaverat, excepto castello de Gisorcio, de quo ille poneret se in judicio sex baronum [Normanniæ, quos ipse eligeret, et sex baronum] Galliæ, quos rex Angliæ sibi eligeret, quis eorum majus jus haberet in castello illo habendo; et noluit rex Angliæ, nisi comes Flandriæ, et cæteri omnes,[6] qui relicto rege Franciæ ei adhæserunt, fuissent infra pacem. Hoveden, iv. 61.

Richard insists on the count of Flanders being included.

Iter of the justices in the north.

Eodem anno Hugo Bardulf, et magister Rogerus Arundel, et Gaufridus Hachet, quibus commissæ fuerant Lincolnesire, Notinghamsire, Derbysire, Warewycsire, Nordhumberland, Westmereland, Cumberland, Lancastresire, itinerantes placitaverunt placita coronæ regis, quorum capitula hæc sunt;

---

[1] *eum*] et suos, ins. H.; om. M.

[2] *eum*] a campo, ins. M., H.

[3] *eum*] illum, M., H.

[4] *Normanniam*] et statim, ins. H.; om. M.

[5] *licentiam*] domini sui, ins. M., H.

[6] *omnes*] homines, C., M.

Hoveden, iv. 61.

A.D. 1198. List of agenda of the itinerant justices.

" I. De placitis coronæ novis et veteribus, quæ non sunt " finita coram justitiariis domini regis.
" II. De omnibus assisis.
" III. De morte antecessorum.
" IV. De nova disseisina.
" V. De magnis assisis usque ad x. libratas terræ, et infra.
" VI. De[1] advocationibus ecclesiarum: et capientur coram " eis electiones magnæ assisæ per mandatum regis, vel ejus " capitalis justitiarii.
" VII. De ecclesiis vacantibus, et[2] non vacantibus, quæ " fuerunt de donatione domini regis, quis eas donaverit, vel " quis eas habeat, et per quem, et quantum valent.

Hoveden, iv. 62.

" VIII. De escaetis domini regis, et eorum valentiis, et quis " eos habeat, et per quem.
" IX. De valettis, et dominabus, et puellis, quæ sunt vel " esse debent in donatione regis,[3] et de valentiis terrarum " suarum; et si quis eorum vel earum sit maritatus; et " inquiratur, cui, et per quem, et a quo tempore.
" X. Inquirendum est etiam quæ viduæ non finierunt pro " se maritandis, et finis capiatur ad opus domini regis.
" XI. De sergantiis regis, quis eas habeat, per quem, et " quantum valent, et qui finem non fecerint ad auxilium domini " regis, et qui fecerunt, et finis capiatur.
" XII. De usuris Christianorum, et eorum catallis qui sunt " mortui.
" XIII. De illis qui sunt in misericordia regis, et non ad- " merciati.
" XIV. De purpresturis domini regis.
" XV. De viis domini regis estreyciatis.
" XVI. De thesauris inventis.
" XVII. De malefactoribus, et eorum receptoribus.
" XVIII. De fugitivis rectatis et reversis post ultimam " assisam.
" XIX. De omnibus ponderibus et mensuris et ulnis reno- " vatis, et si iv. homines, qui sunt attornati ad hæc custo- " dienda in unaquaque villa, fecerint quod inde statutum " est, et si attachiaverint transgressores illius assisæ; et si " non attachiaverint, prout deberent, puniantur sicut ipsi " transgressores. Totum vinum illius qui vendidit contra " assisam, capiatur[4] ad opus regis,[5] et præterea dominus vini " et venditores sint in misericordia regis.

Weights and measures.

---

[1] *De*] et de, M., H.
[2] *et*] vel, M., H.
[3] *regis*] domini regis, M., H.
[4] *capiatur*] capietur, M., H.
[5] *regis*] domini regis, M., H.

A.D. 1198. Agenda of the itinerant justices. Inquiry into the conduct of officials.

"XX. Inquirendum est per omnes comitatus de hidis et carucatis, et si justitiarii, qui ad hæc attornati fuerunt, [se] bene habuerunt, et si de omnibus receperunt, et si aliqua concelaverunt. De custodibus portuum maris, et si quid receperunt quod non reddiderunt, et si mercedem aliquam receperunt pro jure regis retinendo, et si quis aliquid receperit, qui non fuerit ad hoc attornatus. Inquirendum est, si omnes venerint ad summonitiones justitiarum domini regis, sicut venire debent, et si quis sit qui non venerit, quis ille sit, et qualiter vocatur.[1]" Hoveden, iv. 62.

Visitation of the forests.

Hiis igitur et aliis vexationibus, sive juste sive injuste, tota Anglia a mari usque ad marę redacta est ad inopiam. Sed hiis nondum finitis supervenit ad confusionem regni aliud genus tormenti per justitiarios forestarum, scilicet per Hugonem de Nevilla, summum justitiarium omnium forestarum regis in Anglia, qui cognominatus est Cunelu,[2] et per Hugonem Wac, et per Ernisium de Nevile. Prædictis igitur justitiariis forestarum regis itinerantibus præceptum [est] ex parte regis, ut per singulos comitatus, per quos ipsi ituri essent, convenirent coram eis ad placita forestæ archiepiscopi, episcopi, comites, barones, et omnes libere tenentes, de unaquaque villa præpositus et iv. homines, ad audienda præcepta regis. Hoveden, iv. 63.

Composition of the forest courts.

Hæc est assisa domini regis, et hæc sunt præcepta de forestis suis in Anglia, facta per assensum et consilium archiepiscoporum, episcoporum, abbatum, comitum, baronum et militum totius regni sui.

Assize of the forest.

"(I.) Dominus rex primum defendit, quod si aliquis ei forisfaciat de venatione sua vel de forestis suis in aliqua re, et non vult quod confidant in hoc, quod habuit misericordiam de illis per eorum catalla hucusque, qui ei forisfecerint de venatione sua, et forestis suis. Nam si qui a modo inde forisfecerint et inde convicti,[3] plenariam vult habere[4] de illis justitiam, qualis facta fuit tempore Henrici avi patris domini regis, videlicet, ut amittant oculos et testiculos.

"(II.) Idem rex[5] defendit, quod nullus habeat arcus vel sagittas, neque canes neque leporarios in forestis suis nisi habeat ipsum[6] ad warantum vel[7] alium qui inde eum warantizare possit.

---

[1] *vocatur*] nominatus fuerit, M., H.

[2] *Cunelu*] Conelu, M.

[3] *convicti*] fuerint, ins. M., H.

[4] *habere*] fieri, M., H.

[5] *rex*] dominus rex, M., H.

[6] *ipsum*] regem, ins. M., H.

[7] *vel*] aliquem, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 63.

" (III.) Item rex defendit, quod nullus donet nec[1] vendat A.D. 1198. Assize of the forest.
" aliquid ad destructionem bosci,[2] vel ad wastam, qui sit infra
" forestam regis; sed concedit bene quod capiant de boscis
" suis quod necesse eis fuerit sine wasto, et hoc per visum
" forestarii sui et viridariorum suorum.

Hoveden, iv. 64.

" (IV.) Item præcipit, quod omnes illi qui boscos habent
" infra metas forestæ domini regis, quod ponant idoneos fores-
" tarios in boscis suis, de quibus forestariis ipsi, quorum
" bosci fuerint, sint plegii, vel tales inveniant plegios,[3] qui
" possint emendare, si forestarii in aliquo forisfecerint quod
" domino regi pertineat.

" (V.) Item præcipit, quod sui forestarii curam capiant
" super forestarios militum et aliorum, qui boscos habent
" infra metas forestæ regis, quod bosci non destruantur.
" Nam si super hoc bosci eorum destructi fuerint, sciant bene
" illi, quorum bosci fuerint, quod de ipsismet vel de eorum
" terris capietur emendatio, et non de alio.

" (VI.) Item præcipit rex, quod sui forestarii jurent, quod
" secundum omne posse suum tenebunt ejus assisam, qualem
" eam fecit, de forestis suis, et quod non vexabunt milites
" neque probos homines de hoc quod dominus rex eis con-
" cessit de boscis eorum.

" (VII.) Item præcipit, quod in quolibet bosco[5] in quo vena-
" tionem habet, ponantur xii. milites ad custodiendam vena-
" tionem suam et viride in forestis suis, et quod iv. milites
" ponantur ad gistandos boscos suos, et ad recipiendum pan-
" nagium suum, et custodiendum, et defendendum.

" (VIII.) Item præcipit quod nullus adgistet boscos suos infra
" metas forestæ suæ, antequam bosci eorum adgistentur; et
" est sciendum quod incipit adgistamentum domini regis xv.
" dies ante festum Sancti Michaelis, [et durat xv. diebus post
" festum Sancti Michaelis.]

" (IX.) Item præcipit rex, quod [si] forestarius ejus habeat
" in custodia[6] dominicos boscos regis, et bosci illi destructi
" fuerint, et non possit nec sciat justam causam monstrare
" quare[7] destruantur, nihil aliud capiatur de forestario illo,
" quam[8] proprium corpus.[9]

---

[1] *nec*] vel, M., H.
[2] *bosci*] sui, ins. M., H.
[3] *plegios*] idoneos, ins. M., H.
[4] *regis*] domini regis, M., H.
[5] *bosco*] comitatu, H. MS. M. agrees with the text: no doubt it is wrong.
[6] *custodia*] sua, ins. M., H.
[7] *quare*] bosci, ins. M., H.; destaurantur, C.
[8] *quam*] nisi, M., H.
[9] *corpus*] suum, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1198. Assize of the forest.

"(X.) Item præcipit, quod nullus clericus ei forisfaciat de venatione sua, neque forestis:[1] et bene præcipit forestariis suis, quod si invenerint eos forisfacientes, non dubitent in eos manus imponere, ad eos resistendos et capiendos; ipse enim illos inde warantizabit. Hoveden, iv. 64.

"(XI.) Item rex præcipit, quod omnia assarta videantur in quolibet tertio anno, tam nova quam vetera, infra rewardum, et omnes purpresturæ similiter, et omnia wasta boscorum, et quod quodlibet eorum per se imbrevietur.

"(XII.) Item rex præcipit, quod archiepiscopi, episcopi, comites, barones,[2] et libere tenentes, et omnes homines de terra sua veniant ad summonitionem magistri forestarii sui ad placitanda placita de forestis suis. Hoveden, iv. 65.

"(XIII.) Prohibendum est ad placita forestæ, ne aliqua carecta exeat chiminum in foresta regis, neque porci sint in foresta regis tempore de founysun,[3] scilicet xv. diebus ante Nativitatem Sancti Johannis,[4] et xv. diebus post.[5]

"(XIV.) Est autem sciendum, qui forisfecerit in foresta regis de venatione sua, et inde atteinctus fuerit, erit in misericordia regis ad oculos et testiculos perdendos. Qui autem forisfecerit[6] de viridi, sive de[7] colpatura, sive de[7] esbrancathura, sive de[7] fodiatione turbarum, sive de[7] escoriatione moræ, sive per colpationem de subnemore, sive per essartum, sive per novam purpresturam per sepem vel fossatum, vel remotionem molendini, vel cursus aquæ, vel bercariæ, vel aliarum domorum, vel per fenum falcandum extra sepes vel extra fossata, erit in misericordia regis de pecunia sua, nisi habeat viridarios vel forestarios regis ad warantum. Similiter qui arcus vel sagittas portaverit, vel canes duxerit sine copula, per forestam regis, et inde atteinctus fuerit, erit in misericordia regis.

"(XV.) Statutum etiam est, quod semper in tertio anno fiat visus forestæ.[8]

Reguard of the forest.

"(XVI.) In cujus[9] rewardo hæc supradicta videnda sunt. Et videnda in rewardo nova assarta, et vetera inbladata post ultimum rewardum, et quo blado vel legumine inbladata

---

[1] *forestis*] de forestis suis, M., H.

[2] *barones*] et milites, ins. H.; om. M.

[3] *founysun*] foinesun, M., H.

[4] *Johannis*] Baptistæ, ins. M., H.

[5] *post*] idem festum, ins. M., H.

[6] *forisfecerit*] in foresta regis, ins. M., H.

[7] *de*] in all these cases M., H. read *per* with the accusative.

[8] *visus forestæ*] id est regwardum forestæ, ins. H.; om. M.

[9] *cujus*] autem forestæ, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 65.

" sint. Nova autem assarta erunt in misericordia regis; si " vetera assarta inbladata sint de frumento vel siligine, una- " quæque acra dabit regi xii. denarios de illa vestitura; et " si inbladata sint[1] de avena vel hordeo, fabis vel pisis, vel " alio legumine, unaquæque acra dabit regi vi. denarios de " illa vestitura. A.D. 1198. Assize of the forest.

" (XVII.) Et est sciendum, quod tempore Henrici regis, filii " imperatricis Matildis, permissum erat infra metas forestæ " fossata fieri loco sepium. Et idem rex[2] statuit apud Wode- " stoke, quod quicunque forisfecerit ei de foresta sua semel " de venatione sua, de seipso salvi plegii capiantur; [et si " iterum forisfecerit similiter capiantur de ipso salvi plegii;[3]]

Hoveden, iv. 66.

" si autem tertio idem forisfecerit, pro tertio forisfacto nulli " plegii capiantur, sed proprium corpus forisfactoris."

Eodem anno, quia viri religiosi noluerunt dare regi v. solidos de wannagio carucæ, sicut cæteri homines regni faciebant, exiit edictum a rege, ut quicunque in regno suo forisfecisset clerico, aut alii viro religioso, non cogeretur satisfacere illi; sed si clericus aut alius[4] religiosus alicui forisfecisset laico, statim compelleretur ad satisfaciendum illi: unde factum est, quod viri religiosi ad redemptionem coacti sunt. The king exacts the payment of the carucage by the regular clergy.

Præterea præcepit idem rex ut omnes, tam clerici quam laici, qui cartas sive confirmationes habebant de sigillo suo veteri, deferrent eas ad sigillum suum novum renovandas, et nisi fecerint, nihil quod actum fuerat per sigillum suum vetus ratum haberetur. All charters are to be confirmed by the new seal.

Eodem anno Innocentius papa misit litteras suas deprecatorias ad Ricardum regem Angliæ pro Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, postulans, et paterna admonitione exhortans, ut ipse præfatum archiepiscopum, prece et servitio suo, in amorem et fraternam familiaritatem susciperet, et cum pace ad sua redire permitteret, ne oporteret in illum et in regnum suum per ecclesiasticam censuram animadvertere. The pope intercedes with Richard for archbishop Geoffrey.

Unde factum est, quod Ricardus rex Angliæ misit ad præfatum archiepiscopum Philippum Dunelmensem, et Eustachium Elyensem, et Godefridum Wintoniensem, et Johannem Wygornensem, et Savaricum Batoniensem episcopos, in spiritu humilitatis postulantes ex parte regis, ut ipse ratas haberet donationes,[5] quas fecerat in Eboracensi ecclesia, et rex[6] redderet ei archiepiscopatum suum cum omni integritate. Quibus archiepiscopus respondit: "Confratres mei estis, et consilium He sends several bishops to propose terms.

[1] *sint*] fuerint, M., H.
[2] *rex*] Henricus, ins. M., H.
[3] *et . . . plegii*] om. C., M.
[4] *alius*] vir, ins. M., H.
[5] *donationes*] regis, ins. M., H.
[6] *rex*] dominus rex, M., H.

A.D. 1198. Geoffrey asks their opinion of the case in writing, under seal.

" vestrum faciam, si feceritis mihi scriptum, cum sigillorum Hoveden, iv. 66.
" vestrorum testimonio, quod consilium istud coram domino
" papa warantizabitis." Cui illi,[1] " Scriptum non dabimus,
" sed in voluntate vestra sit: ætatem habetis, pro vobis ipsis Hoveden, iv. 67.
" loquamini:" et hiis dictis, qui missi fuerant redierunt ad

Geoffrey goes to Rome.

regem cum responso archiepiscopi. Et archiepiscopus Romam profectus est; et rex Angliæ contra eum nuncios suos Romam

Report of Richard's agents at Rome.

misit, qui in hac forma scripserunt ei; "Dominus papa scribit
" vobis cum multa supplicatione, ut restituatis archiepiscopo
" Eboracensi archiepiscopatum suum in integrum, cum fruc-
" tibus de archiepiscopatu perceptis. Ita tamen, de pecunia,
" in qua eum vobis teneri proposuimus, vobis plene et integre
" satisfaciat: scribit etiam domino cardinali, et aliis quibus-
" dam, ut ad satisfaciendum vos moneant et inducant: vel
" [si] omnino nolueritis, primo per interdictum Eboracensis
" provinciæ, deinde per totius regni interdictum, appellatione

The pope decides in favour of the archbishop.

" remota, compellant. Clerici vero vestri per cardinalem
" commonitione præmissa, ad resignandos reditus, quos inte-
" rim perceperunt, cum districtione cogentur, nisi aut aucto-

Reference to be made to Rome in case of further disputes.

" ritate Romanæ ecclesiæ, aut decursione sex mensium, juxta
" Lateranense concilium, excepto tempore suspensionis, pote-
" runt se tueri. Canonici Eboracensis ecclesiæ debent moneri
" ad concordiam, et si aliquod novum emerserit, iterum
" utraque pars domini papæ se præsentabit obtutibus, privi-
" legio canonicorum vigorem solitum obtinente."

Demoniacal possession of several persons near Genoa.

Eodem anno in æstate contigit ultra, intra[2] fines Ytaliæ, in quadam civitate non longe a Januis, res digna memoria. In hac civitate primo quidam civis, exigentibus peccatis suis, effectus est energumenus, id est, dæmoniacus; et infra paucos dies adeo crevit eorum numerus, ut quilibet sibi timeret ne simile incurreret periculum. Communi igitur civium consilio Hoveden, iv. 68. ad eandem urbem vocati convenerunt viri religiosi, et præcipue abbas de Luceio ordinis Cisterciensis,[3] qui inter eos major religionis auctoritate videbatur, ut quid agendum pavidis civibus deliberarent. Indictum est triduanum jejunium.

Measures taken against the possessed.

Tertia vero die convocatis coram se dæmoniacis, obtestatur prædictus abbas in nomine Jesu Christi, quatenus sane causam exponant cur hanc civitatem plus cæteris vexare præsumpserint, et ut exeant a famulis Christi nomine signatis. Quorum unus voce terribili et sublimi clamans, "Cogitis nos," inquit,

---

[1] *illi*] præfati episcopi responderunt, M., H.

[2] *ultra intra*] ultra mare, infra, M.

[3] *ordinis Cisterciensis*] de ordine Cisterciensi, M., H. "Nota mira-
" bile de dæmonibus fugatis." M. in marg.

Hoveden, iv. 68.

" exire a vasis nobis rationabiliter concessis. Nos quidem A.D. 1198.
" sumus legio illa dæmonum, quam Jesus vester ab homine Answer of the possessed.
" ejectam permisit præcipitare porcos in mare. Nunc autem
" quibus a vinculis tenebamur soluti, potestatem accepimus
" in blasphematores tantum virginis Mariæ. In hac igitur
" civitate tales invenimus, et inventos, sicut dignum est, tor-
" quere debemus. Quare si ejecti fuerimus, noveritis, quod
" te, hypocrita, et ordinem tuum in proximo persequemur."
Ad secundam igitur jussionem ipsius exierunt, cum magna difficultate tamen, relinquentes fœda vestigia.

Truce of six years in Palestine.

Eodem anno Aymericus de Lizinant, rex de Barud[1] et Accaron, princeps insulæ Cypri, et cæteri Christiani de terra Suliæ, et pagani qui in eadem terra sunt, ceperunt inter se treugas a festo Nativitatis Sancti Johannis,[2] in sex annos sequentes duraturas, nisi aliquis rex Christianorum potens in partes illas veniret.

November. Truce between Richard and Philip.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ et Philippus rex Franciæ, mense Novembris, ceperunt inter se treugas, usque ad festum Sancti Hilarii proximo sequens.

Hoveden, iv. 69.

Decision of a dispute between Robert of Turnham and the bishop of Durham, before the justices.

Item eodem anno Philippus Dunelmensis episcopus, ad petitionem Roberti de Thurnham, concessit ei coram rege recognitionem xii. legalium hominum de visneto de Clif, quis eorum majus jus habebat in manerio illo de Clif, videlicet utrum ille Robertus debeat manerium illud tenere de episcopo Dunelmensi, et inde homo suus esse; vel episcopus illud deberet habere in demenio. Per sacramentum igitur xii. hominum recognitum est, manerium illud esse jus hæreditarium uxoris prædicti Roberti, filiæ Willelmi Fossard, et sic præfatus episcopus amisit manerium illud de Clif, quod prædecessores sui multo tempore pacifice[3] possederant. Facta autem hæc sunt coram Hugone Bardulf, et magistro Rogero Arundel, et Gaufrido Hachet, tunc temporis placitorum coronæ regis apud Eboracum justitiariis.[4]

Dispute between the bishop and prior of Durham about a presentation.

Eodem anno, defuncto magistro Ricardo de Goldingham,[5] Philippus Dunelmensis episcopus, et Bertrannus Dunelmensis ecclesiæ prior, dissenserunt in donatione ecclesiarum prædicti Ricardi. Dicebat enim episcopus donationem ad eum pertinere, tanquam ad episcopum et abbatem Dunelmensis ecclesiæ. Hæc contra prior respondit, quod ad eum pertinebat donatio,

---

[1] *Barud*] Barrud, M.; Barhud, H.

[2] *Johannis*] Baptistæ, ins. M., H.

[3] *pacifice*] et inconcusse, ins. M., H.

[4] *justitiariis*] justitiarii, M., C.

[5] *Goldingham*] Coldingham, H.

A.D. 1198. quia prædecessores sui et ipse sine alicujus contradictione eas dederant, sicut priores et domini fundi, et illi qui potestatem omnem abbatis in choro, et in dispositione domus et reddituum suorum habent, ex concessione regum, et institutione episcoporum Dunelmensium, et Romanorum pontificum confirmatione. Sed non sic quievit controversia illa, immo in tantum excrevit, quod ex præcepto episcopi Aimericus Dunelmensis archidiaconus obsedit ecclesiam Sancti Oswaldi in Elvet, in qua monachi se receperant, et non permisit victualia ad eos deferri. Quadam autem die, post appellationem a monachis ad summum pontificem factam, idem Aimericus fecit ignem apponi ostio ecclesiæ, ut sic per fumum et vaporem ignis monachos ejiceret. Semiusto igitur ostio, funesti satellites intraverunt ecclesiam, et vi et armata manu ejecerunt monachos. Sed Deus mutavit sententiam episcopi in melius, qui, propter reverentiam beati Cuthberti, eandem ecclesiam in proprios usus monachorum contulit, et carta sua confirmavit: concessit etiam illis liberam ecclesiarum suarum dispositionem, cum illius moderato assensu.[1]

Hoveden, iv. 69.

The monks are besieged in a church by the archdeacon.

They are smoked out.

Hoveden, iv. 70.

The bishop gives way to them.

Eodem anno erat in Gallia quidam sacerdos nomine Fulco, quem magnificavit Dominus in conspectu regum: deditque potestatem illi[2] cæcos illuminare, claudos, mutos, et alios diversis languoribus oppressos curare, dæmones effugare: hic autem meretrices, relicto impudicitiæ fræno, ad Dominum convertit; usurarios etiam ad cœlestem thesaurum invitans, quem nec ærugo nec tinea demolitur, nec furantur fures, fecit omnem substantiam, quam usura et fœnus devoraverant,[3] in usus pauperum distribui. Ipse quidem prædixit regibus Franciæ et Angliæ, quod unus illorum mala morte proximo interiret, nisi celerius ab hostilitate cessarent.[4] Et quia eo[5] tempore messis erat multa, et pauci operarii, conjunxit ei Dominus viros sapientes qui verbum Illius prædicarent populo, videlicet, magistrum Petrum, dominum Robertum, et dominum Eustachium abbatem de Flay, et cæteros quosdam, qui missi per orbem terrarum prædicaverunt ubique, Domino cooperante, et sermonem confirmante sequentibus signis. Prædictus autem Fulco quadam die accessit ad Ricardum regem Angliæ, et ait illi: "Dico tibi ex parte omnipotentis Dei, ut tres filias tuas,

Hoveden, iv. 76.

Fulk of Neuilly does a great work as a preacher of repentance.

S. Matt. v. 20.

S. Matt. ix. 37.

His helpers in the work.

S. Mark xvi. 20.

Visit of Fulk to Richard: he bids him provide for his three daughters.

[1] *assensu*] Here Hoveden gives the circular letter of Innocent III., dated Aug. 13, 1198, on behalf of the crusade. It is omitted in M., V., and C. See Hoveden, iv. 70–75.

[2] *illi*] ei, M., H.

[3] *devoraverant*] devoverant, C., M.

[4] *cessarent*] cessassent, M., H.

[5] *eo*] in illo, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 76. "quas habes pessimas, maritos,[1] ne aliquid deterius tibi con- A.D. 1198.
"tingat."

Juv. *Sat.* i. 160.

O, digito compesce labella,
Accusator erit, qui verum dicere velit.[2]

Nemo sine vitiis nascitur; beatus qui minimis urgetur:—et alibi, Nemo sine crimine vivit.[3] Cui fertur regem respondisse: "Hypocrita, mentitus es in caput tuum, quia filiam "non habeo ullam." Ad quod Fulco respondens ait, "Certe "non mentior; quia, ut dixi, tres filias habes pessimas, qua-

Hoveden, iv. 77. "rum una superbia, altera cupiditas, tertia luxuria." Convo- The king's answer to Fulk.
catis igitur ad se comitibus et baronibus multis, qui aderant, ait rex: "Audite universi commonitionem hujus hypocritæ, "qui dicit me habere tres filias pessimas, videlicet superbiam, "cupiditatem, et luxuriam; et præcipit ut eas maritem. Do "igitur superbiam meam superbis Templariis, cupiditatem "meam monachis ordinis Cisterciensis,[4] et luxuriam meam "prælatis ecclesiarum."

O nimis indignum miseris inferre cachinnum.

Itaque prædictus Fulco, relicto rege, abiit prædicans verbum Visit of Fulk to Lisieux, where he is imprisoned.
Dei, de civitate in civitatem. Cumque, prædicando verbum Dei, civitatem Lexoviensem esset ingressus, clerici civitatis illius, quorum vitam immundam vir ille plenus Spiritu Sancto et operibus bonis reprehenderat, injecerunt manus in eum, [et vinculis][5] constrictum in carcerem miserunt. Sed neque vincula neque carceres eum tenere potuerunt: et sic permissus abire, venit Cadomum, prædicans præceptum Domini; et in He works miracles at Caen, and escapes from the castle there.
conspectu plebis multa faciebat signa. Custodes autem castelli æstimantes quod placeret regi, injecerunt manus in eum, et vinctum miserunt in carcerem; et ruptis carcere et vinculis,

Acts v. 41. exivit illæsus, et ibat gaudens, quoniam dignus habitus est contumeliam pati pro nomine Christi; et exiens a castello,

Acts iii. 51. excussit pulverem pedum suorum in testimonium supra illos.[6]

---

[1] *marites*] citius marites, M., H.

[2] *dicere velit*] dixerit, H.; dixit, M.

[3] *Nemo . . . vivit*] From a marginal note in the best MS. of Hoveden; incorporated in the text of the later MSS. M. has in the margin—"Nota de monitione facta regi "Ricardo per sanctum virum et "ejus responso, de tribus filiabus, "scilicet superbia, cupiditate, luxu-"ria." "Nota de tribus filiabus "regis Ricardi." C. in marg.

[4] *ordinis Cisterciensis*] de ordine Cisterciensi, M., H.

[5] *et vinculis*] om. C.

[6] Here Hoveden has a notice of the benediction of the abbots of Sallay and Byland by the bishop of Durham at Howden, Oct. 11, omitted in M., V., and C.

A.D. 1198. October. Capture of a French detachment.

Eodem anno Willelmus, cognomento Cocus, serviens Ricardi regis Angliæ in custodiendo castellum de Liuns, cepit de familia regis Franciæ quater viginti servientes equites, et xl. servientes pedites, quos rex Franciæ miserat ad muniendum castellum de Novo Mercato. Hoveden, iv. 78.

Deaths of bishops. Death of Henfrid of Toron.

Eodem anno obierunt Ricardus Londoniensis episcopus, Johannes Wigornensis,[1] Willelmus de Veer Herefordensis,[1] et Petrus Menevensis episcopi, et Amphridus del Turun,[2] primus maritus prædictæ Milisant, uxoris Guidonis quondam regis Jerusalem.

Death of the empress Constance.

Eodem anno obiit in Sicilia apud Panormum Constantia quondam Romanorum imperatrix, uxor Henrici imperatoris; cujus filium Innocentius papa recepit in custodia cum regno Siciliæ, et ducatu Apuliæ, et principatu Capuæ.

Ransom of the bishop Beauvais.

Item eodem anno Philippus Belvacensis episcopus obtulit regi[3] Ricardo x. millia marcarum[4] pro liberatione sua.

Richard and Philipfortify two castles.

Eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ firmavit castellum in quadam insula Secanæ, quod appellavit Buteavant: et rex Franciæ firmavit castellum ex opposito illi, quod appellavit Guletut.

Mauger bishop of Worcester.

Item eodem anno Ricardus rex Angliæ dedit magistro Malgero clerico suo episcopatum Wigornensem.

Alfonso of Leon interdicted.

Defuncto autem papa Cœlestino, Innocentius papa tertius substitutus, iterum suspendit Aldefonsum regem de Sancto Jacobo, et totam terram suam a celebratione Divini officii, propter uxorem suam, filiam regis Castellæ; erant enim consanguinei in tertio gradu. Et licet rex ille de Sancto Jacobo obtulisset domino papæ Innocentio et cardinalibus xx. millia marcarum,[4] et obtulisset tenere ad stipendia cc. milites per unius anni spatium ad defensionem Christianorum contra paganos, tali conditione, ut dominus papa permisisset illos insimul morari, donec Deus daret eis sobolem, vel saltem per tres annos; noluit autem dominus papa Innocentius in hoc illis consentire. Hoveden, iv. 79.

The pope will not let the sentence be bought off.

[1] MS. M. repeats *episcopus* in each case.

[2] *Turun*] Turnun, C.

[3] *regi*] Angliæ, ins. M., H.

[4] *marcarum*] argenti, ins., M., H.

G.——MCXCIX. A.D. 1198. Dec. 25.

Hoveden, iv. 79.

Anno gratiæ millesimo centesimo nonagesimo nono, qui est annus decimus et ultimus regni Ricardi regis Angliæ, fuit idem Ricardus in Normannia apud Damfrunt, die Natalis Domini, quæ sexta feria evenit; et Philippus rex Franciæ fuit eodem die in Normannia apud Vernun; et Otho rex Alemanniæ, nepos dicti[1] regis Angliæ, fuit eodem die apud Westfale[2] in Alemannia, quæ distat a Colonia per novem dietas; quas ipse Otho potenti virtute adquisierat super Philippum ducem de Swave, filium Frederici quondam Romanorum imperatoris. Et statim post Natale Domini prædictus Otho divisit exercitum suum in duas partes, et duas civitates præfati Philippi obsedit. Reges vero Franciæ et Angliæ convenerunt ad colloquium inter Andeli et Vernun in festo Sancti Hillarii, ita quod rex Angliæ navigio illuc venit ascendendo per Secanum fluvium, et nolens ascendere in terram, de nave locutus est cum rege Franciæ; qui in ripa fluminis in equo residens, loquebatur cum rege Angliæ ore ad os: et alium statuerunt sibi diem colloquii, ubi in majori suorum audientia, mediante domino Petro de Capua, Sanctæ Mariæ in Via Lata diacono cardinali, et apostolicæ sedis legato, nec non et aliorum utriusque partis magnatum consilio, statuerunt inter se treugas ab illo festo Sancti Hilarii per quinquennium, bona fide et sine malo ingenio duraturas, rebus et tenementis sic se habentibus ex utraque parte, ut tunc erat; et hiis factis, sacramentoque confirmatis, unusquisque reversus est in regionem suam, et permiserunt exercitus suos cum gratiarum actione in patrias suas redire.

Richard at Domfront; Philip at Vernon.

War between Otho and Philip of Swabia.

A.D. 1199. Jan. 13. Interview of Richard and Philip.

Hoveden, iv. 80.

A truce for five years between Richard and Philip.

Cum autem Marchadeus versus patriam suam rediret cum ruta sua, quatuor comites de regno Franciæ, per quorum terras Marchadeus erat transiturus, occurrerunt ei in manu hostili, et confecerunt eum, et multos de suos interfecerunt.[3] Deinde dum rex Angliæ, spe pacis et supradictæ conventionis intuitu, versus Pictaviam iret, rex Franciæ firmavit quoddam castellum novum inter Buteavant et Guaillun, et forestam regis Angliæ circa locum illum exstirpavit. Quod cum rex Angliæ audisset, reversus est in Normanniam, et mandavit regi Franciæ per Eustachium Elyensem episcopum, cancellarium suum, treugas dissolutas, nisi ipse castellum illud novum demoliri faceret.

Marchadeus surprised by the French.

Philip fortifies a new castle during Richard's absence.

Richard declares the truce broken.

---

[1] *dicti*] Ricardi, M., H.

[2] *Westfale*] Westle, H.

[3] *interfecerunt*] Sed rex Franciæ factum illud devovit, jurans quod per illum factum non fuit. Ins. H.; om. M.

A.D. 1199. Legatus autem consuluit regi Franciæ, ut castellum illud demoliretur, ne propter hoc treugæ tam solemniter confirmatæ rumperentur: ad cujus instantiam rex Franciæ promisit se in proximo castellum illud demoliturum. Sed Ricardus rex Angliæ minime hiis contentus, volebat ut ad plenum inter eos componeretur, vel nulla pax inter eos esset. Unde facta est inter eos talis forma pacis, quod rex Franciæ redderet Ricardo regi Angliæ totam terram quam ipse super eum occupaverat, sive per guerram sive alio quocunque modo, excepto solo castello de Gisorcio; in cujus recompensatione rex Franciæ concessit ipsi Ricardo regi Angliæ donationem archiepiscopatus Turonis: et quod Lodowicus filius regis Franciæ duceret in uxorem filiam regis Castellæ, neptem Ricardi regis Angliæ: et præterea rex Franciæ juraret, quod pro posse suo juvaret Othonem, nepotem regis Angliæ, ad imperium Romanum perquirendum. Hæc contra, Ricardus rex Angliæ daret Lodowico, filio regis Franciæ, castellum de Gisorcio cum prædicta nepte sua in maritagium; et insuper daret ei xx. millia marcarum. Sed hæc omnia dilationem ceperunt usque dum Ricardus rex Angliæ rediret de Pictavia.

Hoveden, iv. 80.

Philip offers to destroy the castle.

Proposed terms of peace between the two kings.

Hoveden, iv. 81.

Peace delayed until Richard's return.

Philippus rex Franciæ, seminator discordiæ, mandavit regi Angliæ, quod Johannes comes Moretonii, frater ejus, dederat se illi; et inde ostendit illi cartam ipsius Johannis. Mira res! Rex Angliæ credidit regi Franciæ, et Johannem fratrem suum odio habuit, adeo quod fecit eum dissaisiari de terris suis cismarinis et transmarinis. Cum autem prædictus Johannes comes[1] quæreret causam hujus indignationis et odii, dictum est ei quod rex Franciæ supradicta mandaverat de illo regi fratri suo. Unde factum est, quod idem comes[2] misit duos milites loco sui ad curiam regis Franciæ, qui eum hujus criminis immunem esse obtulerunt modis omnibus probare vel defendere, sicut curia regis Franciæ judicaret. Sed in curia illa non est inventus, neque rex, neque alius, qui vellet recipere inde probationem vel defensionem. Et factum est, quod rex Angliæ ex illo tempore fratrem suum[3] habuit familiarem,[4] et minus credidit mandatis regis Franciæ.

Philip informs Richard that John has joined him; and Richard seizes his possessions.

John defies Philip to prove the statement.

Richard is reconciled with John.

Interea rex Angliæ, consilio Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, abstulit Savarico Batoniensi episcopo abbatiam de Glastingburia, et dedit eam magistro Willelmo la Pie, et ipse factus est inde abbas.

Hoveden, iv. 82.

Glastonbury taken from Savaric, and given to William la Pie.

---

[1] *comes*] Moretonii, ins. M., H.
[2] *comes*] Moretonii, ins. M., H.
[3] *suum*] Johannem, ins. M., H.
[4] *familiarem*] familiariorem, H.

De morte regis Ricardi.

A.D. 1199. March.

Hoveden, iv. 82.

Interim Widomarus vicecomes de Limoges, invento magno thesauro auri et argenti in fundo suo, misit inde Ricardo regi Angliæ, domino suo, partem non modicam; sed eam refutavit, dicens se debere totum illum thesaurum habere de jure dominationis suæ; quod prædictus vicecomes nullo modo concedere voluit. Venit ergo rex Angliæ cum exercitu magno in partes illas ad prædictum vicecomitem debellandum: obsedit-que castellum suum, Caluz dictum,[1] in quo sperabat thesaurum illum fuisse absconditum: et cum milites et servientes, qui erant in castello, exeuntes obtulissent ei castellum illud, salvis vita, membris et armis eorum,[2] noluit rex recipere, sed juravit quod eos vi caperet et suspenderet. Reversi sunt igitur milites et servientes in castellum, dolentes et confusi, et paraverunt se ad defendendum.

The viscount of Limoges discovers a treasure.

Richard comes to claim it, and besieges Chalus.

He refuses to admit the garrison to terms.

Eodem die, cum rex Angliæ et Marchadeus circumirent castellum hinc et inde, explorantes in quo loco esset commodius insultum facere, quidam arcubalista nomine Bertrannus de Gurdun traxit sagittam de castello, et percutiens regem in brachio vulneravit eum plaga insanabili: et sic rex vulneratus ascendit equum suum, et ad hospitium[3] equitavit, et præcepit Marchadeo, et exercitui suo universo, ut insultum facerent indesinenter in castellum donec caperetur; et ita factum est.

Richard is shot in the shoulder by Bertram de Gurdun.

The siege is continued, and Chalus taken.

Hoveden, iv. 83.

Quo capto, præcepit rex omnes suspendi, excepto solo illo qui eum vulneravit, quem, ut fas est credere, turpissima morte damnaret, si convaluisset.

The garrison ordered to be hanged.

Deinde rex commisit se manibus cujusdam medici Marchadei, qui, cum conaretur ferrum extrahere, solum lignum extraxit, et sagitta in carne remansit, et cum carnifex ille circumquaque brachium regis minus caute incideret, tandem sagittam extraxit. Cum autem rex de vita desperaret, divisit Johanni fratri suo regnum Angliæ, et omnes alias terras suas; et fecit fieri prædicto Johanni fidelitates ab illis qui aderant, et præcepit ut traderentur ei castella sua, et tres partes thesauri sui, et omnia baubella[4] sua Othoni nepoti suo, regi Alemanniæ; et quartam partem thesauri sui præcepit servientibus suis et pauperibus distribui. Deinde fecit coram se venire Bertrannum Gurdun, qui eum vulneravit, et dixit ei, "Quid mali tibi feci, "quare me interemisti?" Cui ille respondit, "Tu interemisti

The arrow extracted from the king's shoulder.

He declares John his successor: leaves his jewels to Otho.

---

[1] *dictum*] quod dicitur, M., H.
[2] *eorum*] illorum, M., H.
[3] *hospitium*] suum, ins. M., H.
[4] *baubella*] beaubella, M.

A.D. 1199. April. Words of Bertram de Gurdun.

"patrem[1] et duos fratres meos manu tua, et me nunc interi- Hoveden, iv. 83.
"mere voluisti. Sume ergo de me vindictam, quamcunque
"volueris: libenter enim patiar quæcunque excogitaveris
"majora tormenta, dummodo tu interficiaris, qui tot et tanta
"mala contulisti mundo." Tunc præcepit eum rex solvi, et dixit ei: "Remitto tibi mortem meam." At juvenis,

Constitit ante pedes regis, vultuque minaci, Lucan, *Phars*, ii. 509-514.
Nobilitas recta ferrum cervice poposcit;
Sensit rex pœnamque peti, veniamque timeri:
"Vive, licet nolis, et nostro munere," dixit,
"Cerne diem, victis jam spes bona partibus esto,
"Exemplumque mei."

The king orders him to be released. He is flayed alive.

Et sic laxatis vinculis permissus est abire, et præcepit rex ei dari centum solidos Anglicanæ monetæ. Sed Marchadeus, rege Hoveden, iv. 84.
nesciente, injecit manus in eum, et tenuit, et, post obitum regis, excoriatum suspendit.

Richard's orders about his own burial.

Deinde præcepit rex, ut cerebrum et sanguis[2] et viscera ejus sepelirentur apud Cherriou,[3] et cor suum apud Rotomagum, et corpus suum apud Fontem Ebraudi, ad pedes patris sui.

April 6. Death and burial of Richard.

Decessit autem viii°. idus Aprilis, feria tertia ante Dominicam Palmarum,[4] xi°. die postquam percussus fuerat; et sui sepelierunt eum in locis, sicut præceperat. De morte autem illius quidam sic ait,

Epigrams about him.

"Istius in morte perimit formica Leonem.
"Proh dolor, in tanto funere mundus obit!"

Et alius sic;

"Virus, avaritia, scelus, enormisque libido,
"Fœda fames, atrox elatio, cæca cupido,
"Annis regnarunt bis quinis: arcubalista
"Arte, manu, telo, prostravit viribus ista."

Et alius sic;

"Si genus et probitas metas transcendere mortis
"Possent, intrassem non ego mortis iter.
"Stare putas hominem, cui mors ab origine finem
"Nunciat, et meus est, ingeminat, meus est?
"Longa manus morti; mors fortior Hectore forti;
"Expugnant homines oppida, mors homines."[5]

---

[1] *patrem*] meum, ins. M., H.
[2] *sanguis*] ejus, ins. M., H.
[3] *Cherriou*] Charrou, M., H.
[4] *Palmarum*] in Ramis Palmarum, M., H.
[5] MS. M. continues to give several of the other verses found in Hoveden, iv. 84, 85.

Hoveden, iv. 85.

Defuncto itaque rege Ricardo, Savaricus Batoniensis episcopus statim suscitavit litem adversus magistrum Willelmum la Pie, abbatem Glastoniæ, et protestans jus suum coram domino papa Innocentio in præsentia universorum cardinalium, dicendo quod Ricardus rex Angliæ dederat ei abbatiam illam Glastoniæ in vita sua habendam, et postea, pravo usus consilio, eam abstulerat injuste; asserebat etiam constanter, paratus modis omnibus probare, quod antiquitus fuit apud Glastoniam sedes episcopalis, quæ nunc est apud Baa: et petebat sibi fieri restitutionem, et ut liceret ei transferre illuc sedem episcopalem quæ est apud Baa.

A.D. 1199. April. Savaric renews his attempts to hold Glastonbury.

Defuncto autem Ricardo rege, Philippus rex Franciæ statim bello invasit civitatem Ebroicarum, et cepit; et totum comitatum sibi subjugavit.[1]

Philip takes Evreux.

Hoveden, iv. 86.

Defuncto papa Cœlestino, et Innocentio[2] substituto, Cnut rex Danorum misit nuncios suos Romam ad Innocentium papam, et conquestus est ei de Philippo rege Franciæ, qui Botildam sponsam suam, sororem illius, injuste reliquerat, et aliam loco ejus in uxorem duxerat: conquestus est etiam domino papæ de Willelmo Remensi archiepiscopo, et de aliis episcopis, comitibus et baronibus Franciæ, per quos divortium factum fuit inter ipsum regem Franciæ et Botildam reginam, post appellationem ab ipsa ad dominum [papam] factam. Ad instantiam igitur Cnut Dacorum regis, papa[3] Innocentius dedit in mandatis Petro de Capua, cardinali et apostolicæ sedis legato, ut modis omnibus induceret Philippum regem ad dimittendam adulteram suam, et ad resumendam Botildam uxorem suam; et nisi fecerit, daret sententiam interdicti in regnum Franciæ.

The king of Denmark complains to the pope about Philip's treatment of his wife; and about the divorce.

Peter of Capua sent to settle the dispute.

Initium regni regis Johannis.

April. John sends the archbishop and William Marshall to England.

Defuncto Ricardo rege Angliæ, Johannes comes Moretonii, frater ejus, moram faciens in Normannia, statim misit in Angliam Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, et Willelmum Marescallum comitem de Striguil, ad pacem Angliæ servandam, una cum Gaufrido Filio Petri justitiario Angliæ, et aliis baronibus regni. Et ipse Johannes perrexit ad Chinonem, ubi thesaurus fratris sui erat, quem Robertus de Turnham habens in custodia tradidit ei, cum castello de Chinun,

He himself takes possession of Richard's treasures.

[1] *subjugavit*] Here Hoveden notes the death and burial of Jocelin bishop of Glasgow; om. C., M.

[2] *Innocentio*] papa, loco illius, ins. M., H.

[3] *papa*] dominus papa, M., H.

A.D. 1199. April. Angers given up to Arthur.

et castello de Saumur, et aliis castellis regis, quæ ipse custodiebat. Thomas de Furneis,[1] nepos prædicti Roberti de Turneham, tradidit Arturo duci Britanniæ civitatem et castellum Andegavis. Convenerunt in unum principes Andegaviæ et Cenomanniæ, et Turoniæ, adhæserunt Arturo duci Britanniæ, sicut ligio domino suo: dicentes, judicium et consuetudinem terrarum illarum esse, quod filius fratris senioris debet ei succedere in patrimonio sibi debito, videlicet in hæreditate quam Gaufridus comes Britanniæ, pater ipsius Arturi, esset habiturus, si supervixisset Ricardum regem Angliæ fratrem suum; et ideo tradiderunt Arturo Andegaviam et Turoniam et Cenomanniam. Constantia vero mater Arturi, comitissa Britanniæ, venit Turonim, et tradidit Philippo regi Franciæ Arturum filium suum; quem rex Franciæ statim misit Parisius custodiendum, ad Lodowicum filium suum; et saisiavit in manu sua civitates, castella et munitiones quæ Arturi erant, et custodibus suis tradidit custodienda. Hoveden, iv. 86. Hoveden, iv. 87.

The barons of Anjou support the claims of Arthur.

He himself is sent to Paris.

John takes le Mans and imprisons the citizens.

Johannes[2] comes prædictus[3] venit Cenomannium, et civitatem et castellum cepit; et muros civitatis, castellum, et domos[4] lapideas subvertit, et cives misit in captivitatem; eo quod ipsi, contra fidelitatem quam ei fecerant, receperunt Arturum in dominum. Johannes vero comes Moretonii fuit in Andegavia apud Bauford[5] die Paschæ, quæ xiv. kalendas Maii evenit.

He keeps Easter, Apr. 18, at Beaufort.

Apr. 25. John is invested as duke of Normandy.

Deinde idem comes venit Rotomagum; et die Dominica in octavis Paschæ, videlicet vii°. kalendas Maii, festo Sancti Marci evangelistæ, accinctus est gladio ducatus Normanniæ in matrici ecclesia per manum Walteri Rotomagensis archiepiscopi. Et præfatus archiepiscopus posuit in capite suo[6] circulum aureum habentem in summitate per circuitum rosas aureas: et ipse dux coram clero et populo juravit super reliquias sanctorum, et super sacrosancta evangelia, quod ipse sanctam ecclesiam, et dignitatem[7] illius, bona fide et sine malo ingenio servabit illæsas, et rectam justitiam exercebit, et leges iniquas destruet, et bonas instituet.

His oath to the archbishop.

Queen Eleanor ravages Anjou.

Interim regina Alienor, mater prædicti ducis, et Marchadeus cum ruta sua, intraverunt in Andegaviam, et devastaverunt eam, eo quod Arturum receperunt.

The archbishop and William

Hubertus vero Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Willelmus Marescallus, qui missi fuerant ad pacem Angliæ custodiendam,

---

[1] *Thomas de Furneis*] Thomas vero de Fornes, M.

[2] *Johannes*] vero, ins. M., H.

[3] *prædictus*] Moretonii, M., H.

[4] *domos*] civitatis, ins. M., H.

[5] *Bauford*] Baufort, M.

[6] *suo*] ducis, M., H.

[7] *dignitatem*] dignitates, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 88.

fecerunt homines regni, tam de civitatibus quam de burgis, comites etiam et barones, et libere tenentes, jurare fidelitatem et pacem Johanni Normannorum duci, filio Henrici regis, filii Matildis imperatricis, contra omnes homines. Tam universi episcopi,[1] quam comites [et] barones, qui castella habebant, munierunt illa hominibus, victu et armis. Deinde Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Willelmus Marescallus, et Gaufridus Filius Petri justitiarius Angliæ, convenerunt apud Northamptoniam, et convocatis coram se illis de quibus plus dubitabant, videlicet David fratre regis Scottorum, Ricardo comite de Clare, Ranulfo comite Cestriæ, Willelmo comite de Tuttebiri,[2] et aliis multis, tam comitibus quam baronibus, fecerunt illis fidem, quod prædictus Johannes Normanniæ dux redderet unicuique jus suum, si ipsi illi fidem servaverint et pacem. Sub hac igitur conventione, supradicti comites et barones juraverunt Johanni duci Normanniæ fidelitatem et fidele servitium contra omnes homines. Willelmus vero rex Scottorum misit nuncios suos ad Johannem ducem Normanniæ, petens sibi reddi patrimonium suum, videlicet, Northumbriam et Cumbriam, cum pertinentiis suis, et ipse fidelitatem juraret ei, et fideliter serviret contra omnes homines. Sed Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Willelmus Marescallus, et Gaufridus Filius Petri non permiserunt nuncios[3] regis Scotiæ transfretare ad ducem; sed mandaverunt ei per comitem David, fratrem suum, quod ipse patienter sustineret, donec dux veniret in Angliam. Similiter Johannes dux Normanniæ mandavit Willelmo regi Scottorum per Eustachium de Vesci, generum suum, quod in reditu suo in Angliam satisfaceret ei de omnibus petitionibus suis, si ei interim pacem servaverit.

A.D. 1199. April. Marshall obtain the fealty of the English to John.

They promise on his behalf that he will do justice to the earls; who thereupon swear fealty.

The king of Scots demands Northumberland and Cumberland.

Hoveden, iv. 89.

He is bidden to wait for John's arrival.

Interim magister Honorius, qui regia potestate, et decani et capituli Eboraci malignitate fuerat dejectus ab archidiaconatu Richemundiæ, quem Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus ei dederat, receptus est in archidiaconatu illo a personis ejusdem archidiaconatus; qui ei fidelitatem et canonicam obedientiam juraverunt, expulsis officialibus Rogeri de Sancto Edmundo, qui per regiam potestatem, et decani et capituli Eboraci auctoritate, intrusus erat: et decanus et capitulum Eboraci excommunicaverunt prædictum Honorium, et ejus receptores, propter istam præsumptionem; et dux Normanniæ præcepit,

Honorius is received as archdeacon of Richmond.

The dean of York excommunicates him.

---

[1] *Tam universi episcopi*] Tamen universi, tam episcopi, H. M. agrees with the text, as do several MSS. of Hoveden.

[2] *Tuttebiri*] Tutesbiri, et Walramno comite de Warewic [Warenne, M.] et Rogero constabulario Cestriæ, et Willelmo de Mubray, M., H.

[3] *nuncios*] suos, ins. C.

A.D. 1199. ut omnia jura Eboracensis ecclesiæ essent in eo statu, quo fuerunt die qua Ricardus frater ejus rex[1] fuit vivus et mortuus. Hoveden, iv. 89.

May 25. John lands at Shoreham: goes to London, May 26. Deinde idem dux Johannes transfretavit de Normannia in Angliam, et applicuit apud Sorham octavo kalendas Junii, feria tertia, et in crastino, videlicet, vigilia Ascensionis Domini, venit Londonias, in crastino coronandus.

Meeting of bishops at London. Congregatis igitur apud Londonias, in adventu prædicti ducis, Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, Johanne Dublinensi, et de Raguse archiepiscopis, Willelmo Londoniensi,

Bishops and barons present at John's coronation. Gilberto Roffensi, et aliis[2] episcopis, Roberto de Leyrcestre, Ricardo de Clare, Willelmo de Tuttebiri,[3] et Ranulfo de Cestre, et aliis comitibus, et baronibus multis: Hoveden, iv. 90.

May 27. Coronation of John. Appeal of the bishop of Durham. Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus coronavit et consecravit in regem Angliæ præfatum Johannem ducem Normanniæ, in ecclesia Sancti Petri apud Westmonasterium;[4] Philippo Dunelmensi episcopo appellante, ne coronatio illa fieret in absentia Gaufridi archiepiscopi, totius Angliæ primatis.

William Marshall and Geoffrey Fitz Peter invested with their earldoms. Eodem die coronationis suæ, Johannes rex accinxit Willelmum Marescallum gladio comitatus de Striguil,[5] et Gaufridum Filium Petri gladio comitatus de Esex: qui, licet antea vocati essent comites, et administrationem suorum comitatuum habuissent, tamen non erant accincti gladio comitatus: et ipsi illa die servierunt ad mensam regis accincti gladiis.

Hubert Walter is made Chancellor. Eodem die coronationis suæ idem rex dedit Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo cancellariam suam; qui dum gloriaretur in potestate illa, et multa jactaret de familiaritate regis, Hugo

Hugh Bardulf's advice to him. Bardulfi respondit ei; "Domine, salva pace vestra loquar, "ecce![6] si bene consideraretis nominis vestri potentiam, et "honorem vestræ dignitatis,[7] non deberetis jugum servitutis "vobis imponere: quia nunquam audivimus vel vidimus de "archiepiscopo fieri cancellarium, sed de cancellario fieri "vidimus archiepiscopum." Hoveden, iv. 91.

---

[1] *rex*] Angliæ, ins. M., H.

[2] *et aliis*] Johanne Norwicensi, Hugone Lincolniensi, Eustachio Eliensi, Godefrido Wintoniensi, Henrico Exoniensi, Sefrido Cycestrensi, Gaufrido Coventrensi, Savarico Bathoniensi, Hereberto Saresbiriensi, Philippo Dunelmensi, Rogero de Sancto Andrea in Scottia, Henrico de Landafa; M., H.

[3] *Tuttebiri*] Hamelino de Warenne, Rogero Bigot, Willelmo de Saresbiria, Willelmo de Striguil, Walranno de Warrewic, Willelmo de Arundel, ins. M., H.

[4] *Westmonasterium*] sexto kalendas Junii, feria v^ta., die Ascensionis Domini, ins. H.; om. M.

[5] "Nota quod Willelmus Mares-"callus fuit cinctus gladio comita-"tus." Note in M.

[6] *ecce*] certe, H.

[7] *honorem vestræ dignitatis*] honoris dignitatem, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 91.

A.D. 1199. May. The Scottish envoys claim Northumberland and Cumberland.

Interim Willelmus prior de May, et Walterus prior de Insula Sancti Columbæ, et Willelmus de Haia, missi ex parte Willelmi regis Scotiæ, ad Johannem regem Angliæ venerunt: per quos rex Scottorum petiit a rege Angliæ Northumbriam et Cumbriam, cum pertinentiis eorum, de jure patrimonii sui: et promisit quod, [si] rex ea reddidisset illi, fideliter serviret ei viribus totis; sin autem, totum jus suum, si posset, adquireret. Quibus Johannes rex respondit: "Cum dominus John delays his answer.
" vester rex Scottorum, carissimus et consanguineus noster,[1]
" ad me venerit, quod justum fuerit faciam ei, de ista et de
" aliis petitionibus suis."

He summons the king of Scots to do homage, and goes to meet him at Nottingham, June 6.

Deinde Johannes rex Angliæ misit Philippum Dunelmensem episcopum obviam regi Scottorum, sperans quod ipse ad mandatum illius veniret; et ipse interim venit ad Notigham, et fuit ibi die Pentecostes, et in partibus illis moram fecit, exspectans adventum regis Scotiæ. Rex autem Scotiæ venire noluit; sed remisit ad regem Angliæ Rogerum episcopum Sancti Andreæ, et Hugonem Malebise, quos rex Angliæ pro illo miserat, et petiit ut rex Angliæ sibi redderet Norhumbriam et Cumbriam: sin autem,[2] quod secundum posse suum illa adquireret: et ad habendum inde responsum regis Angliæ posuit inducias quadraginta dierum, et ipse interim magnum congregavit exercitum. Episcopus vero Sancti Andreæ et Ricardus Malebise secuti sunt regem Angliæ ad mare properantem.

The Scots raise an army.

William Stuteville charged with Northumberland and Cumberland.

Pomfret restored to Roger de Lacy.

Hoveden, iv. 92.

Interim Johannes rex Angliæ tradidit Willelmo de Stutevile Norhumbriam [et] Cumbriam, cum castellis et comitatibus in custodia, quæ Hugo Bardulfi custodierat, et reddidit Rogero de Lacy, constabulario Cestriæ, castellum suum del Pumfreyt,[3] accepto prius filio ejus et hærede in obsidem. Deinde præcepit rex Stephano de Turnham, qui jam fere per duos annos custodierat archiepiscopatum Eboracensem, quod traderet custodiam ejusdem archiepiscopatus magistro Radulfo de Kyma, et Willelmo Ward, et Rogero de Bauvent, ad opus archiepiscopi. Unde idem Stephanus scripsit in hac forma ministris suis;

Stephen Turnham is bidden to surrender the lands of the see of York to the officers of the archbishop.

" Stephanus de Turnham omnibus servientibus per maneria
" domini archiepiscopi[4] Eboracensis constitutis, salutem. Do-
" minus rex mihi litteris suis mandavit, quod traderem custo-
" diam maneriorum domini Eboracensis magistro Radulfo de
" Kyma, et Willelmo de Ward, et cum eis Rogero de Bauvent,
" ad opus suum. Ita quod exitus maneriorum ponantur in

[1] *noster*] meus, M., H.
[2] *autem*] pro certo sciret, ins. H.; om. M.
[3] *Pumfreyt*] Pumfrayt, M.
[4] *archiepiscopi*] om. M., H.

A.D. 1199. June.

"cultum terrarum, et in reædificationem domorum. Quare "vobis mando, quod cum prædicti vel eorum nuncii ad vos "venerint, eis sine dilatione et difficultate custodiam mane-"riorum tradatis. Valete." Hoveden, iv. 92.

The king retains the manors until the archbishop's return.

Et ita factum est. Sed rex, pravo usus consilio, firmam maneriorum de termino Pentecostes sibi retinuit, promittens quod in reditu archiepiscopi omnia ei solveret. Archiepiscopus vero Eboracensis, cum per octo dierum itinera versus domum, peractis negotiis suis, ut supradictum est, a Roma redisset; audita morte Ricardi regis, reversus est Romam ad negotia sua secundum casus eventum reformanda.

June 20. John goes to Normandy.

Johannes vero rex Angliæ, peractis negotiis suis in Anglia, transfretavit de Anglia in Normanniam, et applicuit apud Depe, paulo ante festum Nativitatis Sancti Johannis, die Dominica in Nativitate ejusdem,[1] apud Rotomagum, et confluebat ad eum multitudo equestris et pedestris exercitus: et statim statutæ sunt treugæ inter ipsum et regem Franciæ usque in crastinum Assumptionis Sanctæ Mariæ. In ipso autem die colloquii, Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, peractis negotiis suis adversus dominum papam juxta animi sui desiderium, rediit in Normanniam, et a Johanne fratre suo honorifice et amicabiliter susceptus est. Hoveden, iv. 93.

June 24. He is at Rouen: and makes a truce with Philip.

The count of Flanders does homage to John at Rouen, August 13.

Interim Philippus comes Flandriæ devenit homo Johannis regis Angliæ apud Rotomagum,[2] ante Assumptionem Sanctæ Mariæ; et frater ejusdem comitis Flandriæ resignavit sponte sua in manu Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi præbendam de Huwstwait, quam habuit in ecclesia Eboraci ex dono Ricardi regis Angliæ. Similiter fecerunt alii quamplures, scientes donationes illas factas fuisse contra Deum, et in ecclesiæ sanctæ detrimentum; et archiepiscopus ille statim dedit prædicto fratri comitis Flandriæ præbendam quæ fuit Petri de Dinan in ecclesia Sancti Petri Eboraci. Prædictus namque Petrus jam electus erat ad episcopatum de Rennes in Britannia. Et archiepiscopus præcepit seysiari in manu sua archidiaconatum de Westrihing, quem ipse habuit in ecclesia Sancti Petri Eboraci; sed Adam de Torhovere, qui tunc temporis archidiaconatum illum possidebat, cedere noluit, fultus regis patrocinio, et capituli Eboraci auctoritate.

Geoffrey disposes of the preferment of Peter of Dinan.

Dispute about the archdeaconry of the West Riding.

Philip captures some

Interim[3] comes de Naumur, frater Philippi comitis Flandriæ, et Petrus de Duay, miles optimus, et familiaris comitis Flan- Hoveden, iv. 94.

---

[1] *ejusdem*] Sancti Johannis, M., H.

[2] *Rotomagum*] feria sexta, ins. H.; om. M.

[3] *Interim*] Henricus, ins. H.; om. M.

Hoveden, iv. 94.

driæ, et electus de Cambrai, frater prædicti Petri, capti sunt a familia regis Franciæ, et traditi sunt illi. Petrus autem de Capua, cardinalis et apostolicæ sedis legatus in Francia, in adventu suo interdixit Franciam propter prædicti electi de Cambrai captionem; et Normanniam propter retentionem Philippi Belvacensis episcopi: et antequam sententia illa relaxaretur, Philippus rex Franciæ dimisit præfatum electum abire liberum, et Johannes rex Angliæ dimisit Philippum Belvacensem episcopum abire, datis duabus millibus marcis argenti pro expensis in ipso et per ipsum factis tempore Ricardi regis Angliæ, et post mortem ejusdem[1] Ricardi usque ad diem liberationis suæ. Præterea idem episcopus Belvacensis juravit coram prædicto cardinali et aliis viris ecclesiasticis, quod de cætero in vita sua nunquam arma gestabit contra Christianos.

A.D. 1199. Flemish nobles, and the elect of Cambray.

Philip being threatened with an interdict, releases the elect of Cambray: and John releases the bishop of Beauvais.

Philippus vero rex Franciæ fecit Arturum ducem Britanniæ militem, et homagium suum recepit de Andegavia, et Pictavia, et Cenomannica, et Turonica, et Britannia, et Normannia.

Arthur knighted and invested with Richard's French dominions.

In crastino autem Assumptionis Sanctæ Mariæ, et die sequenti, fuit colloquium inter regem Angliæ et regem Franciæ per internuncios suos, inter Buteavant et Guletun, et tertia die sequenti locuti sunt reges ipsi ore ad os. Sed rex Angliæ nullam gratiam invenit apud regem Franciæ. Requisitus ergo rex Franciæ, quare sic oderat Johannem regem Angliæ, qui nunquam malum ei[2] fecerat, respondit, quod ipse sine licentia illius occupaverat Normanniam et alias terras. Debuerat enim in primis ad eum venisse, et eum requisisse de jure suo, et inde homagium fecisse. In colloquio autem illo petiit rex Franciæ ad opus suum totum Vougesin, scilicet totum quod est inter forestam de Liuns, et Secanam, et reiveram[3] de Andeli, et riveram de Ethe. Asserebat enim quod Gaufridus comes Andegaviæ, pater regis Henrici filii Matildis imperatricis, dederat illud Lodowico Grosso regi Francorum, pro auxilio suo habendo contra Stephanum regem Angliæ in adquirendo Normanniam. Præterea petiit ad opus Arturi Pictaviam, et Andegaviam, et Cenomanniam, et Turonicam, et alias fecit petitiones, quas rex Angliæ nullo modo concedere voluit, nec debuit; et sic discordes ab invicem recesserunt. Venerunt igitur ad Johannem regem Angliæ comites et barones de regno Franciæ, qui adhæserunt Ricardo regi Angliæ, et devenerunt homines Johannis regis, et juraverunt ei, quod ipsi cum rege Franciæ non componerent, nisi de consensu et

Aug. 16 and 17. Conference of John and Philip.

Hoveden, iv. 95.

Philip's grudge against John.

He demands the whole of the Vexin for himself; and for Arthur Poictou, Anjou, Maine, and Touraine.

John makes alliance with the French barons against Philip

---

[1] *ejusdem*] regis, M., H.

[2] *ei*] illi, M., H.

[3] *reiveram*] riveram, M., H.

A.D. 1199. voluntate illius; et ille juravit eis, quod ipse pacem cum rege Franciæ non faceret, nisi ipsi essent infra pacem. Hoveden, iv. 95.

Otho is chosen emperor, and Philip of Swabia excommunicated by the pope.

Interim Innocentius papa et Romani elegerunt sibi[1] imperatorem Othonem regem Alemanniæ; et Philippum ducem Suaviæ, et omnes alios electos refutaverunt. Confirmata ergo a domino papa Innocentio, et ab ecclesia Romana, electione præfati Othonis, Innocentius papa excommunicavit Philippum ducem Suaviæ, et omnes fautores suos et consiliarios et coadjutores, nisi desistant a persecutione prædicti Othonis, et publice clamatum est in Capitolio, et per totam urbem, "Vivat imperator noster Otho."

Otho promises to succour John.

Otho itaque electus imperator, mandavit Johanni regi Angliæ, avunculo suo, ut ipse modicum temporis sustineret, et differret pacem facere cum Philippo rege Franciæ; quia ipse, Deo volente, faceret illi succursum in proximo bonum, qualem imperialis celsitudo facere posset meliorem. Hoveden, iv. 96.

September. Philip takes Conches.

Interim Philippus rex Franciæ cepit Concas, castellum Rogeri de Toni, mense Septembris.

Death of queen Johanna.

Eodem mense Septembris Johanna, uxor Reymundi comitis de Sancto Egidio, quondam regina Siciliæ, soror quoque Johannis regis Angliæ, obiit in Normannia apud Rotomagum; et delata ad abbatiam Fontis Ebraudi, ibidem sepulta est inter velatas.

October. Philip takes Ballon.

Mense vero Octobris, rex Franciæ cepit castellum de Balun, quod [Gaufridus de] Burelun custodiebat, et subvertit illud. Quod cum Willelmus de Rupibus, princeps exercitus Arturi, vidisset, grave tulit, et plurimum increpavit regem Franciæ; dicens quod ita non convenerat inter illum et dominum suum Arturum. Cui rex Franciæ respondit, quod propter Arturum dominum suum non dimitteret facere voluntatem suam de adquisitis suis. Deinde rex Franciæ obsedit Lavardin; sed rex Angliæ supervenit cum exercitu suo; et rex Franciæ, relinquens obsidionem, recepit se in civitate Cenomannensi; sed rege Angliæ sequente illum cum exercitu suo, rex Franciæ reliquit Cenomannum, et abiit.

He refuses to give it up to Arthur.

He besieges Lavardin.

John drives him out of Maine.

William des Roches reconciles Arthur to John.

Interim Willelmus de Rupibus calliditate magna eripuit Arturum de custodia regis Franciæ, et pacificavit eum cum Johanne rege Angliæ, et tradidit ei civitatem Cenomanni, quam rex Franciæ et Arturus tradiderant ei in custodia.

Arthur threatened.

Eodem die dictum erat Arturo, quod rex Angliæ caperet eum, et in carcerem mitteret.

The viscount of Thouars surrenders

Eodem die vicecomes de Tuaz, qui custodiebat castellum de Chinun, venit ad regem Angliæ per mandatum ipsius apud Cenomannum, et coactus tradidit regi castellum de Chinun, Hoveden, iv. 97.

[1] *sibi*] in, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 97.

et senescalciam Andegaviæ; et rex statim tradidit castellum illud[1] Rogero constabulario Cestriæ in custodia, donec rex sibi providisset alium custodem. Nocte vero sequenti Arturus, et mater sua, et prædictus vicecomes de Tuaz, et multi alii, relicto rege Angliæ, abierunt, et receperunt se in civitate Andegavis. Mater vero Arturi, relicto Ranulpho comite Cestriæ marito suo, nupsit Guidoni de Tuaz, fratri prædicti vicecomitis de Tuaz. A.D. 1199. October. Chinon to John. Arthur and his mother fly from John.

Eodem anno obiit Hugo Glascuensis ecclesiæ electus, sexto idus Julii, et sepultus est apud Gedeworthe. Hugh elect of Glasgow dies: and

Item eodem anno, mense Octobris, Willelmus Mauveysin electus est in episcopum Glascuensis ecclesiæ. William Malvoisin is elected.

Interim Petrus de Capua, cardinalis, apostolicæ sedis legatus, qui missus erat ab Innocentio summo pontifice ad dirimendam litem inter Ricardum regem Angliæ et Philippum regem Franciæ, ad cujus instantiam præfati reges promiserant se treugas inter se per quinquennium servaturos; sed quia treugæ illæ jam defecerant, morte Ricardi regis interveniente, modis omnibus conabatur, ut treugæ illæ servarentur inter prædictum regem Franciæ et Johannem regem Angliæ, hæredem præfati Ricardi. Unde factum est, quod statutæ sunt treugæ inter illos usque ad festum Sancti Hilarii. Peter of Capua prevails on John and Philip to keep a truce until Jan. 13.

Eodem anno Philippus filius Ricardi regis Angliæ nothus, cui rex prædictus pater suus dederat castellum et honorem de Cuinac, interfecit memoratum vicecomitem de Limoges in vindictam patris sui. Philip, son of Richard, kills the viscount of Limoges.

Hoveden, iv. 98.

Eodem anno exstitit in Anglia, et in finibus ejus, tanta aquarum inundatio, quod pontes et molendini et domus asportabantur. Ponte autem de Berewic asportato, cum ex præcepto Willelmi regis Scottorum [comes Patricius custos de Berwic, et tunc temporis summus justitiarius totius regni Scottorum],[2] pontem illum de Berewic reædificare vellet, prohibitum est ei ex parte Philippi Dunelmensis episcopi, ne pontem illum in terra sua firmaret. Pons quidem ille fieri non potuit, nisi firmaretur in terra Dunelmensis episcopi, sicut prius erat. Tandem vero prædictus episcopus Dunelmensis, consilio Willelmi de Stutevile, permisit pontem illum fieri, et in terra sua firmari, salva conventione quæ facta fuerat inter ipsum regem Scotiæ et Hugonem Dunelmensem episcopum, prædecessorem suum. Floods in England. Dispute about the rebuilding of the bridge at Berwick, between the bishop of Durham and the Scots.

Eodem anno, Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et Simone decano, et Hamone thesaurario, et Reginaldo præcentore, Ada de Thornhoure, Willelmo Testard, archidiaconis, et aliis The archbishop and chapter of York, sub-

[1] *illud*] de Chinun, M., H.

[2] *comes . . . Scottorum*] om. C.

A.D. 1199. mit their disputes to the arbitration of the bishop of Lincoln, the dean of Lincoln, and master Columb.

personis ecclesiæ Eboracensis, in præsentia Petri de Capua, Sanctæ Mariæ in Via Lata diaconi cardinalis, et apostolicæ sedis legati, constitutis, Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et supradictæ personæ Eboracensis ecclesiæ, compromiserunt se judicio domini Hugonis Lincolniensis episcopi,[1] et magistri Rogeri ejusdem ecclesiæ decani, et magistri Columbæ, de controversiis suis; archiepiscopus autem promisit in verbo veritatis, quod si ipse declinasset a judicio prædictorum judicum, daret præfato decano et canonicis Eboraci ducentas marcas de pœna: et decanus et prædictæ personæ Eboracensis ecclesiæ juraverunt præcise, quod a judicio prædictorum judicum non declinarent; sed, quod ab eis judicatum fuerit, devote susciperent et devote servarent. Deinde, cum officiales Eboracensis archiepiscopi super diversis causis illos coram aliis judicibus per litteras domini papæ in placitum traherent, ipsi petierunt ab archiepiscopo prædictas ducentas marcas argenti de pœna. Dum autem idem archiepiscopus moram faceret cum rege in Normannia, Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Gaufridus Filius Petri regis justitiarius, ad preces et servitia capituli Eboraci mandaverunt regi, et consuluerunt, ne ipse permitteret archiepiscopum Eboraci sine illo in Angliam redire. Asserebant enim, quod si ille in Angliam venisset, gladium mitteret, et non pacem.

Hoveden, iv. 98.

The arrangement interrupted.

Hoveden, iv. 99.

The archbishop of Canterbury takes part against Geoffrey.

John's assize of wines.

Eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ statuit, quod nullum tonellum vini Pictaviensis vendatur carius quam pro viginti solidis, et nullum tonellum vini Andegavensis carius quam viginti quatuor solidis, et nullum tonellum[2] Francigenæ carius viginti quinque solidis, nisi vinum illud fuerit[3] adeo bonum quod aliquis velit dare pro eo circa duas marcas ad altius. Præterea statutum est,[4] quod nullum sextarium vini Pictavis vendatur carius quam pro quatuor denariis, et nullum sextarium vini albi vendatur carius quam pro sex denariis. Statuit etiam, quod omnia tonella, quæ de cætero venient in Angliam, postquam venerint de Rech post tempus præsentis musti, sint de mutatione; et hoc statuit teneri ab octavis Sancti Andreæ et deinceps:[5] et præcepit ad hoc servandum, in singulis civitatibus et burgis in quibus vina vendantur, duodecim custodes constitui,[6] et jurent quod hanc assisam facient teneri et observari. Si vero vinatorem, qui vinum vendat ad brocam contra hanc assisam, invenerint, corpus ejus capiat vicecomes, et salvo custodiri faciat in prisona

---

[1] *episcopi*] ecclesiæ, C., M.
[2] *tonellum*] vini, ins. M., H.
[3] *fuerit*] sit, M., H.
[4] *statutum est*] statuit, M., H.
[5] *et deinceps*] Decembris, ins. M.
[6] *constitui*] constituti, C.

Hoveden, iv. 99.

domini regis, donec inde habeat aliud præceptum; et omnia tenementa sua capiantur ad opus domini regis per visum prædictorum duodecim hominum. Si quis etiam inventus fuerit, qui tonellum[1] contra prædictam assisam vendiderit vel emerit, capiatur uterque, et salvo in prisona custodiatur, donec aliud inde præcipiatur: et quod nullum vinum ematur ad regrateriam de vinis quæ applicuerint in Anglia. Sed hoc primum regis statutum vix inchoatum, statim est adnihilatum; quia mercatores hanc assisam sustinere non poterant. Et data est eis licentia vendendi sextercium de vino albo pro octo denariis, et sextercium de vino rubeo pro sex denariis; et sic repleta est terra potu et potatoribus.

A.D. 1199. John's assize of wines.

Hoveden, iv. 100.

Eodem anno, cum Willelmus rex Scottorum esset in proposito veniendi in Angliam cum exercitu suo, accessit ad feretrum Sanctæ Margaretæ, quondam Scottorum reginæ, quod est apud Dunfermelin, et pernoctavit ibi, et Divino oraculo in somnis monitus, ne Angliam cum exercitu suo invaderet, permisit exercitum suum domum redire.

The king of Scots is warned by a vision not to invade England.

Eodem anno decisa est illa vetustissima causa et controversia, quæ fuerat inter Turonensem et Dolensem ecclesiam, super jure metropolitico quod ecclesia Dolensis sibi vendicabat contra Turonensem ecclesiam, in hunc modum. Disposuerat dominus Cœlestinus papa bonæ memoriæ, ut tempore suo vetustissimæ querelæ atque tritissimæ,[2] quæ inter Turonensem et Dolensem ecclesiam hactenus agitata est, finis imponeretur, Domino ministrante. Hac itaque de causa parti utrique diem peremptoriam assignavit, qua sufficienter instructæ rationibus universis, quibus se scirent indigere[3] ad causam, omni appellatione, dilatione, et excusatione cessantibus, apostolico se deberent conspectui præsentare. Sed quia datum non erat desuper ut per ipsum terminaretur quæstio supradicta, sublatus est enim de medio antequam dictus terminus advenisset, dominus Innocentius papa, quondam Lotharius diaconus cardinalis Sanctorum Sergii et Bachi, succedens eidem domino Cœlestino, affectans, quod a prædecessore suo de quæstione præfata per citationem partium inchoatum exstiterat, per decisionem[4] negotii omnino, juvante Domino, terminare: causam ipsam terminandam ab ipso Divina forte provisio conservarat; pro eadem causa partes Romanam ecclesiam coegit adire. Quia tamen archiepiscopus Turonensis debilitatem totius corporis patiebatur permaximam, ad præsentiam summi pontificis in persona propria non accessit. Discretos siquidem viros et providos, can-

Dispute between Tours and Dol about the pall.

Day fixed by Celestine III. for the decision.

Hoveden, iv. 101.

Innocent III. summons the parties to Rome.

[1] *tonellum*] vel tonella, ins. M., H.
[2] *tritissimæ*] tristissimæ, C.
[3] *indigere*] redigere, C., M.
[4] *decisionem*] discisionem, C.

A.D. 1199. The archbishop of Tours sends his proctors.

cellarium ecclesiæ suæ videlicet, et tres canonicos suos, cum quibusdam aliis loco sui mittere procuravit. Existentibus autem in præsentia summi pontificis, et fratrum suorum cardinalium, Dolensi electo, et dictis præfati archiepiscopi nunciis, et ex diversis multa hinc et inde super juris sui defensione proponentibus; supradictus papa [1] Innocentius cœpit eos, sicut benignissimus pater cum fratribus suis, ad pacem inducere; et ut spatium deliberandi haberent, utrique parti audientiam per intervalla differret. Et licet ad hoc inducti essent Turronenses nuncii, ut Dolensi ecclesiæ archiepiscopalem sedem concederent cum duobus suffraganeis tantum, ita ut domino Turronensi tanquam primati subesset, et de manu ejus, vel ecclesiæ Turronensis, pallium a domino papa eidem ecclesiæ Turronensi missum, idem Dolensis reciperet, et consecrationem; quia tantum duo episcopatus contigui a Turronensibus nunciis non concedebantur eidem Dolensi electo, pacem hanc nullatenus acceptavit; quæ utique refutatio in ejus redundavit incommodum, ut in sequentibus audietur. Videns itaque dominus papa, quod per concordiam non posset dicta [2] quæstio terminari, citationes et allegationes hinc inde in pleno consistorio licentius ac plenius intellexit. Quibus auditis et [3] intellectis, ad diffinitivam tandem sententiam voluit cum fratribus properare. Sed iterum viam pacis quærens, eos ad concordiam invitavit. Verum cum ad ultimum nil posset in hac parte proficere, pro tribunali sedens dominus Innocentius, fratribus ei assistentibus, sententiam contra Dolensem ecclesiam pro Turronensi ecclesia, secundo papatus sui anno, publice promulgavit, videlicet, ut Dolensis ecclesia, tanquam suffraganea, Turronensi ecclesiæ, velut metropolitanæ, omni exemptione seu exceptione seposita, de cætero subjaceret; episcopus Dolensis ecclesiæ obedientiam et reverentiam Turronensi archiepiscopo [4] exhiberet; cum electus esset, confirmationem, [et cum tempus exigeret, ab ipso reciperet consecrationem:] [5] super hoc generale privilegium, multiplicibus argumentis et rationibus annotatum, ecclesiæ Turonensi concedens, et archiepiscopo Rotomagensi, et quibusdam aliis, super eodem apostolica scripta transmittens. Quæ omnia plenius ex subsequentibus apparebunt. Cæterum cum Dolensis electus contra se datam sententiam audivisset, turbatus, nec immerito, ac tristis plurimum, ad præsentiam domini papæ accessit; et se volens dimittere, ipsi

Innocent attempts a compromise.

The church of Tours refuses to give up two contiguous sees to Dol.

The pope hears both sides.

He gives sentence against Dol.

The elect of Dol resigns his claims to the see, and the pope re-

Hoveden, iv. 101.

Hoveden, iv. 102.

---

[1] *papa*] dominus, M., H.
[2] *dicta*] prædicta, M., H.
[3] *et*] plenius, ins. M., H.
[4] *archiepiscopo*] in omnibus, ins. H.; om. M.
[5] *et . . . consecrationem*] om. C. M.

Hoveden, iv. 102.

domino papæ Dolensem ecclesiam resignavit. Cui dominus papa, cum hoc vidisset, absque mora respondit: "Tu sponsus "es, et te tua sponsa exigit. Illud[1] facere absque licentia "nostra, quod nolumus, non[2] potes; tibi in virtute obedientiæ "præcipimus, ut post vocationem factam ab archiepiscopo "Turronensi, infra quadraginta dies ad ipsum, omni excusa-

Hoveden, iv. 103.

"tione postposita,[3] tanquam ad metropolitanum tuum, recep-"turus ab ipso munus consecrationis, accedas."

A.D. 1199. fuses to receive his resignation. He bids him go to Tours for consecration.

Eodem anno magister Gilardus, Menevensis electus, suscitavit controversiam super [jure][4] metropolitico ecclesiæ Menevensis, jus ejusdem ecclesiæ, et pristinam metropolitani dignitatem coram domino papa[5] Innocentio, et cardinalibus suis,[6] publice protestando. Est autem sciendum, quod postquam[7] Dubricius,[8] Urbis Legionum archiepiscopus, eremum eligens, beato David suæ dignitatis cessit honorem; beatus David ex tunc sedem archiepiscopalem usque Meneviam transtulit, et ibidem archiepiscopus factus est; et post illum viginti quatuor ibidem pallio usi sunt, et plena metropolitica dignitate; quorum ultimus fuit Sanctus Sampson, qui propter ictericiam passionem, qua peste catervatim homines in Guallia[9] tunc temporis occubuerunt, navigio in Armonicam Britanniam transiens, in ecclesia Dolensi, tunc forte vacante, præfectus est; et pallio Sancti David, quod secum asportaverat, ibidem usus est; qua occasione illa Dolensis ecclesia continue Turonensi ecclesiæ, pallium affectando, rebellis exstiterat, usque ad tempora prædicti Innocentii papæ tertii, cujus anno secundo causa est decisa, et illa adventitia dignitas Dolensis ecclesiæ est abjudicata.

Giraldus Cambrensis claims the metropolitan dignity for the see of S. David's. History of the see. Flight of S. Sampson to Armorica with his pall. Origin of the claims of Dol.

[10] Menevensis autem ecclesia eadem occasione, vel propter ignaviam vel propter paupertatem, pallio semper hactenus caruerunt. Omnes tamen episcopi Menevensis ecclesiæ, scilicet novemdecim episcopi, a discessu Sancti Sampsonis usque ad tempus Henrici regis Angliæ primi, omni dignitate archiepiscopali usi sunt, excepto pallio; et habuerunt suffraganeos septem, scilicet Landavensem, et de Sancto Paterno in Kerdikan,[11] quæ

Hoveden, iv. 104.

The successors of S. Sampson had no pall, but were archbishops.

---

[1] *Illud*] Istud, M., H.

[2] *non*] tu non, M., H.

[3] *postposita*] posthabita, M., H.

[4] *jure*] om. C., M.

[5] *papa*] tertio, ins, M., H.

[6] *suis*] videlicet Octoviano Hostiensi, et Portuensi, et Johanne Albanensi episcopis cardinalibus, et Jordano de Fossa Nova, et Sefredo, et Johanne de Sancto Paulo, et Johanne de Salerno, et Gratiano, et Hugelino, Huguicione cardinalibus, M., H.

[7] *postquam*] beatus, ins. M., H.

[8] *Dubricius*] Dubeicius, C.

[9] *Guallia*] Gallia, C.

[10] "Nota qualiter ecclesia Mene-"vensis caruit pallio."

[11] *Kerdikan*] Kirkedikan, M., C.

A.D. 1199. Their suffragans.

sedes, quia parochiani pastorem suum interfecerunt, olim obsolevit, et Menevensi diocesi est adunata; et Pangornensem et de Sancto Assaf: in Wallia vero ab Anglis dudum occupata trans Sabrinam, Cestrensem et Herefordensem et Wygornensem. Prædictus vero rex Henricus Walliam regno suo subjugavit, et ideo prædictam Menevensem ecclesiam, et alias Walliæ ecclesias, suffraganeas Menevensis ecclesiæ, ecclesiæ regni sui, scilicet Cantuariæ, subjicere cupiens, Bernardum clericum de camera sua, quem in Menevensi ecclesia Wilfrido episcopo subrogari procuravit, et apud Cantuariam per regiam violentiam consecrari fecit: et hic fuit primus Menevensis ecclesiæ episcopus a Cantuariensi archiepiscopo consecratus; et post eum David et Petrus, a regibus Angliæ compulsi, similiter a Cantuariensi archiepiscopo consecrati,[1] præstitis sacramentis contra canones extortis de non suscitanda[2] lite super jure metropolitico contra Cantuariensem ecclesiam in perpetuum. Bernardus tamen, defuncto Henrico rege primo, movit quæstionem super jure ecclesiæ suæ metropolitico contra Teobaldum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum. Unde papa Eugenius in hac forma scripsit Teobaldo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo;

Hoveden, iv. 104.

Henry I. makes S. David's subject to Canterbury.

The bishops profess obedience to Canterbury.

Bishop Bernard revives the claim of independence.

Epistola Eugenii papæ, pro Bernardo Sancti David.[3]

Hoveden, iv. 105.

Letter of Eugenius III. adduced in proof of the claim of S. David's. (A.D. 1147, June 29.)

" Eugenius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabili fratri " Teobaldo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, salutem et apostolicam " benedictionem. Venerabilis frater noster Bernardus, episco- " pus Sancti David, [ad nostram præsentiam veniens, ecclesiam " Sancti David] olim metropolim fuisse viva voce asseruit, et " eandem dignitatem sibi a nobis restitui postulavit. Cum " autem circa petitionem istam invigilans, diu in curia nostra " commoratus esset; tu, frater archiepiscope, tandem, eo præ- " sente, ex adverso consurgens, in præsentia nostra adversus " eum querelam deposuisti, quod debitam, tanquam primo me- " tropolitano, obedientiam subtraxisset, tibi quoque inobediens " et rebellis existeret, cum autem a prædecessore tuo, tanquam " a primo metropolitano, consecratus esset, et, viva voce et " scripto, Cantuariensi ecclesiæ professionem fecisset, et in " multis postea, tanquam alii suffraganei, tibi obedisset et

[1] *consecrati*] "Nota qualiter ec- " clesia Menevensis subjugata fuit " ecclesiæ Cantuariensi." M. in marg.

[2] *suscitanda*] suscitante, C., M.

[3] *Epistola Eugenii papæ ad Theobaldum Cantuariensem pro Bernardo Sancti David de dignitate ejusdem ecclesiæ metropolitanæ*, M.

Hoveden, iv. 105.

" astitisset. Ille vero consecrationem negare non potuit; sed " professionem se fecisse, et obedientiam exhibuisse, omnino " negavit: quod tu audiens, duos testes in medium produxisti, " testimonium perhibentes, quod ipse, illis videntibus et audi- " entibus, post consecrationem, et viva voce et scripto, Can- " tuariensi ecclesiæ professionem fecisset. Nos igitur auditis " utriusque partis rationibus, et diligenter inquisitis, et testi- " bus tuis studiose examinatis, communicato fratrum nostrorum " consilio, juramenta eorum recepimus, et ipse episcopus tibi, " tanquam primo metropolitano, obedientiam et reverentiam " exhibeat, justitia dictante, præcepimus. Unde, quoniam " singulis ecclesiis et ecclesiasticis personis suam dignitatem " et justitiam volumus conservare, Beati Lucæ festivitate " proximi sequentis anni, tibi et ipsi diem præfiximus, ut " tunc temporis præsentibus partibus, de dignitate ecclesiæ " Sancti David, et libertate sua, rei veritatem cognoscamus, " et quod justum fuerit, auctore Domino, exinde statuamus. " Datum Meldis, iii°. kalendas Julii."

A.D. 1199.

He commands bishop Bernard to obey archbishop Theobald; but fixes a day for further hearing.

Hoveden, iv. 106.

Epistolam autem istam prædictus magister Gilardus[1] invenit in registro Eugenii papæ. Cujus rei occasione, et ad prædicti Gilardi instantiam, jus ecclesiæ suæ publice in curia Romana protestantis, Innocentius papa Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum super statu Menevensis ecclesiæ et dignitate metropolitica litteris suis citavit, quas etiam litteras prædictus Gilardus, ad perpetuam rei gestæ memoriam, in ejusdem papæ regesto scribi procuravit. Præcepit etiam idem papa prædicto archiepiscopo, quatenus sæpedicto Gilardo Menevensi electo ita consecrationem impenderet, quod sacramentum illicitum, quale extorquere solebant prædecessores sui ab episcopis Sancti David, scilicet de non prosequendo jure metropolitico contra Cantuariensem ecclesiam, non exigeret, sed tantum canonicam obedientiam juxta communem formam faceret. Præcepit etiam idem papa Lincolniensi, Dunelmensi, et Elyensi episcopis, quod si archiepiscopus Cantuariensis sæpedictum Gilardum consecrare differret, ipsi apostolica auctoritate freti ipsum consecrare non differrent.

The pope cites the archbishop of Canterbury to answer Giraldus, and to consecrate him without the unlawful profession of obedience; if he refuses, the bishops of Durham, Ely, and Lincoln are to do so.

Eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ fuit in Normannia apud Burum[2] die Natalis Domini, quæ Sabbato evenit, et erat illud Natale Domini primum post primam coronationem Johannis regis Angliæ.

Dec. 25. John spends Christmas at Bur.

---

[1] *Gilardus*] Altered by bishop Bale to *Giraldus*, in each case, in MS. M.

[2] *Burum*] Burun, C.

A.D. 1200. January. Conference between John and Philip. Terms of peace between John and Philip.

Post Natale Domini, idem Johannes rex Angliæ et Philippus rex Franciæ convenerunt ad colloquium inter Andeli et Gual-lun: in quo colloquio convenit inter eos, quod Lodowicus filius regis Franciæ duceret in uxorem filiam Adelfonsi regis Castellæ, neptem Johannis regis Angliæ; et idem Johannes rex Angliæ daret et quieta clamaret præfato filio regis Franciæ, cum nepte sua, civitatem Ebroicarum cum toto comitatu, et omnes munitiones et castella quæ rex Franciæ habuit in Nor-mannia, die qua Ricardus rex Angliæ fuit vivus et mortuus; et insuper daret ei triginta millia marcarum argenti: et juravit quod nullum auxilium faceret Othoni nepoti suo, neque de pecunia neque de hominibus, ad imperium Romanum ad-quirendum. Sed hæc omnia dilationem ceperunt usque ad octavas Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Hoveden, iv. 106. Hoveden, iv. 107.

Truce de-ferred to Midsummer.

John sends for his niece to marry Philip's son.

Post colloquium illud Johannes rex misit Alienor matrem suam ad Adelfonsum regem Castellæ, pro filia sua maritanda Lodowico filio Philippi regis Franciæ.

John comes to England and takes a carucage. He goes to York to meet the king of Scots; who fails to come.

Interim Johannes rex Angliæ transfretavit de Normannia in Angliam, et cepit de unaquaque carucata terræ totius Angliæ iii. solidos de auxilio. Et in Quadragesima venit rex Johannes Eboracum, sperans quod Willelmus rex Scottorum ad eum veniret, sicut mandaverat; sed non venit, et rex Angliæ rediit in Normanniam.[1]

Philip re-fuses to re-ceive his wife, and France is put under interdict.

Eodem mense Januarii, statim post Natale Domini, cum induratum esset cor Philippi regis Franciæ, nec blandis nec asperis posset emolliri, ut adulteram suam dimitteret, et legitimam[2] suam resumeret, prædictus Petrus de Capua, cardinalis et apostolicæ sedis legatus, dedit sententiam inter-dicti in regnum Franciæ, et abiit, præcipiens clero in virtute obedientiæ, ut nulla Divina permitterentur celebrari præter bap-tismata et pœnitentias: sed papa Innocentius, hanc confirmans sententiam, excepit omnes qui susceperunt vel susciperent crucem peregrinationis Jerosolimitanæ, statuens quod ipsi Missam audirent, et sepulturam Christianorum haberent, cæteri autem omnes Missa et sepultura Christiana carerent. Cum autem rex Franciæ in proposito maligno immobilis per-sisteret, proposuit dominus papa sententiam illam interdicti relaxare, et ipsum regem Franciæ excommunicare, dicens: "Melius est ut unus puniatur, quam tota gens pereat." Quo Hoveden, iv. 112. Hoveden, iv. 113.

Exceptions in favour of crusaders.

The pope threatens

[1] *Normanniam*] Here Hoveden inserts a copy of the letter of Inno-cent III., dated Dec. 27, 1199, on the collection of money for the cru-sade. It is not in M., V., or C.: and is omitted in several MSS. of Hoveden. See Hoveden, iv.107–112.

[2] *legitimam*] sponsam, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 113.

audito, rex Franciæ frequenter misit nuncios suos ad summum pontificem, petens ut sententia interdicti relaxaretur: et quamvis primo et secundo repulsam pateretur, tamen tandem a domino papa definitum est, mediantibus nunciis regis Franciæ et jurantibus coram domino papa et cardinalibus suis, quod ipse rex Franciæ adulteram suam dimitteret, et sponsam suam Botildam resumeret, et honorifice sicut reginam et sponsam suam tractaret; si autem infra annum voluerit rex Franciæ divortium fieri inter illos, hoc significabitur regi Dacorum, et cæteris amicis prædictæ reginæ, ubi et quando rex Franciæ voluerit divortium illud fieri, si de jure fieri debeat, ut amici reginæ interesse possint; et idem significabitur domino papæ et curiæ Romanæ, ut ex parte eorum intersint viri discreti, ut tam solemne divortium juste fiat.

A.D. 1200. January. to relax the interdict and excommunicate Philip.

Philip consents to take back his wife; the process of divorce to be begun *de novo*.

Eodem anno Sanctius rex Navarræ, audiens damna et inopportunitates quas Aldefonsus rex Castellæ, et rex Arragoniæ, sibi et terræ suæ faciebant, qui illam fere totam occupaverant, recessit ab Africa, et venit in terram suam, et cepit treugas cum prædictis regibus adversariis suis per tres annos duraturas.

The king of Navarre returns from Africa and makes peace with his neighbours.

Hoveden, iv. 114.

Anno ab Incarnatione Domini millesimo ducentesimo, Johannes rex Angliæ fuit in Anglia apud Wygorniam die Paschæ, quæ quinto idus Aprilis evenit; et paulo post transfretavit de Anglia in Normanniam.

April 9. John keeps Easter at Worcester.

Interim Alienor regina, mater Johannis regis,[1] quam ipse miserat ad Aldefonsum regem Castellæ pro filia ejusdem regis Castellæ maritanda Lodowico filio Philippi regis Franciæ, rediit, recepta præfata regis Castellæ filia. Quæ cum venisset ad civitatem Burdegalensem, et propter solemnem diem Paschæ ibidem moram faceret, venit ad eam Marchadeus princeps Braibacenorum, et feria secunda in hebdomada Paschæ idem Marchadeus a quodam serviente Brandini in eadem civitate Burdegalensi interfectus est. Regina vero Alienor, senio et longi itineris labore fatigata, transtulit se ad abbatiam [Fontis][2] Eubraudi, et ibi remansit: filia autem regis Castellæ, et Elyas archiepiscopus Burdegalensis, et cæteri qui eam comitabantur, processerunt usque in Normanniam, et tradiderunt eam Johanni regi Angliæ avunculo suo.

Blanche of Castile is brought to Bourdeaux.

Apr. 10. Marcadeus killed at Bourdeaux.

Queen Eleanor goes to Fontevraud: Blanche to Normandy.

In octavis autem Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Philippus rex Franciæ et Johannes rex Angliæ convenerunt ad colloquium inter Buteavant, castellum regis Angliæ, et Gule-

May 22. Meeting between John and Philip.

---

[1] *regis*] Angliæ, ins. M., H. | [2] *Fontis*] om. C., M.

A.D. 1200. May 22. Philip restores Evreux and his other conquests to John, who gives them to Lewis on his marriage.

tun, castellum regis Franciæ, xi. kalendas Junii, feria secunda. In quo colloquio rex Franciæ dedit[1] Johanni regi Angliæ civitatem Ebroicarum, et totum comitatum, et omnia castella et civitates et prædia quæ occupaverat[2] per guerram, et in aliis terris regis Angliæ; et Johannes rex Angliæ statim devenit [inde] homo Philippi regis Franciæ; et in continenti dedit universa illa Lodowico filio prædicti regis Franciæ, in maritagium cum nepte sua, filia Adelfonsi regis Castellæ. Hoveden, iv. 115.

May 23. Marriage of Lewis of France with Blanche of Castile, at Portmort.

Et[3] x^a. kalendas Junii, feria 3^tia, prædicta filia regis Castellæ desponsata est Lodowico filio Philippi regis Franciæ, apud Purmor in Normannia, a prædicto Burdegalensi archiepiscopo, præsentibus multis episcopis et aliis viris religiosis, comitibus et baronibus multis de regno Franciæ. Regnum enim Franciæ erat tunc temporis sub interdicto, propter Botildam reginam, quam rex Franciæ dimiserat. Et statim post illam desponsationem, præfatus Lodowicus duxit secum in Franciam sponsam suam filiam regis Castellæ. Et dum hæc fierent, eodem die Philippus rex Franciæ et Johannes rex Angliæ fuerunt simul ad colloquium apud Vernun, tunc temporis villam regis Franciæ; et Arturus dux Britanniæ devenit homo Johannis regis Angliæ patrui sui, de Britannia et aliis terris suis, consensu et voluntate regis Franciæ: sed Arturus, traditione regis Angliæ, remansit in custodia regis Franciæ.

John and Philip meet at Vernon.

Arthur does homage to John for Brittany, but stays with Philip.

Abbacies filled up.

Eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ dedit Zachariæ priori de Sancto Albano abbatiam de Burgo, et priori de Burgo dedit abbatiam de Rameseye. Hoveden, iv. 116.

Robert of Dreux dies.

Item eodem anno Robertus comes de Drues, frater Philippi Belvacensis episcopi, obiit.

Apr. 9. Rouen burned.

Item eodem anno, die[4] Paschæ, quæ quinto idus Aprilis evenit, combusta est fere tota civitas Rotomagi, cum ecclesia sedis archiepiscopalis et aliis ecclesiis multis.

Otho king of the Germans asks for the counties of York and Poictou, and his legacies from Richard. John declines to give them up.

Eodem anno Otho rex Alemanniæ, imperator,[5] misit Henricum ducem Saxoniæ et Willelmum Wintoniensem, fratres suos, ad regem Angliæ avunculum suum, petens ab eo comitatum Eboraci, et comitatum Pictavis, quos Ricardus rex Angliæ ei dederat, et duas partes totius thesauri ejusdem Ricardi,[6] et omnia exennia, quæ idem Ricardus rex Angliæ ei dimisit.[7] Sed Johannes rex Angliæ nihil horum quæ petebat facere volebat, propter jus-

---

[1] *dedit*] reddidit, M., H.

[2] *occupaverat*] in Normannia, ins. H.; om. M.

[3] *Et*] in crastino, scilicet, ins. M., H.

[4] *die*] in ipsa die, ins. M., H.

[5] *imperator*] electus Romanorum imperator, ins. H.; om. M.

[6] *Ricardi*] regis Angliæ, ins. M., H.

[7] *dimisit*] divisit, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 116.

jurandum quod juraverat regi Franciæ, videlicet, quod nullum auxilium faceret ipsi Othoni contra ducem Suaviæ. A.D. 1200.

Eodem anno, paulo ante festum Sancti Petri ad Vincula, habitum est campestre bellum inter prædictum regem Alemanniæ et Philippum ducem Suaviæ, apud Bruneswic;[1] in quo prælio Otho exstitit victor, et cepit plusquam ducentos milites de familia dicti[2] ducis. July. Battle at Brunswick. Victory of Otho.

Hoveden, iv. 117.

Eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ dedit Philippo Dunelmensi episcopo licentiam habendi singulis annis nundinas apud Hoveden et apud Alvertun. Et Willelmo de Stuteville[3] dedit idem rex licentiam habendi singulis annis nundinas apud Buttercram,[4] et apud Cotingham, et in eisdem locis firmare castella. Et idem rex dedit Ricardo Malebise licentiam firmandi castellum apud Quelric:[5] quod cum pene firmaret, cives Eboraci considerantes hoc fieri in eorum damnum et opprobrium, effecerunt adversus Willelmum de Stuteville, tunc vicecomitem Eboraci, quod ipse ex parte regis prohibuit Ricardo Malebise, ne ipse castellum illud firmaret, et ita remansit. John grants fairs at Howden, Northallerton, Buttercram, and Cottingham. Richard Malebysse has licence to fortify a castle at Wheldrake, but it is withdrawn.

Eodem anno Willelmus de Stutevilla dedit Johanni regi Angliæ tria millia marcarum argenti pro judicio habendo de baronia Willelmi de Moubrai,[6] quam idem Willelmus[7] calumniatus est in curia regis adversus præfatum Willelmum.[8] Est autem sciendum quod Robertus Grundebeof, proavus hujus Willelmi de Stutevilla, habuit baroniam illam de adquisitione Angliæ, sed ille Robertus,[9] relicto Henrico rege Angliæ, filio Willelmi Bastard regis, qui Angliam bello sibi subjugavit, adhæsit Roberto Curtehose, duci Normanniæ, calumnianti regnum Angliæ de jure paterno contra prædictum Henricum regem Angliæ, fratrem suum juniorem; et in prælio quod fuit inter illos duos fratres,[10] apud Tenerchebray, Henricus rex Angliæ exstitit victor, et cepit Robertum[11] fratrem suum, et tenuit eum in carcere usque ad consummationem vitæ suæ: similiter Robertum Grundebeof; et baroniam suam dedit Henricus rex Nigello[12] de Aubeni, proavo istius Willelmi Moubrai. Præ- A.D. 1201. Jan. 21. Lawsuit between William Stuteville and William Mowbray. Statement of the case.

Hoveden, iv. 118.

---

[1] *Bruneswic*] Bruneswik, M.; Bruneswich, H.

[2] *dicti*] Suaviæ, M., H.

[3] *Stuteville*] Stotevile, M.

[4] *Buttercram*] Butterciam, M., C.

[5] *Quelric*] Queldric, M., H.

[6] *Moubrai*] Munbray, M.

[7] *Willelmus*] de Stutevile, ins. M., H.

[8] *Willelmum*] de Munbray, ins. M., H.

[9] *Robertus*] Grundebeof, ins. M., H.

[10] *fratres*] videlicet Henricum regem Angliæ et Robertum Curtehose fratrem suum ducem Normanniæ, ins. M., H.

[11] *Robertum*] Curtehose, ins. M., H.

[12] *Nigello*] Nicholao, C.

A.D. 1201. In the time of Henry II. Roger Mowbray had given Kirby Moorside to Robert Stuteville by way of compromise.

terea sciendum est, quod Robertus de Stuteville, pater dicti[1] Willelmi de Stutevile, tempore regis Henrici secundi, calumniatus erat præfatam baroniam adversus Rogerum de Moubray, patrem præfati Willelmi de Moubrai; et convenit inter eos sic, quod Rogerus de Moubrai dedit Roberto de Stuteville Kirkeby in Moreshefd, cum pertinentiis suis pro feodo decem militum, pro homagio suo, et pro quieta clamantia calumniæ suæ. Sed quia hæc in curia regis Angliæ et ejus munimine non fuerant confirmata, prædictus Willelmus de Stutevilla iterum suscitavit litem de baronia illa in curia Johannis regis. Cumque super hoc diu certatum esset, tandem consilio regni, et voluntate regis, pax et finalis concordia facta est inter prædictos Willelmum de Stuteville et Willelmum de Moubray in hunc modum: quod Willelmus de Stuteville renunciavit calumniæ suæ quam habuit adversus Willelmum de Moubrai super baronia sua, et Willelmus de Moubrai dedit Willelmo de Stuteville pro homagio suo, et pro renunciatione juris sui, in augmentum, feoda x.[2] militum, et duodecim libratas reddituum. Et sic remissis omnibus querelis hinc et inde, facti sunt amici coram Johanne rege Angliæ, secundo anno[3] regni sui, apud Lue in Lindisseya, villam Lincolniensis episcopi, Dominica prima Septuagesimæ. Hoveden, iv. 118.

William Stuteville renewed his claim, and the question was now settled;

at Louth in Lindsey.

A.D. 1200. Philip allows the Jews to return to Paris.

Eodem anno Philippus rex Franciæ dedit Judæis licentiam habitandi Parisius, et in aliis civitatibus suis, quos ipse primo anno regni sui ab eis expulerat. Hoveden, iv. 119.

John visits Acquitaine.

Item eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ, statim post concordiam inter ipsum et regem Franciæ factam, profectus est in Aquitanniam cum exercitu magno; sed non est inventus qui resisteret ei.

John is divorced from his wife Hawisia of Gloucester.

Eodem anno factum est divortium inter Johannem regem Angliæ et Hauwis[4] uxorem suam, filiam Willelmi comitis Gloecestriæ, per Helyam Burdegalensem archiepiscopum, et per Willelmum Pictavensem episcopum:[5] erant enim affines in 3^tio^ gradu consanguinitatis. Facto itaque divortio inter eos,[6] dictus rex Johannes, consilio domini sui Philippi regis Franciæ, duxit sibi in uxorem Ysabel filiam Admari comitis de Engolismo, quam prædictus comes, consilio et voluntate Ricardi regis Angliæ, prius dederat Hugoni le Brun, comiti de La Marche;

He marries Isabella of Angouleme; who had been be-

[1] *dicti*] prædicti M., H.

[2] *x.*] novem, H.

[3] *secundo anno*] This belongs to the year 1201, not to 1200, as placed both here and in Hoveden. See Hoveden, iv. p. cxiv.

[4] *Hauwis*] Hawis, M., H.

[5] *Pictavensem*] et per Henricum Sanctonensem episcopos, ins. M., H.

[6] *eos*] Johannem regem Angliæ et Hawys uxorem suam, ipse rex Angliæ, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 119.

quam idem comes in suam per verba de præsenti receperat;[1] sed quia ipsa nondum annos nubiles attigerat, noluit eam prædictus Hugo sibi in facie ecclesiæ copulare. Videns ergo pater puellæ quod Johannes rex Angliæ eam affectaret, eripuit eam de custodia Hugonis le Brun, et dedit eam Johanni regi Angliæ in uxorem; et statim desponsata est eidem regi Angliæ, apud Engolismum, per Helyam Burdegalensem archiepiscopum.

A.D. 1200. trothed to Hugh le Brun.

Hoveden, iv. 120.

John's marriage at Angoulême.

Item eodem anno orta gravis est dissensio inter scholares et cives Parisius, cujus origo talis fuit. Erat itaque Parisius quidam scholaris nobilis Theutonicus, qui erat unus electorum in episcopum de Leges. Hujus serviens, cum in taberna vinum emeret, verberatus est, et vas suum vinarium fractum est. Quo audito, factus est concursus clericorum Teutonicorum; et intrantes tabernam vulneraverunt hospitem,[2] et plagis impositis abierunt, relinquentes eum semivivum. Factus est clamor populi, et commota est civitas, ita quod Thomas præpositus Parisius, cum plebe civitatis armata armatus, fecit insultum in hospitium clericorum Teutonicorum; in quorum conflictu nobilis ille scholaris[3] prædictus interfectus est cum quibusdam suorum. Magistri scholarum[4] igitur abeuntes ad Philippum regem Franciæ, conquesti sunt ei de Thoma præposito Parisius, et de illius complicibus, qui interfecerunt prædictos scholares: ad quorum instantiam captus est præfatus Thomas, captique sunt complices sui quidam, et incarcerati; quidam autem illorum fugerunt, relictis domibus et facultatibus suis: rex quidem Franciæ iratus, fecit domus illorum demoliri, et vineas et arbores eorum fructiferas exstirpari. De præposito autem illo definitum est, quod ipse in carcere regis non exiturus servetur, donec se judicio aquæ vel ferri mundaverit; et si perierit, suspendatur; et si mundus fuerit, abjuret regnum in misericordia regis. Attamen scholares, miserti illius, supplicaverunt regi Franciæ, ut præpositus ille et complices sui more scholarium in scholis flagellati, essent quieti, et facultatibus suis restituti. Sed rex Franciæ hoc concedere noluit, dicens quod multum derogaret honori suo, si alius quam ipse vindictam sumeret de malefactoribus suis. Præterea rex Franciæ, timens quod magistri scholarum et scholares recederent a civitate sua, satisfecit eis, statuens quod de cætero nullus clericus trahatur ad sæculare examen propter aliquod delictum quod fecerit; sed si clericus

Riot at Paris between the German students and the town's people.

A noble German clerk killed.

Philip at the instance of the masters of the schools imprisons the provost of Paris.

Hoveden iv. 121.

Philip threatens him with the ordeal.

The scholars beg that he may be whipped in the schools.

Philip makes new regulations for the relations of the scholars and citizens.

---

[1] *receperat*] et ipsa illum in suum receperat per verba de præsenti, ins. H.; om. M.

[2] *hospitem*] domus, ins. M., H.

[3] *scholaris*] qui erat unus de electis in episcopum de Legis, ins. M., H.

[4] *scholarum*] Parisius, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1200. deliquerit, tradatur episcopo, et secundum judicium cleri tractetur. Statuit etiam idem rex Franciæ, quod quicunque fuerit præpositus Parisius, juret quod fidem servabit clericis, salva fidelitate regis. Præterea idem rex scholaribus dedit firmam pacem suam, et eam eis carta sua confirmavit. Præpositus autem ille, cum per multos dies in carcere regis detentus fuisset, per fugam evadere proposuit; et cum per murum dimitteretur, fractus est funis, et ipse ab alto corruens in terram, exspiravit. Hoveden, iv. 121.

Death of the provost.

Margarit visits Paris, and offers to make Philip emperor of Constantinople.

Eodem anno Margaritus dux piratarum, quem Henricus Romanorum imperator excæcari fecerat, venit Parisius ad Philippum regem Franciæ, et obtulit ei quod, si ipse consilio suo adquiesceret, faceret eum imperatorem Romanorum, vel imperatorem Constantinopolitorum, utrum si eligeret. Cui rex Franciæ facilem præbens assensum, præparavit itineri suo necessaria, in equis et armis, viris[1] et supellectilibus. Et Margaritus a rege Franciæ recedens, ut præpararet promissa, mandavit per universos portus suæ dominationis, quod omnes galeæ suæ convenirent apud Brundusium in occursum ejus: sed cum ipse Romam veniret, a quodam serviente suo, quem ipse male tractaverat, interfectus est. Et tali casu interveniente rex Franciæ a desiderio suo fraudatus est. Hoveden, iv. 122.

Having collected a fleet for that purpose he is killed at Rome.

Death of the archbishop of Mentz.

Dispute between Philip of Swabia and the clergy and people of Mentz about his successor. They revolt to Otho.

Otho crowned by the new archbishop at Mentz, Dec. 25.

Eodem anno obiit Maguntinus archiepiscopus, qui in civitate Magunti receperat Philippum ducem Suaviæ in dominum, et eum ibidem in regem coronaverat. Quo defuncto, clerus et populus civitatis elegerunt sibi quendam nobilem clericum de suis in archiepiscopum, et præsentaverunt eum Philippo duci Suaviæ; quem ille refutans, voluit contra voluntatem illorum unum de consanguineis suis ibi constituere archiepiscopum. Unde clerus et populus Magunti plurimum indignati, abjecto duce Suaviæ, adhæserunt Othoni regi Alemanniæ, et receperunt eum in dominum; et ipse ad præsentationem illorum recepit electum quem elegerant in archiepiscopum. Et ipse Otho fuit apud Maguntum in Natali Domini in regem coronatus ab eodem archiepiscopo Maguntino. Quo audito, Philippus dux Suaviæ præcepit sibi afferri thesaurum suum, quem habuit in partibus illis. Quod cum Othoni constaret, observabat per diem et noctem stratam, per quam transituri erant homines ducis cum thesauro suo: et ipsi nihil horum præcaventes, cum iter agerent, inciderunt in manus Othonis,[2] et ita factus est Otho dives ex thesauro ducis Suaviæ adversarii ejus.

Otho captures Philip's treasures.

---

[1] *viris*] curribus, H.

[2] *Othonis*] et capti sunt cum thesauro illo, et, ins. H.; om. M.

Hoveden, iv. 123.

Eodem anno unus ex consortibus supradicti Fulconis, dictus dominus Eustachius abbas de Flay, venit in Angliam a partibus Normanniæ, prædicare verbum Domini; fecitque mirabilia in vita sua. Inter quæ unum opus fecit quod est mirabile in oculis nostris. Venit itaque præfatus Eustachius non longe a Cantuaria ad villam Wy dictam;[1] et benedixit ibi fontem quendam, cui Dominus tantam infudit gratiam, quod cæci visum, claudi gressum, muti loquelam, surdi auditum, et quisquis debilis, qui ex fonte benedicto biberit, sanitatem se recepisse gavisus est. Venit igitur quædam mulier ad abbatem illum a dæmonibus arrepta, et ultra quam credi fas est grossa, quasi morbo hydropico inflata; et petiit ab eo sibi restitui sanitatem. Cui abbas ille respondit: "Confide filia, et vade "ad natatoria fontis de Wy, cui benedixit Dominus, et bibe "ex eo, et recipies inde sanitatem." Et abiit, et bibit, et vomuit, et exierunt ab ea duo buffones magni et nigri, qui statim conversi sunt in immensos [canes][2] et nigerrimos, et paulo post conversi sunt in asinos. Mulier autem stabat attonita, et aliquando cucurrit post illos furibunda, volens eos apprehendere, si posset: sed quidam vir, qui ad fontem deputatus erat custodiendum, aspersit aquam, de fonte illo sumptam, inter mulierem et monstra illa; quæ[3] statim abeuntia ascenderunt in altum, relinquentia post se fœda vestigia. Mulier quidem ab illa hora sana facta est, magnificans Deum, Qui talem potestatem dedit hominibus. Præterea prædictus abbas veniens ad Rumenel, ubi erat aquæ defectus, et ad preces populi in ecclesia ejusdem villæ baculo suo petram percussit; et fluxerunt aquæ, quarum haustus languoribus diversis medetur. Ipse etiam prædicatione sua corda multorum convertit ad usurarum relaxationem, et ad crucem Jerosolimitanæ profectionis capiendam. Londoniis autem, et in aliis locis multis per Angliam prædicatione sua effecit, quod de cætero in diebus Dominicis forum rerum venalium nequaquam exercere præsument. Statuit etiam Londoniis, et in quibusdam aliis locis, quod in singulis ecclesiis, ubi facultas expetit,[4] lampas ardens, vel aliud lumen indeficiens ante Corpus Domini. Et impetravit prædicatione sua, quod multi ex civibus, et ex aliis viris sapientibus, habent quotidie in mensa[5] discum eleemosynarium, in quo condunt aliquam partem cibariorum suorum ad opus indigentium, qui non præparaverunt sibi. Hiis igitur et aliis operibus misericordiæ inimicus generis humani

A.D. 1200. Preaching of Eustace abbot of Flay, at Wye in Kent.

Miracle at Wye.

Visit of Eustace to Romney.

Hoveden, iv. 124.

He institutes a reform of Sunday observance in London.

He inculcates almsgiving.

---

[1] *dictam*] quæ dicitur, M., H.
[2] *canes*] om. C., M.
[3] *quæ*] qui, C.
[4] *expetit*] erit semper, ins. H.; om. M.
[5] *mensa*] sua, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1200. Opposition to his work.

invidens, excitavit contra virum Dei ministros iniquitatis, qui dixerunt ei: "Non tibi licet mittere falcem in alienam mes- "sem." Quibus ille respondit, "Messis quidem multa est, "operarii vero pauci." Itaque prædictus abbas a ministris Satanæ increpatus, noluit diutius prælatos Angliæ sua prædicatione molestare, sed reversus est in Normanniam ad locum suum, unde venerat. Hoveden, iv. 124.

He leaves England.

The count of Toulouse does homage to John for his wife's marriage portion.

Eodem anno Reymundus comes de Sancto Egidio devenit homo Johannis regis Angliæ, de terris et castellis quæ Ricardus rex Angliæ dederat ei in maritagium cum Johanna sorore sua; ita quod cum Raimundus filius ejus, quem genuit de Johanna uxore sua, pervenerit ad annos discretionis, omnia supradicta habeat, et faciat inde homagium Johanni regi Angliæ avunculo suo; et si ipse sine prole decesserit, revertantur ad comitem de Sancto Egidio; et ipse et hæredes sui post illum teneant ea omnia jure hæreditario de comite Pictaviæ, per servitium veniendi cum quingentis militibus in servitium comitis Pictaviæ, [quotiescunque comes Pictaviæ] in Gasconiam cum exercitu ierit, per mensem in propriis sumptibus; et si diutius faceret moram, comes Pictaviæ provideat eis necessaria.

Terms of the homage.

Hoveden, iv. 125.

John takes hostages at Angers.

Deinde Johannes rex Angliæ venit Andegavim, et cepit ab ea centum quinquaginta obsides de fide sibi servanda, et misit eos in custodia.

John Gray succeeds John of Oxford as bishop of Norwich.

Eodem anno Johannes de Oxenforde, Northwicensis episcopus, obiit; cui successit[1] Johannes de Gray, dono Johannis regis; et Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus illum consecravit in episcopum.

Giles de Braiose made bishop of Hereford.

Eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ dedit Egidio filio Willelmi de Brausa episcopatum Herefordensem; quem[2] Hubertus Cantuariensis[3] consecravit in episcopum.

John confirms the agreement made by Richard with the archbishop of Rouen.

Item eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ cepit de Waltero Rotomagensi archiepiscopo DC. libras Andegavensis monetæ, et confirmavit ei carta sua omnia illa quæ Ricardus rex Angliæ dederat ei in escambium pro Andeli, scilicet villam de Depe cum pertinentiis suis, et Luvers cum pertinentiis,[4] et forestam de Aliersmunt, et molendina de Robech.

The judges delegate reconcile Geoffrey with the dean and canons of York.

Eodem anno Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et adversarii ejus, videlicet Simon decanus, et cæteræ personæ ecclesiæ Sancti Petri Eboraci, convenerunt apud Westmonasterium in præsentia Herberti Saresbiriensis episcopi, et Alani abbatis de Theokesbiri, judicum a domino papa delegatorum; et post

Hoveden, iv. 126.

[1] *successit*] in episcopatu illo, ins. M., H.

[2] *quem*] et illum, M., H.

[3] *Cantuariensis*] archiepiscopus, ins. M., H.

[4] *pertinentiis*] suis, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 126.

allegationes utrinque plenius deductas, præfati judices eos ad concordiam modis omnibus inducere conati sunt; et effecerunt, Domino cooperante, quod idem archiepiscopus recepit in osculum pacis primo Willelmum Testard archidiaconum de Notingham, deinde Reginaldum Arundel præcentorem Eboracensis ecclesiæ, et postremo Simonem decanum Eboracensis ecclesiæ, ea conditione, quod ad invicem sibi satisfacerent de controversiis suis in capitulo Eboraci. A.D. 1200.

November. Reconciliation between archbishop Hubert and the monks of Canterbury.

Eodem anno facta est pax et finalis concordia inter Hubertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum et monachos ecclesiæ Sanctæ Trinitatis Cantuariæ, per Hugonem Lincolniensem, et Eustachium Elyensem episcopos, et per Sampsonem abbatem de Sancto Edmundo, judices in causa illa a domino papa Innocentio constitutos. Sed quia dominus Lincolniensis diffinitioni causæ interesse non potuit, vices suas commisit domino Rogero de Rollestun, decano Lincolniensis ecclesiæ. Convenit ergo inter illos in hunc modum; quod prædictus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, si voluerit, reædificabit capellam de Lamee in loco illo, sed non super illud fundamentum quo prius fuerat, nec canonicos sæculares ibi instituet, sed, si voluerit, poterit ibi instituere canonicos regulares de ordine Præmonstrensi,[1] tredecim ad minus, vel viginti ad amplius; et ad sustentationem illorum dabit archiepiscopus, si voluerit, de ecclesiis suæ donationis centum libratas redditus ad plus; et in ecclesia illa neque chrisma conficiet, neque episcopos consecrabit. De quatuor autem ecclesiis, quas bonæ memoriæ Ricardus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus in proprios usus prædictorum monachorum converterat, sic erit: videlicet, quod Simon archidiaconus de Welle reddet prædictis monachis Sanctæ Trinitatis Cantuariæ decem aureos in vita sua nomine pensionis de ecclesia de Munketun in Thanet; et post decessum prædicti Simonis, medietas decimæ bladi et leguminis de eadem ecclesia convertetur ad augmentum eleemosynæ prædictorum monachorum Cantuariæ; et reliqua medietas ejusdem ecclesiæ, et obventiones altaris, erunt in donatione archiepiscopi. Similiter erit de ecclesia de Estreia, præter quod magister Radulfus, possessor illius in vita sua, solvet prædictis monachis pensionem sex aureorum per annum. Ecclesiam autem de Ainesford possidebit libere Johannes Belemeins, quondam Lugdunensis archiepiscopus, in vita;[2] et post decessum illius, prædicti monachi Cantuariæ habebunt, ad augmentum eleemosynæ suæ, tertiam partem decimarum bladi et

November.

Terms of the settlement.

Hoveden, iv. 127.

[1] *Præmonstrensi*] videlicet, ins. M., H.

[2] *vita*] sua, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1200. November. Final concord between archbishop Hubert and his monks.

leguminis de eadem ecclesia, et totum reliquum illius ecclesiæ erit in donatione archiepiscopi. Similiter erit de ecclesia de Mapeham, præter quod Virgilius possessor ejus reddet inde prædictis monachis Cantuariæ unum aureum nomine pensionis, dum vixerit. Exennia autem quæ monachi petebant de propriis maneriis eorum, remanebunt penes archiepiscopum dum vixerit: et post decessum istius archiepiscopi, successor ejus gaudebit possessione, salva quæstione monachorum. De divisa mariscorum archiepiscopi et monachorum provisum est, quod per sacramentum duodecim vel plurium legalium hominum discernatur, quantum pertineat ad archiepiscopum, et quantum ad monachos; et hoc idem obtulerat eis archiepiscopus multotiens. Concessit etiam eis archiepiscopus gratis habere curiam suam de propriis hominibus eorum. Hæc supradicta omnia concessa sunt inter illos, et confirmata, salva auctoritate domini papæ. Hoveden, iv. 128.

September. Hubert holds a great council at London.

Eodem anno Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus generale celebravit concilium Londoniis apud Westmonasterium, contra prohibitionem Gaufridi Filii Petri comitis de Esexe, tunc temporis summi justitiarii Angliæ.[1]

Cardinal Octavian comes to France to settle the question of the divorce.

Eodem anno Octovianus Hostiensis episcopus, cardinalis et apostolicæ sedis legatus, venit in Franciam, missus a latere domini Innocentii papæ ad cognoscendum de divortio facto inter Philippum regem Franciæ, et Botildam reginam suam sponsam, et ut ipse imprimis ante ingressum litis compelleret prædictum regem Franciæ dimittere adulteram suam Theutonicam, et resumere Botildam sponsam suam, et modo debito tractare. Factum est autem in vigilia Nativitatis Beatæ[2] Mariæ, prædicto cardinali, archiepiscopis, episcopis et clero Franciæ convenientibus apud Sanctum Leodegarium in Nivele; Philippus rex Franciæ, et Botilda regina, et adultera ejus Teutonica convenerunt illuc; et rex Franciæ admonitione præfati cardinalis et consilio suorum dimisit adulteram suam, et Botildam sponsam suam recepit, et statim conquestus [est] de ea cardinali, dicens quod eam ipse de jure habere sibi in conjugem non debet, quia multum erant affines in consanguinitate; et hoc probare modis omnibus præsto erat, et ideo petebat divortium inter illos fieri. Statuit ergo eis prædictus cardinalis spatium sex mensium, et sex hebdomadarum, et sex dierum, et sex horarum, a vigilia illa Nativitatis Beatæ Mariæ, ad deliberandum super hoc; et locum placitandi statuit eis apud Sessuns, electione reginæ Botildæ. Hoveden, iv. 137.

Council held at S. Leger in Iveline, Sept. 7.

The cardinal hears the king, and adjourns the discussion for six months, to be continued at Soissons.

Hoveden, iv. 138.

[1] *Angliæ*] Here Hoveden inserts at length the decrees of the council. They are omitted in most MSS., and are not found in our MSS. M., V., or C. See Hoveden, iv. 128-137.

[2] *Beatæ*] Dei genitricis semperque virginis, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 138.

Eodem die[1] vigiliæ Nativitatis Beatæ[2] Mariæ, postquam rex Franciæ adulteram suam dimiserat, et Botildam sponsam suam receperat, statim relaxata est sententia interdicti ecclesiarum de regno Franciæ, et pulsatis campanis facta est lætitia magna in populo, quia interdictum illud jam duraverat plusquam per triginta hebdomadas, et corpora defunctorum sepulta erant extra villam per vicos et plateas. Et paulo post præfata mulier, quam rex Franciæ dimiserat, peperit filium, et vocatus est nomine patris sui Philippus. Genuerat etiam idem rex Franciæ de eadem muliere filiam, quæ quinquennis erat die illa qua ipse illam dimisit: filiam autem illam spopondit rex Franciæ se daturum Alexandro filio Willelmi regis Scotiæ in uxorem.

A.D. 1200. Sept. 7. The interdict is relaxed in France.

Children of Agnes of Meran.

Hoveden, iv. 139.

Eodem anno, nono kalendas Octobris,[3] Willelmus cognomento Malveisin, Glascuensis ecclesiæ electus, ordinatus est in sacerdotem apud Lugdunum, ab ejusdem civitatis archiepiscopo; et in crastino ibidem,[4] viii^vo. kalendas Octobris, consecratus est in episcopum Glascuensem ab eodem archiepiscopo, per mandatum domini Innocentii papæ tertii.

William Malvoisin ordained priest; and, Sept. 24, consecrated bishop of Glasgow, at Lyons.

Eodem anno, mense Octobris, post completa negotia sua in Normannia et cæteris terris suis transmarinis, Johannes rex Angliæ transfretavit de Normannia in Angliam, et adduxit secum Ysabel sponsam suam, filiam comitis de Engolismo, et octavo idus ejusdem mensis, die Dominica, ipse et Ysabel uxor ejus coronati sunt Londoniis apud Westmonasterium ab Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.

Oct. 8. John and his queen crowned at Westminster.

Interim, ex præcepto ejusdem regis, Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, frater ejus, disseisiatus est de omnibus maneriis et bonis archiepiscopatus sui. Jacobus vero de Poterne, tunc temporis vicecomes Eboraci, maneria ejusdem archiepiscopi violenter ingressus, bona sua dissipavit. Unde prædictus archiepiscopus excommunicavit vicecomitem illum, et omnes hujus violentiæ auctores et consiliarios, accensis candelis et pulsatis campanis. Excommunicavit etiam omnes, qui Johannem regem et fratrem suum adversus eum in iram et indignationem commoverunt vel commoverent sine ejus delicto. Excommunicavit etiam burgenses de Beverlaco, et villam ipsam a celebratione Divini officii, et a sonitu campanarum suspendit, pro eo quod prædicti burgenses parcum suum fregerunt, et cætera bona

Archbishop Geoffrey again dispossessed.

He excommunicates the sheriff of Yorkshire and his other enemies; the townsmen of Beverley in particular.

Hoveden, iv. 140.

Offences of the men of Beverley.

---

[1] *die*] scilicet, ins. M., H.

[2] *Beatæ*] Sanctæ, M., H.

[3] *Octobris*] videlicet die Sabbati quatuor temporum proximo ante festum Sancti Michaelis, ins. M., H.

[4] *ibidem*] scilicet die Dominica, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1200. October.

sua, quæ Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, prædecessor suus aliquo tempore pacifice possedit, turbaverant, diminuerant. Hoveden, iv. 140.

John restores the archbishop's estates, but fixes a day for him to give account of his proceedings.

Procedente autem tempore, Johannes rex Angliæ, bonorum virorum fretus consilio, restituit prænominato archiepiscopo archiepiscopatum suum, et statuit ei diem veniendi in curia sua, ad monstrandum quare non transfretavit cum illo ad faciendam pacem cum rege Franciæ, quando summonitus erat; et quare non permiserat servientes suos capere denarios carucarum de terra sua, sicut in aliis partibus regni factum est; et quare verberaverat servientem vicecomitis Eboraci: et ad reddendum regi tria millia marcarum argenti, quæ ipse debuit Ricardo regi Angliæ fratri suo.

After his coronation, John sent to the king of Scots safe-conduct to court, that he might come and do homage on Nov. 21.

Johannes vero rex Angliæ, statim post coronationem suam, misit Philippum Dunelmensem episcopum, et Rogerum comitem Bigod,[1] et Henricum de Boun comitem Herefordiæ, nepotem Willelmi regis Scotiæ, et multos alios,[2] ad Willelmum regem Scottorum, cum litteris regiis patentibus de salvo conductu ad conducendum ipsum regem Scottorum ad regem Angliæ; et statuit illi diem veniendi ad eum apud Lincolniam in crastino Sancti Eadmundi.

De morte Hugonis Lincolniensis episcopi.

Illness of S. Hugh of Lincoln.

Interim Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus, rediens in Angliam de transmarinis partibus, infirmabatur Londoniis quartanis febribus detentus. Hoveden, iv. 141. Venit ergo visitare eum Johannes rex Angliæ, et confirmavit testamentum illius, et promisit in Domino, quod de cætero rationabilia prælatorum ecclesiæ testamenta rata haberet tempore suo. Deinde mense Novembris, xvi.[3] kalendas Decembris, feria quinta, obiit Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus.

Death of S. Hugh, Nov. 16.

Nov. 21. John and the king of Scots visit Lincoln.

Eodem mense Novembris, xi^mo^ kalendas Decembris, feria 3^tia^, Johannes rex Angliæ et Willelmus rex Scotiæ convenerunt apud Lincolniam, et[4] x^mo^ kalendas Decembris, feria quarta, Johannes rex Angliæ intrepidus, et contra consilium multorum, intravit ecclesiam cathedralem Lincolniensem, et obtulit super

---

[1] *comitem Bigod*] comitem Bigot Nortfolkiæ, M., H.

[2] *et multos alios*] et David comitem de Huntedune, fratrem ejusdem regis Scottiæ, et Rogerum de Lascy constabularium Cestriæ, et Willelmum de Vescy, et Robertum de Ros, generos ejusdem regis Scottiæ, et Robertum filium Rogeri vicecomitem de Northumbria, M., H.

[3] *xvi.*] xv., C., where a letter has been erased.

[4] *et*] in crastino, videlicet, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 141.

altare Sancti Johannis Baptistæ[1] calicem aureum. Deinde, eodem die, ipse et idem Willelmus rex Scottorum convenerunt ad colloquium extra civitatem Lincolniæ, super montem arduum; et ibi in conspectu omnis populi Willelmus rex Scottorum devenit homo Johannis regis Angliæ de jure suo, et juravit ei fidelitatem super crucem Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, de vita et membris et terreno honore suo, contra omnes homines, et de pace servanda sibi et regno suo, salvo jure suo: testibus Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, Johanne Dublinensi, Bernardo Raguensi archiepiscopis; et Philippo Dunelmensi, Willelmo Londoniensi, Gileberto Roffensi, Eustachio Elyensi, Savarico Batoniensi, Hereberto Saresbiriensi, Godefrido Wintoniensi, et aliis episcopis, comitibus et baronibus tam de Normannia [et] Scotia quam de Anglia.[2] Facto itaque et solemniter homagio suo, Willelmus rex Scotiæ petiit a Johanne rege Angliæ domino suo totam Northumbriam, Cumbriam et Westmerelande, sicut jus et hæreditatem suam, et cum diu super hoc esset tractatum, nec inter eos posset convenire, rex Angliæ [petiit] a rege Scotiæ inducias deliberandi usque ad Pentecosten proximum futurum. Quo concesso, Willelmus rex Scotiæ in crastino summo mane,[3] ix. kalendas Decembris, feria quinta, reversus est in regionem suam, sub prædictorum conductu, qui eum ad regem Angliæ conduxerant.

A.D. 1200 Nov. 22. John visits the cathedral.

The king of Scots does homage to John.

Names of the witnesses.

Hoveden, iv. 142.

He demands Northumberland, Cumberland, and Westmoreland: John defers his decision until Whitsuntide.

Nov. 23. Departure of the king of Scots.

Eodem die, scilicet ix°. kalendas Decembris, corpus Hugonis Lincolniensis episcopi delatum est Lincolniam, ibi intumu-

Funeral of S. Hugh.

---

[1] *Baptistæ*] quod est in novo opere, ins. H.; om. M.

[2] *et aliis . . . Anglia*] et Egidio Herefordensi, et Johanne Norwycensi et Rogero de Sancto Andrea in Scottia, et Henrico de Landaf, et Roberto de Pangor et . . . de Mida episcopis; et Gaufrido filio Petri justitiario Angliæ comite de Essexe, et Rogero Bigot comite de Nortfolke, et Hamelino comite de Warenna, et Baldewino de Betunia comite de Albemarlia, et Willelmo comite de Saresbiri, et Henrico comite de Boun et de Hereforde, et comite de Clara, et comite de Ferreres, et David fratre Willelmi regis Scottorum comite de Huntedonia, et Rollando filio Huttredi filii Fergus principe Galwaiorum, et Patricio comite de Lonays, et Griffino filio Resi rege de Suth Wales, et aliis multis de regno Scottiæ; et coram baronibus Angliæ et Normanniæ, videlicet Rogero constabulario Cestriæ, et Eustachio de Vescy, et Roberto de Ros, et Willelmo de Stutevile, et Radulfo Camberlano et [de, H.] Tankavilla, et Garino filio Geroldi, et Stephano de Turneham, et Roberto fratre ejus, et Gileberto Basset, et Thoma et Alano fratribus ejus, et Rogero de Huntingfelde, et Seero de Quynci, et Willelmo de Quincy, et Willelmo de Hastingges, et Jollano de Nevilla, et Simone de Chanci, et Girardo de Camvilla, et aliis multis de baronibus Angliæ et Normanniæ,—M., H.

[3] *mane*] videlicet, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1200. Nov. 23. landum. Cui occurrentes Johannes rex Angliæ, et tres supra- Hoveden, iv. 142, 143.
dicti archiepiscopi, et[1] tredecim episcopi, et comites et barones
John assists at the funeral. prænotati,[2] receperunt corpus illud; et rex ipse, una cum comitibus et baronibus, portavit in collo suo corpus illud. Deinde comites et barones portaverunt illud in humeris suis usque in atrium matricis ecclesiæ, gaudentes obsequium se præstare Deo, et beato præsuli illi. Ad ostium vero ecclesiæ receperunt corpus illud præfati archiepiscopi et episcopi, et sic in humeris prælatorum delatum est in chorum, et
A miracle on a half blind woman. ibi pernoctatum est. Cumque circa eum agerent exsequias defunctorum, quædam mulier, quæ per septem annos ex uno oculo cæca fuerat, recepit visum. Et ibidem quidem bursarum incisor scidit bursam cujusdam mulieris, et statim factæ ambæ manus ejus contractæ, et ipse stans immobilis clamabat dicens,

A cutpurse miraculously makes Latin verses.

" Pœnitet, O, si quid miserorum creditur ulli,
" Pœnitet, et facto torqueor ipse meo.
" Qui cum me pœna dignum graviore fuisse
" Confiteor, possum vix graviora pati.
" Et quamvis meritis pœna hæc sit debita nostris,
" Magna tamen spes est in bonitate Dei.
" Spes facit, ut vivat fossor quoque compede vinctus,
" Liberaque a ferro crura futura putet.
" Spes facit, ut videat cum terras undique nullas,
" Naufragus in mediis brachia jactet aquis.
" Sæpe aliquem sollers medicorum cura reliquit:
" Nec spes huic, vena deficiente, cadit.
" Carcere dicuntur clausi spectare salutem;
" Atque aliquis pendens in cruce vota facit.
" En spes, quam multos laqueo sua colla ligantes
" Non est proposita passa perire nece!
" Confugit interdum templi violator ad aram,
" Nec petere offensi numinis horret opem."

Et ad se conversus, ait: Hoveden, iv. 144.
" Lingua sile, non est ultra narrabile quicquam."

Penitence of the cutpurse. Et conversus ad clerum, dixit, "Miseremini mei, miseremini " mei saltem vos, amici mei,[3] et orate pro me ad Dominum, " ut Ipse pro Sua misericordia ineffabili misereatur mei. Ego " enim abrenuncio Sathanæ et operibus ejus." Et statim facta oratione pro ipso ad Dominum, soluta sunt vincula

---

[1] *et*] præfati, ins. M., H.
[2] *prænotati*] prænominati, H.
[3] *mei*] Dei, H.

Hoveden, iv. 144.

Sathanæ, quibus constrictæ erant manus ejus, et sanus factus est homo ab illa hora, laudans et glorificans Deum. A.D. 1200. Nov. 23.

" Talia cœlestes fieri præconia gaudent,
" Ut, sua quid valeant numina, teste probent,
" Sæpe levant pœnas, ereptaque lumina reddunt,
" Cum bene peccati pœnituisse vident."

Octavo kalendas Decembris, feria sexta, corpus prædicti Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi, post Missarum solemnia delatum est in ecclesia nova, quam ipse in honore beatæ[1] Mariæ fundaverat, tumulatumque est a præfatis archiepiscopis, episcopis et aliis, juxta altare Sancti Johannis Baptistæ. O quantus luctus omnium, O quanta lamenta, præcipue clericorum! Erat namque in sermone verax, in judicio justus, in consilio providus, in bonitate conspicuus, in universa morum honestate præclarus. Ejusque vita cunctas illustrabat ecclesias. Nov. 24. The body of S. Hugh is placed in the tomb.

Ovid. Met. iii. 135.

" Ultima semper
" Exspectanda dies homini est; dicique beatus
" Ante obitum nemo supremaque funera debet."

Non est enim gloriosum vivere, sed bene vivere gloriosum est.

Hoveden, iv. 145.

Præterea dum Johannes rex Angliæ moram faceret apud Lincolniam, accesserunt ad eum duodecim abbates de ordine Cisterciensi, et ad pedes ejus provoluti, misericordiam petierunt, dicentes, quod forestarii averia sua, quibus ipsi et pauperes Christi sustentabantur, a pasturis et forestis regiis exterminaverunt. Quibus rex respondit, "Surgite." Et surrexerunt omnes viri illi: et rex ipse, Divina inspirante gratia, cecidit pronus in terram ante pedes eorum, veniam postulans, et ait illis, "Pacem meam do vobis, et concedo, ut averia vestra " pascatis in pasturas et forestas meas, sicut dinoscitur vobis " concessum fuisse a prædecessoribus meis regibus Angliæ; " et insuper quærite locum in regno meo aptum ad abbatiam " de ordine vestro faciendam; et ego eam faciam pro salute " animæ meæ, et parentum meorum, et pro stabilitate regni, " et ego ibi, Deo [volente,] sepultus ero." Two Cistercian abbots visit John. They complain of the king's foresters. John promises them relief, and to build a new abbey.

Eodem anno, mense Decembris, Rollandus princeps Galweyæ obiit in Anglia apud Northamptoniam, xiv°. kalendas Januarii, feria 3ᵗⁱᵃ, et ibidem sepultus est ad abbatiam Sancti Andreæ. Dec. 19. Ronald of Galloway dies at Northampton.

Item eodem anno Dunecan, filius Gileberti filii Fergus, rapuit Avelinam filiam Alani filii Walteri, domini de Rainfriu, antequam Willelmus rex Scotiæ rediret de Anglia in terram Duncan of Galloway carries off a daughter of the lord of Renfrew.

[1] *beatæ*] Dei genitricis semperque virginis, M., H.

A.D. 1200. December. suam. Unde idem rex plurimum iratus, cepit de Alano filio Walteri viginti quatuor plegios, de pace sibi et terræ suæ servanda, et de jure faciendo super calumnia illa. Hoveden, iv. 145.

Quomodo Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus apparuit decano ejusdem post obitum suum.

S. Hugh appears in a vision to the dean of Lincoln; and warns him of the death of one of the clergy.

Eodem mense Decembris,[1] Hugo Lincolniensis episcopus, infra quindecim dies post obitum suum, apparuit in somnis magistro Rogero de Rollestone, decano Lincolniensis ecclesiæ, dicens: "Concessit mihi Dominus noster Jesus Christus Sua "gratia, quod unus ex vobis fratribus meis in proximo ve- "niet ad me cum Domino regnaturus. Estote ergo parati, et "vigilate, quia nescitis diem, neque horam, quando Dominus "venturus est." Et hiis dictis abiit. Mane autem facto, prædictus decanus narravit visionem suam[2] in capitulo suo coram fratribus; et erat illis omnibus mens una desiderans desiderio magno a mole carnis resolvi, et esse cum Christo. Sed hæc visio in uno solo fratre eorum, videlicet Roberto de Capella, tunc impleta est. Ipse enim statim incepit ægrotare, et infra triduum emittens spiritum perrexit ad Dominum. Corpus autem ejus a collo usque ad poplites inventum erat in cilicio consutum, quo ipse utebatur a multo tempore sub veste candida. Hoveden, iv. 146.

The dean relates his vision.

Robert de Capella dies.

Five moons seen in Yorkshire.

Eodem mense Decembris, paulo ante Natale,[3] in provincia Eboracensi apparuerunt de nocte in cœlo quinque lunæ circa primam vigiliam noctis: prima apparuit in Aquilone, secunda in Meridie, tertia in Occidente, [quarta in Oriente,][4] quinta[5] in medio illarum,[6] et habebat secum stellas multas, et illa cum stellis suis circuibat quinquies vel sexies præfatas quatuor lunas. Hæc autem apparuit multis videntibus, et admirantibus, quasi per spatium unius horæ, et postea evanuit ab oculis intuentium.

A.D. 1201. March. Philip and his wife appear before cardinal Octavian at Soissons.

Eodem anno in medio Quadragesimæ, mense Martio, Philippus rex Franciæ, et Botilda regina uxor ejus, convenerunt cum parentibus[7] suis apud Sessuns coram Octoviano Hostiensi episcopo, a domino papa Innocentio judice delegato. Ex parte autem prædictæ reginæ interfuerunt ibi episcopi, et alii ho-

---

[1] *Decembris*] om. M.; Septembris, C.

[2] *suam*] istam, M., H.

[3] *Natale*] Domini, ins. M., H.

[4] *quarta in Oriente*] om. C., M.

[5] *quinta*] luna apparuit, ins. M., H.

[6] *illarum*] quatuor lunarum, ins. M., H.

[7] *parentibus*] partibus, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 146.

nesti viri et discreti, missi a Cnut rege Dacorum fratre præ- A.D. 1201. March.
dictæ reginæ; et ante ingressum litis petierunt a rege Franciæ
securitatem libere respondendi, et allegandi, et a terra sua Discussion of the question of divorce.
Hoveden, iv. 147. recedendi. Et hiis concessis, rex Franciæ constanter petebat
divortium fieri inter ipsum et Botildam sponsam suam, di-
cendo, quod ita affines erant in consanguinitate,[1] quod eam de
jure non deberet cognoscere. Ad hæc responderunt nuncii
regis Dacorum, "Nos cognovimus, audivimus, et vidimus, Statement of the Danish envoys.
" quod cum venerabiles viri nuncii vestri,[2] quos excellentia
" vestra misit ad dominum nostrum Cnut regem Dacorum,
" pro matrimonio contrahendo inter vos et Botildam sororem
" suam, essent in præsentia illius, et proponerent quod desi-
" derio desiderastis ducere vobis in uxorem Botildam, regiæ
" stirpis egregiam puellam, sororem suam, et eam constanter
" petissent vobis transmitti; dominus noster Cnut rex Da-
" corum, hostium suorum magnificus triumphator, cui nemo
" impune resistit, communicato magnatum regni sui consilio,
" dignum judicavit petitionem vestram exaudiri. Juraverunt
" ergo prædicti nuncii vestri in animam vestram, et[3] in
" animas suas, quod vos præfatam Botildam statim ex quo
" ipsa fines regni vestri intraret, eam vobis desponsari, et in
" reginam coronari faceretis, et eam sicut reginam et spon-
" sam vestram honorifice tractaretis, quamdiu vos vixeritis.
" Et super hoc misistis domino nostro regi Dacorum cartam
" vestram, quam hic præ manibus habemus: habemus etiam
" cartas magnatum vestrorum, qui hoc idem juraverunt. Et
" quia vos, secus quam magnates vestri juraverunt, præfatam
" Botildam sponsam vestram tractastis; nos appellamus eos
" de perjurio et fide læsa coram domino papa: appellamus The queen and the Danish envoys appeal to the pope himself.
" etiam ad dominum papam a judice isto[4] Octoviano Hos-
Hoveden, iv. 148. " tiensi episcopo, qui nobis suspectus est, utpote qui consan-
" guineus vester est, ut dicit, et causam vestram nimio favore
" prosequitur." Similiter et ipsa Botilda regina appellavit
pro se ipsa a judice illo ad dominum papam.

Octovianus igitur prædictus,[5] audiens quod appellatum esset ab eo ad summum pontificem, dixit ad nuncios regis Dacorum; "Exspectate donec collega meus, quem associavit mihi
" dominus papa, veniat, qui in proximo venturus est, et quod
" ad eo judicatum fuerit, recipite." Illi autem abierunt, dicentes, "Appellavimus."

---

[1] *consanguinitate*] consanguinitatis linea, M., H.

[2] *vestri*] videlicet episcopi, ins. H.; om. M.

[3] *et*] juraveruntque] M., H.

[4] *isto*] domino, ins., M., H.

[5] *prædictus*] Hostiensis episcopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, M., H.

A.D. 1201. March. The other legate decides against the divorce, and Philip takes away his wife and imprisons her.

Post triduum venit alius legatus ille, de quo in[1] sanctitate et justitia dominus papa plenam habebat fiduciam; et sedens pro tribunali, nullam invenit causam, quare divortium fieret inter prædictos regem et Botildam;[2] et cum ille super hoc vellet dare sententiam diffinitivam contra regem Franciæ, rex Franciæ inde præmunitus, ante sententiæ pronunciationem abiit, et duxit secum Botildam reginam uxorem suam, et posuit eam in arctiori custodia. Hoveden, iv. 148.

A.D. 1200. May. Peace between Philip and John.

Eodem anno facta est pax et finalis concordia inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Johannem regem Angliæ.

Hæc est pax et finalis concordia inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Johannem regem Angliæ.

Form of treaty.

" Philippus Dei gratia rex Francorum, universis ad quos
" præsens scriptum pervenerit, salutem. Noveritis quod hæc
" est forma pacis facta inter nos et dilectum et fidelem nos-
" trum, Dei gratia regem Angliæ Johannem; scilicet, quod
" ipse tenebit nobis et hæredibus nostris pacem, quam Ricar-
" dus frater ejus fecit nobiscum inter Aroldun[3] et Carotom; Hoveden, iv. 149.
" exceptis hiis quæ per præsentem cartam excipiuntur vel
" mutantur, propter exceptiones quas idem rex Ricardus no-
John gives up Evreux and the Evrecin. " bis fecerat de pace illa. Scilicet quod idem rex Johannes
" donavit nobis, et hæredibus nostris, sicut rectus hæres Ri-
" cardi fratris sui, civitatem Ebroicarum [et Ebrocinium], cum
" omnibus feodis et dominiis, sicut subscriptæ metæ deter-
" minant. Metæ autem positæ sunt inter Ebroicas et Novum-
" burgum: et totum id quod erit inter has metas ex parte
" Franciæ, erit nostrum: id quod erit versus Novumburgum,
Limits of the gift. " erit regis Angliæ. Et quantum terræ habuimus versus
" Novumburgum, tantum terræ habebimus versus Conchias,
" et versus Akenni[4] ad eandem mensuram, ex parte ubi ab-
" batia de Noa sita est, sicut aqua Itoniæ currit. Guitebo,
" ubicunque sit, dedit nobis. Tilers cum pertinentiis suis, et
" Danvilla, remanent regi Angliæ. Item tamen quod [dominus
" de][5] Bruroles habebit id quod habere debet in dominatu de
" Tilers; et dominus de Tilers habeat id quod habere debet
" in dominatu de Bruroles. Concessit etiam nobis de episco-
" patu Ebroicensi id quod est infra has metas; unde epi-

[1] *quo in*] cujus, M., H.
[2] *prædictos . . . Botildam*] Philippum regem Franciæ, et Botildam reginam sponsam suam, M., H.
[3] *Aroldun*] Eroldum, M., H.
[4] *Akenni*] Akenu, C.
[5] *dominus de*] om. C., M.

Hoveden, iv. 149.

" scopus Ebroicensis nobis respondebit, et hæredibus nostris. A.D. 1200. May.
" Idem autem episcopus respondebit regi Angliæ, et hæredibus Neither party to fortify the divided land, otherwise than at present.
" suis, de hoc quod erit extra has metas. Et sciendum quod
" neque nos, neque rex Angliæ, poterimus firmare inter has
" metas constitutas inter Novumburgum et Ebroicum, neque
" apud Guitebo, neque nos ex parte nostra, neque rex An-
" gliæ ex parte sua, nisi ubi firmatum est infra metas præ-
" dictas. Præterea forteliciæ de Portis et Landis in continenti
" diruentur, neque ibi aliæ forteliciæ poterunt reædificari.
" Hæc autem omnia, quæ comes Ebroicensis tenebat inter
" has metas, fecit nobis rex Angliæ acquietari a recto hærede
" Ebroicarum. De Hulcasino Normanniæ scilicet erit: præ- Settlement about the Norman Vexin.
" dicto regi Angliæ et hæredibus suis remanebunt feoda et
" dominium, sicut archiepiscopus Rotomagi inde tenens erat
" die qua fecit excambium de[1] Andeliaco; totum Hulcasini
" residuum nobis remaneat. Nos quoque non possumus fir-

Hoveden, iv. 150.

" mare ultra Gamagium ex parte nostra Normanniæ, nec ultra
" fines forestæ Vernonis, sed infra; neque rex Angliæ ultra
" forestam Andeliaci, sed infra. Dedit autem rex Angliæ in Enumeration of lands given by John to Lewis on his marriage with Blanche of Castile.
" maritagium Lodowico filio nostro cum filia regis Castellæ,
" sua nepte, feodum Eroldinum, et feodum Carssari,[2] et feo-
" dum Buturesii, sicut Andreas de Callvinaco ea tenebat de
" rege Angliæ. Et de omnibus hiis erimus saisiati, usque
" dum maritagium sit consummatum. Et quicquid contingat
" de maritagio, postquam factum fuerit, nos prædicta feoda
" tenebimus tota vita nostra. Et post vitam nostram rever-
" tentur prædicta feoda nostra ad prædictum regem Angliæ,
" et ad hæredes suos, si prædictus Lodowicus filius noster
" hæredem non habuerit de nepte regis Angliæ. Si vero con- Further provisions.
" tigerit ipsum regem Angliæ mori absque hærede de uxore
" sua desponsata, cum prædictis feodis dedit rex Angliæ Lo-
" dowico filio nostro cum[3] nepte sua in maritagium feodum
" Hugonis de Gurneyo citra mare Angliæ, sicut id tenet de
" rege Angliæ, et feodum comitis Albimaris citra mare An-
" gliæ, et feodum comitis Perticii, sicut ea tenent de rege
" Angliæ citra mare Angliæ. Præterea idem rex Angliæ
" dedit nobis viginti millia marcarum argenti ad pondus et
" legem, in qua facta fuerunt, scilicet tredecim solidos et qua-
" tuor denarios pro marca, propter recatum[4] nostrum, et prop-
" ter feodum Britanniæ, quod nos Angliæ regi dimisimus.
" Rex vero Johannes recepit Arturum in hominem, ita quod Brittany to be held by Arthur of his uncle.
" Arturus tenebit Britanniam de prædicto rege Angliæ.

[1] *de*] in, C.
[2] *Carssari*] Carssai, M.
[3] *cum*] prædicta, ins. M., H.
[4] *recatum*] reatum, C.

A.D. 1200. May.

"Idem vero rex Angliæ, sicut rectus hæres Ricardi regis "fratris sui, tenebit de nobis omnia feoda, sicut pater ejus, et "Ricardus rex frater ejus tenuerunt, et sicut feoda debent, "exceptis supradictis, quæ nobis remanent, sicut prædictum Hoveden, iv. 150.

The rights of Limoges and Angoulême secured.

"est. De comite Engolismi et vicecomite Lemovicensi sic "erit, quod rex Johannes recipiet eos in homines, quod jura "eorum eis dimittet. De comite Flandriæ et comite Bo-"loniæ sic erit; quod comes Flandriæ tenebit id quod tenet Hoveden, iv. 151.

The cases of Ponthieu and Flanders provided for.

"de terra nostra, et nos ea quæ tenemus de comite Boloniæ, "scilicet dominia et feoda; et ea quæ comes Pontivi tenet, "inde feodum et dominium remanent nobis et comiti Pontivi; "propter hoc quod comes Flandriæ tenet de nostro, ideo faciet "nobis hominium ligium. Et si ipse comes Flandriæ, aut "aliquis hominum meorum, qui melius sint aut esse debent "homines nostri quam regis Angliæ, nobis malum facere aut "nocere vellent, rex Angliæ non poterit contra nos adjuvare, "et manutenere eos; neque nos similiter suos, qui sunt aut "qui esse debent melius homines sui quam mei; salva forma

John is not to assist Otho of Germany without Philip's consent.

"hujus pacis prædictæ. In conventionibus [istis] habet rex "Angliæ conventionem, quod ipse Othoni nullum faciet auxi-"lium, neque per pecuniam, neque per homines, neque per "milites, nec per alium, nisi per consilium nostrum. De "Arturo sic erit, quod rex Angliæ non minuet eum de feodo

John's sureties.

"Britanniæ vel de dominio citra mare Angliæ.[1] Rex vero "Angliæ dedit nobis securitates de hominibus suis subscriptis, "Baldewino comite Albemarliæ, Willelmo comite de Penbroc, "et multis aliis,[2] qui juraverunt hoc modo, quod ipsi cum om-"nibus feodis citra mare ad nos venirent, si rex Angliæ

Philip's sureties.

"non teneret pacem et conventionem sicut divisa est. Nos "quoque dedimus securitates de hominibus nostris subscriptis; "comite Roberto Drocorum, comite Gaufrido Perticii, Willelmo "Garlant, et aliis multis:[3] qui similiter juraverunt, quod cum "omnibus suis ad regem venirent, si nos ei pacem hanc non "tenuerimus, sicut est divisa. Nos autem et prædicti ostagii, "bona fide, et sine malo ingenio, hæc fideliter et firmiter "observanda juravimus. Quæ ut perpetuum robur obtineant,[4]

---

[1] *Angliæ*] nisi per rectum judicium curiæ suæ, ins. H.; om. M.

[2] *et multis aliis*] Hugone de Gurnay, Willelmo de Humut, constabulario Normanniæ, Roberto de Harecourt, Johanne de Pratellis, Willelmo de Kau, Garino de Capiun, M., H.

[3] *et aliis multis*] Bartholomæo Roya, Gervasio de Castello, Waltero (Camerario, ins. H.) patre, Ursone filio ejus, Philippo de Luins, Waltero Camerario juniore, M., H.

[4] *obtineant*] præsentem cartam, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 151.

" auctoritate sigilli nostri corroboravimus. Datum, etc.,[1] " mense Maii, anno M°CC°." A.D. 1200. May.

Et consimilem cartam huic habet rex Franciæ, conversis tamen nominibus.

Hoveden, iv. 152.

Eodem anno fuerunt hæc consuetudines scaccarii Londoniensis super debitis domini regis inquirendis recitatæ apud Windesovere post Pascha, coram rege Johanne, anno regni sui ii^do.[2] A.D. 1200 or 1201.

" Statutum est in Anglia, et per præceptum regis Johannis " confirmatum, quod nullus vicecomes recipiat aliquem ad " præsentationem baronis in senescallum, qui non possit re- " spondere de misericordia pertinente ad transgressionem " fidei, si forte in eam inciderit. Quod autem senescallus ad " præsentationem baronis affidaverit, quod pacem faciet vice- " comiti de debitis domini sui ad scaccarium, intelligendum " est, quod super compotum vicecomitis de debito pacem " faciet: quod si non fecerit, mittatur in prisonam statutam " secundum legem scaccarii, et debitum regis capiatur de " catallis domini sui secundum legem scaccarii. Quod si fidem " præstitam non servaverit, ita quod ad compotum vicecomitis " non venerit, vel si venerit et sine licentia recesserit, corpus " ejus capiatur, et in prisonam ponatur statutam regis, nec " deliberetur nisi per speciale mandatum regis. New regulations to be observed in the exchequer.

" Item mittatur ad terram domini cujus senescallus defe- " cerit, et de catallis suis solvatur pecunia quæ debetur " secundum legem scaccarii: et si pecunia illa debeatur pro " fine terræ, et catalla non inveniantur unde pecunia illa sol- " vatur; ipsa terra, pro qua finis facta fuit, capiatur in manu " domini regis, et teneatur donec pecunia illa solvatur secun- " dum legem scaccarii. In pœna læsionis fidei, senescallus " qui fidem transgressus fuerit, nunquam de hoc vel de alio " debito per fidem suam credatur vel recipiatur; nec dominus " credatur vel recipiatur in hoc debito, nisi de gratia et " voluntate regis, secundum legem et consuetudinem scaccarii."

Hoveden, iv. 153.

Eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ vendidit pro quinque millibus marcis Willelmo de Brausa totam terram Philippi de Wircestre, et totam terram Teobaldi Walteri in Hibernia. John sells estates in Ireland to William de Braiose.

---

[1] *Datum, etc.*] Actum apud G., anno ab incarnatione Domini M°CC°., mense Maii, M., H.

[2] Hoveden adds,—et coram quibusdam magnatibus terræ suæ, et ab eodem rege fuerunt confirmatæ, om. M.

A.D. 1200. The owners of these lands partly recover them.

Philippus autem vix evadens manus regis rediit in Hiberniam, transitum faciens per terram regis Scottorum, et recuperavit partem terræ suæ per guerram. Et Theobaldus Walteri, auxilio Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, fratris sui, dedit Willelmo de Brausa quingentas marcas pro terra sua rehabenda, et homo suus devenit. Hoveden, iv. 153.

Annus tertius regni regis Johannis.

G.——MCCI.

Dec. 25. John keeps Christmas at Guildford.

Anno gratiæ M°CC°I°., qui erat annus tertius regni Johannis regis Angliæ, fuit idem rex die Natalis Domini, quæ feria secunda evenit, in Anglia apud Geldeford. Eodem die Willelmus rex Scottorum fuit in terra sua apud Lanarch. Et eodem die Otho rex Alemannorum, nepos regis Angliæ, fuit apud Maguntum[1] coronatus. Hoveden, iv. 156.

A.D. 1201. Jan. 9. Earthquake in Yorkshire.

[2]Quinto idus Januarii, auditus est terræmotus magnus in Anglia apud Eboracum, et in finibus ejus.

John visits Lincoln and tries to appoint a new bishop.

Post Natale Domini Johannes rex Angliæ venit apud Lincolniam, et non potuit convenire inter illum et canonicos Lincolniensis ecclesiæ de electione episcopi. Voluit enim rex pro sua voluntate eligere, et canonici volebant liberam habere electionem, quam rex eis concedere noluit.

Jan. 25. He visits Cottingham. Jan. 26. He visits Beverley.

Eodem anno mense Januarii, die Conversionis Sancti Pauli, feria quinta, Johannes rex Angliæ transivit fluvium Humbri, et venit ad Cotingham, et hospitatus est cum Willelmo de Stutevilla; et in crastino venit[3] Beverlacum, et pretio conductus hospitatus est cum Johanne Crasso, Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi excommunicato: et cum canonici Beverlacenses vellent eum cum processione et sonitu campanarum recipere, noluit recipi, nec permisit eos sonare. Et in recessu suo de Beverlaco captus est Henricus de Capella et incarceratus, serviens Gaufridi Eboracensis archiepiscopi, ea ratione, quod idem serviens non permisit regem quicquam habere de vinis archiepiscopi. Præcepit[4] idem rex, quod omnes servientes archiepiscopi,[5] ubicunque inventi fuissent, caperentur: et ita factum est.

He imprisons one of archbishop Geoffrey's servants.

---

[1] *Maguntum*] Maguntinum, C.

[2] *Quinto*] Post Natale Domini, præf. M., H.

[3] *venit*] ipse, ins. M., H.

[4] *Præcepit*] etiam, ins. M., H.

[5] *archiepiscopi*] Eboracensis, ins. M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 157.

Mense autem Februarii, in Purificatione Sanctæ Mariæ, Johannes rex Angliæ, et Isabel regina uxor ejus, fuerunt apud Scardeburc; et inde processit rex, et perrexit usque ad fines regni sui; et perambulavit terram, et homines regni redemit, id est, ad redemptionem coegit; imponens eis quod per eos gwastata erat foresta. Cumque venisset ad Extoldesham, et audisset quod apud Choresbrigge esset thesaurus absconditus, fecit ibi fodere, sed nihil inventum est præter lapides signatos ære, ferro et plumbo.

A.D. 1201. Feb. 2. The king and queen at Scarborough. John visits Hexham and excavates at Corbridge.

Eodem anno, in vigilia Purificationis,[1] Willelmus Glascuensis episcopus applicuit in Anglia apud Dovere, rediens de consecratione sua.

Feb. 1. The bishop of Glasgow lands.

Item eodem anno, statim post idem festum Purificationis,[2] Philippus Dunelmensis episcopus transfretavit inter Dovere et Witsant, iturus ad Sanctum Jacobum in peregrinatione.

The bishop of Durham goes to Compostella.

Eodem anno, inter Natale et caput Jejunii, interfectus est in Ultonia Rotherich Macdunlef,[3] ad horreum quoddam alborum monachorum, a servientibus Johannis de Curci, ipso Johanne nesciente, ut dicitur; et postquam scivit, valde pœnituit; qui pro facto illo interfectores illos relegavit.

January or February. Murder of Roderic Macdhunlef.

In medio autem Quadragesimæ, Johannes rex Angliæ, et Isabel uxor ejus,[4] fuerunt apud Eboracum; et Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus pacificavit se regi per pœnam pecuniariam, ita quod per considerationem quatuor episcoporum et quatuor baronum, ex parte regis et ex parte archiepiscopi electorum, emendabuntur excessus utriusque partis.

Mar. 4. The king and queen at York. The archbishop comes to terms.

Hoveden, iv. 158.

Ibidem etiam Willelmus de Stutevilla, et Jacobus de Posterna, quos archiepiscopus excommunicaverat, ab eodem absoluti sunt.

The archbishop absolves his enemies.

Interim Reginaldus Arundel præcentor ecclesiæ Eboracensis obiit.

Reginald Arundel dies.

Quo audito, cum Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus præcentoriam illam uni de suis dare vellet, non permiserunt decanus et capitulum: sed invito archiepiscopo, dederunt Hugoni Murdach archidiaconatum de Clivelande, quem idem archiepiscopus pridie dederat magistro Radulfo de Kime, officiali suo; et cum archiepiscopus vellet mittere eum in stallum vice præcentoris, dixit ei decanus, "Non est vestrum mittere "quenquam in stallum, nec hunc mittetis, quia nos auctori-"tate Lateranensis concilii dedimus archidiaconatum illum."

The dean of York refuses to admit the archbishop's nominee to the archdeaconry of Cleveland. The archbishop excommunicates the dean's nominee.

[1] *Purificationis*] Beatæ Mariæ, ins. M., H.

[2] *idem . . . Purificationis*] Purificationem Sanctæ Mariæ, M., H.

[3] *Rotherich Macdunlef*] Rotherich et Macdwlef, M., C.

[4] *ejus*] sua, M., H., regina, ins. M., H.

A.D. 1201. March 25. Cumque archiepiscopus pro voluntate sua in hiis procedere nequivisset, excommunicavit Hugonem Murdac.[1] Hoveden, iv. 158.

Coronation of John and Isabella at Canterbury. Anno ab Incarnatione Domini millesimo ducentesimo primo,[2] dictus Johannes rex Angliæ, et Isabel regina uxor ejus, fuerunt apud Cantuariam coronati ab Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, in ecclesia cathedrali, die Paschæ, quæ nono kalendas Aprilis evenit, festo Annunciationis Dominicæ, multis ut deceret præsentibus.[3] Et statim post Pascha præcepit rex, ut comites et barones Angliæ essent apud Portesmue ad Pentecosten, parati equis et armis ad transfretandum cum eo.[4] Pictavi enim prævaluerunt adversus custodes terrarum suarum, et castella sua obsederunt; et Warinus de Clapiun, senescallus Normanniæ, ex mandato domini sui Johannis regis Angliæ obsederat castellum de Driencurt, quod Ricardus rex Angliæ dederat Radulfo de Ysoudun, comiti de Auco, fratri Hugonis le Brun. Sed audito adventu regis Angliæ, Philippus rex Franciæ solvit omnes prædictas obsidiones, antequam rex Angliæ veniret in Normanniam. Interim comites Angliæ convenerunt ad colloquium inter eos habitum[5] apud Leyrcestre, et ex communi consilio mandaverunt regi quod non transfretarent cum illo, nisi ille reddiderit jura sua eis. Rex autem, malo usus consilio, petebat ab eis castella sua; et incipiens a Willelmo de Aubencio, petiit ab eo castellum de Beauver;[6] cui idem Willelmus satisfaciens, tradidit filium suum in obsidem, et ita castellum suum retinuit.

Hoveden, iv. 160.

The king orders a general levy at Portsmouth at Whitsuntide, May 13.

War in Normandy.

Hoveden, iv. 161.

The English earls meet at Leicester and demand their rights.

John demands the surrender of their castles.

William Stuteville, sheriff of Yorkshire. Eodem anno Willelmus de Stutevilla constitutus est a rege vicecomes Eboraci.

March 25. Philip, bishop of Durham, was at St. Jean d'Angeli at Easter. Item[7] Philippus Dunelmensis episcopus fuit die Paschæ, in eundo versus Sanctum Jacobum, apud Sanctum Johannem de Angeli, ubi est caput Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, quod Herodes fecit amputari in carcere, et dedit in disco saltatrici filiæ Herodiadis uxoris suæ.

William of Scotland at Karel. Item eodem die Willelmus rex Scottorum fuit in Scotia apud Karel.

---

[1] *Murdac*] Here Hoveden inserts the story of archdeacon Honorius's complaint to the pope against archbishop Geoffrey, and the letter of Innocent III. thereupon, dated Feb. 3, 1201; omitted in C., M., V. See Hoveden, iv. 158–160.

[2] *primo*] qui erat annus tertius regni Johannis regis Angliæ, idem rex et, &c., M., H.

[3] *præsentibus*] Johanne Dublicensi archiepiscopo, et Willelmo Londoniensi, et Gileberto Rofensi, et Eustachio Eliensi, et Johanne Norwicensi episcopis, M., H.

[4] *eo*] illo, M., H.

[5] *habitum*] habiturum, C.

[6] *Beauver*] Beauveir, M.; Beauvaer, H.

[7] *Item*] eodem anno, M., H.

Hoveden, iv. 161.

Eodem anno, regnantibus Innocentio papa 3^tio^ in urbe Romana, et Saffadino fratre Saaladini in sancta civitate Jerusalem, et Alexandro fratricida in civitate Constantinopolitana, et Leone in Ermenia; et Aymerico de Lizinant in civitatibus Tyri et Sydonis, et Accaron, et in insula de Cipro; et Raymundo principante in civitate Antiochena; et Othone, fratre ducis[1] Saxoniæ in Alemannia, electo in Romanorum imperatorem; et Philippo in Francia, et Johanne in Anglia, et Suero Berkebeyn in Nortweye, et Chnut in Dacia, et Willelmo in Scotia, et Guthered in insula de Man, et Johanne de Curci in Ulvestere; doctores nostri prædicaverunt solutum esse draconem illum antiquum, qui est diabolus et Satanas; dicentes, "Væ, væ, væ habitantibus in terra, quoniam solutus est anti-"quus draco, qui est diabolus et Satanas," juxta illud Beati Johannis apostoli et evangelistæ, qui supra pectus Domini in cœna recubuit, et Evangelii fluenta de ipso sacro Dominici pectoris fonte potavit, dicentis: "Ego Johannes vidi angelum "descendentem de cœlo habentem clavem abyssi et catenam "magnam in manu sua; et apprehendit draconem antiquum, "qui est diabolus et Satanas, et religavit illum per annos "mille, et misit eum in abyssum, et clausit, et signavit super "eum, ut non seducat amplius gentes donec consummentur "mille anni, et post hæc oportet eum solvi modico tempore." Asserebant itaque doctores nostri illos mille annos jam esse consumptos, et diabolum solutum. Væ terræ, habitantibus in ea, quia si diabolus ligatus tot et tanta intulerit mundo mala, quot et quanta inferret solutus? Precemur ergo Deum supplices,

A.D. 1201. Satan loosed.

Hoveden, iv. 162.

Rev. xx. 3.

Hymn, *Jam lucis orto.*

"Ut in diurnis actibus,
"Nos servet a nocentibus;
"Linguam refrænans temperet,
"Ne litis horror insonet,
"Visum fovendo contegat,
"Ne vanitates hauriat.
"Sint pura cordis intima, etc.[2]
"Ut cum Judex advenerit, etc.[3]
"Faciat esse compotes."

Hoveden, iv. 163.

Eodem anno, mense Maii, in vigilia Ascensionis, obiit Walterus de Gant, primus abbas canonicorum regularium de Sancta Cruce de Waltham.

May 2. The abbot of Waltham dies.

[1] *ducis*] Henrici ducis, H.

[2] *etc.*] Absistat et vecordia,
Carnis terat superbiam
Potus cibique parcitas,
M., H.

[3] *etc.*] Christus in fine sæculi,
Nos sempiterni gaudii,
M., H.

A.D. 1201. May 14. John takes money of the assembled barons and sends them home.

Eodem anno, in hebdomada Pentecostes, cum barones Angliæ essent congregati apud Portesmue ad transfretandum cum rege, rex cepit de quibusdam eorum[1] pecuniam quam expenderent in servitio suo, et permisit eos domum redire; et præmisit in Normanniam Willelmum Marescallum, comitem de Striguil, cum centum militibus soldariis, et Rogerum de Lascy constabularium Cestriæ, cum aliis centum militibus, ad reprimendum impetum inimicorum suorum in finibus Normanniæ. Et rex tradidit Huberto de Burgo camerario suo centum milites, et constituit eum custodem finium Angliæ et Walliæ. Hoveden, iv. 163.

William Marshall and Roger de Lacy sent to Normandy.

Hubert de Burgh guardian of the marches of Wales.

Deinde idem rex perdonavit Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo iram suam, et reddidit ei servientes suos liberos, et maneria sua; et confirmavit carta sua ei libertates ecclesiæ Eboracensis, et archiepiscopatus sui, sicut Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus eas habuit. Et pro illa confirmatione idem archiepiscopus spopondit se daturum regi infra unum annum mille marcas argenti;[2] et super hoc posuit archiepiscopus baroniam suam regi in pignore.

Geoffrey of York purchases his restoration.

John sends to the king of Scots, to defer his answer till Michaelmas.

Denique rex Angliæ misit [Gaufridum][3] Cestrensem episcopum, Ricardum Malebise, Henricum de Puteaco, ad Willelmum regem Scottorum, et petiit, ut terminus respondendi, de petitione quam fecerat de comitatu Northumbriæ, quem statuerat ei rex Angliæ ad Pentecosten, prorogaretur usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis. Hoveden, iv. 164.

May 14. John goes to the Isle of Wight; the Queen to Normandy.

Deinde rex Angliæ et Ysabel regina ascenderunt naves, transfretaturi feria secunda in hebdomada Pentecostes, sed rex applicuit in insula Wettæ, et regina uxor ejus aliam navem ingressa, prosperis gavisa ventis, applicuit in Normannia. Et post aliquot dies facta mora in Anglia, Johannes rex iterum navem intravit apud Portesmue, et transfretavit in Normanniam: et statim habitum est colloquium inter ipsum et regem Franciæ, prope insulam de Andeli, et bene convenit inter eos; nemine colloquii illorum conscio præter illos duos. Et post triduum Johannes rex ad preces regis Franciæ venit Parisius, et in palatio regis Franciæ hospitatus est, et honorifice procuratus; et rex Franciæ alias se transtulit hospitaturus. Et recedens inde rex Angliæ perrexit ad Chinonem; et venit illuc ad eum Berengera quondam regina Angliæ, uxor Ricardi regis, cui Johannes rex Angliæ satisfecit de dote sua, secundum testimonium Philippi Dunelmensis episcopi, et cæterorum, qui interfuerunt desponsationi suæ.[4]

After a few days John goes to Normandy and meets Philip at Andely.

Thence to Paris, and then to Chinon, where he meets and satisfies Berengaria.

---

[1] *eorum*] illorum, M., H.

[2] *argenti*] sterlingorum ,M., H.

[3] *Gaufridum*] om. C., M.

[4] *suæ*] Here Hoveden inserts the

Hoveden, iv. 167.

A.D. 1201. Eustace abbot of Flay preaches the observance of Sunday.

Eodem anno Eustachius abbas de Flay rediit in Angliam, et prædicans in ea verbum Domini de civitate in civitatem, et de loco in locum, prohibuit ne quis forum rerum venalium in diebus Dominicis exerceret. Dicebat enim quod hoc mandatum subscriptum de observatione diei Dominicæ venit de cœlo;

De mandato Dominicæ diei.[1]

Copy of a letter which the abbot of Flay declared to have come down from heaven.

" Mandatum sanctum Dominicæ diei, quod de cœlo venit " in Jerusalem, et inventum est super altare Symeonis, " quod est in Golgatha, ubi Christus crucifixus est pro pec- " catis mundi. Et mandavit Dominus hanc epistolam, quæ " apprehensa super altare Sancti Symeonis; quam per tres " dies et noctes tres homines aspicientes corruerunt in terram, " rogantes Dei misericordiam; et post horam tertiam erexit se " patriarcha, et Akarias archiepiscopus, et expanderunt infu- " lam, et sanctam acceperunt Dei epistolam. Quam cum ac- " cepissent invenerunt superscriptum istud, 'Ego Dominus, " 'Qui præcepi vobis, ut observaretis diem sanctum Domini- " 'cum, et non custodistis eum, et de peccatis vestris non
S. Mark, xiii. 31. " 'pœnituistis, sicut dixi per Evangelium Meum: Cœlum et " 'terra transibunt, verba autem Mea non transient. Feci " 'autem prædicare vobis pœnitentiam vitæ, et non credidis- " 'tis, et misi super vos paganos gentes, qui effuderunt san- " 'guinem vestrum in terra, nec tamen credidistis, et quia
Hoveden, iv. 168. " 'sanctum diem Dominicum non custodistis, per paucos dies " 'habuistis famem; sed cito dedi vobis saturitatem, et pos- " 'tea pejus fecistis. Volo iterum, ut nemo ab hora nona " 'Sabbati usque ad solem surgentem diei Lunæ aliquid ope- " 'retur, nisi quod bonum sit. Quod si quis fecerit, cum " 'pœnitentia emendet; et si huic mandato non obedieritis, " 'Amen dico vobis, et juro vobis per sedem Meam, et thro- " 'num Meum, et Cherubin qui custodiunt sanctam sedem " 'Meam, quia [non] mandabo vobis aliquid per aliam episto- " 'lam: sed aperiam cœlum, et pro pluvia pluam vobis et[2] " 'super vos lapides et ligna et aquam calidam per noctes, ut

---

letter of Innocent III. on the crusade, dated May 5, 1201. It is omitted in most of the MSS. of Hoveden, and in C., M., and V. See Hoveden, iv. 164–167.

[1] "De observatione diei Domi- " nicæ." M. in marg.

[2] *vobis et*] om. M., H.

A.D. 1201. Copy of a letter on the keeping of the Lord's day, which Eustace abbot of Flay said had come down from heaven.

" ' nemo præcavere possit, quin destruam omnes malos homi- Hoveden, iv. 168.
" ' nes. Hoc dico vobis, Morte moriemini propter diem Do-
" ' minicum sanctum, et alias festivitates sanctorum Meorum,
" ' quas non custodistis; mittam vobis bestias habentes capita
" ' leonum, capillos mulierum, caudas camelorum, et ita erunt
" ' famelicæ quod carnes vestras devorabunt; et vos desidera-
" ' bitis fugere ad sepulcrum mortuorum, et abscondere vos
" ' propter metum bestiarum; et tollam lucem[1] solis ab oculis
" ' vestris, et mittam super vos tenebras, ut occidatis vos in-
" ' vicem non videntes; et auferam a vobis faciem Meam, et
" ' non faciam vobiscum misericordiam. Incendam enim cor-
" ' pora vestra, et corda eorum qui non custodiunt diem
" ' sanctum Dominicum. Audite vocem Meam, ne pereatis in
" ' terra propter diem Dominicum sanctum. Recedite a malo,
" ' et pœnitentiam agite de malis vestris. Quod si non
" ' feceritis, quasi Sodoma et Gomora peribitis. Nunc scitote
" ' quod salvi estis[2] per orationes sanctissimæ Genitricis Meæ
" ' et sanctorum angelorum Meorum, qui orant pro vobis quo-
" ' tidie. Dedi vobis triticum et vinum abundanter, et inde
" ' non obedistis Mihi. Nam viduæ et orphani clamant quo-
" ' tidie ad vos, quibus nullam facitis misericordiam. Pagani
" ' habent misericordiam, vos autem non habetis. Arbores,
" ' quæ fructiferant, siccari faciam pro peccatis: flumina et
" ' fontes non dabunt aquam. Dedi vobis legem in monte
" ' Synay, quam non custodistis. Dedi per Me legem, quam
" ' non observastis. Pro vobis natus fui in mundo, et festivi-
" ' tatem Meam nescitis. Pravi homines diem Dominicum
" ' resurrectionis Meæ non custodistis. Juro vobis per dex-
" ' tram [Meam], nisi diem Dominicum et festivitates sancto-
" ' rum Meorum custodieritis, mittam vobis paganos gentes,
" ' ut occidant vos. Tollitis tamen res alterius, et de hoc
" ' nullam considerationem habetis. Propter hoc mittam super Hoveden, iv. 169.
" ' vos bestias pejores, quæ devorent mulierum vestrarum
" ' mamillas. Maledicam illis qui in die Dominica aliquid
" ' mali operati fuerint. Maledicam illis qui injuste agunt
" ' versus fratres suos. Maledicam illis qui male pauperes
" ' et orphanos judicant, quos terra portat. Me autem dere-
" ' linquitis, et principem hujus sæculi sequimini. Audite
" ' vocem Meam et habebitis misericordiam bonam. Vos au-
" ' tem non cessatis ab operibus malis, nec ab operibus dia-

---

[1] *lucem*] vel lumen, C., in marg.
[2] *estis*] eritis, C., corr. to *estis* in marg.

Hoveden, iv. 169.

" ' boli; quia facitis perjuria, adulteria, ideo circumdabunt " ' vos gentes, et devorabunt ut bestiæ.' " A.D. 1201.

Pervenit igitur dominus Eustachius abbas de Flay Eboracum, et a Gaufrido Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et clero et populo civitatis honorifice susceptus, prædicavit verbum Domini, et de transgressione Dominicæ diei, et aliarum festivitatum, dedit populo pœnitentiam et absolutionem, sub tali conditione, quod ipsi de cætero debitam impenderent Dominicæ diei, et aliis sanctorum festivitatibus, reverentiam, non faciendo in eis quicquam operis servilis, nec in diebus Dominicis exercerent forum rerum venalium, sed bonis operibus et orationibus devote insisterent. Hæc servanda constituit ab hora nona Sabbati usque ad ortum solis in die Lunæ. Populus autem Deo devotus ad prædicationem illius voverunt Deo, quod de cætero in diebus Dominicis nec quicquam emerent nec venderent, nisi forte cibum et potum prætereuntibus. Voverunt etiam quod de singulis quinque solidatis rerum, quascunque venderent, darent unum quadrantem ad lumen ecclesiæ emendum, et ad sepulturam indigentium. Et ad hoc colligendum statuit prædictus abbas in singulis ecclesiis parochialibus fieri truncum concavum sub custodia duorum[1] vel trium fidelium hominum, ubi populus jactaret prænominatum æs. Statuit etiam præfatus abbas, quod discus eleemosynarius haberetur quotidie in mensa divitum, in quo partem ciborum suorum mitterent ad opus indigentium, qui non præparaverunt sibi. Prohibuit etiam idem abbas, ne quis in ecclesia vel in atriis earum venderet vel emeret quicquam, aut placitaret. Hiis ergo, et aliis sancti viri hujus monitis, inimicus humani generis invidens, misit in cor regis et principum tenebrarum, quod ipsi præceperunt, ut omnes qui prædictas traditiones custodirent, et maxime omnes qui in diebus Dominicis forum rerum venalium dejecerant, ad regium examen satisfacturi de observantia diei Dominicæ ducerentur.

The abbot of Flay visits York and preaches the observance of Sunday there.

He makes many converts;

orders alms-trunks to be set up in churches.

Hoveden, iv. 170.

He forbids buying and selling in churches.

Sed Dominus noster Jesus Christus, Cui obediendum est magis quam hominibus, Qui nativitate, et resurrectione Sua, et adventu Spiritus Sancti in discipulos, hunc diem Sibi, quam Dominicam vocamus, illustravit, et celeberrimum dicavit, virtutis Suæ miracula suscitavit, et in quosdam Dominicæ diei transgressores manifestavit sic. Quodam Sabbato post nonam quidam carpentarius in Beverlaco, contra salubria uxoris suæ monita clavum ligneum faciens, corruit in terram percussus paralysi.

Miracle of abbot Eustace at Beverley.

[1] *duorum*] duum, M., C.

A.D. 1201. Another miracle.

Et quædam textrix, post horam nonam in Sabbato, cum ad pertexendum partem telæ anxius insisteret, cadens in terram percussa paralysi obmutuit. Hoveden, iv. 170.

Miracle at Nafferton.

Et apud Naffertun, villam magistri Rogeri de Arundel, quidam homo fecit sibi panem subcinericium die Sabbati post nonam, et comedit inde, et partem reservavit sibi usque mane; quem cum die Dominica fregisset, exivit sanguis, et qui vidit testimonium perhibuit, et verum est testimonium ejus. Hoveden, iv. 171.

Miracle at Wakefield.

Et apud Wakefeld quodam Sabbato, cum molendinarius post nonam operam daret ut bladum suum moleret, subito exivit loco farinæ tantus impetus sanguinis, quod vas suppositum pene implerctur sanguine, et rota molendini stetit immobilis contra vehementem impulsum aquæ; et qui viderant mirati sunt, dicentes, "Parce, Domine, parce populo Tuo."

Miracle in Lincolnshire.

Item in Lincolnesyre paraverat quædam mulier pastam, quam deferens ad furnum post horam nonam Sabbati, misit eam in furnum calidissimum, et cum eam extraheret, invenit crudam; et iterum misit eam in furnum valde calidum, et in crastino, et in die Lunæ, cum æstimaret se invenisse panes coctos, invenit pastam crudam.

Another miracle in Lincolnshire.

Item in eadem provincia, cum quædam mulier pastam præparasset, volens eam ad furnum portare, dixit ei vir suus, "Sabbatum est, et hora nona præteriit; dimitte ergo usque "ad diem Lunæ." Mulier autem obediens viro suo, fecit sicut præceperat, et involvit pastam linteaminibus mundis; et in crastino cum visitaret pastam suam, ne propter fermentum impositum vas excederet, invenit panes inde Divino nutu factos, et bene coctos sine igne materiali. Hæc est mutatio dexteræ Excelsi. Hoveden, iv. 172.

The effects of abbot Eustace's preaching were only transient.

Et quamvis omnipotens Dominus hiis et aliis potentiæ Suæ miraculis populum ad observationem diei Dominicæ invitaret, tamen populus, plus timens regiam et humanam potestatem quam Divinam, plusque timens illos qui corpus occidunt, et quid ultra faciant non habent, quam illum, qui postquam corpus occiderit, animam potest mittere in gehennam, et plus timens terrena amittere quam cœlestia, et transitoria quam æterna, proh dolor! ut canis ad vomitum, reversus est ad forum rerum venalium exercendum in diebus Dominicis. S. Matt x. 28. 2 S. Pet. ii. 22.

June 17. The justices attempt in vain to enforce the assize of measures at S. Botolph's fair.

Eodem anno Hugo Bardulphi, et alii quidam justitiarii regis, venerunt ad nundinas Sancti Botulphi, volentes capere in manu regis pannos laneos qui non habebant duas ulnas de latitudine infra lisuras, secundum assisam regis Ricardi. Quo audito, mercatores effecerunt adversus prædictos justitiarios, quod panni eorum non capiebantur, et quod diutius non teneretur assisa dicti Ricardi regis, neque de latitudine pannorum, neque

Hoveden, iv. 172.

de mensura[1] bladi; et ut liceat eis de cætero facere pannos suos latos vel strictos sicut eis placuerit. Unde prædicti justitiarii magnam adepti sunt pecuniam ad opus regis, in damnum multorum. Vitanda est in omnibus turpis lucri causa. A.D. 1201.

Hoveden, iv. 173.

Eodem anno, Johannes rex Angliæ satisfaciens Berengeræ reginæ, uxori Ricardi regis Angliæ fratris sui, de dote sua, dedit ei in vita sua habendam civitatem Bajocensem cum pertinentiis suis, et duo castella in Andegavia, et mille marcas sterlingorum singulis annis recipiendas, ex quibus ipsa recipiet singulis annis quingentas marcas Londoniis ad scaccarium regis, et alias quingentas marcas in Normannia apud Cadomum. Hæc facta sunt apud Chinonem in præsentia Burdegalensis archiepiscopi Helyæ, et Philippi Dunelmensis episcopi.

August. Agreement of John with Berengaria. She is to have Bayeux, two castles in Anjou, and a pension of 1,000 marks.

Eodem anno Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, die Sancti Bartholomæi apostoli Londoniis apud Westmonasterium existens, præcepit universis suffraganeis suis, in virtute obedientiæ et ex parte domini papæ, ut ipsi, facta diligenti inquisitione per suas dioceses, compellerent, si quos invenissent viros qui crucis religionem abjecerant, cruces resumere, et iter peregrinationis suæ arripere, statuentes eis terminum crucis resumendæ ad ultimum infra festum Sancti Martini proximo sequens, et terminum motionis in Purificatione Sanctæ Mariæ sequentis.

Aug. 24. The archbishop of Canterbury attempts to enforce the pope's mandate for a crusade.

Eodem anno obiit Teobaldus comes Campaniæ, relinquens sibi hæredem filiam unicam, quam pepererat ei Blanchia uxor sua, soror Berengeræ reginæ Angliæ, uxoris Ricardi regis. Theobald of Champagne dies.

Eodem anno obiit Teutonica, filia . . . de Genest, uxor Philippi regis Franciæ, quam papa Innocentius in litteris suis adulteram nominabat; de qua præfatus rex genuerat filium et filiam, quam[2] concessit idem rex Franciæ se daturum Alexandro filio Willelmi regis Scottorum in uxorem. Agnes of Meran dies.

Hoveden, iv. 174.

Eodem anno obiit Constantia, mater Arturi ducis Britanniæ. Constance of Brittany dies.

Item eodem anno obiit Margareta, mater dictæ[3] Constantiæ, soror Willelmi regis Scottorum, mater Henrici de Boun, comitis Herefordiæ. Margaret countess of Hereford dies.

Item eodem anno obiit Robertus præpositus Beverlacensis ecclesiæ; cujus præposituram Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus dedit Morgant fratri suo, filio Henrici regis, ut dicebatur, contra appellationem Simonis Eboracensis ecclesiæ decani, qui dicebat præposituram illam sibi datam fuisse ab eodem archiepiscopo, dum adhuc viveret prædictus Robertus præpositus. Archbishop Geoffrey makes his brother Morgan provost of Beverley.

---

[1] *mensura*] mensuris, M., H.

[2] *quam*] filiam autem illam, M., H.

[3] *dictæ*] prædictæ, M., H.

A.D. 1201. The bishop of Durham returns from Compostella.

Et eodem anno Philippus Dunelmensis episcopus rediit in Angliam de Sancto Jacobo, facta sua peregrinatione. Hoveden, iv. 174.

John of Salerno, legate to Scotland, comes to York.

Eodem anno Johannes Salernitanus, tituli Sancti Stephani in monte Celion[1] presbyter cardinalis, apostolicæ sedis legatus in Scotia, et in Hibernia, et in insulis adjacentibus, venit Eboracum. Qui cum esset unus de duobus electis in summum pontificem proximo post decessum Cœlestini papæ, electioni suæ renunciavit, licet decem cardinales in electione sua consensissent: et ipse cum cæteris cardinalibus elegit Lotharium diaconum cardinalem in Romanum pontificem, nomine Innocentium papam.[2] Prædictus vero Johannes non manducavit carnem; vinum et siceram non bibit, nec aliquid quo inebriari potuit; sed aurum et argentum sitivit. In præsentia autem istius cardinalis Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus obtulit Simoni decano, et capitulo Eboraci, se in omnibus stare examini illius super omnibus querelis quæ inter [illos][3] vertebantur, salvis privilegiis et dignitatibus utriusque partis, et salvo jure. Sed hoc solum verbum, "salvo jure," videbatur onerosum et importabile illis, quos propriæ actionis accusabat intentio; et nitebantur ut verbum illud, "salvo jure," tolleretur.

His abstinence from everything but money. Hoveden, iv. 175.

The archbishop offers to abide by his arbitration, but in vain.

The sureties of the peace between John and Philip are to turn against their respective masters in case of their breaking the treaty.

Eodem anno, ut pax firmior haberetur inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Johannem regem Angliæ, statutum est, et confirmatum scripto, quod si rex Franciæ in aliquo violaverit pacem, quam ipse cum rege [Angliæ] fecerat, barones Franciæ quos ipse fidejussores de pace servanda assignavit, a fidelitate sua cum omnibus hominibus eorum soluti, redirent ad regem Angliæ ad auxiliandum ei contra regem Franciæ. Similiter erit de baronibus regis Angliæ, quos ipse constituit fidejussores de pace servanda, qui in obsequium regis Franciæ converterentur cum hominibus eorum, a fidelitate regis Angliæ soluti, si rex Angliæ pacem illam fuerit transgressus.

Walter de Lacy attempts to kill John de Courcy; Hoveden, iv. 176.

Eodem anno Walterus de Lasci, vir potens in Hibernia, cepit colloquium cum Johanne de Curci domino de Ulvestere, et volens proditiose capere, multos de suis interfecit. Cum autem prædictus Johannes verteretur in fugam, dixit ei Hugo de Laci, frater prædicti Walteri, "Domine, veni mecum, et " receptabo te in castello meo, de quo homo vester sum, donec " exercitus vester congregetur, ut possitis vindicare vos de " hiis qui te oderunt semper." Credidit ergo illi prædictus Johannes, et intravit castellum tutus de præfato Hugone. Sed

---

[1] *Celion*] Selion, C.

[2] *nomine Innocentium papam*] qui vocatus est papa Innocentius, M.; Innocentius tertius, H.; nomine Innocentius papa, C.

[3] *illos*] om. C.; eos, supplied by Bale in M.

Hoveden, iv. 176.

cum inde exire vellet, non permisit eum Hugo exire: immo eum cepit, regi Angliæ traditurus, qui a multo tempore desiderabat eum tenere. At homines prædicti Johannis die ac nocte non cessabant devastare ferro, flamma, fame, terras prædictorum Walteri et Hugonis de Laci, donec liberaverunt dominum suum Johannem de Curci de captione præfati Hugonis de Lacy. A.D. 1201. who is taken by Hugh de Lacy and given up to the king. His men ravage the estates of the Lacies.

Eodem anno Johannes rex Angliæ, volens appellare barones Pictaviæ de sua et fratris sui proditione, multos conduxit et secum duxit viros arte bellandi in duello doctos, et de terris suis cismarinis et transmarinis electos. Sed barones Pictaviæ inde præmuniti ad curiam illius venire noluerunt, dicentes quod nemini responderent nisi pari suo. Et sic rex Angliæ fraudatus a desiderio suo reversus est in Normanniam, et Pictavi facti sunt ei ex hoc inimiciores. Ad quorum impetum comprimendum constituit rex Angliæ Robertum de Thurnham procuratorem.[1] John appeals the barons of Poictou for treason; but they refuse to accept his wager of battle.

Eodem anno G., summus magister Hospitalis Jerusalem, priori et fratribus suis per Angliam constitutis, in hac forma scripsit.

Hoveden, iv. 185.

" Magister Hospitalis Jerusalem priori Angliæ. Quemad- The master of the Hospital reports very sad news from Palestine.
" modum rumores proveniunt, ita eos cupimus cordibus
" amicorum nostrorum intimari. Transacti itaque passagii
" lugendo tempore, de solito terræ Jerosolimitanæ rumores
" mittebamus; sed navi confracta in maritima Tripolis ante
" Biblium, Acconensis episcopus, et plures viri honestissimi
" fratrum nostrorum ad vos pro negotio Terræ Sanctæ desti-
" nati, cum multis tam nobilibus quam humilibus peregrinis,
" ad dolorem et gemitum totius populi Christiani, sicut Do-
" mino placuit, sub aquis vehementibus pericrunt. Post quod Shipwrecks on the coast.
" naufragium nullum putamus transfretasse navigium, ut dici-
" tur ab omnibus: quia quædam naves, in quibus nuncii nostri
" mittebantur, transfretare disponentes, cum ab Accone reces-
" sissent, et per triduum et amplius navigassent, amissis
" arboribus antennis insolita ventorum et turbinis rabie, vix
" naufragium evadentes, Tripolim sunt reversæ. Et[2] tamen

[1] Here Hoveden inserts a large number of letters on the York quarrels; which are omitted in all the MSS. but one, and are not found in our MSS. C., M., V. See Hoveden, iv. 176–185.

[2] *Et*] Ea, H.

A.D. 1201. Saffadin has become sultan of Egypt.

" qua potuimus navigii opportunitate reperta, vestræ frater- Hoveden, iv. 185.
" nitati declaramus, quod ille Christianorum hostis nequis-
" simus, Damasci dominus Saphadinus, Babilonis effectus est
" dominus. Quia nepotem suum et alios, quorum successionem
" timebat, de regno Babilonis, ut perfidus et perjurus, ejecit;
" viget adhuc inter ipsum, et soldanum Aleph, et plures
" alios nimia discordia, quæ fine careat, et nunquam decidat Hoveden,
War between Saffadin and his relations.
" vel arescat. Ipse quoque Saphadinus, suis odibilis et in- iv. 186.
" festus, domesticas timet insidias, et in nullo loco tutum
" credens se, utpote qui nepotibus suis exstitit proditor et
" perjurus, quos etiam funditus quotidie et exhæredare cona-
" tur, Babiloniam exire non audet. Quæ res nobis hoc anno
" munimen præstitit et tutelam. Paraverat enim contra
" nos tumidus et intolerabilis insilire, et Christianitatis, quæ
Plagues sent on his kingdom of Egypt.
" superfuerant, funditus demoliri reliquias. Percussit etiam
" Deus virga potentiæ Suæ Babilonicas regiones, in flumine
" illo Paradisi quod agros hostium irrigabat, ne flueret, nec
" anno præterito fluctus emisit. Propter quod in fame pe-
" reunt, et eorum animalia perdiderunt, nec plures eorum
" veriti sunt pater filium vendere, dives pauperem, potens
" debilem, ut sic vitam suam a fame conservent: quam sicci-
" tatem fluminis, si non fluxerit,[1] futuram timent. Hoc etiam
" quisquis excogitet sapiens, quod si flumen nutu Dei præ-
" senti anno non fluxerit,[1] arva non irrigaverit,[2] in magno
" discrimine vitæ suæ erunt. Quorum jam infinita multitudo
" necessitate compulsa, et famis austeritate, terram nostram,
" sicut locustarum agmina, replevit pro sustinendis corporibus
" suis: ubi quidam terras ecclesiæ moliuntur; quidam more
" bestiarum sylvestribus herbis vescuntur; quidam fame ne-
" cati per loca sylvestria mirative reperiuntur vermibus et
This is an opportunity for the Christian powers.
" avibus comedendi. Nos igitur in Domino ponentes spem
" nostram, Qui, quando vult, prælìis finem ponit, speramus
" quod populo Christiano dat initium miserendi, cum ipso-
Rise of a Saracen who preaches Christ.
" rum conterit inimicos. Datur etiam materies admirandi,
" quod quidam Saracenus, ætate juvenis, origine vilis, inter
" pastores a pueritia simplici nutritus, de novo sic omnibus
" peritus apparet, ut omnes sapientiam ejus admirentur, et
" nomen Jesu Christi publice prædicat: ita quod ipsi jam
" duo millia paganorum et eo amplius concredentes, ejus
" exhortationibus fidem nostram susceperunt, et fonte sacri
" baptismatis sunt recreati, et circumcisionis suæ condolent se
Want of money.
" sustinuisse dolorem. Immenso tamen inimici nostri exultant

[1] *fluxerit*] fluxerunt, C., M. | [2] *irrigaverit*] irrigaverunt, C., M.

Hoveden, iv. 186.

" gaudio, quia nos paucos[1] sciunt, et pecunia pauperes, et " armatorum copia sentiunt derelictos. Quapropter ad vos " lamentabiliter clamamus, et misericorditer exoramus, qua- " tenus nobis, tam apud majores quam minores, consilio et " auxilio vestro subvenire dignemini, et dominum regem

Hoveden, iv. 187.

" Angliæ, et quoscunque poteritis, ad subventionem nostram " efficaciter inducere, et diligenter monere procuretis. Nos " enim infinitas trementes divitias, cum sibi propter opes " multorum subveniant mercimonia mercatorum, non minus " solito timore conterimur universi; et cum de uno tantum " regno Babilonis, aut Damasci, universus Terræ Promis- " sionis populus vix bene tueri solebat; nunc duo regna uni " domino conjugata, nobis tantilli residui numeri terrorem " pariunt et minantur. Hic est certe verus status Terræ " Promissionis, et inimicorum Christi; quo taliter permanente, " si bonum Christianorum haberemus auxilium, gratia propi- " tiante cœlesti, et Christi injurias et dedecus Christianorum " crederemus vindicare. Propterea, bone frater, quia pauca " dicere sufficit, satis novistis quæ et quanta nobis incumbunt " necessaria; et nunc audite quid ultra modum nos affligit. " Terra regni Siciliæ jugiter destruitur a Teutonicis et " Longobardis; domus nostra Baroli relicta fuerit; fratres " intus in civitate manent; domus extrinsecæ, a quibus auxi- " lium nostrum procedebat, ad nihilum deductæ sunt, nullus " in civitate persistit. Postquam autem a terra recessistis, " nihil de regno Siciliæ nobis subvenit, ad præsens jam et per " annum, frumentum, vinum et hordeum, carnes et caseum, et " quæque necessaria, emimus pro universis domibus et castris " nostris, in quibus omnibus sine numero necessaria est ex- " pensa. Pecuniam nisi a transmarinis[2] domibus receperimus, " aliunde aliter habere nequimus, et jam diu est quod nihil " fere recepimus ad comparationem expensæ. Noveritis quod " in debitis plurimis subjacemus: exspectantes auxilium ves- " trum, et aliorum bonorum fratrum nostrorum, amore Divino " et nostro vos monemus, ut quantumcunque poteritis, in " primo Martii passagio subveniatis. Valete."

A.D. 1201.

Appeal for help.

Wretched state of the possessions of the Hospitallers: their Sicilian revenue being cut off.

Quibus auditis, dominus papa Innocentius misit unum cardinalem ad regem Franciæ, et ad regem Angliæ, postulans subsidium fieri de terris eorum, ad subventionem terræ Jerosolimitanæ. Ad cujus mandatum, ipsi reges concesserunt se daturos, ad subventionem præfatæ terræ, quadragesimam partem omnium reddituum suorum de uno anno. Et rex Angliæ

The pope sends a cardinal to John and Philip.

[1] *paucos*] pauci, C.; corrected in M.

[2] *a transmarinis*] ab ultramarinis, M., C. in marg.

A.D. 1201. John orders a levy of a fortieth to be exacted for the relief of Palestine.

hoc ipsum mandavit fieri de redditibus, escaetis et wardis suis Angliæ: et præcepit ut omnes laici terrarum suarum simili modo quadragesimam partem reddituum suorum darent in eleemosynam ad subventionem terræ Jerosolimitanæ. Unde Gaufridus Filius Petri, tunc temporis summus justitiarius Angliæ, in hac forma scripsit vicecomitibus et ballivis Angliæ; Hoveden, iv. 187. Hoveden, iv. 188.

Epistola Gaufridi Filii Petri ad vicecomites et ballivos Angliæ, de quadragesima parte reddituum regis et laicorum colligenda ad subventionem terræ Sanctæ.

Letter of the Justiciar directing the collection of the fortieth for the relief of Palestine.

" Gaufridus Filius Petri, comes Essexiæ, universis vicecomitibus balliæ suæ, salutem. Sciatis quod dominus rex Angliæ, ad instantiam et prædicationem cujusdam cardinalis a summo pontifice missi in Franciam, de consilio magnatum suorum de partibus transmarinis concessit ad sanctæ Jerosolimæ subsidium quadragesimam portionem valoris omnium reddituum et terrarum suarum unius anni, tam [de wardis quam][1] de escaetis in manu sua existentibus. Quod etiam ipsi magnates sui ultra mare voluntarie concesserunt. Ad eorum etiam instantiam scripsit dominus rex omnibus Angliæ magnatibus per litteras patentes, rogans et inducens eos, quatenus puro corde, et caritatis intuitu, illud idem de valore omnium reddituum et terrarum suarum unius anni concederent; quod quidem nec debito, nec de consuetudine, nec de cohertione, nec de aliqua alia auctoritate apostolica conceditur vel postulatur. Unde præcepit quod omnes comites, barones, de qualibet ballia, in primis admoneantur et inducantur diligenter, quatenus pro se hanc collectam faciant in terris suis, hoc modo; scilicet, ut quilibet quadragesimam partem valoris cujuslibet villæ suæ, sicut posset poni ad firmam per annum; et si in eadem villa fuerint per servitium militare tenentes, dent quadragesimam portionem modo prædicto; si autem fuerint libere tenentes, similiter dent eandem portionem modo prædicto, computato redditu, quem dominis suis solverint per annum. Hanc autem collectam colligi faciant per tam discretos et legales, qui ad hoc possint et sciant sufficere, qui eam recipient tam de comitibus quam de baronibus prædictis. Et postquam per manus eorum fuerit collecta, receptores prædictæ collectæ faciant in scriptum redigi distincte, et aperte,

System on which the money is to be collected.

[1] *de wardis quam*] om. C., M.

Hoveden, iv. 188, 189.

"quantum de quolibet acceperint,[1] tam de comitibus quam de baronibus, militibus et libere tenentibus; et nomina singulorum, et villarum, quantumcunque de singulis villis, et quorum quælibet sit, imbreviari faciant. Summam autem de dominicis, de wardis et de escaetis, et redditibus domini regis, faciant imbreviari. Si quis vero clericus laicum feodum habuerit in ballia aliqua, vel homines tenentes laicum feodum; in eorum terris fiat hæc collecta per prædictos collectores modo prædicto. De terris autem cruce signatorum prædicta collecta fiat modo prædicto, ita tamen quod eorum pecunia separatim reponatur ab alia; et summa pecuniæ, et nomina singulorum quorum ipsa pecunia fuerit, subscribantur; ut illi, qui iter arripuerint, pecuniam suam prompte recipiant. Provideatur autem quod pecunia illa sit collecta, ita quod unusquisque vicecomes simul cum collectoribus habeat eam apud Novum Templum Londoniis a die Sancti Hilarii in quindecim dies, et imbreviamentum modo prædicto ordinatum, videlicet, de summa pecuniæ, et nominibus eorum qui eam dederint, et nominibus villarum de quibus data fuerit pecunia prædicta, et quantum de qualibet datum fuerit. Si qui autem contradixerint huic collectæ assensum præbere, nomina eorum imbrevientur, et coram nobis repræsententur apud Londonias ad terminum prædictum, et hoc breve et nomina collectorum ibidem habeantur. Valete."[2]

A.D. 1201. The several payments to be registered.

The reports to be made at London on the 27th of January.

Mirabilia plura per Angliam evenerunt; sanguine vel ex vestibus vel ex aliis rebus per se stillante. Aeris etiam intemperies, fulgura, et pluviarum inundationes.

Caruagium[3] per Angliam exactum est ut regi Franciæ denarii pro pace firmata procurarentur.

Expliciunt Cronica Rogeri de Hovendene.

---

[1] *acceperint*] corr. to receperint, C.

[2] *Valete*] Here the text of Hoveden properly ends. The following sentence is found in two of the later and worse MSS. of Hoveden, in a modern hand, and may possibly have been transcribed from the MS. C. or some similar one. It occur in M., C., and V.

[3] *Caruagium*] Cornagium, M., over an erasure.

A.D. 1202. F.[1]——MCCII.

Crusade. Comes Flandriæ cum pluribus aliis iter Jerosolimitanum aggreditur. In itinerando autem varios fortunæ casus expertus, tandem ad imperium Constantinopolitanum sublimatus est. MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 175 b.

Fulk of Neuilly dies. War renewed. Fulco presbyter de Noili, qui prædicatione sua plures ad iter Jerosolimitanum sollicitaverat, obiit. Discordia inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Johannem regem Angliæ.[2]

Arthur taken at Mirabel. Rex Franciæ Gurnai, cum castellis aliis et urbibus, capit; et Arthurum cingulo militari donans, cum Pictavensibus contra regem Johannem mittit, quem ipse apud Mirabel cum omnibus suis cepit.

Translatio et canonizatio Sancti Gilberti de Sempingham.

A.D. 1203. E.——MCCIII.

Willelmus episcopus Lincolniensis consecratur.

S. Wulstan canonized. Canonizatio Sancti Wlstani Wygornensis episcopi a papa Innocentio; Malgero episcopo Wygornensi id procurante.

Disappearance of Arthur. Arthurus in prisona patrui sui Johannis regis Angliæ, dubium quo casu, de medio factus est, nec est inventum sepulcrum ejus usque ad diem hunc, ut dicitur, sed non absque vindicta Dei, Qui frangit omnem superbum. Britones quippe quasi de nomine augurium sumentes, Arthurum antiquum in isto resuscitatum impudenter et imprudenter jactitabant, et Anglorum internecionem,[3] regnique ad Britones per istum imminere translationem.

A.D. 1204. D. ℞. C.——MCCIIII.

Queen Eleanor dies. Alienor, quondam regina Franciæ, postea autem regina Angliæ, mater Ricardi et Johannis regum Angliæ,[4] obiit.

---

[1] The text of the remaining portion of the work is derived, directly, from the same compilation as that which furnished the foregoing portions, and which is represented by the MSS. Magd. Coll. Oxon. 36; and Cotton, Vitellius E. 13. This portion exists, however, in an earlier form, and not in connexion with the matter which supplies the major part of this work, in the MS. College of Arms, No. 10; here collated under the signature A.

[2] *Philippum . . . Angliæ*] Philippum et Johannem reges, M., A.

[3] *internecionem*] interventionem, C. "Captio Arturi per regem "Johannem," M. in marg.

[4] *Ricardi . . . . Angliæ*] regum Johannis et prædecessorum ejus Henrici et Ricardi, M., V., A.

Saffredus Cicestrensis obiit, successit[1] Simon Wellensis archidiaconus. A.D. 1204.

Capta est civitas Constantinopolis a comite Flandriæ, episcopis et comitibus et nobilibus viris et fortissimis de Francia sibi associatis, in qua[2] omnium electione imperator nobiliter gessit; qui cum magnam partem Græciæ sibi adquisisset, et eam sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ subdidisset, post modicum tempus[3] a Græcis interfectus est; cujus frater eidem est in regni solio sublimatus. Capture of Constantinople. Latin emperors.

Rex Franciæ Philippus Normanniam, Andegaviam, Cenomanniam, et fere totam Andegaviam,[4] sine multa cæde et sanguine capit, Rotomagi muros et castellum demoliri facit; Johannes quippe, a suis destitutus, Normannia recesserat, malens ad horam cum quodam dispendio et nominis et rerum cedere, quam se cum suis omnibus exterminio tradere. Philip conquers Normandy.

Godefridus Wintoniensis episcopus obiit, successit Petrus de Rupibus. Deaths of the year.

Obiit Paulus abbas Leyrcestriæ, et Robertus comes Leyrcestriæ absque sobole. Comitatum cujus Simon de Monteforti et Seerus de Quency inter se dividunt, eo quod Seerus et pater Simonis uxores duxissent sorores prædicti Roberti comitis. Earldom of Leicester divided.

MCCV.——B. A.D. 1205.

Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus obiit. Death of Archbishop Hubert, and disputed elections at Canterbury.

Eliguntur duo, primo subprior Cantuariensis a conventu, et postmodum Johannes Norwycensis episcopus favore regio, et episcoporum comprovincialium assensu, et quorundam Cantuariensium factione monachorum potestati publicæ placere volentium, vel certe fratris, ut videtur, promotionibus invidentium. Et fuerunt hæc multorum in ecclesia Anglicana pariter et in regno initia dolorum. Jam prior electus, curiam adiens Romanam, favorem domini papæ una cum manus impositione exspectabat; subsecuti sunt alterius partis fautores, et rege id etiam cum expensarum exhibitione procurante, monachi Cantuariensis ecclesiæ xii. subpriori in facie resistentes. Dominus autem papa utramque cassavit electionem, neutram asserens canonicam, ne aut regi satisfaciens Deum offenderet, aut reliquo,[5] regem nimis contristaret; præsertim

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 176 a.

The pope quashes the elections.

---

[1] *successit*] succedit, M.
[2] *qua*] communi, ins. A.
[3] *tempus*] om. M., A.
[4] *Andegaviam*] So MSS, doubtless for *Aquitanniam*, which is the reading of A.
[5] *reliquo*] reliquo assentiens, A.

A.D. 1205. Negotiations at Rome.

cum et prior electus apud sedem apostolicam conventus sigillo suam muniisset electionem, et secundo xii. Cantuariensis [ecclesiæ] monachi una cum episcoporum comprovincialium et conventus sigillis, necnon et regiis petitionibus et muneribus forte transmissi suffragia præstarent.

Death of Savaric.

Savericus[1] Batoniensis episcopus obiit.

A.D. 1206.

MCCVI.——A.

Jocelinus episcopus Batoniensis.

Council at Reading.

Johannes apostolicæ sedis legatus in Angliam venit, et concilium apud Radingges[2] celebravit.[3]

John goes to Poictou and returns.

Johannes rex Angliæ in Pictaviam, quasi ad succursum vel amissorum recuperationem, transiens, cito in Angliam redit, captis nonnullis munitionibus.

Stephen Langton elected archbishop of Canterbury.

Stephanus cardinalis presbyter ad titulum Sancti Grisogoni, Anglicus natione, sed a domino papa ad ecclesiam Romanam, ubi præbendatus erat et theologiam docebat, accitus, Romæ ad Cantuariensem archiepiscopatum eligitur. Cum enim illis duodecim, quos Romam hujus rei causa transmissos diximus, a conventu Cantuariensi et episcopis Angliæ, necnon et a rege sufficienter esset cautum, quod eorum apud sedem apostolicam acta rata haberentur et indiscussa, suasit vir apostolicus, ut rei litigiosæ admodum et periculosæ, per tertii qui competentior videretur electionem, finem imponerent, et auctoritate apostolica hoc fieri injunxit; sicque ibi celebrata est de magistro Stephano electio, et a domino papa incontinenti confirmata.

Willelmus Lincolniensis[4] et Henricus Exoniensis obierunt.[5]

A.D. 1207.

MCCVII.——G.

Simon Cicestrensis episcopus obiit.

John exacts a thirteenth.

Facta est circa Purificationem Beatæ Mariæ exactio tertiæ decimæ partis per Angliam tam reddituum quam possessionum, ad opus regium, sub prætextu terrarum, quas trans mare amiserat, per werram recuperandarum.

Consecration of Langton.

Stephanus autem[6] electus a domino[7] papa consecratur, diu expectato et sæpius apicibus sacris expetito regis Angliæ

[1] *Savericus*] Savaricus, M.
[2] *Radinges*] Redinges, M.
[3] *celebravit*] celebrat, M.
[4] *Lincolniensis*] obiit, ins. M.
[5] *obierunt*] om. M.
[6] *autem*] Cantuariensis, ins. A.
[7] *domino*] om. M., A.

consensu, sed cum nullo rex ad hoc inclinari pacto videretur, dominus papa, manus impositione cum benedictione data, eum ad Cantuariensem ecclesiam mittit. Resistit rex pro viribus, publicum protestans hostem qui eum vel nomine archiepiscopi honoraret. A.D. 1207. John refuses to receive him.

Monachi a Cantuaria expelluntur, rege graviter id accipiente, quod contra promissum Norwycensem quasi abjicientes, alium elegerunt, vel electioni consensu tacito aut publica protestatione adquieverunt: unde et arcubalistarios et rutarios illuc dirigens, minas eis intentat terribiles. Quas illi non exspectantes, cum fletu et omnium qui aderant gemitu, pedites et nudis, ut dicitur, pedibus a matre Britanniarum ecclesia pari voto cedunt, marique transmisso ut possunt, grave et importabile subeunt exilium. Ubi tamen non deseruit Deus sperantes in Se, ad eorum subsidia tam sæculares provocans quam ecclesiasticas personas. Soli remanserunt quos aut ætas gravabat, aut valitudo fatigabat; exceptis nonnullis pestilentibus et discolis, qui sicut matrem in tribulatione, sic fratres deseruerunt in peregrinatione. Sed nec ipsi in matris, cujus diruperant viscera, gremio quieverunt, sed Cain more, vagi et profugi habitaverunt super terram. Sedit igitur sola domina gentium, et Rachelis exemplo amissos plorabat filios princeps provinciarum, non jam sub tributo facta, sed peccatis nostris exigentibus tota in prædam pro arbitrio hostium, qui facti sunt ei in capite, redacta. Expulsion and sufferings of the monks of Canterbury.

Lament. i. 1.

Eclipsis solis ii°. kalendas Martii.

Regina Angliæ peperit filium nomine Henricum. Birth of Henry the Third.

Otho rex Romanorum in Angliam venit, vocatus a rege Angliæ Johanne, sed cito rediit. Otho visits England.

MCCVIII.——F. B. E. A.D. 1208.

Eclipsis lunæ.

Generale interdictum per Angliam et Walliam, x°. kalendas Aprilis promulgatum, propter exilium archiepiscopi Cantuariensis et monachorum ejectionem. Exulabat etiam Gaufridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, eo quod regi contradiceret ab ecclesiasticis sicut a laicis tertiam decimam extorquenti. Interdict proclaimed March 23. Exile of Archbishop Geoffrey.

Episcopi et omnes personæ ecclesiasticæ dissaisiantur.

Cistercienses per Angliam interdictum infringunt.

Hæresis nova in terra comitis Tolosani palam se extulit plurimos involvens, civitates nonnullas vel castra occupans. Philippus Dunelmensis et Gaufridus Coventrensis episcopi[1] obierunt.[2] Heresy in France.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 176 b.

[1] *episcopi*] om. M., A. | [2] *obierunt*] obiit, M., A.

A.D. 1208. Death of Philip of Swabia. Philippus dux Suaviæ, qui regem Romanorum se dixerat, inscio ejus adversario Othone, a quodam comite occiditur.

Birth of Richard of Cornwall. Regina Angliæ peperit filium nomine Ricardum.

A.D. 1209. D.——MCCIX.

Cistercienses per Angliam iterum interdicto subjiciuntur.

Consecration of Hugh of Wells. Hugo Wellensis archidiaconus electus est ad episcopatum Lincolniensem, et in Francia consecratus est a Stephano Cantuariensi.

Otho IV. emperor. Rex Otho solemniter Romæ in imperatorem sublimatur a papa Innocentio.

John excommunicated. Johannes rex Angliæ post admonitiones plurimas publice anathemati subjicitur.

Confiscation of monastic property. Episcopis Angliæ fere omnibus exulantibus, personæ ecclesiasticæ et religiosi omnes supra modum per Angliam vexantur, adeo ut omnium nigrorum monachorum possessiones a regiis ballivis quasi fisco describerentur, clerici laicorum more passim aut gladiis aut crucibus punirentur. Johannes rex

Expedition to Scotland. expeditionem ducit super Willelmum regem Scotiæ,[1] et facta pace et obsidibus ad libitum receptis citissime rediit. Idem post reditum suum a Scotia homagium et sacramentum fidelitatis ab omnibus per Angliam exegit et accepit.

Laboratum est plurimum ut reconciliarentur in Anglia regnum et sacerdotium, sed frustra.

Crusade against the Albigenses. Hæretici in terra comitis Tolosani, procurante hoc domino papa, armis expugnantur, fidelibus etenim partium illarum in peccatorum remissionem injunxit, ut crucesignati in pectore, et una cum legatis suis proficiscentes, apostatas aut[2] ad ecclesiam reducerent aut exterminarent. Demolitæ sunt et in ore gladii deletæ civitates nonnullæ, et castra aut capta aut reddita non pauca.

Simon de Montfort commands. Præfectus[3] est terræ illi quæ ab hæreticis mundata est, Simon de Monteforti comes Leyrcestriæ, consensu procerum qui aderant, et domini papæ conniventia. Ubi duros et crebros

---

[1] *Scotiæ*] "et duas filias suas "dedit maritandas, et xiii. millia "libras utique pro libertate portus "Berewici, et inde cepit libertatem "subvertendi castrum de Mauvay- "syn, quod erexerat Philippus epis- "copus Dunelmensis contra Bere- "wicum. Rex Scotiæ dedit obsides "filios proborum hominum de terra "sua, quod etiam Scotis multum "displicuit. *Annal. W. Cov.*" MS. Gale, in marg. The words closely resemble those of the Chronicle of Mailros, ed. Fulman, p. 183; and still more closely those of the Chronicle of Lanercost, p. 7.

[2] *aut*] om. M.; ins. A.

[3] *Præfectus*] Præfectusque, A. "Simon de Monteforti præfectus est "terræ ab hæreticis mundatæ." M. "in marg.

contra hæreticos multo tempore habuit, corrogatis undique auxiliis et confluentibus ad eum tanquam castrorum Domini ducem, ab omni terrarum parte crucesignatis. A.D. 1209.

Ecclesiis conventualibus per Angliam indulgentia collata est semel in hebdomada[1] celebrandi Divina, interdicto generali nihilominus durante. Mitigation of the interdict.

Scholares unanimi consensu omnino Oxonia recedunt.[2] Secession from Oxford.

Lodowicus cingulo militari donatur a patre suo rege Franciæ.

C.——MCCX. A.D. 1210.

In ipso anni exordio, kalendis scilicet Januarii, factum est acerrimum [gelu][3] cum nive maxima, usque ad festum Sancti Valentini continuum; ut spissitudo glaciei aliquibus in locis mensuram pedis excederet. Frigoris autem tanta asperitas erat, ut feras, aves, et paludum pisces necaret; arbores, etiam hyeme virentes, aut penitus exsiccaret, aut frondium honore spoliaret.[4] Great frost.

Abbates Acharius de Burgo et Radulfus de Ulmo obierunt.[5] Johannes rex Angliæ, sub prætextu werræ sustentandæ, pecuniam undecunque corrogavit, unde et monasteriis omnibus per Angliam cujuscunque sexus vel ordinis mulctam inauditam et importabilem imposuit. Cistercienses tamen cum ad consensum nullo pacto primo inclinare potuisset, et ideo molestus eis esset, adeo ut confiscata bona eorum distraherentur, nec abbates generale concilium Cisterciensium[6] adire permitterentur; tandem in cæterorum exemplum regi satisfecerunt, eo gravius quo serius mulctati, ut sic saltem indignatio regia quiesceret. Exactions of John. Resistance of the Cistercians.

---

[1] *hebdomada*] "exclusis laicis, "januis clausis, *W. Covent. Ann.*" MS. Gale, in marg. See Chron. Lanercost, p. 5, and Chron. Mailros, p. 183: where, however, the words are "januis clausis, exclusis sæcu-"laribus."

[2] *recedunt*] "Clerici timentes ty-"rannidem regis omnes fere Ox-"oniam reliquerunt; pauci rema-"nentes, non multo post, propter "unius suspendium ex toto villam "interdicendo recesserunt, partim "ad Redings partim apud Parisius "divertentes. Hoc accidit propter "oppressionem et necem secutam "unius puellæ, quæ fuit turpiter "reperta apud Mayden Hall. *Walt. Cov. Annal.*" MS. Gale, in marg. The words occur in the Chronicle of Lanercost, ed. Stevenson, p. 4; and compare Chron. Mailros, ed. Fulman, p. 182.

[3] *gelu*] om. M., C.; ins. A.

[4] *spoliaret*] Quin et sata hiberna ex parte maxima perierunt, ad quod valde cooperabatur quod subsecutum est ver ventosum et urens, add. M., V., and A.

[5] *Abbates . . . . obierunt*] Obiit Akarius de Burgo abbas et Radulfus abbas de Hulmo, M., A.

[6] *concilium Cisterciensium*] capitulum, M., A.

A.D. 1210. John confiscates church property.

Confiscabantur nihilominus omnium ecclesiasticarum bona personarum; quoad usque regem pecunia placassent. Et erat hoc factu facile; exulantibus quippe episcopis, hii [qui] pejora verebantur, conditiones quascunque subirent, dummodo umbratili pace gauderent. Solus in Anglia remansit Wintoniensis, et is non tam ecclesiastica defensabat quam regia negotia administrabat.

Quarrel between the pope and the emperor.

Graves inter dominum papam et imperatorem Othonem discordiæ; imperatore siquidem cito post promotionem suam quædam occupante, quæ vir apostolicus suæ protectioni commendata asseruit, inhibitus est in jus alienum manus extendere. Cumque ille jus imperii Romani, ut sibi videbatur, juste ad imperium revocaret, nec propter inhibitiones cessaret, commotus est dominus papa, eoque gravius quod sola ejus post Deum opera, primo ad regnum, deinde ad imperii culmen, esset sublimatus. Unde primo in ejus satellites, deinde in ipsum anathematis sententiam contorquens, ab ejus fidelitate et homagio totius imperii principes absolvit; eosque qui cum eo vel pro eo starent in impugnatione justitiæ pariter anathematizavit. Exasperatus est ex hoc, ut videtur, rex Angliæ, cœpitque minus abhorrere sententiam jam dudum sibi inflictam, quia socium talem et tantum habebat. Interdixit ergo publice ne auctoritate litterarum domini papæ causæ per Angliam tractarentur ecclesiasticæ. MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 177 a.

John takes courage.

Expedition to Ireland.

Johannes rex Angliæ traduxit exercitum [in Hiberniam],[1] captisque castellis et Hugone de Lasci fugato, qui, magna Hiberniæ occupata parte, rebellionem meditari putabatur, pacata et stabilita pro votis terra, cum tranquillitate rediit. Eoque maturius quod Walensium nonnulli Willelmo de Brause et Hugoni de Laci confœderati, irruptionem in Anglorum confinia moliebantur. Willelmus quippe de Brause, captis omnibus munitionibus suis terrisque occupatis, eo quod regi pro votis ut dicitur obedire detrectaret, uxore etiam cum filio fame necata, a facie furoris regii declinans, exulare coactus est. Walenses autem regis adventu cognito disparuerunt, et siluit terra in conspectu ejus, ipsoque pro libitu tam sæculares quam ecclesiasticos tractante.

William de Brause's wife starved to death.

Sad condition of Christendom.

Dura erat hiis diebus ecclesiæ sanctæ conditio.

Imperator Romanus anathematizatus erat, et ejus principes fere omnes, aut ex nomine aut ex participio!

Regnum Constantinopolitanum propter crebras Latinorum et Græcorum mutationes fere exterminio datum!

Terra Jerosolimitana infidelibus subjugata!

[1] *in Hiberniam*] om. M., C.

Rex Angliæ excommunicatus et terra interdicta est![1] A.D. 1210.
Hispania pro magna parte a paganis occupata! England, Spain, Provence.
Hæresis præterea in Provincia late grassabatur, licet etiam armis compesceretur!

Judæi nihilominus tam in Francorum quam in Anglorum regno supra modum afflicti sunt; denique post multas angarias et incarcerationes, spoliati rebus suis, compulsi sunt pro parte plurima utroque regno exire. Persecutions of the Jews.

B.——MCCXI. A.D. 1211.

Otho Romanorum imperator in partibus Italiæ cum exercitu gravi moram faciens, Apuliam, Calabriam, et Tusciam sibi subjugavit; rege etiam Siciliæ adhuc impubere ad deditionem compulso. Dominus autem papa ex hoc supra modum exasperatus, post anathematis sententiam etiam ad ejus dejectionem nitebatur; adversarios illi pro posse suscitans, imperii principibus scribens ut, isto reprobato, alium sibi in imperatorem eligerent. Otho invades Italy and is excommunicated.

Comes Tolosanus in ipsa civitate Tolosa obsessus est a crucesignatis, eo quod civitas peste hæretica infecta fuisse diceretur, et ipse comes patrocinium hæreticis præstare. Sed post diutinam obsessionem, Pictavensibus, tam rege Angliæ quam imperatore id procurante, suppetias præbentibus, liberatus est comes cum civitate. Siege and relief of Toulouse.

Rex Angliæ super Lewelinum in Wallias exercitum ducens, citissime rediit, eo quod Walenses timentes ejus adventum omnia exterminio tradidissent, in tantum ut fame laboraret Anglorum exercitus. Sed rex copiis et victualibus multiplicatis post non multum temporis in multitudine gravi et apparatu copioso et victualium abundantia, iterum ad Walenses profectus est, nec prius[2] destitit donec hostibus [ad deditionem[3]] compulsis, et rebus pro voto gestis, cum gloria remearet. Conquest of the Welsh by John.

Jam in Hibernia, Scotia et Wallia non erat qui regis Angliæ nutui non pareret; quod nulli patrum suorum contigisse notissimum est;[4] felixque videretur, et successibus pro voto pollere, nisi transmarinis spoliatus esset terris et anathemati subjectus. His successes in war.

---

[1] *est*] om. M., A.
[2] *prius*] primus, C.
[3] *ad deditionem*] om. C.
[4] *quod . . . notissimum est*] om. M.; ins. A.

A.D. 1211. Attempts at reconciliation with Rome.

Duo nuncii a sede apostolica ad Anglicanæ ecclesiæ reconciliationem in Angliam missi sunt; sed, pace infecta redeuntes, nihil afflictis contulerunt.

Suicide of the deer in Cannock Chace.

Innumera cervorum in foresta Angliæ multitudo,[1] quæ Canoch dicitur, adunata, post rugitus terribiles et quasi lamenta horrisona, in mare circa ostia Sabrinæ præcipitem se dedit. Videbatur aliquid novi nonnullis protendere.[2]

The Moors invade Spain.

Venientes ex Affrica pagani Amiramummoli duce, et hiis qui in Hyspania erant associati, Christianis illarum partium principibus terrori erant; et illatis frequentibus irruptionibus et congressionibus manifestis, terras et civitates nonnullas eorum occupaverunt.

Eclipse.

Eclipsis lunæ totalis in festo Sanctæ Luciæ.

Sampson[3] abbas Sancti Edmundi, et Rogerus constabularius Cestriæ obierunt.[4]

Fawn with two heads.

E[5] cerva quadam quæ se in flumen præ pariendi angustia præcipitaverat, exsectus est hinnulus duo capita et octo pedes habens. MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 177 b.

A.D. 1212. A. Ꝟ. G.——MCCXII.

Defeat of the Moors.

Conatus Amiramummoli, qui in superbia multa et multitudine gravi, quasi omnem sibi subjecturus Christianitatem, in Hispanias[6] ascenderat, nutu Divino adnihilatus est. Contrito enim a Christianis principibus ejus exercitu, confusione indutus et reverentia, ab ausu[7] cessavit temerario.

Otho IV. marries Philip of Swabia's daughter.

Otho imperator, ab Italia in Teutoniam rediens, adversarios magnos et multos Domino id procurante invenit. Qui tamen ut suæ provideret securitati, unicam Philippi regis quondam adversarii sui filiam in uxorem sollemniter accepit. Sed prin-

---

[1] *multitudo*] om. C.

[2] "Hæretici Pastores Parisius "docebant quod, sicut Deus natus "primo Se monstraverat pastoribus, "ita per pastores et cæteros innocentes Terram Sanctam in manus "Christianorum Sibi placeret restituere. Fuerat quidam Vibaldus "Haxacinus qui sub talis deceptionis obtentu proponebat omnes "manibus Saracenorum tradere, "quos aggregare ad se poterat, "quippe qui et ante eos vendiderat, "et pretium deceptionis acceperat. "Ipsi vero hæretici in concilio "archiepiscoporum, episcoporum et "magistrorum universitatis Parisius sunt convicti, et coram omni "populo degradati et igne consumpti. *Annal. W. Cov.*" MS. Gale, in marg. Compare a passage in Vincent of Beauvais, *Spec. Hist.* xxix. c. 107, taken from Rigord, p. 208. The passage is, however, found in nearly the same words in the Chronicle of Lanercost, ed. Stevenson, p. 7.

[3] *Sampson*] Obiit, præf. M., A.

[4] *obierunt*] om. M.

[5] *E*] Et, C. M.

[6] *Hispanias*] Hispaniis, C.

[7] *ausu*] usu, C.

cipia gaudii ejus occupavit luctus; mortua ante exactum post nuptias illa mensem, per quam et sibi confœderationem et soboli suæ in ducatu Suaviæ hæreditariam sperabat successionem procurari. Nitebatur præterea dominus papa quantum conjici potuit ei æmulum procurare, Fredericum videlicet Apuliæ et Siciliæ regem. Erat autem is Henrici imperatoris et Constantiæ reginæ filius, cui ex hæreditate paterna ducatus Suaviæ competebat, ex materna autem regnum Apuliæ et Siciliæ. Imperium etiam Romanorum, si jure vendicari posset hæreditario, nulli magis quam huic competeret, utpote qui a multis retro temporibus imperatores habuit progenitores. Dicebatur etiam quod omnium imperii principum juramentis ei imperium a diebus patris ejus esset confirmatum.

A.D. 1212. Her death.

The pope tries to make Frederick II. emperor.

Confluentes in unum per Franciæ civitates pueri admirationi magnæ fuerunt spectantibus. Quocunque enim diverterunt confluebant pueri, quasi non possent a suis teneri quin aliorum se contractu adjungerent. Denique Parisius dicebatur eorum ad $\overline{xv}$ æstimata, quorum nullus duodenne major erat.[1] Requisiti autem quid proposuissent, dicebant, ut fertur, se Christi crucem recuperaturos.

Crusade of boys.

Apud Cadomum in Normannia visus [est][2] sanguis pluisse vi^{a}.[3] idus Julii, feria vi^{a}. Eodem die apud Faleise visæ sunt [tres] cruces adinvicem in aere quasi pugnare.

Shower of blood at Caen.

Indultum est per Angliam ut fideles in extremis agentes, sacro Dominici Corporis muniri possent viatico, quod per manus sacerdotum a conventualibus petendum esset ecclesiis, quibus dudum permissum est semel in hebdomada celebrare Divina.

Mitigation of the interdict.

In æstate Londoniis casus accidit mirabilis et durus, accensa enim ab australi parte fluminis Tamensis civitate et ecclesia beatæ Mariæ canonicorum de Suwerc,[4] cum ad extinctionem incendii vel spectaculum multitudo maxima pontem transisset,

Fire in Southwark.

---

[1] "Circiter xx. millia cruce signati, et per legiones ad diversos portus maris Marsiliam et Brundisium pervenientes, inanes et vacui redierunt. Ferebatur quod vetustus de Monte, qui assassinos a pueritia nutrire consueverat, duos clericos cismarinos in carcere detinuerat, nec unquam dimittere voluerat, donec ab eis ut regni Franciæ pueros sibi adducerent, firmam promissionem acceperat. Ab his ergo prædicti pueri falsi visionum rumoribus et promissionibus ad sese crucesignandos allecti. *W. Cov. Annal.*" MS. Gale, in marg. The same passage occurs in Vincent of Beauvais, *Speculum Historiale*, lib. xxx. c. 5, and in the Chronicle of Lanercost, p. 14.

[2] *est*] om. C.

[3] *vi^{a}*] vii°. M.

[4] *Suwerc*] Suthwerke, M.; Suwerc, A. "Mirabile magnum de igne apud Suwerk in Londoniis." M. in marg.

A.D. 1212. Great loss of life at London bridge.

subito pars aquilonaris Austro flante corripitur, volentique populo qui pontem transierat redire, obstitit ignis, factumque est ut illis moras nectentibus altera etiam pars pontis igne corriperetur. Sicque inter duos ignes positi comprimebant se ad invicem, nihil nisi mortem exspectantes. Venientibus autem ad eorum succursum navibus nonnullis, tot se indiscrete ingesserunt ut, submersis navigiis, universi perierunt, factaque plaga magna in populo, dicuntur, tum incendio, tum naufragio, ad tria millia hominum perisse. Videbatur hoc malum Anglis aliquod prænunciare eo quod in capite regni tantus tam subito factus sit interitus.

Panic hûe and cry.

Accidit etiam aliud eodem tempore unde mirari possent omnes[1] qui sane sentiebant.[2] Subito enim et sine certa causa, quasi lymphatico metu correpti, de villa in villam cum cornuum strepitu quod Anglice *Uthes* dicitur, fere per totam Angliam deduxerunt. Cumque fieri tale quid non soleat nisi in persequendo malefactores, ipsi neminem persequentes, aliquid forte turbationis in proximo futurum nescientes prænunciabant.

Great floods in the autumn.

In autumno autem, cum usque ad Nativitatem Sanctæ Mariæ aeris satis serena esset dispositio, subito superveniens pluvia jugis damna Anglis ex insperato intulit non modica. Ventus etiam circa hyemis medium vehementissimus etiam turres lapideas [ad terram] dejecit.

The king of Scots seeks the aid of John.

Scottorum rex Willelmus jam ætatis provectæ, cum interiores regni sui partes seditione turbatas pacificare non posset, ad Anglorum [regem] confugiens, se et regnum, filiumque quem unicum habebat, ejus commisit provisioni. At ille cingulo militari commendatum sibi donans, in partes illas cum exercitu proficiscens, dimissis per interiora regni suis, Cuthredum cognomento Macwillam seditionis ducem cepit, et patibulo suspendit. Erat hic de Scottorum regum antiqua prosapia, qui Scottorum et Hibernensium fretus auxilio, longas contra modernos reges, sicut et pater suus Duvenaldus, nunc clam, nunc palam, exercuit inimicitias. Moderniores enim Scottorum reges magis se Francos fatentur, sicut genere, ita moribus, lingua, cultu, Scotisque ad extremam servitutem redactis, solos Francos in familiaritatem et obsequium adhibent.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 178 a.

Mac-William hanged.

Rebellion in Wales.

Reguli Walensium provocante[3] eos domino[4] papa, et a fœdere anno præcedente cum rege Angliæ contracto, necnon et a ligantia[5] et juramentis eidem præstitis absolvente, insuper et

[1] *omnes*] om. M., A.
[2] *sentiebant*] sapiebant, M., A.
[3] *provocante*] percunctante, MS. Gale, as a correction.
[4] *domino*] dominus, C.
[5] *a ligantia*] alligantia, C.

interdictum per terras eorum ea conditione relaxante, eundem regem pro viribus infestant. Unde ille vehementer commotus, suspensis in patibulo eorum obsidibus, exercitum contra eos ex omnibus Angliæ finibus congregat. Cumque in tanto apparatu et multitudine qualem non meminit nostra ætas convenissent, dissipavit Deus subito consilium ejus. Turbatum est enim cor illius, auditis quibusdam, ut dicitur, sine certo auctore, rumoribus quod scilicet conspirassent contra eum magnates qui convenerant, et quod in auribus multitudinis illius legendæ essent de absolutione ligantiæ ejus litteræ; quodque alio in loco illius rege jam electo, et ipse et sui a regno pellerentur; vel forte si capi eos contingeret, aut morti aut perpetuo carceri addicerentur. Indicto igitur omnibus reditu, cœpit omnia suspecta habere, nusquam nisi armatus et armatorum manu multa stipatus procedere; captisque nonnullis qui ejus videbantur familiarissimi, et castellis comitum et baronum in regiam ditionem subito saisitis, commotum est aliquantisper regnum. Unde regni majoribus, sive iram regis metuentes, sive conscientiæ scrupulum timentes, clam regno egressi sunt, Eustachius scilicet de Vesci, qui in Scotiæ[1] partes se recepit, et Robertus filius Walteri, qui ad Francos divertit. Quorum bonis confiscatis et castello Roberti apud Londonias nominatissimo, cui nomen castellum Bainardi,[2] cum aliis municipiis demolito, cœpit se rex civilius habere ad suos, et siluit terra. Egit etiam inter tot adversa, aliquid memoria dignum et laude. Nam cum novis exactionibus forestarii totam fere Angliam plurimum vexassent, rex sortem miseratus afflictorum, eas omnino remisit. Insuper et forestariorum capitaneos jurare compulit, ut ea tantum exigerent, quæ in diebus patris sui exigere consueverant.

A.D. 1212. John hangs the hostages.

His alarm at the report of conspiracies against him.

He seizes castles.

Flight of Robert Fitz Walter and Eustace de Vesci.

The forest exactions mitigated.

Alios etiam qui obtentu servandorum portuum plurimas tum civibus tum peregrinis et mercatoribus intulerant molestias, et novas adinvenerant exactiones, ab hujusmodi molestatione compescuit, et novas exactiones remisit. Sed et viduis dicitur propitius exstitisse, et pacis provisioni, quantum ad temporalia attinet, satis sedulus exstitisse. Et ut reconciliandæ pacis apud dominum papam aditum præpararet, exegit a prælatis ecclesiarum universis, quatenus omnia quæ [qua]cunque occasione ab eis a prima coronatione sua ceperat, eo quod hujusmodi ablationes causæ ejus plurimum derogarent, in mera ei donatione cartis et sigillorum appositione confirmarent, missis nunciis ad dominum papam placare quocunque modo tentarent.[3]

John attempts to propitiate the people;

and obtains confirmations of his exactions from the bishops.

---

[1] *Scotiæ*] Scitiarum, C.

[2] *Bainardi*] Baignardi, M., A.

[3] "Alexander filius regis Scotiæ "profectus Londoniam a rege An-

A.D. 1212. John warned by Peter of Wakefield, that he will not reign more than fourteen years.

Dicitur etiam a viris quibusdam, qui se visu testabantur vidisse, admonitus ut se corrigeret, alioquin ante exactum annum Divinam ultionem sentiret.

Erat homo quidam[1] de Wakefeld Petrus[2] nomine. Homo iste simplex et rusticanus, sed vitam agens in pane et aqua, quasi futura prædicens habebatur in populo. Is regis Johannis ditionem non ultra proximam Ascensionem prædicavit duraturam, eo quod in visu revelatum ei fuerat Johannem regem per xiiii. annos regnaturum, et in hiis xiiii. annis omnia quæ in regno[3] aggrederetur feliciter consummaturum. Requisitus an moreretur an expelleretur, an cederet, et respondit se nescire, ut dicunt, sed hoc solum scire quod ultra non regnaret, nec ipse nec ex suis quisquam pro eo, sed Deo placens. Nec latuit hoc regem; visusque est primo hominem idiotam et quasi non sani capitis derisisse. Verum cum id idem, sicut homo vagus erat, ubique spargeret, captus est a regis fautoribus et in custodiam reclusus. Crevit ex hoc ipso in immensum opinio ejus, factumque est nomen ejus[4] celebre nimis, et qui ante paucis notus fuerat et contemptus, ex ipsa captione habebatur insignis et ubique divulgabatur. Quotidie ut est mos vulgi mendacia mendaciis addebantur; quotidie ei nova imponebantur, et unusquisque de corde suo mendacium proferens[5] hoc Petrum dixisse asserebat. MS. Magd. xxxvi. 178 b.

Eclipse Nov. 11.

Eclipsis lunæ totalis in festo Sancti Martini, hora noctis prima. Johannes Comin[6] primus Dubelinæ archiepiscopus obiit, ex quo civitas in regum Angliæ ditionem devenit.

Death of archbishop Geoffrey.

Obiit etiam[7] Malgerus Wygornensis episcopus; et Gaufridus frater regis Angliæ,[8] Eboracensis archiepiscopus, uterque in exilio apud Francos.[9]

" gliæ militarem honorem accepit, " anno ætatis xiiii. *W. Cov. Ann.*" MS. Gale, in marg. See Chron. Lanercost, p. 10; Chron. Mailros, p. 185.

[1] *quidam*] om. M.

[2] *Petrus*] "Petrus de Pontefracto, " *An. W. Cov.*" MS. Gale, in marg. See Chron. Lanercost, p. 13.

[3] *regno*] erant, ins. C.; om. A.

[4] *ejus*] illius, M., A.

[5] *proferens*] prophans, M., A. (profans, or prophetans).

[6] *Comin*] Cumin, M., A.

[7] *etiam*] et, M.

[8] *regis Angliæ*] regum Anglorum, M., A.

[9] " Durante in Anglia interdicto " ob regis obstinaciam, Philippus " rex Francorum adversum eum " excitatus cum omni impetu exer- " citus sui venit ad mare Anglica- " num: causa hæc erat; rex Philip- " pus Arthurum et Alienoram pu- " pillos commiserat regi Johanni " in tutelam; quorum illum nefarie " interfecit, illam autem perpetuo " incarceravit. *Vide quæ ad Pari- " sium notavi ex ann. his Walt. " Cov.*" MS. Gale, in marg. See Chron. Lanercost, p. 11.

F.——MCCXIII. A.D. 1213.

Episcopi Angliæ, qui apud Francos exulabant, Romam pro causa Anglicanæ ecclesiæ adierunt. Ad quorum preces commotus, vir apostolicus finem malis imponere statuit. Scripsit enim[1] Francorum regi Philippo et illarum partium principibus, quod nisi rex Anglorum vel nunc resipisceret, ipsi Angliam in manu forti ab eo liberarent. Nec erat necesse longis precibus aut monitis uti, eo quod essent a multo tempore ad id proni, tum odio personæ, tum amore argenti et auri, quibus terra creditur abundare. Hortantur se mutuo, necessaria præparant, naves fabricant, et ab omni littore transmarino naves convocant, statuentes ut in portu uno simul naves adunatæ omnes simul proficiscantur. Ipse autem Francorum rex non longe a mari navium copiam opperiebatur. Taxato etenim exercitus sui numero, non minus quam mille quingentæ sufficere credebantur multitudini. Quotidie igitur confluebant ad portum naves, et ad castra milites. Audivit hoc rex Anglorum, fecitque ipse ab omnibus Angliæ portubus naves adunari in multitudine magna; præfecitque galeis suis viros fortes, et in armis strenuos; qui cum manu valida pugnatorum hostium resisterent et obviarent moliminibus, eorumque partem pro viribus damnificarent. Summonuit etiam[2] sub nomine culveltagii[3] et perpetuæ servitutis, ut omnes tanquam ad regnum tuendum et regis caput defendendum, armati ad eum venirent. Convenit igitur multitudo qualem non meminit ætas nostra, quos ipse per portus ubi periculum timebatur cum classis parte dividens, omne robur exercitus secum retinuit prope Dovram. Eratque non longe in littore classis residuum. Similiter et galeæ paratæ ad bellum. Erat autem cor populi fluctuans, et quod facile in quamvis partem flecteretur, quasi arescentibus hominibus præ timore et exspectatione eorum quæ in proximo superventura credebantur. Terruerant multos verba Petri, et instans Ascensionis dies, quem quasi fatalem regi dederat, plurimos misit in dubium. Dumque sic in pendulo essent et exspectatione,[4] ecce quidam de nunciis regis qui in fine anni proximo præteriti Romam adierant, cum summa festinatione ad ipsum reversi, quasi peremptorium deferunt ei mandatum. Missusque cum eis est nuncius quidam nomine Pandulfus, qui rerum mandatarum executioni insisteret. Et erat hæc summa rescripti, quod ante kalendas imminentis Junii quatuor ex primis regni jurarent in animam regis, eo præsente et id man-

The pope charges the king of France to liberate England.

John prepares to repel invasion.

Luke, xxi. 26.

Alarm at the approach of Ascension Day, May 23.

Pandulf arrives from Rome.

[1] *enim*] igitur, M., A.
[2] *etiam*] et, ins. Gale.
[3] *culveltagii*] culvertagii, Gale, A.
[4] *exspectatione*] eorum, ins. Gale.

A.D. 1213. May. The pope transmits a form of satisfaction, to which four earls swear, on the king's behalf.

dante, regem formam satisfactionis quam signatam papa transmiserat adimpleturum, quodque ipse id idem litteris patentibus promitteret; et tam archiepiscopo quam episcopis significaret. Alioquin jam ultra pœnitendi tempus non haberent. Quid multa? Inspiratus, ut creditur, ab Eo in Cujus manu corda sunt regum, adquievit placito. Juraveruntque juxta scripturam domini papæ et formam ejus prædictam[1] R. comes Boloniæ, Willelmus comes de Warenna, Willelmus comes de Ferreris, Willelmus comes Saresbiriæ frater regis, et ipse id idem litteris suis patentibus se promisit completurum, secundum quod hii quatuor in animam regis juraverant. Addidit autem hoc ex suo quod utrumque regnum suum, Angliam videlicet et Hiberniam, Deo et sanctis apostolis Petro et Paulo et sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ subjiceret[2] ex mera voluntate, et ad complementum satisfactionis, ita ut ipse et hæredes sui in signum subjectionis mille marcas[3] inde persolvant annuatim sedi apostolicæ; septingentas videlicet pro regno Angliæ et trescentas pro Hibernia, salvo denario Sancti Petri. Juravit præterea homagium ligium et fidelitatem domino Innocentio papæ et ejus successoribus.[4] Et hæc omnia litteris patentibus in modum cartæ compositis publice protestatus est, prudenter sane sibi et suis providens in hoc facto, licet id multis ignominiosum videretur, et enorme servitutis jugum. Cum enim res in arto esset, et undique timor vehemens, nulla erat via compendiosior imminens evadendi periculum, nec forsitan alia; quoniam ex quo se in protectione posuit apostolica, et regna sua beati Petri patrimonium fecit, non erat in orbe Romano princeps qui in sedis apostolicæ injuriam vel illum infestare, vel illa invadere præsumeret, eo quod ab universis metuebatur papa Innocentius supra omnes qui eum a multis annis præcesserunt. Acta sunt hæc xv°. die Maii prope Dovram, ubi castra tunc Anglorum et exercitus cum [rege in castris. Ab illo die meliorari cœpit pars ejus. Incontinenti etenim domini papæ nuncius ad populum concionatus, regem protestabatur

Prov. xxi. 1.

Submission of the king to hold England and Ireland tributary to the pope.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 179 a.

Submission dated May 15, at Dover.

[1] *scripturam . . . prædictam*] præscriptam a papa formam, M., A.

[2] *subjiceret*] subjaceret, C.

[3] *marcas*] argenti, ins. Gale; om. A. "ex proprio thalamo se et hæredes suos exhibituros, tam ipse quam magnates terræ suæ tactis sacrosanctis pepigerunt. *Ann. W. Covent.* Additum erat in juramento quod terram suam a domino papa, id est, Summo Rege, teneret in posterum; unde et coronam suam sub pedibus legati ponendam curavit. *Ibidem.*" MS. Gale, in marg. Both passages occur in the Chronicle of Lanercost, p. 13.

[4] "Quod Johannes rex subjecit Angliam et Hiberniam papæ, et obligavit in mille marcis annuis." M. in marg.

Deo et sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ reconciliatum, et per omnia in proximo satisfacturum: injungens et ex parte papæ præcipiens, ut pro eo fideliter starent, et decertarent contra omnes homines. Sicque conversum in parte ad regem cor populi, quod[1] valde elongatum fuerat ab eo. Et quoniam credebatur Francorum rex procerum favore niti et habere consensum, sicut ipse gloriabatur, missi sunt ex parte magnatum Angliæ cum litteris patentibus, qui hoc falsum esse protestarentur, et ei omnem spem Angliæ adipiscendæ præciderent. Retinuit autem[2] adhuc rex Angliæ omnem exercitum suum, et adhuc in suspenso multi, tum quia non credebant rem ex fide agi, tum quia non putabatur tantus conatus facile adnihilari; tum quia prope erat dies Ascensionis, qui quasi fatalis regi exspectabatur. Interea hii qui in galeis regis præerant, sumentes animos ex rumoribus secundis, in littoribus transmarinis irruptiones crebras faciebant, naves capientes et prædas agentes. Indeque animosiores effecti, nactaque occasione ex dissensione quadam inter regem Francorum et comitem Flandriæ suborta, dum ad alia intenta esset pars adversa, in eorum classem viriliter irruunt, et post cædem aliquantam et conflictum trescentis navibus captis et[3] pluribus igne combustis, cum gloria ad Angliam redierunt. Quod cum[4] regi Francorum innotuit, ira succensus, et tum pro litteris magnatum Angliæ quas jam susceperat, tum pro casu sinistro vehementissime commotus, jussit ignem immitti, et residuum classis suæ, quod Anglos evaserat, in favillam redegit; sicque liberavit Deus Angliam a periculo impendenti. Profecto enim si prosperati in proposito et via sua Angliam adissent, in exterminium daretur, et esset sicut populus, sic et sacerdos. Turbatur Francorum rex, et id totum comiti imputans, qui regis Angliæ partem fovebat, graviter prosecutus est injuriam hanc; in interiora Flandriæ penetrans, et urbes munitissimas aut suæ ditioni subjiciens, aut solo cœquans. Sed ut ad Angliam redeamus, missi sunt una cum nuncio papæ qui archiepiscopum, episcopos, monachos Cantuariæ, et generaliter omnes qui propter hanc causam in transmarinis aut exulabant aut, sicut vulgo dicitur, uthlagi fuerant, cum honore revocarent, habentes secum litteras conductus et omnem tam a rege quam a proceribus securitatem, quæ litteratorie fieri potuit. Missa sunt præterea a rege per eosdem[5] xii. millia marcarum argenti ad debita eorum qui revocabantur solvenda, et ad expensas reditui[6] necessarias. Jam dies ille

A.D. 1213. May.

All parties united by the submission.

John retains his army and provokes distrust.

Defeat of the French fleet:

Philip burns the rest.

Hosea, iv. 9.

He ravages Flanders.

The bishops and other exiles recalled.

[1] *quod*] qui, M.; quod, A.
[2] *autem*] tamen, M., A.
[3] *et*] ex, C.
[4] *cum*] ut, M.
[5] *per eosdem*] om. M.; ins. A.
[6] *reditui*] redimi, C.

A.D. 1213. May 23. Ascension day comes and belies the prophecy of Peter of Wakefield.

Ascensionis erat, tanta exspectatione insignis, et erectum est tentorium regium ex ejus jussu in campo late patenti, voce præconia ad diem solemnem cum rege solemniter transigendum vocatione facta. Et factus est [dies] ille[1] jocundus nimis; oblectante se rege et exhilarante cum episcopis et proceribus qui convenerant. Ut autem transactus[2] est dies in omni prosperitate et lætitia, putantes hii qui Petro[3] fidem adhibuerant, hominem idiotam ex simplicitate deceptum, qui diem regi Ascensionis præfixerat, cum finem quartidecimi anni secundum visionem sibi ostensam præfixisse debuisset,[4] vi°. kalendas Junii, quasi regi penitus peremptorium, decreverunt exspectandum; eo quod ille Ascensionis dies, quo rex ante quatuordecim annos coronatus est, vi°. kalendas Junii evenerit. Sed cum etiam ille in tranquillo transisset, jam sero facilis fidei pœnitentes, ad allegorias conversi sunt. Et erant hii non solum ex plebe, sed etiam viri secundum sæculum magni, et secundum mundum sapientes. Suggestum est interea regi de Petro, qualiter terram turbaverit, cor populi dissolverit, et inimicos ejus erexerit. Nam et in fines Francorum verba oris ejus exierant, et eis quasi pro incitamento videbantur Angliam invadendi. Hæc et hujusmodi regis inflammabant animum; jussitque ut in patibulo suspenderetur ad solem; in hoc modum excedens, quod filium ejus, qui una tenebatur, una suspendi fecit,[5] nisi forte et ipse paternæ prophetiæ aut particeps fuerit aut auctor. Rex autem videns quia interiora regni pacata essent, et quod a Francis timere non oporteret, conabatur omnem illum apparatum bellicum in Pictaviam transvehere.[6] Sed quoniam minus libenter eum in hoc negotio multi ex proceribus audiebant, quippe qui longa expeditione vexati, non facile possent tantum opus exhaustis aggredi cistarchiis,[7] cassatum est ad tempus propositum regis, quod tamen ipse in eos qui hujus rei auctores videbantur graviter postmodum vindicasset nisi archiepiscopi et episcoporum interventu retineretur.

The anniversary of John's coronation passes, May 27.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 179 b.

Peter of Wakefield and his son are hanged at the king's order.

He proposes an expedition to Poictou.

---

[1] *ille*] sollempnis nimis et, A.

[2] *transactus*] translatus, C., Gale.

[3] *Petro*] Petri dictis, A.

[4] *debuisset*] Here MS. A. has in the margin, in the same hand as the text; — "Hoc anno, scilicet "M°CC°XIII°. ab incarnatione Do- "mini, viii. kalendas Junii, die Sab- "bati proxima post Ascensionem "Domini, obiit Willelmus Devo- "niensis, prior de Bernewelle, et "vacavit prioratus usque ad diem "Sancti Romani proximo sequen- "tem, qui est decimo kalendas "Novembris. Quo die, scilicet "feria iiii^a., electus est in priorem "Willelmus de Bedeforde, sacrista "ejusdem loci."

[5] *fecit*] qua, ins. Gale.

[6] *transvehere*] transilire, C.

[7] *cistarchiis*] sesterciis, Gale, as a correction; sistarciis, A.

A.D. 1213. June. Return of the bishops.

Mense Junio redierunt in Angliam a transmarinis ubi exulaverant, Stephanus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Willelmus Londoniensis, Eustacius Elyensis, Egidius Herefordensis, Jocelinus Batoniensis, Hugo Lincolniensis episcopi; monachi etiam Cantuarienses, et generaliter omnes clerici et laici qui ob hanc causam exulaverant; restitutæque sunt singulis plenarie, una cum gratia regis, sicut præfinitum fuerat, omnes possessiones suæ. Post modicum autem temporis apud Wintoniam absolutus est rex sollemniter et publice juxta formam ecclesiasticam, a domino Cantuariensi; et sic ipso Cantuariensi cum cæteris episcopis in osculum pacis receptis, introductus in ecclesiam Missæ interfuit; et facta est lætitia magna in populo. Convolabant exemplo regis ad absolutionem petendam ab undique omnes qui scrupulum aliquem in animo gerebant participii regis vel suorum; et absoluti sunt quilibet ab episcopo proprio; exceptis duntaxat clericis et viris ecclesiasticis, si qui in hac tempestate regi communicarunt[1] in crimine: nam hos sibi papa reservavit. Unde factum est ut Romam adirent Johannes Norwicensis episcopus, et ex aulicis viris tam clerici quam laici primores. Dicebantur et alias habere causas, commendandi scilicet et[2] ipsum regem in curia, utpote qui duo regna sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ subjecerit, et interveniendi ut cum eo mitius ageretur.

The king is absolved at Winchester

General absolution.

John of Norwich goes to Rome.

Vacant churches.

Vacabant autem cathedrales ecclesiæ Eboracensis, Dunelmensis; abbatia de Wyteby; in Cantuariensi vero provincia Cestrensis, [Wigornensis,] Exoniensis, Cicestrensis; abbatiæ etiam quæ de regis pendebant provisione, Sanctorum[3] Edmundi, Augustini Cantuariæ, Radinggiæ, Benedicti de Hulmo, Martini de Bello, Rameseyæ, Burgi, Cirencestrensis, et Einesham[4] quæ in manu quidem regis erat, sicut et aliæ omnes, licet ad Lincolniensem episcopum et tutela ejus pertineret et provisio. Facile igitur in hac novitate annuisset rex, ut vacantibus ecclesiis pastores eligerentur, dummodo secundum formam et consuetudinem regni fieret. Sed contra renitentibus episcopis et id summopere quærentibus, ut juxta canonum scita fierent omnia, remanserunt viduatæ cathedrales omnes, abbatiæ autem[5] nonnullæ electionem fecerunt, ita tamen ut rex neminem intruderet, neminem nominaret; sed tantummodo regalia in signum consensionis conferret. Sed

Claim for canonical elections.

---

[1] *communicarunt*] communicarant, M.

[2] *et*] ut, Gale.

[3] *Sanctorum*] Sancti, M., A.

[4] *Einesham*] Evesham, C., Gale; Einesham, A., M.

[5] *autem*] om. M.; ins. A.

A.D. 1213. Ecclesiastical difficulties which occasioned the mission of the bishop of Norwich to Rome.

et hujusmodi electiones quidam episcoporum consentiendo confirmaverunt, quidam ad hoc induci non potuerunt. Et hæc tertia causa dicebatur, ut scilicet consuetudo regni servaretur, quam aulici Romæ pro rege agebant. Quarta etiam [1] ut ferunt causa fuit, ut regi diffusior aliquantulum terminus daretur restitutionis faciendæ per partes, et interim data cautione cessaret interdictum. Nam episcopi id nullo modo facere volebant, nisi ut in continenti restitueret omnia, aut usque ad terminum quem ei præscripserant, interdicti laxatio differretur. Regi autem hoc difficillime videbatur, ne dicam impossibile, quia taxata cum ablatis damna in summam excreverunt incredibilem, eo quod inter damna computabantur non solum nemora exstirpata aut domus dirutæ, sed et fructus qui percipi potuerunt et occasionales jacturæ.

Innocent III. determines to call a council to promote a crusade and to put down heresy.

Hiis temporibus inspiravit Deus [2] domino papæ Innocentio, ut de subventione terræ Jerosolimitanæ, necnon et universæ ecclesiæ promotione, solito sollicitius curam gereret. Nam quoniam prædecessores sui unusquisque tempore suo Terræ Sanctæ succursum procuraverat, absonum videretur si ipse in bono proposito minus fervens [3] inveniretur, qui nec potentia quoquam eorum minor erat nec industria. Præterea recolebat quod [4] diebus suis hæresis caput levaverit, quod multi principes excommunicati fuerunt, et multæ terræ interdictæ, et vix fieri poterat quin inter hæc multa succreverint in vinea Domini, quæ Evangelica securi necesse esset succidi. Decrevit igitur generale concilium propter jam dicta celebrare, et hac causa in omnes partes orbis Romani a latere suo viros transmisit industrios, qui et verbum de subventione [5] Terræ Sanctæ facerent; et quæ corrigenda viderentur explorarent.[6] Unde factum est ut in Angliam legatus veniret Tusculanus episcopus, nomine Nicolaus. Erant autem et aliæ speciales causæ hujus [7] legationis; ut scilicet in ejus præsentia rex promissum quod Sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ fecerat, adimpleret. Quod et fecit. Nam cum mense Septembri venisset, rex, circa festum Sancti Michaelis, ei vice domini papæ hominium fecit et ligantiam, dans cartam suam auro bullatam et mille marcas, annuum scilicet censum in subjectionis signum. Metuebat autem eum rex et libenter eum audiebat. Unde factum est, ut ejus et episcoporum consilio et hortatu pravas consuetudines a regno eliminare inchoaret, vicecomitum et eorum ministeri-

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 180 a.

September. Mission of Nicolas of Tusculum.

He receives John's homage.

[1] *etiam*] om. M.
[2] *Deus*] Dominus, Gale and A.
[3] *fervens*] firmus, Gale, as a correction; fluens, C., M.
[4] *quod*] in, ins. M.
[5] *subventione*] subvectione, A.
[6] *explorarent*] om. M.; ins. A.
[7] *hujus*] hujusmodi, M.

alium violentas vel[1] captiosas exactiones compescens. Vehementer enim populum afflixerant, eo quod vicecomitatus sive ministeria inferiora sub annuo pretio conducentes, id solum quærebant, quomodo pecunias a miseris provincialibus elicerent. Ipse autem hujusmodi cupidinarios amovens, alios subrogavit qui jure populum tractarent, consilio virorum prudentium uterentur, et non crumenarum emunctioni, sed paci comprovincialium et quieti inhiarent. Inchoaverat etiam inquisitionem facere super hac re diligentem, ut scirent quantum quis talium exactorum tempore administrationis suæ recepisset. Sed non perduxit ad finem, interveniente illo terrore et tumultu quando metu Francorum ad arma vocati sunt omnes. A.D. 1213. Reforms of the sheriffs' jurisdiction.

Deposuit autem legatus abbatem Westmonasterii et abbatem Eveshamiæ, et quoniam cum securi venisse dicebatur, timebant sibi arbores quæ inutiliter locum regiminis occupabant. Abbots of Westminster and Evesham deposed.

Jerem. xlvi. 22.

Fiebant etiam crebra inter regem et episcopos eo præsente super causa ecclesiæ colloquia, sed cum non posset[2] convenire, protensum est[3] interdictum in annum sequentem.

Rex Arragonensium, vocatus a quibusdam in auxilium contra Simonem de Monteforti, qui hæreticorum expugnator erat, ab exercitu crucesignatorum occisus est in bello cum multa suorum et hæresi infamatorum manu. Gaufridus filius Petri justitiarius Angliæ obiit. The king of Arragon killed. Geoffrey Fitz Peter dies.

E.——MCCXIIII.

Ferrandus Flandrensis comes, a Philippo Francorum rege pulsus a Flandria, Othonem imperatorem Alemanniæ et Johannem regem Angliæ expetiit, et pepigit fœdus cum eis. Quorum fretus auxilio, regressus in Flandriam eam pene totam de manu regis Franciæ potenter eripuit, ope et industria virorum illustrium, et præcipue Willelmi comitis Saresbiriæ fratris regis Angliæ, et Reginaldi comitis Boloniæ. A.D. 1214. John and Otho succour the count of Flanders.

Rex Anglorum in Pictaviam cum exercitu transfretavit in principio mensis Februarii, factaque ibi mora usque in Septembrem, magnam partem terrarum quas dudum Francorum rex Philippus abstulerat, recuperavit. Reconciliaverat quippe sibi viros magnos et multos quos secum in exercitu ducebat.[4] February. John goes to Poicton and stays till September.

Venerant autem eo tempore ex parte Flandriæ Otho imperator, Ferrandus comes, Reginaldus comes, Willelmus comes, cum multitudine gravi. Rex itaque Francorum misso contra War in Flanders.

---

[1] *vel*] et, M.; vel, A.
[2] *posset*] eis, ins. A.
[3] *est*] eis, ins. A.
[4] *ducebat*] duxerat, A.

A.D. 1214. July 27. Philip defeats the count and his allies.

regem Angliæ filio suo Lodowico, ipse collecto exercitu Flandrensibus, quorum vires jam nimis excreverant, censuit occurrendum. Igitur ultra[1] fines Flandriæ fit utrinque concursus, et dispositis aciebus ad pontem Wentini inter Mauritaniam et Tornacum, vi°. kalendas Augusti, die Dominica, pugna committitur; et in conflictu cecidere nonnulli, Franci tamen victoriæ palmam tenuerunt. In hoc bello Flandrensi ex acie capti sunt egregii pugnatores, Plutus Alemannus, Ferrandus Flandrensis, Willelmus Saresbiriensis, Reginaldus Boloniensis, et senescallus Othonis, et milites alii tam mediocres quam illustres circiter CL.[2] MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 180 b.

Truce for five years between John and Philip.

Post hæc Philippus rex contra regem Angliæ movet exercitum, sed legatis intervenientibus inter eos quinquennales firmantur induciæ propter eos maxime qui iter Jerosolimitanum aggredi proposuerant, et ita reversus est rex Philippus in Franciam. Rex Johannes recepit se in Angliam.

The legate favours the king in the nomination of abbots.

Interim Tusculanus episcopus, qui legationis apud Anglos fungebatur officio, regi ut videbatur plus justo favens, ecclesiastica minus rigide procurabat negotia. Nam pacis inter regem et episcopos ac clerum initæ executionem postponens, una cum ministris regalibus ad sedes vacantes et monasteria accessit: ibique personam unam vel duas juxta regis voluntatem nominans, de illa quam nominavit electionem vel potius intrusionem fieri compulit. Ea tempestate Willelmum priorem Fruntoniæ præfecit Westmonasterio, Ranulphum[3] priorem Wygorniæ Evesbamiæ; Rogerum priorem Syreburniæ[4] Burtoniæ. Præterea Ricardum abbatem Selesbiensem[5] Rameseyam, quæ multis annis vacaverat, transtulit. Hæc autem faciebat, occasione litterarum quarundam quas nuncii regis, quos jam dudum ad curiam Romanam profectos diximus, impetraverant; in quibus præcipiebatur,[6] ut ipse tales personas in sedibus vel monasteriis vacantibus eligi faceret, quæ et regno utiles et regi essent fideles. Alias etiam impetraverant iidem nuncii litteras de debito quod rex pro ablatis vel damnis debebat ecclesiis, per partes annis succedentibus reddendo, ita ut si rex hujus rei cautionem dedisset, interdictum in Anglia sol-

John is favoured at Rome.

---

[1] *ultra*] intra, A.

[2] *CL.*] Et ex parte regis Franciæ cecidit Steffanus de Longo Campo, vir in armis strenuus, qui se in primo conflictu obiciens cum quodam alio pro rege domino, et coram rege viriliter decertans succubuit, add. A.

[3] *Ranulphum*] Radulfum, M.; Ranulfum, A.

[4] *Syreburniæ*] Saresbiriæ, C., Gale.

[5] *Selesbiensem*] Salesbiensem, C., Gale. It is Selby.

[6] *præcipiebatur*] reperiebatur, Gale.

veretur. Quod et factum est, solutumque est interdictum in concilio Londoniis hujus rei gratia habito vi°. nonas Julii, transactis ab interdicti promulgatione annis sex, mensibus tribus, diebus sexdecim. A.D. 1214. July 2. Relaxation of the interdict.

Consecrati sunt Cantuariæ a Stephano Cantuariensi archiepiscopo Simon de Apulia decanus Eboracensis in Exoniensem episcopum, et Walterus de Gray cancellarius regis in Wigornensem. Bishops of Exeter and Worcester consecrated.

Legatus abbatem Bardeneiensem deposuit, vel potius abbate se dimittente, ut[1] dicitur, alium more suo substituit, priorem videlicet Lentoniæ et Petrum nomine. Abbot of Bardney deposed.

Cito post reditum Anglorum regis a Pictavia, revocatus est a domino papa Nicholaus Tusculanus episcopus ab officio legationis, eo quod[2] minus strenue, ut dicitur, se[3] gessit in Anglia. Unde rex comperto quod is[4] sibi subtractus esset super quem requiescebat, mitior factus est et circa episcopos[5] Angliæ tractabilior. Mox enim eis super omnibus damnis et injuriis satisfecit, aliis pecuniam, aliis libertates et honores, aliis maneria in recompensationem largiens. Denique eo tempore Cantuariensi archiepiscopo episcopatum Roffensem concessit, et episcopo Elyensi abbatiam Torneiæ, regalia videlicet, id est, quantum ad regem inde jure pertinet. Recall of the legate. The king courts the bishops.

Capti sunt in Anglia pisces insolitæ formæ. Erant quippe scutati et galeati, et quantum in exterioribus belluarum marinarum notari potuit, militi armato simillimi, licet magnitudine plurimum excellentes. Strange fishes caught.

Obiit Gilbertus Roffensis episcopus; et Johannes episcopus Norwicensis in transmarinis a Roma rediens, ubi et regis et sua procuraverat negotia: et Willelmus rex Scottorum. Death of William the Lion.

Marini fluctus solito elatiores damna intulerunt in Anglia circa Nativitatem Beatæ Mariæ. Floods.

Dissensio orta est inter Johannem regem Angliæ et quosdam de proceribus[6] pro scutagio quod petebat ab illis qui non ierant nec miserant cum ipso in Pictaviam. Dantibus enim illud plurimis, contradixerunt ex Aquilonaribus nonnulli, illi videlicet qui anno præterito regem ne in Pictaviam transiret impedierunt: dicentes se propter terras quas in Anglia tenent non debere regem extra regnum sequi, nec ipsum euntem scutagio juvare. E contrario, rege id tanquam debitum exigente, eo quod in diebus patris sui necnon et fratris sic fieret, res The northern barons refuse to pay scutage or follow the king to Poictou.

---

[1] *ut*] sicut, M., A.
[2] *eo quod*] quod, M., A.
[3] *se*] om. M., A.
[4] *is*] jam, ins. M., A.
[5] *episcopos*] ipsos, C.
[6] *de proceribus*] ex proceribus suis, M., A.

A.D. 1214. They claim the charter of Henry I.

ulterius processisset, nisi legati præsentia obstitisset. Prolata est carta quædam libertatum ab Henrico primo Anglis data, quam quasi in observandam cum sibi confirmari a rege proceres jam dicti postularent, dilata est res in annum alterum.[1] MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 181 a.

A.D. 1215. January.

D.——MCCXV.

Consecration of bishops.

Circa Epiphaniam consecrati sunt apud Redinggiam Ricardus [decanus][2] Saresbiriæ in episcopum Cicestrensem, et Willelmus archidiaconus Huntingdoniæ in Cestrensem, a Stephano Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.

The barons meet at London.

Convenerant autem ex proceribus qui cartam illam exegerant apud Londonias, et conniventibus sibi, ut dicebatur, ex episcopis[3] nonnullis, regem super eo convenerunt.

John promises an answer to their claims on April 26.

Cumque ille inducias peteret pro rei novitate, non est benigne exauditus, causantibus aliis, quod tantum tempus redimeret, cum prorsus aliud in corde haberet. Interponentibus tamen se quibusdam, terminus finalis responsionis præfixus est, octavæ videlicet Paschæ, rege eos per litteras patentes securos faciente, quod si die præfixo ei non conveniret, inducias haberent singuli redeundi ad sua. Ex quo autem primo vulgata est carta hæc, assertoribus ejus omnium conciliati sunt animi, et erat vox hæc omnium et sententia una, quod isti opponerent se murum pro domo Domini, et starent pro libertate ecclesiæ et regni. Rex autem pro parte sua institit,[4] quod multoties jam factum fuerat, ut scilicet jurarent ubique per Angliam ei fidelitatem, quod[5] cum eo starent contra omnes homines, hoc præter solitum adjecto, contra cartam jam dictam. Cumque[6] non libenter hoc audiretur, et inciperent mox excusationes prætendere, non ratus tempus opportunum tumultum suscitandi in populo, omisit quod inceptum fuerat. Misit tamen ad summum pontificem[7] conquerens quod contra fidelitatem præstitam parati essent in eum insurgere. Cognovit quippe per quosdam eorum complices, quod hoc a multis jam diebus plures conarentur. Miserunt et ipsi pro sua parte de injustis exactionibus et quasi tyrannide conquerentes. Ezek. xiii. 5.

He requires a general oath of fealty;

and complains to the pope.

---

[1] *alterum*] "Obiit Willelmus de "Bedeforde, prior de Bernewelle, "quarto kalendas Decembris, feria "sexta." A. in marg.

[2] *decanus*] om. C., Gale; ins. A.

[3] *episcopis*] ipsis, C., M.; episcopis (not ex episcopis), A.

[4] *institit*] instituit, M., A.

[5] *quod*] quodque, A.

[6] *Cumque*] Cum, M.

[7] *pontificem*] litteras, ins. Gale.

Eo tempore obiit Eustachius Elyensis episcopus, vir magnæ auctoritatis, et ex cujus consilio magna pars hujus negotii pendere dicebatur.[1] A.D. 1215. The bishop of Ely dies.

In capite Jejunii Rex Londoniis a Willelmo episcopo Londoniensi cruce signatus est, et cum eo vel post eum plures ex familiaribus suis, ipso ad hoc ut ferunt nonnullos instigante, et cruces albas qualis sua erat, sicut et fratris sui vel patris, offerente. Quasi enim ex antiqua consuetudine inolevit, ut Angli albis crucibus signentur, sicut Franci rubeis. Sinistre hoc interpretabantur alii, dicentes eum non intuitu pietatis aut amore Christi hoc fecisse,[2] sed ut eos a proposito fraudaret: audientes autem quod in subsidium exteros quosdam vocasset, convenerunt apud . . . . non exspectato die eis præfixo. Et cum per internuncios duriuscule eis rex respondisset, condixerunt ut jam non ultra civiliter cum illo agerent. Reversique cum festinatione ad sua, castella munire, auxilium[3] quærere, equos et arma cœperunt parare. March 4. John takes the cross. The barons prepare for war.

Igitur in hebdomada Paschali convenerunt in manu valida ex condicto apud Stamforde, et quoniam ex Aquilonaribus partibus pro parte majori venerant, vocati sunt adhuc Aquilonares. Inde profecti sunt Northamtonam, nihil quidem adhuc hostile gerentes, præter solum apparatum bellicum. Junxerunt autem se eis Egidius episcopus Herefordensis, Gaufridus de Maundevilla, Robertus filius Walteri, et plures alii, et hii potissimum qui aliquid adversum regem habebant. April 19–26. The Northern party meet at Stamford and march to Northampton.

Interim rex eos per plurimos internuncios revocare studebat; habitaque sunt inter eos colloquia multa per archiepiscopum, episcopos et alios magnates, rege circa Oxoniam commorante. Ibi præsentatæ sunt litteræ domini papæ pro baronibus regi, in quibus monebatur eorum justas audire petitiones; et aliæ pro rege archiepiscopo, in quibus præcipiebatur omnes conspirationes vel conjurationes contra regem factas, auctoritate apostolica cassare, et ne de cætero fierent aliquæ eadem auctoritate inhibere. The king stays at Oxford. Conflicting orders from Rome.

Ultimo autem colloquio, quod erat non longe a Brackele, regem diffiduciantes per internuncios, et hominia sua reddentes, reversi sunt Northamptonam armati, et aciem ordinatam præcedentibus vexillis. Clausis itaque portis, et custodiis tam per portas quam per murum positis, cœperunt præsidium quod intra oppidum erat oppugnare. Sed frustra, cum machinas non haberent. Mandaverunt autem hiis qui prope erant, et hiis qui longe, quatenus portionem suam secum Conference near Brackley in which the barons defy the king. Siege of Northampton castle.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 181 b.

[1] *dicebatur*] videbatur, M.

[2] *fecisse*] egisse, M.

[3] *auxilium*] auxilia, A.

A.D. 1215. Division of families between the two parties.

ponerent. Confluxeruntque ad eos plurimi, et præsertim juniores, filii videlicet vel nepotes magnatum, quasi nomen ex rebus bellicis sibi facere volentes. Hinc est quod vidimus postmodum domos plurimas ab invicem divisas, dum, patribus et veteranis regi tanquam domino adhærentibus, filii et juniores ex adverso starent. Quosdam etiam[1] cognovimus filiorum amore in partem alteram transisse. Erant autem quidam qui licet primo non eis consenserunt, quia tamen vel amici fortunæ exstiterant, vel rerum novarum amatores, se eis fœderaverunt. Dicebatur autem quod tam Alexandri regis Scottorum quam Leuwelini principis Norwalliæ manus erat cum illis.

Council at Oxford.

Hiis diebus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis concilium provinciale convocavit apud Oxoniam. Quo cum venissent quidam prælatorum, propter turbationem hanc regni, infecto negotio recesserunt.[2]

Growth of the conspiracy against John.

Igitur qui convenerant animo obfirmato regem inter se in plurimis accusabant, et accusatum condemnabant; dicentes eum non deberi pro rege haberi de cætero; et invalescebant voces eorum; factaque est contra eum conjuratio valida. Constitutis autem ducibus exercitus quos vocabant marescallos exercitus Dei, post tempus aliquod versus Londonias profecti sunt milites quasi quingenti. Dominica itaque . . .[3] dum adhuc Divinorum celebrationi populus intenderet, quidam, consciis ex civibus nonnullis, cæteros præcedentes, per gradus quosdam pro muris emendandis factos, murum ascenderunt, et aperientes portam unam et alteram suos admiserunt; ignorantibus qui intus erant regalibus quibusdam et civium, ut dicitur, parte majore et saniore. Quid multa? captis qui resistere conabantur, alii ei confœderati sunt, dataque est civitas in manus eorum, positis custodiis[4] per muros.

The barons seize the city of London.

Rising in Devonshire.

Eisdem temporibus quidam eodem spiritu ducti in unum congregati sunt in Devonia, et occupata Exonia primum, postea in nemoribus se occuluerunt. At isti eo quod jam in capite regni positi essent, sapiebant altius, et turmatim egressi vim faciebant resistentibus, domos regias et indagines[5] capientes et exspoliantes; similiter et alii faciebant, et revelatis ex multorum cordibus cogitationibus, ubique cædes, ubique faciebant deprædationes. S. Luke, ii. 35.

Riot in Northampton.

Eo tempore orto tumultu in Northamptonia,[6] trucidati sunt ab oppidatis[7] plurimi regalium, qui ad præsidii tuitionem ibi

[1] *etiam*] autem, M.
[2] *recesserunt*] recessum est, M., A.
[3] *Dominica*] "defectus litteræ et "sententiæ," C. in marg.
[4] *custodiis*] om. M.; ins. A.
[5] *indagines*] vel parcos, interl., A.
[6] *in Northamptonia*] apud Norhamtonam, A.
[7] *oppidatis*] oppidanis, A.

stationem habebant,[1] et post paucos dies in eorum ultionem magna pars oppidi igne combusta est. A.D. 1215.

Porro rex ad munitiora se conferens, omnino se in pace tenebat, tantum præsidia et castella sua viris et victualibus muniens. Miserat autem occulte nuncios in partes transmarinas ab exteris nationibus auxilium postulans, et alios ad dominum papam de hiis quæ contra se gerebantur plurimum conquerens. Putantes vero qui Londoniis erant ipsum viribus suis diffidere, et inde animos sumentes, apposuerunt etiam præsidium quod turris Londoniensis dicitur, constructis machinis viriliter oppugnare. Quod audientes qui in aquilonaribus partibus remanserant, ceperunt et ipsi nunc vi, nunc blanditiis plures in partes suas, coactoque exercitu non parvo Lincolniam hebdomada Pentecostes occupavere, parati etiam præsidium quod resistebat oppugnare. Videns igitur rex eos invalescere, cœpit per quoscunque et maxime per archiepiscopum, quem plurimum verebantur, eos ad pacem sollicitare, secure pollicens quod non staret per eum quin pax quacunque conditione reformaretur. Assignato itaque loco, ubi partes commode convenirent, tandem post multas deliberationes amici facti sunt, rege illis omnia annuente quæ volebant, et per cartam[2] suam confirmante. Recepti sunt igitur in osculum pacis qui aderant, hominium et fidelitatem de novo facientes, comederuntque simul et biberunt, et præfixus est dies pactorum completioni, citra[3] quem quæ ibi determinata erant perficerentur. Reddiditque in continenti rex unicuique jus suum, et obsides quos habebat, castella etiam vel tenementa quæ diu in manu sua tenuerat, vel etiam quæ frater suus Ricardus rex tulerat, resignavit; castellum videlicet de Muntsorel, castellum de Rokingham, castellum de Colecestria,[4] et alia plura. Turrim vero Londoniarum, quoniam custodiam ejus Gaufridus de Maundevilla petebat, nullo alio jure, ut dicitur, nisi quia pater ejus Gaufridus ut justiciarius Angliæ illam sicut cætera custodiebat, in manu archiepiscopi tanquam in sequestro posuit, donec veritas plenius discuteretur. Mandatum est mox ubique ut pacem

John prepares for defence, and seeks foreign aid.

The barons besiege the Tower; and the northern party seize Lincoln in Whitsun-week (June 7-14).

John grants the Great Charter, and restores the castles detained in the royal hands.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 182 a.

---

[1] *habebant*] faciebant, M.

[2] *cartam*] "Articulos quosdam et "postulationem in fine miserunt "regi barones. Huic scripto non- "dum in chartæ formam redacto "rex utcunque sigillum apposuit, "et postea in formam chartæ redigi "concessit. Vide hos articulos in "manuscripto libro Legum per "Spelmannum." Gale in marg. Compare the poetical passage in the Chronicle of Mailros, p. 188, and in the Chronicle of Lanercost, p. 16.

[3] *citra*] circa, C., Gale.

[4] *Colecestria*] Gloucestria, Gale, as a correction.

A.D. 1215. July. omnes servarent, et cessaverunt hii qui apud Londonias et hii qui apud Lincolniam erant ab incepto.

The northern party distrust the king. Jam actum putares, sed heu! quia factus novissimus error pejor priore, eo quod procul dubio superseminante zizania qui pacem odit et discordiarum est auctor: ab ipso enim colloquio abierunt quidam magnatum Transhumbranorum,[1] et sub prætextu quod non intererant, hostilia agebant. Sed et hii, ut discesserunt ab invicem, videbantur occasiones quærere quomodo ab amicitia inita discederent. Nam nec ipse se eis credebat, nec illi ad eum accedebant, sed alii Londonias se recipientes debiliora quæque resarciebant, alii castella, vel quæ ex novo resignaverat rex muniebat, vel quæ ipsi a multis retro temporibus quasi hæreditario possidebant. Fuerunt etiam qui novas munitiunculas sibi construxerunt. Deferebatur interim exemplar illius cartæ per civitates et vicos, et juratum est ab omnibus quod eam observarent, ipso rege hoc jubente. Misit autem rex per provincias ministeriales suos, quos vicecomites pacis vocant, qui more solito et provincialium paci providerent, et negotia fisci procurarent. Quorum alii in partibus illis ubi proceres dicti prævalebant capti sunt, alii non absque injuria repulsi. Quod rex audiens, et juramentum illud de carta observanda contra se factum suspicans, eo quod ibi contineretur regem ipsum ad cartæ observationem cogendum, mittit festinanter alios nuncios ad gentes exteras; sed et cancellarium suum Ricardum de Marisco ad dominum papam, qui in curia jugiter existens negotia sua pro viribus promoveret. Urgebat enim necessitas, tum quia jam concilium generale in proximo erat, tum quia [jam[2]] dictos magnates in suam expulsionem conspirasse intellexerat. Regem præterea Francorum ingentibus promissis in partem suam trahere nitebatur, sed frustra. Prævenerant enim eum alii, quibus jam tacite consenserat, eo quod inter ipsum et regem Angliæ graves a multo tempore essent inimicitiæ, licet modo per treugas essent[3] mitigatæ.

S. Matt. xxvii. 64. S. Matt. xiii. 25.

Castles fortified.

Publication of the charter.

The king's officers maltreated.

John asks for foreign aid.

Philip leans to the barons.

Outbreak of war, delayed during harvest. Iterum[4] igitur direptiones, iterum deprædationes,[5] rege in locis munitioribus se tenente, proceribus autem libere per regionem discurrentibus: pepercerunt tamen adhuc populo quoniam tempus messis instabat, tantummodo domos regias vel maneria regia quæ ab aquilonaribus erant partibus, vel forestas depopulantes, ligna vendendo, et feras quarum plurima erat copia trucidando. Archiepiscopus autem et episcopi, videntes

---

[1] *Transhumbranorum*] trans Humbrum, A., C.; trans humbr', M.

[2] *jam*] om. Gale; ins. A.

[3] *essent*] om. M.

[4] *Iterum*] Interim, A.

[5] *iterum deprædationes*] om. Gale; ins. A.

terram exterminio dari, nunc regem, [nunc proceres,][1] de pace commonent; et quia tam ipse quam illi se ea quæ pacis sunt verbotenus quærere confessi sunt, statuunt ut in crastino Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ Virginis rex cum ipsis[2] ad Oxoniam, proceres apud Brackele conveniant, quatenus eorum mediatione ibidem omnibus rite completis, omnes de reliquo sopiantur rixæ, et sepeliantur inimicitiæ. Ad diem statutum convenerunt episcopi omnes et proceres usque Oxoniam in apparatu copioso, misitque rex de suis excusatores qui dicerent, sicut eis convenerat, plurima resignasse, sibi nihil esse refusum, immo post pacem initam graves injurias et enormia sibi damna illata, nec esse qui emendaret; præterea illos sic cum armis et in tanta multitudine, ad diem illum qui pacis sperabatur confluxisse, ut non esset[3] vel tutum vel consiliosum copiam sui facere.

A.D. 1215. August.

Proposed conference of parties on Aug. 16.

John declines to attend.

Ostensum est autem ibi mandatum apostolicum, in quo districte præcipiebatur archiepiscopo et ejus suffraganeis, omnes regis Angliæ impugnatores et expulsores excommunicare, vel ipsos[4] ad concilium suspensos venire, commissa mandati executione episcopo Wintoniensi, abbati Radinggensi, et Pandulpho sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ subdiacono, et domini papæ familiari. Hic est Pandulphus qui ante hoc biennium regem sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ reconciliavit. Qui ultro citroque[5] discurrens, et pro alterutra parte plurimum laborans, dum pro denario Sancti Petri ex integro et absque diminutione sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ reddendo, apud Anglos moram faceret, in episcopum Norwicensem jam electus erat. Et quoniam rumor esset quod rex regno vellet cedere, rebus suis ut videbatur diffisus, protracto per triduum colloquio, sic inter episcopos et proceres convenit, ut sententia ad modicum suspenderetur; et interim episcopi ad[6] regem adirent, tentantes si quo modo eum ad colloquium Londoniis, vel saltem usque villam quæ vocatur Stanes trahere possent; ibi enim ex condicto conventuri erant.

The archbishop ordered to excommunicate the barons on pain of suspension.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 182 b.

Pandulf chosen bishop of Norwich.

Proposed meeting at Staines.

Recesserunt itaque ab invicem proceres Londonias petentes, ubi quidam complicum suorum resederant, episcopi apud Portesmue[7] cum festinatione regem adeuntes. Quem cum vix a navi, quam ut dicitur jam conscenderat, revocarent, nihil aliud impetrare potuerunt nisi ut quosdam suorum in episco-

The bishops follow the king to Portsmouth.

---

[1] *nunc proceres*] om. C., M.

[2] *ipsis*] episcopis, Gale, as a correction; eis, A.

[3] *esset*] ei, ins. A.

[4] *ipsos*] episcopos, Gale, as a correction.

[5] *ultro citroque*] ultra citoque, C., M.

[6] *ad*] om. M., A.

[7] *Portesmue*] Portesmude, M.

A.D. 1215. August 26.

porum conductu mitteret, qui in audientia episcopórum et procerum protestarentur non stare per eum quin pax juxta quod

Meeting of bishops and barons at Staines.

inter eos convenerat[1] procederet. Ergo iiii[a]. feria post festum Sancti Bartholomæi convenerunt in unum episcopi et proceres apud villam Stanes dictam,[2] ubi post [multam][3] deliberationem, quoniam periculum episcopis imminebat, lata est sententia in regis et regni perturbatores, secundum mandatum apostolicum, sic eam interpretantibus plurimis, quod in caput regis converteretur, et in verticem ipsius descenderet, eo quod ipse, ut dicebant, regnum turbaret et se ipsum factis suis expelleret.

Disturbers of peace excommunicated.

The barons undertake the administration of the counties.

Reversi igitur[4] Londonias proceres non absque fastu quidem diviserunt inter se partem illam regni quæ jam ad se declinasse videbatur: Gaufrido videlicet de Mandevilla Essexam, Roberto filio Walteri comitatum Norhamptoniæ; Rogero de Cresci Nortfolk et Suthfolk; Saero [comite Wyntoniæ],[5] comitatum de Grantebriggia et de Huntingdonia; Willelmo de Albeneio comitatum Lincolniæ; Johanni constabulario Cestriæ comitatum Eboraci et Notingham; Roberto de Ros Northumberlande. Quilibet autem in provincia sibi assignata justiciarium se exhibens paci provincialium providere debebat. Ecce autem post paucos dies nunciatum est regem cum aliquibus alienis qui ei in subsidium venerant prope Dovram exercitum convocasse. Ibi enim commodum videbatur reliquos quos venturos sperabat opperiri. Præterea quoniam ibi mare ex facili transitur, putabat exinde facilius inimicorum suorum resistere moliminibus. At illi eum jam pro deposito vel dejecto habentes, de domino eligendo tractare cœperunt; et quoniam hoc ex communi consensu totius regni fieri oportuit, edicto peremptorio et sub protestatione præstiti juramenti et comminatione gravi, optimates omnes convocandos statuunt præfixis die et loco. Interim hii quibus mandati supradicti a domino papa commissa est executio, aliter multo sententiam latam interpretati sunt quam supradicti; eos omnes in eam incidisse protestantes, qui sic dominum suum expellere nitebantur, ex majoribus et capitaneis plurimos nominatim excommunicatos denunciaverunt una cum civibus Londoniæ, quam etiam interdicto subjecerunt. Sed pro nihilo habebatur eorum sententia, prætendentibus aliis quod ad concilium generale appellassent. Et quoniam instabat quo[6] necesse habebant concilium adire, quasi medio Septembri transfretabant episcopi, abbates et præ-

John gets together an army at Dover.

The barons summon a council.

The conspirators against John are excommunicated.

---

[1] *convenerat*] convenerant, C., M.

[2] *Stanes dictam*] quæ vocatur Stanes, M., A.

[3] *multam*] om. C.

[4] *igitur*] om. A.

[5] *comite Wyntoniæ*] om. C.; comitatum Wyntoniæ, M.

[6] *quo*] quod, C.

lati Angliæ fere omnes, per regem transitum plurimi facientes. Secutus autem Pandulphus archiepiscopum in transmarinis, eum ab officio episcopali suspendit, objiciens quod mandatum apostolicum minus reverenter implesset, quod proceribus in pluribus communicasset, et quod regi debitum honorem subtraxisset. Dicitur enim custodiam præsidii Rovecestrensis usque ad reditum suum primo ei concessisse, et postmodum, nescio qua de causa hoc non adimplesset: quosdam etiam procerum nuncios sub suo conductu ad Francorum regem deduxisse. Hanc sententiam ille ut vir prudentissimus humiliter servavit, sicque Romam profectus est.

A.D. 1215. Pandulf suspends the archbishop; who goes to Rome.

Citati igitur, ut diximus, magnates qui ab initio istis non consenserunt, post dilationes et deliberationes multas, tandem ex sententia responderunt se ex juramento non teneri ad regis depositionem vel expulsionem, maxime cum ipse pacem initam servare paratum se protestetur. Sicque divisi sunt ab invicem, et multiplicata sunt mala in terra. Regem sequebantur ex majoribus regni Ranulphus videlicet comes Cestriæ; Willelmus comes de Warenna cognatus regis; Willelmus Marescallus comes de Penbroc, quamvis primogenitus ejus stetisset[1] ex adverso; Willelmus comes Saresbiriæ frater regis, Willelmus comes de Ferrariis, Willelmus comes de Arundel, Willelmus comes de Albemarlia, comes Warewik,[2] cum aliis multis et magnis.

Two parties formed among the barons.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 183 a.

The king's party.

In parte adversa erant Gaufridus de Maundevilla comes Essexæ, quem rex cingulo militari donaverat, quique regi in xix. millibus marcarum obligatus erat pro comitissa Gloucestriæ quondam uxore sua, quam iste nuper acceperat; Saer comes Wintoniæ, quem rex pro hæreditate uxoris comitem creaverat; Rogerus comes Clarensis; Henricus comes Herefordiæ; Rogerus Bigot comes Nortfolkiæ; et David comes, et comes Robertus de Ver; ex episcopis autem Egidius Herefordensis, qui regi in ix. millibus marcarum tenebatur pro hæreditate paterna, quam rex confiscaverat primo et postmodum illi reddiderat. Ex proceribus autem Robertus filius Walteri, Eustacius de Vesci, cum aquilonaribus supradictis et pluribus aliis quos longum esset enumerare.

The baronial party, headed by the earl of Essex.

Hii itaque etsi multi essent, tamen in se ipsis parum confisi confugerunt ad regem Francorum Philippum, elegeruntque Lodowicum primogenitum ejus in dominum, petentes et obsecrantes ut in manu robusta veniens eos de manu tyranni hujus eriperet; sic enim jam habebatur. Dumque intercurrentibus

Lewis is chosen king by the barons.

[1] *stetisset*] staret, M.

[2] *Warewik*] Warrwici, M.

A.D. 1215. Northampton and Oxford castles besieged.

nunciis conventiones et securitates mutuo firmarentur, apposuerunt[1] præsidium quod est apud Northamptonam obsidere, vocatis a Francia artificibus ad machinas bellicas construendas. Quod videntes ex complicibus eorum quidam obsederunt et ipsi præsidium quod est apud Oxoniam.

John having raised an army of foreigners attempts to relieve them.

Rex autem qui circa Dovram diebus aliquot quasi delituerat, jam caput erigere cœpit. Confluxerant quippe ad eum quos dudum promissis ingentibus sollicitaverat, Picti,[2] Gascones, Bribanzones,[3] Flandrenses, et ex transmarinis nationibus in multitudine gravi. Venissentque ad eum multo plures nisi subito orta procella eos in transfretando una cum nunciis regiis submersisset. Dicitur enim et ipse papa scripsisse pro eo, utpote qui ipsum totis viribus tuendum susceperat; et hoc certis ex causis, tum quia cruce signatus erat, tum quia causa ipsius et procerum ad eum jam delata fuerat; tum quia sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ regna duo subjecerat. Multiplicatis itaque viribus misit rex ex suis qui utramque obsidionem, videlicet Oxoniæ et Northamptoniæ, dissiparent; ipseque civitatem Roffensem occupans, quam contra se proceres firmare moliebantur, etiam præsidium civitatis obsedit. Erat quippe præsidium archiepiscopi; incluserantque se in ea viri multi et magni, milites videlicet lxxx^a. et xv. ex melioribus et fortioribus totius multitudinis: promittentibus aliis quod si rex eos obsideret ipsi in manu valida citum et efficacem eis succursum facerent. Nec distulit rex; sed confractis pontibus unde aliquid subsidii sperare possent, erectis machinis modis omnibus præsidium expugnare conabatur; at illi e contra tanquam viri strenui et fortes omnino adversantibus resistentes plurimam stragem ex oppugnantibus fecerunt. Vocatis autem complicibus universis, egressi sunt Londoniis die Martis proxima ante festum Omnium Sanctorum equites quasi septingenti. Veneruntque ad villam Derteforde vocatam,[4] tanquam succursuri obsessis. Sed cum audissent quod rex jam acie ordinata occurrere disposuisset, relictis nihilominus qui obsidionem continuarent, consiliosum rati tempus opportunius exspectare, eo quod paucos haberent pedites, et rex multitudinem maximam, cum festinatione reversi sunt Londonias, condicentes ut in festo Sancti Andreæ melius et fortius instructi convenirent, quia usque ad id temporis putabant obsessi se posse resistere.

He besieges Rochester castle.

The barons in London make a vain effort to relieve Rochester, Oct. 26: and fix on Nov. 30 for another attempt.

Miserunt autem Saerum comitem Wintoniæ cum aliis pluribus ad maturandum domini Lodowici adventum, et ne aliqua

---

[1] *apposuerunt*] apposuit, M., A.
[2] *Picti*] Pictavi, A.
[3] *Bribanzones*] Braybanzones, M.
[4] *Derteforde vocatam*] quæ vocatur Derteforde, M., A.

eum retineret ambiguitas, unanimiter tactis sacrosanctis juraverunt quod inperpetuum terram de Johanne rege non tenerent. Reversi sunt plures ad sua, residentibus aliis apud Londonias. A.D. 1215. Oaths taken against John.

MS. Magd. xxxiv. fo. 183 b.

Eo tempore obiit Egidius episcopus Herefordiæ, qui tamen antea, vel metu domini papæ vel aliis nescio quibus causis, regi reconciliatus, etiam obsidioni illi aliquantulum interfuit. The bishop of Hereford dies.

Artabantur interea apud Roucestriam obsessi, et, urgente rege negotium, nulla eis dabatur requies, quinque machinis jaculatoriis[1] non cessantibus per diem vel noctem lapides in eos mittere. Jam aliis confractis, sola arx stabat, quæ quoniam præ operis antiquitate et solididate, parum lapidum jactu[2] lædebatur; immissi sunt suffossores, et cum media concidisset, ipsi tamen adhuc in altera medietate viriliter restiterunt. Talis quippe erat structura arcis, ut muro solidissimo hæc medietas ab illa quæ ceciderat distingueretur. Nec meminit ætas nostra obsidionis alicujus tam urgenter[3] factæ, nec tam viriliter defensæ. Cum enim per continuos [dies][4] nulla eis daretur requies, etiam infra arcis unius angustias fame laboraverunt acerrima, deficientibus quippe aliis, sola equina carne et aqua vescebantur, quod durum erat eis qui in deliciis erant nutriti. Tandem itaque ad extremum perventum est; primoque ejectis qui minus bellicosi videbantur, quorum nonnullis rex manus vel pedes truncari fecit, non multo post capti sunt omnes, et præter eos qui se clericos asserebant, in vincula conjecti; milites et nobiliores rex sibi retinuit, inferiores aliis concessit. Unum solum suspendi jussit, arcubalistarium quem, ut fertur, a puero nutrierat, cum tamen putaretur præ iræ magnitudine quod omnes simul morti amarissimæ mox traditurus esset. Dejecti sunt hoc audito reliqui omnes, et[5] pavore percussi aut Londonias se contulerunt aut locis religiosis se abdiderunt. Pauci erant qui munitionibus se crederent. John presses the siege of Rochester castle; and takes it, to the dismay of his enemies.

Interea Romæ celebratum est concilium generale sub papa Innocentio tertio in basilica quæ appellatur Constantiniana, cui intererant ex patriarchis majoribus Constantinopolitanus et Jerosolimitanus; episcopi diversarum nationum cccx., quorum lxx. erant primates metropolitani; abbates vel priores quasi dcccti. Ibi promotus est Walterus de Grey a Wygornensi epi- Lateran council under Innocent III.

---

[1] *jaculatoriis*] jaculatoribus, M.

[2] *jactu*] ictu, M.

[3] *urgenter*] jugiter, Gale, as a correction.

[4] *dies*] supplied by Gale to fill up a blank; he remarks "nihil deest "in Cotton." Blank in A. C. M.

[5] *et*] om. M.

A.D. 1215. Walter Grey made archbishop of York.

scopo in archiepiscopum Eboracensem, cassata prius electione magistri Simonis de Langetune, unanimiter ut fertur electi, qui frater Stephani Cantuariensis archiepiscopi erat. Suggestum est autem domino papæ quod dominus Cantuariensis incentor esset hujus[1] tumultus in Anglia orti, et de sententia quam eidem Pandulphus inflixerat,[2] motusque est graviter vir

Archbishop Langton is in disgrace at Rome.

apostolicus contra eum pro hac causa, et eo gravius, quo sibi ut credebat tanquam promotori suo magis tenebatur obnoxius. Absolutus est autem ibi a sententia suspensionis. Sed quoniam intellexit gratiam domini papæ sibi subtractam, pauca verba de cætero in concilio fecit. At proceres Angliæ, eo quod ad concilium appellaverant, miserunt aliquos qui pro parte starent; quibus tamen[3] excommunicationis objectus est titulus,

The pope excommunicates all John's enemies.

non est audientia data. Excommunicati sunt igitur ibi non solum ipsi, sed omnes qui regem Angliæ in hac parte infestabant cum adjutoribus et fautoribus eorum. Et quoniam jam papæ revelatum est de Francorum rege filioque ejus qualiter cum dictis proceribus fœdus inierint, nunc patri, nunc filio, nunc episcopis vel prælatis partium illarum crebras direxit epistolas, sententiæ illius mentionem facientes, monens et commonens ne aliquid in sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ injuriam

The marshall of France sent to secure London for Lewis.

contra tam celebrem attentarent sententiam; sed frustra. Nam sive odio personæ, sive quia turpe putabant referre pedem, acceptis ab Anglicis obsidibus, marescallum Franciæ cum manu valida armatorum Londonias miserunt, qui istis usque ad domini Lodowici adventum præsidio forent, qui putabatur in proximo venturus.

John goes by Winchester, to Nottingham, and keeps Christmas there.

At rex Angliæ capta, ut dictum est, Roucestria circa Decembris initium, inde versus Wintoniam divertit. Indeque versus Aquilonem per medium Angliæ transiens, cor populi fluctuantis sua præsentia solidavit; fautores suos quos in oppidis vel munitionibus posuerat, confortavit: veniensque Notingham ibi Natale Domini, non tamen ex more, sed sicut in expeditione positus, egit; quotquot autem castella aut munitiones habebant usque ad [id] locorum aut ea vacua reliquerunt aut ipsi dediderunt.[4]

---

[1] *hujus*] hujusmodi, M.
[2] *inflixerat*] infixerat, Gale.
[3] *tamen*] quia, ins. A.
[4] *dediderunt*] reddiderunt, A.

C. B. B.——MCCXVI. A.D. 1216.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 184 a.

Rex ultra progrediens usque ad castrum de Berewik[1] pervenit; captoque præsidio et patria depopulata, rediit ad sua. In eundo autem et redeundo vastabat terras, cepit munitiones, nec erat qui resisteret. Nam rex Scottorum adhuc junior, sicut et alii complices ejus, in locis remotioribus se absconderat. John takes Berwick.

Eo tempore insulam Hely vocatam[2] invaserunt quidam ex regis satellitibus, duce comite Saresbiriæ. Nam sive pro religione loci, sive pro munitione, confluxerat illuc matronarum et infantium multitudo maxima, et cum eis[3] milites multi et magnates[4] nonnulli. Qui cum aditus præclusissent, et positis in locis opportunis custodibus ad resistendum se præparassent, dante opportunitatem gelu acerrimo quod ipsas paludes pervias faceret, irruentibus copiis intercepti sunt. Salvati sunt tamen ex militibus aliqui per glaciem fugientes, et ex matronis plures protegente eas comite. Hoc audito territi sunt qui in locis religiosis occultabantur, et quotquot poterant Londonias[5] fugerunt. The earl of Salisbury occupies Ely. London becomes the chief place of refuge.

Rex autem in Estsexam proficiscebatur, eo quod quædam munitiones ibi dicebantur se defensioni præparare. Sed cum illuc venisset, non erat qui resisteret præter solum præsidium Colecestriæ, quod ipse in manu valida obsedit, et cepit quasi prima hebdomada Martii: et jam sola restabat Londonia,[6] ubi se contulerant Franci cum hostibus regis. Cumque putaretur quod rex illuc exercitum directurus esset, divertit versus Dovram, tentans si quo modo Lodowici præpediret propositum. Dominus etiam papa, præter epistolas quas frequentissime direxerat, etiam cardinalem misit nomine Walonem qui viva voce negotium illud procuraret, et in Anglia legati fungeretur officio. Sed nec regis providentia, nec domini papæ epistolæ, nec legati persuasio dominum Lodowicum impedire poterant; nec ventus qui per multum temporis ei contrarius fuerat. John takes Colchester castle early in March; but instead of attacking London, goes to Dover to intercept Lewis. Mission of the legate Gualo.

Mense igitur Maio, xiiii[a] die mensis, applicuit Lodowicus in insula Tanet, rege ut aiunt id vidente. Qui[7] quoniam alienigenas et conductitios secum habebat, qui [pro] parte majori de Francorum ditione erant, nec apposuit impedire Lewis lands in Thanet, May 14.

---

[1] *de Berewik*] quod Berwic dicitur, M., A.

[2] *Hely vocatam*] quæ vocatur Ely, M., A.

[3] *eis*] illis, M.

[4] *magnates*] magnatum, M., A.

[5] *Londonias*] Londoniis, M.

[6] *Londonia*] civitas Londonia, A.

[7] *Qui*] Et, Gale.

A.D. 1216. May. John retires before him to Winchester.

applicantem, nec invadere jam littus tenentem. Mente igitur consternatus et vultu tristis, inde versus Wintoniam cum suis divertit in obviam Walonis legati, qui eodem tempore in Angliam applicuerat.[1]

Lewis goes to Canterbury, and reaches London, June 2.

At Lodowicus littore potitus Cantuariam adiit, exspectans ibi suos quos a Londoniis vocaverat, ut scilicet junctis copiis securius ultra progrederetur. Confluebant itaque ad eum Franci cum Anglis, et audito ejus adventu cœperunt caput erigere, et de latibulis exire, qui eum tanto tempore exspectaverant. Recesseruntque a rege non solum ex conductitis quos supradiximus, sed etiam ex Anglis plurimi qui cum rege steterant. Captisque[2] in itinerando castellis aliquibus, v^a. feria hebdomadæ Pentecostes venit Londonias, exceptus cum omni alacritate et lætitia: factæque sunt ei fidelitates et hominia, putabaturque mox totam insulam capturus, et hoc omnes fere præconabantur, credentes ipsum regem desperasse eo quod paulo ante castella plurima per Angliam demoliri jussisset; inter quæ erat Beaver[3] castellum famosum et nobile.

He receives homages and fealties.

The new legate Gualo excommunicates Lewis, May 29.

Legatus vero assumptis secum episcopis et ecclesiarum prælatis, quos a concilio generali remeantes in auxilium regis in regnum vocaverat, præsente rege, Lodowicum excommunicavit ex nomine ipso die Pentecostes, cum adjutoribus et fautoribus, terras eorum subjiciens interdicto, et maxime civitatem Londoniarum. Non destitit propter hoc Lodowicus, sed insecutus regem Wintoniam cepit cum munitionibus circumpositis, quam mox comiti Nivernensi dedit, qui cum eo venerat.

He takes Winchester.

He besieges Dover and Windsor.

Dehinc viribus multiplicatis castellum Dovræ arte et natura munitissimum, obsedit. Missis præterea cum comite Nivernensi ex magnatibus Angliæ, castellum de Windesoure obsideri fecit. Sed et[4] Aquilonares Lincolniam occupantes præsidium obsidere et expugnare conati sunt. Liberavit autem se ab hac obsidione matrona cui præsidii custodia commissa erat, Nicholaa nomine,[5] pacta pro dominatione pecunia; profectique sunt ad dominum Lodowicum Aquilonares una cum[6] rege Scottorum, feceruntque et ipsi ei fidelitates et hominia.

The northern barons fail to take Lincoln, and join Lewis.

Innocent III. dies: Honorius III. succeeds.

Mortuus est autem[7] eo tempore Innocentius papa; succesMS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 184 b.
sitque ei Cincius cardinalis, jam ævo grandior, factusque[8] est Honorius. Quod ut auditum est in Anglia lætati sunt omnes

---

[1] *applicuerat*] applicaverat, A.
[2] *Captisque*] Captis igitur, A.
[3] *Beaver*] Beauveir, M.; Bealveir, A.
[4] *et*] om. Galc; ins. A.
[5] *Nichola nomine*] om. M., V.
[6] *cum*] om. M.
[7] *autem*] om. M., A.
[8] *factusque*] et vocatus est, M.

qui ex adverso regis steterunt, putantes et prædicantes quod novus papa nova faceret, nec in viis prædecessoris sui ambularet. A.D. 1216. Hopes of change.

Eo tempore recesserunt a rege amici multi et proximi; comes videlicet de Warenna cognatus regis, et comes[1] Saresbiriæ frater regis, et comes de Arundel, et Robertus comes de Ver; et comes de Albemarlia, qui tamen cito rediit. Et cæteri qui stabant cum Lodowico magis, ut post claruit, ex metu, quam ex animo stabant. John deserted by the great earls of his party.

Rex igitur cum diu siluisset considerans domini Lodowici facta, vidissetque eum in obsidione Doverensi diutius detineri, minusque quam primo putabatur prosperari, movit castra versus Nortfolkiam, occupavitque loca per quæ transiturus erat rex Scottorum in sua. Quo audito perrexerunt qui apud Windesovere sederant ei obviam, solutaque est obsidio: ipse autem cum suis Lincolniam recessit. Dehinc cum insulam quæ vocatur Axiholm[2] ferro flammaque vastasset, movit castra per Lindesiam, transiensque Hoilandiam, Lincolniam usque devenit, ubi non paucis diebus rex Scottorum et ex magnatibus multi stationem habuerant. Ubicunque autem in hoc itinerario hostium terras reperit, direptioni eas dedit; factæque sunt in combustionem et cibum ignis, ita ut non meminerit ætas nostra tantillo tempore talem combustionem nostris in partibus factam fuisse.[3] Sed cum a facie ejus fugissent qui apud Linniam[4] congregati erant, reversus est cum festinatione, eo quod morbo ut fertur dissinteriæ graviter fatigaretur. Et cum venisset ad castellum cui nomen Lafford, quod episcopo Lincolniensi occasione werræ ad tempus abstulerat, morbo ingravescente in lectica jactari[5] se fecit ad Neuwerc castellum itidem[6] Lincolniensis episcopi, sed ea ratione qua prius in manu regis tunc temporis existens. He marches into Norfolk; ravages Axholm and comes to Lincoln. He is taken ill at Sleaford and goes to Newark to die.

Ibi igitur morbo invalescente, diem clausit extremum xiiii°. kalendas Novembris, postquam regnaverat annis xvii. mensi- Death of John, Oct. 19.

---

[1] *comes*] "W. Longaspata, potius "doli quam dilectionis intuitu, ut "postea patuit. *W. Cov. Annal.* "Hac vice rex Scotiæ moram in "Anglia faciens homagium Ludo-"vico fecit, eadem forma qua "barones, et juraverunt quod nun-"quam sine rege Scottorum pacem "cum Johanne facerent. *Ibid.*" MS. Gale in marg. The words occur in the Chron. Lanercost, p. 19; Chron. Mailros, p. 191, with a few variations.

[2] *Axholm*] Haxiholm, M.

[3] *factam fuisse*] Here MS. A. has the paragraph "Savaricus autem ". . . abduxerunt," p. 239 below.

[4] *Linniam*] Lincolniam, Gale, as a correction.

[5] *jactari*] vectari, conj. Gale.

[6] *itidem*] om. M.

A.D. 1216. October. Character of John.

bus v. diebus iiii.: princeps quidem magnus, sed minus felix, et cum Mario fortunam utramque expertus: munificus et liberalis in exteros, sed suorum deprædator, plus in alienis quam in suis confidens, unde et a suis ante finem derelictus est, et

He is buried at Worcester, his bowels at Croxton.

in fine modicum luctus. Et quoniam eum secuta fuerat armatorum multitudo qui fere omnes conductitii et exteri erant, convenerunt festinato ad locum, et funus regium sicut armati erant usque ad Wygorniam[1] detulerunt, non quod ipse sepulturam ibi delegisset, sed quia is locus securior tunc temporis videretur, ubi fautores ejus convenirent quid facto opus esset deliberaturi. Intestina tamen ejus, eo quod corpulentior esset, in domo Præmonstratensis[2] ordinis quæ Croxtone vocatur condita sunt.

Silvester, prior of Worcester, made bishop at Rome.

Intererat regis obsequiis[3] Silvester tunc temporis Wigornensis episcopus, qui, translato in concilio Lateranensi generali ad archiepiscopatum Eboracensem Waltero de Grey, eidem in prædicta sede successit. Hic a prioratu prædictæ ecclesiæ ad pontificatum electus, Romanam sedem adiit, ibique a papa Innocentio curam pastoralem et consecrationem suscepit episcopalem.

Savaric de Mauleon, on Sept. 30, carries off refugees from Crowland.

Savaricus de Malo leonum et alii plures armati a rege Johanne missi, ut milites et servientes regis adversarios in locis abditis et remotioribus latebras foventes inquirerent et comprehenderent, in crastino Sancti Michaelis inprovisi Croylandiam venerunt, et non inventis ibi quos quærebant, monasterium invaserunt, et per ecclesiam et claustrum et officinas monasterii equites et armati discurrentes, coram altari inter sacra missarum sollemnia homines ceperunt, et ab ecclesia abstraxerunt. In recessu vero suo prædam infinitam tam in armentis quam in pecoribus secum abduxerunt.

The siege of Dover raised.

Hiis diebus antequam de obitu regis mentio fieret, impetraverunt qui apud Dovram obsessi erant inducias usque post Pascha, et soluta est obsidio. Videbatur autem ipsis[4] Lodowicum non multum approbasse adventum suum in Angliam, eo quod aliter se haberet regnum quam hii promiserant qui

Resistance to Lewis.

eum asciverant. Nam castella regis multa erant et munita valde, et ipse fere totius regni dominatum obtinens; rex Scottorum et Aquilonares exclusi a finibus suis, satellites regii

---

[1] *Wygorniam*] "Wincester, *W.* "*Cov. Ann.*" MS. Gale, in marg. The Chron. Mailros has Wirecestre. "Regnavit annis xvi. vel secundum "alios xviii. et v. menses. *Ann. W.* "*Cov.*" Gale, in marg. The words are not in the Chronicles of Mailros and Lanercost.

[2] *Præmonstratensis*] Premustrensis, M.

[3] *obsequiis*] exequiis, M., A.

[4] *ipsis*] tunc temporis, M., A.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 185 a.

possessiones eorum qui sibi adhæserant pro libitu conculcantes. Anglos præterea mutabiles existimabat et mobiles, et Franci pauciores erant quam qui ad tantum regnum occupandum et obtinendum sufficerent. Hæc attendens Lodowicus circa maritimam illam versabatur, ut si forte quid insperatum accideret, facilem haberent ipse et sui ad sua regressum. Sed rumor de obitu regis omnem illam patriam erexit, reversique sunt Aquilonares cum rege Scottorum ad sua, et Lodowicus Londonias se recepit; cepitque turrim Londoniæ, quæ quasi in sequestro posita fuerat, conniventibus, ut fertur, hiis quibus commissa fuerat. A.D. 1216. Lewis's hopes begin to decline: and the Scots and Northern barons go home.

Hiis diebus comes Britanniæ Petrus cognatus ejus ad eum cum manu valida venerat, cui ipse omnia quæ uxorem ejus jure hæreditario contingebant, plenarie concessit. Duxerat quippe filiam comitissæ Britanniæ, sororem videlicet Arthuri dudum mortui, ex parte matris. Peter of Brittany comes to the aid of Lewis.

[1] Mortuo ut dictum [est] rege et sepulto, convenerunt qui cum eo steterant, tam exteri quam proceres regni; et procurante id legato, primogenitum regis Henricum nomine in regem promoverunt. Imposuit autem ei manus ex jussu legati episcopus Wintoniensis, die apostolorum Simonis et Judæ, apud Gloucestriam, assistentibus ei episcopis qui in regno erant. Henry the son of John is made king at Gloucester, Oct. 28.

Dominus Cantuariensis aberat in curia Romana detentus, et Lincolniensis [2] in transmarinis moras nectens. Cæteri cum proceribus fidelitatem fecerunt novo regi et hominia. Commissaque est ex communi consilio cura [3] regis et regni legato, episcopo Wintoniensi, et Willelmo Marescallo comiti de Penbroc. Erat autem rex adhuc puer circiter annorum novem. Hoc audito indignati sunt illi qui de parte adversa erant, et ne quid spei possit novo regi superesse, unanimiter tactis sacrosanctis juraverunt se de nullo hæredum Johannis quondam regis Angliæ [4] terram unquam tenturos, nam istum non [5] regis nomine dignabantur. The legate, the bishop of Winchester, and William Marshall, the king's guardians. The hostile barons renounce the heirs of John.

At legatus pro viribus partes regis fovebat, mandans et monens, rogans et obsecrans, arguens et increpans, in contradicentes vel inobedientes gladium Petri exserens; acceperat etenim hoc in mandatis. The legate supports the young king:

Nam ut Romæ mors regis Johannis audita est, decrevit curia pro pupillo rege viriliter standum; Angliam tanquam the pope also.

---

[1] "Initium regni Henrici tertii, "filii Johannis." V., M., in marg.

[2] *Lincolniensis*] episcopus, ins. Gale.

[3] *cura*] cum, C., M.

[4] *Angliæ*] om. M., A.

[5] *non*] vero, C., M.; nec, A.

A.D. 1216. Honorius III. confirms the legation of Gualo, who threatens a new interdict.

patrimonium beati Petri, contra Lodowicum et suos defendendam, pro causa hac non solum sententiis sed etiam armis, si ita necesse erat, agendum. Unde novus papa non solum legatum ipsum confirmavit, sed et omnia quæ causæ isti annexa erant vel necessaria ejus discretioni, omni appellatione vel contradictione remota, commisit. Hac auctoritate fretus, legatus prælatos ecclesiasticos ad novi regis fidelitatem compellebat, resistentes graviter puniebat, terras quæ in manus Lodowici vel complicum suorum devenerant, interdicto subjiciebat. At contra Lodowicus auctoritatem ejus nullam esse dicebat, eo quod ipse pro se et suis[1] contra ipsum appellaverit.

Resistance of Lewis to the legate.

Prælatis ecclesiarum sub gravi comminatione inhibebat, ne aut ad ipsius vocationem accederent, aut novo regi in aliquo se obligarent; injungens insuper ut sibi tanquam domino terræ fidelitatem ad diem quem præfixerat facerent. Prævaluit autem in hac parte legatus. Nam convocato apud Bristolliam concilio, prælatos qui aderant in partem quam volebat inclinavit. At contra Lodowicus fecit quod potuit, possessionibus eos spoliavit, bona eorum suis diripienda reliquit. Nullum tamen prælatorum ecclesiasticorum ad fidelitatem vel hominium suum eo anno inducere potuit, aliis latentibus, aliis inducias pecunia impetrantibus. Movit autem castra a Londoniis versus interiora regni, trahens post se machinas jaculatorias et instrumenta bellica; obseditque præsidium de Herefordia[2] et cepit. Occupaverunt interim insulam de Hely, excepta munitione quadam ubi regales se incluserant. Occupata est etiam Lincolnia, et præsidium obsessum. Profectus ultra Londonias applicuit castra ad castellum cui nomen Berchamstede[3] cœpitque machinis erectis inclusos ad deditionem urgere. Sed quoniam Natale Domini instabat, firmatæ sunt treugæ generales inter partes usque ad octavas Epiphaniæ, reddito quod obsidebatur castello pro treugarum impetratione. Recesseruntque etiam a Lincolnia qui obsidioni intererant.

Council at Bristol.

All the prelates take Henry's side.

Lewis takes Hertford, and Ely.

He besieges Berkhampstead.

Truce till Jan. 13.

The abbot of Thorney,

Radulphus abbas Thorneiæ, vir religiosus et timens Deum, obiit. MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 185 b.

Geoffrey de Mandeville,

Gaufridus de Maundevilla ex vulnere quod in hastiludio Londoniis acceperat obiit.

and Eustace de Vesci, die.

Eustachius de Vesci spiculo percussus in castelli cujusdam obsidione obiit.

Hii duo, ut supra tetigimus, pro parte magna causam dederunt hujus tumultus regni Angliæ.

---

[1] *pro se et suis*] et sui, C.

[2] *Herefordia*] Hertforde, A.

[3] *applicuit . . . . Berchamstede*] om. M.; ins. A.

A.——MCCXVII. A.D. 1217.

Post Natale Domini, durantibus adhuc treugis, convocaverunt fautores suos ad concilium Lodowicus apud Grantebriggiam,[1] tutores regii apud Oxoniam. Elaboratumque est ut aut inter partes pax firmaretur, aut treugæ prolongarentur. Sed cum paci detrectarent Angli qui cum Lodowico erant, protendereturque de treugis ineundis consilium, obsedit ipse castellum cui nomen Odingham.[2] Redditum est autem ei tunc temporis castellum illud, et castellum Orefordiæ; præsidiumque[3] Nortwici, et præsidium Colecestriæ, pro treugis usque ad mensem post Pascha. Sperabatur quippe quod occasione treugarum rediret in partes suas, possetque de facili casus accidere quo pars regia per hoc in melius promoveretur. Sic igitur omnis plaga orientalis in manus Lodowici devenit.

The friends of Lewis meet at Cambridge, Henry's at Oxford.

Lewis takes several castles, and conquers the eastern counties.

Hiis diebus convocatum est concilium apud Meludunum[4] a nunciis domini papæ, interdicto ut dicitur totam terram regis Philippi pro hac causa subjecturis.[5] Unde et ipse concilium procerum apud Laudunum convocavit in media Quadragesima. Vocavit autem filium suum in mandato speciali et urgentissimo ad concilium. Moleste id tulerunt Angli qui ei adhæserant. Sed ipse tactis sacrosanctis apud Londonias juravit, quod ante finitas treugas in Angliam rediret. Dumque navigationi se et suos præpararet, infregerunt treugas quidam ex parte regia; unde iratus Lodowicus, illo,[6] licet paucos haberet, movit exercitum; distulissetque navigationem nisi patris urgens coegisset mandatum. Qui cum transfretasset, mox manifeste recesserunt in partem alteram comes[7] Salesbiriæ et multi alii. Incitaverat eos quippe legatus, injungens in remissionem peccatorum tam hiis quam aliis ut pro rege starent, regis partes tanquam ecclesiæ proprias pro viribus promoverent; nec hoc solum, sed etiam ut tanquam contra infideles pugnaturi, cruce se in pectore signarent. Signatusque est in primis, et episcopi et ecclesiarum prælati, et abbates ut ferunt; profectique sunt in expeditionem, et obsidionibus castellorum intererant. Qui votum peregrinationis Jerosolimitanæ habuerant, aut illud commutabant in istud, aut differebant propter istud. Non cessabat legatus comminari, excommunicare, interdicere, sed pro nihilo reputabatur apud illos ejus sententia. Objiciebant non modo illi, sed etiam domino papæ, quod muneribus excæcatus et cupiditate devictus, supplantaret judicium, et quod rectum est

Council at Melun against Philip, who calls another at Laon and summons Lewis home.

On his departure, his party is deserted by the earl of Salisbury and others, who prepare to fight for the king as on a crusade.

Energy of the legate.

---

[1] *Grantebriggiam*] Granthebruge, A.

[2] *Odingham*] Odingeham, M.; Hidingeham, A. [Castle Hedingham.]

[3] *que*] quoque, M., A.

[4] *Meludunum*] Meledunum, A.

[5] *subjecturis*] subjecturus, C., M.

[6] *illo*] illico, C.

[7] *comes*] comites, C.

A.D. 1217. His unpopularity.

perverteret.[1] Nihil enim jam agebat quod non sinistre interpretabatur. Habebant autem contra eum quod in expeditionem procederet, quod nomine procurationis[2] ab ecclesiis vel monasteriis quæ non visitabat, pecunias exigebat.

Wretched state of the kingdom.

Erat autem ex hiis altius considerantibus et novissima providentibus justa causa gemendi, et statum regni merito deflendi. Jam quippe divisum in se erat regnum; jam quidam qui se pridem exercitum Dei nominaverant, et pro libertatibus ecclesiæ et regni se decertare jactaverant, filii Belial reputati sunt, et infidelibus comparati; et hii proni ad schisma suscitandum et ad inobediendum obstinati. Clerici fautores eorum temere tractantes immo contaminantes Divina, cum se certissime scirent non modo suspensos verum etiam excommunicatos.

March. The king's party takes several castles.

Cum igitur ante mediam Quadragesimam transfretasset Lodowicus, confortata est manus regalium, et divisis per loca sociis, plura simul[3] obsidebant castella. Eo tempore recuperaverunt castellum de Merleberge, castellum de Farnham, præsidium Wintoniæ, præsidium Cicestriæ, cum aliis quibusdam quæ fere omnia demoliti sunt.

The earl of Chester besieges Mountsorel.

Comes autem Cestriæ, adjunctis sibi multis ex majoribus partis illius, obsedit castellum cui nomen est[4] Mountsorel juxta Leyrcestriam.[5]

Lewis's party besieges Lincoln.

Et quoniam mobile vulgus facile mutatur, parum profecto in Anglia [cum] Lodowico[6] remansisset, si ultra promissum tempus reditum suum distulisset. Sed nec pars illius interim otiosa fuit. Obsederunt enim et ipsi præsidium Lincolniæ circa mediam Quadragesimam. Confluxeruntque quotidie illuc multi et magni, cum uxoribus etiam et liberis, eo quod ibi tutiorem faciebant commorationem, tum loci opportunitas, tum virorum robustorum frequentia. MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 186 a.

Apr. 29. Lewis returns.

Sabbato igitur quo finiendæ erant treugæ applicuit Lodowicus apud Santwicum, ducens secum comitem Perticensem cum aliis multis, passusque est a galeis regiis damna suorum, eo quod viri nautici qui per portus et littora commorabantur in partem regis declinaverunt. Unde iratus Lodowicus portum ipsum ubi applicuit succendit igni. Audito ejus adventu occurrerunt ei cum gaudio qui ejus erant. Mandatumque est hiis qui apud Lincolniam erant, ut obsidionem viriliter urgerent. Unde erectis machinis non jam dabatur requies obsessis,

He burns Sandwich.

---

[1] *perverteret*] diverteret, M.
[2] *procurationis*] purgationis, Gale.
[3] *simul*] sibi, Gale.
[4] *est*] om. M., A.
[5] *juxta Leyrcestriam*] om. M., A.
[6] *cum Lodowico*] Lodowicus, C., A.

nihil nisi solam captionem exspectantibus. Sed quoniam et hii qui apud Munsorel obsidebantur jam fere usque ad deditionem pervenerant, ipsis cum summa festinatione succurrere decreverunt, instigante quos poterat ad hoc comite Sacro;[1] erat quippe castellum ipsius. Profecti sunt igitur a Londoniis in manu valida Franci cum Anglis, et erat Robertus filius Walteri dux eorum: et cum appropinquassent castello quo ibant, subtraxit se comes Cestriæ et qui cum illo erant; accensisque machinis, Notingham diverterunt. Hoc successu elati alii insolentius se habebant; et facta mora in partibus illis per dies aliquot omnia pro libitu tractabant.

A.D. 1217. He presses the siege of Lincoln and relieves Mountsorel.

The earl of Chester retires.

Interim Lodowicus cum residuo exercitus sui castellum Dovræ iterato obsedit. Nam robur exercitus sui, ut dictum est, in partibus aquilonaribus erat. Qui enim ad succursum Mountsorel venerant adjunxerunt se jam hiis qui apud Lincolniam præsidium obsidebant, et multiplicatis [viribus][2] urgebatur solito amplius obsidio.

Lewis besieges Dover castle.

Interea considerans pars regia quod si Lincolnia cum præsidio in manus Lodowici deveniret, plurimum detrimenti sustinerent; turpe etiam ducentes matronæ tam viriliter se habenti non succurrere; convenerunt in unum circa Pentecosten, profectique sunt Lincolniam, duce Willelmo Marescallo comite de Penbroc, concomitante legato cum episcopis nonnullis. Inter eundum adjunxit[3] se illis comes Cestriæ, et alii qui apud Notingham restiterant. Et quoniam civitas a parte australi munitior videbatur, gyrantes a longe a parte aquilonari, ubi et præsidium situm est, applicuerunt ad eam; at alii de numero et fortitudine confisi, primum quidem dispositis cuneis obviam exierunt, sed mox mutato consilio se retrahentes, intra civitatem se receperunt. Quod videntes illi, et inde animosiores effecti, audacter irruunt et portam proximam, non tamen sine suorum damno, effringunt.

About Whitsuntide (May 14) the king's party proceeds to the relief of Lincoln.

Interea quidam de exercitu regio per posticium præsidii admissi, repente advolant, et vociferantes rem gladiis[4] cominus peragunt; attoniti alii et præ angustia loci vix se movere valentes, minus viriliter restiterunt; cœperuntque regales undique irrumpere. Pugnatum est ibi in plateis civitatis, et in ipso atrio matricis ecclesiæ; et prævalente parte regia, terga verterunt alii.

Struggle in the streets of the city.

Occisus est ibi comes Perticensis; capti comes Seerus, comes Gilbertus, Robertus filius Walteri, et reliqui exercitus capitanei fere omnes. Dicebatur autem numerus militum captorum

The chiefs of Lewis's party taken.

---

[1] *Saero*] Seero, M.; Seer, A.
[2] *viribus*] om. C., Gale.
[3] *adjunxit*] se junxerunt illis, A.
[4] *gladiis*] gladii, M.

A.D. 1217. Multitude of prisoners.

ccclxxx: nam servientium, burgensium et mediæ manus hominum non erat numerus.

Sacrileges committed by the victors.

Post hæc[1] prædæ inhiantes passim ecclesias civitatis violant; ipsi cathedrali ecclesiæ non parcentes. Illuc enim confugerant matronæ cum liberis et supellectili sua; ubi substantiam suam tam burgenses quam alii reposuerant. Dicebatur hoc ex conniventia factum legati, qui in exercitu regio aderat, eo quod clerici civitatis rebelles ei exstiterant, et ob hoc excommunicati, et ipsæ ecclesiæ contaminatæ, et ipsi nihilominus qui ad ecclesiæ immunitatem confugerant excommunicati,[2] et capti quidem unusquisque a suo captore vinculis mancipati sunt. Fugientes autem hii ab insequentibus comprehensi, hii in itinere, quod periculosum valde et longum erat, insidias perpessi, aut spoliati sunt, aut certe trucidati. Reliqui, abjectis omnibus quæ fugientes onerare poterant, Londonias utcunque pervenerunt. Et[3] comes Cestriæ ad castellum de Mountsorel[4] cum suis reversus illud cepit et solotenus prostravit.

Mountsorel taken.

Lewis goes to London.

Lodowicus autem ut hoc audivit, relicta obsidione Doverensi, Londonias se recepit, ex hoc nusquam progrediens, nihil arduum aggrediens. Misit autem mox ad amicos transmarinos auxilium in tantæ necessitatis articulo efflagitans. MS Magd. xxxvi. fo. 186 b.

The king's friends approach London:

At regales undique insurgentes prævaluerunt nimis; et occupatis quaquaversum finibus, captis et munitiunculis, Londonias cum manu forti appropinquabant; quasi Lodowicum in civitate obsessuri. Et cum ad resistendum se præpararent qui cum Lodowico erant, interponentibus se quibusdam ut pax inter partes fieret, discesserunt ab invicem qui convenerant sub spe pacis. Differebat autem Lodowicus eam pro succursu quem exspectabat a partibus transmarinis, et regales, ut bona eorum qui ex adverso steterant liberius diriperent.

Lewis sends abroad for help.

Aug. 24. Battle near Thanet between the two parties.

Præparabatur interea succursus in ambitione magna et festinatione magna domino Lodowico et Londoniensibus a partibus transmarinis; nec latuit hoc regales. Unde et ipsi in littoribus ubi applicare putabantur, alii commorantes navesque bellicas viris et armis munientes, excubias continuas agebant. Quid multa? Die Sancti Bartholomæi cum omni classe sua venientes illi cum regalibus non longe ab insula Thanet commiserunt bellum cum Eustachio monacho.

Eustace le Moine killed.

Expugnatis igitur aliquot navibus corum, occisus est Eustachius cognomento Monachus, qui nunc ad hos, nunc ad illos, ut fortuna ferebat, divertens, a multis retro diebus mare illud

[1] *hæc*] om. A.
[2] *et ipsi . . excommunicati*] om. M.
[3] *Et*] At, A.
[4] "Muntsorel prostratus," C. in marg.

et littora tam cismarina quam transmarina plurimum turbaverat, insulas etiam nonnullas plurimum[1] occupaverat. Captis autem ex capitaneis illius partis nonnullis, reliqui fugæ beneficio evaserunt, et occisis ex minoribus plurimis, confusique ab invicem dispersi non apposuerunt ultra tale aliquid aggredi. A.D. 1217. August. Defeat of the French party.

Ab illa die cœpit manifeste pars regia prævalere et pars domini Lodowici deprimi. Unde convenientibus iterum cum armis prope Londonias regiis copiis, non distulit pacem facere Lodowicus, qualem sors obtulit. Initis igitur conditionibus de solvendis hiis qui capti erant; de malis consuetudinibus, quæ quasi causa fuerant hujus guerræ, abolendis; de libertatibus quæ petebantur a proceribus Angliæ observandis, et pacta pecunia nomine expensarum quas in adventu in regnum fecerat; primo[2] absolutus est die Mercurii proxima post Exaltationem Sanctæ Crucis apud Kingestoniam a legato, præstito juramento juxta canonicas sanctiones standi judicio ecclesiæ. Sicque resignatis munitionibus quas tenebat, receptisque suis qui in vinculis tenebantur, et parte pecuniæ promissæ, circa festum Sancti Michaelis rediit ad sua cum suis. Lewis consents to make peace. Terms of peace. He is absolved Sept. 20 at Kingston; and goes home at Michaelmas.

Et erat pro miraculo quod primogenitus regis Francorum in[3] tanta multitudine armatorum in interiora regni admissus, occupata tanta parte regni, tot magnatibus partes ejus juvantibus, tam cito cum suis omnibus absque spe recuperationis regno est egressus, ne dicam ejectus. Sed causa in promptu est, quia manus Domini non erat cum eo, utpote qui contra sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ inhibitionem illuc venit, et sub sententia anathematis ibi moratus est. The victory a providential one.

Absoluto ut diximus domino Lodowico, exemplo ejus ad absolutionis beneficium confugerunt tam Londonienses quam proceres qui ex parte illa steterant; et sic regi [re]conciliati terras suas receperunt. Nam et hoc conditionibus comprehensum erat, ut nullus occasione hujus werræ exhæredetur, sed omnes in eodem sint statu quo fuerunt in initio ejus. Verum hoc tantum laicis concessum est. Nam clericos et præsertim beneficiatos sibi legatus reservans, hos degradavit, illos excommunicatos ad limina apostolorum transmisit, nullum in quantum inquirere potuit, impunitum præteriens, qui Lodowico aut ejus complicibus auxilium, consilium aut[4] favorem palam impendisset, vel qui sententias a domino papa vel a se latas non observasset. The Londoners are absolved and pardoned. The laity are gently treated, the clergy with severity.

---

[1] *plurimum*] erased in Gale.
[2] *primo*] primum, M., A.
[3] *in*] om. Gale.
[4] *aut*] an, M.

A.D. 1217. Henry comes to London.

Igitur post domini Lodowici recessum veniens rex Londonias, receptus est cum gloria, et factæ sunt ei fidelitates et hominia. Ibi a regis tutoribus regnique capitaneis, de regni ordinatione, de pacis stabilitate, de malis consuetudinibus abolendis, frequentes habebantur tractatus. Difficile quippe erat omnium desideriis cito satisfieri; tot dissidentium rancorem subito sedari; adhuc enim quasdam discordiarum reliquias in frequentibus exercuere torneamentis.

Translation of the bishop of Chichester.

Ricardus Cicestrensis episcopus ad sedem translatus est Saresbiriensem; successit ei Ranulphus monachus Norwicensis.

G.——MCCXVIII. MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 187 a.

A.D. 1218. Return of the archbishop.

Stephanus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis in Angliam est reversus, qui post generale concilium usque nunc [1] temporis in partibus Romanis est moratus.

Otho IV. dies.

Otho imperator quondam Romanorum obiit.

Simon de Montfort killed.

Simon de Monteforti comes in obsidione Tholosæ lapidis ictu percussus obiit.

Translation of S. Wulfstan, June 7.

Silvester episcopus Wigornensis ecclesiam cathedralem Wigorniæ dedicavit vii°. idus Junii; et ipso die corpus [beati] [2] Wlstani episcopi a terra levatum prope magnum altare ipsius ecclesiæ honorifice recondidit; præsentibus episcopis Wintoniensi, Saresbiriensi, Exoniensi, Cicestrensi et Herefordensi, et abbatibus plurimis [3] et magnatibus multis; et plebe multa tam clericorum quam laicorum.

The bishop of Worcester dies, June 15.

Qui post paululum in partes remotas profectus, ægritudinem incurrit, et ipsa invalescente apud Rameseie lecto decubuit, et infra paucos dies est defunctus xvii°. kalendas Julii. Corpus autem ejus cum magno provincialium dolore ad sedem propriam est delatum. Successit ei [4] magister Willelmus Blesensis archidiaconus de Bukingham.

Severity of the legate.

Gualo sedis apostolicæ legatus per diversas Angliæ provincias inquisitionem fecit de observatione interdicti per eum tempore werræ promulgati; pro cujus transgressione tam clericis quam religiosis varias et graves pœnas inflixit; quibusdam suspensis ab officio, aliis omnino beneficiis spoliatis, nonnullis tam insontibus quam reis gravi sua pecuniæ redimentibus quantitate.

Crusade.

Ranulphus comes Cestriæ, et Willelmus comes de Ferrariis, [5] et Johannes constabularius Cestriæ, cum aliis magnatibus

---

[1] *nunc*] tunc, M., A.
[2] *beati*] om. C., Gale.
[3] *plurimis*] pluribus, M., A.
[4] *ei*] in episcopatu, ins. M., A.
[5] *Willelmus . . . . . Ferrariis*] "Deest in Cotton," Gale; om. V.

Angliæ crucesignatis, peregrinationem suam versus Terram Sanctam arripuerunt. A.D. 1218. Crusade.

F.——MCCXIX.

Dictus[1] Gualo legatus Angliæ, vocatus a domino papa, Romam reversus est cum infinita pecunia, quocunque modo adquisita, destinato loco ejus in Angliam Pandulpho Nortwicensi electo. A.D. 1219. Gualo recalled; Pandulf succeeds.

Hugo episcopus Herefordensis obiit; successit ei Hugo Folioth archidiaconus Salopesbiriæ.

Willelmus Marescallus comes de Penbroc, et comes David frater Willelmi regis Scotiæ, scilicet comes de Huntingdone, obierunt.[2] Death of William Marshall.

Magister[3] Robertus de Eboraco ad episcopatum Eliensem electus suscepit et curam regiminis in temporalibus et spiritualibus, rege concedente et archiepiscopo confirmante. Qui postea cum archiepiscopo transfretavit, intendens ab ipso munus consecrationis accipere, sed impedimento casu interveniente ad concilium simul profecti sunt. Sed etiam quidam monachi de Ely Romam venientes pro Gaufrido archidiacono Norwicensi a quibusdam de Ely electo, consecrationem alterius ibidem impediebant. De assensu vero partium scripsit dominus papa abbati de Waltham et quibusdam aliis, qui indagatione facta super electione acta sibi renunciarent; sicque factum est quod utriusque electio quassata fuit coram summo pontifice, magistro R. itidem præsente personaliter cum procuratore dicti G. archidiaconi Norwicensis. Robert of York chosen bishop of Ely; opposed by a party of monks in favour of Geoffrey archdeacon of Norwich.

Postmodum[3] vero dominus papa scripsit domino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et Pandulpho legato Angliæ et Saresbiriensi, ut ecclesiæ de Ely virum idoneum providerent. Qui mandati formam prosequentes post varias altercationes[4] elegerunt in episcopum Johannem abbatem de Fontibus.[5] The pope orders a new appointment, and the abbot of Fountains is chosen.

Mense Novembris, nonis ejusdem [mensis], die videlicet præcedente festum beati Leonardi, intempestæ noctis silentio furtive et in via miraculose a Christianis capta est civitas Damieta, Damietta taken, Nov. 5.

---

[1] *Dictus*] om. M., A.

[2] *obierunt*] obiit, M., at the beginning of the sentence.

[3] *Magister . . . . . Postmodum*] Eodem anno quassata fuit a summo pontifice electio magistri R. de Eboraco, qui curam regiminis in temporalibus et spiritualibus, rege concedente et archiepiscopo confirmante, susceperat in episcopatu Eliensi, quassato similiter adversario suo G. archidiacono Norwicensi. Postmodum, &c., A.

[4] *altercationes*] alterationes, Gale.

[5] *Fontibus*] obiit Adam de Tillene archidiaconus Eliensis in festo Sancti Leonardi, ins. A.

A.D. 1219. November 5. Report of the capture of Damietta.

adeo quod in captione ejus nec unus ex Christianis interfectus fuit, nec etiam leviter vulneratus. De Saracenis vero tot ceciderunt in ore gladii, quod etiam Christianis displicuit; secundum tenorem litterarum domino papæ Honorio tertio transmissarum ex parte P. Albanensis episcopi tunc in exercitu Christianorum apostolicæ sedis legati, et ex parte R. patriarchæ, et Johannis regis Jerosolimorum, et ex parte Burdegalensis et Nichoforiensis archiepiscoporum, et ex parte magistrorum Templi et Hospitalis, et Randulfi comitis Cestriæ, et aliorum magnatum qui tunc primi in exercitu erant. Admiralis tamen et alii majores Saraceni, qui ad quandam munitissimam turrim confugerant, usque ad meridiem se reddere noluerunt, sperantes quod Soldani Babiloniæ et Damasci in castra Christianorum prosultum facerent: et si contingeret Christianos succumbere, ipsi per turrim illam civitatem recuperare sperabant. Sed totus exercitus Christianorum, præter paucos qui civitatem invaserunt, adeo currebant ad liceas et fossata quæ inter Christianos et Saracenos facta fuerant ad munitionem Christiani exercitus, quod Saraceni in castra Christianorum irruere nullatenus ausi fuerant. Facto autem mane die Martis, et vere Martis gloriosi, cum intellexissent præfati Soldani quod civitas capta esset, laniatis vestibus, injectis manibus in capillos, amarissime flentes, non de succursu sed de fuga cogitaverunt, timentes ne exercitus Christianus faceret insultum in eos. Et ut Christiani manifesto Divini favoris indicio lætarentur et confortarentur, cum caverent[1] ne ipsis civitatem intrantibus circumdans Saracenorum exercitus castra invaderet eorundem, fluvius ex una parte civitatem circumdans Divino nutu subito adeo inundavit, ut inaccessibilia reddiderit castra illa,[2] et manifeste patuerit quod pro Christicolis contra insensatos[3] ipsa elementa pugnabant. Plurimis aliis miraculis ibi factis, quæ longum esset per singula enarrare, tamen ad honorem sanctorum Angliæ quædam quæ ibi contigerunt hic inserere dignum duximus. Cum capta esset civitas a Christianis, archiepiscopi et episcopi fana[4] Maumeti quæ plura in ipsa civitate erant in ecclesias sanctorum consecraverunt, ad instantiam vero quorundam militum Anglorum qui ibi aderant, consecratæ sunt duæ ecclesiæ in honore duorum martyrum Anglicanorum,[5] scilicet Sancti Edmundi regis et martyris, et Sancti Thomæ archipræsulis Cantuariensis. Quidam vero

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 187 b.

Miraculous rising of the river.

The mosques consecrated: two in honour of English saints.

---

[1] *caverent*] timerent, A.

[2] *illa*] ipsa, M., A.

[3] *insensatos*] insentanos, C.

[4] *fana*] phana, MSS.; prophana, corr. Gale.

[5] *Anglicanorum*] Angliæ, M.; Angl., A.

miles egregius de Anglia,[1] dictus Ricardus de Argentonio,[2] infra ecclesiam beati Edmundi super parietem depingere fecit martyrium ejusdem. Contigit autem ut, die quadam inter sacra missarum sollemnia astante multitudine Christianorum, intraret quidam Flandrensis in eandem ecclesiam. Qui cum respiceret [ad] picturam passionis beati martyris, cerneretque effigiem corporis ipsius nudam et undique sagittarum densitate confossam, corpusque excapitatum, in verba blasphemiæ erga martyrem tali modo prorupit; "Nullus debet credere ipsum regem fuisse "qui tali morte et tam ignominiosa occisus fuerat." Hoc autem dicebat, quia Flandrenses exosum habent martyrem propter infortunium quod eis in Anglia tempore Henrici secundi regis Anglorum infra licias ipsius evenit. Sed ejus temerariam et probrosam præsumptionem Dei et martyris repentina subsecuta est ultio. Nam antequam de ecclesia ipsa egrederetur, lapis magnus, super caput ipsius cadens, ita illud attrivit ut semivivus remaneret ibidem; unde crevit ibi[3] timor et reverentia erga martyrem gloriosum.

A.D. 1219. November. Blasphemy of a Flemming against S. Edmund.

Punishment of the offender.

E. H. D.——MCCXX.

Sanctus Hugo de Avaluns, natione Burgundus, sextus a Remigio episcopo qui sedem episcopalem de Dorcestria[4] transtulit Lincolniam, a domino papa Honorio tertio canonizatus est. In hujus canonizatione mirum et quasi miraculum contigit, quod audita sanctitate vitæ ejus et miraculis ad ejus tumbam patratis, quæ coram venerabili patre Stephano Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et Johanne abbate de Fontibus, per sacramentum testium veridicorum examinata fuerant; idem papa omnibus in curia Romana existentibus inhibuit, ne quis eorum pro hoc negotio exsequendo aliquod munusculum præsumeret[5] accipere.

A.D. 1220. Canonization of Hugh of Lincoln.

Circa mediam Quadragesimam Pandulphus apostolicæ sedis legatus apud Londonias convocavit concilium archiepiscoporum, episcoporum, abbatum, et procerum Angliæ propter quædam negotia regis et regni. Ibidemque consecratus est Johannes abbas de Fontibus, Dominica media[6] Quadragesimæ, in episcopum Eliensem, a venerabili patre Stephano Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ministrantibus ei quibusdam ejusdem[7] ecclesiæ

Council at London at Midlent; (March 8) the bishop of Ely consecrated.

---

[1] *Anglia*] Anglis, Gale.

[2] *Argentonio*] Argentomio, M.; Argentein, A.

[3] *ibidem . . . ibi*] ibi . . . ibidem, M.

[4] *Dorcestria*] Dorkecestria, M.

[5] *præsumeret*] præsumerent, C., M.

[6] *media*] mediana, M., A.; corrected in C.

[7] *ejusdem*] ipsius, M., A.

A.D. 1220. March 25. Bishop of Ely enthroned.

suffraganeis. Idemque episcopus in sede sua positus est et[1] receptus die Annunciationis Dominicæ, quæ illo anno contigit feria quarta ante Pascha.[2]

April. Orders brought from Rome for the king's coronation.

Post octavas Paschæ iterum coadunatum est concilium apud Londonias, sicut in media Quadragesima; ubi Robertus quondam abbas de Torneya, sed propter quosdam excessus depositus, de Roma veniens, litteras domini papæ prædicto Pandulpho legato suo et Stephano Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, præcipiens mandavit, ut rex Henricus, regis Johannis primogenitus, secundum consuetudinem regni debita sollemnitate secundo in regem sublimaretur, quia coronatio ejus prima, propter regni turbationem et ejus intestinam divisionem, minus sollemniter quam debuit vel decuit, et in alio loco quam mos regni exigebat, facta fuerat. Dominus autem Cantuariensis, quia regem propter ipsius innocentiam affectuose diligebat, ex hoc mandato plurimum exhilaratus, cum consilio domini legati diem statuit in quo præceptum apostolicum exsequeretur, et honorem quem regi adoptaverat adimpleret. Dies vero statutus per universum regnum divulgatus est; præmonitique sunt et præmuniti tam ecclesiarum prælati quam proceres regni, ut ad sollemnitatem hanc perficiendam apud Londonias sine omni occasione cum debita regi reverentia occurrerent.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 188

Proclamation made for the ceremony.

May 17. Henry III. is crowned at Westminster.

In illo die igitur sacramentali, scilicet Pentecostes, in præsentia domini Pandulphi legati, Stephanus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, astantibus ejusdem ecclesiæ suffraganeis aliisque ecclesiarum prælatis, cum magnatibus regni plurimis, in ecclesia Sancti Petri Westmonasterii, a rege Henrico sacramentum exegit, scilicet quod ecclesiam Dei tueretur, pacemque tam cleri quam populi et bonas regni leges custodiret illæsas. Præstito itaque sacramento, archiepiscopus eundem regem schemate[3] et diademate sanctissimi regis Edwardi insignivit, anno ætatis ipsius tertio decimo non tunc ex toto completo. Coronatio autem ista regis cum tanta pace et munificentia facta est, quod hii qui interfuerunt ex senioribus procerum Angliæ asserebant, se nunquam aliquem prædecessorum suorum in tanta concordia et tranquillitate coronatum.[4]

He makes a progress and demands the surrender of his castles.

Rex igitur cito post coronationem apud Londonias factam, cum pædagogis suis per regnum suum peragravit, sciturus utrum hii quos pater suus in vita sua custodes munitionum per Angliam fecerat, easdem munitiones sibi tanquam domino cum tranquillitate reddere deliberassent. Contigit autem

---

[1] *positus . . . et*] om. M., A.
[2] *Pascha*] Parasceuen, M., A.
[3] *schemate*] regali, ins. A.
[4] *coronatum*] A word, probably *meminisse*, is wanting here to complete the sense.

quod in omni regno suo nullius munitionis ei negaretur ingressus, præterquam unius scilicet de Rokingham, quam Willelmus comes de Penbroc, marescallus Angliæ, custos regis et regni, ante obitum suum et ante coronationem istam regis Willelmo de Forz, comiti de Albemarlia, cum quibusdam aliis munitiunculis in custodiam tradiderat. Unde se in vita sua plurimum pœnituit propter querelas quæ emerserunt ex malefactis præfati comitis et ministrorum suorum in hoc castro et aliis existentium, et jacturas graves tam[1] divitibus quam pauperibus patriæ inferentium. Negato itaque sibi et suis hujus munitionis aditu, et ut dicebatur per præceptum comitis, regnum [per]turbare[2] molientis, ut postea patuit, dominus rex ad illam expugnandam se et suos præparavit. Unde ad summonitionem ipsius festinanter confluxerunt tam pauperes quam divites ex illo comitatu, læti effecti eo quod ab opprimentibus se sperabant liberari. Nec eos in[3] isto fefellit spes articulo. Hii etenim qui in[4] munitione erant videntes se in arto positos et quod sibi vires deficerent ad resistendum, ignominiose exeuntes liberum regi reliquerunt ingressum, in vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli. Eodem etiam [die][5] redditum est regi munitiunculum de Sauuee, quod idem comes ad patriæ detrimentum in custodia habuerat; positis autem custodibus in eisdem munitionibus ad patriæ securitatem et pacem, rex festinus apud Cantuariam iter direxit, quia instabat dies quo beati Thomæ, ejusdem civitatis archiepiscopi et martyris gloriosi, corpus de tumulo levaretur et in feretro decenter collocaretur.

A.D. 1220. June. William of Aumâle refuses to admit him into Rockingham.

He prepares to besiege it.

Flight of the garrison.

June 28. Sauvey castle taken.

The king goes to Canterbury.

Die igitur[6] proxima post octavas apostolorum, scilicet nonis Julii, quæ illo anno die Martis contigit, præsente domino Pandulpho apostolicæ sedis legato, et rege Anglorum Henrico iiii^to^, præsentibus etiam tribus archiepiscopis, scilicet, Remensi, Cantuariensi et uno de Ungeria,[7] astantibus decem et septem episcopis, sed et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis atque magnatibus, qui tam de Anglia quam de omnibus fere mundi partibus cum plebe innumerabili confluxerant, translatus est beatus Thomas martyr Cantuariensis archiepiscopus quintus ante venerabilem Stephanum qui ejus translationem procuravit, anno martyrii ipsius L^mo^. Convenienter autem provisum fuit ut quemadmodum ipse ante martyrium pro libertate ecclesiæ conflictus varios et eventus, die Martis sæpius variata, susti-

July 7. Translation of S. Thomas of Canterbury.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 188 b.

---

[1] *tam*] in, ins. M.
[2] *perturbare*] turbare, C.
[3] *in*] om. C.
[4] *in*] om. M.; ins. A.
[5] *die*] om. C.
[6] *igitur*] Dominica, ins., M.; om. A.
[7] *Ungeria*] Ungaria, M.

A.D. 1220. July 7.

nuerat, et sicut angeli in cœlis gavisi sunt die Martis de ejus martyrio, ita in terris populi undique confluentes exultarent de ejus corpore die Martis in feretro collocato.

Indulgences granted on the occasion.

Dominus vero papa omnibus qui in hac die translationis beati Thomæ[1] martyris ob reverentiam ipsius Cantuariam venerant, vel infra xv. dies sequentes venturi essent, xl. dies de injuncta pœnitentia relaxavit; similiter et legatus suus xl. dies, quilibet etiam trium archiepiscoporum xl., sed et singuli episcoporum xx. dies indulserunt. Computatis igitur summatim diebus, inventi sunt D^{ti} et xl^{a} dies.[2] De liberalitate autem et sumptuosa dapsilitate quam præfatus Stephanus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus [omnibus][3] ad martyris translationem devote venientibus, tam divitibus quam pauperibus, et tam advenis quam indigenis, mente hilari studuit prætendere, superfluum esset per singula enarrare. Sed ut [hoc][4] factum commendabile ei ad memoriam perpetuam ascribatur, nullus Anglorum tunc in carne vivens meminisse potuit ante ejusdem archiepiscopi tempora per aliquem prædecessorum ipsius talem in Anglia sollemnitatem fuisse celebratam, seu tantam multitudinem divitum et pauperum semel coadunatam. Idem vero Stephanus archiepiscopus, per consilium domini Pandulphi legati et archiepiscoporum et[5] episcoporum, cæterorumque prælatorum ecclesiæ, qui huic celebritati intererant, constituit ut dies translationis beati Thomæ martyris perpetuo tanquam dies Dominicus per Angliam festive celebretur.

The day made a festival for ever.

Return of the earl of Chester.

Ranulphus comes Cestriæ de Damieta rediit. In cujus obsidione se et suos cum expensis largissimis ob amorem Crucifixi viriliter et laudabiliter exposuerat. Unde coram Deo et hominibus gloriam et honorem sibi adquisivit.

Saer de Quency dies.

Saerus[6] de Quency comes Wintoniæ, cum Roberto filio Walteri et cum aliis ex Anglia apud Damietam post ejus captionem applicans, ibidem obiit.

Alexander abbas Sancti Augustini obiit.[7]

The archbishop goes again to Rome.

Stephanus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus propter quædam negotia Anglicanæ ecclesiæ Romam profectus est; et quia reliquias beati Thomæ martyris secum detulit, a domino papa Honorio et cardinalibus honorifice susceptus est, et antequam in ecclesiam ingrederetur, de beato Thoma ejusque corpore, jubente eodem papa, sermonem fecit ad populum.

---

[1] *Thomæ*] om. M., A.
[2] *dies*] om. M., A.
[3] *omnibus*] om. C.
[4] *hoc*] om. C.
[5] *et*] om. M.
[6] *Saerus*] Saerius, M.
[7] *obiit*] successit ei . . . de eadem ecclesia rege annuente electus, add. M., A.

Ricardus de Marisco Dunelmensis episcopus, de quibusdam excessibus tam a conventu Dunelmensis ecclesiæ quam a clero et populo ejusdem episcopatus apud dominum papam accusatus, curiam Romanam adire compulsus est.[1] A.D. 1220. The bishop of Durham goes to Rome.

Fredericus dominus Apuliæ, filius Henrici imperatoris et Constantiæ reginæ, qui Othone reprobato a domino papa Innocentio ad imperium electus fuerat, a domino papa Honorio coronatus est Romæ in imperatorem Dominica prima Adventus Domini, quæ illo anno contigit in vigilia Sancti Andreæ [apostoli,][2] scilicet iii°. kalendas Decembris. Frederick II. crowned emperor, Nov. 29.

C.——MCCXXI.

Post Natale Domini, Willelmus de Forz comes de Albemarlia, nondum satiatus de malignitate sua, sed tanquam canis ad vomitum, ita ad pristinam stultitiam reversus et pertinaciam, pacem regiam violenter et impudenter infregit. Hoc autem faciebat, ut dicebatur, per consilium plurimorum magnatum Angliæ tam indigenarum quam alienigenarum, qui plus regni perturbationem desiderabant quam pacem; et hii tamen occulti ut rei exitus postea declaravit. Comes itaque non contentus de malefactis quæ facta fuerant vel tunc ad præsens fiebant, per castellum de Biham,[3] quod ipse in werra prætenta injuste occupaverat, sed iniquitati adaugens iniquitatem, castellum de Fodringhe,[4] quod justitiarius Angliæ tunc in custodia habebat, inpræmunitis hiis qui intus erant, insidiose[5] occupavit, et tam in illa munitione quam in alia, scilicet de Biham, custodes posuit protervitatis ministros, qui et deprædationi patriæ imminerent, et sine ulla miseratione homines captos usque ad mortem cruciantes, guerram motam ex parte domini sui publice prædicarent. Et ut nomen suum magnifice extolleret, misit litteras sigillo suo signatas ad majores civitatum Angliæ, mandans, quasi solus dominaretur in regno, quod pacem suam omnibus mercatoribus ad negotiationes exercendas, et licentiam libere eundi et redeundi per castella sua concessisset. Sed frangens Deus omnem superbum, totam machinationem istam, de qua plurimam sperabat adquirere laudem, ei ad maximam vertit confusionem. Dominus namque legatus, in concilio quodam quod apud Londonias post octavas Epiphaniæ coadunaverat, cum septem episcopis, præfatum comitem et quosdam suorum nominatim, et generaliter omnes

A.D. 1221. William of Aumâle, holds the castle of Biham and seizes Fotheringay.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 189 a.

His usurpation of royal rights.

He is excommunicated in January.

---

[1] *compulsus est*] Blank of eight lines in A.

[2] *apostoli*] om. Gale.

[3] *Biham*] Byham, M.

[4] *Fodringhe*] Fordinghe, C.

[5] *insidiose*] insidione, C.

A.D. 1221. January. Mediation of the barons.

qui ejus in hoc facto coadjutores et consiliarii existerent, vel futuri essent, accensis candelis publice et sollemniter anathemati subjecit. Quod cernentes quidam regni proceres, et comitem ab errore suo revocare sperantes, ad reformandam pacem inter dominum regem et illum mediatores se exhibuerunt.

The earl of Chester promises to aid the king.

Sed illis inaniter laborantibus, comes Cestrensis, qui cum aliis proceribus in hoc concilio præsens aderat, audita comitis excommunicati et suorum obstinatione et violenta tam divitum quam pauperum deprædatione, multipliciter exacerbatus est, tum quia cernebat dominum suum regem propter ipsius juventutem contemptui haberi, tum propter castelli de Fodringhe,[1] quod jus hæreditarium erat nepotis sui, fraudulentam occupationem. Unde domino legato et regi fideliter promisit, quod omnes vires suas exponeret ad comitis præfati et suorum expugnationem. Sed et quamplures Angliæ magnates ipsius commendabilem audientes compromissionem fidelemque constantiam, pari modo ad regis obsequium se devoverunt, quia comes excommunicatus et sui a multo tempore exosi habebantur tam ab ecclesiasticis quam a sæcularibus personis, quibus damna et contumelias graves ingesserant, nullo existente qui errata corrigeret.

Jan. 25. Resignation of the bishop of London.

Ante recessum domini Pandulphi legati a Londoniis, die Conversionis beati Pauli, Willelmus de Sanctæ Mariæ Ecclesia, episcopus Londoniensis, in cathedrali ecclesia ejusdem civitatis resignavit episcopatum eidem legato, quoniam præ nimia senectute laborem diutius ferre non potuit.

The king marches against William of Aumâle, who flies into the north.

Rex igitur post concilium Londoniis habitum, comitante secum domino legato et quibusdam episcopis qui in comitem rebellem sententiam promulgaverant, confluentibus etiam ad eum tam comite Cestrensi quam aliis magnatibus, in manu valida ad comitem insequendum et perturbandum iter arripuit. Cernens itaque quod dominus suus rex simul cum regno et sacerdotio in ipsum certissime insurgeret, et quod hii quos complices fidissimos habere speraverat, sibi in consilio et auxilio deficerent, apud partes aquilonares citissime fugam iniit. Mente tamen induratus, reliquit post se in castello de Biham homines effrænatos, qui de castello de Fodringhe[2] ocius recedentes, securitati suæ consulere festinarunt. Cum ergo[3] exercitus regis cum machinis bellicis quamplurimis ad præfatum castellum obsidendum congregatus esset, admoniti sunt per proceres regni hii qui intus sese receperant, ut sine mora illud regi reddentes, se et sua illius misericordiæ per omnia

[1] *Fodringhe*] Fordringe, C.; Fodringhee, A.

[2] *Fodringhe*] Fodringe, Gale.

[3] *ergo*] vero, M.

subjicerent. Illis autem facere hoc renuentibus, dominus legatus una cum ecclesiarum prælatis ibidem existentibus, sententiam in comitem et complices suos Londoniis datam, coram toto exercitu renovavit, injungens tunc præsentibus vel postea venturis, in remissionem peccatorum suorum, ut in hoc negotio pro ecclesiæ honore et regni tranquillitate fideliter et viriliter se exercerent. Facto igitur ab exercitu unanimi insultu et machinis regiis irremediabiliter jacientibus, captum est castrum de Biham merito omnibus odiosum; et omnibus quæ infra illud inventa sunt igne consumptis, funditus eradicatum. Ministri vero comitis justo Dei judicio in hac munitione capti, sicut absque miseratione per aliquod tempus quamplures patriæ circumjacentes tam vinculis quam carceribus et aliis contumeliis afflixerant, et ita et ipsi[1] turpiter vinculati per diversa loca incarcerati sunt; hoc evangelico in eis evidenter adimpleto, "Eadem mensura qua mensi fueritis remetietur vobis."

A.D. 1221. The excommunication renewed.

Biham is taken and destroyed.

S. Matt. vii. 2.

Dominus Pandulphus legatus, resignato in manu sua episcopatu Londoniensi, præcepit canonicis ecclesiæ beati Pauli, ut de pastore sibi substituendo concorditer tractarent. Qui post multas altercationes in unum consentientes, feria vi^a. ante Dominicam primam Quadragesimæ, scilicet iiii^o. kalendas Martii, elegerunt ad regimen ejusdem ecclesiæ unum ex confratribus suis, scilicet Eustachium de Faucheberge,[2] domini regis thesaurarium; virum utique commendabilem et discretum. Impetratoque favore regio, a domino legato confirmata est ejusdem electio. Et quia dominus Cantuariensis nondum de Roma reversus fuerat, per præceptum præfati legati consecratus est idem electus in episcopatum Londoniensem, Dominica secunda post Pascha, qua cantatur *Misericordia Domini*, a tribus episcopis Batoniensi, Saresbiriensi et Roffensi, in ecclesia Sancti Petri Westmonasterii, quamvis monachi Cantuarienses inde præmuniti contra antiquam[3] et usitatam ecclesiæ suæ dignitatem illud fieri reclamarent.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 189 b.

Feb. 26. Eustace of Fauconberg chosen bishop of London.

Consecrated April 25.

Robertus abbas Sancti Kenelmi de Winchecumbe[4] obiit; cui successit[5] Thomas ejusdem cœnobii prior.

The abbot of Winchcomb dies.

Alexander rex Scotiæ, regis Willelmi filius, in civitate Eboraci duxit in uxorem Johannam primogenitam filiam Johannis regis Angliæ, sororem regis Henrici quarti; Waltero de Gray, præfatæ civitatis archipræsule, in præsentia plurimorum magnatum utriusque sollemnitatem illam exsequente.

The king of Scots marries the king's sister Johanna.

---

[1] *ipsi*] episcopi, M.

[2] *Faucheberge*] Fauchumberge, A.

[3] *antiquam*] aliquam, M.

[4] *Winchecumbe*] Wynchelcumbe, M.

[5] *cui successit*] successit ei, M., A.

A.D. 1221. The abbot of Abingdon dies.

Hugo abbas Sanctæ Mariæ de Abbendonia obiit; cui successit[1] Robertus ejusdem ecclesiæ monachus, per assensum regium de camerario in abbatem electus.

The abbot of Selby resigns; Richard succeeds.

Abbas Sancti Germani de Seleby resignavit eandem abbatiam propter senectutem suam, et propter difficultatem regendi domum illam et defendendi; cui successit[1] magister Ricardus, monachus ecclesiæ Sancti Benedicti de Rameseya, per communem electionem conventus de Seleby, rege Henrico annuente.

Misconduct of the pilgrims at Damietta.

Apud Damietam peregrini Christi commorantes, sed minus Christo servientes, despicabiles sunt effecti, quia a dextera ad sinistram declinantes, nimis facti sunt viles, iterando vias illicitas, et carnis curam perficiendo in desideriis. Unde, illorum meritis exigentibus, versus est in luctum chorus illorum. Nam mutata dextera Excelsi, civitas nefandis tradita est Saracenis circa[2] festum Assumptionis Beatæ[3] Mariæ. Sed non modico recreati sunt solatio, dum jactura illa recompensatur; salutiferæ crucis ligno eis reddito cum universis captivis, cujuscunque conditionis exstiterint, libertati restitutis.

Lam. v. 15. Ps. lxxvii. 10.

August. The city is recovered by the Saracens. Liberation of the captives.

August. Return of the archbishop.

Stephanus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, de Roma rediens, circa festivitatem Assumptionis Beatæ[3] Mariæ in Angliam applicuit; ante cujus ingressum Pandulphus Norwycensis electus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, præsentibus quibusdam archiepiscopi suffraganeis, apud Westmonasterium signa legationis suæ deposuit, et cito post ab Anglia recessit.

The legate resigns.

Hubert de Burgh marries.

Hubertus de Burch,[4] justitiarius totius Angliæ, duxit in uxorem Margaretam primogenitam Willelmi regis Scotiæ, sororem regis Alexandri.

September. The bishop of Winchester takes the cross.

Petrus de Roches Wintoniensis episcopus, quadam Dominica ante festum Sancti Michaelis, in cathedrali ejusdem civitatis ecclesia missam sollemniter celebrans, cruce se signavit; pluresque ejus familiares, exemplo ipsius provocati, eodem signo se signari fecerunt.

Peter de Mauley makes his peace with the king.

Petrus de Maule,[5] Pictavus natione, qui a rege Johanne castellum de Corf cum maxima thesauri summa in custodiam acceperat, de proditione regis Henrici irretitus, et ab eodem in festo Pentecostes captus, in quodam colloquio ab archiepiscopo et episcopis regnique proceribus Londoniis habito, in misericordia regis se ponens, cum eodem pacificatus est,

---

[1] *cui successit*] successit ei, M., A.

[2] *circa*] circiter, M.

[3] *Beatæ*] Sanctæ, M.

[4] *Burch*] Burche, A.

[5] *Maule*] Mauley, M., A.

accusatoribus ipsius de probatione erga eum mota resipiscentibus. A.D. 1221.

B.——MCCXXII.

Post octavas Epiphaniæ Stephanus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis adunavit episcopos et proceres Angliæ apud Londonias propter quasdam simultates et dissensiones ortas inter Randulphum[1] comitem Cestriæ et Willelmum Saresbiriensem regis patruum et Hubertum de Burch justitiarium Angliæ. Dicebatur enim, et plures per Angliam suspicantes prædicabant, quod alienigenæ, qui plus regni perturbationem desiderabant quam pacem, præfatum comitem Cestriæ ad domini sui regis infestationem et regni inquietationem inducere conarentur. Comes vero Saresbiriensis et justitiarius, regis rectores et regni, ad resistendum viriliter se cum sequela sua præparabant. Dominus etiam Cantuariensis regis juventutem miseratus et impotentiam, cum consilio suffraganeorum suorum, in regni perturbatores et regis impugnatores gladium spiritualem vibrare comminatus est. Unde ad ipsius et episcoporum instantiam utraque pars ad concordiam et pacem revocata est.

A.D. 1222. January. Council at London to make peace among the barons.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 190 a.

The disturbers of peace threatened with excommunication.

Celebratum est concilium provinciale apud Oxoniam a domino Stephano Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, cum episcopis suffraganeis et abbatibus, in conventuali ecclesia de Oseneya, in xv. dies post Pascha: ubi quædam instituta concilii generalis sub Innocentio papa celebrati, cum quibusdam adjectionibus pro emendatione cleri et populi, sollemniter sunt recitata et promulgata. Sacerdos quidam et diaconus ibi degradati fuerunt in ecclesia coram concilio a domino Cantuariensi; sacerdos pro homicidio perpetrato, diaconus pro sacrilegio et furto commisso. Diaconus vero alius enormius delinquendo, [quoniam][2] Christianæ religionis professionem abnegavit, et blasphemando atque apostatando circumcidi fecit se, Judæorum ritum imitando, extra ecclesiam fuit degradatus a dicto[3] domino Cantuariensi coram populo, et post degradationem relictus a clero, velut laicus et apostata captus, traditur judicio curiæ laicalis condemnandus. Qui statim incendio traditus morte miserabili hac luce est privatus.

April 17. Provincial council at Osney.

Degradation of a priest and two deacons.

An apostate deacon burnt.

In degradatione sacerdotis et diaconorum, cum dominus Cantuariensis casulam vel stolam vel aliud quid baculi pastoralis extremitate sublevando amoveret, hiis verbis usus est, "Exautoramus te." Ductus est ibi in concilio laicus quidam

Method of degradation.

---

[1] *Randulphum*] Radulphum, Gale.

[2] *quoniam*] om. C.

[3] *dicto*] om. M.

A.D. 1222. April. Council at Osney.

qui se crucifigi permisit, in quo omnia cicatricum vulnera, vestigia in manibus et pedibus et latere perforatis, et in capite, apparuerunt. Adducta est cum eo mulier quædam, quæ se appellari fecit Mariam matrem Christi, nomine suo proprio mutato, quæ quibusdam dedit intelligi quod missam celebrare potuit, sicut per indicia quædam reperta probavit, quia calicem et patenam ex cera ad talem usum composuit. Hiis duobus concilium pœnam inflixit condignam, ut muris lapideis inclusi vitam ibi terminarent.[1]

The abbot of Westminster dies.

Willelmus abbas Westmonasterii obiit; cui successit Ricardus prior ejusdem loci.[2]

A.——MCCXXIII.

A.D. 1223. Death of Philip of France.

Ranulphus episcopus Cicestrensis obiit; cui successit Radulphus de Nevile. Philippus rex Franciæ viam universæ carnis ingressurus, Terræ Sanctæ non immemor effectus, legavit Templo et Hospitali pecuniam videlicet permagnam:[3] cui successit in regno primogenitus suus Lodowicus. Johannes de Brethnes rex Jerosolimorum applicuit in Angliam circa festum Nativitatis beatæ Mariæ, ibique aliquamdiu moram faciens, et Terræ Sanctæ subsidia procurans, a regali munificentia repatriando munera secum detulit copiosa in auro et argento, cum donis largissimis ab archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus atque baronibus sibi collatis.

September. The king of Jerusalem visits England.

Aid for the Holy land.

Provisum est communi consilio regni ad Terræ Sanctæ succursum, ut a singulis comitibus tres marcæ darentur, a singulis baronibus una marca, a singulis militibus xii. denarii, et a singulis domos habentibus i. denarius.

Deaths and successions.

Magister Rogerus de Rollestone decanus Lincolniensis obiit. Pandulphus consecratus est in episcopum Norwicensem. Willelmus de Cornhill episcopus Cestriæ obiit; successit magister Alexander de Staneby.[4]

G.——MCCXXIIII.[5]

A.D. 1224. The king resumes his castles.

Henricus rex Angliæ, cum ad annos discretionis pervenisset, ut de regno suo disponeret, consilio fretus subtiliori, castella multa, ab alienigenis et indigenis pluribus diu detenta, ad

---

[1] *terminarent*] indignam terminarent et infelicem, A., M.

[2] *loci*] obiit Ranulfus episcopus Cicestrensis. Cui successit Radulfus de Nevilla. A.

[3] *videlicet permagnam*] permagnam videlicet, with a blank for the sum, M.; so also A.

[4] *Staneby*] Stavenebi (Stavenebi), A.

[5] Demolitio castri de Bedeforde; C. in marg.

suum revocavit dominium. Habebat enim eos suspectos, et verebatur per illos sibi damna irrogari immania, si eorum potestas, qui præsidia tenebant, moram caperet prolixiorem, sicut postea experimento probavit. Nam hii qui erant regi suspecti hoc facto plurimum indignantes, et moleste nimis ferentes propter præsidia sibi ablata, terrore confusi sunt. Nec tamen eorum malitia sedata est. Nam Falcasius de Breaute, Normannus natione, quem pro strenuitate virilis obsequii Johannes rex Angliæ a satellite paupere in militem cum aliis sublimavit, et postea comiti parificavit, donando illi comitissam de Wyth, cum videret statum suum supra modum subito prosperatum, dedignabatur [habere] parem; erat enim ei persæpe in operibus frequentibus pro ratione voluntas. Tantam igitur[1] gerebat confidentiam in pecuniæ thesauris qualicunque sorte adunatis, et in castris murorum ambitu studiose muratis, et armorum et hominum copiis munitis, ut regnum Angliæ turbare præsumeret. Dicebatur a nonnullis, quod ipse cum suis fautoribus Francorum regi Lodowico suggessit, ut Pictaviam invaderet, et ut hoc libere et[2] sine metu et periculo attentaret, promisit quod regem Angliæ Henricum circa tam urgentissima negotia in medio terræ suæ adeo redderet occupatum, quod terras transmarinas militaribus copiis relinqueret destitutas, et dum pluribus esset intentus minus sufficeret ad singula. Interim Willelmus de Breaute, frater ipsius Falcasii, qui ex parte Falcasii præfuit castro illo nobili Bedefordiæ, quod arte, opere, et opera Falcasii studiosa credebatur inexpugnabile, et de jure spectabat ad Willelmum de Bello Campo, assumptis secum satellitibus, justitiarium domini regis itinerantem H. de Braibroc, cum aliquibus suorum vi captum, in dicto castro conjecit in vinculis. Unde ei regis ira vehementer accensa est, et communicato consilio cum proceribus, qui tunc temporis apud Northamptoniam convenerant, quinto die ante Nativitatem Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, ad præfatum præsidium cum ingenti properat multitudine, machinas et tormenta jaculatoria, quibus obsessa solent flagellari præsidia, secum deferens, castris circumpositis, locum obsidione vallavit; ubi plures fuerunt Falcasii fautores, sed ficte. Rex igitur, locata circa dictum oppidum obsidione, more hostili machinis frequentibus et ordine congruo dispositis, turres concutit et mœnia debilitat; sed non sine cæde magna nobilium suorum et plebis, ab illis qui intus se receperant illata. Nec mirum. Nam qui obsessi erant, omnino adversantibus, omnino resistere certatim student, et missilium imbre passim nocent et necant.

A.D. 1224. Discontent created among the barons.

Fawkes de Breauté.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 190 b.

His rise in the world.

He negotiates treasonably with France.

His brother William imprisons one of the king's justices at Bedford.

June 20. The barons meet at Northampton and proceed to the siege of Bedford.

---

[1] *igitur*] siquidem, M., A. | [2] *et*] om. Gale.

A.D. 1224. June. Siege of Bedford.

Perpenderant utique obsidentium augeri exercitum, viresque robur assumere; nam majores habentes numeros qui alternatim sibi succedere præcipiebantur, eos qui unde vires repararent penitus non habebant, ad defectum anxietatibus quotidianis compellebant. Tandem post congressus varios ad invicem habitos, obsessi quamvis inviti se dediderunt,[1] regalibus in eos viriliter irruentibus. Capto igitur castro in Assumptione beatæ

Aug. 15. Bedford taken.

[Virginis][2] Mariæ, fere omnes in eo repertos, tam milites quam servientes, vita privavit sententia ignominiosa. Nam jussu regio circiter lxxx^a. in patibulis sunt suspensi. Uxor dicti Falcasii custodiæ committitur comitis Waranniæ,[3] et aliæ mulieres in custodia liberantur. Sed nec sic penitus ira regis deferbuit, quin castrum dirutum terræ coæquaret. Præfatus Falcasius cum a pluribus se persequi videret, et facultas fugiendi ei denegaretur, perpendens longas regibus esse manus, posuit se in misericordia domini regis apud Alnestowe, ibique commissus fuit custodiæ episcopi Londoniensis, usque ad concilium apud Londonias celebrandum in xv. dies post festum Sancti Michaelis proximo sequens. Ubi publice facta abjuratione de regressu in Anglia, transfretavit, et applicuit apud Fescamp;[4] ibique captus adductus est ad regem Francorum Lodowicum, præcepto cujus incarceratus est apud Compendium, nec absolutus donec de mandato apostolico regi Franciæ destinato restitui meruisset libertati.

Fawkes puts himself at the king's mercy; abjures the realm and is imprisoned at Compiegne.

Aid granted by the clergy during the siege of Bedford.

In obsidione Bedefordiæ provisum fuit de quodam auxilio regi faciendo per dominum Stephanum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum ejusque suffraganeos et abbates ibi moram facientes; videlicet de singulis carucis episcoporum atque abbatum tenentium in baronia, simul et hominum suorum, dimidium marcæ; et a singulis carucis abbatum atque priorum non tenentium in baronia, et hominum suorum, ii. solidi darentur. Et ne hujus auxilii occasione aliqua consuetudo indebita possit oriri in posterum, dominus rex cartam suam singulis dedit episcopatibus sub hac forma;

Letter of Henry III. Aug. 18.

[5] "Henricus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, dominus Hiberniæ, comes
" Andegaviæ, omnibus ad quos præsens scriptum pervenerit,
" salutem. Cum propter graves et manifestos excessus Fal-
" casii de Breaute, quibus nos et regnum nostrum multiplici- MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 191
" ter perturbavit, de consilio fidelium nostrorum castrum de
" Bedefordia obsideremus, venerabilis pater Stephanus Can-
" tuariensis archiepiscopus, totius Angliæ primas, et sanctæ
" Romanæ ecclesiæ cardinalis, et suffraganei sui qui nobis-

---

[1] *dediderunt*] dederunt, A.
[2] *Virginis*] om. C.
[3] *Waranniæ*] Warennæ, M.
[4] *Fescamp*] Fescampe, M.
[5] Printed in the *Fœdera*, I. 175, from Pat. 8 Hen. III. m. 4.

" cum venerunt ad exercitum, aliique prælati Cantuarienses, A.D. 1224. Aug. 18.
" sola ducti devotione qua sui gratia nos fuerant amplexati, The clergy have granted him an aid.
" de mera gratia et liberalitate sua auxilium nobis provide-
" runt faciendum, ad tantos excessus fortius et facilius corri-
" gendum, ordinantes per se ipsos, ut singuli dictorum archi-
" episcopi, episcoporum et aliorum prælatorum, qui separatas
" habent portiones a conventibus suis, a singulis carucis
" terrarum quas tenent in dominico darent nobis dimidium
" marcæ, item de carucis militum et libere tenentium et rus-
" ticorum prædictorum archiepiscopi et suffraganeorum suo-
" rum [1] et aliorum prælatorum memoratorum; et de carucis
" similiter eorum qui tenent de dictis militibus et libere tenenti-
" bus ipsorum, duo solidi nobis conferentur; de carucis etiam
" abbatum, priorum et aliorum prælatorum qui non habent
" separatas portiones a conventibus suis, et militum, libere
" tenentium, et rusticorum suorum, et similiter de carucis
" eorum qui tenent de dictis militibus et libere tenentibus,
" darentur nobis duo solidi; præterea de sola gratia et mera
" liberalitate sua concesserunt quod de dominicis et feodis
" suis venirent in exercitum ad trahendum ingenia et ad alia
" negotia quantum in ipsis esset expedienda, quæ ad ex-
" pugnandum castrum necessaria viderentur. Qui quidem per He hears that compulsion has been used.
" ballivos nostros alicubi infra libertates ecclesiæ et ipsorum
" prælatorum, aliter quam hactenus fieri consueverit, sum-
" moniti fuerunt, et compulsi ut accepimus ad hoc faciendum.
" Nos igitur nolentes occasione gratiæ et liberalitatis nobis, The king declares that this measure shall not be a precedent to their prejudice.
" ut diximus, impensæ, ecclesiæ Dei vel archiepiscopo vel
" aliis prælatis prædictis vel successoribus suis, terris, feodis
" vel hominibus eorum præjudicium libertatis suæ vel grava-
" men aliquod unquam generari, nec gratiam nobis sic ex-
" hibitam ad debitum vel consuetudinem posse retorqueri,
" omnia præmissa per has litteras nostras patentes protestamur
" ex sola gratia et liberalitate processisse, et hoc nunquam
" occasione prædicta in consuetudinem trahi posse vel debere.
" Et in hujus rei testimonium, etc.[2]

" Teste me ipso apud Bedeforde xviii°. die Augusti, anno
" regni nostri viii°., præsentibus Huberto de Burgo [3] et aliis.

---

[1] *suorum*] eorum, C.

[2] *etc.*] has litteras nostras patentes inde fieri fecimus, et sigillo nostro signari, add. M., V.

[3] *Burgo*] justitiario nostro; Willelmo comite Saresbiriæ Willelmo comite Warennæ; G. comite Gloucestriæ et Hertfordiæ; W. de Mandevilla comite Essexæ; H. Bigot; H. comite Herefordiæ; H. Warrwici; J. constabulario Cestriæ; W. Briwer; P. filio Hereberti; W. de Albineio; T. de Multona; J. de Menemue; Roberto de Curtenay; J. filio Roberti; Ricardo de Munfichet; W. de Lancastre; P. de

E.——MCCXXV.

A.D. 1225. Feb. 2. Council at London: the king confirms the charters and the council grant a fifteenth.

In Purificatione beatæ Mariæ convocantur apud Londonias proceres Angliæ; ibique tractatu habito diffusiore cum clero et populo ibidem convocato, rex concessit libertates tam ecclesiæ quam regni quam forestæ,[1] sicut cartæ suæ inde confectæ, et singulis comitatibus liberatæ, plenius testantur. Ibidemque concessa est domino regi a comitibus et baronibus et clero et populo ibidem præsentibus, quintadecima omnium mobilium de communi assensu, præterquam de ecclesiis. Et hoc negotium dominus papa plurimum expediebat, qui pro competenti auxilio regi faciendo scribebat sub hac forma;

Feb. 3. Letter of the pope approving of the grant to the king.

"Honorius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus "fratribus archiepiscopis, episcopis, et dilectis filiis abbatibus, "præpositis et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis atque rectoribus per "regnum Angliæ constitutis, salutem et apostolicam bene- "dictionem. Cum ecclesia sæcularium principum in neces- "sitatibus sponte communicat, necessarium eis subsidium "liberaliter impendendo, non est libertatis ecclesiæ præjudi- "cium, sed officium potius caritatis. Cum ergo carissimus in "Christo filius noster rex Anglorum illustris vestræ sub- "ventionis auxilio dicatur quam plurimum indigere; univer- "sitatem vestram rogamus et hortamur attentius, ac per "apostolica scripta vobis mandamus, quatenus juxta facul- "tates ecclesiarum vestrarum competens ei subsidium im- "pendatis; proviso ut in singulis diocesibus congrue fiant "hac de causa collectæ, et quæ collecta fuerint, sub litteris "testimonialibus diocesani episcopi et aliquorum abbatum "aliorumve prælatorum diocesis, assignentur viris fidelibus "et discretis, quos hujus curæ videritis computandos: ipsi- "que illa illibata conservent donec deliberato consilio expen- "dantur, ubi, quando et quomodo regi et regno videbitur "amplius expedire. Unde quemadmodum de receptis sicut "litteras testimoniales recipient, de redditis vel expensis, "quatenus [omnis] suspicionis[2] tollatur occasio. Et collecta "pecunia non in superfluas et inutiles prodigatur expensas, "sed in necessarias et utiles provide[3] convertatur. Nolumus "autem quod hæc vestra gratia, vestraque caritativa sub- "ventio, trahatur in consequentiam vel exemplum. Vestra "ergo sollicitudo provideat ut hæc fiant hilariter, fideliter et

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 191 b.

Ruis; Ricardo de Percy; Willelmo de Ros, et aliis, ins. M., V., A. After this a rubric in A.—De auxilio quintædecimæ pro libertatibus habendis.

[1] *forestæ*] forestarum, M.

[2] *suspicionis*] suspicationis, M.

[3] *provide*] om. A.

" diligenter, quod vestra caritas et prudentia ex hoc merito " debeat commendari. Datum Laterani iii° nonas Februarii, " pontificatus nostri anno nono." A.D. 1225. Feb. 3.

Sumens igitur dominus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis originem hujus negotii prosequendi, sic suis scripsit suffraganeis; The archbishop directs the bishops to urge their clergy to grant an aid from the sources on which the fifteenth has not been levied.

" Stephanus Dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, etc. " Cum necesse sit obtemperare mandatis domini papæ, et " honestum domino regi in suis necessitatibus liberaliter sub- " venire, fraternitatem vestram in Domino commonemus quatenus omnes viros religiosos vestræ diocesis, cujuscunque " sint ordinis, necnon et clericos vestros, quanta poteritis dili- " gentia moneatis et inducatis, ut, cum fuerint requisiti, com- " petens auxilium faciant domino regi de hiis de quibus " quintamdecimam non dederunt, secundum formam mandati " apostolici, ut sic necessitatem transferant in virtutem, et " tam dominus papa quam rex ipse liberalitatem eorum possit " et debeat merito commendare. Valete in Domino. Ad hæc " vobis mando quatenus quintamdecimam de archidiaconatu " vestro collectam per vos tuto et salvo deponi faciatis donec " super præmissis aliud[1] receperitis mandatum. Valete."

Cum igitur rex benigne et hilariter libertates concessisset,[2] comites et barones vice versa unanimi consensu cleri et populi quintamdecimam omnium mobilium concesserunt, præterquam de equitaturis et carectariis, et armis et granariis,[3] lardariis, vasis, utensilibus, lapidibus, jocalibus, et libris clericorum et ornamentis ecclesiarum. Et ad hanc quintamdecimam fideliter solvendam obligati sunt per sententiam archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores, comites, barones et milites, universique alii[4] et singuli utriusque sexus, præterquam de ordine Cisterciensi et Præmonstratensi[5] et Templariorum et Hospitalariorum. Mercatores vero de omnibus mercandiis suis quindecimaverunt, præterquam de stauro domus et victualibus. Archiepiscopus autem et episcopi omnes excommunicaverunt in æstimatione quintædecimæ fraudem facientes, vel eam impedientes, cujus medietas in festo Sanctæ Trinitatis soluta fuit, et alia medietas in festo Sancti Michaelis. Account of the fifteenth. Classes of contributors Excommunication of defrauders.

Johannes Eliensis episcopus obiit; successit Gaufridus de Burgo archidiaconus Norwycensis. The bishop of Ely dies.

Provisum est a domino papa, consilio et assensu cardinalium et aliorum magnatum imperii Romani, quod imperator Henri- Crusade determined.

---

[1] *aliud*] om. M.

[2] *concessisset*] concessit, M., A.

[3] *granariis*] et, ins. M., A.

[4] *universique alii*] et alii universi, M., A.

[5] *Præmonstratensi*] Præmonasterii, M., A.

A.D. 1225. Proposed arrangements for the Crusade.

cus transibit in subsidium Terræ Sanctæ ab instanti Augusto[1] in duos annos, et per biennium tenebit ibi mille milites ad suum; ita quod si aliquis de ipso numero statuto tempore deesse contigerit, l. marcis per annum defectus militis redimetur: pecuniam autem de hujusmodi redemptione collectam ipse imperator, si ibi fuerit, ad testimonium et consilium regis et patriarchæ Jerosolimorum ac magistri domus Alemannorum et aliorum proborum virorum de terra, ibidem ad servitium Jesu Christi expendet in usus eosdem vel alios, ubi eis magis visum fuerit expedire. Quod si aliquo casu ipsum imperatorem contigerit tunc abesse, memorata pecunia in prædictorum regis et patriarchæ et magistri domus Alemannorum manibus deponetur, per ipsos in Terræ Sanctæ negotia expendenda. Passagium dabit, si venerint in primo passagio, vel in duobus sequentibus passagiis, duobus millibus militum et familiis eorundem, et pro milite duobus equis: ducet secum centum scelendros; et tenebit l. galeas similiter per totum biennium, si necesse fuerit, bona fide armatas. Quod si aliquo tempore illius biennii non esset necesse illas teneri, vel forsan non possent inveniri homines necessarii apparatui eorundem, æstimabuntur fideliter sumptus illi qui in eis tenendis necessarii haberentur, si tenerentur armati eodem modo quo debuissent armari; et tantundem in pecunia memorata persolvet in ipsius terræ negotio expendendum, eodem modo per omnia quod superius de l. marcis militum est expressum. Præterea deponet in manibus prædictorum regis et patriarchæ ac magistri et fratrum domus Alemannorum centum millia unciarum auri, vel æquivalentiam in argento, hiis terminis persolvenda; in instanti passagio Augusti xx. millia; in subsequenti passagio Martii xx. millia; sequenti passagio Augusti xx. millia; alia xl. millia in duobus sequentibus passagiis Martii et Augusti anni secundi; ita quod partes memoratæ pecuniæ, persolutæ per terminos antedictos, ultra mare in singulis passagiis deportentur. Sin vero in aliquo termino plus solverit quam superius est expressum, tanto minus tenebitur persolvere passagio subsequenti. Quando autem ipsum in biennio ad passagium assignatum transfretare continget, reddentur ei dicta c. millia unciarum ad expendendum in servitio Jesu Christi et Terræ Sanctæ. Et si eum, quod Deus avertat, in terra illa vel citra ante passagium memoratum obire contigerit, vel alias quacunque de causa forsitan non transierit, rex et patriarcha et

Provisions in case of the emperor's absence.

His share in the equipment.

His share in the expenditure.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 192 a.

[1] The treaty of which an abstract is here given was signed by Frederick at San Germano in July 1225, and may be seen at length in Raynaldus *ad annum*; in Pertz, *Mon. Hist. Germ.* iv. 255, and in the *Historia Diplomatica Frederici II.*, vol. ii., p. 501.

magister domus Alemannorum prædicti, ad laudem et consilium magistrorum Hospitalis et Templi, ac aliorum proborum hominum de terra, expendent eandem pecuniam bona fide, sicut melius viderint expedire utilitati Terræ Sanctæ, in servitio Jesu Christi et terræ, pro salute animæ imperatoris et antecessorum suorum. Si vero, quod absit, infra præscriptum terminum passagio assignatum quicquam de ipso humanitus acciderit; et si quid vel aliqua forte deficerent de hiis quæ superius sunt expressa et promissa; regnum suum Siciliæ remanebit ad ea omnia obligatum; ita quod quicunque illud tenebit ea integra tenebitur adimplere. Ipse autem imperator juravit personaliter, quod transibit ultra mare in subsidium Terræ Sanctæ in passagio suprascripto. Et vir illustris R. dux Spoleti in anima ipsius imperatoris juravit ipsum imperatorem firmiter et fideliter servaturum reliqua omnia sicut superius sunt expressa. Exnunc autem lata est sententia excommunicationis, in quam ipse incidet imperator, si non in passagio suprascripto vel non duxerit et tenuerit secum mille milites, vel non miserit præscriptam pecuniam sicut superius est expressum. Si autem defecerit in aliquibus vel in aliquo cæterorum, ecclesia Romana sententiabit in ipsum et in terram suam de spontaneo et jam præstito consensu imperatoris ejusdem, quod si in alicujus termini solutione defecerit, lata sententia teneatur astrictus, ita quod si, post annum elapsum, per testimoniales litteras eorum qui pro rege ac patriarcha et magistro Hospitalis Alemannorum ad recipiendum statutis terminis ipsam pecuniam statuentur, ecclesiæ Romanæ constiterit ipsum de hujusmodi satisfecisse defectu, statim super illo articulo absolvetur, nec super aliis occasione illius sententiæ gravabitur ullo modo. De hiis autem omnibus fecit imperator ecclesiæ Romanæ litteras suas patentes aurea bulla munitas.

A.D. 1225.
In case of his death or absence, the kingdom of Sicily is bound.
Oaths taken on the emperor's part.
Sentence in case of neglect.
Publication of these terms.

Querimonia Falcasii coram domino papa.[1]

Falcasius Romam profectus[2] talem coram domino papa et cardinalibus deposuit querimoniam. "Cum post tempus hostilitatis in Anglia habitæ, tam a domino Guala quam de "regni consuetudine, custodia castrorum et rerum domini "regis singulis baronibus qui videbantur idonei fuerint "deputata, justitiario prout moris est personam regis et "sigillum una cum domino Wintoniensi regente, cui episcopo

Complaint of Fawkes de Breauté to the pope.

[1] *Querimonia*] Printed by Mr. Stevenson in his Appendix to the Chronicle of Lanercost.

[2] *Romam profectus*] Romæ præfectus, C.

A.D. 1225. He details the arrest of Peter de Mauley at Whitsuntide, 1221.

" ipsa regis persona commissa fuerat gubernanda, tandem " dicto episcopo ad Sanctum Jacobum causa peregrinationis " profecto, dictus justitiarius cum complicibus suis procuravit, " ut dominus rex apud Wintoniam die Pentecostes curiam " celebraret; ad quam vocari fecit dominum Petrum de " Maule,[1] qui quam fideliter et constanter domino regi et " patri suo servierit, testimonium exstat et domini Gualæ et " omnium illorum qui sciunt quæ fidelitas in rebus sit " adversis et prosperis exhibenda. Cumque dictus dominus " Petrus ad ipsius domini regis mandatum sicut vir bonus " debuit accessisset, et sumpta in ipsius curia comestione MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 192 b. " sollemni, vocatus fuerit in cameram domini regis tanquam " ibi de aliquibus secretis esset tractandum; ibi interpellatus " est tanquam proditor regis, et quod fœdus cum domino " rege Franciæ pepigisset, certa assignata causa certisque " illatis circumstantiis, ex quibus proditionem quam falso

Statement of his alleged treason.

" confinxerant probabilem et claram esse dicebant; videlicet " quod ipse dominus Petrus dominam Helionorem[2] sororem " Arturi promisit tradere in manu regis Franciæ, paratamque " sibi navem esse dicebant per Wintoniensem episcopum, qui " licet ut prædictum est causa peregrinationis profectus sit, " ad hoc tamen de regno Angliæ dicebatur exisse, ut dictum " fœdus sive proditionem inter ipsum Petrum et regem " Franciæ proloqueretur; unde occasionem sumentes tam " dictus justitiarius quam ejus complices præfatum dominum " Petrum tot injuriis, probris, impulsionibus, scissura vestium, " ac demum proprii corporis incatenatione, lacessere ausi " sunt, ut difficilius sit hominibus bene compositis audire

He was compelled to resign his castles.

" quam narrare. De qua captione non ante dictus nobilis " evadere potuit, quam ea castra quæ sibi tam a domino " Guala, quam etiam a patre domini regis[3] commissa fuerant, " restitueret contra pristinum[4] juramentum quod patri fecerat " de non restituendis eisdem castris, donec iste rex legitimæ " foret ætatis. Cum autem[5] Wintoniensis episcopus de parti- " bus Hispaniæ esset reversus, ipsumque regem post excessum

The king began to lean entirely on the justiciar.

" pupillaris ætatis a sua fateretur custodia liberatum, propterea " quod probare non poterat ut rex[6] talibus applicaretur studiis " ad quæ per quosdam æmulos trahebatur, cœpit idem rex " justitiarii complicumque suorum consiliis inhærere.

---

[1] *Maule*] Mauley, M.; omitted in Stevenson's copy; ins. A.

[2] *Helionorem*] Elienoram, M.; Helionoram, A.

[3] *regis*] regis, ins. M.

[4] *pristinum*] præstinum, C., corrected by Gale to *præstitum*.

[5] *autem*] dominus, ins. M., A.

[6] *rex*] res, C., M.

"Postmodum cum a sede apostolica jussio processisset ut A.D. 1225.
" castra, balliæ, et cætera quæ sunt regis, a cunctis tenentibus Walter de Lacy and Ralph Musard compelled to surrender their castles.
" redderentur, adjecta clausula quod rex ipse jam adultus
" factus, compelli non posset habere tutorem vel curatorem,
" nisi ad causam, invitus; dictus justitiarius et complices sui
" a fundamentis conceptæ nequitiæ nullatenus recedentes,
" procuraverunt ut duo barones ad regis curiam vocarentur,
" scilicet Walterus de Lascy et Radulfus Musard, quorum
" fidelitas pro ipso rege in omnibus fuit approbata; quibus
" cum accessissent non antea recedere[1] licuit quam castra
" quæ causa custodiæ tenebant, dicto justitiario assignarent.
" Quo audito, fideles domini regis, videlicet comes Cestriæ, The earls of Chester, Gloucester, and Aumâle attempted to get an interview with the king to complain of the justiciar.
" comites Gloucestriæ et Albemarliæ, quorum sigilla fuerunt
" vobis exhibita per nuncios eorundem, indignati fuerunt,
" tam pro utilitate ipsius regis quam[2] pro ipsorum et regni
" salute, timentes ne si dictus rex ad talia paulatim studia
" raperetur, singuli barones qui fideliter regi servirent, con-
" stituerentur in prædam justitiarii et suorum, et regem
" ipsum dolerent suorum aucupem, qui sperabatur tam eorum
" salus quam totius regni defensor; proposuerunt ad ipsum
" regem accedere, ut malitiam justitiarii ei demonstrarent.
" Quorum adventum idem justitiarius præsciens nunciavit
" regi, quod dicti barones in hoc convenerunt ut ipsum regem
" raperent et vinctum tenerent. Tantumque ibi[3] regi timo- The king fled to Gloucester. (Nov. 1223.)
" rem incussit ut ad turrim Gloucestriæ confugeret, et ibi
" tanquam obsidionem exspectans, omne genus munimenti
" pararet; dictisque baronibus ex parte regis denunciari
" fecit, ne ad ipsum accederent, utpote qui timebantur ab
" illo. Unde orta est discordia inter dictos barones et justitia-
" rium, qui tam ex supradictis causis quam ex multis aliis
" ad ipsius regis et regni regimen videbatur omnino sus-
" pectus, sicut qui pecuniam regis in usus non necessarios
" et in causas prorsus incognitas prodigebat, ita quod per
" septennium terra fuisset in pace; adeo tamen tenue mon- Poverty of the exchequer.
" strabatur ærarium, quod de omnibus proventibus regni et
" debitis exactis, non resideret usque ad summam xxx. millium
" marcarum, cum deberet esse ultra c. millia librarum.
" Pro hac vero discordia sopienda Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Pretended mediation of the bishops.
" et quidam episcopi simulaverunt interponere partes suas, qui
" postquam ex utraque parte ignem et fomentum dissensionis
" nutrierant, tamen in die Sancti Nicholai, quasi treugas inter
" eos usque ad octavas Sancti Hillarii præfigentes, totam ipsi

---

[1] *recedere*] discedere, M.; recedere, A.

[2] *quam*] quamque, M.

[3] *ibi*] ipsi, M.

A.D. 1225. The king kept Christmas 1223 at Northampton.

" discordiæ materiam, et ejusdem materiæ decisionem, provida
" ut videbatur deliberatione censuerunt differri. Interim tamen
" pendente negotio, cum rex apud Northamptoniam sollemni-
" tatem Natalis sicut moris est celebrasset, effectum [est][1] per
" consilium archiepiscopi et justitiarii ut tam comes Cestriæ
" quam alii supranominati ad regis curiam vocarentur, quasi
" cum ipso rege et de ipsius regis et regni negotiis tractaturi.
" Quibus ad jussum principis, ut decet, venientibus, et in MS. Magd. xxxvi.
" ipsius regis et archiepiscopi et quorundam episcoporum qui fo. 193 a.
" simul aderant præsentia constitutis; exhibitæ fuerunt quæ-
" dam litteræ apostolicæ in quibus continebatur quod esset
" domino regi rerum suarum restitutio facienda. Quæ cum
The castles of the earl of Chester demanded.
" perlectæ fuissent, statim dominus rex, consilio ductus justi-
" tiarii et suorum, petiit a comite Cestriæ ac cæteris quos
" evocaverat, ut sibi sua castra restituerent sine mora. Qui
" licet aliquamdiu dubitarent, utrum ad petitionem regis præ-
" dictam facerent restitutionem, an sedem apostolicam super
" hoc consulere vellent, tamen ad archiepiscopi vocem et
" mandatum, qui etiam comminabatur super eos excommuni-
" cationis inferre sententiam, nisi prædictam castrorum sine
The castles generally surrendered.
" querela et tumultu restitutionem facerent, omnia castra quæ
" diu et fideliter ipsi regi servaverant, libere ac pacifice red-
" diderunt; protestantes nihilominus quod, sicut aperte fiebat
" eorum restitutio, et aperte justitiarii et suorum similiter
" esset restitutio facienda, ne dispar eorum fieret conditio
" conditioni alterius qui pro regis honore contra justitiarium
" decertabant. Quo audito archiepiscopus cum magno favore
" respondens ait,[2] ' Oportet,' inquit, ' talem fieri distributionem
" ' castrorum, quæ sine scandalo faciat omnes æquales.' Unde
" cum ab omnibus per chirothecam vel per pilleum facta esset
" restitutio castrorum, idem archiepiscopus vocaliter castra
" distribuens, omnes barones æqualiter possessione castrorum
The earls insist that the justiciar also shall surrender.
" privavit. In hoc tamen dolus non defuit, quod comite
" Cestrensi et suis corporaliter castra restituentibus, justitiarius
" cum suis castra quæ tenebant sicut antea tenuerunt. Unde
Fraud of the archbishop.
" quia et in hiis et in multis aliis præfati comes Cestrensis et
" ejus consortes statum regis et regni commutari sentierunt,
" rem gestam et periculum futurum sedi apostolicæ per nuncios
" suos, scilicet Robertum Passeleu[3] et Robertum de Cancia
News carried to Rome.
" militem nunciaverunt. Qui cum prohiberentur a transitu,
" tandem ab archiepiscopo et quibusdam episcopis compulsi
" sunt juramentum præstare, quod nihil apud sedem apostoli-

[1] *est*] om. C.
[2] *ait*] om. M.
[3] *Passeleu*] Passelewe, M.

" cam in ipsius regis et regni præjudicium attentarent, quod A.D. 1225.
" per interpretationem ipsorum ad articulum de legato petendo John of Limoges
" aperte quidem sed mirabiliter est restrictum. Qui nuncii sent by the bishop of
" qualiter sedem apostolicam pro meliorando regni statu per- Winchester
" stiterint, vestrum est, O patres conscripti, ad memoriam to Rome.
" revocare, qualiter etiam dominus Wintoniensis clericum suum
" miserit Johannem Lemovicensem, ut suggereret vobis quod
" ad regis honorem et utilitatem pertingere videbatur. Cum The messengers charged with treason and exiled.
" autem dicti nuncii a curia recederent, ad regnum Angliæ
" reverti non licuit, tanquam in sua petitione crimen læsæ
" majestatis vel [per]duellionis admisissent: sed eos usque ad
" diem præsentem necesse est exulare. Licet autem archi- Complaints against the archbishop, as deceiving the pope.
" episcopus cum quibusdam episcopis ob timorem mittendi
" legati tranquillitatem regni vobis semper et continue nun-
" ciaverit, non tamen cessavit in regno Angliæ fovere dis-
" cordiam; sicut ille qui patrem ipsius regis semel penitus
" concutiens per procurata sibi odia et contentionem super
" regno ipso compositam, in necessitatem mortis induxit, qui
" ut diadema regni corrumperet, et regale scinderet vestimen-
" tum, quod a rege sibi timebat in ultionem patris inferri,
" conatus est in ipsum duo perfundere, lapsum scilicet ejus
" et confusionem, sub paternæ pietatis prætextu intrinsecus
" et extrinsecus perquirendo. Ille, inquam, antiquus regni On the news of the mission of Master Obizzo, the archbishop announced a false peace to the pope.
" turbator ex provisione vestra periculo imminenti paratum
" modicum esse præsentiens, cum videlicet placuisset prudentiæ
" vestræ ad partes Angliæ magistrum Obicium[1] pro exploranda
" hujuscemodi materia destinare, juxta versutiam suam procura-
" vit, ut Londonias convenirent; ibique barones cum lacryma-
" rum effusione deprecatus est ut in pace vellent et utilitate
" esse conformes; quod licet a benivolis et simplicibus et regni
" pacem et regis profectum super omnia desiderantibus facile
" obtinuerit, innata tamen et infida mentis custodia conservavit.
" Nam ad retardationem[2] vel potius retentionem nuncii qui
" mittendus fuerat, litteras de pace facta ad vestram, venerande
" pater, sedem miserit, sicut etiam vestræ litteræ apertissime
" protestantur; ego Falcasius in vestra præsentia constitutus,
" licet appellationem sæpius ab omni gravamine quod in regno He accused the writer of treason.
" parari posset interposuerim, causa patentis odii quo me tam
" justitiarius quam archiepiscopus et quidam alii persequeban-
" tur assignata, triduo post pacem ad ipsum regem, procurante
MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 193 b. " justitiario et cæteris æmulis meis, de capitali crimine sum
" accusatus, non quidem de recenti crimine, sed de eo quod

[1] *Obicium*] Obittum, M.
[2] *retardationem*] recordationem, C., M., Stevenson, A.

A.D. 1225. Alarm of Fawkes and his party.

" de[1] viii. annis antea dicebatur commissum. Qua in re ego " et alii qui sanctitati vestræ statum regis et regni denuncia- " veramus compositæ dolositatis argumenta pullulare videntes, " proposuimus cavere a mœnibus[2] adversariorum devitando " scandalum, ipsoque magis propter regis statum quam prop- " ter nostrum periculum formidantes. Cum autem Londoniis " post illius simulatæ pacis tractatum ordinatum fuisset, ut " apud Northamptoniam componeretur exercitus, falsa ad- " jecta causa quod deberet subvenire Pictaviæ, missus est in " partes castri Bedefordiæ[3] quidam miles justitiarius quem

Henry de Braybrooke goes to Bedford as itinerant justice, (1224,) and is seized by the brother of Fawkes.

" itinerantem more appellant, videlicet Henricus de Breibrok,[4] " qui austerius et fervidius quam justitia exigebat, officium " suum exercens, fratrem meum terris, possessionibus, sine " judicio spoliavit, vetera recolens odia quæ contra eundem " fratrem meum ex multis causis conceperat, quæ præter " causam meam privatim inter eos jugiter versabantur. Quia " vero idem Henricus jurisdictione sua tam adversus dictum " fratrem meum quam adversus me ipsum, cui exsuscitabat " undique adversarios, derelinquere videbatur, idem frater " meus, tam spiritu levitatis quam justitiæ defectu concitatus, " eundem injustum judicem, juste de causa an injuste, citra " tamen corporis læsionem cepit. [5] Cujus captio postquam mihi " fuerat nunciata, ego apud Northamtoniam propter servitium " regis cum aliis baronibus terræ conveneram, ad castrum de " Bedeforde pro exquirendo fratre meo, et ut dictum facerem " liberare justitiarium, tam cito perveni; ubi licet diligentiam " apposuerim quæ potuit adhiberi, fratrem tamen meum, vel

Flight of William de Breauté with his prisoner, to Wabridge Wood.

" militem quem ipse ceperat, non potui invenire. Nam idem " frater meus me ipsum timebat in casu prædicto, et idcirco " non ad castra redierat cum capto suo, sed in foresta de " Vauberge, sicut mihi postea innotuit, latitabat, ne forte si ad " castrum rediret, ille qui captus fuerat per me de manibus " suis ereptus in pristinam reduceretur, contra suum propo- " situm, libertatem. Unde quia mihi semper animus fuerat " famam meam, in hiis maxime quæ regem tangere vide- " bantur, servare integram, feci quod potui, Deum[6] testor, " quod frater meus veniret ad me. Sed inter hujusmodi

Fawkes is summoned before the king.

" evocationis moras, missi sunt ad me duo milites ex parte " domini regis, per quos citatus fui ut in diem crastinum apud " Northamptoniam comparerem coram domino rege, respon-

---

[1] *de*] om. M., A.

[2] *mœnibus*] So C., M., and A.; corrected by Gale to *manibus*; membris, Stevenson.

[3] *Bedefordiæ*] de Bedforde, M.

[4] *Breibrok*] Braibroch, M.

[5] Prynn, iii. p. 58 (Gale). Several letters on the subject are given there.

[6] *Deum*] Deo, C.

" surus ibidem de captione dicti justitiarii, et de omnibus A.D. 1225.
" aliis super quibus me contingeret accusari. Quibus nunciis He sends excuses by
" cum rem gestam aperuissem omnino, et personam meam the earl of Chester and
" apud ipsos in captione monstrarem penitus excusandam, the bishop of Winchester.
" quia nec per me, nec mandato meo, nec me ratum habente,
" fuerat facta, ipsis quidem abeuntibus, ego per dilectos
" dominos meos, videlicet Wintoniensem et comitem Cestren-
" sem, quantum ad illum diem apud dominum regem propriis
" nunciis excusari poposci, ut liceret interim perquirere fra-
" trem meum. Per quos causis absentiæ meæ diligenter
" expositis, consilium regis fuit ut super hoc haberetur plenior
" deliberatio; et sic ad propria hospitia singulis redeuntibus,
" ordinaverunt inimici mei ut sumpto cibo, versus castrum
" meum iter arriperent pro obsidione paranda; ita quod dili-
" genter inspiciatur tempus, die Lunæ dicti justitiarii captio Hasty proceedings of his enemies, in besieging Bedford.
" contigit, die Martis ad me pervenit citatio; die Mercurii
" misi nuncios pro allegandis absentiæ meæ causis; atque
" eodem die licet spes plenioris deliberationis fuerit data, di-
" rectæ sunt acies contra castrum; et die Jovis mane facta
" fuit obsidio in circuitu. Ego vero indiscretum timens He flies to Cheshire.
" adversariorum meorum insultum, ad terram comitis Ces-
" trensis cum paucis effugi. Eodem autem[1] die archiepisco-
" pus cum quibusdam episcopis qui in ipso erant exercitu,
" vocantes eos quibus ipsius castri commissa erat custodia,
" instanter petierunt ut castrum domino regi traderent; re-
" spondentibus ex adverso castri conservatoribus nullam esse
" legem vel consuetudinem quæ taliter reddi castra jubebat,[2] Siege of Bedford, although under the pope's protection.
" et exhibuerunt nihilominus sicut licuit privilegia vestræ sedis,
" per quæ tam ego quam ipsi sicut cruce signati, tam castrum
" quam cætera bona nostra[3] sub protectione benignitatis vestræ
" fuerant constituta, et appellaverunt ne quid in contemptum
" privilegiorum vel indulgentiarum vestrarum tentaretur ab
" aliquo, donec a latere vestro destinaretur aliquis nuncius vel
" legatus apud quem et status terræ et causarum merita
" pandi possent.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 194 a.

" Dictus vero archiepiscopus, ut ostenderet affectionem quam The archbishop excommunicates Fawkes.
" habet ad regem et suos, convocatis quibusdam episcopis, tam
" in me quam in ipsos qui erant in castro, et fautores et coadju-
" tores nostros, excommunicationis sententiam promulgavit.
" Quam sententiam infra vii. dies per universas regni ecclesias
" fecit publicari, faciens indulgentiam illis qui ut castrum citius
" caperetur, operam facto vel consilio adhiberent. Cujus etiam

[1] *autem*] om. M., A.
[2] *jubebat*] jubeat, M., A.; videbat, MS. Gale, corr. to *videbatur*.
[3] *nostra*] mea, M.

A.D. 1225. Money collected for the siege of Bedford. (A.D. 1224.)

" consilio est factum, ut per universam Angliam collecta fierct.
" quæ per officiales episcoporum, ut penitus probarentur duces
" exercitus, fuit exacta, duos in hoc facto effectus intendens,
" ut videlicet per excommunicationem subtraheret mihi auxi-
" lium, et per indulgentiam et collectam augmentaret potentiam
" inimicorum. Qui etiam sub excommunicatione præcepit, ut
" quæcunque mihi deposita conservabantur, domino redderen-
" tur. Tantaque fuit castri capiendi cupido, sive libido, quod
" ad perjectum[1] lapidum aliqui episcoporum episcopalem
" facerent benedictionem.

The writer then sent Robert of Leicester to the king, but he feared to present the letters.

" Ecce vero cum jamdiu vestrum exspectarem præsidium et
" viderem hujusmodi oppressionem, nolens sub tanta infamia et
" periculo languescere diutius, composui quasdam litteras quas
" misi domino regi per quendam canonicum de Seleby Ro-
" bertum de Leyrcestria, in quibus supplicavi ut liceret mihi
" sub salvo conductu ad eum accedere, et pro crimine mihi
" imposito facere quicquid barones regni secundum morem et
" statuta patriæ decernerent faciendum. Cum autem idem
" canonicus ad exercitum accessisset, et latam excommunica-
" tionis sententiam contra me et fautores meos per famam
" publicam didicisset, timens ne propter ministerium oblationis
" litterarum illa generali sententia ligaretur, sive supprimens
" litteras sive alii offerens quam oportuit,[2] regi non obtulit ut
" decebat.[3] Unde idem canonicus, producta super hoc querela,
" de prædicta domo fuit repulsus.

The bishop of Coventry visited him in Cheshire, and undertook to report his willingness to submit on certain conditions.

" Procedente vero tempore contigit Coventrensem episcopum
" ad partes Cestriæ ubi ego morabar[4] accedere: an suo motu,
" an aliorum mandato hoc fecerit, ignoro quidem. Sed ad me
" veniens verba pacis sicut honestum et prudentem decebat
" interposuit, ac meam devotionem proclivem in omnibus ad
" utilitatem regis intelligens, nuncium meum ad eundem do-
" minum regem, necnon et[5] ad archiepiscopum et cæteros
" duces exercitus perferendum, pia devotione recepit, quod ego
" videlicet paratus eram stare mandato et judicio domini regis
" in omnibus, ita quod tres æmuli mei quos ex causis eviden-
" bus suspectos habebam non adessent, vel etiam pro reverentia
" ipsius domini regis, offerebam subire apud ipsum omne
" judicium, et recipere misericordiam, ita quod in tractatu
" misericordiæ, illi tres qui capitales inimici mei erant, de
" misericordia non tractarent. Quæ verba cum idem venerabilis
" episcopus dictus domino regi et archiepiscopo et cæteris

---

[1] *perjectum*] corrected to *projectum* by Gale; projectum. A.
[2] *oportuit*] potuit, Gale.
[3] *decebat*] dicebat, C.
[4] *morabar*] morarer, M.
[5] *et*] om. M., A.

" retulisset, cum probris et conviciis tam ipsum quam verba A.D. 1225.
" indurato animo et superbifica potentia retulerunt. Verum The king and archbishop refuse to accept it.
" etiam quia dictus episcopus ut me secundum formam ec-
" clesiæ absolveret, a me fuit diligenter requisitus, id ipsum
" archiepiscopo nunciavit, adjiciens nihilominus ex parte mea
" quod ego petebam litteras per quas[1] vestræ sanctitati tota
" rei series narraretur; cum ego jure appellationis aut nullo
" modo ligatus essem, aut a vobis potius deberem absolvi
" quam ab archiepiscopo, cujus sententia et judicium et ap-
" pellatione suspensum fuerat, et multiplici ratione suspectum.
" Tandem vero idem archiepiscopus pro sua jurisdictione con- He is prevailed on to go to the archbishop for absolution; and is detained at Northampton.
" tendens, nihil aliud[2] facere voluit, nisi quod ad ipsum ac-
" cederem absolvendus: propter quod tam idem episcopus
" quam dominus[3] comes Cestriæ ad me pervenientes per-
" suaserunt me dare locum malitiæ; opportunum dicentes co-
" aptari et vitare scandalum, exspectando tempora meliora.
" Quorum vocibus, ut amicorum, inductus, perveni Coventriam,
" et exinde sub fide litterarum domini regis, sed magis archi-
" episcopi et quorundam aliorum episcoporum de salvo con-
" ductu eundo et redeundo, Northamptoniam accessi, videlicet
" per machinationem et fraudem archiepiscopi et suorum, qui
" debilitatem castri avido quærebant affectu, diutius scilicet
" spatio x. dierum exspectandam; absolutionis tamen bene-
" ficium nullatenus assequi potui, licet per aliquos nuncios
" inter moras verba deceptionis fuissent prolata. Vigilia vero Surrender of Bedford. The defenders absolved on the 15th of August.
" Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ, cum ego militibus meis nuncias-
" sem quod apud Northamptoniam detentus nullum eis præstare
" possem auxilium, iidem milites in manu domini regis et
MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 194 b. " misericordia archiepiscopi et episcoporum se devotissime
" offerentes, sub tutela ecclesiæ sicut crucesignati; et quia sub
" appellationis ad vos factæ credebant defendi subsidio, in
" exercitum de castro prodierunt. Quibus in die Assumptionis
" dato cum ignominia absolutionis beneficio, idem archiepisco-
" pus cum episcopis Hugone Lincolniensi, Jocelino Batoniensi
" et Radulfo Cicestrensi ad regem ingressus est, suæque
" feritatis non immemor, sed vivax violento animo recolens
" odium, ipsius regis adolescentiam ad indebitam provocans[4]
" iracundiam, talia verba profudit; 'Nos quidem ut nos decuit
" 'rigorem sumus ecclesiasticum executi, jam restat regem
" 'facere quod suum est.' Cumque ad hæc verba regis ob-
" stupesceret innocentia, et quæreret quid ad majestatem regiam
" pertineret, rursus idem archiepiscopus, non pastor patriæ

[1] *quas*] litteras, ins. M.; om. A.
[2] *aliud*] om. M.; ins. A.
[3] *dominus*] dictus, Gale.
[4] *provocans*] producens, M., A.

A.D. 1225. Cruel words of the bishop of Bath.

" sed tyrannus, 'Justitiarium' inquit, 'hujus dicti oportet
" 'esse interpretem, quia quid ad vos pertineat edocebit.' Ne
" autem pro nihilo dictis comitatus esset episcopis, unus ex
" eis videlicet Batoniensis dixit, 'Si suspensi fuissent qui
" 'capti fuerunt apud Biham, isti qui nunc capti sunt nulla-
" 'tenus castrum adversus nutum regium tenuissent.' Postea
" vero apud regem altercatione suborta, an exspectandi essent
" barones regni pro judicio faciendo, singuli qui aderant causa
" prandii ad propria tentoria secesserunt; ipsaque hora prandii
Prisoners hanged. " milites, servientes, juvenes cujuscunque conditionis, quantæ-
" cunque nobilitatis, ad numerum nonaginta vii., tam archi-
" episcopo quam dictis episcopis eminus inspicientibus, in
" dedecus militiæ et perpetuum regis obprobrium, sunt sus-
" pensi. O dirum scelus! O sæva servitutis erectæ rabies!
" Ne tantum nefas non rite fieret, diem et[iam] sollemnem con-
" stituere voluerunt. Clamore autem tantæ crudelitatis audito,
" aliqui de mensis propriis accurrentes, de furcis et patibulis
" aliquos liberaverunt, qui tamen sub custodia adhuc detinentur.
Fawkes is summoned to be absolved, " Quo facto, ne tanti sceleris participatio in aliqua sui parte
" perfectione careret, missi sunt Karleolensis episcopus et
" Martinus de Pateshull,[1] dicentes ex parte archiepiscopi, quod
" ego venirem ad ipsum archiepiscopum absolvendus. Me
" autem, ut fas erat, renitente et appellationem interpositam
" et causam suspicionis sicut supradictum[2] est allegante, et
" juxta formam conductus mihi dati recedere cupiente, effec-
" tum est tandem ut simplicitatem dolositas vinceret, et
" versutia pietatem, sicque ad ipsum ductus archiepiscopum,
and submits. " licet sæpius protestatus sum quod a vobis potius quam ab
" illo vellem absolvi, ab eo tamen, cum regressus mihi esset
" præclusus, absolvi oportuit, ne luctando ulterius in manus
" traderer inimicorum,[3] et ex prima sententia occasionaliter
" traherer ad secundam.[4] Jurato autem stare mandatis ec-
" clesiæ, in ruborem et confusionem meam, Londoniis in die
" dedicationis ejusdem Sanctæ Trinitatis, affectata præsentia
" plurimorum, idem archiepiscopus nudari[5] me faciens, ser-
He is absolved with ignominy. " mone ad populum facto, in quo blasphemias infinitas in sui
" quidem confusionem, in dedecus autem ecclesiæ prædicavit,
" tandem absolutum post verba multa et probra me dimisit.
" Ne autem vos lateat in quibus suæ constiterit gloriæ fundâ-
" menta, hæc ejus verba fuerunt; 'Ecce flagellum terræ! ecce
" 'indigenarum afflictio, cui totiens populus Angliæ datus est

---

[1] *Pateshull*] Pateshille, M.
[2] *supradictum*] prædictum, M.
[3] *inimicorum*] impiorum, M.
[4] *secundam*] sententiandam, C., Stevenson; secundam, A.
[5] *nudari*] denudari, M.

" ' in prædam. Idem ipse, digno Dei judicio, ejusdem populi A.D. 1225.
" ' factus est præda. Sumite animos, sumite, et ne quid ulte- Shameless conduct of
" ' rius in vos extraneis[1] [liceat] cogitate.' O verba pontifice the archbishop.
" et theologo digna! adversus alios ex officio suo crucesigna-
" tum et appellantem tueri debuit. At ille plus illum cæteris
" impugnavit. Non stat hic scelus, gradus est sceleris, finem
" attendi oportet. Nam postquam apud iniquum judicem ob-
" tentum est absolutionis beneficium, nova quædam et canonicis
" instructis prorsus incognita inducta est forma mandati; cum
" falsis mihi impositis criminibus, in emendationem Pictaviæ
" toti patrimonio meo, in rebus immobilibus seu mobilibus, in Fawkes is compelled to surrender his estates.
" Anglia vel extra Angliam me renunciare coegerit, quasi
" amissionis Pictaviæ causa fuissem, cum apud ipsos potius
" resideat culpa periculi, qui multotiens ut amitteretur Pictavia
" procuraverunt; in quos ejusdem terræ servandæ onus pro-
" funditur, cujus amissio liberos repræsentes.

" Sæpe autem in Anglia fuerat deceptatum, an homines Question of military service in Poictou.
" terræ regem in Pictaviam prosequi tenerentur, et post de-
" ceptationem contra regis[2] voluntatem negaverunt omnino
" prosecutionem ipsam fieri[3] debere. Unde iste fuit unus
MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 195 a. " articulus quare adversus patrem, pro majori parte procu-
" rante archiepiscopo, Anglia mota fuit. Est et alia causa
" quæ militiam Angliæ transeundo in Pictaviam retardabat,
" ne forte idem rex aliquos electos inde educeret, et in An-
" gliæ castris præficeret conservandis. Quare et si propter
" succursum Pictaviæ apud Northamptoniam paratus fuisse di-
" catur exercitus, duæ tamen causæ proximæ contrarium affe-
" runt conjecturam. Nec prætermittendum arbitror quod ituri Fawkes's defence of his conduct.
" in Pictaviam inepte apud Northamptoniam, quæ per quinque
" dietas a mari distat, paraverunt sibi exercitum, cum proge-
" nitores regis et idem rex in simili apparatu, non in medio
" terræ sed apud Portesmue vel alibi juxta mare consuevit
" exercitum convocare, ne si aliter fieret eos qui de extremi-
" tatibus regni ad medium terræ convenirent duplici con-
" tingeret fatigari labore. Nec pro tam levi causa tantum
" apparatum diverti oportuit, cum ego in medio terræ suæ
" non facile ipsi regi resistere possem, nec exstant exempla
" quibus ego discrimen ipsius regis exquirere voluissem. Evi-
" dens autem est causa quare in suum[4] arma regem movere
" docuerunt, ut vires quæ ab hiis et extra regnum fuerant
" opponendæ in vicinos, et eos oderant facilius superarent.

---

[1] *extraneis*] "deest aliquid," Gale, in marg.; *liceat* is supplied from A.

[2] *regis*] regem, C.

[3] *fieri*] non, ins. M.

[4] *suum*] suo, M.; suos, A.

A.D. 1225. He is imprisoned for nine weeks, and compelled to swear that he will not complain to the pope.

" Taliter autem[1] [cum] absolutionis, immo potius resolutionis,
" obtinuerim beneficium, non esse visum est satis pravorum
" tyrannidi, nisi adhuc me nudum, rebus spoliatum, amicis
" carentem, sub districta custodia juberent detineri, de qua
" non credo eripi potuisse, nisi vestræ ad ipsum archiepisco-
" pum et ipsius regni rectores sub increpatione litteræ pro-
" cessissent. Postquam vero sub Londoniensis episcopi cus-
" todia ix. septimanis et amplius conservabant, tractatu habito,
" post multas altercationes et rerum mearum indagationes,
" quas utique sub excommunicationis pœna fuerunt, me de-
" tente[2] decreverunt taliter liberandum, pronunciante archi-
" episcopo et juramento exacto, quod nihil apud vos de illatis
" injuriis impetrare deberem, vel apud vos deferre querimo-
" niam, sed trans mare causa peregrinationis abire. Nec illud
" tacendum arbitror, quod post extortam[3] liberationem, illa-
" tum est mihi in opprobrium ab archiepiscopo, 'Tu, Falcasi,
" 'volueras ecclesiam Cantuariensem diruere, quæ jam tibi
" 'relevationem[4] procurasse videtur.' Mihi autem admiranti,

Conversation with the bishop of Bath.

" et in quibus confusionem vel ruinam Cantuariensis ecclesiæ
" procuraveram inquirenti, Batoniensis episcopus respondit,
" 'Romam[5] misisti, ut legatus in Angliam mitteretur.' Cui
" ego, 'Non credo propter hoc deliquisse, cum ab antiquis
" 'patribus sit statutum, ut ab ecclesia Romana tam Cantua-
" 'riensis quam cæteræ per orbem ecclesiæ regerentur.'
" Prosit itaque, venerande pater, me sub vestra vixisse fiducia!
" Prosit, patres conscripti, me quantum ad dominum regem
" Angliæ vixisse innocuum, et quid relatio vel appellatio pro-
" desse soleat, cogitate.[6] Qualiter etiam vobis anno præterito
" per nuncios nostros fuerat intimatum, quod, si daretur ar-
" chiepiscopo a vobis excommunicandi licentia, non remaneret
" in terra aliquis qui tempore [guerræ] causam regis et

He begs the pope and cardinals to maintain their dignity.

" ecclesiæ defendisset. Faciatis itaque in præsenti casu
" quod ad honorem[7] creditis pertinere, ne forte constitutum
" semel proverbium quod capto castro finxerant, videlicet,
" 'Veniat legatus et liberet eos' fiat eis per vestram dissi-
" mulationem in gloriam et honorem. Sed talem si placet
" curetis adhibere cautelam, ut probetis quæ[8] regis et eccle-
" siæ utilitatem agant[9] vel[10] discrimen; et ego qui vulne-

---

[1] *autem*] cum, M., A.
[2] *detente*] detentum, Stevenson. The passage is hopelessly corrupt.
[3] *extortam*] exortam, C.
[4] *relevationem*] revelationem, C.
[5] *Romam*] Romæ, C.
[6] *cogitate*] cogitare, C.
[7] *honorem*] hominem, C.
[8] *quæ*] qui, G., S.
[9] *agant*] exigant, V., M., A.
[10] *vel*] qui, ins. Stevenson.

" ratus ad vos et confusus accessi, spoliatus uxore, filio, A.D. 1225.
" rebus, amicis, veros et fideles videar medicos invenisse, He prays them to
" cum sedem apostolicam post tot mala supremum mihi arbi- assist him;
Ps. lxxiv. 23. " trer præsidium affuturum. Attentoque 'superbia eorum qui
" Te oderunt semper ascendit,' nolumus vos gravare multis
" acclamationibus, licet negotii qualitas hoc exegerit, sed
" factum ipsum damus vobis in scriptis, ut per ipsam scrip-
" turam facilius intelligere possitis, unde procedat radix
" malitiæ, et in quibus per archiepiscopum et alios prælatos[1] dwelling on the injury done to the Roman Church if he is deserted.
" Angliæ sit læsa Romana ecclesia; qui a principio ne veni-
" rent ad vos nuncii, conati sunt impedire, et postea per
" continuam mendaciorum illationem procuraverunt ut populus
" ille peculiaris Romanæ ecclesiæ desereretur a vobis, et dis-
" tractus posset omnino confundi ab illis. Introeat utique in
MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 195 b. " conspectu vestro gemitus populi vestri et adversus infideli-
" tatem et fraudem ipsius archiepiscopi, qui me jurare coegit,
" ne aliquam ad vos perferrem querimoniam; justæ defen-
" sionis arma resumite, ne si[2] forte, quod absit, tantum scelus
" impunitum remanere contigerit, impunitas ipsa non solum
" in Anglia verum etiam in multis regionibus aliis incenti-
" vum præbeat delinquendi; cum autem homicidium in lege
" Cornelia per dolum, in lege publica per culpam, et in lege
" Aquilia[3] similiter, committi dicatur, considerate ex hiis quæ
" dicimus et notoria sunt, utrum archiepiscopus et episcopi
" prædicti salva conscientia post homicidium perpetratum The archbishop and bishops are unfit to perform the offices of religion.
" potuerunt celebrare: nec tamen,[4] omnino conscientiis pro-
" priis illos credimus committendos, cum ipsis post desideria
" cordis sui abire liceat, et si evaserint, omnia quæ fecerunt
" instinctu Spiritus Sancti facta fuisse confingant; non atten-
" dentes quod nulla pernicies vitæ major inveniri potest quam
" in malitia simulatio intelligentiæ; et quod in rebus certis
" locus non pateat conjecturis. Quia vero nec causa suberat
" ex qua in me fulmen excommunicationis immitti deberet,
" utpote quæ nullo modo ad judicium ecclesiæ pertinebat,
" etiam si ego militem illum cepissem de cujus captione su- He was excommunicated without cause.
" perius est tractatum, cum nec ipse crucesignatus esset,
" nec alias privilegiata persona, nec ex persona regis causa
" privilegium sortiri posset, cum idem rex legitimæ factus
" ætatis ulterius ad custodiam ecclesiæ, sicut et nuncii ejus[5]
" sæpius ad vos protestati sunt, nullatenus pertineret; dubi-
" tari non potest quin idem archiepiscopus et fautores ejus

[1] *prælatos*] paucos, G.
[2] *si*] om. M.
[3] *Aquilia*] Aquilea, M.
[4] *nec tamen*] necnon, C.
[5] *ejus*] et, ins. Gale.

A.D. 1225. He was excommunicated hastily.

" illicite jurisdictionem suam prorogaverunt; qui etiam pec-
" cantes in ordine, quod me non citatum, non confessum,
" neque convictum, quarta die captionis factæ excommuni-
" cationis vinculo innodaverunt, ex odio potius processisse
" quam justitiæ zelo salvare animas voluisse probantur.
" Cum itaque,[1] piissime pater, ex injusta ipsius archiepi-
" scopi et episcoporum supra nominatorum sententia, multa
" mihi damna provenerint, sicut amissio castri mei et rerum
" interius contentarum, interfectio fratris mei et aliorum
" consanguineorum meorum, necnon et aliorum qui ad me

He recounts his losses.

" jure familiæ pertinebant, et in quibus sæpe debilitatem et
" teneritatem ipsius regis supportaveram, et infamia gravis
" quam inter vicinos meos apud quos clarueram per detes-
" tationem ipsorum prælatorum aspersus sum; spoliatio uxoris
" meæ, filii mei, et aliorum consanguineorum meorum detentio;
" bonorum meorum publicatio, ac demum exilium, quod absque
" culpa mea sustineo, cum nulla ratio patiatur ut terra defensa
" per me carere debeam, supplico sanctitati vestræ, quatenus
" mihi famulo vestro in honorem Crucifixi, et in memoriam
" devotionis quam semper habui ad ecclesiam Romanam et

He prays for justice.

" habiturus sum, Deo dante, talem mihi procuretis justitiam
" reddi, quod manifeste pateat sub vestra vixisse fiducia, et
" periculosum esse injustis et calumniosis prælatis objecta
" sedis apostolicæ reverentia, sanctorum patrum infringere
" statuta, et legem facere pro suæ voluntatis arbitrio, qua[2]
" bonum etiam malum et e contrario[3] censeant; ponentes Is. v. 20.
" lucem tenebras et tenebras lucem. In omnibus autem præ-
" dictis imploramus officium benignitatis, ut status meus, qui
" generaliter concussus est et læsus, per vestræ pietatis auxi-
" lium reformetur."

The pope is prevailed on to intercede.

Instabat igitur constanter dictus Falcasius et perseveranter prece et pretio aures pulsare apostolicas, usque ad impetrationem litterarum a sede apostolica domino regi Angliæ destinandarum sub hujusmodi tenorem;[4]

Letter of Honorius III. to the king.

" Honorius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, Henrico illustri
" regi Angliæ, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Certum
" est, fili carissime, quod nos et fratres nostri honorem et
" statum tuum ac regni tui pleno zelamur affectu; idque
" adeo clare patet quod tibi non possit venire in dubium,
" vel aliter cognoscenti quam spiritualiter ipsum regnum ad
" Romanam spectat ecclesiam; et quamvis sollicitudines ac

---

[1] *itaque*] igitur, M.
[2] *qua*] quam, M.
[3] *contrario*] converso, M.
[4] *tenorem*] tenore, M.

" labores eadem pro tua et ejus[dem] regni defensione subiit A.D. 1225.
" recolenti, debes ergo nostris tanquam paternis monitis et He reminds him of the
" consiliis adquiescere reverenter, et recogitare quando tibi services done by Fawkes de
" pro tuis insistamus, non magis illorum quam tuum honorem Breauté to king John
" et commodum procuramus. Notum est longinquis et proxi- and to Henry himself.
" mis manifestum,[1] quod dilectus filius nobilis vir Falcasius
" de Breaute, claræ memoriæ Johanni regi Angliæ patri tuo
" fideliter, viriliter et utiliter astitit ei tempore quo fidelium
" suorum servitio maxime indigebat: eoque defuncto illam
" puritatem et constantiam fidei quam erga ipsum patrem[2]
MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 196 a. " tuum servaverat, erga te quoque inconcusse servavit, ita
" quod tranquillitas, quæ tandem tibi ac ipsi regno est tra-
" dita, ei pro magna parte potest post Deum et apostolicam
" sedem ascribi. Et ecce in tua regni pace quam toto stu-
" dio totisque viribus procuravit, amaritudo ejus amarissima,
" et qui grandia grandis laboris præmia exspectabat, pœnis
" gravissimis e contra est affectus. Et ut taceamus ea quæ
" reparari non possunt, ille qui se totum opposuit hiis qui
" te pene regno tuo spoliaverunt, nunc spoliatus est omnibus
" bonis suis, et reputatur hostis, qui hostiles incursus a te
" regnoque tuo tota virtute repulit, sicut scitum est. Et These ought to outweigh his offences.
" certe potest esse quod postmodum excessit in aliquo, quodque
" te imprudenter offendit, sed grandia merita quæ præcesse-
" rant, sibi et[3] gravis culpæ[4] debuerunt veniam impetrare, et
" a pœna ejus commotionem tuam vel omnino retrahere, vel
" saltem digno moderamine mitigare. Nunc autem negari
" omnino non potest quin modum excesserit medicina, cum
" contra eum et suos sit exercita tanta severitas, quantam
" exercuisse sufficeret si multa demerita et nulla ejus merita
" præcessissent. Sed nec sic quidem a suæ fidei puritate
" recessit, quinimmo in ea firmus stabilisque persistit; He is still faithful.
" nihilque nos et fratres nostros rogavit obnixius, quam [ut]
" de honore tuo ac statu paternam habere sollicitudinem
" dignaremur. Quid igitur faciendum est tibi de tali viro,
" nisi plene eum in tuam gratiam recipere, eique restituere
" sic integre omnia bona sua, ut operis exhibitione demonstres
" quod etiam ea quæ reparari non possunt, si tibi esset
" possibile, reparares, et ita ejus amaritudinem beneficiis He urges the king to receive him into favour.
" dulcorare regalibus, ut magis ac magis astringas quem
" neque mors, nec vita, nec tribulatio, neque angustia potuit
" a tuæ fidelitatis constantia separare. Rogamus igitur
" serenitatem tuam, monemus et obsecramus attentius, ac peti-
" mus pro munere speciali, quatenus omnia supradicta re-

[1] *manifestum*] manifestis, M.
[2] *patrem*] fratrem, C.
[3] *et*] etiam, M.
[4] *culpæ*] pœnæ, C.

A.D. 1225. The pope intercedes for Fawkes de Breauté.

" cogitans, eundem nobilem pro nostra et sedis apostolicæ
" reverentia, ac timore denique Jesu Christi, Cujus est charac-
" tere insignitus, in plenam gratiam reassumas, eique restituas
" uxorem, filium, terram et omnia bona sua; monitiones nostras
" et preces taliter curans effectui mancipare, quod cognoscamus
" in præsenti articulo quantum de tua devotione confidere
" debeamus. Ut autem agnoscas quantum nobis et fratribus
" nostris cordi sit restitutio nobilis memorati, quantoque
" affectu id a tua celsitudine rogamus, ecce dilectum filium
He sends Otho his subdeacon as legate. " nostrum magistrum[1] Othonem, subdiaconum et capellanum
" nostrum, virum utique probitatis et honestatis, ex parte nostra,
" nobisque ac fratribus nostris carum satis suis exigentibus
" meritis et acceptum, ad te propter hoc specialiter, et pro
" tranquillitate generaliter regni tui, de ipsorum fratrum
" nostrorum communi consilio duximus destinandum, sereni-
" tatem tuam rogantes et exhortantes attentius, quatenus eum
" sereno vultu respicias, et ea quæ duxerit tibi proponenda,
" tum super aliis, tum specialiter[2] super restitutione nobilis
" sæpedicti, audire hillariter et efficaciter exaudire."

Other reasons of Otho's mission.

Harum bajulus litterarum pro Falcasio fuit Otho, domini papæ subdiaconus et capellanus, litteras archiepiscopis et episcopis et clero Angliæ alias, immo alienas, quia ut videbatur a rege et regno, clero et populo, libertates et jura non tantum auferentes, immo potius[3] penitus alienantes, bulla intonante apostolica sub hac forma;[4]

Jan. 28. The pope writes to the king on the duties of his position.

"Honorius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus
" fratribus archiepiscopis, episcopis, et dilectis filiis universis
" ecclesiarum prælatis per regnum Angliæ constitutis, salutem
" et apostolicam benedictionem. Super muros Jerusalem cus-
" todes positi, quanto eminentiorem speculam dignitatis ascen-
" dimus, tanto imminentiori debito sollicitamur officii, ut
" vigilanti custodia nobis et aliis vigilemus; nobis quoque
" per meritum, aliis quoque per exemplum, quatenus in con-
" spectu Altissimi conscientiæ puritas conservetur, et in facie
" proximi famæ integritas non lædatur. Multum enim cedit
" ad commodum animarum, ut et conscientiam fama non
" deserat et famam conscientia contemptui non exponat; sed
" potius mutuis promoveantur suffragiis et mutuis sibi pro-
" motionibus suffragentur; propter quod in vestibus Aaron Exod. xxvii 33.
" mala punica cum tintinnabulis dependebant. Porro dum
" attentius quid onus honoris exposcat, quid sarcina dignitatis

---

[1] *magistrum*] om. M.
[2] *specialiter*] om. M.; ins. A.
[3] *potius*] om. M.; ins. A.
[4] Printed in Mansi, *Conc.* xxii. 1217.

" desideret, multa nos cura sollicitat, multæ sollicitudinis A.D. 1225. Jan. 28.
" urgemur instantia, qualiter Deo satisfaciamus et homini, etsi
" non ut volumus et debemus, saltem prout permittimur et
" valemus. Sane multos multotiens et audivimus et vidimus
" murmurantes propter expensas quas venientes ad sedem
MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 196 b. " apostolicam faciebant. Scimus autem quod ex talibus in-
" ferebat præsumptio detractorum, quod labia dolosa et quod
" lingua magniloqua præsumebant, cum nonnulli sermones
" in publico molientes et immittentes periculosius jacula in
" occulto, Romanam mordere ecclesiam niterentur, parati non
" solum ea quæ rigor justitiæ sed etiam quæ judicium æqui-
" tatis necnon et[1] benignitatis gratiæ consummabat, suis oblo-
" cutionibus depravare, præsertim apud eos qui aures pru-
" rientes habebant, et gratis erectas ad malum. Illos quoque
" in talibus experti sumus frequenter offendere, qui missi
" procurare negotia, dum ea quæ illis ad necessarias deputa-
" bantur expensas suis voluptatibus applicabant, ad miserabile
" mendacii subsidium recurrentes, alienis manibus impingebant
" quæ propriæ defraudaverant. Quia vero in hiis quæ contra
" sedem apostolicam detractoribus obrepebat occasio, et ecclesiis
" ecclesiarumque prælatis, necnon et aliis videbatur imminere
" gravamen, cum fratribus nostris diligentem curavimus
" habere tractatum, quo studio, qua cautela, secundum Deum
" et hominem, inveniremus in talibus salubrem provisionis
" effectum: et tandem, prout Domino placuit, communi et
" unanimi deliberatione consilii, rem non novam nec inex-
" cogitatam a prædecessoribus nostris sumus aggressi, volentes
" quod illi salubri consilio providerunt, efficaci opere consum-
" mare, videlicet, ut ad opus sedis apostolicæ in singulis
" cathedralibus ecclesiis et aliis præbendalibus, præbendæ
" singulæ serventur, et interim donec id fiat competentes in
" eisdem redditus assignentur; in monasteriis vero et cæteris re-
" gularibus domibus, ac collegiatis ecclesiis, necnon de bonis epi-
" scoporum, secundum facultates suas constituantur certi reddi-
" tus pro præbendis, quorum proventus in commune recepti, tam
" in nostras quam in fratrum nostrorum necessitates, necnon
" capellanorum, cancellariorum, hostiariorum, aliorumque sedis
" apostolicæ officialium, convertantur, ut sic provideatur nostris
" in vitæ necessariis et gratis omnibus omnia pro quibuscun-
" que negotiis venientibus ministrentur, nec sit qui per se
" vel per alium expresse vel tacite aliquid exigat, vel etiam
" oblata sponte recipiat, præter bullæ redditum consuetum.
" Quod si quis Gieziticus tantæ cupiditati animum audebit

The expenses of the apostolic see are a ground of complaint by detractors.

He has sought for a remedy.

He demands a prebend in each cathedral and collegiate church, and a certain revenue from all religious houses.

[1] *et*] om. M.

A.D. 1225. Jan. 28. Papal officers are to cease to demand gifts.

" exponere, quod contra prohibitionis nostræ rigorem manus
" ad munus quantumcunque gratuitum præsumat extendere,
" tantæ pœnæ duritiæ subjacebit quod præter publicæ con-
" fusionis obprobrium, culpam in pœna cognoscet. Quis igitur
" frater gratiæ, quis devotionis filius, quis Sponsi et sponsæ
" dilectus, ad hujusmodi statum ecclesiæ consilio et auxilio non
" assurget? Annon licet, non decet, non expedit ut sic filiæ
" dexteram porrigant ad subsidia matris quæ præ occupa-
" tionibus multis et magnis involvitur pro necessitatibus filia-
" rum? Nonne idem quamplures ecclesiarum prælati magnique
" testimonii viri tempore generalis concilii suadebant? Ne
" igitur tam sancti propositi consummatio retardetur, per
" [quod] multum crescere poterit decor ecclesiæ Dei, multaque
" subtrahi occasio detrahendi, universitatem vestram monemus,
" rogamus et exhortamur in Domino, per apostolica scripta
" vobis mandantes, quatenus ad executionem provisionis hujus-
He asks the king's aid for carrying out the measure.
" modi tam in cathedralibus quam in aliis, ut dictum est,
" ecclesiis impendatis sic opem et operam efficacem, quod in-
" terprete facto monstretur, quantum domus Domini vos decor
" alliciat, quantum Sponsi et sponsæ amor accendat, quantum
" multorum relevatio moveat, quantum utilitas generalis in-
" ducat. Cæterum cum ad relevanda ecclesiarum onera et
" prælatorum gravamina prout possumus intendamus, de præ-
" bendis clericis Romanis vel ab apostolica sede concessis
" duximus providendum, ut postquam fuerint prædicta com-
" pleta, cum eas vacare contigerit, ad proprias ecclesias rever-
" tantur, ne si successive conferantur extraneis, sicut aliquando
" consuevit, filiis ecclesiarum qui continuo servitio resident
" redderentur inutiles, et utilitate quo ad minus[1] fierent alienæ.
" Datum Laterani, v°. kalendas Februarii, pontificatus nostri
" anno nono."

Cardinal Romanus holds a council at Lyons.

[2] Dum autem talia vel prorsus similia per universarum terrarum spatia summo pontifici subjecta prius essent promulgata, et quicunque ea audierunt, tinnierunt ambæ aures eorum, legatus quidam, Romanus nomine, a Roma directus in Galliam, concilium celebravit apud Lugdunum Galliæ. Convenerunt igitur ad capitulum Lugdunensis, Senonensis, Remensis, Ro-

---

[1] *quo ad minus*] quodammodo, Mansi.

[2] With the following account of the legate's transactions the narrative of Matthew Paris, very closely and almost verbally agrees. He places the French council, however, at Bourges instead of Lyons; and inserts several paragraphs touching Raymond of Toulouse, which our author omits. See M. Paris, ed. Wats, pp. 329, 330, and the *Chronicon Turonense* in Martene and Durand, Ampl. Coll. v. 1067, where the council is placed at Bourges on S. Andrew's day 1225.

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 197 a.

tomagensis, Turonensis, Bituricensis, Axitanus[1] archiepiscopi; A.D. 1225. Burdegalensis Romæ fuit; Nerbonensis ecclesia vacabat. Convenerunt etiam novem provinciarum suffraganei circiter centum, cum abbatibus et prioribus et singulorum capitulorum procuratoribus. Quibus sedentibus, lectisque tunc primo litteris legationis in publico, dedit licentiam procuratoribus capitulorum redeundi ad propria, retentis tamen archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus. Unde non immerito timuerunt, ne procurata eorum absentia, qui majoris erant prudentiæ et experientiæ, et præ multitudine potentiores contradicere, maxime cum etiam peccata multorum sint multa, habito tractatu cum singulis et non in communi, aliquid statueret in præjudicium omnium. Dicti ergo procuratores post diutinam deliberationem miserunt ad legatum procuratores metropolitanarum ecclesiarum, qui dixerunt, "Domine, audivimus quod habetis speciales litteras "a curia de exigendis præbendis in omnibus ecclesiis con- "ventualibus. Quapropter plurimum miramur quod nihil in "concilio de hoc proposuistis nobis audientibus, quos specia- "liter tangit, et rogamus et obsecramus in Domino, ne istud "scandalum oriatur per vos in ecclesia Gallicana, scientes[2] "quod sine magno scandalo et damno inæstimabili[3] non posset "istud cum effectu attentari; quia, esto quod aliqui consenti- "rent, nullus esset consensus de re quæ omnes tangit, cum "fere omnes majores et generaliter omnes subditi, necnon "rex et omnes principes, parati sunt contradicere et resistere, "usque ad capitis expositionem, et omnis honoris privationem; "præsertim cum videatur eis imminere per hoc subversio "ecclesiæ et regni. Ratio nostri timoris est quod cum essetis "Remis, ibi habuistis sermonem cum quibusdam, et aliquibus "episcopis præcepistis ut cum vacaverint præbendæ, reservent "eas ad opus domini papæ." Cum autem niteretur legatus persuadere ut consentirent, allegavit commoda quæ inde possent provenire, videlicet quod amoveretur infamia ab ecclesia Romana quæ est caput ecclesiarum, præcipue cum nullus de curia etiam sponte oblata reciperet. Tunc respondit procurator Lugdunensis, "Domine, nullo modo volumus esse sine amicis "in curia," et contra ipsi procuratores sua allegaverunt incommoda, scilicet damna rerum, consiliorum et auxiliorum dominorum et obsequiorum quæ in ecclesiis possent fieri per canonicos et amicos suos et domesticam sequelam, maxime cum exigantur a singulis ecclesiis cathedralibus duæ præbendæ, una a capitulo et altera a portione episcopi, et similiter in cœnobiis ubi divisæ sunt portiones abbatis et conventus, et a

Multitude of clergy in attendance.

The legate dismisses the proctors of the chapters.

They remonstrate against the object of his mission.

He argues with them.

Their answer.

[1] *Axitanus*] Aritanus, M.; Ax., A.
[2] *scientes*] om. M.
[3] *non*] ne, C.

A.D. 1225. Argument of the proctors in answer to the legate.

conventibus tantum quantum pertinet ad unum monachum, æquali facta distributione bonorum suorum; sic enim ipsemet interpretatus fuit Remis.[1] Item addiderunt oppressiones quæ fierent; esset enim in quibuslibet[2] diocesibus vel ad minus in provincia necessarius unus continuus procurator Romanus, qui non viveret de proprio, sed procurationes et graves exactiones exigeret ab ecclesiis majoribus et forte minoribus, ut nullus remaneret impunitus, nomenque procuratoris habens fungeretur vice legati. Item dixerunt imminere turbationes capitulorum; forte enim daret domum papa cui vellet, procuratori suo vel alii, ut vice sua interesset electionibus, qui eas turbaret, et sic lapso tempore devolveretur ordinatio ad curiam, quæ in omnibus vel pluribus ecclesiis Romanos poneret, vel tales qui plurimum essent devoti, et sic nullæ essent partes indigenarum prælatorum vel principum, cum multi principes sint viri ecclesiastici, qui potius curiæ Romanæ quam regi vel regno providerent. Insuper addiderunt quod si proportionaliter fieret distributio in curia, omnes fierent divites, cum multo plus de quolibet regno essent recepturi quam rex proprius, et sic majores non solum divites sed ditissimi fierent. Cum igitur vermis divitum sit superbia, majores vix causas audirent, sed in immensum eas protelarent; minores inviti scriberent, cum scirent se nihil percepturos. Cujus rei signum in evidenti est, quia et modo protrahimur post obsequia præcepta et securitatem de percipiendis; et sic periclitaretur justitia et oporteret conquerentes mori in januis tunc plenissime dominantium. Item cum vix possibile sit fontem cupiditatis desiccari, quod nunc faciunt per se facerent tunc per alios, et suis procurarent munera dari multo majora quam nunc; modica enim in conspectu divitum cupidorum nulla sunt.[3] Post omnia pericula ipsius Romanæ civitatis non tacuerunt, facerent enim multæ divitiæ cives insanire, et sic inter diversas parentelas tantæ orirentur seditiones, quod possent timere de ruina totius civitatis, cujus nec etiam modo est omnino expers. Item dixerunt quod licet qui modo possiderent se obligarent ad non recipiendum, forte successores ratam non haberent illam obligationem. Ultimo dixerunt; "Moveat vos zelus universalis "ecclesiæ et sanctæ sedis Romanæ. Quia si omnium esset "universalis oppressio, posset timeri, ne immineret generalis "discessio, quod Deus avertat." Hiis auditis respondit legatus, ut videbatur, plurimum motus in bono, se cum esset in curia nunquam huic exactioni consensisse, et ipsum litteras accepisse

MS. Magd. xxxvi. fo. 197 b.

They fear a general desertion of the Roman Church.

---

[1] *Remis*] Here the Cotton MS. (V.) Vitellius E. xiii. ends.

[2] *quibuslibet*] A.; quibusdam, M.

[3] *modica . . sunt*] om M.; ins. A.

priusquam ingressus fuerat[1] Galliam, et tunc plurimum super hoc doluisse. Addidit etiam quod quicquid præcepit super hoc, se tali conditione licet tacita intellexisse, si imperium et alia regna consentirent, quæ omnia consimiles habuerunt litteras, ut putabat. Addidit etiam se nihil amplius de hoc attentaturum donec imperium et regna Angliæ et Hispaniæ consenserint, quod minime creditur posse provenire.[2] A.D. 1225. The legate refuses to press his commission.

Dictus idem Otho, domini papæ nuncius, apud Londonias concilio convocato in xv. dies post Pascha,[3] litterisque apostolicis ibidem coram rege Henrico et comitibus atque baronibus, coramque archiepiscopo et ejus suffraganeis et clero, recitatis,[4] responsum est ex parte regis et cleri, quod, etiam si alia regna domini papæ petitioni assentirent, in præbendis et redditibus curiæ Romanæ solvendis, regnum Angliæ de jure ab hujusmodi exactione deberet esse immune, ratione recognitionis factæ per Johannem regem patrem suum Innocentio summo pontifici, cui regnum Angliæ subjecit et Hiberniam, scilicet[5] pro Anglia DCC. marcas et pro Hibernia CCC. marcas per annum. Cumque cerneret regnum et clerum unanimi assensu sibi resistere, infecto negotio recessit, et non multos post dies, litteris domini papæ acceptis, repatriavit. A.D. 1226. Council at London, April 13. The king and clergy claim immunity, and Otho goes home.

[1] *fueram*] fuerat, C.

[2] Here the story in MS. A. ends, fol. 105.

[3] *Pascha*] In 1226; see M. Paris, p. 331.

[4] *recitatis*] recitans, C.

[5] *scilicet*] om. M.

FINIS.

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

Aala, queen of France, married to Lewis VII., i. 185 ; mother of Philip II., 186.

Aaliz, daughter of Humbert of Maurienne, betrothed to John, i. 209–212.

Abbeville, plundered by Richard's mercenaries in 1198, ii. 128.

Abbotsbury, abbey of, vacant in 1175, i. 245.

Aberdeen, Matthew bishop of, allowed to return to Scotland in 1181, i. 17, 311 ; consecrates Roger bishop of S. Andrew's, ii. 113.

Abernethy, Malcolm does homage to William I. at, i. 89.

Abingdon, archbishop Elfric buried at, i. 28 ; founded by Cissa, 61 ; Siward's illness, death, and burial at, 63 ; bishop Ethelwin sent to, 89.

Elfstan, abbot of, dies, i. 62.

Spearhafoc, abbot of, i. 62 ; appointed bishop of London, 64.

Ralph, a Norwegian bishop, made abbot of, i. 64 ; dies, 66.

Ordric, abbot of, succeeds Ralph, i. 66.

Aldhelm, abbot of, dies in 1084, i. 97.

Rainold, abbot of, succeeds in 1084, i. 97 ; dies in 1097, 114.

Faricius, abbot of, dies in 1118, i. 137.

Ingulf, prior of Winchester, made abbot of, in 1130, i. 153.

Godfrey, bishop of S. Asaph, administrator of, i. 244.

Hugh, abbot of, dies in 1221, ii. 250 ; Robert succeeds, *ib.*

Achilles, king of the Danes, subject to Arthur, i. 10.

Achonry, see of, i. 203.

Aclet, church at, held by Bouchard de Puiset, ii. 103.

Acre, Ruffinus bishop of, slain at Hittin, i. 345, 346 ; bishop of, dies during the siege, 427 ; another drowned in 1201, ii. 191.

city of, taken by Saladin in 1187, i. 346 ; besieged by Guy of Lusignan, 381, 382 ; famine among the besiegers, 419 ; arrival of the Germans, *ib.* ; defeat of the volunteers at, 420 ; sally of the Saracens from, 421 ; escalade, 422 ; deaths at the siege, 427 ; arrival of Philip, 435 ; the count of Flanders dies at, 443 ; arrival of the queens, *ib.* ; of Richard, 444 ; events of the siege, 445–451 ; surrender of, 451 ; divided between the kings, 452 ; churches purified, 453 ; Philip leaves, 455 ; Richard encamps outside, 456 ; massacre of the prisoners, 457 ; Bertram de Verdun made governor of, *ib.* ; journey of Philip from, ii. 9 ; quarrel of the Genoese and Pisans at, 18 ; Richard visits, *ib.* ; he sails from, 21 ; queen Margaret dies at, 103 ; the German crusaders at, 109, 110 ; Henry of Champagne lord of, 120 ; Amalric of Lusignan, lord of, 135, 183 ; shipwreck of the embassy from, 191.

Adam, vice-chancellor of the younger Henry, his treason and punishment, i. 266, 267.

Adam, bishop of S. Asaph. *See* S. Asaph.

Adel—*See* Ethel—generally.
Adeliza, of Louvain, married to Henry I., i. 140; her chancellor Godfrey, 143; her chancellor Simon, *ib.*
Adelulf, bishop of Carlisle. *See* Carlisle.
Adestan, a Norwegian prince, ii. 77. *See* Norway.
Adrian IV., pope, i. 185.
Aed, an Irish clerk, shaves girls, i. 69.
Aelisinus, rebels in Flanders, i. 251.
Aelward, chamberlain of the younger Henry, deserts him in 1173, i. 214.
Æneas, flies to Italy, i. 3.
Africa. *See* Morocco.
Agafra, F. Roderici de, i. 278.
Aganippus, king of the Franks, marries Cordoilla, i. 5.
Agatha, niece of the emperor Henry, marries Edward the Etheling, i. 45; her children, *ib.*; flies to Scotland in 1068, 84.
Agatha, S. *See* Catania.
Agde, city of, i. 405; council of, i. 240.
Agel—*See* Ethel—generally.
Agelnoth, sheriff of Herefordshire, killed at Glasbury, i. 71.
Agelnoth (Athelnete), father of the Northumbrian Dunstan, i. 79.
abbot of Glastonbury, taken to Normandy in 1067, i. 83.
of Canterbury, taken to Normandy in 1067, i. 83.
Agen, in Guienne, i. 252.
Agnes, the empress, mediates between Henry IV. and Gregory VII., i. 91.
Agnis, Henry de, drowned at sea, i. 188.
Agosoio, disputed by Navarre and Castille, i. 281, 282.
Agreda, disputed by Navarre and Castille, i. 281, 282.
Aidan, apostle of Northumbria, i. 21.
Aimar, viscount of Limoges. *See* Limoges.
Aimeric nephew of Philip of Poictiers, made archdeacon of Carlisle and Durham, ii. 103; seizes Hersewell from the monks of Durham, 118; disavows the violence, *ib.*; besieges
Aimeric—*cont.*
the church of S. Oswald in Elvet, 136.
king of Jerusalem and Cyprus. *See* Jerusalem.
viscount of Thouars. *See* Thouars.
Aire, in Flanders, taken by the count in 1198, ii. 125; Robert provost of, i. 217.
Aix, in Savoy, part of the Maurienne dowry, i. 209.
Aixe, in Poictou, taken by Richard in 1176, i. 266.
Aix-la-Chapelle, burial place of Charles the Great and place of coronation of the German kings, ii. 117; Otho IV. crowned at, *ib.*
Akarias, archbishop, ii. 185.
Akarius (Zaccarias), abbot of Peterborough, appointed, ii. 160; dies, 201.
Alamannus, Rodulfus, i. 210.
Alan of Tewkesbury, prior of Canterbury, i. 332.
of Brittany, earl of Richmond, on Stephen's side at Lincoln, i. 166, 168.
Alascerat, promontory in Spain, i. 404.
Albanactus, son of Brutus, has Scotland for his portion, i. 4.
Albani, the Scottish war cry, i. 161.
Albania, ancient Scotland, i. 4, 5, 9, 25, 26.
Albano, cardinal bishops of—
Walter, brings the pall to S. Anselm in 1095, i. 111.
Walter, supporter of Alexander III. in 1177, i. 302.
Henry, sent to mediate between Henry II. and Philip, dies at Arras in 1188, i. 361.
Peter, bishop, reports the capture of Damietta, ii. 242.
Albero, bishop of Würtzburg, i. 98.
Albert, cardinal, legate to Henry II., i. 199; arrives in Normandy, meets the king at Caen, 205; absolves him, 206; holds a council at Avranches, 207; becomes pope in 1187 as Gregory VIII., 347. *See* Gregory VIII.
Albert, archbishop of York. *See* York.

Albert, chancellor of the emperor Henry V., i. 129.
count, witnesses the peace between Henry V. and the pope, i. 129.
Albini, William of, lord of Belvoir, gives his son to John as a hostage, ii. 182; manages Lincolnshire in 1215, 224.
Nigel of, has the estates of Robert Grundebeof, ii. 161.
Albini, of Arundel. *See* Arundel.
Alcaz, city in Saracenic Spain, taken by the emperor of Morocco in 1191, i. 115.
Aldanus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Alderi, William de, hanged by W. Rufus, i. 113.
Aldgita, widow of Sigeferth, marries Edmund Ironside, i. 38.
wife of Harold, sent to Chester, i. 82.
Aldred, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Aldulf, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Aldwin, bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester.
abbot of Ramsey, at the council of Rheims, i. 64.
abbot of Ramsey, deposed in 1102, goes with Anselm to Rome, i. 122.
Alemannorum domus, the Teutonic knights, ii. 258.
Alençon, the younger Henry flies to, in 1173, i. 213; Henry II. keeps Easter 1173 at, 215; visits, in 1177, 308.
Henry II. assembles an army at, in 1188, i. 357.
Conference between John and the Norman barons at, in 1193, ii. 27.
Alentia, a city near Gibraltar, i. 404.
Aleppo, sultan of, ii. 192.
Alesia, daughter of Lewis VII., betrothed to Richard son of Henry II., i. 304; the king threatened with interdict for hindering the marriage, *ib.*; he agrees to it in 1177, 305; and again in 1186, 339; Philip insists on the celebration in 1188, 351; Henry still opposes, 361; again in 1189, 364, 365; he proposes to marry her
Alesia—*cont.*
to John, 365; she is to be surrendered at the peace of Tours, 367; goes to Normandy in 1190, 390; Philip accuses Richard of trying to break the engagement, 434; Richard accuses her of having borne a child to his father and breaks off the match, *ib.*; in 1192 Philip demands her of the steward of Normandy, ii. 21; John promises to marry her, 27; surrendered to Philip in 1195, 92; married to the Count of Ponthieu, *ib.*
Alesine, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
Alexander, of Macedon, i. 6.
I., king of Scots, son of Malcolm and Margaret, as earl, is present at the translation of S. Cuthbert, i. 123; succeeds his brother Edgar in 1107, 125; intruded Robert into the see of S. Andrews, 150; dies in 1123, 142, 143.
Alexander II., son of William the Lion, born and baptized, ii. 125; king Philip promises him his daughter, 169, 189; knighted in 1212, 206; committed to the care of John, *ib.*; joins the barons against John, 220; retires before him in 1216, 229; joins Lewis, 230; John tries to intercept, 231; is shut out from his own territories, 232, 233; returns home, 233; marries Johanna of England, 249; his sister marries Hubert de Burgh, 251.
Alexander III., king of Scots, does homage to Henry III., i. 18.
Alexander II., pope, succeeds in 1061, i. 74; sends a legate to England in 1062, 76; and three in 1070, 86; opposed by an antipope, 84; gives the pall to Lanfranc and Thomas, 88; his sentence as to the primacy, 378.
Alexander III., pope, succeeds in 1159, i. 185; holds a council at Tours, *ib.*; appealed to by Becket in 1170, 190;

Alexander III., pope—*cont.*
advises peace, 191; suspends the archbishop of York and others, *ib.*; letters to him describing the martyrdom, 195, 197; applied to by Henry's ambassadors for a commission, 199; threatens to excommunicate Henry, 200; is pacified and sends legates, 201, 205; confirms the gift of Ireland to Henry, 203; oath of Henry to him, 206; the younger Henry forbids him to confirm the bishops, 228; he consecrates archbishop Richard and gives him the pall, 229; extracts from his decrees, 239, 242; appeal of archbishop Roger to, 244; admonishes archbishop Richard to compel the bishop of S. Asaph to reside, 244; sends cardinal Hugozun as legate, 254; appealed to by the Scottish bishops, 260, 264; and by the two archbishops, 261; sends Vivian as legate, 264; allows John to be made king of Ireland, 288; hears the cause of the bishop of Exeter, 301; meets the emperor at Venice in 1177, 302; makes peace with him, 303; appoints Conrad of Mentz to Salzburg, 303, 304; writes to the clergy on the peace, 304; holds the Lateran council in 1179, 309; directs Geoffrey, the chancellor, to take orders, 310; writes a letter in behalf of Palestine, 311; refuses to translate bishop John from S. Andrews, 312; dies, 315; mentioned, 436.
Alexander, bishop of Lincoln. *See* Lincoln.
a clerk of Canterbury, opposes Henry II. at Rome, i. 200.
notary of William king of Sicily, i. 294.
abbot of S. Augustine's, ii. 246.
Alexandria, taken in 1167, i. 186.
held by a son of Saladin, ii. 34.
Alexius, legate in 1181, i. 310.
Alexius Comnenus. *See* Comnenus.
Alfgar (Algar) son of Meawes, is on Canute's side at Sherstone, i. 40.
son of Leofric, receives Harold's earldom in 1053, i. 69; is deprived and joins the Welsh in an invasion of England, 70; takes Hereford, *ib.*; is defeated by Harold, 71; restored, *ib.*; succeeds his father in 1057, 73; is again deprived and restored, *ib.*
bishop of Elmham. *See* Elmham.
Alfgeat, son of Earsius, killed by the Welsh, i. 55.
Alfhelm, murder of, i. 29; his sons blinded, *ib.*
Alfhun, bishop of London. *See* London.
Alfonso. *See* Arragon, Castille, Leon, Navarre, Portugal.
Alfred, son of Ethelwulf king of England, i. 14; a great king and lawgiver, *ib.*; father of Edward the Elder, *ib.*
son of Ethelred II. and Emma, sent to Normandy in 1013, i. 35; visits his mother at Winchester in 1036, 53; is seized, blinded, and sent to Ely, 53, 54; dies and is buried there, 54; his death ascribed to Godwin, 16, 54, 56.
"strator" of Edward the Confessor flies with the Normans in 1052, i. 68.
bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester.
Alfric, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
archbishop of York. *See* York.
ealdorman of Mercia, killed at Assandun, i. 43.
Alfsy. *See* Elfsy.
Alfwin, bishop of Elmham. *See* Elmham.
Algalus, king of Britain, i. 6; is deposed, restored, and reformed, *ib.*
Aliersmunt, forest of, ii. 166.
Alkubaz (Alcobaça), abbey of, sacked by the Saracens, ii. 92.
Allerton. *See* Northallerton.
Allobroges, Brennus duke of, i. 6, 11.
Almada, in Spain, taken by the emperor of Morocco in 1191, ii. 15.

Almar, "dilectus," is on Canute's side at Sherstone, i. 40.
the archdeacon, betrays Canterbury, i. 33.
bishop of Selsey. *See* Selsey.
Almaria, in Spain, taken by the crusaders in 1148, i. 174.
(Almeria) in Spain, i. 404; silk of, 404, 406.
Almilan, a promontory in Spain, i. 403.
Almiramimoli. *See* Morocco.
Almorav', E. and S., concerned in the Spanish award, i. 278.
Alnestowe, surrender of Fawkes de Breauté at, ii. 254.
Alnwick, castle of, besieged by William the Lion, i. 226; he is taken prisoner there, 17, 227, 230.
Alphege, ealdorman of Devon, i. 46.
Alphege, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Alsius, abbot of Bath, dies in 1087, i. 99.
abbot of Peterborough, sent to Normandy in 1013, i. 35.
Alword, bishop of London. *See* London.
Amalfi, Richard passes, on his way to Sicily, i. 408; taken by Henry VI., ii. 75.
Amalric, king of Jerusalem. *See* Jerusalem, Cyprus.
Amboise, peace made between Henry II. and Becket at, i. 190, 191; castle of, promised by the younger Henry to Theobald of Blois, 215; interview between Henry and his sons at, 233; taken by Philip in 1189, 366.
Ambrosius, S., flourished in the reign of Constantius, i. 9.
Amesbury, abbey of, founded, i. 60; nuns of, removed for incontinency, and a colony from Fontevraud planted at, 274, 291; visited by Henry II., 290; the bishop of Bangor consecrated at, 291.
Amiens, marriage of Philip and Botilda at, ii. 42.
Drogo de, messenger between Richard and Philip at Acre, i. 453.
Amphibalus, S., discovery of his relics in 1177, i. 296, 297.
Amposta, in Spain, i. 404.
Amunderness, given by Athelstan to York, i. 13.
Anagni, John of, cardinal; sent to arbitrate between Henry and Philip in 1188, i. 363; attends a conference in 1188, 364; Philip rejects his intervention and accuses him of corruption, 365; visits England and disapproves the agreement of the archbishop and monks of Canterbury, 383, 384; confirms the election of archbishop Geoffrey, 386; leaves England with Richard, 387.
Ancenis, taken by Henry II. in 1174, i. 230; Gwivinou de, 230.
Andely, claimed Philip in 1196, ii. 96; Richard builds a castle at, 103; the archbishop of Rouen appeals to Rome about, 103; hearing of the cause, 105, 106; settlement of it, 106; meeting of the kings proposed at, 108; meeting of archbishop Geoffrey and the canons at, 123; Henry of Saxony visits Richard at, 125; meeting of Philip and Richard at, 139; demanded by Philip in 1199, 149; referred to, 177; meeting of the kings at, in 1201, 184; John confirms the exchange of 166.
forest of, ii. 177.
Andria, Roger count of, at the pacification of Venice, i. 302; maintains the cause of Constance against Tancred and is taken prisoner by the count of Acerra, 388.
Androgeus, duke of London in the time of Julius Cæsar, i. 7.
Androgius, king of Britain, i. 7.
Anfrid, Ceokesfot, flies with the Normans in 1052, i. 68.
Angers, meeting of the sons of Henry at, i. 321; Walter of Coutances consecrated at, 326; surrendered to Arthur, ii. 144; Arthur goes to, 151; John goes to, 166.

Anglesey, seized by the Welsh in 1094, i. 110; invaded by the earls of Shrewsbury and Chester, 115.

Angoulême, William Taillefer count of, taken prisoner by Richard in 1176, i. 266; surrenders his castles, *ib.*

Bugherus, son of William, i. 266.

Uggrimus, viscount of, i. 262, 266.

Aimar, count of, attacks Richard in 1188, i. 355; and in 1194, ii. 65; included in the peace of 1193, 38; marriage of John with his daughter, 162.

Angoulême, taken by Richard in 1194, ii. 66; John is married at, 163.

Angoulême, Gerard bishop of, at the Lateran council of 1112, i. 133.

Angus, earl of, commands a division of the Scottish army in 1174, i. 226; is a hostage, 249.

Anjou, given by king Arthur to Gayus, i. 10.

Fulk count of, gives his daughter in marriage to William, son of Henry I., i. 138; goes to Jerusalem, 138.

Geoffrey, son of Fulk; husband of the empress Matilda; quarrels with Henry I., i. 154; claims the crown of England, 159; dies in 1151, 176.

county of, given by Henry II. to his son Henry, i. 189; visited by Henry II. in 1172, 208; demanded by the younger Henry in 1173, 213; subdued by Henry II. in 1173, 224; Henry allows John a pension out of, 235; visited by the king in 1175, 237.

Annan, castle of, held by William the Lion against Henry II., i. 216.

Anno, archbishop of Cologne, i. 71, 93.

Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.

abbot of S. Saba, brings the pall to archbishop Ralph, i. 134; is legate in 1116, but sent back by the English, 136.

dean of S. Martin's, Tours, negotiates

Anselm—*cont.*

a treaty between Richard and Philip in 1194, ii. 64, 66.

Antichrist, speculations on, i. 423–426.

Antioch, see of, founded by S. Peter, i. 8.

besieged and taken by the crusaders, i. 115; visited by Conrad and Lewis in 1148, 174; the patriarch of, writes to Henry II., 356; entrails of Frederick I. buried at, 362.

Reginald of Châtillon, prince of, killed by Saladin, i. 346.

Bohemond III. prince of, acquires Tripoli, i. 347; visits Richard in Cyprus, 441; takes part in the war, *ib.*; is aided by Philip and Richard after the capture of Acre, 455.

Antlena, disputed by Castille and Navarre, i. 281, 282.

Antwerp, Richard is conducted under imperial safe-conduct from Cologne to, ii. 50; is under the duke of Louvain, *ib.*

Aosta, valley of, part of the Maurienne settlement, i. 210.

Appleby, castle of, taken by William the Lion, i. 225.

Aptol, disputed by Navarre and Castille, i. 281, 282.

Apulia, conquered by Robert Wiscard, ii. 11, 12; given by Roger Wiscard to his son Roger, 12; visited by Edgar Atheling, i. 99; and by Philip on his return from Palestine, 13.

Roger duke of, besieges Capua in 1098, i. 116.

Roger duke of, crowned king of Sicily, ii. 12.

Aquabella, Geoffrey de, ambassador of the count of Maurienne, i. 212.

Aquapendente, recovered by the pope in 1197, ii. 113.

Aquigny, assigned to Philip in the peace of 1194, ii. 67.

Aquileia, Henry IV. goes through, in 1078, i. 93; Richard shipwrecked near, ii. 24.

Aquitaine, conquered by Arthur, i. 10; given to Richard in 1170, 189; rebellion of, in 1173, 216; the barons of, attack Richard in 1183, 320, 321; conquered by Philip, ii. 197.
Arabs, adventure of the pilgrims with, in 1086, i. 77, 78.
Arazuri, P. de, i. 278.
Archiac, taken by Richard in 1176, i. 266.
Ardagh, Christian bishop of, i. 203.
Ardfert, see of, i. 203.
Ardmore, see of, i. 203.
Aredek, king of Britain, i. 7.
Areis, P. de, envoy of Castille to Henry II., i. 278.
Arfast, bishop of Elmham. *See* Elmham.
Argentaire, island passed by Richard I., i. 396.
Argentan, taken by Philip I. of France, in 1094, i. 110; Henry II. hears of the murder of Becket, at, 194; the younger Henry flies to, in 1173, 213; Henry II. keeps Christmas 1174, at, 237; punishment of Adam the vice-chancellor at, 267; Henry summons his forces to, in 1177, 308; Matilda of Saxony bears a son at, in 1181, 318.
Richard of, has the martyrdom of S. Edmund painted at Damietta, ii. 243.
Aribo, archbishop of Mentz, i. 46, 52.
Arles, city of, i. 405; ii. 43.
Kingdom of, given by Henry VI. to Richard I., ii. 43; its extent, *ib.*; Richard was to be crowned king of, 43, 44, 45.
Archbishop of, dies at Acre, i. 427.
Armagh, Gelasius, archbishop of, i. 203.
Armenfred, bishop of Sion, legate to England in 1062, i. 76; and in 1070, 86; takes part in the councils of Winchester and Windsor, 87; consecrates Walkelin bishop of Winchester, *ib.*
Armenia, Rupin of the mountain, prince of, i. 362.
Armenia—*cont.*
Frederick I. drowned in, i. 362.
Leo, prince of, ii. 183.
Armenians, in Cyprus, i. 447, &c.
Armorica, i. 9. *See* Brittany.
Arnedo, staked by the king of Castille on Henry's award, i. 277; entrusted to D. Semenes, 278.
Arnulf, bishop of Rochester. *See* Rochester.
Arques, castle of, pledged by Richard, in 1193, to the archbishop of Rheims, ii. 39; given by Philip to John, 45; John's boast concerning, 51; Richard offers to settle it on Lewis and Eleanor, 91; quitclaimed by Philip to Richard in 1196, 96.
Arragon, kingdom of, described, i. 407, ii. 17; Majorca and Minorca belong to, i. 406.
Alfonso II. king of, included in the truce between Castille and Navarre, i. 279; invades Navarre, 429; entertains Berengaria at Marseilles, ii. 45.
Peter king of, makes peace with Navarre, ii. 159; killed in battle in 1213, 215.
Arras, Robert, provost of Aire, elect of, i. 217.
Henry bishop of Albano dies at, i. 361; besieged by the count of Flanders in 1197, ii. 107.
Arsouf, battle of, in 1191, i. 457–461.
Arthiwal, king of Britain, i. 7.
Arthur, king of Britain; his legendary history, i, 10, 11, 12; his sword Caliburn, 433.
Arthur, son of Geoffrey of Brittany. *See* Brittany.
Arundel, castle of, fortified by Robert of Belesme, i. 120; taken by Henry I., 121; Matilda besieged in, by Stephen, 164.
Earl of, at Arthur's court, i. 12.
William of Albini, earl of; one of the sureties of Henry II. in the Maurienne treaty, i. 211; his speech at the battle of Breteuil, 218, 219; is

Arundel—*cont.*
at the battle of Forneham, i. 223; dies in 1176, 269, 270.
William son of William, has the earldom of Sussex, i. 273; has charge of Windsor Castle in 1191, 463; is one of the treasurers of Richard's ransom, ii. 33.
William, his son, takes John's side in 1215, ii. 225; deserts him in 1216, 231.
Arundel, Reginald of, precentor of York, submits to an arbitration, ii. 151; is pardoned by Geoffrey, 167; dies in 1201, 181.
Roger of, itinerant justice in 1198, ii. 128; his town of Nafferton, 188.
Arviragus, son of Cassibellianus, i. 7; defeats Claudius, 8; is king of Britain, *ib.*
Ascalon, victory of the crusaders at, i. 117; resists Saladin in 1187, 346; surrendered by Sibylla, 346, 381; Richard marches towards, 460; he goes to, in January 1192, ii. 17; repairs the walls, 17; stays there till Pentecost, 18; Saladin demands, as one of the terms of peace, 20.
Ascanius, son of Æneas, i. 3.
Asclepiodotus, king of Britain, i. 8.
Ashdown, traversed by the Danes in 1006, i. 29.
Aspromont, settled by the count of Maurienne on John, i. 209.
Assaili, Gilbert of, master of the hospital, drowned, i. 329.
Assandun, Edmund Ironside defeated at, i. 42; Canute dedicates a church at, 46.
Assassins, Conrad of Montferrat murdered by, ii. 18; attempt on the life of Richard by, 82.
Assizes, of Northampton, i. 257; of arms, 310, 312; of the forest, ii. 130, 131; of measures, 114.
Assuerus, king of Persia, i. 6.
Astralix, the old man of, i. 361.
Astura, passed by Richard on his way to Sicily, i, 397.
Athel—*See* Ethel—generally.
Atlas, mount, i. 403.
Attilena, disputed by Navarre and Castille i. 281.
Auch, Gerard, archbishop of, commander of Richard's fleet, i. 393, 398; purifies the churches of Acre, 452, 453.
archbishop of, at the council of Lyons in 1225, ii. 277.
Auguselus, king of Albania, i. 10.
Augustine, S., bishop of Hippo, i. 9.
Augustine, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Augustine, bishop of Waterford, i. 254.
Augustus, emperor of Rome, i. 7.
Aumâle, taken by William Rufus in 1090, i. 104; by Philip of Flanders, in 1173, 216; burnt by Philip of France in 1188, 357; and taken by him in 1196, ii. 97.
county of, ravaged by the bishop of Beauvais in 1188, i. 357; demanded by Philip in 1192, ii. 21; to be settled on Lewis and Eleanor, 91; quitclaimed to Richard in 1196, 96.
Stephen, count of, son of Odo of Champagne, i. 113; conspiracy against William Rufus in favour of, i. 112; it fails, 112, 113.
William, count of, commands the Yorkshire army in 1138, i. 162; wins the battle of the standard, 162; is on Stephen's side at Lincoln, and defeats the Welsh there, 168.
William de Mandeville, count of. *See* Mandeville.
Baldwin of Bethune, count of. *See* Bethune.
William de Fortibus, count of. *See* Fortibus.
Aumâle, William de Fortibus II., count of, takes John's side in 1215, ii. 225; deserts and returns to him in 1216, 231; holds Rockingham castle against Henry III. in 1220, 245; seizes Biham and Fotheringay in

Aumâle—*cont.*
1221, 247 ; acts as sovereign, 247 ; excommunicated, 248 ; flies into the north, *ib.* ; again excommunicated, 249 ; mentioned by Fawkes de Breauté, 261.
Aurelianus, king of Britain, i. 12.
Aurelius, victories of, in Britain, i. 9, 10.
Austria, Leopold, duke of, takes Richard prisoner, ii. 21 ; gives him up to the emperor, 24 ; his share of the ransom, 35, 36 ; is propitiated by Richard, 48 ; plagues that fell on him, 79 ; offers to surrender the hostages, 81 ; his death, 80, 81.
Auvergne, visited by Henry II. in 1173, i. 208 ; referred to arbitration in the peace of Yvry, 305 ; given up by Philip to Richard in 1196, ii. 96 ; invaded by Richard, 107.
Avalon, Arthur carried to, i. 11.
Avalon, Hugh of. *See* Lincoln.
Avelina, daughter of the lord of Renfrew, carried off by Duncan of Galloway, ii. 173.
Avesnes, James of, revolts against the count of Flanders in 1175, i. 251 ; is killed at Arsouf, 457, 459 ; his praises, 458, 459.
Avicus, dean of Evesham, dies in 1037, i. 54.
Avranches, purgation of Henry II. at, i. 206, 207 ; council at, 207.
William de Chimeli, bishop of. *See* Chimeli.
Axholm, isle of, fortified by Roger Mowbray against Henry II., i. 217, 228 ; captured by Geoffrey, 228 ; ravaged by John in 1216, ii. 231.
Aylesford, treachery of Edric Streone at, i. 42.
Azagra, i. 278.
Azai, conference of Philip and Henry at, i. 367.
Azaracus conquers Allemannia, i. 4.

B.

Babylonia, Egypt, ii. 34, 242.
Baffes, in Cyprus, taken by Richard, i. 442.
Baiæ, passed by Richard on his way to Sicily, i. 397.
Baillol, Bernard de, one of the Yorkshire barons in 1174, i. 226.
Bainard's castle, seized by John in 1212, ii. 207.
Baketun, castle of, taken by Stephen, i. 158.
Baldac, palmaria de, i. 361.
Baldwin, king of Jerusalem. *See* Jerusalem.
count of Flanders. *See* Flanders.
archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
a baron on Stephen's side at Lincoln, i. 167 ; his speech, 167, 168 ; is taken prisoner there, 169.
Ballon, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 365 ; and in 1199, ii. 150.
Bamberg, the emperor Henry II. buried at, i. 47 ; the bishop of, goes on pilgrimage, 77 ; Henry IV. keeps Easter 1074 at, 90 ; Heriman, bishop of, *ib.*
Bamborough, held by Robert Mowbray against William Rufus, besieged and taken, i. 112, 113 ; Henry II. offers to bestow it on the church of Carlisle, 340 ; demanded by Hugh Bardulf of Hugh de Puiset, ii. 67.
Bangor, Hervey, bishop of, i. 117, 121, 128. *See* Ely.
David, bishop of, consecrated in 1120, i. 139 ; assists at the consecration of bishops, 141, 144 ; at the council of 1127, 148.
bishop of, attends the council of London in 1177, i. 280.
Guy, bishop of, consecrated at Amesbury, i. 291.
see of, mentioned, i. 333 ; ii. 156.

Bar-sur-Seine, Hugh de Puiset, count of, lands at Hartlepool in 1174, i. 227; is entrusted with the castle of Northallerton, *ib.*; allowed by Henry II. to return home, 231; dies and is buried in the Galilee at Durham, 380.
Miles de Puiset, count of, is at Vaudreuil in 1194, ii. 64; choked in the Epte, 127.
Baranum, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
Baratto, passed by Richard on his way to Sicily, i. 396.
Barcelona, i. 404.
Bardney, Peter, prior of Lenton, made abbot of, ii. 217.
Bardo, archbishop of Mentz 1031–1037, i. 52, 54; consecrates the monastery of S. Martin, i. 54.
Bardulf, Hugh, made justiciar by Richard, i. 388; is ordered to take part in the government, 432; is sheriff of Yorkshire and justice in 1193, ii. 28; fortifies Doncaster, *ib.*; refuses as a vassal of John to besiege Tickhill, *ib.*; removed from his sheriffdom by Richard, 54; ordered to take possession of Northumberland, 60; demands it of the bishop of Durham, 67; seizes it, 68; sent to York, *ib.*; letters of Richard to, 78; receives the castles of Durham and Norham after the bishop's death, 83; a justice in 1194, 68; and in 1198, 128, 135; his advice to Hubert Walter about the chancellorship, 146; removed from the sheriffdom of Northumberland, 147; relaxes Richard's assize of measures, 188.
Barfleur, Henry II. lands at, in 1170, i. 189; and in 1172, 205; sails from, in 1174, 230; lands at, in 1174, 231; sails from, in 1175, 238; the younger Henry lands there in 1176, 262; Henry II. comes to, in 1188, 351; lands there in 1188, 357; Richard sails from, in 1189, 370; lands at, in 1194, ii. 62.
Bari, in Apulia, council at, in 1098, i. 116.
Barolum, in Naples, ii. 193.
Barre, Richard, goes on behalf of Henry II. to Rome, i. 199; writes to the king a report of his mission, 199–201; returns to the king on the flight of his son Henry, 214.
Barres, William des, entrusted with Châteauroux by Philip in 1188, i. 357; is taken by Richard but escapes, 358; tilts with him at Messina and quarrels with him, 430; intercession made for him, 431; he is forced to leave the camp, *ib.*; forgiven, *ib.*
John des, drowned in the Epte, ii. 128.
Bartholomew, bishop of Exeter. *See* Exeter.
official of Hubert Walter, opposes the election of Geoffrey, i. 372.
Basian, king of Britain, i. 8.
Basques, subdued by Richard in 1177, i. 272.
Basset, William, itinerant justice in 1176, i. 256.
Baterun, passed by Richard on his way to Sicily, i. 397.
Bath, bishops of. *See* Wells.
Bath, founded by king Bladud, i. 5; taken by Swein in 1013, 35; neighbourhood devastated by Geoffrey of Coutances, 102; Reginald Fitz-Jocelin buried at, ii. 14.
see of, proposed to be removed to Glastonbury, ii. 143.
abbots of. *See* Alsius, Elphege.
Batilda. *See* Botilda.
Battle, abbey of, consecrated, i. 109; vacant in 1175, 245; and in 1213, ii. 213.
Baudemont, settlement of, on Lewis and Eleanor proposed, ii. 91.
Baugi, given by Henry II. and Richard to Geoffrey, i. 387; restored in 1194, ii. 61.
Bavaria, Richard meets the abbots of Boxley and Robertsbridge in, ii. 25.
Welf duke of, i. 93.

Bavent, Roger of, an officer of archbishop Geoffrey, ii. 147.
Bayeux, taken by Henry I. in 1105, i. 123; settled on queen Berengaria, ii. 189; Thomas, canon of, i. 87.
Waleran, archdeacon of, i. 319.
Odo, bishop of. *See* Odo.
Henry, bishop of, is present at the submission of the younger Henry in 1175, i. 237; is at the marriage of Johanna, 292; excommunicates the disturbers of the peace in 1183, 324; goes to England before Richard, 370.
Bayonne, held by the viscount against Richard in 1177, i. 272; taken by him, *ib.*
Ernald Bertram, viscount of, i. 272.
Bernard, bishop of, one of the justices of Richard's fleet, i. 393; purifies the churches of Acre, 453.
Beauchamp, Hugh de, defends Verneuil in 1173, i. 217; sent with Johanna to S. Giles, 265; and to Sicily, 292; remains in the crusade in 1186, 343.
Beauchamp, William de, Bedford belonged to, ii. 253.
Beaufort, John, keeps Easter 1199 at, ii. 144.
Beaumont, Ralph de, lost at sea, i. 188.
viscount of, father of queen Ermengard, i. 340.
castle of, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 365.
Beauvais, battle near, in 1196, ii. 104.
Philip bishop of, invades Normandy and ravages Aumâle, i. 357; purifies the churches of Acre, 453; applies for leave for Philip to return home, *ib.*; connives at the divorce of Botilda, ii. 43; accuses Richard of bad faith, 93; is accused by Botilda, 95; is captured by John, 104; sends the bishop of Orleans to Rome, 108; his brother dies, 109; he fails in an attempt to escape, 119; offers a ransom, 138; Normandy threatened with an interdict on account of him, 149; is released, *ib.*
Bebba, queen of Northumbria, i. 112.
Bec, meeting of Henry I. and Anselm at, i. 124; death of Hugh of Nunant at, ii. 120; Anselm abbot of, i. 107; Theobald abbot of, 162.
Bede, translation of the relics of, i. 123; mentioned, 21.
Bedewer, made duke of Normandy by Arthur, i. 10.
Bedford, earl of, at Arthur's court, i. 10; besieged and taken by Stephen in 1138, 159; occupied by Fawkes de Breauté, ii. 253, 264; besieged by the king, 253–255; taken, 254.
Bedfordshire, ravaged by the Danes in 1010, i. 33; by Canute in 1016, 39; visited by itinerant justices in 1176, 256.
Belesme, Robert of. *See* Shrewsbury.
Belinus, king of Britain, i. 5; made the Fossway, 6; took Rome, *ib.*; buried at Trinovantum, *ib.*
II. reigns 40 years, i. 7.
Bellay, county of, part of the Maurienne settlement, i. 209.
Belles-mains, surname of John archbishop of Lyons, ii, 79, 167.
Belue, king, killed by Swerre Birkbain, ii. 77.
Belvoir, castle of, demanded by John, ii. 182; demolished by John in 1216, 230.
Belyud, king of Britain, i. 7.
Benedict VIII., pope in 1017, i. 45; sings mass at Fulda, 46; gives the pall to archbishop Ethelnoth, 47; dies in 1024, *ib.*
Benedict IX., pope in 1044, deposed by Henry III., i. 59.
Benedict X., pope in 1058, sends a pall to Stigand, i. 73; ejected, 74.
Benedict, prior of Canterbury, elected abbot of Peterborough in 1177, i. 291; is summoned by Richard to Germany, ii. 33.
the Jew of York, conversion and relapse of, i. 376.
Benesel, king of Britain, i. 7.

Beneventum, Gregory VII. retires to, i. 96.
Landulf, bishop of, i. 132.
Beorn, earl, mediates between Edward and Swein the son of Godwin, i. 62; is in command of the fleet at Pevensey, *ib.*; is killed by Swein, 63.
Berengaria, of Navarre, queen of England, i. 427; is brought to Brundusium to marry Richard, 431; arrives at Messina, 435; at Cyprus, 438; is married and crowned, 442; arrives at Acre, 443; is lodged in the king's palace there, 453; is left there when Richard leaves, 457; stays at Rome during Richard's captivity, ii. 45; arrives at Poictiers, *ib.*; her jointure arranged, 184, 189.
Berengarius, count, i. 129.
Bergen, Swerre crowned at, ii. 76.
Martin bishop of, present at Swerre's coronation, ii. 76.
Berkeley, plundered by the count of Eu in 1188, i. 102.
Berkhampstead, submission of the English nobles to William at, i. 82; besieged by Lewis in 1216, ii. 234.
Berkshire, invaded by the Danes in 1006, i. 29; in 1011, 33; was part of Swein's earldom, 65; portents in 1100 in, 118; and in 1103, 122; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
Bermondsey, Adam prior of, i. 185.
Bernard, bishop of S. David's. *See* S. David's.
Berry, invaded by Henry II. in 1170, i. 192; referred to in the treaty of Yvry, 306; invaded by Henry in 1177, 307; by Philip in 1187, 343; and in 1188, 357; recovered by Richard in 1188, 357, 358; Philip surrenders his conquests in, 359; and quitclaims to Richard in 1196, ii. 96.
Bersentium, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
Berter, of Orleans, his poem on the crusade, i. 348, 349, 350.
Berwick, held by William the Lion in 1173, i. 216; surrendered to Henry II. at the treaty of Falaise, 249; restored by Richard in 1189, 384; dispute about the bridge of, ii. 151; taken by John in 1216, 229.
Berytus, taken by Saladin, i. 346; given to Conrad of Montferrat, 454; passed by Philip, ii. 9; surprised by the crusaders in 1197, 111; given to king Amalric, *ib.*; he is called king of, 135.
Besançon, archbishop of, dies at Acre, i. 427.
Betenoble, Richard reaches, on his way to Jerusalem, ii. 19.
Betesowe, Frederick of, captures part of Richard's retinue, ii. 24.
Bethlehem, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Bethune, Robert of, ambassador of Flanders, i. 273.
Baldwin of, accompanies Richard from Palestine, ii. 21; takes charge of the party at Zara, *ib.*; is allowed to go home when Richard is taken, *ib.*; comes to the king at Worms in 1193, 35; is a hostage, 80; sent to Richard by the duke of Austria, *ib.*; and sent back with the princesses, *ib.*; returns on hearing of the duke's death, 81; has the county of Aumâle, 94.
John of, provost of Douay, ii. 41.
Beverege, massacre of the Worcestershire people at, i. 57.
Beverley, town of, burnt in 1189, i. 360; visit of John to, ii. 180; miracle at, 187; men of, excommunicated by Geoffrey, 169.
provosts of:
Thomas Becket, i. 185.
Geoffrey the chancellor, nephew of archbishop Roger, i. 266; drowned, 308.
Robert, dies in 1201, ii. 189.
Morgan, brother of archbishop Geoffrey, ii. 189.

Beverun, the countess of Brittany imprisoned at, ii. 98.

Biane, on the coast of Spain, i. 404.

Bigorre, the count of, fortifies Dax against Richard, i. 272.

Bigot, Roger, dies in 1107, i. 126.

Hugh, holds Norwich against Stephen, i. 158; surrenders, *ib.*; is as earl of Norfolk on Stephen's side at Lincoln, 168; troubles him in 1145, 172; has a promise of the castle of Norwich from the younger Henry in 1173, 215; is a traitor, 216; his castles, 217; receives the earl of Leicester at Framlingham, 223; burns Norwich, 227; submits and surrenders his castles, 231; his castles destroyed, 269; dies, and the king seizes his treasures, 280.

Roger, earl of Norfolk, has a dispute with his stepmother, i. 280; takes charge of the castle of Hereford in 1191, 463; is summoned by Richard to Germany, ii. 33; carries the canopy at Richard's re-coronation, 59; goes to York to try the archbishop's cause, 68; sent to conduct the king of Scots to Lincoln, 170; opposes John in 1215, 225.

Biham, castle of, held by William of Aumâle against the king in 1221, ii. 247, 248; taken by the royal forces, 249; the prisoners spared, 268.

Binham, Peter prior of, clerk to archbishop Hubert, ii. 87.

Birgham, conference between the king of Scots and the bishop of Durham at, i. 355.

Bisrohard, Gilbert de, his service given to William Fitz Aldelm, i. 289.

Bistaghnensis, bishop, i. 203.

Bladuc, king of Britain, i. 5.

Blanche, of Castille, married to Lewis of France, ii. 140, 158, 159, 177.

of Navarre, countess of Champagne, ii. 189.

Blanchewarde, in Palestine, fortified by Richard, ii. 18.

Blandriaco, count de, i. 129.

Blangi, taken by the bishop of Beauvais in 1188, i. 357.

Ble, Hemeric and Robert de, taken at Champenni, i. 224.

Bledudo, king of Britain, i. 7.

Blethogent. *See* Wales, kings of.

Blockley, Serlo blessed at, i. 153.

Blois, Theobald count of, brother of Stephen, i. 155.

Theobald, count of, writes to Alexander III. on Becket's murder, i. 195; has a promise of Amboise and Touraine from the younger Henry, 214, 215; is with Lewis at Breteuil, 218; negotiates with Henry, 219; proposal to marry his son to the heiress of Boulogne, 273; his pension continued to his son, ii. 38.

Blois, Lewis count of, proposal to marry him to the heiress of Boulogne, i. 273; has his father's pension continued to him, ii. 38.

Blund, William, servant of the younger Henry, i. 214.

Bluet, Baldwin, ambassador to Sicily, i. 263.

Blythe, meeting of Hugh de Puiset and William Longchamp at, i. 392.

Bodmin, relics of S. Petrock stolen from and returned to, i. 299.

Roger, prior of, i. 299.

Bohun, Humfrey de, constable of the king, invades Lothian in 1173, i. 223; retires on the news of the earl of Leicester's landing, *ib.*; defeats the rebels at Fornham, 223, 224.

death of his wife Margaret, ii. 189.

Henry de, earl of Hereford, son of Humfrey, nephew of the king of Scots, sent by John to conduct him to Lincoln, ii. 170; his mother's death, 189; opposes John in 1215, 225.

Boloos, in Morocco, i. 403.

Bolsover, castle of, given to John in 1189, i. 371 ; entrusted to Richard del Pek in 1191, 463.
Boniface, S., buried at Ross, ii. 83.
pope, turned the Pantheon into a church, ii. 83.
marquis, i. 129.
Bonneval, abbot of, at the peace of Venice, i. 302.
Bonneville sur Toque, Eleanor spends Christmas 1191 at, ii. 17 ; Hugh de Chaumont is imprisoned at, 103.
Bons Moulins, meeting of Henry and Philip near, i. 361.
Borgher, one of the kings killed by Swerre, ii. 77.
Bosbury, bishop Ethelstan dies at, i. 71.
Bosham, Beorn carried off by Swein from, i. 63 ; chaplaincy of, taken from Arnulf of Lisieux and given to the bishop of Exeter, 301.
Botilda, daughter of Waldemar king of Denmark, married to Philip II., repudiated by him, and divorced by French bishops, ii. 42, 43 ; complains to the pope, 94, 95 ; renews her complaint, 143 ; interdict on account of, 158 ; mediation of Octavian, 168 ; taken back by Philip, 169 ; negotiations renewed, 174 ; imprisoned, 176.
Boulogne, Eustace count of, brother-in-law of Edward the Confessor, visits him in 1051, i. 64 ; his men riot at Dover, 65 ; was father of Godfrey of Bouillon, 120.
Eustace count of, joins the rebellion against William Rufus in 1088, i. 101 ; goes on the first crusade, 113 ; returns in 1100, 119 ; is married to Mary of Scotland, 122.
Stephen, king of England. *See* Stephen.
Eustace, son of Stephen. *See* Eustace.
William count of, dies in 1159, i. 185.
Matthew count of, has a promise of Kirton in Lindsey from the younger Henry, i. 214 ; is killed at Drien-
Boulogne—*cont.*
court, 217 ; his daughters are asked in marriage by Lewis VII., 273 ; the count of Flanders promises not to marry them without Henry's consent, 275.
Reginald count of, joins the alliance of Richard against Philip in 1198, ii. 125 ; arrangement for, in the peace of 1201, 178 ; swears on John's behalf to the pope's terms, 210 ; goes to Flanders, 215 ; and taken prisoner at Bouvines, 216.
Bourdeaux, Richard keeps Christmas 1176 at, i. 272 ; visit of Eleanor and murder of Marcadeus at, ii. 159.
Elias de Malemort, archbishop of, accused by his clergy, i. 397 ; goes to Normandy in 1200 with Blanche of Castille, ii. 159 ; marries her to Lewis of France, 160 ; divorces John from his wife and marries him to Isabella of Angoulême, 162, 163.
archbishop of, reports the capture of Damietta, ii. 242 ; at Rome in 1225, 277.
Bourges, archbishopric of, claimed by Henry II. as duke of Aquitaine, i. 192 ; declaration of the archbishop, *ib.*
Henry de Soilli, archbishop of, mediates in 1189, i. 364.
archbishop of, at the council of Lyons in 1225, ii. 276.
city of, visited by Philip in 1188, i. 359.
Bovencourt, Peter de, hanged by Roger de Lacy, ii. 15.
Bovill, Arnold de, defends Castillon against Richard, i. 252.
Boxley, abbot of, at the council of Westminster in 1175, i. 239 ; sent to seek Richard in Germany, ii. 25 ; finds him at Ochsenfurth, *ib.* ; report of, 28.
Brabançons, Henry II. keeps 10,000, i. 218.

Brackley, quarrel of the king of Scots and bishop of Durham at, ii. 58; meeting of the king and barons at, in 1215, 219; proposal for a conference after the granting of the charter, 223.

Braga, see of, in Portugal, ii. 16.

Burdinus, bishop of, antipope, i. 137.

Bramtun, Stephen holds pleas of the forest at, i. 158.

Brandinus, steward of Gascony, his servant kills Marcadeus, ii. 159.

Brause, William de, engaged in war with the Welsh, ii. 124; buys estates in Ireland, 179; sells them, 180; rebels against John; his wife and son killed; exiled, 202.

Philip de, has a gift of Limerick in 1177, i. 295.

Giles de, bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.

Braybroke, H. de, imprisoned by William de Breauté, ii. 253, 264.

Breauté, Fulk de, marries the countess of Wight and rises by the favour of king John, ii. 253; his treason, *ib.*; his wife committed to the earl Warenne, 254; places himself at the king's mercy, abjures the realm, and is imprisoned at Compiegne, *ib.*; his complaint to the pope, 259–272; letter of the pope on his behalf, 272–274.

William de, imprisons a judge, ii. 253, 264.

Brecon, Rhys killed at, in 1093, i. 107.

Brennus, duke of the Allobroges, takes Rome, i. 5, 6.

Brentford, battle at, in 1016, i. 41.

Breteuil, castle of the earl of Leicester at, occupied by Henry II., i. 218; Richard allowed to fortify, in 1194, ii. 67.

Brichtheage, bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester.

Brichtmar, bishop of Lichfield. *See* Lichfield.

Brichtric, brother of Eadric Streone, accuses Wulfnoth, i. 30; pursues him at sea, *ib.*

son of Elphege, ealdorman of Devon, i. 46.

Brichtwold, bishop of Wilts. *See* Ramsbury.

Bridgenorth, fortified by Ethelfleda, i. 120; held by Robert of Belesme against Henry I. and taken, 120, 121; occupied by Hubert Walter in 1197, ii. 116.

Brienne, count of, joins the league against Philip, ii. 125.

Brienne, John of. *See* Jerusalem.

Brikwulf, king of Mercia, i. 12.

Briscou, in Provence, i. 405.

Bristol, Harold and Leofwin sail from, to Ireland, i. 66; Harold sails from, to North Wales, 77; fortified by the Mowbrays, 102; held by Robert of Gloucester against Stephen in 1138, 160; the empress Matilda comes to, 164; Stephen imprisoned at, 169; surrendered by earl William to Henry II., 245; entrusted to the bishop of London in 1191, 463; council at, in 1216, ii. 234.

Brito, Richard, one of Becket's murderers, i. 193.

Brittany, Armorica, Constantius, brother of the king of, i. 9; flight of earl Ralph to, 91; invaded by William I., 92; subdued by Henry II. in 1170, 187; given to his son Geoffrey, 190; expedition of Henry to, in 1173, 220, 221; Geoffrey is sent to, in 1175, 238; duke of, made a vassal of Normandy, 434; ii. 160; invaded by Richard, ii. 98.

counts of; Brian, count of, i. 85.

Conan, his daughter married to Geoffrey, son of Henry II., i. 186, 190, 222.

Constance, daughter of Conan, i. 186, 190, 222; bears a son, Arthur, 342; meets the earl of Chester her husband at Pont-Orson, and is im-

Brittany—*cont.*
prisoned by him, ii. 98; gives up her son to Philip, 144; elopes with Guy of Thouars, 151; death of her mother, 189; dies in 1201, 189.
Arthur, duke of, born, i. 342; is declared heir to Richard, 416; betrothed to a daughter of Tancred, *ib.*; declared a vassal of Normandy, 434; adheres to Philip in 1196, ii. 98; recommends Peter of Dinan to Richard, 99; returns to Richard in 1198, 125; Angers given up to him on Richard's death, 144; Anjou, Maine, and Touraine adhere to him, *ib.*; given up by his mother to Philip, *ib.*; sent to Paris and knighted, 149; Philip demands Poictou for him, *ib.*; William des Roches asserts his cause against Philip, 150; and carries him off to le Mans, *ib.*; is threatened with imprisonment, *ib.*; does homage to John, but remains with Philip, 160; death of his mother and grandmother, 189; knighted by Philip, and taken prisoner by John, 196; disappears, *ib.*; saying of the Bretons about him, *ib.*; mentioned, 260.
Peter, count of, married to Arthur's half sister, 233; joins Lewis in England, *ib.*
Margaret of Scotland, widow of the count of, i. 186; dies, ii. 189.
Alan of, earl of Richmond, is on Stephen's side at the battle of Lincoln, i. 166, 168.
Eleanor of, her wardship claimed by Philip, i. 341; proposal to marry her to a son of the duke of Austria, 36; sent to Austria, 80; brought back, 81; proposal to marry her to Lewis of France, 913; Peter de Mauley accused of a purpose to betray her to the king of France, 260.
Briwere, Brewer, William, made justice by Richard, i. 378; reappointed, 388, 432; joins Richard at Worms, ii. 35; negotiates a truce with Philip, 37; sent to York, 68; justice in 1194, 68, 71.
Broc, Ranulph de, has custody of Hageneth, i. 223.
Bromley, Leofric dies at, i. 72.
Bruges, Hardicanute visits his mother at, i. 55; Gunhilda retires to, 59; Osgod Clapa sends his wife to, 62.
Bruil, Salt de, sent by Richard to Palestine, ii. 49.
Brundusium, Eleanor arrives at, i. 431; Richard's ship seen at, ii. 23.
Brunfeld, Griffin of, does homage to Henry II., i. 289.
Bruno, martyrdom of, in 1010, i. 31.
bishop of Würzburg dies in 1035, i. 53.
Brunswick, Otho IV. defeats Philip of Swabia at, ii. 161.
Brurolles, lordship of, ii. 176.
Brutus, founder of the kingdom of Britain, i. 3, 4, 24, 25, 26.
Vertescu, king of Britain, i. 4.
Buckinghamshire, ravaged by the Danes in 1010, i. 33; by Canute in 1016, 39; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
William of Blois, archdeacon of, ii. 240.
Bucquinte, Andrew, plays the robber in London, i. 285.
Buet, Peter de, envoy of the count of Maurienne, i. 212.
Buffevent, in Cyprus, taken by Richard, i. 442.
Bulendun, Res, brother of Griffin, put to death at, i. 69.
Bungay, held by Hugh Bigot against Henry II., i. 217; surrendered, 231; demolished, 269.
Bur, Henry II. keeps Christmas 1170 at, i. 192; his son Henry submits to him at, 237; Richard keeps Christmas 1189 at, 389; and 1196, ii. 105; John keeps Christmas 1199 at, 157.

Burdinus, bishop of Braga, antipope, i. 137.
Bures, taken by William Rufus, i. 110.
Burgh, Geoffrey de, bishop of Ely. *See* Ely.
Burgh, Hubert de, chamberlain to John, made warden of the Welsh Marches, ii. 184; justiciar of England, 250, 259; marries Margaret of Scotland, 250; quarrels with the earls in 1222, 251; attests a letter of Henry III., 255; long complaint of Fawkes de Breauté against, 259–272.
Burgh, castle of, taken by William the Lion, i. 225.
Burgos, in Spain, i. 283.
Burgundy, pope Gelasius flies to, i. 137.
Hugh, duke of, mediates in 1189, i. 366; is at Messina with Philip, 411; is a treasurer of the crusade, 412; dines with Richard at Christmas 1190, 429; intercedes for William des Barres, 430; carries letters between Philip and Tancred, 433; asks leave for Philip to go home, 453; fetches the prisoners from Tyre, 456; beheads them, 457; commands the French at Arsouf and flies, *ib.*; refuses to join in the siege of Jerusalem, ii. 15; deserts Richard at Ascalon, 18; sends for Conrad, *ib.*; gives up Karrakois, 18; dies at Acre, 20.
Burona, claimed by Castille from Navarre, i. 276.
Burrillun, Geoffrey de, taken prisoner at le Mans in 1189, i. 365.
warden of Ballon in 1199, ii. 150.
Burriz, taken by Richard, ii. 126, 127.
Burton-on-Trent, Richard Malebranche made abbot of, i. 300.
Roger, prior of Sherborn, made abbot, ii. 216.
Burton in Lindsey, Henry Marshall ordained at, i. 379.
Buterun, passed by Phillip, ii. 9.
Butevillein, Robert, dean of York, dies, i. 340.
Buteville, battle near, in 1176, i. 265; taken, 266.
Buttavant, Richard builds, on an island in the Seine, ii. 138; Philip builds a castle against it, 139; conference between John and Philip near, 149; and again, 159.
Buttercram, licence for a fair at, ii. 161.
Byblus, shipwreck of the crusaders at, ii. 191.
Byligesleage, peace between Harold and Alfgar at, i. 71.

C.

Cacermin, in Morocco, i. 403.
Cadaques, in Spain, i. 405.
Cador, king of Cornwall, i. 10.
Cadwallan, king of Britain, i. 12.
Cadwallo, king of Northwales, i. 10.
Caen, Lanfranc, abbot of, i. 87; Thurstan, abbot of Glastonbury, a monk of, 96; queen Matilda buried at, 97; William I. buried at, 100; abbey of S. Stephen founded by him at, 100; taken by Henry I. in 1105, 123; Henry I.'s body brought to, 156; Henry II. meets the legates at, 205; keeps Christmas 1173 at, 225; imprisons the captive earls at, 231; he is there in 1175, 237; the count of Flanders visits him at, 238; the disturbers of peace excommunicated at, in 1183, 324; Henry II. keeps Christmas 1187 at, 351; the abbot of, sent to England to inquire into the exchequer, ii. 97; he dies, 97; Fulk of Neuilly visits, 137; exchequer at, 189; rain of blood at, in 1212, 205.
Caerleon, archbishop of, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
Cæsarea, taken by Saladin, i. 346; given to Geoffrey of Lusignan, i. 455; rebuilt by Richard, ii. 15.
Caffarmundel, taken by Saladin, i. 346.

Cagnanum, part of Johanna's settlement, i. 294.
Caiphas. *See* Haifa.
Caithness, termination of the Fossway in, i. 6 ; invaded by William the Lion, ii. 100 ; part of it given to Harold Mac Madit, 100 ; bought by Reginald, 101.
Reginald earl of, ii. 100 ; Harold the younger, earl of, 100 ; Reginald, son of Somerled, earl of, 101.
bishop of, at Northampton, in 1176, i. 259.
Calabria, ii. 10, 12.
Calaguna, pledged by the king of Castille, i. 279.
Calais, Richard lands at, in 1189, i. 387.
Calenzun, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Caliburne, the sword of Arthur, i. 433.
Calice, a port in Spain, i. 403.
Calixtus II. pope in 1119, i. 138 ; holds a council at Rheims, 138 ; consecrates Thurstan, 139 ; captures the antipope, 141.
Calixtus (John of Struma) antipope, i. 303.
Calpes in Spain, i. 403.
Camboe, Berlo de, i. 212.
Cambray, Peter of Flanders renounces his election to, i. 217 ; Robert of Aire elected to, 217 ; the bishop elect of, taken prisoner by Philip and released, ii. 149.
Cambridge, burnt by the Danes, in 1010, i. 32 ; earl Ralph defeated near, in 1074, 91 ; the supporters of Lewis assemble at, in 1217, ii. 235.
Cambridgeshire, ravaged in 1010 and 1011, i. 32, 33 ; men of, defeated at Ringmere, 32 ; part of Harold's earldom, 65 ; promised by the younger Henry to David of Scotland, 215 ; visited by justices in 1176, 256.
Camera, in Maurienne, i. 209.
Campenni, castle of, taken by Henry in 1173, i. 224.
Camvill, Richard de, sent by Henry II. to Sicily, i. 263 ; placed in command of Richard's fleet, 393, 398, 401, 402 ; arrives at Marseilles, 408 ; at Messina, 408 ; made governor of Cyprus, 443 ; dies at Acre, 447.
Camvill, Girard de, deprived of the sheriffdom of Lincoln by Longchamp, i. 462 ; restored by treaty, 463 ; deprived by Richard, ii. 54 ; accused by Longchamp at Nottingham, 55 ; accepts wager of battle, 55.
Nicolaa de, defends Lincoln in 1216, ii. 230.
Canavesia, counts of, i. 210.
Cancia, Robert, mission of, to Rome, ii. 261, 262.
Candare, castle of, in Cyprus, i. 442.
Candelarium, part of Johanna's settlement, i. 294.
Caningamerse, ravaged by the Danes in 1010, i. 32.
Cannock Chase, panic of the deer in, ii. 204.
Canterbury, archbishops of :
Augustine, i. 19, 20.
Justus, i. 20.
Plegmund, consecrated seven bishops in one day, i. 126.
Dunstan, his prophecy about Ethelred, i. 39.
Alfric, dies in 1006, i. 28.
Elphege, bishop of Winchester, succeeds in 1006, i. 29 ; is taken prisoner by the Danes in 1011, 33 ; and murdered, 34 ; his body is removed to London and translated to Canterbury in 1023, 47.
Living, becomes archbishop in 1013, i. 34 ; dies in 1020, 46.
Ethelnoth (Agelnoth, Alfthelnotus), son of Agelmar, succeeds in 1020, i. 46 ; goes to Rome for his pall, 47 ; dies in 1038, 55.
Edsius, chaplain to Harold, becomes archbishop in 1038, i. 55 ; crowns Edward the Confessor, 58 ; Siward his coadjutor, 63 ; dies in 1050, 64.
Robert, bishop of London, succeeds in 1050, i. 64 ; flies with the Normans

Canterbury, archbishops of—*cont.*
in 1052, 68; continues to claim his see, 76, 86.
Stigand, made bishop of the East Angles, i. 55; of Winchester, 61; intruded into Canterbury during Robert's life, 76, 86; received his pall from Benedict X., 63, 83; forbidden to act as bishop, 86; goes with William I. to Normandy in 1067, 83; deposed in 1070, 87; the bishops of his time avoided being consecrated by him, 87.
Lanfranc, abbot of Caen, appointed in 1070, and consecrated, i. 87; consecrates Thomas of York, 88; goes to Rome for his pall, 88; advises Waltheof to reveal the conspiracy of the earls, 90; receives his confession, 92; consecrates Robert of Hereford, 93; crowns William Rufus, 100; supports him in 1088, 102; dies in 1089, 104; the primacy secured to Canterbury under him, 378.
Anselm, abbot of Bec, nominated by William Rufus in 1093, i. 107; consecrated by Thomas of York, 109; receives the pall, 111; consecrates bishop Sampson of Worcester, 113; goes into exile, 114; confounds the Greeks at the council of Bari, 116; recalled by Henry I., 119; crowns queen Matilda, 119; holds a great council in 1102, 121; quarrels with the king and goes to Rome, 122; is reconciled with Henry in 1106, 124; Henry writes to him, 125; he holds a council in 1107, and settles the investitures, 125; consecrates five bishops, 125; holds a council in 1108, 126; consecrates two bishops in 1108, 127, 128; dies in 1109, 128.
Ralph, abbot of Seez, present at the opening of S. Cuthbert's tomb in 1104, i. 123; consecrated to Rochester in 1108, 128; chosen archbishop in 1114, receives the pall in 1115, 134; consecrates the bishop

Canterbury, archbishops of—*cont.*
of Worcester, 134; of S. David's, 135; of Rochester and Hereford, 135; quarrels with Thurstan, 135; visits the king at Rouen and goes to Rome, 136; is ill in Normandy, 138; returns to England in 1120, 139; consecrates the bishop of Bangor, 139, and of Hereford, 140; crowns the new queen, 139; consecrates the bishops of Coventry and Norwich, 141; the bishop of Dublin, 141; dies in 1122, 142.
William, prior of Chick, elected archbishop, and consecrated in 1123, i. 142; goes to Rome, receives the pall and returns to Normandy, 142; to England, 143; consecrates bishops of Lincoln and Bath, 143; goes abroad in 1124, 143; consecrates the bishops of Chichester and Worcester, 144; attends a legatine council in London in 1125, 145; goes to Rome and is made legate, 147; takes the oath to the empress, 147; takes charge of Rochester Castle, 148; holds a council at Westminster in 1127, 148–150; blesses Abbot of S. Augustine's, 150; consecrates the bishop of London, 151; blesses the abbot of Lewes, 152; consecrates the bishops of Winchester and Coventry in 1129, 152; dedicates Canterbury Cathedral, 152; and Rochester, 153; consecrates the bishop of Hereford in 1131, 153; quarrels with the bishop of Lincoln in 1133, 153; goes to Normandy in 1134, 154; adheres to Stephen contrary to his oath, 156; buries Henry I., 157.
Theobald, abbot of Bec, made archbishop in 1138, i. 162; intercedes for the captive bishops, 163; goes to Rome in 1143, 171; consecrates the bishop of Lincoln in 1148, 175; hold a council at London in 1151,

Canterbury, archbishops of—*cont.*
176; refuses to crown Eustace, 177; mediates between Stephen and Henry, 181; sends for Henry on Stephen's death, 183; crowns him, 184; died in 1161, 185.
Thomas, the chancellor, succeeds in 1162, i. 185; consecrates the bishops of Hereford and Worcester, 186; quarrels with the king, 186; goes into exile, 186; appeals against archbishop Roger in 1170, 190; mediation of the king of France on his behalf, 190; he is reconciled with the king, returns to Canterbury and publishes the papal sentence against the bishops, 191; history of his martyrdom, 193, 194; letters of his friends to the pope, 195–199; his translation in 1220, ii. 245; his relics taken to Rome, 246; church dedicated to him at Damietta, 242.
Richard, prior of Dover, elected and confirmed in spite of the opposition of the younger king, i. 228; consecrated and has the pall, 229; meets the king at Barfleur, 231; sent to England, 231; consecrates four bishops, 236; holds a legatine visitation and quarrels with the archbishop of York, 236; holds a council at Westminster, 238; his canons, 239–243; further dispute with archbishop Roger, 244; tries to force the bishop of S. Asaph to reside, 244; sends Robert of Hinglisham to the vacant churches, 245; attends court at Woodstock, 245, 246; and at Windsor, 252; quarrels with archbishop Roger about the bearing of his cross, 254; deposes the abbot of Peterborough, 255; in 1176, at Northampton, claims the obedience of the Scottish church, 260; at Westminster has a struggle with archbishop Roger, 260, 261; bribes the legate, 261;
Canterbury, archbishops of—*cont.*
goes to Flanders as ambassador, 263; at a council at Winchester is reconciled with archbishop Roger, 264, 265; in 1177 sent to Waltham to receive the resignation of the dean, 274; is at the council on the Spanish award, 280; receives the profession of the bishop of S. David's, 284; celebrates mass at Wye, 287; visits Amesbury, 290, and consecrates the bishop of Bangor, 291; confirms the elections to Whitby and Kirkby, 291; visits Waltham, 295; institutes regular canons there, 296; advises the king to appeal to Rome against the legate, 300; receives in 1181 the resignation of the elect of Lincoln, 310, 311; in 1183 excommunicates the disturbers of peace, 324; consecrates Walter of Coutances, 326; has a vision and dies in 1184, 329.
Baldwin, bishop of Worcester, saves Gilbert Plumpton, i. 330; is elected archbishop, 331; and accepted by the king and his sons, 332; takes the cross, 335; receives the pall and consecrates the bishop of Rochester, 337; of Lincoln, 339; marries the king of Scots, 340; consecrates bishops of Worcester and Exeter, 340; attests the ordinance of the Saladin tithe, 354; returns to England and consecrates the bishop of Coventry, 354; preaches the crusade at Geddington, 355; sent as envoy to France in 1188, 357; seizes the priory of Canterbury, 363; returns to England and forbids the marriage of John, 371; crowns Richard, 373, 374; speaks flippantly of a converted Jew, 376; is at the council of Pipewell, 377; claims the consecration of archbishop Geoffrey, 377; is reconciled with his monks and consecrates the new bishops, 383; goes to Nor-

Canterbury, archbishops of—*cont.*
mandy, 390; to Marseilles and Acre, 398; dies at Acre, 427.
Reginald, bishop of Bath, elected archbishop, and dies, ii. 14.
Hubert Walter, a clerk of Ranulf Glanvill, i. 340; made dean of York, *ib.*; opposes the election of archbishop Geoffrey, 372; consecrated bishop of Salisbury in 1189, 383; appeals against Geoffrey, 386; goes to Normandy, 391; to Marseilles and Acre, 398; collects money for the famine, 420; purifies the churches there, 453; sent to Tyre for the prisoners, 456; visits Richard in captivity, ii. 30; is elected to Canterbury, 33, 40; is one of the treasurers of the ransom, 33; receives the pall, 42; becomes chief justice, 44; discovers John's treason and excommunicates him, 51; takes Marlborough and Lancaster, 52; has his cross carried in the province of York, 53; is at the council of Nottingham, 54; witnesses the arrangement for the safe-conduct of the king of Scots, 57; goes to Brackley, 58; re-crowns Richard, 59; complains of archbishop Geoffrey, 61; letter of Richard to him, 65, 66; sends a commission to York to inquire into Geoffrey's doings, 68; makes his brother Theobald collector of the tournament fines, 74; made legate of all England, 87; holds a legatine visitation at York, *ib.*; deposes and imprisons the abbot of Thorney, 89; his judicial edict, *ib.*; his treatment of William Fitz Osbert, 97, 98; offers to resign the justiciarship, but withdraws the offer, 102; collected 1,100,000 marks from England in two years, *ib.*; blesses Robert Longchamp as abbot of S. Mary's, York, 105; makes peace in Wales, 108; takes possession of the castles of Hereford, Ludlow, and Bridgenorth, 116; proposes, at Richard's request, the maintenance of 300 knights for foreign warfare, but is defeated by Hugh of Lincoln, 118; consecrates Eustace bishop of Ely, 119; and Geoffrey Muschamp to Coventry, 121; complaints of the monks of Canterbury against, 122; resigns the justiciarship, *ib.*; demolishes his college at Lambeth, 123; goes to Normandy and negotiates for peace with Philip, 128; after Richard's death assembles the barons at Northampton to swear fealty to John, 144, 145; prevents the Scottish envoys from approaching John, 145; meets the bishops in London and crowns John, 146; is made chancellor, *ib.*; reproved by Hugh Bardulf, *ib.*; urges John to forbid the return of archbishop Geoffrey, 152; is directed to consecrate Giraldus Cambrensis, 157; consecrates the bishops of Norwich and Hereford, 166; makes final peace with his monks, 167, 168; holds a council at London, 168; crowns John and his queen, 169; is at the Scottish homage at Lincoln, 171; at S. Hugh's funeral, 172; his brother Theobald settled in Ireland, 180; crowns John and Isabella at Canterbury, 182; enforces the papal mandate for a new crusade, 189; dies in 1205, 197; controversy following his death, *ib.*
Stephen Langton, cardinal priest, elected by the proctors of the monks, ii. 198; consecrated, *ib.*; opposed by the king, 199; interdict on account of his exile, *ib.*; consecrates the bishop of Lincoln in 1209, 200; returns to England in 1213, 213; absolves the king, *ib.*; consecrates the bishops of Exeter and Worcester, 217; John grants him the gift

Canterbury, archbishops of—*cont.*
of the see of Rochester, 217; consecrates the bishops of Chichester and Lichfield in 1215, 218; mediates between the king and the barons, 219; ordered by the pope to quash all conspiracies against John, *ib.*; holds a council at Oxford, 220; negotiates the granting of the charter, 221; takes charge of the Tower of London, *ib.*; attempts to arrange a conference between the king and the barons, 223; is summoned to Rome, *ib.*; suspended by Pandulf, goes to Rome, 225; is silent at the Lateran council, but is relieved from suspension, 228; is at Rome when Henry III. is first crowned, 233; returns to England in 1218, 240; appoints the abbot of Fountains to Ely, 241; examines into the miracles of S. Hugh, 243; consecrates the bishop of Ely, *ib.*; is directed to crown Henry III. a second time, 244; crowns him, *ib.*; translates S. Thomas of Canterbury, 245; goes to Rome and carries relics to the pope, 246; is at Rome when the bishop of London is consecrated, 249; returns home, 250; in 1222 mediates between the earls of Chester and Salisbury and Hubert de Burgh, 251; holds a council at Osney, *ib.*; degrades condemned clerks, 251, 252; grants the king an aid for the siege of Bedford, 254, 255; urges the clergy to grant an aid, 257; complaints of Fawkes de Breauté against, 261–272; joins in the answer to the legate Otho, 279.
Canterbury, Robert Kilwardby archbishop of, crowns Edward I., i. 19.
Canterbury, city of, buys off the Danes in 1009, i. 31; taken in 1011, 33; Lanfranc consecrates the bishop of Hereford at, 93; Anselm receives the pall at, 111; consecrates bishops at, 125, 127; present of the bishop of London to, 128; Anselm dies at, *ib.*; Ralph receives the pall at, 134; consecrates bishops at, 135; church dedicated at, in 1130, 152; martyrdom of S. Thomas at, 193, 194; pilgrimage of Henry II. to, 230; consecration of bishops at, 236; the city and church burnt, *ib.*; pilgrimage of the count of Flanders to, 287; and of the archbishop of Rheims, 315; Henry II. visits, in 1184, 332; pilgrimage of the archbishop of Cologne to, *ib.*; visit of Richard to, 383; his transactions there, 384; he leaves, 386; pilgrimage of count Baldwin to, ii. 108; John and his wife crowned at, 182; monks of, expelled from Christ Church, 199; return in 1213, 213; Lewis goes to, in 1216, 230.
Christ Church, priors of:
Benedict, made abbot of Peterborough, i. 291.
Alan, joins in the election of Baldwin, i. 332.
Honorius goes to Rome in defence of his church, and dies, i. 363.
Roger Norreys, intruded by archbishop Baldwin, i. 383; made abbot of Evesham, *ib.*
Osbert, deposed by the monks, i. 383.
Canterbury, S. Augustine's abbey of:
Scotlandus abbot of, dies in 1087, i. 99.
Wido abbot of, dies in 1093, i. 108; Hugh abbot of, dies in 1126, 148; Hugh abbot of, blessed in 1127, 150.
vacant in 1213, ii. 213.
Alexander abbot of, dies in 1220, ii. 246.
Canute, king of England, son of Swein, chosen king by the Danes, i. 37; expelled from Lindsey by Ethelred, and kills the English hostages, *ib.*; ravages Wessex and is joined by Edric Streone, 38; is chosen king

Canute, king of England—*cont.*
by the English, 39; his battles with Edmund Ironside, 40, 41; divides the kingdom with him, 43; succeeds him, 43, 44; divides England in four, 45; marries queen Emma, *ib.*; punishes Edric Streone, *ib.*; visits Denmark in 1019, 46; has a council at Cirencester, *ib.*; dedicates a church at Assandun, *ib.*; intrigues with the Norwegians, 47; goes to Norway, 48; goes to Rome, 49; his letter to the bishops, 49–52; disposes of his dominions before his death, 52; dies in 1035, 53.
Cap de Castillon, i. 405.
Cap de Cercel, i. 397.
Cap de Croux, i. 405.
Cap de Lespurun, i. 397.
Cap de Manerbe, i. 398.
Cap de Salut, i. 404.
Cape S. Martin, i. 404.
Capella, Robert de, his death foretold by S. Hugh, ii. 174.
Henry de, arrested at Beverley, ii. 180.
Capelwyc, Henry II. lands at, in 1177, i. 304.
Capianus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Capo S. Andrea in Cyprus, i. 443.
Caporus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Capri, passed by Richard, i. 398.
Caprile, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
Captal, a castle in Spain, i. 403.
Capua, besieged by Roger duke of Apulia in 1098, i. 116.
principality of. *See* Sicily.
Sennes archbishop of, i. 132.
Peter of, cardinal deacon of S. Mary in Via Lata, sent to mediate between Richard and Philip, ii. 139; advises Philip to demolish his new castle, 140; authorized to settle the question of Philip's divorce, 143; puts France and Normandy under interdict on account of the capture of the bishops, 149; urges the kings to keep truce, 151; hears archbishop
Capua, Peter of—*cont.*
Geoffrey's case, 152; puts France under interdict and goes home, 158.
Capuacia, bishop of, envoy to Henry II., i. 262, 263.
Capuche, John, senator of Rome, ii. 76.
Caradoc. *See* South Wales.
Carausius, emperor of Britain, i. 8.
Cardigan, see of S. Patern in, ii. 155.
Carlisle, founded by Brutus Greenshield, i. 4; wall built from Newcastle to, 8; rebuilt by William Rufus, 107; taken by king David in 1136, 158; given him by Stephen, *ib.*; David takes up a position in 1149 at, 175; besieged by William the Lion in 1174, 225; visited by Henry II. in 1186, 339; Richard agrees to settle it on Otho, in case of his marrying the heiress of Scotland, ii. 95.
see of, Paulinus of Leeds refuses, i. 340.
archdeacons of. *See* Aimeric, Ros, Peter de.
bishop of, summons Fawkes de Breauté to be absolved, ii. 268.
Carnarvon, Arthur keeps Pentecost at, i. 10.
Carri, castle, held by William Luvel against Stephen, i. 160.
Carrighova, fortified by Robert of Belesme, i. 120.
Carscai, settled on Lewis and Blanche, ii. 177.
Carthage, council of, i. 241.
Carthagena, in Spain, i. 404.
Carthusians, mentioned, i. 339.
Carun, Baldwin of, his exploits at Acre, i. 422.
Casale Episcopi, near Acre, i. 382.
Cashel, council of, i. 204.
Donatus, archbishop of, i. 203, 254.
Cassel, in Flanders, battle at, i. 88.
Cassibellianus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Cassino, Monte, monastery of, pope Gelasius educated at, i. 137; Richard entertained in a priory of, 408.
Castel Arnald, in Palestine, i. 346.

Castel Bourguignon, i. 346.
Castelneuf, in Palestine, i. 346.
Castel Pagano, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
Castellamonte, in Piedmont, i. 210.
Castellis, Hugh de, taken at Forneham, i. 224.
Castille, boundaries of, i. 406; sees of, ii. 16; invaded by the emperor of Morocco, i. 201.
king of, Alfonso, son-in-law of Henry II., i. 276, 277; attacked by the emperor of Morocco in 1173, 201; his great suit with the king of Navarre, 276, 284; invades Leon, 427; and Navarre, 429; his war with the Moors in 1195, ii. 91; besieged in Toledo, *ib.*; defeats them, 94; makes peace with Navarre, 159; project of marrying his daughter to Lewis of France, 140; she is fetched by Eleanor to Normandy, 159; and married, 160; his daughter married to the king of Leon, 138.
Castre, river of, in Spain, i. 406.
Catania, visited by Richard, i. 432; tomb of S. Agatha at, 407, 432; Richard goes from, to Taormina, 433; wonders of the neighbourhood, 407.
Catellus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Cathwaledras, king of Britain, i. 12.
Catimerdes, mountains, in Asia Minor, ii. 10.
Cava Templi, in Palestine, i. 346.
Cavoreth, in Maurienne, i. 210.
Celestine II., pope in 1143, i. 171; dies in 1144, 172.
Celestine III., cardinal Jacinctus, *see* Jacinctus; becomes pope in 1191, i. 435; ordained and consecrated, *ib.*; crowns Henry VI. and Constantia, and kicks the crown from the emperor's head, 436; surrenders Tusculum to the Romans, 436, 437; attempts to separate the king of Portugal from his wife, 427; intercedes for Longchamp, ii. 6; refuses to listen to Philip's statements
Celestine III.—*cont.*
against Richard, 13; Henry VI. asks his aid against Salerno, *ib.*; sends legates into Normandy, 23; sends the pall to Hubert Walter, 42; hears the dispute about the deanery of York, 47; makes Hubert Walter legate, 87; favours Philip in the matter of his divorce, 95; appeal of the archbishep of Rouen to, 96; restores archbishop Geoffrey, 99; consecrates the bishop of Durham, 106; arranges the Rouen dispute, *ib.*; intercedes for the bishop of Beauvais, 108; refuses to allow Henry VI. Christian burial, 112, 113; offers to resign, 113; orders the restoration of the monks of Coventry, 116; dies in 1198, 119; attempted to settle the quarrel of Tours and Dol, 153.
Celorigo, staked by the king of Castille on Henry's award, i. 277, 278.
Cenenersis, Thaddeus, bishop of Kells, i. 203.
Cenred, king of Mercia, a benefactor of Worcester, i. 88.
a priest who animated the Welsh against William Rufus, 115; miracle wrought on him, *ib.*
Centius, bishop of Sabina, i. 130.
Cenulf, king of Mercia, a benefactor of Worcester, i. 88.
Cerne, abbey, account of, i. 60; Haimo, abbot of, 122.
Cerne, Richard, count of, i. 388.
Cervere, city of, in Spain, i. 404.
Chabenais, Eschiwardus de, opposes Richard in Poictou, i. 262; is compelled to surrender his castles, 266.
Chadwalanus, brother of Wenhunwyn, ii. 124.
Chahannes, William de, makes a false claim to hold in chief, i. 273.
Chalet, Ascenar de, envoy of the Spanish kings, i. 281, 282.
Châlons, council of, in 1115, i. 134.

Châlons, Rotrou, bishop of, implicated in Philip's divorce, ii. 95.
Chalus, Richard mortally wounded at, i. 17, 18, ii. 141.
Chambery, in the county of Maurienne, i. 209.
Champagne, Odo of, count of Aumâle, i. 104; imprisoned in 1096, 113.
Theobald, count of, brother of Stephen, i. 155.
Henry, count of, is with Lewis VII. at Verneuil, i. 218; is count of Troyes i. 214; death of his wife, ii. 119.
Henry, count of, son of Henry, his exploits at Acre, i. 422; is at the battle of Arsouf, 459; Darum given him by Richard, ii. 18; elected king of Jerusalem, 19; takes the command of Richard's cavalry, 20; and of the whole expedition, *ib.*; has news of Richard in 1194, 49; falls from a window and is killed in 1197, 109; re-marriage of his wife, 111; was nephew to both Philip and Richard, 19, 120.
Theobald, son of Henry, his wife Blanche of Navarre, ii. 189; dies in 1201, leaving an only daughter, *ib.*
Charité, Geoffrey de la, sent with Johanna to Sicily, i. 292.
Charité, abbot of, one of Philip's sureties, in 1196, ii. 97; his possessions seized by Richard, *ib.*
Charles the Great, king of the Franks, buried at Aix-la-Chapelle, ii. 117.
a clerk who bought the bishopric of Constance in 1071, i. 88.
Charrou, Richard's bowels buried at, ii. 142; treaty of, referred to, 176.
Chartre, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 366.
Chartres, John of Salisbury made bishop of, i. 268.
Reginald, bishop of, is with Philip at Messina, i. 411; dines with Richard on Christmas day, 429; intercedes for William des Barres, 430; cleanses the churches of Acre, 453; leaves Acre with Philip, 455; conives at Philip's divorce, ii. 43; is complained of by the queen, 95.
Stephen, count of, i. 113.
Charybdis, whirlpool of, i. 409, 417.
Châteaudun, viscount of, wounds Geoffrey of Vendome, i. 366.
Châteauneuf, in Gascony, taken by Richard in 1194, ii. 66.
Châteaurenaud, claim of Theobald of Blois on, i. 215.
Châteauroux, Ralph of Deols, lord of, dies, i. 270;
besieged by the younger Henry, 272; referred to in the peace of Yvri, 305; Philip besieges, in 1188, 343; taken by Philip in 1188, 357; committed to William des Barres, *ib.*; visited by Philip, 359; offered by him to Richard, 361; given to Andrew de Chavigny, 371.
Châtillon, interview of Henry and Philip in 1188 at, i. 359.
on the Dordogne, taken by Richard, i. 251, 252.
on the Indre, surrendered to Philip, ii. 39.
Reginald of, prince of Antioch, killed by Saladin, i. 346.
in the valley of Aosta, i. 210.
Chaumont, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 366; interview of Philip and Richard near, 369.
Hugh de, taken and imprisoned at Bonneville, ii. 103; escapes, *ib.*
Chavigny, Andrew de, marries the heiress of Châteauroux, i. 371.
Cherbourg, surrendered by Robert of Normandy to William Rufus in 1091, i. 104; Robert of Belesme imprisoned at, 133; Henry II. keeps Easter 1175 at, 238; embarks at, in 1181, 312.
Cherin, in Cyprus, taken by Richard, i. 442.
Cherinus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Chertsey, Reginald of Cornwall dies at i. 255.

Chester, Edgar rowed on the Dee by seven kings at, i. 15; monastery of S. Werburg at, 72; queen Aldgitha sent to, 82; ravaged by the Welsh in 1094, 110; visited by Fawkes de Breauté, ii. 265, 266.
castle of, held against the king in 1173, 217; retained by him in hand in 1177, 274.
cardinal Vivian lands at, i. 288.
earl of, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
Hugh, earl of, invades Wales in 1098, i. 115.
Richard, earl of, lost at sea, i. 139; his brother Othuel, *ib.*
Ranulf, earl of, holds Lincoln against Stephen in 1141, i. 165; his speech against him, 165, 166; defeats him, 169; holds out against him in 1144, 171; joins him in 1146, 173; is compelled to surrender his castles, *ib.*; attacks the king in 1147, *ib.*
Hugh, earl of, rebels in 1173, i. 216, 217; invades Brittany, 220; is taken prisoner at Dol, 221; imprisoned at Falaise, 224; taken to England, 230; and back to Normandy, and imprisoned at Caen and Falaise, 231; has submitted before the treaty of Falaise, 234; is restored to his estates, 288; sent to Ireland, *ib.*; dies in 1181, 317.
Ranulf, succeeds in 1181, i. 317; his sister married to earl David, 423; besieges Nottingham in 1194, ii. 52; carries a sword at the re-coronation, 59; meets his wife the countess of Brittany at Pontorson and imprisons her, 98; swears fealty to John at Northampton, 145; is at John's coronation, 146; is deserted by his wife, 151; takes the king's side in 1215, 225; besieges Mountsorel, 236; retires, 237; is at the attack on Lincoln, *ib.*; takes Mountsorel, 238; goes on crusade, 240; reports the capture of Damietta, 242; returns home, 246; promises to aid
Chester—*cont.*
the king against William of Aumâle, 248; takes up arms in 1222, 251, 261; makes peace, 251; mentioned in Fawkes de Breauté's complaint, 261, 262, 265, 267.
Chester, bishops of. *See* Lichfield.
constables of. *See* Lacy.
Chick, S. Osyth's, William, prior of, made archbishop of Canterbury, i. 142.
Chichester, city of, burnt in 1114, i. 134; and in 1187, 350; Hugh, abbot of S. Augustines, blessed at, 150; castle of, taken by the royalists in 1217, ii. 236.
bishops of, Stigand, dies in 1087, i. 99.
Ralph, is at the council of London in 1102, i. 121; assists at the consecration of bishops, 127, 128.
Sigefrid, abbot of Glastonbury, elected in 1125, i. 143; consecrated, 144; assists at the consecration of the bishop of Worcester, *ib.*; is at a council at London in 1127, 148; assists at the consecration of the bishop of London, 151; at the dedication of Canterbury cathedral, 152.
John, consecrated in 1174, i. 236; is at the council of London in 1175, 239; and at Woodstock, 246; at London in 1177, 280; is present at the gift of Bosham to Exeter, 301.
Seffrid, summoned by Richard to Germany, ii. 33; dies in 1204, 197.
Simon, archdeacon of Wells (*see* Wells), succeeds in 1204, ii. 197; dies in 1207, 198; see vacant in 1213, 213.
Richard, dean of Salisbury, consecrated in 1215, ii. 218; translated to Salisbury in 1217, 240.
Ranulf, prior of Norwich, appointed in 1217, ii. 240; is at the translation of S. Wulfstan, *ib.*; dies in 1223, 252.
Ralph Neville succeeds in 1223, ii.

Chichester, bishops of—*cont.*
252; absolves the garrison of Bedford, 267.
Chiltern, crossed by the Danes in 1010, i. 31.
Chimili, William de, his appointment as archdeacon of Richmond disputed by archbishop Geoffrey, i. 378; one of the officers of the exchequer, ii. 73; made bishop of Avranches in 1196, 101; is elect of Angers in 1198, and sent to the election of the emperor, 117.
Chinon, Henry II. keeps Christmas 1172 at, i. 208; proposed as part of John's endowment, 212; flight of the younger Henry from, 213.
Henry keeps Easter 1181 at, i. 311; Richard carries off his father's treasures from, 344; Henry flies from le Mans to, 366; and dies at, 368; Richard visits in 1190, 393; issues his naval laws at, 394; attempt to assassinate Richard at, ii. 82; the bishop of Beauvais imprisoned at, 119; John seizes Richard's treasures at, 143; surrendered by the viscount of Thouars to John, 150; John visits, in 1201, 184; makes his final agreement with Berengaria at, 189.
Chisi, William de, his castle taken by Richard, i. 393.
Cholsey, burnt by the Danes in 1006, i. 29; monastery of, given to Reading Abbey, 61.
Christian, bishop of Whithern. *See* Whithern.
Christina, daughter of Edward Atheling and Agatha, i. 45; carried to Scotland in 1068, 84; is a nun at Romsey, 99.
Chuci, Ralph de, one of the treasurers of the crusade, i. 412.
Cibrilcimani, battle of, i. 270.
Cincius, cardinal. *See* Honorius III.
Cirencester, Canute holds a council at, i. 46; new buildings begun by Henry
Cirencester—*cont.*
I. at, 136; church dedicated at, 270; canons of, sent to Waltham, 296; abbot of, dies, 275; abbey vacant in 1213, ii. 213.
Serlo, abbot of, blessed in 1131, i. 153.
Cissa, the father of Ina, founded Abingdon, i. 61.
Cistercians, wool of, seized for Richard's ransom, ii. 32; visit of the abbots to John, 173; infringe the interdict, 199; subjected to it, 200; refuse to pay taxes in 1210, 201; are prevented from going to their chapter, *ib.*
Clackmannan, illness of William the Lion at, ii. 89.
Clairvaux, abbot of, Richard writes an account of the battle of Arsouf to, i. 458.
John archbishop of Lyons retires to, ii. 79.
Clare, Gilbert son of Richard of, lord of Tunbridge, rebels against William Rufus, i. 101; wounded, 102.
Clare, Richard, earl of, son-in-law to the earl of Gloucester, i. 268; summoned by Richard to Germany, ii. 33; is at John's coronation, 146; takes the barons' side in 1215, 225.
Clarendon, council of, i. 186; assize of, 257.
Claudiocestria, or Gloucester, founded, i. 8; Eldolf, duke of, 9.
Claudius, emperor of Rome, i. 8.
Clement, antipope. *See* Wibert of Ravenna.
Clement III., pope, succeeds in 1187, i. 348; sends the bishop of Albano to mediate between Philip and Henry, 361; and John of Anagni, 363; allows Richard to dispense from vows of crusade, 379; makes Longchamp legate, 391; letter of Richard to, 415; accepts Henry VI. as a candidate for the empire, 422; absolves Bouchard de Puiset, 423; his dealings with Tusculum, 436, 437; dies, 423, 435.

Clement, abbot of S. Mary's, York, dies, i. 332.
Clement, Alberic, marshal of king Philip, his death at Acre, i. 448.
Clementhorpe, nunnery of, given by archbishop Geoffrey to Godstow, ii. 22.
Clere, Matthew de, constable of Dover, arrests Longchamp, ii. 4.
Cleresvals, castle of, disputed by Richard and Henry, i. 321.
Clermont, in Auvergne, council of, in 1096, i. 113; bishop of, at the peace of Venice, 302.
in Beauvoisis, Ralph count of, causes a quarrel between France and Flanders, i. 312.
Cleveland, archdeacons of. *See* Geoffrey Muschamp, John Gray, Ralph of Kyme, Hugh Murdac.
Clif, the bishop of Durham allowed to enclose the wood at, ii. 126; he loses the manor of, by legal verdict, 135.
Clinton, Geoffrey de, i. 152.
Roger de, bishop of Chester. *See* Lichfield.
Clipston, visit of Richard to, in 1194, ii. 54, 56.
Clonard, Eleutherius, bishop of, i. 203.
Clonfert, bishop of, i. 203.
Clotes, king of Cornwall, i. 5.
Cloteus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Cloyne, bishop of, i. 203.
Cluny, archbishop Sigfrid of Mentz retires to, i. 89; Lanzo, a monk of, founder of Lewes, 143; pope Gelasius buried at, 138.
abbot of, his possessions seized by Richard, ii. 97.
Clusa, abbot of, arbitrator under the Maurienne treaty, i. 212.
Cobertus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Cocham, the sons of Elfhelm blinded at, i. 29.
Cocus, William, captures 80 of Philip's men, ii. 138.
Coel, duke of Colchester, i. 8.
Cogham, Miles, has the kingdom of Cork given him by Henry, i. 289.
Coimbra, bishop of, attempt of cardinal Jacinctus to degrade, i. 350.
Colchester, Coel, duke of, marries his daughter to Constantius, i. 8.
archdeacon of, Ralph, his exploits at Acre, i. 420.
castle of, surrendered by John in 1215, ii. 221; taken by Lewis, 235.
Coldingham, Herbert, prior of, acknowledges the obedience of the English church, i. 248.
Richard of, dispute following his death in 1198, ii. 135.
Coleman, monk of Worcester, dies, i. 133.
Collegium, part of the Maurienne settlement, i. 210.
Cologne, the 11,000 virgins buried at, i. 9; visited by bishop Aldred, 70; Marianus at, 73; besieged by Henry V., 134; visited by Richard in 1194, ii. 50; election of emperor at, 116; distance of Westfale from, 139.
S. Martin's, Scottish monastery at, i. 28; Kylian, abbot of, *ib.*; Helyas abbot of, *ib.*; he quarrels with the archbishop, 53; dies in 1042, 58; Maiolus succeeds, *ib.*; Marianus becomes a monk at, 71; Foillanus becomes abbot, 74.
S. Pantaleon, monastery of, governed by Helyas, i. 53; he burns a missal at, 58.
archbishops of—
Piligrinus, threatens abbot Helyas, i. 53.
Heriman, receives bishop Aldred on his embassy, i. 70; dies in 1056, 71.
Anno, succeeds in 1056, i. 71; dies in 1078, 93.
Frederick, archbishop of, in 1111, i. 129.
Philip, an ally of the emperor Frederick I., i. 302; visits Canterbury in 1184, 332; is reconciled with Henry the Lion, and joins in an invasion of Hainault, *ib.*; advises Henry II. to send an embassy to the emperor, 333.

Cologne, archbishops of—*cont.*
Adolf, archbishop of, opposes Henry VI. on account of the death of the bishop of Liege, ii. 34; arbitrates between Richard and the emperor, 48; delivers Richard to his mother, 49; does homage to him and entertains him at Cologne, 50; summons him to elect an emperor, 116; elects Otho IV., 117; crowns him, 118.
Columb, master; chosen to arbitrate between the archbishop and canons of York, ii. 152.
Comnenus, Manuel, writes to Henry II. an account of his invasion of Asia Minor, i. 270, 271; his laws in Cyprus restored by Richard, 443.
Isaac, emperor of Cyprus, captures some of Richard's people, i. 439; flies from Limasol, and is pursued and taken, 440; submits and decamps, 441; capture of his daughter, 442; he is taken and imprisoned in silver chains, 443; cuts off a friend's nose, 442; imprisoned at Tripoli, 443; and afterwards at Merkeb, 448; dies in 1195, ii. 94; his daughter continues with Berengaria and goes to Acre, i. 443; is left under the care of Bertram de Verdun, 457; stays at Rome, ii. 45; is brought to Poictiers, *ib.*; is sent to Austria, 80; and brought back, 81.
Como, Frederick I. defeated in 1176 near, i. 269.
Compiegne, Fawkes de Breauté imprisoned at, ii. 254.
Compostella, pilgrimage of Sigfrid of Mentz in 1072 to, i. 89.
pilgrims to, persecuted by the Basques, i. 393.
the younger Henry proposes to visit, i. 261.
proposed pilgrimage of Henry II. to, i. 286.
Henry the Lion goes to, i. 318.
pilgrimage of Philip, bishop of Durham, to, ii. 181, 182, 190; and of Peter des Roches, 260.
Comyn, Richard, taken prisoner at Alnwick, i. 227; hostage under the treaty of Falaise, 249.
John. *See* Dublin, archbishops of.
Conan, count of Brittany. *See* Brittany.
Conca (Cuenca) taken by the king of Morocco, i. 201.
Conches, Henry II. at, i. 218, 219; to be fortified by Richard under the peace of 1194, ii. 67; taken by Philip in 1199, 150.
Connaught, sees in, i. 203.
Roderick, king of, refuses to do homage to Henry II., i. 202, 205; sends an embassy, 252; treaty of, with Henry II., 252, 253; his son a hostage in 1181, 310; his daughter married to Hugh de Lacy, 310.
Connor, Nehemiah, bishop of, i. 203.
Cono, cardinal, holds a council at Châlons in 1115, i. 134.
Conrad, archbishop of Mentz. *See* Mentz.
duke of Swabia. *See* Swabia.
II., emperor, succeeds in 1024, i. 47; meets Canute at Rome, 50; is present at the dedication of S. Martin's at Mentz, 54; dies in 1039, is buried at Spires and succeeded by Henry III., 55.
III., emperor, joins the crusade in 1147, i. 173; his failure, 174.
of Montferrat. *See* Montferrat.
Constance, see of, sold by Henry IV., i. 88.
Constans, king of Britain, a monk at Winchester, i. 9; his brother Aurelius, 9.
Constantia of Brittany. *See* Brittany.
daughter of Constantius and Helena, i. 8.
daughter of Lewis VI., married to Eustace son of Stephen, i. 163.
daughter of Roger, king of Sicily, i. 388; married to Henry VI., 388,

Constantia—*cont.*
ii. 12; crowned empress, i. 435, 436; is at the siege of Salerno, ii. 12; taken prisoner, 13, 75; surrendered at the intercession of the pope, 13; is crowned queen of Sicily, 76; heads a party against her husband, 110; baptism of her son Frederick, 108; she swears to his legitimacy, 113; mentioned, 247.
Constantine, son of Constantius and Helena, i. 8; succeeded his father, *ib.*; conquered Rome, 9.
successor of Arthur, i. 11.
king of the Scots, defeated by Athelstan, i. 14.
Constantinople, reports of French envoys from, i. 361; Frederick I. visits, 362; Daniel of, 361.
taken by the crusaders, ii. 196, 197.
patriarch of, goes to the Lateran council of 1215, ii. 227.
Constantius, senator of Rome, marries Helena and is king of Britain, i. 8.
son of Constantius, i. 8.
brother of the king of Armorica, reigns in Britain, i. 9.
Conyers, Roger de, warden of Norham castle, i. 288; made warden of Durham, i. 288.
Corbet, Walter, a hostage of the treaty of Falaise, i. 249.
Corbridge, John searches for treasure at, ii. 181.
Cordoilla, story of, i. 5.
Cordova, in Spain, i. 407; ii. 16, 17.
Corf, Edward son of Edgar, murdered at, i. 15; Peter de Mauley has charge of, ii. 251.
Corfu, island of, ii. 13; Richard lands in, ii. 21.
Corineus, duke of Cornwall, i. 4.
Cork, king of, does homage to Henry II., i. 202; revolts from him, 295.
kingdom of, given to Miles Cogham and Robert Fitz Stephen, i. 289.
Corneburc, William de, recovers Richard's belt, i. 461.
Corneto, city of, passed by Richard, i. 396.
Cornhill, William de. *See* Lichfield, bishops of.
Cornwall, Corineus, duke of, i. 4; a duke of, husband of Regan, slain, 5; Clotes, king of, *ib.*; Cador, king of, 10; part of the kingdom of Ethelwulf, 12; Bodmin in, 299; plundered by the sons of Harold in 1068, 84; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
earl of, Reginald son of Henry I. takes Leicester in 1173, i. 222; at the battle of Forneham, 223; dies at Chertsey and is buried at Reading, 255; his kinsmen, 289, 295.
earldom of, granted to John in 1189, 371, 386.
Living, bishop of, dies, i. 60.
Coron, in Greece, ii. 13.
Corsica, island of, i. 407.
Cosham, illness of Ethelred at, i. 38.
Cospatric (Gospatrik) carries Edgar Atheling to Scotland in 1068, i. 84.
Costentin, Geoffrey du, a traitor in 1173, i. 216; holds Stockport, i. 217; his fief given to William Fitz Aldelm, 290.
Cottingham, charter for a fair at, ii. 161; John visits William Stuteville at, 180.
Coupeland, visited by the justices in 1176, i. 256.
Courcelles, taken by Richard in 1198, ii. 126, 127.
William, lord of, dies, ii. 127.
Courtrai, the castellan of, ambassador of Flanders, i. 273.
Coutances, Walter of. *See* Rouen.
John of. *See* Worcester.
Gosfrid, bishop of. *See* Gosfrid.
Coventry, Leofric buried at, i. 72; monastery of, turned into a castle by Robert Marmion, 171; monks of, persecuted by Hugh of Nunant, ii. 14; restored by Hubert Walter as legate, 116; Fawkes de Breauté at, 267.
bishops of. *See* Lichfield.

Cowton Moor, battle of the Standard fought on, i. 160.
Coylus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Crayke, the bishop of Durham empowered to enclose the woods at, ii. 126.
Crediton, Living, bishop of, has the see of Worcester in 1038, i. 55; dies, 60.
Leofric made bishop of, i. 60. *See* Exeter.
Crema, Wido of, antipope, gave a pall to Christian of Mentz, i. 304; called pope Paschal, 303.
John of, legate to England in 1125, i. 144, 145.
Cressy, Roger de, takes charge of Norfolk and Suffolk in 1215, ii. 224.
Cressi, Hugh de, itinerant justice in 1176, i. 256.
Crete, conquered by Robert Wiscard, i. 11; visited by Richard, 438.
Creun, Maurice de, messenger of Henry II. to his sons, i. 324.
Cricklade, Canute and Edric cross the Thames at, i. 38; S. Wulfstan appears to the bishop of Hereford at, 111.
Crispin, William, captured at Tenchebrai, i. 125.
Miles, dies in 1107, i. 126.
William, surrenders Dangu to Richard, ii. 107.
Croatia, the duke of Venice duke of, ii. 34.
Croch, near Waterford, Henry II. lands at, i. 202; and embarks at, 205.
Crockestun, Robert de, betrays Nottingham and Tickhill to John, ii. 15.
Crowland abbey, Waltheof buried at, i. 92; vacant in 1175, 245; sanctuary violated by Savaric de Mauleon, ii. 232.
Crowmarsh, castle of, besieged, i. 180.
Croxton, John's bowels buried at, ii. 232.
Cuckhamsley, visited by the Danes, in 1006, i. 29.
Cugustius, king of Britain, i. 5.
Cuinac, Philip of, son of King Richard, avenges his death, ii. 151.
Cumberland, subject to Edward the Elder, i. 14; and to Edgar, *ib.*; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; and in 1198, ii. 128; claimed by William of Scotland in 1194, 56; and in 1199, 145; and in 1200, 171; committed to William Stuteville in 1199, 147.
Malcolm, son of the king of, made king of Scots, i. 69.
Cumin, John, archbishop of Dublin. *See* Dublin.
Cunedac, king of Britain, i. 5.
Curazzo, Joachim, abbot of, i. 423.
Curci, William de, justice of Normandy, dies in 1176, i. 269.
John de, lord of Ulster, takes Downpatrick, i. 275; defeats the king of Ulster, 276; his wars with the Irish chiefs, ii. 109; his servants kill Roderick Macdunlef, 181; is taken prisoner by Hugh de Lacy and surrendered to King John, 190, 191.
Jordan de, killed, ii. 109.
Curck (Corycus), river in Armenia, ii. 10.
Curuasalim, adventures of the pilgrims at, i. 77.
Cusci, Ralph de, dies at Acre, ii. 20.
Cuthbert, St., his relics removed in 1104, i. 123; his shrine at Durham, ii. 83.
Cuthbras, king of Britain, i. 5.
Cuthred, MacWilliam, son of Donald, rebels against William the Lion and is hanged, ii. 206.
Cuvelu, name given to Hugh Neville, ii. 130.
Cuvelung, John, a king killed by Swerre, ii. 77.
Cyprus, conquered by Richard, i. 438–443; committed to Robert Turnham and Richard Camville, i. 443; revolt in, against Robert Turnham, 447; half of, claimed by Philip, 446; given to Guy of Lusignan for life, ii. 19; Amalric of Lusignan becomes lord of, 94.
See Comnenus, Jerusalem, Lusignan.

D.

Dalchad, in Spain, i. 402.
Damascus, besieged by Lewis VII. in 1148, i. 174; left by Saladin to one of his sons, ii. 34, 242.
Damasus, Poppo, pope in 1047, i. 61.
Damietta, taken by the crusaders, i. 17; taken in 1219, ii. 241; events that followed the capture of, 242, 243; death of Saer de Quency at, 246; betrayed to the Saracens in 1221, 250.
Dammartin, Reginald of. *See* Boulogne.
Damville, taken by Henry II. in 1173, i. 220; reserved to John in the peace of 1200, ii. 176.
Dandolo, Henry, duke of Venice, ii. 34.
Daniel, of Constantinople, i. 361.
Daneth, Simon, his castle of Daneville, burnt, i. 358.
Dangu, castle of, surrendered by William Crispin to Richard in 1197, ii. 107; retaken by Philip, *ib.*; Richard enters France at, 127.
Dargus, Baldwin, his prowess at Acre, i. 422.
Darius, king of Persia, i. 6.
Dartford, the barons proceed to, in hopes of relieving Rochester in 1215, ii. 226.
Dartmouth, Beorn killed at, i. 63; Richard's fleet sails from, in 1190, 398.
Darum, fortress of Palestine, taken by Richard, ii. 18.
David, king of Israel, i. 4.
David I., king of Scots, son of Malcolm and Margaret, succeeds his brother Alexander in 1123, i. 143; desires the consecration of the bishop of S. Andrews, 150; asks for the prior of Canterbury to be abbot of Dunfermline, 151; invades England and receives Carlisle from Stephen, 158; invades England again in 1138, and is defeated at Northallerton, 159, 160–162; makes peace in 1139, 163;
David I., king of Scots—*cont.*
joins the empress in besieging Winchester, 170; knights Henry of Anjou, 175; takes up his position at Carlisle, 175.
of Scotland, earl of Huntingdon is at Windsor at Easter, 1170, i. 188; does homage to the younger Henry, 189; has a promise of Huntingdonshire and Cambridgeshire from him, 215; turns traitor, *ib.*; holds the castle of Huntingdon against the king, 216; is sent to Leicester to help the rebels, 225; comes to York, 248; is a surety of the treaty of Falaise, 249; becomes earl of Huntingdon, i. 330; comes to court in 1185 to consider the new crusade, 335; carries a sword as earl of Huntingdon at Richard's coronation, 373; marries the sister of the earl of Chester, 423; besieges John's garrisons in Nottingham in 1194, ii. 52; opposes John in 215, 225; dies in 1219, 241.
Dax, fortified against Richard and taken, i. 272.
Peter, viscount of, i. 272.
Dee, river, Edgar rowed by seven kings on, i. 15.
Deerhurst, meeting of Canute and Edmund Ironside at, i. 43; Alfric dies at, 60; Agelwin dies at, 72.
Deirdacus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Delwain, Catwallanus of, i. 289.
Denia, in Spain, i. 404.
Denmark, visited by Canute in 1014, i. 37; in 1019, 46; given to Hardicanute, 52; Gunhilda retires to, 59; wars of Swein and Magnus in, 60.
kings of; Gulak, a contemporary of Belinus, i. 6.
Swein, king of, takes Exeter in 1003, i. 27; Wilton and Salisbury, 28; Norwich and Thetford in 1004, 28; returns to Denmark in 1005, 28; lands at Sandwich in 1013, 34; encamps at Gainsborough, 34;

Denmark—*cont.*
takes Oxford, besieges London, and is defeated by Ethelred, 35; is accepted as king by the English in 1013, 35; defies S. Edmund, has a vision and dies at Gainsborough, 36, 37.
Canute, son of Swein. *See* Canute, king of England.
Hardicanute, son of Canute. *See* Hardicanute.
Magnus, son of Olaf, king of Norway, contests Denmark with Swein and threatens England in 1045, i. 60; dies, 61.
Swein II., son of Ulf, his struggle with Magnus, i. 60; recovers Denmark, 61; assists the emperor against the count of Flanders, 62; his sons invade England in 1069, 85; outlaws his brother Esbern, 87; dies in 1076, 92.
Harold III., son of Swein, succeeds in 1076, i. 92.
Canute IV., son of Swein, invades Northumberland in 1069, i. 85; as king of Denmark threatens England in 1085, 98; is martyred by the Danes in 1087, 99; translated in 1098, 115.
Waldemar, father of queen Botilda, ii. 42.
Canute VI., son of Waldemar, brother of Botilda, ii. 42; complains to the pope of Philip's treatment of his sister, 94; obtains a legate from Innocent III., 143; is directed to produce his witnesses, 159; they appear before the legate, 175; and appeal to the pope, 175; was king when the devil was loosed, 183.
Deols. *See* Châteauroux.
Derby, earthquake at, in 1048, i. 61.
earls of. *See* Ferrers.
Derbyshire, wildfire in 1048, i. 62; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; and in 1198, ii. 128; given to John in 1189, i. 371.
Derry, Maurice, bishop of, i. 203.
Desiderius, pope as Victor III., i. 137.
Deudeamur, in Cyprus, taken by Richard, i. 442.
Devizes, castle of, bishop Roger holds an ordination at, 141; Stephen forces the bishop to surrender, 163; its magnificence, 163.
Devonshire, overrun by William the Conqueror in 1067, i. 84; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; given to John in 1189, 371; tumults in 1215, ii. 220.
men of, at the battle of Sherstone, i. 41.
Didelebyrig (Ledbury), bishop of Hereford buried at, i. 150.
Dieppe, Gilbert Assaili sails from, i. 329; burnt by the French, ii. 93; John lands at, in 1199, 148; given by Richard to the see of Rouen, 106; the gift confirmed by John, 166.
Dinan, Roland of, justice of Brittany, i. 299.
Dinan, Peter of, nominated by archbishop Geoffrey to the archdeaconry of the West Riding, ii. 77; the dean and canons of York demand the presentation, 88; he compromises the matter with their nominee, 99, 100; elected bishop of Rennes, 148.
Dionysius, computation of, i. 111.
Disders, county of, ii. 43.
Dive, William de, constable of the earl of Leicester, surrenders his castles to Henry II., i. 231.
Divilla, Eudes de, betrays Nottingham and Tickhill to John, ii. 15.
Dol, in Brittany, a castle of earl Ralph, besieged by William I., i. 92; relieved by the king of France, 92; held against Henry II. by Ralph of Fougeres, 221; besieged and taken by him, *ib.*
see of, claimed as a suffragan see of Tours, i. 208; dispute between Tours and Dol, ii. 153–155.

Dol—*cont.*
Roland, elect of, legate to Scotland, i. 318.
Dolfin, father of Ulf, i. 79.
Dolman, king of Gothland, i. 10.
Domfront, Henry II. falls sick near, i. 189; he keeps Christmas 1185 at, 339.
Richard keeps Christmas 1198 at, ii. 139.
Donald, brother of Malcolm III., chosen to succeed him in 1093, i. 108; deposed by Duncan, *ib.*; restored in 1094, 110; expelled by Edgar Atheling in 1097, 114.
son of William, son of Duncan, claims the kingdom of Scotland and invades it in 1181, i. 315; is killed in 1187, 344; his son Cuthred, ii. 206.
Doncaster, fortified by the justices in 1193 against John, ii. 28; Hugh de Puiset taken ill at, 83.
Dorat, the younger Henry flies to, in 1183, i. 323.
Dorchester, bishops of (Lindicolnienses)—
Eadnoth removes the body of S. Elphege, i. 34; founded the abbey of Stow S. Mary, 72; killed at the battle of Assandun, 43.
Eadnoth II., i. 54; dies in 1049, 63.
Eatheric dies in 1034, i. 54.
Ulf succeeds in 1049, i. 63; flies with the Normans in 1054, 68.
Wulfwy dies in 1067, i. 83.
Remigius transfers the see to Lincoln, i. 106; ii. 243.
town of, Wulfwy buried at, i. 83; see removed from, to Lincoln, 106.
Dorsetshire, monasteries in, i. 60; ravaged by Canute in 1015, 38; Edmund collects an army in, 40; men of, at Sherstone, 41; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; given to John in 1189, 371, 386.
Douay, John of Bethune, provost of, named dean of York by Richard, ii. 41.
Peter of, taken prisoner by Philip, ii. 148.
Dover, quarrel of count Eustace with the men of, i. 64; surrendered by Walkelin to queen Matilda, 160; Stephen at, 183; promised by the younger Henry to the count of Flanders, 214.
Henry II. lands at, in 1184, i. 330; and with the patriarch Heraclius sails from, in 1185, 336; John of Anagni lands at, 383; Richard arrives at, on the way to Normandy, 386; the abbot of Selby blessed at, *ib.*; Richard sails from, 387; archbishop Geoffrey lands and is imprisoned at, ii. 3, 4; Matthew de Clere, constable of, 4; Longchamp visits, in 1192, 22; William Malvoisin lands at, 181; Philip of Poictiers sails from, *ib.*; John's submission to the pope transacted at, 210; his army assembles at, in 1215, 224; he stays at, 228; besieged by Lewis, 230, 231; siege raised, 232; besieged by Lewis again in 1217, 237; he leaves it, 238.
Down, see of, i. 203.
Malachi, bishop of, i. 203; taken prisoner by John de Curci and released at the intercession of the legate, 275, 276.
Downpatrick, taken by John de Curci, i. 275.
Drax, besieged by Stephen, i. 183.
Dreux, Robert, count of, brother of Lewis VII., joins the league against Henry II., i. 214; is at Verneuil with Lewis, 218; sent to mediate, 219.
Robert II., count of, arrives at Acre, i. 381; complained of by queen Botilda, ii. 95; dies, 160; a surety of the peace of 1200, 178.
Driencourt, taken by the count of Flanders in 1173, i. 217; given up by the truce of 1193 to the archbishop of Rheims, ii. 39, 45; given by Philip to John in 1194, 45, 51; Richard

Driencourt—*cont.*
allowed to fortify, in 1194, 67; given to Ralph of Issoudun by Richard, 182; besieged by Warin de Glapion, *ib.*
Dublin, Henry II. spends Christmas 1171 and builds a palace at, i. 204; exempted from the jurisdiction of the king of Connaught, 253; Cardinal Vivian sets out for, 275; granted to Hugh de Lacy, 288, 290; seized on his death, 310; cross in the cathedral at, weeps, ii. 112.
archbishopric of, i. 203; taken into the king's hands, 310.
Gregory, bishop of, consecrated, i. 141; helps to dedicate Tewkesbury church, *ib.*
Laurence, archbishop of, i. 203; assists in the negotiations of Henry II. with Roderick of Connaught, 252, 253; goes with the elect of Waterford to Ireland, 254; dies at Eu in 1181, 310.
John Cumin, archbishop of, sent to Spain in 1177, i. 286; nominated in 1181, 315; is at Caen at Christmas 1182, 320; is at Richard's coronation, 373; consecrates the bishop of Whithern, 378; persecuted by Hamo of Valoins, ii. 111, 112; is at John's coronation, 146; at the Lincoln homage, 171; and at S. Hugh's funeral, 172; dies in 1212, 208.
Dubricius, archbishop of the Welsh, ii. 155.
Dudemarbait, in Spain, i. 403.
Duduc, bishop of Wells. *See* Wells.
Duffield, castle of, belonging to the earl of Ferrers, i. 217; surrendered to Henry II., 231.
Dunavet, castle of Robert le Poer at, i. 290.
Dunbar, Waldeve, earl of, a surety of the treaty of Falaise, i. 249; does homage to Henry, ii. 248.
Patrick, earl of, objects to Otho being made heir of Scotland, ii. 89.
Duncan, son of Malcolm III., released by duke Robert, i. 100; dethrones his uncle Donald, 108; killed in 1094, 110; his son William and grandson Donald. *See* Donald.
earl of Fife. *See* Fife.
Duncarvan, included in the fief of Waterford, i. 253.
Dunewale, king of Britain, i. 5.
Dunfermline, Geoffrey, prior of Canterbury, chosen abbot of, in 1128, i. 151; William the Lion has a vision at, ii. 153.
Geoffrey, abbot of, concedes the claims of the English church in 1175, i. 248.
Dunframville, Odonellus de, i. 226.
Dunham, castle of Hamo de Masci at, i. 217.
Dunkeld, Richard, bishop of, at York in 1175, i. 247; admits the claims of the English church, 248; at Northampton in 1176, 259.
see of, offered to bishop John Scot. *See* S. Andrew's.
Dunstable, Henry I. keeps Christmas 1131 at, i. 153; meeting of Stephen and Henry at, 182; wonderful appearances in the sky at, 360.
Dunstan, archbishop of. *See* Canterbury.
son of Athelnoth, rises against Tostig, i. 79.
Dunster, castle held by William de Mohun against Stephen, i. 160.
Durazzo, given to Margarit by Henry VI., ii. 75, 110.
Durham, meeting of Stephen and David at, i. 158; castle of, surrendered to Henry II. in 1174, i. 231; entrusted to Roger Conyers 288; seized by the king in 1181, 317; the count of Bar buried in the Galilee at, 380; Bishop Hugh buried at, ii. 83; taken possession of by Hugh Bardulf, *ib.*
bishops of—
Edmund, in 1025, i. 47; dies in 1048, and is buried at Durham, i. 62.
Edred succeeds in 1048, i. 62.

Durham, bishops of—*cont.*
Ethelric (Agelric), retires in 1056 to Peterborough, i. 72; dies at Westminster, 89.
Ethelwin (Agelwin), brother of Ethelric, succeeds in 1056, i. 72; translates S. Oswin to Tynemouth, 78; joins Hereward at Ely in 1071, 88; imprisoned at Abingdon, 89; dies in 1071, *ib.*
Walcher, appointed and consecrated in 1071, i. 89; murdered at Gateshead in 1080, 94, 95.
William, abbot of S. Vincent, consecrated in 1080, i. 96; rebels against William Rufus, 101; dies at Windsor and is buried at Durham in 1096, 113.
Ranulf Flambard, tyrannical minister of William Rufus, i. 110, 116; extorts the money from the soldiers at the sea side, 110; consecrated in 1099, 116; his wicked policy, 118; imprisoned by Henry I., 119; escapes to Normandy, *ib.*; joins in the consecration of bishops in 1107, 126; sent to the council of Rheims in 1119, 138; dies in 1128, 152.
Geoffrey, chancellor to Henry I., succeeds in 1133, i. 154.
Hugh de Puiset, joins in the coronation of the younger Henry, i. 189; is suspended, 191; makes a truce with William the Lion in 1174, 225; refuses to entertain his nephew's Flemish forces, 227; fortifies Northallerton, *ib.*; is compelled to surrender his castles, 231; is at the council of London in 1177, 281; his castles demolished and taken possession of by the king, 288; makes peace with him and buys Witton for his son, *ib.*; threatens the clergy of S. Andrew's with suspension, 315; and places Scotland under interdict, *ib.*; refuses to refund archbishop Roger's legacy and is disseized by the king, 317; takes
Durham, bishops of—*cont.*
the cross in 1185, 335; envoy to Scotland on the business of the Saladin tithe, 355; disputes the election of archbishop Geoffrey, 372; is at Richard's coronation, 373; walks at the king's right hand, 374, 375; buys the manor of Sadberge, 376, and the county of Northumberland, 377; his nephew Bouchard, 378; he is made chief justiciar, *ib.*; blesses the abbot of Selby, 386; is reconciled with Geoffrey, 387; quarrels with the chancellor, 388; goes to Normandy, 390; is made justiciar of the North, *ib.*; meets the chancellor at Blythe and is compelled to surrender Windsor, 392, 393; complains to the king, 393, who orders him to be satisfied, 395; mediates at the peace of Winchester, 462; his charges against Longchamp heard, ii. 5; is sent to France to meet the legates in 1192, 23; meets them at Vezelai, *ib.*; besieges Tickhill, 29; has to raise the siege, *ib.*; besieges it again in 1194, 51; admits the garrison to surrender, 52; meets Richard at Nottingham, 53; is at the council there, 54; has part in the conducting of the king of Scots to court, 57; quarrels with the king of Scots at Brackley, 58; surrenders Northumberland, 60; is overreached by Hugh Bardulf, 67, 68; is ordered by the pope to annul the archbishop's sentences, 77; comes to York to excommunicate the dean's enemies, 83; his illness and death, *ib.*
Philip of Poictiers, made archdeacon of Canterbury by Richard, ii. 40; and nominated by Geoffrey to the deanery of York, 41; elected to the see of Durham at Northallerton, 96; sent to England by Richard to visit the exchequer, 97; has

Durham, bishops of—*cont.*
licence to coin, 102; gives the archdeaconry of Durham and procures that of Carlisle for his nephew, 103; goes to Rome on Richard's behalf, 105; is consecrated there, 106; goes to Cologne to the imperial election, 117; recovers Sadberge, 125; has licence to enclose Cliffe and Crayke, 126; Richard writes to, 127; loses the manor of Cliffe, 135; disputes with the convent of Durham about Coldingham, *ib.*; yields, 136; sent to meet the king of Scots, 147; is directed to consecrate Giraldus, 157; has licence for a fair at Northallerton, 161; is sent to bring the king of Scots to Lincoln, 170; is at the homage, 171; goes on pilgrimage to Compostella, 181; is at S. Jean d'Angely at Easter 1201, 182; returns from Compostella, 190; was a witness of Berengaria's marriage, 184; dies in 1208, 199; see vacant in 1213, 213.
Richard de Marisco, bishop of, accused by his people, goes to Rome, ii. 247.
Turgot, prior of, consecrated to the see of S. Andrew's, i. 128.
Bertram, prior of, elects Philip as bishop, ii. 96; disputes with him about Coldingham, 135.

E.

Eadgar, Edgar, king of the West Saxons, i. 14; rowed by vassal kings on the Dee, 15; a benefactor of Worcester, 88; grandfather of Edward the Confessor, 58.
Eadgar Atheling, son of Edward and Agatha, i. 45; set up in opposition to the Conqueror in 1066, 82; submits, *ib.*; goes to Normandy in 1067, 83; flies to Scotland in 1068, 84; invades Northumberland, 85; is reconciled with William, 90; goes to Apulia in 1086, 99; forfeited in Normandy by William Rufus, 105; mediates between William, Robert, and Malcolm, *ib.*; makes peace with William and returns to Normandy, *ib.*; sent by William to make his nephew king of Scots, 114.
Eadgar, son of Malcolm, king of Scots, in 1097, i. 114; is king in 1104, 123; dies in 1107, 125; a charter of his referred to, 24.
Eadgitha (Egitha), daughter of Ethelred, wife of Eadric Streone, i. 31.
daughter of king Edgar, abbess of Wilton, i. 66.
wife of Turkill, banished, i. 47.
daughter of earl Godwin, wife of Edward the Confessor, repudiated and sent to Werewell, i. 66; taken back again, 68; her chaplain Walter of Lorraine, 74; she dies and is buried at Westminster, 91.
Eadgiva (Egiva), abbess of Leominster, seduced by Swein, son of Godwin, i. 62.
Eadmund (Edmund), king of East Anglia, appears in a vision to Swein, i. 36; his monastery, *see* S. Edmund's; church dedicated to him at Damietta, ii. 242.
I., king of the West Saxons, his reign, i. 14; a benefactor of Worcester, 88; ancestor of Edward the Confessor, 58.
II., Ironside, son of Ethelred II., his reign, i. 15; marries Aldgitha widow of Sigeferth, 38; urges his father to fight and ravages the Danish shires in 1016, 38, 39; is chosen king by the Londoners, 40; defeats the Danes at Penn, *ib.*; is beaten at Sherstone, *ib.*; raises the siege

Eadmund II.—*cont.*
of London, 41; defeats the Danes at Brentford, *ib.*; and at Oxford, 42; defeated by Canute at Assandun, *ib.*; divides the kingdom with him, 43; dies and is buried at Glastonbury, 43, 44; his children sent to Hungary, 45.
son of Edmund Ironside, sent to the king of the Suani, dies in Hungary, i. 45.
son of Harold, invades England in 1068, i. 84.
abbot of Pershore dies in 1085, i. 98.
bishop of Durham. *See* Durham.
earl of Cornwall, son of Henry III., i. 24.
Eadnoth, bishop of Dorchester. *See* Dorchester.
the staller of Harold, killed in battle, i. 84.
Eadred, king of England, his reign, i. 14; a benefactor of Worcester, 88.
Eadric, Edric Streone, made ealdorman of Mercia by Ethelred and married to his daughter, i. 30, 31; his brother Brictric, 30; prevents Ethelred from fighting the Danes in 1009, 31; is at a meeting of the witan in 1012, 34; murders Sigeferth and Morcar, 37; deserts Ethelred, 38; ravages Mercia, *ib.*; his perfidy at Sherstone, 40, 41; deserts Canute and joins Edmund, 41; his treason at Aylesford, 42; flies at Assandun, *ib.*; advises the partition of the kingdom, 43; contrives the death of the atheling Eadwy, 44; is punished by Canute, 45.
Eadric the Wild, nephew of Eadric Streone, i. 83; raises Herefordshire against the Conqueror, 84; makes peace in 1070, 87; goes to Scotland in 1072, 89.
Eadric, the dispenser, sent by Hardicanute to disinter Harold, i. 56.
Eadsius, Edisius, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Eadulf's Ness, plundered by the ships of Osgod Clapa, i. 63.
Eadwan, king of Northumbria, i. 12.
Eadward, Edward, son of Alfred, his reign, i. 14; an ancestor of Edward the Confessor, 58; a benefactor of Worcester, 88; Bridgenorth founded in his time, 120.
II., son of Edgar, his reign and murder, i. 15, 60.
III., the Confessor, son of Ethelred and Emma, sent to Normandy in 1013, i. 35; sent to England in 1014, 37; revisits England in 1036, 53; sent back to Normandy, 54; sent for by Hardicanute, 57; becomes king in 1043, is crowned and seizes his mother's treasures, 58; collects a fleet against Norway in 1045, 60; and in 1047, 61; proposes to sail to the aid of the emperor in 1049, 62; pardons Swein, 63; sends two abbots to the council of Rheims, 64; abolishes Danegeld, *ib.*; has a visit from Eustace of Boulogne, *ib.*; summons Siward and Leofric against Godwin, 65; banishes Godwin and his sons, *ib.*; is visited by the duke of Normandy, 66; makes peace with Godwin, 68; who dies in his chamber, 69; sends Siward to Scotland, *ib.*; sends for his nephew Edward, 70; declares him his heir, 72; outlaws Alfgar and sends Harold against him, 70; pardons him, 71; gives him his father's earldom, 73; outlaws him again, 74; sends Harold against Griffin, 76, 77; submission of the Welsh, 77; his hunting lodge destroyed by Caradoc, 79; falls sick and directs Westminster Abbey to be consecrated, *ib.*; dies, 80; his crown used at Henry III.'s coronation, ii. 244.
Eadward, son of Edmund Ironside, sent to the king of the Suani, i. 45; marries Agatha and is father of Edgar

Eadward—*cont.*
Etheling, i. 45 ; sent for by Edward the Confessor, 70 ; declared his heir, 72 ; dies, *ib.*
Eadward, Edward, son of Malcolm and Margaret, killed in Northumberland, i. 108.
Eadward, Edward, son of Henry III. king of England, called Edward IV., i. 18, 19 ; his reign and character, 18, 19, 24.
Eadward, the founder of Cerne abbey, i. 60.
Eadwin, Edwin, king of Northumbria, i. 12, 20.
brother of Leofric, killed by the Welsh in 1039, i. 55.
brother of Eafic, killed at Ringmere, i. 32.
ealdorman of Mercia, assists in displacing Tostig, i. 79 ; drives him out of Lindsey, 80 ; defeated by Harold Hardrada, near York, 81 ; sends queen Aldgitha to Chester, 82 ; submits to William, *ib.* ; goes with him to Normandy in 1067, 83 ; flies from court in 1071, and is killed, 88.
Eadwold, brother of S. Edmund, a hermit at Cerne, i. 60.
Eadwy, Edwi, king of Wessex, his reign, i. 14.
the Etheling, brother of Edmund Ironside, i. 45 ; escapes the intrigues of Canute, 44 ; but is afterwards murdered, 45.
the king of the rustics, outlawed, i. 45.
Eafic, his brother Eadwin, i. 32.
Eanbald, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Earipolensis, see in Ireland, i. 203.
Earngrim, father of Sigeferth and Morkar, i. 37.
Earsius, father of Alfgeat, i. 55.
Eastan, father of S. Wulfstan, i. 75.
Eastangus (Elfstanus), a surname of archbishop Living, i. 28, 34.
East Anglia, ravaged by Swein in 1004, i. 4 ; by the Danes in 1010, 32 ; and
East Anglia—*cont.*
in 1011, 33 ; part of Harold's earldom, 65 ; Ralph, earl of, *see* Ralph.
Eastry, settlement of the claims of the monks of Canterbury on, ii. 167.
Ebrauc, king of Britain, founder of York, i. 4.
Ebro, river in Spain, i. 404.
Edessa (Rohais), taken by the Saracens, i. 173.
Edinburgh (castellum Puellarum), built by Ebraucus, i. 4 ; held by William the Lion in 1173, 216 ; surrendered to Henry II. by the treaty of Falaise, 249 ; committed to William Stuteville, 288 ; given by Henry to Ermengard on her marriage, 340 ; council held at, by cardinal Vivian, 291 ; Harold Macmadit imprisoned at, ii. 101.
Edrich, king of Kent, i. 12.
Egbert, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Egbert (Edelbertus), king of the West Saxons, his reign, i. 13.
Egel ——. *See* Ethel ——, generally.
Eglaf, a Danish leader, besieges Canterbury, i. 31.
Eldol, king of Britain, i. 7.
Eldolf, duke of Gloucester in the time of Vortigern, i. 9.
Eleanor of Aquitaine, wife of Henry II., is divorced from Lewis VII. and married to Henry, i. 176 ; has a son Henry in 1155, 184 ; a daughter Matilda in 1156, *ib.* ; a son Richard in 1157, *ib.* ; a son Geoffrey in 1158, 185 ; a daughter Eleanor in 1162, *ib.* ; a daughter Johanna in 1165, 186 ; and a son John in 1166, *ib.* ; keeps Christmas 1172 at Chinon, 208 ; instigates her sons to revolt, 213 ; is brought to England in 1174, 230 ; is present at the peace made by Henry among his sons in 1184, 332 ; Richard is ordered to deliver Poictou to her in 1185, 337 ; acts as regent in England after Henry's death, 369 ; is at Salisbury at the

Eleanor of Aquitaine—*cont.*
marriage of the heiress of Châteauroux, 372; has her full dower from Richard, 387; goes to Normandy early in 1190, 390; brings Berengaria to Brundusium, 431; arrives at Messina and leaves in three days, 435; goes to Rome, *ib.*; keeps Christmas 1191 at Bonneville sur Toque, ii. 17; is at London in March 1192 and swears fealty to Richard, 22; sends the bishop of Durham to meet the legates, 23; advises Richard to do homage to the emperor, 26; Windsor, Wallingford, and the Peak entrusted to her in 1193, 29; letter of Richard to, 30, 31; orders the ransom to be raised, 32; receives the chancellor at S. Albans, 33; the ransom impressed with her seal, *ib.*; sent for by Richard, 44; attends him and the emperor at Mentz, 48; receives her son from the archbishop of Cologne, 49; is at the council of Nottingham, 54; at the Winchester coronation, 59; is at Portsmouth with Richard, 61; visits Rouen, 119; is charged with conniving at the bishop of Beauvais' attempt to escape, *ib.*; her daughter the countess of Champagne dies, 120; ravages Anjou in consequence of the adhesion of the barons to Arthur, 145; her daughter Johanna dies, 150; goes to Castille for Blanche, 158; comes to Bourdeaux, 159; retires to Fontevraud, *ib.*; dies in 1204, 196.

Eleanor, daughter of Henry II., married to the king of Castille, i. 186, 276.

of Brittany. *See* Brittany.

Eleutherius, pope, i. 8.

Elfgiva (Emma). *See* Emma.

(Alfgiva), mother of Harold I., i. 52, 53.

Elfrida (Alfbricta), murdered S. Edward, i. 15, 60.

Elfstan. *See* Living, archbishop of Canterbury.

Eli, judges Israel, i. 4.

Elidur, reign of, i. 6.

Ella, king of Northumbria, i. 21.

Ellesmere, given to David ap Owen, i. 289.

Elmham (East Anglia), bishops of:
Algar, dies in 1021, i. 47.
Alwin, succeeds in 1021, i. 47.
Alfric, dies in 1038, i. 55.
Stigand, succeeds, i. 55.
Ethelmar, brother of Stigand, i. 55; ejected in 1070, 86.
Arfast, appointed in 1070, 87. *See* Thetford, Norwich.

Elphege, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.

Elphin, see of, i. 203.

Elvet, church of S. Oswald in, besieged by the archdeacon Aimeric, ii. 136.

Ely, archbishop Wulfstan buried at, i. 47; death and burial of the Etheling Alfred at, 54; the English nobles take refuge in 1071 at, 89; monastery of, turned into a bishop's see, 128; Geoffrey Ridel buried at, 372; occupied by the earl of Salisbury in 1216, ii. 229; by Lewis, 234.
Richard, abbot of, deprived in 1102, goes to Rome with Anselm, 122; dies in 1107, 128.
Richard, archdeacon of, i. 377.
Solomon, prior of, made abbot of Thorney, i. 295.
Robert Longchamp, prior of, made abbot of S. Mary's, York, ii. 105.

bishops of:
Herveus, bishop of Bangor, translated to, in 1109, i. 128; attends the council of London in 1127, 148; dies in 1131, 153.
Nigel, nephew of bishop Roger of Salisbury, appointed in 1133, i. 154; driven from his see by Stephen in 1140, 164; dies in 1169, 186.
Geoffrey Ridel, archdeacon of Canterbury, consecrated in 1174, i. 236; attends the council of Woodstock in 1175, 246; attests the treaty with

Ely—*cont.*
the king of Connaught, 253; quarrels with the archbishop of York, 261; envoy to Flanders, 263; is sent to meet cardinal Vivian, 264; is reconciled with the archbishop, 265; is sent with Johanna to S. Giles, 265; returns, 269; sent to Waltham, 274; attends the council in London in 1177, 280; dies at Winchester in 1189, is buried at Ely, and his possessions seized by Richard, 372.
William Longchamp, chancellor, consecrated in 1189, i. 383; has custody of one of the king's seals and is made justiciar with charge of the tower of London, 388; quarrels with the bishop of Durham, *ib.*; is reappointed as chief justiciar, 390; comes to England and is made legate, 391, 392; his extortions, 391; comes to York and punishes the murderers of the Jews, 392; compels the bishop of Durham to submit, 392, 393; cost of his legation, 397; quarrels with earl John and ignores the king's commands, 432; deprives Gerard Camvill of the sheriffdom of Lincoln and has war with John in 1191, 462; pacification between them, 462–464; forbids archbishop Geoffrey to land, ii. 3; is complained of to John and the barons, 4; and deposed from the justiciarship, 5; resigns his castles and goes to Flanders, 6; letters to the bishop of Lincoln bidding him excommunicate his enemies, 7, 8; complains to the king, 9; his property is seized, 9; lands at Dover in 1192, but is forced to leave England again, 22; visits Richard in his captivity, 30; brings the letters of the king and emperor to England, 32; is received by the queen and justices at S. Albans, 33; is with Richard at Worms in June 1193, 35; concludes a truce with Philip, 37; reconciles John with Richard, 45; is with Richard at Mentz in February, 1194, 48; bids for the sheriffdom of Yorkshire at the council of Nottingham, 54; arraigns Gerard Camvill, 55; walks at the king's right hand at the Winchester coronation, 59; is reconciled with archbishop Geoffrey, 61; Richard takes from him the seal, and orders his writs to be resealed, 74; is ambassador to the emperor in 1195, 92; is sent to Rome by Richard to argue against the archbishop of Rouen, 105; dies at Poictiers and is wept for by the cross of S. Martial, 105.
Eustace, keeper of the seal and vice-chancellor, made archdeacon of Richmond in 1196, ii. 101; made treasurer of York, 103; and bishop of Ely in 1197, 108; sent to Cologne to the imperial election, 117; is consecrated, 119; mediates between Richard and Geoffrey, 133; announces to Philip the breaking of the truce of 1199, 139; a judge delegate in the cause of the monks of Canterbury, 167; is at the Lincoln homage, 171; returns from exile in 1213, 213; has a grant of the abbey of Thorney for his see, 217; dies in 1215, 219.
Disputed election of Robert of York and Geoffrey archdeacon of Norwich, 241.
John, abbot of Fountains, appointed, in 1219, ii. 241; consecrated in 1220 243; dies in 1225, 257.
Geoffrey de Burgh, archdeacon of Norwich, succeeds, ii. 257.
Elyades, king of Britain, i. 7.
Elygelus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Emma (Elfgiva Emma), daughter of the duke of Normandy, marries Ethelred, puts count Hugh in charge of Exeter, i. 27; sent in 1013 to Nor-

Emma (Elfgiva Emma)—*cont.*
mandy with her children, 34 ; marries Canute, 45 ; her son Hardicanute, 52 ; plundered by Harold, 53 ; visited by her sons Alfred and Edward at Winchester, *ib.* ; sends away Edward, 54 ; is sent to Flanders by Harold, *ib.* ; visited by Hardicanute at Bruges, 55 ; is severely treated by Edward the Confessor, 58 ; dies in 1052, and is buried at Winchester, 66.
Emly, see of, i. 203.
Empurias, port of, i. 404 ; Pontius, count of, 404.
Enaghdun, Concord, bishop of, ordains Henry Marshall dean of York, i. 379.
Epte river, the bridge over, broken and Philip nearly drowned, ii. 126, 127 ; Miles of Bar and John des Barres choked in, 127.
Erard, his presentation to a prebend at York annulled, ii. 79.
Ergam, pledged by the king of Navarre in 1177, i. 279.
Ermeneustria, Emma, called, i. 15.
Ermengard, daughter of the viscount of Beaumont, married to the king of Scots, i. 340 ; has Edinburgh castle for her dowry, *ib.* ; pregnant in 1195, ii. 95 ; bears a son Alexander in 1198, 125.
Esbern, earl, brother of Swein, king of Denmark, invades Northumbria in 1069, i. 85 ; is bribed to go home, *ib.* ; and outlawed by his brother, 87.
Esparche, a city in Africa, i. 403.
Espec, Walter, commands the English in the battle of the Standard, i. 163.
Espinai, William del, has charge of Robert de Ros, allows him to escape and is hanged by Richard, ii. 103.
Espurun, evil customs of, abolished by Richard, i. 272.
Essex, ravaged by the Danes in 1009, i. 31 ; and 1011, 33 ; invaded by
Essex—*cont.*
Canute in 1016, 42 ; part of Harold's earldom, 65 ; visited by the justices in 1176, 256 ; undertaken by Geoffrey Mandeville in 1215, ii. 224.
men of, join Godwin in 1052, i. 67.
earls of. *See* Mandeville, Fitz Peter.
Henry of, his duel with Robert de Montfort, i. 186.
Ethelbald, king of Mercia, benefactor of Worcester, i. 88.
king of Wessex, his reign, i. 13.
archbishop of York. *See* York.
Ethelbert (Agelbert), S., king of the East Angles, the church dedicated to him at Hereford burnt in 1055, i. 70.
Ethelbert (Edelbert), son of Ethelwulf, reign of, i. 14.
Ethelfleda (Agelfleda), lady of Mercia, fortified Bridgenorth, i. 120.
Ethelfrith (Ethelfrid), king of Northumbria, i. 12.
Ethelmar (Agelmar), bishop of Elmham. *See* Elmham.
brother of Edric Streone, i. 30.
ealdorman of Devon, submits to Swein, i. 35 ; father of archbishop Ethelnoth, i. 46 ; his son Ethelward, 46.
Ethelnoth (Agelnoth), archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
abbot of Glastonbury, i. 69.
Ethelred, king of Mercia, a benefactor of Worcester, i. 88.
I., king of Wessex, his reign, i. 14.
II., king of England, his reign, i. 15 ; prophecy of Dunstan about him, 39 ; despoils Wulfgeat, raises an army against the Danes in 1006, 29 ; offers tribute and makes Eadric Streone ealdorman of Mercia in 1007, 30 ; in 1008 collects a fleet, *ib.* ; in 1009 is dissuaded by Eadric from giving battle to the Danes, 31 ; in 1011 again offers tribute, 33 ; in 1013 sends his family to Normandy, 35 ; goes thither himself, 36 ; is invited to return, 37 ; pays the fleet at Greenwich, *ib.* ; is

Ethelred—*cont.*
ill at Cosham in 1015, 38; is sent for in 1016 by his son, but returns to London, *ib.*; dies at London in 1016, 39.
Ethelric (Agelric), bishop of Selsey. *See* Selsey.
father of Eadric Streone, i. 30.
bishop of Dorchester. *See* Dorchester.
bishop of Durham. *See* Durham.
abbot of Milton, i. 122.
Ethelstan, bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
(Athelstan) king of Wessex, his reign, i. 14; his gift to York, 13.
(Aelstan) son-in-law of Ethelred II., killed at Ringmere, i. 32.
Ethelwald, bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester.
Ethelward (Adelward), son of Ethelwin, killed at Assandun, i. 43.
son of Ethelmar, killed by Canute, i. 46.
brother of Eadric Streone, i. 30.
a friend of the Etheling Edwy, tempted by Canute to kill him, i, 44.
(Agelward) abbot of Glastonbury, dies, i. 69.
Ethelwin (Agelwin), bishop of Durham. *See* Durham.
(Agelwin) the friend of God, ealdorman of East Anglia, father of Ethelward, i. 43.
Odda, becomes a monk at Deerhurst, dies in 1056 and is buried at Pershore, i. 72; his brother Alfric, 69.
prior of Worcester, before S. Wulfstan, i. 75.
abbot of Evesham, resists the rebellion of the earls in 1074, i. 91.
Ethelwulf, king of Wessex, his reign, i. 13.
Eu, county of, given up by Robert to William Rufus, i. 104; demanded by Philip in 1192, ii. 21; quitclaimed by him in 1196, 96.
Eu—*cont.*
town of, William Rufus encamps at, i. 109; Lawrence archbishop of Dublin dies at, 310.
William, count of, deserts Robert for William Rufus, i. 109; conspires against William, is beaten in a trial by battle and mutilated, 110.
count of, joins the league against Henry II., i. 215.
count of, his town of Blangi burnt, i. 357.
Ralph of Issoudun, count of. *See* Issoudun.
Eudes, viscount of Porhoet, i. 187.
Eugenius III., pope in 1145, receives the bishop of Lincoln at Rome, i. 172; visits Paris and Auxerre in 1147, 173; letter of, to archbishop Theobald on the S. David's claim, ii. 156, 157.
Euphrates, ii. 18.
Eustace, abbot of Flay. *See* Flay.
bishop of Ely. *See* Ely.
count of Boulogne. *See* Boulogne.
son of king Stephen, marries Constantia, daughter of Lewis VI., i. 163; does homage to him for Normandy, 159; knighted in 1149, 175; invades the lands of Henry's friends, *ib.*; invades Normandy in 1151, 176; the bishops refuse to elect him king, 177; he dies in 1153, 180; and is buried at Faversham, 181.
le Moine, killed in battle near Thanet, ii. 238.
Evesham, monastery of, endowed by Leofric, i. 72.
Ethelwin, abbot of, becomes bishop of Wells, i. 36.
Avicus, dean of, dies in 1037, i. 54.
Alword, abbot of, bishop of London. *See* London.
Wulmar, or Manni, made abbot in 1044, i. 59.
Walter, abbot of, dies in 1104, i. 123.
Reginald, blessed in 1130, i. 152.

Evesham, abbots of—*cont.*
Adam, prior of Bermondsey, i. 185.
Roger Norreys, made abbot, i. 383; deposed in 1213, ii. 215.
Ralph, prior of Worcester, appointed in 1214, ii. 216.
Dominic, prior of, in 1125, i. 145.
Evreux, county of, settled on Lewis and Blanche at their marriage, ii. 160, 176, 177.
town of, destroyed by Philip in 1194, ii. 65; in 1198, 127; and in 1199, 143; given back to John, 160; settled on Lewis and Blanche, 160, 176, 177.
bishops of:
Ouen, bishop of, i. 152.
Giles, bishop of, attends a synod at Sens, i. 196, 197, 198; goes to Rome on behalf of Henry II., 199; is sent to England, 205; and takes part in the second coronation of the younger Henry, 206; is sent with Johanna to S. Giles, 265; is at her coronation, 286.
John Fitz Luke, appointed in 1181, i. 312; excommunicates the disturbers of the peace of Normandy, 324; is ambassador to France in 1188, 358; comes to England in 1189, 370, 371; is sick at Pisa, 396; crowns queen Berengaria, 442; purifies the churches of Acre, 453.
bishop elect of, ii. 117.
see of, allegiance divided, ii. 177.
Robert, dean of, goes to Rome in 1171, i. 199, 201.
Amalric, count of, married to one of the heiresses of Gloucester, i. 268.
Ewanus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Exeter, taken by the Danes in 1003, i. 27; taken by William the Conqueror in 1067, 84; and by Stephen in 1136, 158; seized by the barons in 1215, ii. 220.
bishops of:
Leofric, i. 60.
Osbern, is prevented by illness from attending the council of London in 1102, i. 121.
William, appointed and consecrated in 1107, i. 125; assists at the consecration of the bishop of London in 1108, 127.
Robert, dies in 1159, i. 185.
Bartholomew, is at the council of Westminster in 1175, i. 239; at Woodstock, 246; consecrates Cirencester abbey, 270; is at London in 1177, 280; sent to Amesbury, 274; and to Waltham, 290; obtains the gift of Bosham for his church, 301; dies in 1184, 333.
John, subdean of Salisbury, appointed in 1186, i. 340.
Henry Marshall, made dean of York, i. 377; opposed by archbishop Geoffrey, 378; ordained deacon, 379; is installed as a prebendary, *ib.*; is refused installation as dean, 380; appeals against the archbishop, 386; is reconciled with him and confirmed in the deanery, 387; has a fresh quarrel with him in 1190, 389; refuses to give way, 390; made bishop of Exeter in 1194, ii. 40; dies in 1206, 198; see vacant in 1213, 213.
Simon of Apulia (*see* Simon), consecrated in 1214, ii. 217; is at the translation of S. Wulfstan in 1218, 240.
Eye, honour of, promised to Hugh Bigot by the younger Henry, i. 215.
given to John by Richard in 1189, i. 371; and restored on the reconciliation, ii. 84.
castle of, committee to Walter Fitz Robert in the truce of 1191, i. 463.
Eynsham abbey, vacant in 1213, ii. 213; belongs to the see of Lincoln, *ib.*

F.

Faba, fortress in Palestine taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Faia, Ralph de, promotes the rebellion of 1173, i. 213.
Falaise, the earls of Leicester and Chester imprisoned at, i. 224, 231; treaty of, 247; confirmed at York, i. 247–250.
portents seen in 1212, at, ii. 225.
Farnham, taken by the royal party in 1217, ii. 236.
Farringdon taken by Stephen in 1145, i. 172.
Fauconberge, Eustace de. *See* London, bishops of.
Faversham, Eustace buried at, i. 181; Stephen buried at, 183.
Faye, honour of, given to Nevelon of Freteval, i. 359.
Feader, a huscarl of Hardicanute, killed at Worcester, i. 57.
Fecamp, surrendered by duke Robert to William II., i. 104.
Fawkes de Breauté lands at, ii. 254.
William of, invents a new cantus, i. 96.
Feckenham, Henry II. receives the lord of Galloway at, i. 269.
Ferensis, city in Portugal, taken by king Alfonso in 1187, i. 350.
Ferlington, Henry de, surrenders Norham to Hugh Bardulf, ii. 83.
Walter de, surrenders Durham to Hugh Bardulf, ii. 83.
Fernanz, Gotter, envoy of the king of Castille to Henry II., i. 281, 282.
Fernreginwal, given to William Fitz Aldelm, i. 289.
Ferrers (Derby), Robert earl of, a traitor in 1173, i. 216; burns Nottingham in 1174, 228; surrenders Tutbury and Duffield, 231; his brother murdered in London, 284.
Ferrers—*cont.*
William earl (of Tutbury) besieges Nottingham on the king's part in 1194, ii. 52; carries a canopy at the Winchester coronation, 59; swears fealty to John, 145; is at John's coronation, 146; swears for John to the pope's terms, 210; takes John's side in 1215, 225; goes on crusade in 1218, 240.
Ferté Bernard, conference between Henry II. and Theobald of Blois at, i. 189; interview between Henry II. and Philip in 1189 at, 364; taken by Philip, 365.
Fife, Duncan earl of, commands part of the Scottish army in 1174, i. 226; burns Warkworth, *ib.*; a hostage of the treaty of Falaise, 249; his sister repudiated by Harold Mac Madit, ii. 101.
Finchale, a cell of Durham, Hersewell given to, by Henry de Puiset, ii. 118.
Finisterre, passed by Richard's fleet, i. 398.
Five burghs, men of, join Swein in 1013, i. 34; are conquered by Edmund Ironside in 1015, 38.
Fitz Alan, William, holds Shrewsbury against Stephen, i. 160.
Fitz Aldhelm, William, meets Henry II. at Waterford, i. 202; is sent to Ireland in 1176, 268; forbids John de Curci to raise an army, 275; is sent to prepare the way for John, 288; estates given him there, 289, 290.
Fitz Bernard, Thomas, the master forester, dies, i. 333.
Robert, itinerant justice in 1176, i. 256; meets Henry II. at Waterford, 202; envoy to France in 1177, 300.
Fitz Ernis, Oliver, messenger from Henry II. to his sons, thrown into the river, i. 324.
Fitz Godfrey, Ralph, custodian of Isaac Comnenus, dies, i. 448.
Fitz Hamon, Robert, dies in 1107, i. 126.

Fitz Herbert, Herbert and William, Limerick offered to, i. 289; they refuse it, *ib.*

Fitz John, Eustace, holds Malton against Stephen, i. 160.

Fitz Osbern. *See* Hereford, earls of.

Fitz Osbert, William, tumult of, ii. 97; his death, 98; complaint against Hubert Walter on account of, 122.

Fitz Peter, Geoffrey, appointed justiciar by Richard, i. 378, 388, 432; chief justiciar in 1198, ii. 122; defeats the Welsh at Maud's castle, 124; urges the earls to swear fealty to John, 145; is girt with a sword as earl of Essex, 146; forbids the archbishop to hold a council at Westminster, 168; orders the collection of a fortieth for the crusade, 193; dies in 1213, 215; held the tower of London as justiciar, 221.

Fitz Ralph, William, justice in 1176, i. 256; justice of Normandy, refuses to give up Alesia to Philip, ii. 21; or to allow the legates to enter Normandy, 23; is excommunicated, *ib.*; meets John at Alençon and refuses to accept him as duke, 27.

Fitz Reinfrid, Roger, justice in 1176, i. 256; made justiciar in 1189, 378.

Gilbert, son of Roger, marries the daughter of William of Lancaster, i. 372.

Fitz Robert, Walter, justice in 1176, i. 256; has charge of the castle of Eye under the treaty of Winchester, 463.

Fitz Simon, Turstan, justice in 1176, i. 256.

Fitz Stephen, Ralph, justice in 1176, i. 256.

Robert, has the kingdom of Cork given him, i. 289.

William, justice in 1176, i. 256; strange prophecy about his house at Here, 418.

Fitz Urse, Richard, taken prisoner at the battle of Lincoln in 1141, i. 169.

Fitz Urse, Reginald, murderer of S. Thomas, i. 193.

Fitz Walter, Robert, his castle in London seized by John, ii. 207; flies to France, *ib.*; joins the barons against John in 1215, 219; takes charge of Northamptonshire, 224; opposes the king after the granting of the charter, 225; relieves Mountsorel, 237; taken at Lincoln, *ib.*; goes to Damietta, 246.

Flanders, queen Emma goes to, i. 54; and Tostig in 1065, 79; he returns from, 80; Henry II. crosses, in 1184, 330; lands in, in 1187, 343; Philip of France attempts to seize, 443; Richard claims half of, in jest, 446; Geoffrey of York comes to, ii. 3; Richard crosses, 50.

Counts of:

Baldwin V., count of, entertains Emma in 1037, i. 54; burns the imperial palace at Nimeguen, 62; wars with Henry III., *ib.*; his daughter is the wife of Tostig, 66; receives the family of Godwin, *ib.*; and Tostig, 79.

Baldwin VI. dies in 1070, i. 88.

Arnulf, count of, defeated by Robert the Frisian, i. 88.

Robert I., father-in-law of S. Canute, i. 98.

Robert II. goes on crusade in 1096, i. 113; returns in 1100, 119.

Baldwin VII. at war with Henry I. in 1119, i. 138.

Thierri, goes on crusade in 1147, i. 173.

Philip, joins the league against Henry II. in 1173, i. 214; Kent promised him by the younger Henry, *ib.*; takes Aumâle, 216; and Driencourt, 215; assembles a fleet at Gravelines, 229; is summoned by Lewis VII. to the siege of Rouen, 231; visits Henry in 1175, and takes the cross, 238; punishes Walter des Fontaines, 251;

Flanders, counts of—*cont.*
provokes a rebellion, *ib.*; postpones his pilgrimage, 263; marriage and death of his brother Peter, 267, 268; negotiates with Henry II. about the marriage of the heiresses of Boulogne, 273; takes leave and goes to Palestine, 287; makes an assize of arms in 1181, 310; quarrels with king Philip on account of the count of Clermont, 310; but is reconciled by Henry, 312; and makes peace, 330; marries a sister of the king of Portugal, 329; visits England with the archbishop of Cologne and invades Hainault, 332; mediates between Henry and Philip in 1188, 359; and in 1189, 366; meets Richard at Calais in 1189, 387; goes with queen Eleanor to Naples, comes to Messina, joins Richard, and is won over by Philip, 431; mediates, 434; dies at Acre, 443, 446.
Isabella, countess of, accused of adultery, i. 251.
Baldwin VIII. *See* Hainault.
Baldwin IX. joins Richard's league against Philip in 1197, ii. 107; besieges Arras, but retreats, *ib.*; makes a pilgrimage to Canterbury, 108; renews his alliance with Richard, 125; takes S. Omer and Aire, *ib.*; Richard insists on his being included in the peace, 128; does homage to John, 148; goes on crusade and becomes emperor of Constantinople, 196; is killed by the Greeks, 197.
Ferrand, count of, quarrels with Philip in 1213, ii. 211; obtains aid from England, 215; is defeated and taken prisoner, 216.
Flay, Eustace, abbot of, his servant has a dream about the fate of Henry II.'s family, i. 319; is a friend of Fulk of Neuilly, ii. 165; his preaching and miracles, *ib.*; he enforces Sunday observance, 165; is not well received in England and returns to Normandy, 166; produces a mandate from heaven, 185; works miracles in Yorkshire, 187; and Lincolnshire, 188.
Florence, of Worcester, dies, i. 137.
Florius, count, ambassador from Sicily, i. 262; stays in England waiting for Johanna, i. 263.
Foillanus, abbot of the Scots at Cologne, i. 74.
Foliot, Robert. *See* Hereford.
Fontainebleau, Philip, keeps Christmas 1191 at, ii. 17.
Fontaines, near Rouen, taken by Philip, ii. 63.
Walter des, story of, i. 251.
Fontevraud, nuns of, substituted for those of Amesbury, i. 274, 291; Henry II. buried at, 368; Richard buried at, ii. 142; queen Johanna buried at, 150; Eleanor retires to, 159.
Forcheim, Rudolf, of Swabia, elected king at, i. 93.
Forest, assize of, i. 333; ii. 130–133.
Forneham, battle of, in 1173, i. 223.
Fortibus, Forz de Ulerun, William de; one of the justiciars of Richard's fleet, i. 398; his voyage, 402; arrives at Messina, 408; becomes count of Aumâle, and dies in 1195, ii. 94. *See* Aumâle.
Fossa Nova, Jordan de, legate, places Normandy under interdict, ii. 23.
Fossard, William, his daughter married to Robert Turnham, ii. 135.
Fosse Way, i. 6.
Fosses, S. Maria de, passed by Richard, i. 408.
Fotheringay, castle of, seized by William of Aumâle in 1221, ii. 247; deserted, 248.
Fougeres, Ralph de, occupies Brittany in 1173, i. 220; is taken prisoner at Dol, 221; reconciled with Henry before the submission of his sons, i. 234.

Fountains, John, Abbot of, made bishop of Ely, ii. 241; examines into the miracles of S. Hugh, ii. 243; is consecrated, 243.

Francus, brother, gives information to Henry's envoys at Rome, i. 200.

Fraser, Ralph, imprisoned by the count of Toulouse, i. 356.

Frederick I., emperor, defeated by the Lombards in 1176, i. 269; negotiates with the pope, 270; meets him at Venice and makes peace, 301–304; promises his daughter to Richard, but she dies, 332; as does his wife, *ib.*; allows Henry the Lion to return home, 333; takes the cross, 348; marches from Regensburg by Constantinople and Iconium into Armenia, where he is drowned in the Salef, 362; ii. 9; buried at Tyre, i. 363; Frederick, son of. *See* Swabia.

Frederick II., son of Henry VI., baptized, ii. 108; crowned king of Sicily, 113; his mother swears to his legitimacy, 113; set up by the pope against Otho IV., 205; crowned emperor in 1220, 247; called Henry, 257; his crusade determined on, 257, 258, 259.

Frederick, justiciar of Sicily, i. 294.

Freemantle, Richard is at, in 1194, ii. 58.

Fremingham. held by Hugh Bigot against Henry II., i. 217; Robert of Leicester received at, 223; taken by Henry II., 231; demolished, 269.

Freston, church at, burnt, i. 184.

Freteval, Philip goes to, in 1194, ii. 65.

Ursus of, made over to Philip in 1187, i. 344.

Nevelon, son of Urse of, swears fealty to Henry, i. 359.

Frideswide, S., translation of, i. 309.

Frisach, six of Richard's knights taken at, ii. 24.

Frisia, count Robert of, defeats Arnulf of Flanders at Cassel, i. 88.

Frodrenelan, given to William Fitz Aldhelm, i. 290.

Frome, the river, Canute sails up, in 1015, i. 38.

Frompton, William, prior of, made abbot of Westminster, ii. 216.

Fulda, abbots of:

Ercanbald, becomes archbishop of Mentz in 1011, i. 33.

Richard, dies in 1039, i. 55.

Sigewart, succeeds in 1039, i. 55.

Sigfrid, becomes archbishop of Mentz, i. 74.

Widrac, dean, succeeds in 1060, i. 74.

Animchadus, recluse of, i. 58.

Marianus visits, i. 73.

Fulgentius, king of Britain, i. 7.

Fulgentius Pectus, fights with Severus, i. 8.

Fulk of Neuilly, preaches repentance, ii. 136; his admonition to Richard, 136, 137; his miracles and miraculous escape in Normandy, 137; his friend Eustace, 165; dies in 1202, 196.

Funes, staked by the king of Navarre on the Spanish award, i. 277, 278.

Funz, S. Maria de, passed by Richard on his way to Sicily, i. 396.

Furnes, Thomas de, surrenders Angers to Arthur, ii. 144.

G.

Gaeta, in Italy, i. 397.

John of. *See* Gelasius.

Gaillon, conference of Richard and Philip near, ii. 108; Philip builds a castle near, 139; interview of John and Philip near, 158; treaty of, 176.

Gainsborough, Swein encamps at, in 1013, i. 34; dies at, 36.

Galacia in Palestine fortified by Richard I., ii. 18.

Galicia, S. James of Compostella in, i. 89.

Galloway, men of, in the Scottish army of 1174, i. 225; Henry's expedition to, 340; clergy of, *see* Whithern.
Fergus, lord of, i. 227, 235, 340.
Gilbert, son of Fergus, lord of, expels the Scottish garrisons after the capture of William the Lion, i. 227; quarrels with his brother Uethred, 235; Roger Hoveden sent to treat with, 236; William the Lion goes against, 250; comes to Feckenham and does homage, 269; dies in 1185, 334.
Uethred, son of Fergus, i. 227, 235, 236; is murdered by his nephew Malcolm, 236, 250.
Malcolm, son of Gilbert, kills his uncle, i. 236.
Duncan, son of Gilbert, hostage in England, 334; his cause asserted by Henry II. against his cousin Ronald, 340; carries off Avelina Fitz Alan, ii. 173.
Galloway, Ronald, son of Uethred, lord of, seizes Galloway on the death of Gilbert, i. 334; is attacked by Henry II. but makes peace with him, 339, 340; dies at Northampton, ii. 173.
Galmanho, Siward buried in, i. 70.
Gameges, castle of, taken by John in 1196, ii. 97; battle of, 125; a boundary of the Norman Vexin, 177.
Gamel, father of Orm, i. 79.
Gamelbearn, rebels against Tostig, i. 79.
Gant, Walter of, abbot of Waltham, dies in 1201, ii. 183.
Garigliano, passed by Richard, i. 397.
Garlande, William de, surety for Philip in 1200, ii. 178.
Garsias, Gomes, son of, i. 278, 282; Garsias, son of, 282; Bermer, *ib.*; Ordonio, son of, 278.
Gateshead, murder of bishop Walcher at, i. 94, 95.
Gayus, duke of Anjou in Arthur's court, i. 10.
Gaza, fortified by Richard, ii. 18.
Geddington, visited by Henry II. in 1177, i. 287; council at, in 1188, 354; Richard visits in 1194, ii. 56.
Gelasius II. (John of Gaeta), chancellor to three popes; flies before Henry V. to Burgundy, i. 137; dies at Cluny, 138.
Genest, duke of, father of Agnes of Meran, ii. 94.
Geneva, count of, i. 211; bishop of, *ib.*
Genoa, Philip is ill there on his way to Sicily, i. 396; visited by Richard, *ib.*; by Berengaria in 1193, ii. 45; demoniacs near, 134.
Genoese, quarrel with the English at Messina, i. 429; Richard refuses their services at Acre, 445; adhere to Conrad and Philip, *ib.*
Genut passed by Richard, i. 396.
Geoffrey, archbishop of York, *See* York.
count of Anjou. *See* Anjou.
bishop of Durham. *See* Durham.
of Anjou, brother of Henry II., dies, i. 185.
Geoffrey, son of Henry II., born in 1158, i. 185; married to Count Conan's daughter, 186; progress of, through Brittany, 187; has Brittany from his father, 190; joins in the rebellion of 1173, 213; refuses his father's offers, 222; makes peace, 233; is sent to Brittany, i. 238; keeps Easter 1176 at Winchester, 262; and Christmas at Northampton, 272; warning of his death, 319, 320; keeps Christmas 1183 at Caen, 320; does homage to his brother Henry, *ib.*; meets his father and Richard at Angers and goes into Aquitaine, 321; allows his men to shoot at his father, and ravages his lands, 322; his deceit, 323; makes peace, 326; recognizes archbishop Baldwin, 332; is attacked by Richard in 1185, 337; dies and is buried at Paris, 340; Philip demands the guardian-

Geoffrey—*cont.*
ship of his daughter, 341; his son Arthur born, 342. *See* Brittany.
nephew to archbishop Roger, chancellor to the younger king, i. 266; lost at sea, 308.
Gerard, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Gerberoi, encounter of William the Conqueror with his son Robert at, i. 93.
Germany, conquered by Azaracus, i. 4.
Gerunces, king of Britain, i. 7.
Gezehacazera, in Spain, i. 403.
Gibelet, two cities named, taken by Saladin, i. 346; passed by Philip, ii. 9.
Gibraltar, i. 403.
Giffard, county of, given to archbishop Geoffrey, i. 387.
William, bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester.
Richard, justice in 1176, i. 256.
Gilbert, bishop of London. *See* London.
the forester, murdered, i. 246.
sheriff of Northumberland, kills Liulf, i. 94; is killed at Gateshead, 95.
earl, a hostage of the treaty of Falaise, i. 249; killed at Lincoln, in 1217, ii. 237.
of Semplingham, dies, i. 360; canonized, ii. 196.
of Galloway. *See* Galloway.
Gillingham, battle near, i. 40.
Gilmasius, king of Orkney, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
Gilomannus, king of Ireland, i. 10.
Giraldus, Cambrensis, attempts to make S. David's independent of Canterbury, ii. 155, 156; Innocent III. insists on his being consecrated, 157.
Girun, Gyrun, island of, passed by Richard, i. 397.
Giso, bishop of Wells. *See* Wells.
Gisors, given up to Henry II. in 1160, i. 185; fortified in 1173, 213; meeting of Lewis and Henry at, in 1173, 222; engagement between their knights at, 222, 223; meeting of the kings in 1175 at, 232, 233; peace made between France and
Gisors—*cont.*
Flanders at, 312; meeting of the kings in 1183 at, 326; Henry does homage to Philip at, 329; meeting of the kings in 1186 at, 339; Philip gives up his claim on, to Richard and Alesia, 339; he demands it afresh in 1188, 351; he meets Henry at, in 1188, in January, *ib.*; in September, 359; Philip cuts down the elm of conference at, *ib.*; pledged to Philip in the treaty of Tours, 367; he insists on the surrender, but is bought off, 369; Richard at Messina promises to surrender it on his return, 434; Philip demands the surrender, ii. 21; the steward of Normandy excludes the legates, 23; Philip offers it to John with Alesia, 27; betrayed to him by Gilbert of Gwascoil, 28; to be settled on Eleanor of Brittany on her marriage with Lewis, 91; Richard gives up his claims on, 96; Philip flies to, in 1198, 126, 127; breaking of the bridge, *ib.*; excepted by Philip in his offer to return his conquests, 128, 140; to be settled on Lewis and Blanche, 140.
Glanvill, Ranulf, the justiciar, one of the leaders of the Yorkshire army in 1174, i. 226; itinerant justice in 1176, 256; envoy to Flanders in 1177, 275; his iniquitous treatment of Gilbert Plumpton, 330; negociates with Philip in 1186, 341; goes with Richard to Marseilles and thence to Acre, 398; Hubert Walter was his clerk, 340.
Glapion, Gwarin de, steward of Normandy, ii. 182; besieges Driencourt, 182.
Glasbury, bishop Leofgar killed at, i. 71.
Glascarric, given to William Fitz Aldelm, i. 289.
Glasgow, independence of the see of, debated, i. 259, 260; bishops of, consecrated at York, 260.

Glasgow—*cont.*
bishops of: Jocelin, comes to the court at York, i. 247; and at Northampton, 259; asserts the independence of his see, *ib.*; sent to Rome to obtain absolution for William the Lion, 316; baptizes the heir of Scotland, ii. 125.
Hugh of Roxburgh, elect of, dies, ii. 151.
William Malvoisin, elect of, consecrated at Lyons, ii. 169; lands at Dover, 181.
Glastonbury, Edgar buried at, i. 43; Edmund Ironside buried at, *ib.*; struggle between the monks and abbot at, 96, 97; burnt, 333; given by Richard to Savaric, ii. 40, 41; recovered in 1199, 140; Savaric renews his claim, 143.
Abbots of. *See* Ethelward, Ethelnoth, Turstin, Seffrid bishop of Chichester, Henry bishop of Winchester, Henry de Soilli bishop of Worcester, Savaric bishop of Wells, William de la Pie.
Gloniern, son of Heardulf, rebels against Tostig, i. 79.
Gloucester, city of, founded in the time of Claudius, i. 8; Eldolf, duke of, 9.
Edward the Confessor sends the earls from, to plunder his mother, i. 58; receives Eustace of Boulogne at, 65; Godwin sends to, *ib.*; struggle of parties at, *ib.*; head of Rhys brought to, i. 69; Edward collects an army at, against Griffin and Alfgar, 70; church at, dedicated, 73; Harold assembles an army at, in 1063, 77; William I. keeps Christmas 1085 at, 98; illness of William Rufus at, 107; he is visited by Malcolm at, *ib.*; Henry I. at, in 1123, 142; clerks of S. Oswald's church, involved in the dispute between York and Canterbury, 244, 254; the Welsh kings visit Henry II. at, 245; the abbot of Thorney imprisoned by Hubert Walter at, ii. 89; Henry III. declared king at, 233; he flies to, 261.
Wulfstan made abbot of, i. 73.
Serlo, abbot of, buries the abbot of Pershore, i. 98; dies in 1104, 123.
William, abbot of, in 1125, i. 145; resigns in 1130, 153; Walter, succeeds in 1130, *ib.*
Turstan, a monk of, i. 98.
earl of, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
earls of. *See* Robert, son of Henry I.
William, son of earl Robert, on the king's side at the battle of Forneham, 223; surrenders Bristol to the king, 245; settles his earldom on John and his betrothed wife, 268; provision for his other daughters, *ib.*; is made to swear to the Welsh princes, 245.
Hawisia, countess of, betrothed to John, i. 268; married to him against archbishop Baldwin's advice, 371; divorced from him in 1201, ii. 162; married to Geoffrey de Mandeville, 225.
earl of, mentioned by Fawkes de Breauté, ii. 261.
honour of, given to John, i. 371; restored after the reconciliation, ii. 84.
Gloucestershire, ravaged by Godwin, i. 65; and by the rebels in 1088, 102; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
Goda, sister of Edward the Confessor, wife of Eustace of Boulogne, and mother of count Ralph, i. 64, 65.
brother of Eadric Streone, i. 30.
Godestert, passed by Richard's fleet, i. 398.
Godfrey, of Bouillon. *See* Jerusalem.
bishop of Bath. *See* Wells.
Godiva, wife of Leofric, i. 72.
Godman, chaplain to Edward the Confessor, i. 69.
Godric, son of Godman, made abbot of Winchcomb, 69, 70.

Godric—*cont.*
abbot of Peterborough, deprived in 1102, i. 122.
Godstow, Rosamond's tomb at, removed by S. Hugh of Lincoln, ii. 14; Clementhorpe nunnery given by archbishop Geoffrey to, 22.
Godwin, bishop of Rochester. *See* Rochester.
killed at Assandun, i. 43.
Porthund, kills Alfhelm, i. 29.
earl, son of Wulfnoth, i. 30, 53; implicated in the fate of the Etheling Alfred, 53; disinters king Harold, 56; makes peace with Hardicanute with the gift of a ship, *ib.*; sent to punish the men of Worcester, 57; contrives the succession of Edward, 58; sent to seize queen Emma's treasures, *ib.*; advises Edward to send a fleet against Norway, 61; his son Swein, 62; his quarrel with Eustace of Boulogne, war, and banishment, 64, 65; flies to Flanders, 66; lands in Kent, seizes the Isle of Wight, and is restored, 67, 68; dies, 69.
son of Harold, invades Somersetshire, i. 84.
abbot of Winchcomb, i. 69.
Goffrid, his service settled on queen Johanna, i. 294.
Gorbonias I. king of Britain, i. 6; II. king of Britain, 7.
Gordiades, king of Britain, i. 5.
Gorgona, island, passed by Richard, i. 396.
Goromund, king of Britain, i. 12.
Goronilla, daughter of king Lear, i. 5.
Gortze, Mainard, count of, attempts to capture Richard, ii. 25.
Gosfrid, bishop of Coutances, overcomes earl Ralph's rebellion in 1074, i. 91; sides with Robert against William Rufus, holds Bristol, and ravages Somersetshire, 102.
bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
Gothland, Dolman king of, i. 10.
Goulet, castle of, built by Philip in 1198, ii. 138; interview of John and Philip near, 149; another in 1200, 159.
Grandmont, Henry II. proposes to be buried at, i. 190; he makes a statute at the request of the brethren of, 307.
Graszai, settled on Lewis and Blanche, ii. 177.
Gratian, emperor of Rome, i. 9.
cardinal, sent into Normandy in 1171, i. 201.
Gravelines, the count of Flanders and the younger Henry collect a fleet at, i. 229, 230.
Greece, Brutus flies to, i. 3.
Greenwich, the Danes under Turkill at, i. 36; Ethelred pays their wages, *ib.*
Gregory I., pope, sends Augustine to England, i. 12, 19, 20; letter to Augustine, 19; his cantus, 96.
VII., Hildebrand, made pope in 1074, i. 90; makes a decree against clerical marriage, *ib.*; letter of, 91; his decrees annulled by Henry IV., 92; his war with the emperor, 91, 92; false peace, 93; deposed at Mentz, 96; flies to Beneventum, *ib.*; dies, 97.
the antipope, Burdinus. *See* Burdinus.
VIII. (Albert), succeeds in 1187 and issues letters for a new crusade, i. 347; dies at Pisa, 348.
Griffin. *See* Wales, kings of.
Grim, Edward, tries to save Becket, i. 193.
Grimketel, bishop of Selsey. *See* Selsey.
Grimsby, abbey of, vacant in 1175, i. 245.
Groby, castle of, held by the earl of Leicester against Henry II., i. 217; surrendered, 231; demolished, 269.
Grundebeof, ancestor of the Stutevilles, ii. 161, 162.
Guadalquivir, river in Spain, i. 403.
Guadiana, river in Spain, i. 403.
Guicelin, king of Britain, i. 6.

Guidelin, son of Cassibellian, king of Britain, i. 7.
Guildford, cruelties of Harold at, i. 54; Henry II. keeps Christmas 1186 at, 343; John keeps Christmas 1200 at, ii. 180.
Guisnes, count of, joins the confederation against Philip, ii. 125.
Gulak, king of Denmark, i. 6.
Gulewast, Roger, his daughter carried off by Gilbert Plumpton, i. 331.
Gumes, count, i. 282.
Gundeville, Hugh de, justice in 1176, i. 256.
Gundulf, bishop of Rochester. *See* Rochester.
Gunhilda, daughter of Wirtgeorn, king of the Wends, niece of Canute, i. 48; wife of earl Haco, *ib.*; banished with her children, 59; goes to Bruges and thence to Denmark, *ib.*
Gunter, a Fleming, chaplain to Becket, opposes the king's agents at Rome, i. 200.
Guntez, P., a Spanish knight, i. 278.
Gunther, a Templar sent by the kings of Spain to Henry II., i. 281.
Gurdun, Bertram, wounds Richard, ii. 141; is released by him, but killed by Marcadeus, 142.
Gurgentius, king of Britain, i. 7.
Gurm, king of Britain, i. 6.
Gurnay, Hugh de, has charge of Richard's prisoners at Acre, i. 452; secured by the truce of 1193, ii. 38; the earl of Leicester surprised in a foray on his lands, 64.
taken by Philip in 1202, ii. 196.
Guthland, conquered by Arthur, i. 10.
Guthorn, a king slain by Swerre, ii. 77.
Guy, archbishop of Vienne, elected pope, i. 138.
Guydelus, son of Cassibellian, i. 7.
Gybel, taken by the Crusaders in 1197, ii. 111.
Gyrth, son of Godwin, retires with Gytha to Flanders, i. 66; is present at his father's death, 69; killed at Hastings, 82.
Gytha, wife of Tofi Pruda, i. 57.
wife of earl Godwin, i. 62; flies to Tournay in 1051, 66; leaves Exeter in 1067 and retires to Flanders, 84.

H.

Hachet. *See* Haget.
Haco, earl, sent into exile by Canute, i. 48; perishes at sea, *ib.*; his widow Gunhilda, 48, 59.
Hagenau, Richard meets the emperor at, ii. 30.
Hageneth, castle of, taken by the earl of Leicester, i. 223.
Haget, Geoffrey, sent to York to hear the complaints against the archbishop, ii. 68; made custos of the county of York, 69; itinerant justice in 1198, 128, 135.
Haia, Geoffrey de, a clerk of Henry II., sent to seize the archbishopric of Dublin, i. 310.
William de, sent by William the Lion to John, ii. 147.
Haifa, in Palestine, taken by Saladin in 1187, i. 346; burnt by him in 1191, 450; Richard encamps near, 457; he visits before his departure, ii. 21.
Hainault, Baldwin V., count of, father-in-law of Philip, i. 344, 392; ii. 43, 95; his territories invaded by the count of Flanders, i. 332.
Isabella of, wife of Philip, bears a son, i. 344; dies, 392; her relationship to Philip's second wife, ii. 43, 95.
Haldius, duke of the Ruteni, at Arthur's court, i. 11.
Hamelin, treachery of, i. 7; slain, 8.
earl of Warenne, *See* Warenne.
Hamo, precentor of York, installs Henry Marshall as prebendary, i. 379; claims the treasurership, *ib.*; takes

Hamo—*cont.*
the archbishop's part, 390; brings letters from Rome against him, ii. 77; attends Hubert's visitation, ii. 88; is present as treasurer at the hearing by Hugh of Lincoln, 151.
Hamo, Robert, son of. *See* Fitz Hamon.
Hamonis portus, i. 8.
Hampshire, ravaged by the Danes in 1006, i. 29; in 1009, 31; in 1011, 33; by William the Conqueror, 82; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; the bishop of Winchester's purchase of, annulled, ii. 58.
Hampstead, in Berkshire, portent at, in 1103, i. 122.
Hampton, i. 8. *See* Southampton.
Hamund, killed at York in 1065, i. 79.
Harbottle, taken by William the Lion in 1174, i. 226.
Harcourt, Robert de, surety of the peace of 1193, ii. 40.
Hardicanute, son of Canute and Emma, reign of, i. 15; Denmark left by Canute to, 52; elected king of southern England, 53; visits his mother in Flanders, 55; becomes king of all England, *ib.*; disinters Harold, i. 56; is reconciled with Godwin and exacts ship money, 57; extortion of his huscarls, *ib.*; his cruelty at Worcester, *ib.*; dies at Lambeth, *ib.*; buried at Winchester, 58.
Harold I., son of Canute and Elfgiva of Hampton, i. 52; his reign, 15; succeeds his father, 52; divides the kingdom with Hardicanute, but ultimately becomes sole king, 53, 54; banishes queen Emma, 54; gives away sees, 55; dies in 1040, *ib.*; disinterred by Hardicanute, 56; and re-buried by the Danes, *ib.*
Harold II., son of earl Godwin, his reign i. 16; earl of East Anglia, 65; aids his father in the quarrel of 1051, *ib.*; exiled, 66; goes to Ireland, *ib.*; returns to Somersetshire, *ib.*; joins
Harold II.—*cont.*
his father in the Isle of Wight, 67; is restored, 68; succeeds to his father's earldom, 69; sent against Griffin and Alfgar, 70; fortifies Hereford; his chaplain Leofgar made bishop there, 71; goes to Rhuddlan against Griffin in 1063, 76, 77; receives the fealty of Rithwallan and Blethogent, 78; builds the king a hunting lodge at Portskeweth, 79; removes Tostig from the earldom of Northumbria, *ib.*; becomes king, 80; defeats Harold Hardrada, 81; is defeated and slain at Hastings, 16, 82; his wife Algitha, 82; his sons Godwin, Edmund, and Magnus, 84; his staller Eadnoth, *ib.*
king of Denmark. *See* Denmark.
earl of Caithness. *See* Caithness.
Hartlepool, Hugh, count of Bar, lands at, i. 227.
Hastings, men of, take Swein's ships, i. 63; join Godwin in 1052, i. 67; battle of, 82; William Rufus at, i. 109; he takes money from his soldiers at, 110; Henry I. collects an army at, to meet duke Robert, 120.
Hawisia, countess of Gloucester. *See* Gloucester.
Haya, castle of, in Maine, surrendered to Henry II., i. 224.
Geoffrey de, surrenders, i. 224.
Malherbe, frontier of the treaty of 1194, ii. 67.
Hayrun, S. Mary of, i. 402, 403.
Heardulf, father of Gloniern, i. 79.
Hebron (S. Abraham) taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Heca, bishop of the South Saxons. *See* Selsey.
Helena, wife of Constantius, i. 8.
Helyas, abbot of the Scots at Cologne, i. 28, 53, 58.
Hemming, leads a Danish invasion in 1009, i. 31.

Hemming—*cont.*
son of Haco and Gunhilda, banished, i. 59.
Hengist, history of, i. 9, 10.
Henry I., king of England, son of William the Conqueror, reign of, i. 17; knighted at Westminster in 1086, 99; seizes Mount S. Michael in Normandy, and is there besieged by his brothers in 1091, 105; becomes king in 1100, 119; is crowned by Maurice, bishop of London, makes reforms in church and state and imprisons Ranulf Flambard, *ib.*; marries Matilda of Scotland, *ib.*
in 1101, calls up the English to resist the invasion threatened by duke Robert, i. 120.
in 1102, takes the castles of Robert of Belesme, i. 121; and expels him from England, *ib.*; holds a council at Westminster, *ib.*
in 1103, quarrels with Anselm about investitures, i. 122; allows him to go to Rome, *ib.*; has a visit from duke Robert, *ib.*
in 1104, keeps Whitsuntide at Westminster and seizes the English estates of the count of Mortain, i. 123.
in 1105, the Norman nobles revolt to him and he gets possession of Caen and Bayeux, i. 123.
in 1106, he meets Robert at Northampton, and the quarrel becomes worse, i. 124; goes to Normandy and is reconciled with Anselm *ib.*; wins the battle of Tenchebrai, *ib.*
in 1107, returns to England and settles his controversy with Anselm, i. 125.
in 1108, present at a council, i. 126; makes improvements in the laws, and coins new money, 127; goes abroad, *ib.*
in 1109, returns, founds the see of Ely, i. 128.
in 1110, engages his daughter to the emperor Henry V., i. 128.
in 1111, transplants the Flemings from Northumberland to Wales, and removes the New Minster at Winchester, i. 131.
in 1112, imprisons Robert of Belesme at Cherburg, i. 133.
in 1113, removes Robert of Belesme to Wareham, i. 133.
in 1114, invades Wales, and afterwards goes to Normandy, i. 134.
in 1115, returns to England, i. 135.
in 1116, has war with Griffin son of Rhys, i. 135; goes to Normandy, 136.
in 1117, erects new buildings at Cirencester, i. 136.
in 1118, the Norman nobles revolt to Lewis VI., i. 137.
in 1119, makes peace with Lewis, forbids the pope to consecrate Thurstan, i. 138; forbids Thurstan to land in England, 139.
in 1120, returns home and loses his son by shipwreck, i. 139.
in 1121, marries Adeliza of Louvain, i. 140; invades Wales and reduces the kings to submission, 141.
in 1123, loses his friend the bishop of Lincoln at Woodstock, i. 142; makes William archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; goes to Normandy at Whitsuntide, *ib.*
in 1124, imprisons the count of Meulan and others, i. 143.
in 1125, punishes the moneyers, i. 143.
in 1126, returns to England, i. 147; spends Christmas at Windsor, *ib.*; settles the succession on his daughter, *ib.*; and commits Rochester castle to the archbishop of Canterbury, i. 148.
in 1127, confirms the acts of the council of London, i. 150.
in 1128, names the bishop of London, i. 151.
in 1129, returns to England, i. 152.

Henry I.—*cont.*
in 1130, is present at the fire at Rochester, i. 152; goes to Normandy, 153.
in 1131, returns to England, i. 153; keeps Christmas at Dunstable, *ib.*
in 1132, keeps Easter at Woodstock, i. 153; Christmas at Windsor, *ib.*
in 1133, keeps Easter at Oxford, i. 154; and holds a court at Winchester, *ib.*
in 1134, stays in Normandy, rejoiced by the birth of grandchildren, i. 154; is prevented returning to England by Matilda's quarrels, *ib.*
in 1135, dies at S. Denys-en-Lions, i. 154; verses on him, 155; his character, *ib.*; his body is removed to Rouen, then to Caën, 156; and buried at Reading, 157.
his connexion with Robert Wiscard, ii. 10; the dower he gave to his queen, i. 386; his charter produced in 1214, ii. 218.

Henry II., son of Geoffrey and Matilda, is knighted by David king of Scots, i. 175; the lands of his friends invaded, *ib.*; succeeds his father in Anjou, 176; marries Eleanor, *ib.*; comes to England in 1153, 177; besieges Malmesbury, 178; relieves Wallingford, 179; besieges Crowmarsh, 180; meets Stephen, *ib.*
takes Stamford and Nottingham, i. 181; makes peace, *ib.*; meets Stephen at Oxford and at Dunstable, 182; returns to France, *ib.*; is summoned to England on Stephen's death, 183; crowned, *ib.*, 184.
in 1157, invades Wales, i. 184; is crowned at Lincoln, *ib.*
in 1158, is crowned at Winchester, i. 185; goes to Paris, *ib.*
in 1160, besieges Toulouse, i. 185; obtains Gisors, *ib.*
in 1161, quarrels with Lewis VII., i. 185; makes Thomas archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*
in 1163, holds a council at Westminster, i. 185; and tries to enforce the customs of Henry I., *ib.*
in 1164, holds a council at Clarendon, i. 186; holds a council at Northampton, *ib.*
in 1165, invades Wales, i. 186.
in 1169, makes peace, i. 186.
in 1170, keeps Christmas at Nantes, i. 186, 187; subdues Eudes of Porhoet, and crosses in a storm from Barfleur to Portsmouth, 187; keeps Easter at Windsor, 188; deposes the sheriffs, and in a council at London arranges for the coronation of his son, *ib.*; directs the kings of Scots to do homage to his son, 17, 189; goes to Normandy, makes peace with Lewis VII. at Vendome, and falls ill at Mote de Ger, *ib.*; divides his territories, *ib.*; goes on pilgrimage to Roquemadour, 190; makes peace with Becket and authorizes his return, 191; claims the archbishopric of Bourges, 192; makes a truce with Lewis VII., *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Bur, *ib.*, 194.
in 1171, charged with the guilt of the murder of Becket, i. 194–199; hears the news at Argentan, 194; sends an embassy to Rome to ask for a commission of inquiry, 199; letter of the ambassadors to, *ib.*; hears of the arrival of Gratian and Vivian, 201; goes from Normandy to England and thence to Ireland, 202; receives the submission of the kings and bishops, *ib.*, 203; sends representatives to the council of Cashel, 204; spends the winter at Dublin, *ib.*
in 1172, goes to Wexford for Lent, ii. 204; hears of the arrival of Albert and Theodinus, and places his officers in command throughout Ireland, 205; proceeds by S. David's

Henry II.—*cont.*
and Portsmouth to Caen to meet the legates, *ib.*; orders the re-coronation of his son, with his wife; makes peace with Lewis VII., *ib.*; is absolved for complicity in the murder of Becket, 206, 207; summons his son Henry out of France, 208; outlaws Adam du Port, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Chinon, *ib.*
in 1173, meets the count of Maurienne at Montferrand and arranges for a marriage between John and the count's daughter, i. 208–212; receives the homage of Toulouse, 209; quarrels with his son Henry about the provision to be made for John, 212, 213; league of the French princes against him, 214; rising of the nobles, 215; is summoned to the relief of Verneuil, 218; pursues Lewis VII., 220; takes Damville, and goes to Rouen, *ib.*; thence to Dol, 221; takes Dol and subdues Brittany, *ib.*; meets Lewis at Gisors, 222; takes the strongholds of Anjou, 224; takes Vendome, *ib.*; and keeps Christmas at Caen, 225.
in 1174, makes a truce until Easter with Lewis, i. 225; letter of the elect of Bath to, 228, 229; ravages Poictou, crosses Anjou, and returns to Normandy, 230; crosses from Barfleur to Southampton; goes on pilgrimage to Canterbury, *ib.*; thence to London, *ib.*; hears of the capture of the king of Scots, *ib.*; takes Huntingdon, goes to Seleham, and receives the submission of Hugh Bigot, *ib.*; goes to Northampton and there receives the submission of the rebels, 231; returns to Normandy and raises the siege of Rouen, *ib.*, 232; subdues Poictou, 233; has a conference with his sons, *ib.*; makes peace with them, *ib.*; sends Roger Hoveden to Galloway, 236; refuses the alliance of the lords

Henry II.—*cont.*
of Galloway, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Argentan, 237.
in 1175, goes to le Mans, receives the fealty of his son Henry at Bur, i. 237; and keeps Easter at Cherburg, 238; makes peace with the count of Flanders, *ib.*; sends Richard and Geoffrey into Poictou and Brittany, *ib.*; and lands at Portsmouth in May, *ib.*; comes to London, *ib.*; holds a council at Westminster, *ib.*; goes to Canterbury, 244; keeps Easter at Reading, *ib.*; receives the surrender of Bristol, 245; holds a council at Gloucester, *ib.*; and at Woodstock, *ib.*; goes to Nottingham and Lichfield, 246; enforces forest law, *ib.*; meets the king of Scots at York, 247; treaty of, with the king of Scots, 247–250; holds a council at Windsor in October, 252; makes a treaty with the king of Connaught, *ib.*, 253; has a visit from the legate Hugezun at Winchester, 254; keeps Christmas at Windsor, 255.
in 1176, sends out itinerant judges, i. 256; issues the assize of Northampton, 257–259; has a council at Westminster at Midlent, 260; keeps Easter at Winchester, 262; accepts the proposals of William of Sicily for Johanna, 263; reconciles the archbishops and bishops at Winchester, 264, 265; arranges the marriage of John with the heiress of Gloucester, 268; sends William Fitz Aldelm to Ireland, *ib.*; at Feckenham receives the king of Scots, 269; orders the demolition of castles, 269; is at the dedication of Cirencester abbey, 270; receives the homage of Galloway, 269; keeps Christmas at Nottingham, 272.
in 1177, holds a council at Northampton, i. 273; restores the earl of Leicester, *ib.*; takes measures for

Henry II.—*cont.*
removing the canons from Waltham and the nuns from Amesbury, 274, 275; discusses the marriage of the heiresses of Boulogne, 273, 275; receives ambassadors from the kings of Castille and Navarre, asking him to arbitrate between them, 277; hears the statements on both sides, 280, 281; pronounces his adjudication, *ib.*, 282–286; has a visit from the count of Flanders, 287; keeps Easter at Wye, *ib.*; holds a council at Geddington, *ib.*; restores the earl of Chester, 288; has a meeting at Oxford with the Welsh princes, 289; at Oxford makes John king of Ireland, 288; receives the submission of the Welsh princes, 289; divides Ireland amongst his vassals, 289–290; goes to Amesbury, *ib.*; and to Winchester, 291; assembles his forces and dismisses them, 292; appoints Roger his almoner, 293; goes to Marlborough, 295; and Waltham, 296; keeps Whitsuntide at London and goes to Woodstock, *ib.*; calls a council at Winchester, 298; is at Stokes, 300; at Stanstead, *ib.*; gives Bosham to Exeter, 301; returns to Winchester, *ib.*; allows the Jews to have cemeteries, *ib.*; is threatened with interdict for impeding Richard's marriage, 300; goes to Normandy, 304; and makes a treaty with Lewis VII. at Yvry, 305–307; goes to Verneuil, 307; forbids the seizure of the goods of vassals for the debts of their lords in his French dominions, 308; summons his forces to Argentan, *ib.*
in 1180, keeps Christmas at le Mans, i. 309.
in 1181, issues his assize of arms at le Mans, i. 310; visited by the archbishop of Dublin, *ib.*; takes the property of his see into his hands, *ib.*;
Henry II.—*cont.*
removes Hugh de Lacy from the government of Dublin, *ib.*; makes his son Geoffrey chancellor, 311; goes to Chinon for Easter, *ib.*; meets Philip at Gué S. Remy, *ib.*; promises succour to Palestine, *ib.*; hears the quarrel of the king of Scots with his bishops, *ib.*; appoints bishops to Evreux and Lisieux, and makes peace between Philip and the count of Flanders, 312; issues his assize of arms for England, 312–314; makes John Cumin archbishop of Dublin, 315; forbids the execution of archbishop Roger's final disposition of his goods, 316; is defied by the bishop of Durham, *ib.*; persecutes the bishop, 317; keeps Christmas at Winchester, *ib.*
in 1182, intercedes for Henry the Lion with the emperor, 318; warned of his coming troubles, 320; keeps Christmas at Caen, *ib.*
in 1183, orders his son Henry to receive the homage of his brothers, i. 320, 321; tries to help Richard against his brothers, 321; comes to Limoges and is shot at, 322; tries in vain to reconcile his sons, *ib.*, 323; his grief at the death of Henry, 325; takes Limoges and other strongholds, 326; settles a dower in money on queen Margaret, *ib.*; makes Walter of Coutances bishop of Lincoln, *ib.*; orders Richard to give up Poictou to John, i. 327; consults the bishops about giving aid to the pope, 328; does homage to Philip for his French dominions, 329; keeps Christmas at le Mans, *ib.*
in 1184, crosses from Witsand to Dover, i. 330; gives the earldom of Huntingdon to the king of Scots, *ib.*; spares Gilbert Plumpton, *ib.*; holds councils at Reading and London for the election of an archbishop

Henry II.—*cont.*
of Canterbury, 331 ; visits Canterbury, 332 ; accepts Baldwin as archbishop. *ib.* ; visited by the archbishop of Cologne, *ib.* ; again intercedes for Henry of Saxony, 333 ; issues assize of the forest, *ib.* ; makes a bishop of Bangor, *ib.* ; keeps Christmas at Windsor, 334.
in 1185, receives the ambassadors of Jerusalem at Reading, i. 334 ; holds a council at London, on the crusade, 335 ; knights John, and sends him as king to Ireland, 336 ; goes to Normandy in April, *ib.* ; orders Richard to give up Poictou to his mother, 337 ; promises aid to Palestine, *ib.* ; is allowed by Urban III. to make one of his sons king of Ireland, 338 ; keeps Christmas at Domfront, 339.
in 1186, meets Philip and discusses Richard's marriage, i. 339 ; crosses to England, makes S. Hugh bishop of Lincoln, *ib.* ; goes to Carlisle on his way to Galloway, *ib.* ; tries to restore the see of Carlisle, 340 ; marries William, king of Scots, to Ermengard of Beaumont, *ib.* ; makes Hubert Walter dean of York, *ib.* ; and new bishops of Worcester and Exeter, *ib.* ; refuses to entrust Philip with the heiress of Brittany, 341 ; makes a truce with him, *ib.* ; keeps Christmas at Guildford, 343.
in 1187, goes to Normandy and negotiates with Philip, i. 343 ; takes up arms in defence of Richard and John, *ib.* ; makes a truce for two years in June, 344 ; has fresh difficulties with Richard, but is reconciled, and goes into Brittany, *ib.* ; besieges Montrelais, *ib.* ; keeps Christmas at Caen, 351.
in 1188, meets Philip and arranges for a crusade, i. 351, 352 ; his ordinance for the Saladin tithe, 352–354 ; returns to England in January, 354 ;
Henry II.—*cont.*
holds a council at Geddington and directs the collection of the tithe in England, 354, 355 ; refuses to be answerable for Richard's behaviour in Toulouse, 356 ; letter of the patriarch of Antioch to, *ib.* ; his answer, *ib.* ; returns to Normandy in July, 357 ; defies Philip, 358 ; invades France, *ib.* ; and captures several places, *ib.* ; holds two ineffectual meetings with Philip, 358, 359 ; the master of the Templars writes to, 359 ; punishes Gilbert of Ogerstan for embezzling the tithe, 360 ; meets Philip at Bons Moulins, 361 ; makes a truce until January, *ib.* ; keeps Christmas at Saumur, 364.
in 1189, Philip and Richard renew the war against, i. 364 ; meets Philip at la Ferté Bernard, *ib.* ; proposes John as husband for Alesia, *ib.* ; is said to have bribed the papal legate, 365 ; flies from le Mans, *ib.* ; to Chinon, *ib.* ; and to Saumur, 366 ; visited by the archbishop of Rheims and the count of Flanders, *ib.* ; meets Philip between Tours and Azai, and submits, 367 ; his grief at hearing of the treachery of John, 368 ; returns to Chinon and falls sick, *ib.* ; dies at Chinon, and is buried at Fontevraud, *ib.* ; his body bleeds in the presence of Richard, *ib.* ; his reign, i. 17.
Henry, son of Henry II. and Eleanor, born, i. 184 ; married to Margaret of France, 185 ; he is crowned in 1170, king of England, 188 ; called Henry III., 17 ; receives the homage of William of Scotland, 189 ; Normandy bequeathed to him by his father, *ib.*
in 1172, is again crowned, with his wife, i. 205 ; goes to Normandy, 208 ; swears his innocence of Becket's murder, 207 ; visits Lewis VII., and is set against his father, 208 ;

Henry, son of Henry II.—*cont.*
is summoned by Henry II. to Chinon, and sent thence into Normandy, *ib.*
in 1173, goes with his father into Auvergne, i. 208; receives the homage of the count of Toulouse at Limoges, 209; refuses to make a settlement on John, 213; flies to Lewis VII., *ib.*; conspires with him against his father, and promises fiefs to the great vassals, 214; rises against Henry II., 217; besieges Verneuil, *ib.*; admits the people of Verneuil to terms, 218; meets his father between Gisors and Trie, but is persuaded by Lewis VII. to hold out against him, 222.
in 1174, forbids the confirmation of the new bishops, i. 228; joins Philip of Flanders and threatens invasion, 229; comes to Gravelines ready to embark, *ib.*; joins Lewis VII. at the siege of Rouen, 231; negociates for peace with his father, 232; treaty of peace with, 233.
in 1175, meets his father at le Mans, i. 237; swears fealty to him at Bur, *ib.*; keeps Easter at Cherburg, 238; goes to England, and attends the council at Westminster, *ib.*; goes to Canterbury, 244; to Gloucester, 245; to Woodstock, *ib.*; receives the homage of Scotland at York, 247; goes to London, 251; attends a council at Windsor, 252; receives the legate Hugezun at Winchester, 254; keeps Christmas at Windsor, 256.
in 1176, is at the council of Nottingham, i. 256, 257; proposes a pilgrimage to Compostella, 261; keeps Easter at Winchester, 262; goes to France, *ib.*; helps Richard to take Neuf-château, 266; punishes Adam, his vice-chancellor, for betraying his secrets, 267; keeps Christmas at Argentan, 272.
Henry, son of Henry II.—*cont.*
in 1177, is ordered to seize Châteauroux, i. 272; his wife bears a still-born son, at Paris, 297; his father promises him the Vexin, 292; meets his father at Rouen, 304; is at the peace of Yvry, 305; sent into Berry, 306.
in 1182, has a warning of his death, i. 319.
in 1183, is ordered to receive his brothers' fealty, i. 320; quarrels with Richard about it, *ib.*; is persuaded by the barons of Aquitaine to wage war on Richard, *ib.*; goes to Limoges, and sees his father shot at by his men, 322; his duplicity, 323; pretends submission, *ib.*; openly joins his father's enemies, *ib.*; plunders the shrine of S. Martial and Roquemadour, 324; falls sick at Martel, confesses, and dies, 324, 325; his father's lamentation for him, 325.
Henry III., king of England, son of John, called Henry IV., i. 18, 24, ii. 249; born, 199; succeeds his father, 233; guardians appointed for him, *ib.*; supported by the pope, *ib.*; is received in London after Lewis's departure, 240; the pope urges him to be crowned a second time in 1220, 244; is crowned and makes a progress, *ib.*; takes the castles of William of Aumâle, 245; is at the translation of S. Thomas, *ib.*; William of Aumâle rebels against him in 1221, 247; obtains the support of the nobles against him, 248; marries his sister to the king of Scots, 249; pardons the treason of Peter de Mauley, 250.
in 1222, the archbishop threatens to excommunicate the king's enemies, ii. 251.
in 1224, arrives at years of discretion, ii. 252; demands the castles of the aliens, 253; besieges the castle of

Henry III.—*cont.*
Bedford, *ib.*; takes it, 254; acknowledges the aid granted for carrying on the siege, 254, 255.
in 1225, confirms the charters and has a grant of a fifteenth, ii. 256; mentioned in the complaint of Fawkes de Breauté, 259-272; letter of Honorius III. to, 272–274; present at a council in London, 279.
Henry, bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester.
master, one of the king's clerks at Rome, i. 199.
Henry II., emperor in 1003, i. 27; is at Fulda in 1020, 46; dies in 1024 and is buried at Bamberg, 47; his niece marries the Etheling Edward, 45.
Henry III., emperor in 1039, i. 55; deposes the pope, 59; his war with Baldwin of Flanders in 1049, 62; is in alliance with Edward the Confessor, *ib.*; embassy from Edward to, 70; dies in 1056, 72.
Henry IV., king of Germany, succeeds in 1056, i. 72; sells the see of Constance, and is at a council at Mentz, 88; annuls the decrees of Gregory VII., 92; his struggle with Rudolf, 93; deposes Gregory VII. at Mentz, and sets up Wibert of Ravenna, 96; besieges Rome in 1081, *ib.*; war with the Pope, *ib.*; introduces Wibert into Rome in 1083, and returns home, *ib.*; defeats the Saxons, 97; is beaten by them in 1086, 98; dies in 1106, 124.
Henry V., emperor, succeeds in 1106, i. 124; marries Matilda of England, 128, 133; visits Rome and makes peace with Paschal II., 128, 129; is crowned, 131; besieges Cologne, makes peace, 134; sets up Burdinus as antipope to Gelasius in 1118, 137; goes to Rome, *ib.*; dies in 1125, 144.
Henry VI., emperor, takes charge of Germany on his father's departure on the crusade, i. 362; was husband of Constance, aunt to King William of Sicily, 388, ii. 12; sends an army into Italy on William's death, i. 388; restores the estates of Henry the Lion, 422; demands the imperial crown, *ib.*; is crowned with his wife by Celestine III., 435, 436; story of the coronation, 436; gives up Tusculum to the pope, 438; besieges Salerno, takes it, loses his army before Naples, and goes to Milan, ii. 12, 13; asks the aid of the pope to recover his wife, 13; intrigues with Philip of France against Richard, 14; announces the capture of Richard to Philip, 24; has an interview with Richard on Palm Sunday, 1193, 25; is convinced by him and arranges terms of ransom, 25, 26; receives his cession of the English crown and restores it, 26; released Richard from his obligations before his death, *ib.*; is threatened with excommunication, 30; forms a league with Richard, 30, 31; writes to the English barons, 32; proposed interview with Philip, 32, 33; it is prevented by Richard's party, 34; sees Richard at Worms, 35; and makes a new arrangement about ransom, *ib.*; treaty of, with Richard, 35, 36; gives him the kingdom of Provence, 43; fixes the day of release, 44; after fresh propositions from Philip postpones it, 46; meets Richard at Mentz, 48; shows him Philip's proposal and releases him, 49; in 1194, invades Apulia and takes Salerno, 75; takes Amalfi, goes to Sicily and takes possession of it, *ib.*; gives Durazzo to Margarit, *ib.*; is crowned at Palermo, disinters Tancred, 76; keeps Christmas 1194 at Palermo, 80; sends a gold crown to Richard,

Henry VI.—*cont.*
and offers help against Philip, 90; forbids Richard to make peace without his leave, 92; his son Frederick born, 108; sends an army into Syria, 109; mutilates Margarit, 110; quarrels with his wife, and is besieged by the Sicilians, *ib.*; sends Savaric to Richard, 112; is reconciled with his enemies and dies, *ib.*; the pope forbids his burial, 112, 113; mentioned, 247.
Henry I., king of France, dies in 1060, i. 74.
Henry, son of David, king of Scots; does homage to Stephen for Huntingdon, i. 158; continues the battle of the Standard after his father's flight, 162; goes with Stephen into England in 1139, 163; and is rescued by him at Ludlow, *ib.*
Henry the Lion, duke of Saxony; marries Matilda, daughter of Henry II., i. 186; Henry II. intercedes for him with Frederick, 318; he comes to Normandy, and then goes to Compostella, *ib.*; keeps Christmas 1182 at Caen, 320; is reconciled with the archbishop of Cologne, 332; the pope prevailed on by Henry II. to intercede for him, 333; allowed to return to Germany in 1184, *ib.*; recovers Saxony in 1189, 380; is restored by Henry VI., 422; conspires against him, ii. 34; is excepted from the peace, 35; his son Otho, 89.
Henry of Saxony, son of Henry the Lion. *See* Palatine.
Heraclius, emperor, i. 12.
Heraclius. *See* Jerusalem, patriarch of.
Herbert, archdeacon of Canterbury, bishop of Salisbury. *See* Salisbury.
bishop of Thetford. *See* Thetford, Norwich.
made abbot of Westminster, i. 140.
brother of earl Reginald, i. 289, 295.
Here, the estate of William Fitz Stephen, i. 418.
Herebert, legate of Urban II., i. 23.
Hereford, bishops of:
Ethelstan, was blind for 13 years, and had bishop Tremerin as his substitute, i. 71; his monastery destroyed in 1055, 70; dies at Bosbury, and is buried at Hereford, 71.
Leofgar, chaplain to earl Harold, appointed in 1056, and killed the same year, i. 71.
Aldred, bishop of Worcester, administers Hereford from 1056 to 1060, i. 71, 74. *See* York.
Walter, a Lorrainer, chaplain to queen Eadgith, made bishop in 1060, i. 74; consecrated by pope Nicholas II., 87; submits to the conqueror, 82; consecrates Lanfranc, 87.
Robert, ordained priest by S. Wulfstan, i. 93; consecrated in 1079, *ib.*; has a vision of S. Wulfstan, and dies in 1095, 111.
Gerard, is present at the dedication of Gloucester, i. 117; becomes archbishop of York in 1100, 119. *See* York.
Roger, the larderer, nominated in 1102, i. 121; dies at London before consecration, 122.
Reinelm, chancellor to queen Matilda, nominated in 1102, i. 122; resigns before consecration, *ib.*; is consecrated in 1107, 125; dies in 1115, 135.
Gosfrid, chaplain to Henry I., nominated in 1115, and consecrated, i. 135; dedicates a church at Momerfield in 1118, 137; dies in 1119, 138.
Richard, chaplain to Henry I., elected in 1121, i. 140; assists at the consecration of the bishop of Norwich, 141; and of the church of Tewkesbury, *ib.*; at the consecration of two bishops in 1125, 144; at the council of Westminster in 1127, 148; dies in 1127, 150.
Robert, prior of Lantony, consecrated in 1131, i. 153.

Hereford, bishops of—*cont.*
Gilbert Foliot, translated to London in 1163, i. 185. *See* London.
Robert of Melun consecrated in 1163, i. 186.
Robert Foliot, consecrated by Richard, i. 236; attends the council at London in 1175, 239; and in 1177, 280.
William de Vere, attends Richard's coronation, i. 373.
Giles de Braiose, nominated and consecrated in 1200, ii. 166; returns from exile in 1213, 213; joins the barons in 1215, 219, 225; dies in 1215, 227.
Hugh, bishop of, at the translation of S. Wulfstan, ii. 240; dies in 1219, 241.
Hugh Foliot, succeeds in 1219, ii. 241.
Hereford, Godfrey archdeacon of, lost at sea, i. 139.
Hereford, see of, claimed for the province of York, i. 244; for that of S. David's, ii. 156.
city of, taken by Griffin and Alfgar in 1055, i. 70; the monastery burnt, *ib.*; bishop Ethelstan buried at, 71; attacked in 1088, 102; held by Talbot against Stephen, 160; visited by Hubert Walter, ii. 116.
earls of. *See* Ralph, earl of Herefordshire.
William Fitz Osbern, made earl by the Conqueror, i, 83; left as justiciar in 1067, *ib.*; advises the Conqueror to examine the treasures of the churches in 1070, 86.
Roger, son of William Fitz Osbern, gives his sister in marriage to Ralph, earl of the East Angles, i. 90; plots against the Conqueror, *ib.*; is resisted by bishop Wulfstan, *ib.*; imprisoned, 91; condemned by judicial sentence, *ib.*; released by William I. before death, 99.
Henry Bohun. *See* Bohun.
Margaret, countess of, dies, ii. 189.
Herefordshire, part of Swein's earldom, i. 65; ravaged by the South Welsh under Griffin, 70; men of, rebel under Eadric the Wild, 83; they attack Worcester in 1088, 102; ravaged by the Welsh in 1094, 110; great thunderstorm in 1118, 137; visited by itinerant justices in 1176, 256.
Hereward, takes refuge in Ely, i. 89; holds out in the marches against the Conqueror, *ib.*
Heriman, archbishop of Cologne. *See* Cologne.
Heriman, bishop of Bamberg, i. 90.
Herimar, abbot of S. Remi, invites pope Leo to Rheims, i. 64.
Herkelou, given to William Fitzaldelm, i. 289.
Herman, bishop of Wiltshire. *See* Ramsbury, bishops of.
Hersewell, village belonging to Finchale, seized by archdeacon Aimeri, ii. 118.
Hertfordshire, ravaged by the Danes in 1011, i. 33; ravaged by William in 1066, 82; visited by itinerant judges in 1176, 256.
Hertford, taken by Lewis in 1216, ii. 234.
Herveus, bishop of Bangor and Ely. *See* Bangor, Ely.
Hervey, lands of, given to William Fitz Aldelm, i. 290.
Hessedin Jordich, one of the defenders of Acre, i. 450; negotiates for surrender, *ib.*
Hexham, visit of king John to, ii. 181.
Hilary, S., flourished in the reign of Constantius, i. 9.
Hilary, pope in king Arthur's days, i. 10.
Hildebrand. *See* Gregory VII.
Holland, in Lincolnshire, flooded, i. 309; traversed by John in 1216, ii. 231.
Holm, S. Bennet, abbey of, vacant in 1175, i. 245.
Ralph, abbot of, dies in 1210, ii. 201; vacant in 1213, 213.

Honauer (Hanover), son of Iggemund, ii. 101.

Honorius, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.

prior of Canterbury, dies at Rome, i. 363.

a clerk of archbishop Geoffrey, appeals in favour of the archbishop, ii. 88; made archdeacon of Richmond by him, 120; but opposed by Roger of S. Edmund and appeals to Rome, 124; is received by the clergy of Richmond, 145; excommunicated by the dean of York, *ib.*

Honorius III. pope (Cincius), succeeds in 1216, ii. 230; confirms the legation of Walo, 234; threatens France with an interdict, 235; directs the appointment of the bishop of Ely, 241; has news of the capture of Damietta, 242; canonizes S. Hugh, 243; orders the second coronation of Henry III., 244; receives archbishop Langton at Rome, grants an indulgence on the translation of S. Thomas, 246; crowns Frederick II., 247; urges the grant of an aid in 1225, 256; determines on a crusade, 257; complaint of Fawkes de Breauté to, 259–272; letter of, on his behalf, 272–274; sends Otho as legate, 274; demands a large share of patronage, 274–278; resistance of the clergy, 278, 279.

Hosea, the prophet, i. 5.

Hospitallers, the knights, have charge of Messina, i. 412; and of the emperor of Cyprus, 448; the master of, one of the treasurers of the crusade, 412; their share in the crusade of 1225, ii. 258, 259.

Houlme, besieged by Robert of Normandy, i. 110.

Hoveden, Roger, cited, i. 14; sent by Henry II. to negotiate with the lords of Galloway, i. 236; and to canvass the convents, 244, 245.

Howden, Hugh de Puiset resides at, i. 393; John keeps Christmas 1191 at, ii. 17; the bishop dies at, 83; John grants a fair to the bishop at, 161.

Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.

Hugh the Great goes on crusade, i. 113.

governor of Exeter, by neglect allows the entrance of the Danes, i. 27.

companion of Osbern Pentecost, flies to Scotland in 1052, i. 68.

bishop of S. Andrew's. *See* S. Andrew's.

bishop of Lincoln. *See* Lincoln.

Hughezun, cardinal of S. Angelo, legate to England in 1175, i. 254; comes to Winchester, *ib.*; allows the king to exercise forest jurisdiction over the clergy, 255; keeps Christmas 1175 at York, 256; attempts to hold a council at London, 260; appeals the archbishop of Canterbury, 261; is bribed by him, *ib.*; visits the cathedral, 255; returns to Rome in the summer, 263; goes to Sicily, *ib.*

Humber, the river, i. 3.

Tostig lands in, i. 89.

Humbert, count of Maurienne. *See* Maurienne.

the younger, heir of Roussillon, i. 212.

Humez, Richard of, constable of Normandy, is at Breteuil with Henry II. in 1173, i. 218; at Bur at the reconciliation of the Henries, 237.

Hungary, the sons of Ethelred sent to, i. 45; Edward the Etheling returns from, 72; bishop Aldred goes to, 73.

an archbishop from, at the translation of S. Thomas, ii. 245.

Salomon, king of, i. 45.

Bela III., king of, marries queen Margaret, i. 340; dies in 1196, ii. 102.

Huntingdon, given by Stephen to Henry of Scotland, i. 158; Stephen holds a forest court near, *ib.*; held by earl David against Henry II., 216; besieged by Richard de Lucy, 229;

Huntingdon—*cont.*
taken by the king, 230; Ralph de Waterville at, 255.
Huntingdon, earldom of, offered by the younger Henry to earl David in 1173, i. 215; given to William the Lion in 1184, and by him to David, 330.
Simon, earl of, the siege of Huntingdon committed to him in 1174, i. 229; he dies in 1184, 330.
David, earl of. *See* David of Scotland.
Huntingdonshire, ravaged by the Danes in 1011, i. 33; by Canute in 1016, 39; was part of Harold's earldom, 65; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; undertaken by Saer de Quency in 1215, ii. 224.
Husthwaite, prebend of, at York, ii. 148.
Hyllandia, i. 10.

I.

Iconium, kingdom of, invaded by Manuel Comnenus, i. 270, 271.
reports about the sultan of, i. 361; his territories invaded by Frederick, 362.
Iggemundus, father of Honauer, ii. 10.
Ilchester, besieged by Robert Mowbray in 1088, i. 102.
Imogen, wife of Brutus, i. 4.
Ina, king of Wessex, i. 61.
Indre, river, ii. 39.
Innocent II., pope; dies in 1143, i. 171.
Innocent III., pope; Lothair, cardinal deacon, elected in 1198, ii. 119; consecrated, 120; quarrels with the Romans, *ib.*; hears the complaints of the monks of Canterbury and urges the removal of Hubert Walter from the justiciarship, 122; orders the demolition of the church at Lambeth, 123; intercedes for archbishop Geoffrey, 133, 134; suspends
Innocent III.—*cont.*
the king of Leon, 138; complaint of the king of Denmark to, 143; sends Peter of Capua as legate, *ib.*; recognizes Otho as elect emperor, 150; decides the suit of the church of Dol, 153–155; and that of S. David's, 155–157; proposes to relax the interdict in France, 158, 159; his delegates conclude the great Canterbury case, 167, 168; sends cardinal Octavian to Philip, 174; is pope when Satan was loosed, 183; sends a cardinal to urge a crusade, 193.
in 1203 canonizes S. Wulfstan, ii. 196.
in 1205 quashes the elections to Canterbury, ii. 197.
in 1206 procures the election of Langton, ii. 198.
in 1207 consecrates Langton, ii. 199.
in 1208 places England and Wales under interdict, ii. 199.
in 1209 crowns Otho IV. as emperor, ii. 200.
in 1210 quarrels with Otho, ii. 202.
in 1211 deposes him, ii. 203; sends legates to England, 204; in 1212 sets up Frederick II. against Otho, 205; provokes the Welsh to rebel, 206.
in 1213 charges Philip to liberate England, ii. 209; sends Pandulf to receive the submission of John, 209, 210; urges a new crusade and sends Nicolas of Tusculum to England, 214.
in 1214 recalls the legate Nicolas, ii. 217.
in 1215 applied to by John for aid against the barons, ii. 218; sends Pandulf to summon the bishops to the Lateran council, 223; holds the Lateran council, 227; his anger against Langton, the barons, and Lewis, 228; dies in 1216, 230.
Insula, William de, taken at Alnwick, i. 227.

Ipswich, the Danes land near, i. 32.
held by Hugh Bigot against Stephen, i. 181.
Ireland, Gylomannus king of, killed by Uter Pendragon, i. 10; flight of Harold to, 66; return from, *ib.*; Alfgar flies to, 70; Harold's sons invade England from, 84; visit of Henry II. to, in 1171, 202; submission of the kings and bishops of, 202, 203; ecclesiastical council in, 204; Henry's stay there, 202–205; he leaves his officers in, 205; his treaty with king of Connaught, 252, 253; appoints a bishop in, 254; legation of Vivian to, 264; death of Richard earl of Strigul, 269; mission of William Fitz Aldelm to, *ib.*; visit of Vivian, and war in Ulster, 275, 276; the earl of Chester sent to, 289; John is to be made king, *ib.*; division of, among the barons, 289, 290, 295; Henry sends ministers to seize the archbishopric of Dublin, 310; John sent to, 336; his failure and return, 337; Urban III. allows the king to make one of his sons king there, 338; death of Hugh de Lacy in, 340; legates sent to crown John, 343; sea of, traversed by the crusading fleet, 398; Jordan de Curci killed in, and new troubles, ii. 109; the archbishop of Dublin driven out, 111, 112; troubles in 1201 in, 181, 190, 191; visited by John in 1210, 202.
Isaac Angelus, emperor of Constantinople, reports of his treachery towards the Christians, i. 361; entertains Frederick I. on his way to Palestine, 362.
Isaac Comnenus. *See* Comnenus.
Isaiah, the prophet, i. 5.
Ischia, passed by Richard, i. 397.
Issoudun, made over to Philip for two years in 1187, i. 344; given by him to Richard in 1188, 361; the town
Issoudun—*cont.*
taken by Philip, the castle relieved by Richard, ii. 93; quitclaimed by Richard to Philip, 96; treaty of, renewed by John, 176; given to Lewis and Blanche on their marriage, 177.
Ralph of Lusignan, lord of, ii. 182.
Istria, Richard shipwrecked near, ii. 24.

J.

Jacinctus, cardinal deacon, i. 200, 434; legate to Spain, quarrels with the king of Portugal, i. 350; becomes pope, 434. *See* Celestine III.
Jaen, kingdom of, in Spain, i. 407; ii. 16, 17.
James, St., kings of. *See* Leon.
pilgrimages to. *See* Compostella.
in Beverun, ii. 98.
Jarrow, the home of Bede, i. 21.
Jaunay, in Palestine, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Jedburgh, held by William the Lion against Henry II, i. 216; the elect of Glasgow buried at, ii. 151.
Jeremiah, the prophet, i. 6, 348.
Jericho, taken by Roger of S. Albans, i. 338.
Jerusalem, pilgrimage of Swein the son of Godwin to, i. 68; of bishop Aldred to, 73; of the German bishops, 77; crusade preached, 113; Robert of Normandy goes to, 114; taken in 1099, 117; return of the crusaders from, 119; Fulk of Anjou goes to, 138; new crusade to, 173; visited by Conrad and Lewis, i. 174; Baldwin king of, dies, 186; Henry II. swears to visit, 206; pilgrimage of Philip of Flanders to, 238, 251, 263, 287; William Mandeville goes to, 287; Henry II. and Lewis VII. propose a crusade to, 305; Alexander III. asks aid for, 311; Henry and Philip agree to go to, *ib.*; pro-

Jerusalem—*cont.*
posed expedition of the younger Henry to, 323; embassy from, to Philip and Henry, 334; Lucius III. asks aid for, *ib.*; return of the embassy, 337; transactions in 1185 at, 338, 339; in 1186, 342; threatened by Saladin in 1187, 345; taken, 346; Gregory VIII. writes in behalf of, 347; also Berter of Orleans, 348; crusade undertaken, 352; Saladin tithe, 352, 353; preparation of the kings to go to, 380; poem on the sorrows of, 394, 395; affairs of, in 1190, 420; Richard hopes to take it by Easter 1192, 458, 460; he marches on it after Christmas 1191, ii. 15, 17; he rides before the city, 19; Innocent III. asks relief for, 193; letter of the master of the Hospital urging a crusade, 191; letter of Geoffrey Fitz Peter directing the collection of an aid for, 194.
kings of:
Godfrey of Bouillon, duke of Lorraine, goes on the first crusade, i. 113; is chosen king, 117; dies and is buried on Golgotha, 120.
Baldwin I. succeeds in 1100, i. 120; brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, *ib.*
Baldwin II., king of, dies, i. 153; his daughter marries Fulk of Anjou, 275.
Fulk, king of, count of Anjou, i. 334; goes to Jerusalem, 138; called Geoffrey, 153; mentioned, 176; becomes king in 1132, 153.
Baldwin III., king of, son of Fulk, dies in 1162, 185.
Amalric I., king of, son of Fulk, succeeds Baldwin III., i. 185; subdues Egypt, 186; is dead in 1176, 263.
Baldwin IV., king of, son of Amalric; a leper, i. 334; resigns, 339.
Baldwin V., king of, son of Sibylla; a child, reigns two years and a half, i. 339; dies, 342.

Jerusalem, kings of—*cont.*
Sibylla, wife of William of Montferrat, mother of Baldwin V., 339; married secondly to Guy of Lusignan, *ib.*; has two daughters by him, *ib.*; succeeds her son, is divorced from Guy and re-married to him, 339, 342; surrenders Ascalon for the deliverance of her husband, 346; dies, 420.
Guy of Lusignan, marries Sibylla, i. 339, 342; his divorce and re-marriage, 342; he becomes king in 1186, and makes a truce with Saladin for three years, 343; risks a battle with Saladin in 1187, is defeated and taken prisoner, 345; is released, 346; refused entrance into Tyre, 381; besieges Acre, 381–383; attempt of Conrad of Montferrat to supplant him, 420; he is robbed of his royal rights and appeals to the kings of France and England, 421; visits Richard in Cyprus, 441; helps him to conquer Cyprus, *ib.*; returns to the king, 442; his brother Geoffrey appeals Conrad, 445; Richard takes the part of Guy, *ib.*; hearing of his claims, 454; is to divide the royalty, but to retain the title of king during his life, *ib.*; receives Cyprus from Richard in exchange for Jerusalem, ii. 19; dies in 1195, 94.
Henfrid of Toron, titular king of. *See* Toron.
Conrad of Montferrat. *See* Montferrat.
Henry of Champagne. *See* Champagne.
Isabella, called Milisent, daughter of Amalric; married to Henfrid of Toron, i. 420; ii. 138; becomes heir of the kingdom in 1190, i. 420; divorces Henfrid and marries Conrad of Montferrat, 421; is to succeed Guy in the kingdom, should she outlive him, 454; marries Henry

Jerusalem, kings of—*cont.*
of Champagne in 1192, ii. 19; on his death marries Amalric of Lusignan, 111.
Amalric of Lusignan; succeeds Guy in Cyprus, ii. 94; marries the heiress, and becomes king of Palestine, 111; does homage to the emperor Henry for Cyprus, *ib.*; makes a truce with Saladin for six years, 135; is king when the devil is unloosed, 161.
John of Brienne, king of, reports the capture of Damietta, ii. 242; visits England in 1223, 252; his part in the new crusade, 258, 259.
Heraclius, patriarch of; sent into England to ask help for the kingdom, i. 334; meets Henry II. at Reading, *ib.*; returns to Palestine, 337, 338; divorces Guy and Sibylla, 342; anoints Guy as king, *ib.*; allows the marriage of Conrad and Isabella, 420; dies at Acre, 427.
patriarch of, at the Lateran council of 1215, ii. 227; reports the capture of Damietta, ii. 242.
Jespar, Paptizar and Melchior, ii. 9.
Jews; allowed to have cemeteries in England, i. 301; are not to keep arms, 313; riots against them at Richard's accession, 375; and at York in 1190, 391; taxation of, and measures taken to ensure the credit of, ii. 73; are allowed to live in the French towns, 162; persecuted in England, 203.
Joachim, abbot of Corazzo, his discussions with Richard on Antichrist, and on the fulfilment of prophecy, i. 423–426.
Johanna, daughter of Henry II. and Eleanor; born in 1165, i. 186; asked in marriage by William of Sicily, 262; is looked at by the ambassadors and approved, 263; her convoy, 265, 269; is sent to Sicily, married and crowned, 286; her marriage settlement, 293, 294;
Johanna—*cont.*
is left a widow in Tancred's hands, 388; is delivered by Tancred to Richard, 410; arrives at Messina, *ib.*; is visited by the king of France, *ib.*; lodged in la Bagnara, *ib.*; Richard claims her dower, 414; she stays with Richard in Sicily, 435; embarks for Acre, and is driven to Cyprus, 439; arrives at Acre, 443; stays at Acre under the charge of Bertram de Verdun, 457; reaches Rome in 1193, and stays there half a year, ii. 45; then proceeds by Genoa and Marseilles to Poictiers, *ib.*; is married to Raymond of Toulouse, 102; bears a son, 108; dies and is buried, 150.
Johanna, daughter of king John, married to Alexander of Scotland, ii. 249.
John, bishop of Chichester. *See* Chichester.
John, bishop of Bath. *See* Wells, bishops of.
bishop of Rochester. *See* Rochester.
John XIX., pope, i. 47; gives the pall to Elfric in 1026, *ib.*; receives Canute at Rome, 49.
John, cardinal priest; legate to England in 1070, joins in the council of Winchester, i. 86; returns home, 87.
of Crema, cardinal; legate to Henry I., i. 144; holds a council at London, 145; returns, 147.
of Gaeta. *See* Gelasius II.
of Salerno, cardinal; legate to Scotland, i. 174; at York, 175; Simon of Apulia declines his arbitration, *ib.*
of S. Paul; proposed by Celestine III. as his successor in the papacy, ii. 113.
cardinal, holds a council at Reading in 1206, ii. 198.
John, son of Henry II. and Eleanor; born in 1166, i. 186; entrusted to his eldest brother, 189; marriage concluded for, with the heiress of Maurienne, 208–212; his father

John, son of Henry II.—*cont.*
wishes to give him Chinon, Loudun, and Mirabel, 213; Nottingham, Marlborough, and other castles settled on him at the peace of 1174, 235; marriage arranged for him with the heiress of Gloucester, 268; keeps Christmas 1176 at Nottingham, 272; is made king of Ireland, at Oxford, in 1177, 288, 289, 290; and receives the homages of his vassals, *ib.*; Henry wishes him to have Poictou, 327; accepts Baldwin as archbishop, 287; makes peace with Richard and Geoffrey, 332; is knighted and sent to Ireland, 336; his avarice and bad luck, *ib.*; he returns to England, *ib.*; legates sent to crown him, 343; besieged at Châteauroux by Philip, *ib.*; Philip proposes his going on crusade, 364; Henry proposes to marry him to Alesia, 365; his name found in the list of his father's enemies, 368; comes to England in 1189, 371; has several counties and castles given him, and celebrates his marriage with the heiress of Gloucester, 371; carries a sword at Richard's coronation, 373; has four other counties given by Richard, 386.
in 1190, goes to Normandy, i. 390; swears to remain three years away from England, *ib.*; is released from the oath, 391; jealousy between him and Longchamp, 432, 462; war between them, 462; John takes Nottingham and Tickhill, *ib.*; concludes a peace at Winchester, *ib.*; takes up the cause of Geoffrey against Longchamp, ii. 4; summons him to Reading, *ib.*; goes to London and manages the deposition of Longchamp, 5; swears to the communa of London, *ib.*; is received as heir of England, 6; Longchamp complains of him to Richard, *ib.*; he is threatened with excommunication, *ib.*; Roger de Plains his justiciar, 5; Stephen Ridel his chancellor, 8; ravages the lands of the constable of Chester, 15; keeps Christmas 1191 at Howden, 17; connives at Longchamp's return in 1192, 22; Richard complains of his treachery, 25; Richard's opinion of him, *ib.*; his intrigues with Philip, 26; Philip offers to make him king of England, *ib.*
in 1193, goes to Normandy, fails to get the fealty of the Norman barons, does homage to Philip and returns; gets possession of Windsor and Wallingford; measures taken against him by the justices, 27; makes a truce with them, 29; arrangements about him in the peace of 1193, 37; is prevailed on to return to allegiance, 45; but immediately revolts to Philip, *ib.*; intrigues for the longer detention of Richard, 46, 48; is directed by the emperor to restore Richard's castles, 49; tumult in England produced by his clerk Adam, 51; he is disseized and excommunicated, *ib.*; Richard demands judgment against him, 54; he is summoned to appear or to be banished, 55; Gerard Camville and his other allies punished, *ib.*; his followers put to ransom, 60; is reconciled with Richard, 62; meets the Norman barons at Rouen, 63; judicial inquiry about his supporters, his property and debts, 70.
in 1196, takes Gameges, ii. 97; takes the bishop of Beauvais prisoner, 104.
in 1197, his ministers in Ireland persecute the archbishop of Dublin, ii. 111; he affords no redress, 112.
in 1198, burns Neufbourg, ii. 128.
in 1199, Philip warns Richard against, ii. 140; he becomes more friendly with his brother, *ib.*; fealty sworn

John, son of Henry II.—*cont.*
to him before Richard's death, 141; he seizes his treasures, 143; takes le Mans, keeps Easter at Beaufort, and is invested as duke of Normandy, 144; lands at Shoreham, 146; is crowned, *ib.*; makes Hubert Walter chancellor, *ib.*; summons the king of Scots to Nottingham, 147; restores archbishop Geoffrey, *ib.*; goes to Normandy, 148; at Rouen receives the homage of the count of Flanders and makes a truce with Philip, 148; has a meeting with Philip, and rejects his demands, 149; Otho promises him aid, 150; drives Philip out of Maine, *ib.*; Arthur carried off from his reach, 151; he keeps a truce during the winter, *ib.*; his assize of wines, 152.
in 1200, has an interview with Philip and arranges a marriage between Lewis and his niece, 158; comes to England and takes a carucage, 158; goes to York to meet the king of Scots, who does not come, *ib.*; keeps Easter at Worcester, 159; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; makes the treaty of peace with Philip, 159, 160; meets him at Vernon, and receives Arthur's homage, 160; appoints abbots, *ib.*; refuses to pay Richard's legacy to Otho, *ib.*; grants charters for fairs, 161; takes a fine of William Stuteville, 162; divorces his wife and marries Isabella of Angoulême, 163; receives the homage of Raymond of Toulouse, 166; goes to Angers, *ib*; confirms the exchange of Andely, *ib.*; comes to England with his wife, 169; is crowned with her at Westminster, *ib.*; restores the archbishop, 170; sends for the king of Scots, *ib.*; meets him at Lincoln, *ib.*; receives his homage, 171; is at the funeral of S. Hugh, 172; promises to build a Cistercian abbey, 173; his assize

John, son of Henry II.—*cont.*
of the Exchequer, 179; sells lands in Ireland, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Guildford, 180.
in 1201, goes to Lincoln, Cottingham, Beverley, ii. 180, 181; Scarborough, 181; Louth, 162; Hexham, 181; York at Mid Lent, *ib.*; is crowned at Canterbury at Easter, 182; demands the castles of the English earls, *ib.*; takes money of his barons at Portsmouth, 184; negotiates with the king of Scots, *ib.*; goes to the Isle of Wight, and thence to Normandy, *ib.*; satisfies Berengaria about her dowry, 184, 189; confirms the peace with Philip, 190; sends Robert Turnham into Anjou, 191; directs a fortieth to be taken for the crusade, 193.
in 1202, Arthur sent against him by Philip, ii. 196; takes him at Mirabel, *ib.*
in 1203, gets rid of Arthur, ii. 196.
in 1204, loses his mother, ii. 196; and loses Normandy, 197.
in 1205, promotes the election of John Gray to Canterbury, ii. 197.
in 1206, goes to Poictou and returns, assents to the election of the archbishop at Rome, ii. 198.
in 1207, exacts a thirteenth, ii. 198; refuses to accept Stephen Langton as archbishop, and expels the monks of Canterbury, 199; his son Henry born, *ib.*; visited by Otho, *ib.*
in 1208, his son Richard born, ii. 200.
in 1209, excommunicated, invades Scotland and negotiates for a reconciliation with the church, ii. 200.
in 1210, taxes the monasteries, ii. 201; confiscates church estates, 202; invades Ireland and banishes William de Braiose, *ib.*
in 1211, conquers Wales, ii. 203.
in 1212, assists the king of Scots against Mac William, ii. 206; conspiracy against him in Wales, 206,

John, son of Henry II.—*cont.*
207; he seizes castles and arrests nobles, *ib.*; tries to propitiate the people, *ib.*; prophecy of Peter of Wakefield concerning him, 208.
in 1213, prepares to repel invasion, ii. 209; submits to Pandulf as the pope's representative, 210; recalls the bishops, 211; orders Peter of Wakefield to be hanged, 212; is absolved, 213; has new difficulties with the church, 213, 214; does homage to the legate Nicolas, 214.
in 1214, goes into Poictou, ii. 215; makes a truce for five years with Philip, 216; tries to propitiate the bishops, 217; quarrels with the barons, *ib.*
in 1215, temporizes about the confirmation of the charter of Henry I., ii. 218; complains to the pope of the barons, *ib.*; takes the cross, 219; stays at Oxford courting the barons, *ib.*; defied by them at Brackley, *ib.*; takes to the strongholds, 221; grants his charter, *ib.*; does not trust the barons and applies to Philip for aid against them, 222; refuses to meet the bishops and barons at Oxford, 223; the bishops come to him at Portsmouth, *ib.*; he besieges Rochester castle, 226; takes it, 227; makes a progress by Winchester and Nottingham to strengthen his party, 228.
in 1216, reaches Berwick, ii. 229; goes into Essex and takes Colchester, and thence to Dover, *ib.*; is deserted by his forces, 230, 231; moves into Norfolk, 231; and Lincolnshire, *ib.*; falls ill at Sleaford and is carried to Newark, *ib.*; dies, and is buried at Worcester, 232; marriage of his daughter Johanna, 249.
John, Cuvelung, killed by Swerre, ii. 77.
Joppa, county of, held by William of Montferrat, i. 339; given to Geoffrey of Lusignan, 454.
town of, taken by Saladin in 1187, i. 346; Richard's march to, 457–461; letters dated at, 458, 461; his narrow escape at, 461; he stays at, till Christmas 1191, 461, ii. 15; besieged by Saladin, 19; saved by Richard, 20; besieged by Safadin in 1197, 109; taken, *ib.*
Jordanus, castellan of Malmesbury, i. 179.
Juditha, of Flanders, wife of Tostig, i. 66, 79.
Julius Cæsar, in Britain, i. 7.
Justus, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 20.

K.

Kahaines, William de, takes Stephen prisoner at Lincoln, i. 169.
Kamber, son of Brutus, i. 5.
Kambria, i. 4, 9.
Karel, William king of Scots keeps Easter at, ii. 182.
Karrakoys, one of the defenders of Acre, proposes surrender, i. 449, 450; is carried by Philip to Tyre, 455; is spared in the massacre of the prisoners, 457; given up by the duke of Burgundy to Richard, ii. 18.
Keltra, an island in the Irish sea, i. 58.
Kempsey, Leofsi, buried at, i. 52.
Kenelm, S., i. 69.
Kennet, river, battle in 1006 near, i. 29.
Kenred, king of Mercia, a benefactor of Worcester, i. 88.
Kent, earl of, at Arthur's court, i. 10; ravaged by the Danes in 1006, 29; they spend Lent in, in 1010, 32; ravaged in 1011, 33; sailed round by Canute in 1015, 38; part of Godwin's earldom, 65; he lands in, 67; ravaged by William the Conqueror in 1066, 82; adheres to

Kent—*cont.*
Stephen against the empress, 169; promised by the younger Henry to Philip of Flanders, 214; visited by the justices, 256.
Kenulf, king of Mercia, i. 88.
bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester.
Keviliau, Owen de, swears fealty to Henry II. in 1177, i. 289.
Kildare, see of, i. 203.
district of, given to Hugh de Lacy, i. 290.
Kilfenora, see of, i. 203.
Kilian, abbot of the Scots at Cologne, dies, i. 28.
Killala, see of, i. 203.
Killaloe, see of, i. 203.
Kinardferry. *See* Axholm.
Kingston, Lewis absolved at, in 1217, ii. 239.
Kinsy, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Kirkby, Richard prior of, made abbot of Whitby, i. 291.
Moorside, given by Robert Mowbray to Robert Stuteville, ii. 162.
Kirton in Lindsey, promised by the younger Henry to count Matthew of Boulogne, i. 214.
Knaresborough, Becket's murderers fly to, i. 194.
Kororam, a recluse in Ireland, i. 58.
Kyme, Ralph of, official of archbishop Geoffrey, ii. 147.

L.

Labainnare (Bagnara), arrival of Richard at, i. 409; taken by him, queen Johanna lodged at, 410.
Lacetrar (Cetraro), passed by Richard, i. 408.
Lachese, castle of, taken by Richard in 1176, i. 266; and in 1194, ii. 66.
Lacy, Walter de, opposes the rising of earl Ralph in 1074, i. 91.
Lacy—*cont.*
Roger de, conspires against William Rufus, i. 102.
Ilbert de, commands at the battle of the Standard, i. 162.
Hugh de, constable of Verneuil, holds out against Lewis VII. in 1173, i. 217; goes on crusade, 287.
Hugh de, has Dublin and large estates in Ireland given by Henry II., i. 288, 289, 290; marries the king of Connaught's daughter and is deprived of Dublin, 310; is beheaded in Ireland, 340.
Hugh de, his treachery to John de Curci in 1201, ii. 190; is defeated by king John, 202.
Gilbert de, has charge of Winchester castle at the treaty of Winchester, i. 463.
John de, constable of Chester, has charge of Dublin in 1181, i. 310.
Roger de, son of John, constable of Chester, has charge of Nottingham and Tickhill castles from Longchamp, ii. 15; hangs the two knights who betray them to John, *ib.*; is sent to bring the king of Scots to England, 170; is sent by John to Normandy, 184; Pomfret castle restored to, 147; dies in 1211, 204.
John de, constable of Chester, manages Yorkshire and Nottinghamshire in 1215, ii. 224; goes on crusade in 1218, 240.
Walter de, imprisons John de Curci in 1201, ii. 190.
Walter de, compelled to surrender his castles, ii. 261.
Laire, in Normandy, ii. 67.
Lamantee, visited by Richard, i. 408.
Lambeth, Hardicanute dies at, i. 58; archbishop Baldwin builds a college at, 384; which is destroyed by Hubert by the pope's command, ii. 122, 123; he is allowed to build a house of Premonstratensians there, 167.
consecrations at, i. 141, 144.

Lanark, William the Lion keeps Christmas 1200 at, ii. 180.
Lancaster, visited by itinerant justices in 1176, i. 256.
castle of, surrendered by Theobald Walter, ii. 52 ; prisoners taken at, 56.
county of, given to John, i. 371 ; claimed by the king of Scots, ii. 56.
William of, his daughter married to Gilbert, son of Roger Fitz Reinfrid, i. 372.
Landes, fortress, to be destroyed in 1200, ii. 177.
Lanfranc, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Langetreo, Godwin encamps at, i. 65.
Langis, given by Richard to archbishop Geoffrey, ii. 61.
Langres, Manasser, bishop of, is at Messina in 1190, i. 411 ; joins in legislating for the army, 412.
Langton, Simon, dean of York, elected archbishop but rejected by the pope, ii. 228.
Lantony, Robert prior of, i. 153.
Lanzo, founder of Lewes, i. 143.
Laon, council of, ii. 235.
Lateran council of 1112, i. 131 ; of 1179, 309, ii. 88, 181 ; of 1215, 227, 232, 247.
Lates, the port of Montpellier, i. 405.
Latinus, king of Latium, i. 3.
Lauder, castle of, held against Henry II., in 1173, i. 217.
Launceston, castle of, committed to Richard de Reuel, i. 463.
Laurentius, archbishop of Dublin. *See* Dublin.
chancellor to the king of Connaught, i. 252.
a clerk of Harold Mac Madit, ii. 101.
Lavardin, Bracardus de, son of the count of Vendome, expels his father and holds Vendome against Henry II., i. 224, 225 ; joins Philip in 1188, 357.
honour of, given to Nevelon de Freteval, i. 359.
Lavardin—*cont.*
besieged by Philip in 1199, ii. 150.
Lec, Alan de, hanged by Roger de Lacy, ii. 15.
Lecce, Tancred, count of, ii. 12. *See* Sicily.
Leeds, Paulinus of, offered the see of Carlisle, i. 340.
Legin, claimed by the king of Navarre, i. 282, 283.
Leia, Gilbert de la, surety of Hugh de Puiset, i. 393.
Leicester, founded by king Leyr, i. 5 ; earl of, at Arthur's court, 10 ; ravaged by Edmund Ironside in 1016, 39 ; taken by the earl of Cornwall and Richard de Lucy, 222 ; restored to the earl, 274 ; meeting of the English earls at, in 1201, ii. 182.
castle of, held by the earl against Henry II., i. 217 ; escapes capture by the earl of Cornwall, 222 ; David of Scotland sent to, 225 ; surrendered to the king, 231 ; demolished in 1176, 269.
Anketill Mallory, constable of, i. 231.
county of, visited by the justices in 1176, i. 256.
earls of :
Hugh, ravages Anglesey in 1098, i. 115.
Robert, earl of, brother of the count of Meulan, i. 176 ; relieves Worcester in 1151, *ib.*
Robert, rebels against Henry II., i. 216 ; holds his castles against him, 217 ; flies from Breteuil, 218 ; invades Norfolk, takes Hageneth, and is taken prisoner at Fornham, 223, 224 ; imprisoned at Falaise, 224 ; brought to England, 230 ; taken back to Caen and afterwards to Falaise, 231 ; has made his peace with the king before the treaty with his sons, 234 ; his castles demolished, 269 ; claim of William de Chahannes on his estates, 273 ; is restored to his estates, 274 ; is at Verneuil with Henry in 1177,

Leicester, Robert, earl of—*cont.*
308; is restored to his earldom by Richard, 370; carries a sword at his coronation, 373; dies in Romania, 427.
Robert, son of earl Robert, called Robert of Breteuil, i. 430; invested with his father's earldom, *ib.*; offers to help Richard in his struggle with William des Barres, *ib.*; prepares to attack France in 1194, ii. 63; is captured by Philip, *ib.*; offers to surrender Pasci for release, 82; is released in 1196, 97; attempts to recover Pasci and is defeated, 128; is at John's coronation, 146; dies without issue, 197.
Simon de Montfort, earl of, divides the inheritance with Saer de Quincy, ii. 197; takes the command of the Albigensian crusade, 200; the king of Arragon is killed in battle with, 215; is killed at Toulouse, 240.
Simon de Montfort the younger, his wife and children, i. 24.
Paul, abbot of, dies in 1204, ii. 197.
Robert of, canon of Selby, ii. 266.
Leighlin, see of, i. 203.
Uthmorth de, i. 290.
Leinster, excepted from the rule of the king of Connaught, i. 252.
Lenton, Peter, prior of, made abbot of Bardney, ii. 217.
Leo, king of Armenia, ii. 183.
Leo IV., pope, crowned Alfred, i. 14.
Leo IX., pope, in 1049, i. 62; invents a new cantus, *ib.*; goes to Flanders, *ib.*; holds a council at Rheims, 64; dies, 69.
bishop of Ostia, i. 133.
Leobwin, chaplain of bishop Walcher, i. 94; contrives the murder of Liulf, and is murdered at Gateshead, 94, 95.
Leodegarius, earl of Holland, at Arthur's court, i. 11.
Leofgar, bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
Leofric, bishop of Exeter. *See* Exeter.
Leofric—*cont.*
earl of Mercia, son of Leofwin, i. 46; appointed by Canute, *ib.*; death of his brother Edwin, 55; sent by Hardicanute to punish the men of Worcester, 57; and by Edward to plunder queen Emma, 58; dissuades Edward from sending a fleet to the aid of Swein, 61; summoned by Edward to his aid against Godwin, 65; allows the Normans to fly through Mercia to Scotland, 68; his son Alfgar succeeds to Harold's earldom, 69; mediates between Edward and Griffin, 71; dies in 1057, 72; his benefactions, *ib.*
Leofruna, abbess of S. Mildred's, captured, i. 33.
Leofsi, bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester.
Leofwin, ealdorman, father of Leofric and Northman, i. 46.
father of Wulfric, i. 32.
son of Godwin, sails to Ireland, i. 66; returns and ravages Somersetshire, *ib.*; joins Godwin at Sandwich, 67; killed at Hastings, 82.
Leominster, monastery at, i. 60; enriched by Leofric, 72; the abbess of, seduced by Swein, 62.
Leon, kingdom of, called the kingdom of S. James, described, i. 406, ii. 16.
Ferdinand king of, advises the emperor of Morocco to invade Castille, i. 208; Henry II. promises to visit him, 286; married a daughter of the king of Portugal, 351; invades Portugal, *ib.*; puts the king to ransom, *ib.*
Alfonso king of, marries a daughter of Sancho king of Portugal, i. 427; is separated from her by Celestine III., *ib.*; and married to a daughter of the king of Castille, *ib.*; put under interdict by Innocent III. on her account, ii. 138; tries to buy off the sentence, *ib.*
Hervey of (Liuns), takes Montrelais, i. 344.

Leonard, a Pisan, killed at Acre, i. 451.
Leopold, duke of Austria. *See* Austria.
Lesteyle, city in Spain, ii. 16.
Leucate, cape, i. 405.
Lewes, battle of, i. 18.
monastery of, i. 143; founded by Lanzo, *ib.*
Herbert abbot of Shrewsbury, consecrated at, i. 152.
Ansger prior of, chosen abbot of Reading, i. 153.
Lewis VI., king of France, succeeds Philip I. in 1008, i. 127; revolt of the Normans to, 137; at war with Henry I. in 1119, 138; receives the homage of William for Normandy, 138; accepts the homage of Eustace for Normandy, 159; mentioned, ii. 149.
Lewis VII., king of France, gives his sister in marriage to Eustace, i. 163; goes on crusade, 173; besieges Damascus and returns, 174; divorces his wife, 176; marries his daughter Margaret to the younger Henry, 185; marries Aala of Champagne, *ib.*; his son Philip born, 186; is offended because his daughter is not crowned, 189; meets Henry II. at Vendome, *ib.*; supports S. Thomas against the king, 190; reconciles them, 191; refuses to give up the archbishopric of Bourges, 192; makes a truce, *ib.*; writes to the pope on Becket's murder, 195; excites the younger Henry against his father, 208; forms a league against Henry II., 214; besieges Verneuil, 217; accepts terms, 218; proposes a truce, 219; carries off the citizens of Verneuil and flies, 220; negotiates for peace, 222; sends the earl of Leicester to invade England, 223; knights Richard, 225; makes a truce, *ib.*; besieges Rouen, 231; is forced to retire, 232; advises Richard to submit, 233; deals privately with the younger Henry, 237; has a visit from him in 1176, 262; makes William of Champagne archbishop of Rheims, 268; asks for the heiresses of Boulogne in marriage for his son and nephew, 273; is asked for the portions of his daughters, 292; makes the peace of Yvry with Henry II., 304–307; dies in 1180, 309.
Lewis, son of Philip, born in 1187, i. 344; marriage of, with Eleanor of Brittany arranged by Richard, ii. 91; marriage of, with Blanche of Castille arranged by Richard, 140; carried out by John, 158; married, 159, 160; settlement on, 176–179; knighted in 1209, 201; sent against John into Poictou, 216; chosen king in 1215, 225; summoned by the earl of Winchester, 227; lands in Thanet in 1216, 229; goes by Canterbury to London and receives the homages of his friends, 230; takes Winchester, *ib.*; begins to have misgivings about success, 233; plunders, 235; collects his party at Cambridge in 1217, *ib.*; is summoned home, *ib.*; goes to France, 236; returns, *ib.*; besieges Dover castle, 237; goes to London, 238; his fleet defeated, 238, 239; he makes peace, 239; is absolved, *ib.*; and goes home, *ib.*; succeeds his father in 1223, 252; negotiates with Fawkes de Breauté, 253; imprisons him at Compiegne, 254.
Leyr, king of Britain, story of, i. 5.
Leys, belonged to Geoffrey du Costentin, given to William Fitz Aldelm, i. 290.
Liccia, Swein son of Godwin dies in, i. 68.
Lichfield, bishops of (*also* Coventry and Chester):
Brihtmar, dies in 1039, i. 55.
Wulfsy, succeeds in 1039, i. 55; dies in 1053, 69.

Lichfield—*cont.*
Leofwin, abbot of Coventry, succeeds in 1053, i. 69.
Robert, appointed in 1085, i. 98; attends the council of Westminster in 1102, 121; helps to consecrate the five bishops, 126.
Robert Peche, appointed in 1121, i. 140; consecrated at Abingdon, 141; helps to consecrate the bishop of Norwich, *ib.*; dies and is buried at Coventry, 148.
Roger Clinton, elected, ordained, and consecrated in 1129, i. 152.
Richard Peche, attends the council at London in 1175, i. 239; dies in 1183, 329.
Gerard la Pucelle, appointed in 1183, i. 329; dies in 1184, 332.
Hugh of Nunant, archdeacon of Lisieux, sent as envoy to the pope and emperor in 1184, i. 333; legate to Ireland to crown John, 343; goes with Henry to Normandy, *ib.*; is consecrated in 1188, 354; comes to England in 1189, 371; is at Richard's coronation, 373; goes to Normandy in 1190, 390; mediates the peace of Winchester, 462; has charge of the castle of Bolsover, 463; excommunicated by Longchamp, ii. 7; expels the monks of Coventry, 14; his brother intrigues against Richard's release, 48, 49; summoned by Richard to stand his trial, 49; cited peremptorily, 55; was a sheriff and therefore subject to lay court, *ib.*; pays 5,000 marks for his pardon, 84; the monks restored at Coventry, 116; dies in 1198, 120.
Geoffrey Muschamp, archdeacon of Cleveland, complains at Rome of archbishop Geoffrey, ii. 77; is removed from his archdeaconry by the king, 79; throws the Southwell chrism on a dunghill, 85; succeeds as bishop in 1198, 121; and is consecrated, *ib.*; dies in 1208, 199; see vacant in 1213, 213.
William de Cornhill, archdeacon of Huntingdon, consecrated in 1215, ii. 218; dies in 1223, 252.
Alexander de Staneby, succeeds in 1223, ii. 252; he mediates for Fawkes de Breauté, 266.
Liddel, castle of, taken by William the Lion, i. 225.
Liege, Albert bishop of, his death contrived by the emperor Henry VI., ii. 34.
bishop of, joins Richard's party, ii. 48; does homage to him, 50.
elect of, killed in a tumult at Paris, ii. 163.
Limazun, in Cyprus, Richard's fleet driven to, i. 438; taken by Richard, 440; he returns to, after defeating the emperor, *ib.*; and again, 442; marriage of Richard and Berengaria at, *ib.*
Limburg, Henry duke of, join's Richard's party in his captivity, ii. 34, 35; at Otho's election, 117.
Waleran of, breaks the truce with the Saracens in 1197, ii. 109.
Limerick, king of, does homage to Henry II., i. 202; is slain in 1177, 295; his successor refuses the homage, *ib.*; the kingdom is offered to and declined by the nephews of earl Reginald, 289, 295; given to Philip de Bruse, 295.
see of, i. 203.
Limoges, Henry II., and his son, come to, in 1173, i. 209; the count of Toulouse at, 209; the count of Maurienne at, 212; taken by Richard in 1176, 266; besieged by Henry II. in 1183, 322; and taken by him, 326.
Aimer or Widomar, viscount of, attacks Richard, i. 262; Richard takes his castles and subdues him, 266; discovers a treasure and sends only part of it to Richard, ii. 141; Richard besieges his castle of Cha-

Limoges—*cont.*
luz, *ib.*; killed by Richard's son, 151.
Guy, viscount of, his rights preserved in the treaty of 1201, ii. 178.
John of, sent by Peter des Roches to Rome, ii. 262.
Lincoln:
preaching of Paulinus at, i. 21; William I. builds a castle at, 84; fortified by the earl of Chester against Stephen, 165; besieged by him in 1141, *ib.*; battle of, 165–169; besieged again in 1144, 171; surrendered in 1146, 173; Stephen wears his crown at, *ib.*; is attacked by the earl of Chester at, *ib.*; Henry II. s crowned at, 184; besieged by William Longchamp in 1191, 462; John meets the king of Scots at, ii. 170; funeral of S. Hugh at, 171, 172; visited by John in 1201, 180; seized by the barons in 1215, 221; they give up the siege of the castle, 222; besieged in 1216, but defended by Nicolaa, 230; visited by John, 231; besieged again, 235; relief attempted, 237; battle at, in 1217, *ib.*
see of, claimed as suffragan to York, i. 23, 106, 244.
Robert of, fortifies Wareham against Stephen, i. 160.
bishops of:
Remigius transfers the see from Dorchester, but dies before the dedication of the church, i. 106, 107.
Robert Bluet, appointed by William Rufus in 1093, i. 107; besieges Tickhill, 121; is at the council of Westminster, *ib.*; at the consecration of five bishops, 126; dies at Woodstock in 1123, 142.
Alexander, archdeacon of Salisbury, appointed in 1123, i. 142; is at the council of Westminster in 1127, 148; goes to Normandy in 1134, 154; goes abroad with Stephen in 1137, 159; arrested and deprived of his castles, 163; the taper offered by him to the king before the battle of Lincoln, breaks, 167; goes to Rome in 1145, 172; returns and rebuilds his cathedral, 173; visits the pope at Auxerre, *ib.*; dies, 174.
Robert de Querceto (Chesnei), archdeacon of Leicester, succeeds, i. 175; is consecrated and goes to Lincoln, *ib.*; dies in 1167, 186.
Geoffrey, elect of. *See* Geoffrey.
Walter of Coutances, archdeacon of Oxford, envoy to Flanders in 1177, i. 275; to France, 292, 296; returns to the king at Woodstock, 298; consecrated bishop of Lincoln at Angers, 326; translated to Rouen, 329. *See* Rouen.
Hugh, prior of Witham, appointed and consecrated, i. 339; sent to France in 1188, 357; returns to England, 371; is at Richard's coronation, 373; letters of Longchamp to, ii. 7, 8; declines to execute them, 9; expels the remains of Rosamond from Godstow, 14; is directed to inquire into the charges against archbishop Geoffrey, 47; excommunicates John, 51; is forbidden to send chrism to the canons of York, 85; redeems his church from an annual tribute of a cloak, 92; refuses to suspend Geoffrey, 94; opposes a grant of money in council, 118; is chosen to arbitrate in the York case, 152; is a judge delegate in the Canterbury case but is too ill to attend, 167; dies, 170; John visits him and confirms his will, *ib.*; his funeral, 171, 172; he appears after death to the dean, 174; John attempts to nominate his successor, 180; is canonized in 1220, 243.
William de Blois consecrated in 1203, ii. 196; dies in 1206, 198.

Lincoln, bishops of—*cont.*
Hugh, archdeacon of Wells, elected, and consecrated by Langton in France, ii. 200; returns from exile in 1213, 213; is abroad in 1216, 233; his castles of Sleaford and Newark, 231; absolves the garrisou of Bedford, 267.
Lincolnshire, ravaged by Canute, i. 39; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; managed by William of Albini in 1215, ii. 224.
Sheriff of. *See* Camvill, Gerard.
Lindisfarne, bishops of. *See* Durham.
Lindsey, submits to Swein in 1013, i. 34; ravaged by Ethelred in 1014, 37; by Tostig in 1066, 80; traversed by John in 1216, ii. 231.
William de, a surety of the treaty of Falaise, i. 249.
Lions, forest of, ii. 149.
S. Denys en, Henry I. dies at, i. 154.
Lisbon, taken by the crusaders in 1148, i. 174; arrival of Richard's fleet at, 400, 401; misbehaviour of the seamen at, *ib.*; departure from, 402.
Lisieux, bishops of:
Arnulf, attends a council at Sens, i. 196; resigns the chaplaincy of Bosham, 302; resigns his see and retires to Paris, where he dies, 312.
Ralph de Warneville, treasurer of York and chancellor, succeeds, i. 312; excommunicates the disturbers of the peace, 324.
William bishop of, sent to Rome in 1196, ii. 105; states Richard's case against the archbishop of Rouen, 105; returns, 106.
R. archdeacon of, goes to Rome on behalf of the king in 1171, i. 199.
Hugh of Nunant, archdeacon of. *See* Lichfield.
visit of Fulk of Neuilly to, ii. 137.
Lismore, see of, i. 203; Christian bishop of, *ib.*
Liulf, murdered by Gilbert, sheriff of Northumberland, i. 94; revenged, 94, 95.
Living, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester.
Llanbadarn, see of, ii. 155.
Llandaff:
Urban, bishop of, consecrated in 1107, i. 125; goes to the council at Rheims in 1119, 138; helps to consecrate the bishop of Bangor, 139; and the bishops of Hereford, 140; Coventry, and Norwich, 141; at Tewkesbury, *ib.*; at the consecration of the bishop of Chichester, 144; at the council of Westminster in 1127, 148; carries an appeal to Rome and returns, 151; has a dispute with the bishop of S. David's at court in 1132, 153; and again in 1133, *ib.*
William, prior of Bristol, made bishop in 1184, i. 333.
Henry, bishop of, ordains Philip elect of Durham, ii. 100.
Ralph, archdeacon of, sent to the council of Cashel, i. 204.
see of, ii. 155.
Lobdiez, a Spanish knight sent to Henry II., i. 281, 282.
Loc, Hugo de la, taken with his men at Champenni, i. 224.
Loches, escapes capture by Philip in 1188, i. 357; is to be given up to France by the peace of 1193, ii. 39; besieged in 1194, 63; taken by Richard, *ib.*
Lochmaben, castle of, held against Henry II. in 1173, i. 216.
Locloy, port of, near Nairn, ii. 100.
Locrinus, king of Britain, story of, i. 4.
Loegria, i. 4, 5, 9.
Logronio claimed by the king of Castille, i. 281, 282.
Loir (Ligdus), castle of, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 364; surrendered by the peace of Tours, 367.

Loire, river, forded by Philip in 1189, i. 366.
Lombards defeat Frederick I. in 1176, i. 269; mischief done by them in Sicily, ii. 193.
Lombardy, earthquakes in, i. 136.
London, king Elidur imprisoned at, i. 6; name given to Trinovantum, 7; Androgeus duke of, *ib.*; held by king Ethelred, 12; Ethelred II. buried at, 15; metropolitan see fixed at, by S. Gregory, 19; Sabert, king of, 20.
Ethelred's fleet retires to, in 1008, i. 30; holds out against the Danes in 1009, 31; witenagemot at, i. 34; Elphege's bones removed to, 34; besieged by Swein in 1013, 35; receives him as king, *ib.*; Edmund Ironside is at, in 1016, 38; Ethelred dies at, 38; Edmund chosen king by, 39; attacked by Canute, 40; and again, 41; relieved by Edmund, 41; Edmund dies at, 43; Canute chosen king at, 44; he keeps Christmas 1017 at, 45; assessment on, for the payment of the Danes, 46; S. Elphege translated from, 47; Harold I. dies at, 55; Edward elected at, 58; witenagemot to decide the quarrel of Godwin at, 65; receives Godwin, 67; council at, when Alfgar is outlawed, 70; Edward the Etheling dies at, 72; Edward the Confessor dies at, 80.
Harold marches from, against Tostig, i. 80; supports Edgar Atheling, 82; accepts William, 83; William arrives at, 83; queen Eadgith's body brought to, 91; great fire at, 99; great storm at, in 1091, 106; fire in 1092, 106; Sampson bishop of Worcester consecrated at, 113; Ranulf Flambard made bishop of Durham at, 116; Henry I. confers bishoprics at, 121; Roger the larderer dies at, 122; council on investitures at, 125; archbishop Thomas consecrated at, 128; council
London—*cont.*
at, in 1125, 145; visited by Henry I. in 1126, 147; council at, in 1127, 148.
Stephen keeps Christmas 1135 at, i. 156; and Easter 1136, 157; legatine council at, in 1138, 162; receives the empress, 169; expels her, 170; council at, for the protection of the clergy in 1143, *ib.*; Tower of, surrendered by Geoffrey de Mandeville to Stephen, 171; general council at, in 1151, 176.
Henry II. crowned at, i. 184; councils at, in 1170, 188; Henry arrives at, in 1174, 230; and in 1175, 238; and in 1176, 260; he holds a council on Johanna's marriage at, 262; summons a feudal levy to, 276; and a council to determine the Spanish dispute, 276, 280; disturbances in the streets, 284; all Jews buried at, 301; Henry II. visits, in 1177, 296.
council at, in 1184, for the election of an archbishop, i. 331; on the business of the crusade, 335; taxed for the crusade, 355; Richard arrives at, in 1189, 372; the citizens of, perform the office of the buttery at the coronation, 375; and again in 1194, ii. 60; riot against the Jews at, i. 375; men of, take Silvia, 379; arrival of archbishop Geoffrey at, ii. 4; deposition of Longchamp at, 5; the communa of, confirmed by the barons, *ib.*; council at, in 1192, 22; Robert Turnham arrives at, 28; Adam of S. Edmund's at, 51; riot of William Fitz Osbert at, 97, 98; Roger of Ripon arrested at, 104; the bishop of Ely consecrated at, 119; assembly at, for John's coronation, 146; acts of Eustace of Flay at, 165; legatine council at, 168; John and his wife crowned at, 169; S. Hugh visited by John at, 170; death of S. Hugh at, 170.

London—*cont.*
great misfortune at, in 1212, ii. 205, 206; Baynard's castle at, 207; the interdict relaxed at, 217; the barons meet in 1215 at, 218; seized by the barons, 220; they besiege the Tower, 221; Geoffrey de Mandeville claims it, but it is entrusted to the archbishop, *ib.*; the siege raised, 222; proposed conference between John and the bishops at, 223; the barons return from Staines to, 224; citizens of, put under interdict, *ib.*; attempt made to relieve Rochester from, 226; head-quarters of the opposition to John, 227; the marshal of France sent to secure it for Lewis, 228; Lewis arrives at, in 1216, 230; he moves from, to Berkhampstead, 234; returns to, from the siege of Dover, 238; he makes peace near, 239; the Londoners are absolved, *ib.*; Henry III. is received at, 240; Pandulf holds a council at, 243, 244; coronation at, 244; council at, in 1221, 247; submission of Peter de Mauley at, 250.
council at, in 1224, ii. 254; in 1225, 256, 279.
Tower of, committed to Longchamp, i. 388; he makes a moat round, 391; takes refuge in, in 1191, ii. 5; surrendered by him, 6; taken by Lewis in 1216, 233.
mayor of, one of the treasurers of Richard's ransom, ii. 33; arrests Adam of S. Edmund's, 51.
New Temple in, i. 360, ii. 22, 195.
Bow church in, i. 106, ii. 98, 122.
bishops of:
Alfhun, removes the body of S. Elphege, i. 34; is sent with the queen to Normandy in 1013, 35.
Alword, also abbot of Evesham, resigns his see and retires first to Evesham, and then to Ramsey, i. 59.
Robert, a Norman, succeeds to Canterbury in 1050, i. 64. *See* Canterbury.
Spearhafoc, abbot of Abingdon, appointed, i. 64; and ejected before consecration, 64, 66.
William, chaplain to the king, appointed in 1051, i. 66; flies with the Normans, but is received back, 68.
Maurice, chaplain to William the Conqueror, nominated in 1085, i. 98; crowns Henry I., 118; is at the council of 1102, 121; dies in 1107, 126.
Richard, consecrated in 1108, i. 127; assists at the consecration of the bishop of Rochester and makes an offering at Canterbury, 128; consecrates archbishop Thomas of York, *ib.*; assists at the consecration of the bishop of Hereford, 140; and of Gregory of Dublin, 141; dead in 1127, 148.
Gilbert Universalis, appointed in 1128, 151; at the dedication of Canterbury cathedral, 152; dies in 1134, 154.
Gilbert Foliot, translated to, in 1163, i. 185; assists at the coronation of the younger Henry, 189; is excommunicated, 191; is at the council of Westminster in 1175, 239; visits Waltham in 1177, 274; at council of London, 280; witnesses the profession of Peter of S. David's, 284; removes the canons of Waltham, 295; nominates archbishop Baldwin, 331; dies in 1187, 350.
Richard Fitz Neal, the king's treasurer and archdeacon of Ely, made bishop, i. 377; consecrated, 383; mediates at the peace of Winchester, 462; takes charge of the castle of Bristol, 463; threatens archbishop Geoffrey with excommunication, ii. 22; is one of the treasurers of the ransom, 33; excommunicates John, 51; dies in 1198, 138.

London, bishops of—*cont.*
William of S. Mere l'Eglise, his preferment opposed by archbishop Geoffrey, i. 378; is Richard's prothonotary and visits him in his captivity, ii. 30; is an officer of the Exchequer, 71, 73; letter of Richard to, 78; is at John's coronation, as bishop of London, 146; at the Lincoln homage, 171; returns from exile in 1213, 213; gives John the cross, 219; resigns his see, 248.
Eustace of Fauconberg, elected and consecrated in 1221, ii. 249; has charge of Fawkes de Breauté, 254, 270.
Longchamp, William. *See* Ely, bishops of.
Osbert, made sheriff of Yorkshire, i. 392; visits Hugh de Puiset at Howden, 393.
Robert, made abbot of S. Mary's, York, ii. 105.
Stephen, surety of Richard in the truce of 1193, ii. 40.
Lorraine, Godfrey duke of. *See* Jerusalem, Louvain.
Loth, king of Norway, i. 10.
Lothar, cardinal. *See* Innocent III.
Lothar, emperor, begins to reign, i. 145; from his time the imperial years are not noted in the chronicles, 147.
Lothian (Loidis), meeting of William Rufus and Malcolm in, i. 105; men of, in the van of the Scottish army at Cowton Moor, defeated, 161, 162; the bishop of Durham goes to, 355; proposal to settle it on Otho on his marriage with the heiress of Scotland, ii. 95.
Loudun, castle of, offered by Henry II. to John, i. 213.
Louth, in Ireland, bishopric of, i. 203.
in Lindsey, settlement of the dispute of the Mowbrays and Stutevilles at, ii. 162.
Louvain, Godfrey duke of, Henry I. marries his daughter Adeliza, i. 140.
Louvain—*cont.*
Henry, duke of, takes Richard's side in his captivity, ii. 34; is at his interview with the emperor at Worms, 35; advises the emperor in his favour, 48; Antwerp is in his territory, 50; goes to Acre in 1197, 109; joins in the election of Otho, 117; joins the confederation against France, 125.
Louviers, assigned to Philip in the treaty of 1194, ii. 67; meeting of the kings at, proposed, 93; interview at, 96; included in the exchange of Andely, 106, 166.
Lovel, William, holds Carri against Stephen, i. 160.
Lucan, schools of, i. 408; born at Cordova, i. 407, ii. 16.
Lucca, bishop of, made pope in 1068, i. 84.
Luceio, abbot of, deals with demoniacs, ii. 134.
Lucius the emperor, his contest with Arthur, i. 11.
Lucius II. pope, succeeds in 1144, i. 172.
Lucius III., Emballus bishop of Ostia, a supporter of Alexander III., i. 302; succeeds him as pope in 1184, 315; sends a legate to Scotland, 318; hears the two claimants of S. Andrew's, 327; and arranges a compromise, *ib.*; quarrels with the Romans, *ib.*; asks aid of Henry II., 328; meets the emperor at Verona, 333; intercedes for Henry the Lion, *ib.*; dies in 1185, 337.
Lucy, Richard de, the justiciar, takes Leicester in 1173, i. 222; invades Scotland, 223; returns on the news of the earl of Leicester's invasion, *ib.*; besieges Huntingdon, 229; endeavours to mitigate the forest administration, 246, 247; is deprived of the castle of Ongar, 268; imprisons Andrew Bucquinte, 285; charged with the bishop of Durham's castles, 298.

Lucy, Richard de—*cont.*
Godfrey de. *See* Winchester, bishop of.
Lud, king of Britain, i. 7.
Ludgershall, castle of, given to John, i. 371.
Ludlow, castle of, held by Paganellus against Stephen, i. 160; taken by Stephen in 1139, 163; its warden removed by Hubert Walter, ii. 116.
Lugg, river in Herefordshire, i. 84.
Lundris, Robert de, rebels against Henry II., i. 216.
Lupus, king of Valencia, dies, i. 201.
Lusignan, Guy of. *See* Jerusalem.
Hugh of. *See* la Marche.
Ralph of. *See* Issoudun.
Amalric of. *See* Jerusalem.
Geoffrey of, attacks Richard in 1188, i. 355; his exploits at Acre, 422; joins Richard in Cyprus, 440; challenges Conrad of Montferrat, 445; is made count of Joppa, 454.
Lydda, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Lynn, army collected at, breaks up before John, ii. 231.
Lyons, Anselm goes to, in 1099, i. 116; Richard and Philip visit, 394; city of, 405; included in the kingdom of Provence, ii. 43; consecration of William Malvoisin at, 169; council at, in 1225, 276.
John of Poictiers, aux belles mains, archbishop of, resigns his see, ii. 79; the cross of S. Martial mourns when he leaves Poictiers, 105; he retires to Clairvaux, 79; retains his rights at Eynesford, 167.
archbishop of, consecrates William Malvoisin, ii. 169; at the council of 1225, 276.

M.

Macbeth, Machetad, king of Scotland, spends money at Rome in 1050, i. 64; receives the Norman fugitives
Macbeth—*cont.*
in 1052, 68; is deposed by Siward in 1054, 69.
Maccus, Mactus, king of the isles, does homage to Edgar, i. 14.
Macharius, closes the ways to Rome, i. 199.
Machtaloe, Mathaloe, given to William Fitz Aldelm, i. 290.
Madac, a Welsh prince, does homage to Henry II. in 1177, i. 289.
Madian, king of Britain, i. 4.
Maen, fortified by Richard, i. 461.
Magdeburg, archbishop of, adheres to Frederick I., i. 303.
Magesætas, Rom earl of, i. 57.
Magga, a city in Spain, i. 404.
Maggalona, city of, i. 405.
Magnus. *See* Denmark, Norway.
son of king Harold, invades Somersetshire in 1068, i. 84.
Maina, in Greece, passed by Philip, ii. 13.
Mainard, bishop of Würzburg, i. 98.
of Goritz. *See* Gortze.
Maine, conquered by William I., i. 90; conquest of, planned by William Rufus and Robert, in 1091, 104; given by Henry II. to his son Henry, 189.
overrun by Philip in 1189, i. 365; Richard puts his officers in, to ransom, ii. 74; the barons of, adhere to Arthur, 144; delivered up to Arthur, *ib.*; he does homage to Philip for, 149; Philip demands it for Arthur, *ib.*; conquered by Philip, 197.
Maiolus, abbot of S. Martin's, Cologne, i. 58, 74.
Majorca, i. 406.
Malaunay, near Rouen, i. 232, ii. 106.
Malcolm II., king of Scots, dies in 1034, i. 52.
III., son of the king of Cumbria, i. 15; king of Scots, set up by Siward in 1054, 69; receives Tostig in 1066, 80; receives the West Saxon princes in 1068, 84; does homage to Wil-

Malcolm III.—*cont.*
liam the Conqueror in 1072, 89; ravages Northumberland in 1079, 93; and in 1091, 105; makes peace through Edgar Atheling, *ib.*; comes to Gloucester, but William Rufus will not see him, 107; falls in battle against Robert Mowbray, 108; killed by Morell, 16.
Malcolm IV., his compact with Henry II., i. 385, ii. 60.
of Galloway. *See* Galloway.
Malebranche, R., made abbot of Burton, i. 300.
Malebysse, Hugh, goes to Scotland as envoy from John in 1199, ii. 147.
Richard, in attendance on John in 1199, i. 147; has licence to fortify his house at Wheldrake, ii. 161.
Malet, William, escapes in the sack of York in 1069, i. 85.
Maletable, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 365.
Malger, bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester.
Malin, killed by Membriz, i. 4.
Mallory, Anketill, constable of Leicester, i. 227, 231.
Malmesbury, Aldgitha sent to, i. 38.
abbey of, founded by Maidulf, i. 60.
Robert, abbot of, attests the treaty of Falaise, i. 250.
castle of, besieged by Henry of Anjou, i. 178; Stephen encamps near, 179.
Malmistra, king of, one of the three wise men, ii. 9.
Malton, castle of, held by Eustace Fitz John against Stephen, i. 160; visited by Richard in 1194, ii. 56.
Malus Catulus, Roger, vice-chancellor, is drowned at sea, i. 439; his seal found, *ib.*; said to be lost, ii. 74.
Malvaisin, William, bishop of Glasgow. *See* Glasgow.
Malvasius, king of Iceland, i. 10.
Malveisin, castle built by William Rufus against Bamborough, i. 112.
Malvern, Walter prior of, in 1125, i. 145.
R. Malebranche prior of, i. 300.
Malzeard, castle of, held by Roger Mowbray against Henry II., i. 217; taken by Geoffrey, 228; demolished, 269.
Mamerz, letter of Richard dated at, ii. 78, 79.
Man, isle of, visited by the legate Vivian, i. 275; by the two Harolds, ii. 101.
Guthred king of, visited by the legate, i. 275; is king in 1201, ii. 183.
Reginald, son of Somerled king of, ii. 101.
Mandeville, Geoffrey de, earl of Essex, arrested by Stephen in 1143 and forced to surrender the Tower, Walden, and Pleshy, i. 171; seizes Ramsey abbey, *ib.*; is killed there, *ib.*; Ernulf, his son, fate of, 172.
Mandeville, William de, earl of Essex, a surety of the Maurienne treaty, i. 211; with the king at Breteuil, 218; captures Ingelram of Trie, 223; witnesses the submission of the younger Henry, 237; goes on crusade, 287; as count of Aumâle goes on an embassy to Germany, 318; to Philip in 1186, 341; his castle of Aumâle burnt in 1188, 357; fights a battle near Mantes, 358; burns S. Clair, *ib.*; carries the crown at Richard's coronation, 374; is named chief justiciar, 378; dies at Rouen in November 1189, 380.
Geoffrey de, earl of Essex, son of Geoffrey Fitz Peter, joins the barons against John in 1215, ii. 219; demands the custody of the Tower, 221; takes charge of Essex, 224; leads the party opposed to John, 225; killed in a tournament, 234; was husband of Hawis, John's divorced wife, and earl of Gloucester, 219.
Manni, made abbot of Evesham, i. 59.
Mans, le, taken by William the Conqueror in 1073, i. 90; by William Rufus in 1098, 115; visited by Henry II.

Mans, le—*cont.*
in 1173, 222; and in 1175, 237; the assize of arms published at, 309, 310; the corpse of the younger Henry brought to, 325; church of S. Julian at, burnt, 333; the Saladin tithe imposed at, 352; Henry surprised by Philip at, 365; taken by Philip, 366; to be held by Philip and Richard by the treaty of Tours, 367; Richard keeps Easter 1198 at, ii. 121; punished by John for adhering to Arthur, 144; Philip takes refuge in, 150; he leaves, *ib.*; surrendered to John by William des Roches, *ib.*; the viscount of Thouars submits to John at, *ib.*

Mantel, Robert, an itinerant justice in 1176, i. 256.

Mantes, burnt by William the Conqueror, i. 99; attacked by Henry II., 358; treaty of 1193 made at, ii. 40; Philip marches from, against Richard, 126.

Manuel. *See* Comnenus.

Maranon, staked by Navarre on Henry's award, i. 277, 278.

Marcadeus, the captain of Richard's mercenaries, lends him a horse to pursue Philip at Vendome, ii. 65; captures the bishop of Beauvais, 104; comes to Richard's aid in Normandy in 1198, 127; is attacked during a truce, 139; is with Richard at Chaluz, and allows his surgeon to operate on him, 141; hangs Bertram de Gurdun, 142; helps Eleanor in Anjou, 144; is killed at Bourdeaux, 159.

Marche, la, Hugh le Brun count of, his lodging at Messina attacked, i. 411.
Hugh le Brun, count of, betrothed to Isabella of Angoulême, ii. 162; Ralph of Yssoudun is his brother, 182.
viscount of, invades Poictou in 1192, ii. 23.

Marchia Guarneri, Marchowald besieged in, ii. 113.

Marchowald, justiciar of Henry VI. in Italy, ii. 112, 113.

Marciliac, taken by Richard in 1194, ii. 66.

Mare, Robert de la, surrenders Tickhill to the bishop of Durham, ii. 52.

Margan, two kings of Britain named, i. 5, 7.

Margaret of Scotland, daughter of Edward and Agatha, i. 45; carried off to Scotland in 1068, 84; wife of Malcolm, 45; dies of grief for him, 108; her daughter marries Henry I., 119; she warns William the Lion at Dunfermline, ii. 153.

Margaret, sister to William the Lion, wife of Conan of Brittany, i. 186; remarried to Humfrey Bohun, dies in 1201, ii. 189.
daughter of William the Lion, marries Hubert de Burgh, ii. 251.

Margaret, daughter of Lewis VII., married to the younger Henry, i. 185; is not crowned with him, 189; is crowned at Winchester, 205; goes to Normandy with her husband, 208; visits her father, *ib.*; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; is in England in 1176, 261; goes to Normandy, 262; Henry demands her portion, 292; goes to her father when pregnant, 293; bears a son at Paris, 297, 298; is sent to her brother in 1183, 322; death of her husband, 325; her dower claimed by Philip, 326; the claim settled, *ib.*; married to Bela king of Hungary, 340; takes the cross on his death, ii. 102, 103; dies at Acre, 113.

Margarit, admiral of Sicily, receives Philip at Messina, i. 408; visits Richard, 411; flies from Messina, 417; Henry VI. gives him Durazzo and Tarentum, ii. 75; dispossessed and mutilated by him, 110; proposes to win the empire for Philip of France, 164; is killed at Rome in 1200, *ib.*

Margat, Isaac Comnenus imprisoned at, i. 448.

Marianus, Scotus, quoted, i. 14, 15; chronicle called from him, 27–184; spent ten years at Fulda, 58; retired from the world in 1052, 66; became a monk at Cologne in 1056, 71; ordained a priest in 1059, 74; becomes an incluse in 1069, 85.

Marisco, Richard de, chancellor, sent by John to seek foreign aid against the barons, ii. 222. *See* Durham.

Marius, fortunes of, ii. 232.

Marlborough, bishop Ethelric imprisoned at, i. 87; castle of, given to John, 235; Henry II. holds a court at, in 1177, 276; and returns from London to, 286; is there in June 1177, 295; Richard gives it to John, 371; besieged by Hubert Walter in 1194, ii. 52; taken, *ib.*; prisoners summoned to Winchester, 56; taken by the king's party in 1217, ii. 236.

Marleswein, carries off Edgar Atheling to Scotland, i. 84; invades Northumbria, 85.

Marmion, Robert, turns Coventry monastery into a castle, and is killed there, i. 171.

Marmoutier, abbot of, a surety of the treaty of 1196, ii. 97.

Marseilles, Richard arrives at, on the way to Messina, i. 394; stays eight days, 395; arrival of the fleet at, 405; relics at, *ib.*; distance from Acre, 406; departure of the fleet, 408; arrival of Berengaria at, ii. 45; is in the kingdom of Arles, 43.

Marshall, John, carries the spurs at Richard's coronation, i. 373, 375.

Henry. *See* Exeter, bishop of.

Marshall, William, receives the cross of the younger Henry on his death, i. 325; sent by Henry II. to defy Philip in 1188, 358; married to the heiress of Strigul, 372; has the

Marshall, William—*cont.*

earldom, *ib.*; carries the sceptre at Richard's coronation, 373; is made a justice, 378; swears that Richard shall meet Philip at Vezelai, 381; is again named a justice, 388; and in 1191, 432; sent from Sicily to make peace in England, *ib.*; has charge of Nottingham castle at the peace of Winchester, 462; exhibits his commission superseding Longchamp, ii. 5; takes measures to ensure John's succession, 144, 145; is at John's coronation and girt with the sword of his earldom, 146; takes the king's side in 1215, 225; is one of the guardians of Henry III., 232; attacks Lewis's party at Lincoln, 237; dies in 1219, 241; entrusted Rockingham to William of Aumâle, 245.

William the younger, takes the barons' side in 1215, ii. 225.

Martel, the younger Henry dies at, i. 325.

William, steward of Stephen, compelled to surrender Sherborn castle, i. 170.

Martin, St., contemporary with Constantius, i. 9.

Martini, R., has charge of Maranon under the Spanish award, i. 278.

Mary, of Scotland, married to Eustace of Boulogne in 1102, i. 122.

Masci, Hamo de, holds his castles against Henry II. in 1173, i. 217.

Mastac, William de, in arms against Richard in 1176, i. 262.

Mategriffon, Richard's castle at Messina, built, i. 417; he keeps Christmas at, 429; destroyed, 438.

Matilda, wife of William the Conqueror, consecrated in 1068, i. 84; dies in 1083, and is buried at Caen, 97.

daughter of Malcolm and Margaret, married to Henry I., i. 119; advises archbishop Ralph to go to Rome in

Matilda, daughter of Malcolm—*cont.*
1116, 136; dies in 1118 and is buried at Westminster, 137; her dowry, 386.
Matilda, wife of Stephen, takes Dover, i. 160; keeps Kent faithful to her husband, 169; defeats the earl of Gloucester, 170; her dowry, 386.
Matilda, the empress, daughter of Henry I., given in marriage to the emperor Henry V., i. 128, 133; her husband dies in 1125, 144; oaths are taken to her as her father's heiress, 147; quarrels with her second husband, the count of Anjou, 154; lands in England and is besieged by Stephen at Arundel, 163, 164; escapes to Bristol, 164; is received as lady of England after the capture of Stephen, everywhere but in Kent, 169; offends the English by her pride, 170; is expelled from London, *ib.*; besieged by Stephen at Oxford, *ib.*; escapes on the ice, *ib.*; dies in 1167, 186.
Matilda, daughter of Henry II., born in 1156, i. 184; married to the duke of Saxony in 1168, 186; on her husband's forfeiture, has her dower lands secured to her by the emperor, 318; goes to Normandy, *ib.*; bears a son at Argentan, *ib.*; keeps Christmas 1182 at Caen, 320; visits England in 1184 and bears a son at Winchester, 330; dies in 1189, 368.
Matilda, of Saxony, daughter of Henry the Lion, married to Geoffrey of Perche, i. 369.
Matthew, vice-chancellor of Sicily, i. 295.
count of Boulogne. *See* Boulogne.
Mauleon, Savaric de, violates the sanctuary of Crowland, ii. 232.
Mauley, Peter de, accused to the king and makes peace with him, ii. 251; was compelled to resign his castles, 260.
Maurice, bishop of London. *See* London.
Maurienne, county of, i. 209.
Humbert III., count of, visits Henry II. at Montferrand in 1173, 209; makes a treaty for the marriage of his daughter with John, 209–212; comes to Limoges and inquires what provision Henry will make, 212.
William, bishop of, i. 211.
S. Jean de, consecration of Reginald of Bath at, i. 231.
Maxentius, tyrant of Rome, i. 8.
Maximian, proconsul, king of Britain, i. 9, 11.
May, William, prior of, envoy of William the Lion to John, ii. 147.
Mayo, see of, i. 203.
Meath, king of, does homage to Henry II., i. 202.
kingdom of, given to Hugh de Lacy, i. 205; retained by Henry II. in demesne, 253; given to Hugh de Lacy under John, 289.
bishop of, ii. 171.
Meaux, Peter, elect of. *See* Peter.
council of, i. 242.
Medeshamstede. *See* Peterborough.
Medway, the Danes enter, in 1016, i. 42; dried up in 1114, 134.
Melchior, one of the three wise men, ii. 9.
Melic, city in Spain, i. 404.
Melide, Richard lodged at, i. 409.
Melior, cardinal, conducts Berengaria home from Rome, ii. 45.
Mellitus, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 20.
Melpis, castle of, surrendered to Richard, i. 266.
Melrose, abbot of, attends Henry II. at York, in 1175, i. 247.
Reginald, monk of, ii. 83.
Melsemutus, i. 424.
Melun, council at, in 1217, ii. 235.
Robert of, bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
Membriz, king of Britain, i. 4.
Mentz, archbishops of:
Willigis, crowns Henry II. in 1002, i. 27; dies in 1011, 33.
Erconbald, abbot of Fulda, succeeds in 1011, i. 33; dies in 1021, i. 46.

Mentz, archbishops of—*cont.*
Aribo, succeeds in 1021, i. 46; dies in 1031, 52.
Bardo, succeeds in 1031, i. 52; dedicates the monastery of S. Martin, 54.
Luipold, dies in 1059, i. 74.
Sigfrid, succeeds in 1059, i. 74; his pilgrimage, 77; holds a council in 1071, 88; goes to Cluny, but is forced to return to his see, 89; sets up Rudolf of Swabia against Henry IV., 93; witnesses the final absolution granted by Gregory VII., 97.
Christian, chancellor of Frederick I., receives the see on the resignation of Conrad of Wittelsbach, i. 304; received the pall from Wido of Crema, *ib.*; is reconciled with Alexander III. and absolved, *ib.*; goes to Italy to assist Lucius III., and is poisoned, 327, 328.
Conrad of Wittelsbach, elected during the schism, adheres to Alexander III., and is made cardinal bishop of Sabina, i. 303, 304; renounces his claim at the treaty of Venice, and receives the see of Salzburg, 304; as archbishop of Mentz invades Italy in 1189, 388; conspires against Henry VI. on account of the death of the bishop of Liege, ii. 34; is won over by Richard, 48; delivers him to his mother, 49; does homage to him, 50; is sent on crusade in 1197, 109; delivers Tyre to Amalric of Cyprus, 111; summons Richard to the imperial election in 1198, 116; joins in the choice of Otho IV., 117; crowns him, *ib.*; crowns Philip of Swabia at Mentz, 164; dies in 1200, *ib.*
Sigfrid, archbishop of, elected in 1200, rejected by Philip of Swabia but approved by Otho; crowns Otho at Christmas, ii. 164.
Mentz, church of S. Martin dedicated at, i. 54; council at, in 1071, 88; council at which Gregory VII. is deposed in 1080, 96; marriage of Henry V. and Matilda, 133; Richard's release fixed to take place at, ii. 46; meeting of Richard with the emperor at, 48; revolts from Philip of Swabia, and receives Otho IV., 164.
Meon, manor of, bought by the bishop of Winchester, i. 380; taken back by Richard, ii. 58.
Mepeham, settlement of the church of, on the monks of Canterbury, ii. 168.
Merianus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Merioneth, given to Rhys ap Griffith, i. 289.
Merle, a fortress in Palestine, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
defiles of, passed by Richard, i. 457.
Merlin, the enchanter, i. 10; his prophecies, 25, 26, 213.
Merlou, Dreux de, skirmishes with Richard near Mantes, i. 358; has charge of Philip's share of Acre, 452; negotiates a truce in 1194, ii. 66.
William de, messenger between Philip and Richard at Acre, i. 453; taken prisoner with the bishop of Beauvais, ii. 104.
Mertel, in Spain, i. 403.
Messina, arrival of Philip at, i. 408; of Richard, 409; quarrels of the crusaders with the citizens, 410; taken by Richard and entrusted to the military orders, 412; the citizens give hostages to Richard, 414; flight of Margarit from, 417; charter of wreck dated at, 419; thunderstorm at, 421; repairs of the ships at, *ib.*; Richard's penitence at, 423; he keeps Christmas 1190 at, 429; riot at, *ib.*; departure of William des Barres from, 431; the count of Flanders arrives at, 431; the archbishop of Rouen sent from, 432; Richard goes to Catania from, 432; returns, 433; peace made with Philip

Messina—*cont.*
at, 434; departure of Philip from, 435; Eleanor and Berengaria arrive at, *ib.*; Richard leaves, 438; Henry VI. received at, in 1194, ii. 75; he dies at, 112.
Richard, archbishop of, visits Richard, i. 411.
Berard, archbishop of, mediates between Constantia and the pope, ii. 112.
Mestoch, proposes to surrender Acre, i. 449; again, 450; is refused, *ib.*; is spared in the massacre, 457.
Meu, father of Alfgar, i. 40.
Meulan, Mellent, counts of:
Waleran, taken prisoner in 1118, i. 143; is on Stephen's side at the battle of Lincoln, 166, 168; has a gift of Worcester from Stephen, 175; brother to the earl of Leicester, 176.
Robert, rebels against Henry II. in 1173, i. 215; included in the truce of 1193, ii. 38.
Michelney, abbey of:
vacant in 1175, i. 245.
abbot of, deprived in 1102, i. 122.
Middlesex, ravaged by the Danes in 1011, i. 33; overrun by William the Conqueror, 82; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
Migemal, steward of Saladin, slain, i. 382.
Mignot, Peter, killed after the capture of Acre, i. 456.
Milan, portent at, i. 136; Frederick I. defeated by the Lombards near, 269; Henry VI. retires from Naples to, ii. 13.
Mildenhall, manor of, bought by abbot Sampson of S. Edmunds, i. 380.
Mildred, monastery of St., i. 33.
Milford, Henry II.'s retinue lands at, i. 205.
Milli, castle of, taken by John and Marcadeus, ii. 104.
Milton, Egelric, abbot of, i. 122.
Minho, river in Portugal, i. 406.
Mirabel, castle of, proposed to be settled on John in 1172, i. 213; the barons of Poictou propose a meeting at, in 1183, 321; siege of, and capture of Arthur, ii. 196.
Mirasalim, son of Saladin, slain, i. 382.
Mizio, Peter de, i. 200.
Mohun, William de, holds Dunster against Stephen, i. 160.
Momerfeld, great storm at, i. 137.
Monkton in Thanet, settled on the monks of Canterbury, ii. 167.
Monsant (Muncian), i. 404, 407.
Montbegun, Roger of, surrenders Nottingham to Richard, ii. 53.
Montdoubleau, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 366.
Montebourg, abbot of, signs the treaty of Falaise, i. 250.
Monte Fiascone, restored to the pope in 1198, ii. 113.
Monte Gibello, Ætna, i. 407.
Montferrand in Auvergne, Henry II. meets the count of Maurienne at, i. 208.
Montferrat, William, marquis of, i. 212.
Conrad, marquis of, deserts his wife at Constantinople and saves Tyre from Saladin, i. 346; forbids Guy of Lusignam to enter Tyre, 381; marries the heiress of Jerusalem, 420; quarrels with Guy, *ib.*; forbids Richard to enter Tyre, 443; gets Philip on his side at Acre, 445; and the Genoese, *ib.*; receives Philip's share of Acre and of the prisoners, 455; is pardoned by Richard and the quarrel with Guy arranged, 454, 455; gives up the prisoners to Richard, 456; proposal to make him king, ii. 18; killed by the Assassins, 18.
William, brother of Conrad, count of Joppa, the first husband of Sibylla queen of Jerusalem, i. 342, 346.
Montfort, Robert de, his duel with Henry of Essex, i. 186.
Simon de. *See* Leicester.
taken by Philip in 1189, i. 365.

Montgomery, castle of, taken by the Welsh, i. 112.
Roger, Hugh, Robert, Arnulf. *See* Shrewsbury, earls of.
Montignac, taken by Richard in 1176, i. 266; and in 1194, ii. 66.
Montluçon in Berry, Henry marches to, in 1170, i. 192.
Montmajor, in Maurienne, i. 209.
Montmirail, besieged by the Angevins in 1194, ii. 63.
Montmorenci, Matthew de, taken at Gisors, ii. 126.
Mont Noir, in Provence, passed by Richard, i. 395.
Montoir, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 366.
Montreal, William archbishop of, visits Richard in Sicily, i. 411.
archbishop of, dies at Acre, i. 427.
crag of, in Palestine, i. 446, 452.
Montrelais, seized by Hervey of Leonois and recovered by Henry II., i. 344.
Moray, Donald Mac William killed in, i. 344.
war of Harold Mac Madit with William the Lion in, ii. 100.
Simon de Thouni, bishop of, comes to York in 1175, i. 247.
Malcolm Mac Heth, earl of, ii. 101.
Mordred, his war with Arthur, i. 11.
Moreal, surrenders Bamborough to William Rufus and reveals the conspiracy of the Mowbrays, i. 113; kills king Malcolm, 16.
Morgan, brother of archbishop Geoffrey, made provost of Beverley, ii. 189.
Morkar, son of Earngrim, killed by Edric Streone, i. 37; his lands occupied by Edmund Ironside, 38.
brother of Edwin; defeated by Harold Hardrada, 81; sends queen Aldgith to Chester, 82; submits to the Conqueror, *ib.*; goes with him to Normandy in 1067, 83; flies from court, 88; takes refuge at Ely, 89; surrenders, *ib.*; released by the Conqueror before his death, 99; but imprisoned again by William Rufus, 100.
Morocco, Avigoz, emperor of, conquers Murcia and Valencia and invades Castille, i. 201.
Boyac al Miramimoli, invades Portugal, i. 399; takes Torres Nuevas and Tumar and besieges Santarem, 400; report of his death, *ib.*; invades Portugal again in 1191, ii. 15; recovers the cities lost in 1190, *ib.*; story of his daughter's love for Sancho of Navarre, i. 427, 428; invades Castille in 1195, and besieges Toledo, but retires, ii. 91; ravages Portugal, 92.
emperor of, invades Spain in 1211, ii. 204; defeated in 1212, *ib.*
Morpidas, king of Britain, i. 6.
Mortagne in Flanders, ii. 216.
Mortain, county of, promised by the younger Henry to the count of Boulogne, i. 215; given by Richard to John, 371.
Robert, count of, goes against William Rufus in 1088, i. 100, 102.
William, count of, forfeits his English estates in 1104, i. 123; revenges himself on Henry's Norman subjects, 124; adheres to duke Robert, 125; is taken at Tenchebrai and sent a prisoner to England, *ib.*; blinded by Henry I., 155.
Mortemer, William de, taken prisoner at Alnwick, i. 227.
Mortemer, Ralph de, conspires against William Rufus, i. 102.
Morville, Richard de, constable of Scotland, rebels against Henry II., i. 216; his castles, 217; ravages Northumberland, 226; one of the hostages of the treaty of Falaise, 249.
Hugh de, one of Becket's murderers, i. 193, 194.
Mosul, the sultan of, at war with Saladin, i. 446; proposes an alliance against Saladin, 452.
Mete de Ger, illness of Henry II. at, i. 189.

Mount S. Angelo, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294, 414.
Mount S. Michael in Normandy, surrendered by duke Robert to William Rufus in 1091, i. 104; seized by Henry, who is besieged there by his brothers, 105.
Mountsorel, held by the earl of Leicester against Henry II., i. 217; surrendered, 231; demolished, 26 kept in hand by Richard, but surrendered by John, ii. 221; besieged by the earl of Chester in 1217, 236; relieved, 237; taken, 238.
Mowbray, Robert earl of Northumberland, i. 101; opposes William Rufus in 1088, and devastates Somersetshire, 101, 102; conspires in favour of Stephen of Aumâle, 112; flies to Bamborough, *ib.*; to Tynemouth, *ib.*; is taken and blinded, and kept a prisoner at Windsor, 112, 113.
Roger de, rebels against Henry II., i. 216; fortifies Axholm against him, 225; submits, 231; his castles demolished, 269; goes on crusade, 343; gave Kirby Moorside to William Stuteville, ii. 162.
Nigel de, son of Roger, rebels, i. 216.
Robert de, constable of Axholm, surrenders, i. 228; son of Roger, 216.
William de, swears fealty to John, ii. 145; his lawsuit with William Stuteville, ii. 161, 162.
Muhec, Moiac, Reginald de, Richard lives in his house at Messina, i. 409, 423.
Mulinous, taken by Richard in 1176, i. 266.
Munrabel, Peter de, rebels in 1173, i. 216.
Münster, Bucard, bishop of, in 1111, i. 129.
Murchat Va Mailethlachlin, i. 253.
Murcia, conquered by the king of Morocco, i. 201.
kingdom of, i. 407, ii. 17.
Murdac, Ralph, surrenders Nottingham to Richard I., ii. 53.
Hugh, excommunicated by the dean of York, ii. 124; made archdeacon of Cleveland by him, 181.
Musard, Ralph, compelled to surrender his castles, ii. 261.
Muschamp, Geoffrey de. *See* Lichfield, bishops of.
Thomas de, rebels in 1173, i. 217.
Musterol, Geram de, Henry's messenger to his son, who allows him to be wounded, i. 324.

N.

Nafferton, miracle of the abbot of Flay at, ii. 188.
Nagara, Nayara, staked by the king of Castille on Henry's award, i. 277; entrusted to Pedro Rodriguez, 278.
Naimund, sons of, at Naples, seen by Richard, i. 398.
Nairn (Ilvernarran), negotiations of Harold Mac Madit with the king of Scots at, ii. 100.
Namur, count of, taken prisoner by Philip, ii. 148.
Nantes, Henry II. keeps Christmas 1169 at, i. 186, 187.
Naples, city of, visited by Richard, i. 398; arrival of Eleanor and Berengaria at, 431; besieged by Henry VI., ii. 13.
cardinal John of, i. 200.
Naplous, taken by the Turks, i. 338.
Narbonne, city of, i. 405; included in the kingdom of Arles, ii. 43.
see of, vacant in 1225, ii. 277.
Navarret, claimed by the king of Castille, i. 281, 282.
Navarre, Sancho VI. king of, his claim against the king of Castille referred to Henry II., i. 276; covenant with Castille, 277; decision of Henry,

Navarre—*cont.*
281, 282; father of Berengaria, Richard's wife, 431, 435, 438, 442; dies in 1194, ii. 63.
Sancho VII., son of Sancho VI., his love adventures in Morocco, i. 427–429; his kingdom invaded by the kings of Arragon and Castille, 429; he assists Richard's steward in Gascony, ii. 23; called Alfonso, 63; assists Richard, *ib.*; succeeds his father, *ib.*; returns from Africa and makes a truce for three years with Castille and Arragon, 159.
Navarrese, compelled by Richard to keep faith with pilgrims, i. 272.
Nazareth, taken by Saladin, i. 342.
archbishop of, dies at the siege of Acre, i. 427.
Neafle, taken by Philip in 1193, ii. 29; Richard agrees to settle it on Lewis and Eleanor, 91.
Neavena, father of Turketill, i. 39.
Neffin, castle in Syria, ii. 9.
Nes, son of William, a hostage of the treaty of Falaise, i. 249.
Nettuno (Lettun), i. 397.
Neufbourg, town of, ii. 67; burnt by John, 128; a boundary of the Evrecin, 177.
Neufmarché, castle of, ii. 138.
Bernard of, joins in the rebellion of 1088, i. 102.
Nevers, Guy count of, his widow marries Peter of Flanders, i. 268.
Peter, count of, is with Philip at Messina, i. 411; intercedes for William des Barres, 430; leaves Acre with Philip, 455; takes part in the negotiations of 1194, ii. 64.
count of, Lewis gives Winchester to, in 1216, ii. 230; sent to besiege Windsor, *ib.*
Neville, William de, warden of Norham castle, i. 289.
Ernis de, ii. 119; justice of the forests in 1198, ii. 130.
Neville—*cont.*
Hugh, son of Ernis, guards the bishop of Beauvais at Rouen, ii. 119; justice of the forests in 1198, 130.
Ralph. *See* Chichester.
Newark, claimed by archbishop Thomas, i. 23; castle of, surrendered to Stephen by the bishop of Lincoln, 163; John dies at, ii. 231.
Newbury, castle, taken by Stephen, i. 177.
Newcastle-on-Tyne, the end of Severus's ditch, i. 8; attempt of Robert Mowbray on, in 1095, 112; taken by David of Scotland in 1136, 158; restored to Stephen, *ib.*; claimed by Hugh Bardulf from Hugh de Puiset, ii. 67.
Nice (Nizza), passed by Richard, i. 396; the empire begins at, 407.
Nice, in Bithynia, besieged and taken, i. 114.
Nichoforiensis, archbishop, ii. 242.
Nicolaa, de Camville, defends Lincoln in 1216, ii. 230; in 1217, 237.
Nicolas, St., appears to the crusaders, i. 399.
Nicolas II., becomes pope in 1059, i. 74; gives the pall to Aldred of York, and consecrates the bishops of Wells and Hereford, 74, 87; dies, 74.
Nicolas, a chaplain of Henry II., sent to the council of Cashel, i. 204; marries Richard and Berengaria, 442.
Nicolas, bishop of Wic, compelled to crown Swerre, ii. 76; rebels and is beaten, 109.
bishop of Tusculum. *See* Tusculum.
Nicosia, in Cyprus, taken by Richard, i. 442.
Nidros, Eustachius archbishop of, refuses to crown Swerre, ii. 76.
Nigel, bishop of Ely. *See* Ely.
Nimeguen, imperial palace at, burnt by Baldwin of Flanders, i. 62.
Noa, abbey of, ii. 176.
Nola, passed by Richard, i. 396.
Nonancourt, put in trust by the peace of Tours, i. 367; taken in 1196, ii. 97.

Noradin, sons of, claim their father's dominions from Saladin, i. 446; invade Mesopotamia, *ib.*; propose to Richard an alliance against Saladin, 452.

Norfolk, visited by the justices in 1176, i. 256; managed by Roger de Cresey in 1215, ii. 224; traversed by John in 1216, 231.

Norham, castle of, surrendered by the bishop of Durham in 1173, i. 231; entrusted to William Neville, 289; surrendered to Hugh Bardulf on the bishop's death, ii. 83.

Normandy, given by king Arthur to Bedewer, i. 10; given by Henry II. to his eldest son in 1170, 189; claimed by him in 1173, 213; Richard invested with the duchy of, 369; and John after him, ii. 144.

threatened by Lewis VII. in 1170, i. 189; and in 1173, 217; placed under interdict in 1192, ii. 23; in 1196, 103, 105; and threatened in 1199, 149.

conquered by Philip, ii. 197.

dukes of. *See* Richard, Robert.

Norreys, Roger, prior of Canterbury, made abbot of Evesham, i. 383.

Northallerton, battle of the Standard near, i. 17, 24, 160–162; castle fortified at, in 1174 and committed to Hugh of Bar, 225; surrendered to the king, 231; Philip of Poictiers elected bishop of Durham at, ii. 96.

Northampton, burned by the Danes in 1010, i. 32; conference of Tostig with the Northumbrians, 79; meeting of Henry I. and Robert at, 124.

Stephen arrests the earl of Chester at, i. 173; attacked by the rebels in 1174, 227; the king marches from Seleham to, and receives submissions, 231; great council and assize in 1176 at, 256; cardinal Vivian at, 264; council there in 1177, 272–274, 275; the Jew William

Northampton—*cont.*

dies at, 376; the archbishop of Treves dies at, 379; Richard and William the Lion visit, in 1194, ii. 56; Hubert Walter takes the fealties of the earls at, 145; the barons march to, in 1215, 219; and return to, from Brackley, *ib.*; they besiege the castle, *ib.*; again, 226; meeting of the barons at, in 1224, 253, 264; Henry III. kept Christmas 1223 at, 262; Fawkes de Breauté at, 267, 268.

Simon earl of, is on Stephen's side at Lincoln, i. 168; dies in 1153, 180.

Northamptonshire, ravaged by the Danes in 1016, i. 39; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; sheriffdom of, bid for by Longchamp, ii. 54; Robert Fitz Walter takes charge of, in 1215, 224.

Northman, son of Leofwin, killed by Canute, i. 46.

Northumberland, submits to Swein in 1013, i. 34; visited by Edmund Ironside in 1016, 38; ravaged by Canute, 39; given to Edric in 1016, 39; or Yrc, 45; invaded by Malcolm, 93; ravaged by William, 96; promised by the younger Henry to William the Lion, 215; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; Hugh de Puiset buys, in 1189, 377; restored after being seized by Longchamp, 395; resigned in 1194, ii. 60; demanded by William the Lion, 56–61; the bishop compelled to surrender, 67, 68; demanded by William the Lion on John's accession, ii. 145, 147, &c.; entrusted to William Stuteville, 147; managed by Robert de Ros in 1215, 224.

Northumberland, earls of, *see* Uhtred, Yrc, Mowbray.

Urian, king of, i. 10.

Norway, Loth king of, i. 10; conquered by Canute, 48.

Norway—*cont.*
kings of:
Harold, i. 48.
Olaf, Saint, son of Harold, intrigued against by Canute, i. 47; expelled in 1028, 48; killed by the Norwegians, *ib.*
Canute, king of England. *See* Canute.
Swein son of Canute succeeds, i. 52.
Magnus, son of Olaf, threatens England in 1045, i. 60; expels Swein of Denmark from Denmark, i. 60, 61; dies, *ib.*
Harold Hardrada, son of Siward, succeeds Magnus, i. 61; called Harfagra, 81, 115; called brother of S. Olaf, 81; invades England, defeats Edwin and Morkar and is killed at Stamford bridge, *ib.*
Olaf, son of Harold, allowed to return to Norway, i. 81.
Magnus, son of Olaf, conquers the Orkneys and Anglesey, i. 115; kills Hugh Montgomery, *ib.*
Magnus, killed by Swerre in 1184, i. 333.
Swerre Birkbain, kills Magnus, i. 333; the pope forbids his coronation, ii. 76; he compels the bishops to crown him, *ib.*; killed fifteen kings, 77; defeats bishop Nicolas, 109; is king in 1201, 183.
Norwich, burnt by Swein in 1004, i. 28; seized by earl Ralph in 1074, 91; surrendered, *ib.*; held by Hugh Bigot against Stephen, i. 158; the castle of, promised by the younger Henry to Hugh Bigot, 215; burnt by Hugh Bigot, 227; taken by Lewis in 1217, ii. 235.
Ranulf, prior of, made bishop of Chichester, ii. 240.
Geoffrey, archdeacon of, ii. 241, 257.
Norwich, bishops of. *See* Elmham, Thetford.
Herbert Losinga, translates the see to Norwich, i. 109; is deprived of his pastoral staff, *ib.*; is at the council of 1102, 121; at the consecration of the five bishops, 126.
Everard, consecrated in 1121, i. 141; assists at the consecration of Gregory of Dublin, *ib.*; at the council of 1127, 148; at the dedication of Canterbury cathedral in 1130, 152.
William Turbe, dies in 1174, i. 236.
John of Oxford, sent as ambassador to Sicily in 1176, i. 263; returns home, 269; is at the council of London in 1177, 280; at Geddington, 287; sent to Amesbury, 290; to Waltham, 295; goes to Normandy in 1190, 390; visits the pope and is released from his vow of pilgrimage, 398; dies in 1200, ii. 166.
John de Gray, consecrated by archbishop Hubert in 1200, ii. 166; is elected to the see of Canterbury, but rejected by the pope, ii. 197; deserted by the monks of Canterbury, 199; goes to Rome in 1213, 213; dies on his way home, 217.
Pandulf, comes from Rome to England in 1213, ii. 209; is ordered to execute the letter of excommunication, and to compel the bishops to go to the Lateran council, 223; is elected bishop of Norwich, *ib.*; suspends archbishop Langton, 225, 228; returns to England as legate in 1219, 241; empowered to appoint to the see of Ely, 241; holds a council at London in 1220, 243; has orders for the coronation of Henry III., 244; is at the coronation, *ib.*; and at the translation of S. Thomas, 245; grants an indulgence, 246; excommunicates William of Aumâle, 247; renews the sentence, 248; directs the election of the bishop of London, *ib.*; resigns the legation, 250; consecrated, 252.

Nottingham, castle of, built by William the Conqueror, i. 84 ; given to John in 1174, 235 ; visited by Henry II. in 1175, 246 ; surrendered to John treacherously in 1191, 462 ; entrusted to William Marshall, 463 ; the punishment of the traitorous knights, ii. 15 ; in the hands of John in 1193, 29 ; besieged by earl Ferrers, 52 ; surrendered to the king himself, 53, 54 ; great council at, 54–56 ; John keeps Christmas 1215 at, 228 ; the earl of Chester goes to, in 1217, from Mountsorel, 237 ; he moves from, to Lincoln, *ib.*

Nottinghamshire, ravaged by Canute in 1016, i. 39 ; given to John in 1174, 235 ; visited by the justices in 1176, 256 ; and in 1198, 198 ; given to John in 1189, 371 ; hunting rights in, given to the see of York, 387 ; managed by John de Lacy in 1215, ii. 224.

Nottingham, archdeacon of. *See* Testard, William.

Novalesia, part of the Maurienne settlement, i. 209.

Noyon, Stephen, bishop of, implicated in Philip's divorce, ii. 95.

Nunant, Hugh of. *See* Lichfield, bishops of.

Robert of, intrigues for the prolongation of Richard's imprisonment, ii. 48 ; refuses to be one of his sureties, 49 ; is imprisoned by his order, *ib.* ; dies in prison at Dover, 84.

Nussa, Henry V. makes peace at, i. 134.

O.

Obizzo, proposed mission of, to England, ii. 263.

Occa, in Spain, taken by the king of Morocco in 1171, i. 201.

Ochsenfurth, meeting of Richard with the English messengers at, ii. 25.

Octa, son of Hengist, slain by Uter, i. 10.

Octavian, the antipope Victor, i. 185, 303.

Octavian, cardinal deacon, sent to crown John as king of Ireland, i. 343 ; goes with Henry to Normandy, *ib.* ; as bishop of Ostia, meets Richard at the mouth of the Tiber, 397 ; legate to Normandy in 1192, ii. 23 ; puts Normandy under interdict, *ib.* ; is a candidate for the papacy, 114 ; consecrates Innocent III., 120 ; comes as legate to settle the divorce of Philip, 174 ; hears the parties at Soissons, 175 ; appeal from his decision, *ib.* ; proposes a further hearing, *ib.*

Octavian, the emperor Augustus, i. 7.

Octavius, king of Britain, i. 9.

Odingeham (Hedingham) castle, taken by Lewis in 1217, ii. 235.

Odo, of Champagne, father of Stephen of Aumâle, i. 104, 113.

Odo, bishop of Ostia, pope Urban II., i. 106. *See* Urban.

Odo, bishop of Bayeux, brother of William the Conqueror ; earl of Kent, i. 100 ; left as justiciar in England in 1067, 83 ; overcomes the rebellion of 1074, 91 ; is imprisoned by the Conqueror, 96 ; released by him before his death, 99 ; rebels against William Rufus, 100 ; fortifies Rochester, 101 ; flies to Pevensey, *ib.*

Oedeeb, city in Spain, ii. 17.

Offa, a benefactor of Worcester, i. 88.

Offaly, given to Hugh de Lacy, i. 290.

Offelan, given to Hugh de Lacy, i. 290.

Ogrestan, Gilbert, a Templar, embezzles the Saladin tithe, and is punished, i. 360.

Olaf, king of Norway. *See* Norway.

Olanege (Alney), meeting of Canute and Edmund at, i. 43.

Oleron, Forz de, William de. *See* Fortibus, Aumâle.

Olveston, illness of William Rufus at, i. 107.
Oneus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Ongar, castle of, taken from Richard de Lucy, i. 268.
Orde, one of the kings killed by Swerre Birkbain, ii. 77.
Orford, castle of, taken by Lewis in 1217, ii. 235.
Oriole, in Spain, ii. 17.
Oriz, E., G., and P., knights of Navarre, i. 278.
Orkneys, conquered by Magnus of Norway, i. 115.
Orkney, Ralph, bishop of, suffragan of York, i. 23, 151; represents the archbishop at the battle of the Standard, 160; his speech, 160, 161.
Paul, earl of, allowed to return home after the battle of Stamford bridge, i. 81.
Reginald, earl of, ii. 100.
Harold Mac Madit, earl of, invades Moray, flies before William the Lion, submits, fails to keep faith and is imprisoned, ii. 100; is released and goes home to fight the younger Harold, offers to buy Caithness, 101.
Gilmasius, king of, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
Orleans, Henry of Dreux, bishop of (called Guy, ii. 95), divorces Philip from his wife, ii. 95; sent to Rome on behalf of Philip of Beauvais, 108; dies at Sienna, 109.
Berter of, his poem, i. 348–350.
Orm, father of Gamel, killed by Tostig, i. 79.
Orwell, the Danes sail up, in 1016, i. 42.
Osbern, bishop of Exeter. *See* Exeter.
Pentecost, flies in 1052 to Scotland, i. 68.
Osbert, king of Northumbria, i. 12.
clerk of Henry II., goes to Sicily with Johanna, i. 292.
Oseg, king of the Danes, killed, i. 14.
Osgod Clapa, marries his daughter to Tofi Pruda, i. 57; is banished from England, 60; has a fleet at Ulpe, 62; retires to Denmark, 63.
Oshere, king of Hwiccia, benefactor of Worcester, i. 88.
Oskytel, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Osmear, his head shown as Edmund Ironside's at the battle of Sherstone, i. 41.
Osmund, bishop of Salisbury. *See* Salisbury.
Osney, six canons of, removed to Waltham, i. 296; provincial council at, ii. 252.
Osric, king of Northumbria, i. 21.
Ossory, given to Robert le Poer, i. 290.
Ostia, Odo bishop of. *See* Urban II.
Leo bishop of, i. 133.
Alberic bishop of, legate in 1138, i. 162.
Imbaldus bishop of. *See* Lucius III.
Octavian bishop of. *See* Octavian.
Oswald, king of Northumbria, i. 21, 123, 136.
archbishop of York. *See* York.
Oswin, king of Northumbria, i. 21; translation of, 78; his monastery at Tynemouth, 112.
Otford, Canute defeated by Edmund Ironside at, i. 42.
Otho IV., emperor, son of Henry the Lion, nephew of Richard, has the county of York given him, i. 426; exchanges it for Poictou, 426; nominated heir of Scotland, ii. 89; objected to by the Scots, *ib.*; the scheme approved by Richard, 95; difficulties about it, 95, 96; receives the county of Poictou, 98; is elected and crowned king of Germany, 117, 118; keeps Christmas 1198 at Westfale, 139; his successes against Philip of Swabia, *ib.*; Richard leaves him his jewels, 141; accepted by the pope and the Romans as candidate for the empire, 150; offers to help John against Philip, *ib.*; John re-

Otho IV.—*cont.*
fuses to pay Richard's legacies, 160; Philip insists that John shall not help him, 158; he defeats Philip of Swabia at Brunswick, 161; obtains possession of Mentz, 164; is king when Satan is unloosed, 183; visits England in 1207, 199; is made emperor, 200; quarrels with the pope and is excommunicated, 202; conquers Italy, 203; marries a daughter of Philip of Swabia, 204, 205; succours the count of Flanders, 215; his steward taken prisoner at Bouvines, 216; dies in 1218, 240; mentioned, 247.
Otho, the pope's subdeacon, sent as legate to England, ii. 274; holds a council at London and goes home, 278.
Othwel, brother of the earl of Chester, drowned, i. 139.
Otranto, Philip lands at, ii. 13.
Otuel, his lands given to William Fitz Aldhelm, i. 290.
Otui, John, resists Simon of Apulia on behalf of archbishop Geoffrey, ii. 82.
Ouse, river, Harold Hardrada sails up, i. 81.
Owen, king of the Welsh. *See* Wales.
Oxford, burnt by the Danes in 1010, i. 32; taken by Swein in 1013, 35; Canute holds a council at, in 1018, 46; Tostig is banished by a council at, 79; the bishop of Hereford consecrated at, 153; Henry I. keeps Easter 1133 at, 154; Stephen's declaration to the people at, 157; he receives the news of the Scottish invasion at, 158; arrests the bishops of Lincoln and Salisbury, 163; the empress is besieged at, 170; taken by Stephen, *ib.*; Henry II. summons the monks of the vacant abbeys to, 245; he receives the homage of the Welsh kings at, 289; distributes the lands of Ireland at, 289, 290; translation of S. Frideswide at, 309; John stays at, in 1215, ii. 219; council at, 220; meeting proposed between the king and bishops, 223; the castle besieged by the barons, 225, 226; Henry's party assembles at, in 1217, 235; council at, in 1222, 252.
secession of the scholars from, ii. 201.
Godstow near, ii. 14.
John of. *See* Norwich, bishops of.
archdeacon of, *see* Worcester, John bishop of; Rouen, Walter archbishop of.
Oxfordshire, ravaged by the Danes in 1011, i. 33; part of Swein's earldom, 65; visited by the justices, 256.
Oyri, Walter de, his exploits at Acre, i. 422.

P.

Paderborn, burnt in 1058, i. 73.
Paganellus, holds Ludlow castle against Stephen, i. 160.
Pageham, consecration of the bishop of London at, i. 127.
Palatine, count, an elector of the empire, ii. 117.
counts:
Conrad, Philip II. wishes to marry his daughter, ii. 43; is brought over to Richard's interests, 48; does homage to him, 50.
Henry of Saxony, nephew of Richard, marries the daughter of Conrad, 43; is count Palatine in 1197, and goes on crusade, 109; takes up his abode in Acre, ii. 109; election of his brother to the empire, 117; ratifies the election on his return from Palestine, 118; visits Richard at Andely, 125.

Palenza, bishop of, ambassador to Henry II., i. 277, 281, 282.
Palermo, arrival of queen Johanna at, i. 286; her settlement dated at, 295; she leaves for Messina, 410; coronation of Henry VI. and Constantia at, ii. 76, 80; Henry VI. seizes the treasures of the Italian kings at, 110.
Walter, archbishop of, i. 295.
Palmade, taken by the Moors, ii. 15.
Palmel, in Portugal, i. 402; taken by the Moors, ii. 15.
Palmere, passed by Richard, i. 397.
Paluel, castle of, taken by Philip, i. 359.
Pampeluna, see of, in Spain, ii. 16.
bishop of, envoy to Henry II., i. 277, 282.
Pandulf. *See* Norwich, bishops of.
Pantaleon, monastery of S., i. 53, 58.
Paris, archdeacon of Rochester, sent to Sicily in 1176, i. 263.
Paris, visited by Eugenius III. in 1147, i. 173; Henry II. visits, in 1158, 185; league formed at, against Henry II., 214; queen Margaret bears a son at, 298; mentioned in the peace of Yvry, 307; Arnulf of Lisieux retires to, 312; Geoffrey of Brittany dies and is buried at, 340; council at, on the crusade, 380; Hugh de Puiset overtakes the legates at, ii. 23; Peter, archbishop Geoffrey's brother is at, 41; Arthur sent to, 144; riot between the scholars and the citizens at, 163; privileges granted by Philip to the scholars, 164; visit of Margarit to, *ib.*; visit of John and his wife to, 184; crusade of boys at, 205.
Parma, bishop of, anti-pope in 1068, i. 84.
Parmerole, passed by Richard, i. 397.
Pascentius, killed by Uter Pendragon, i. 10.
Paschal II., pope, elected in 1099, i. 117; consents to the agreement on investitures between Henry I. and
Paschal II.—*cont.*
Anselm, 125; sends the pall to archbishop Thomas, 128; taken by the emperor and compelled to surrender the investitures, 128, 129; treaty with him, 129; oath, 130; privilege, *ib.*; consecrates the emperor, 131; holds a council in 1112 and repudiates the concessions, 131–133.
Pasci, castle of the earl of Leicester at, withheld from him by the king in 1177, i. 273; demanded by Philip in 1188, 359; placed in the hands of Philip and Richard in 1189, 367; offered by the earl of Leicester to Philip for his release, ii. 82; surrendered, 97; the earl attempts to recover it, 128.
Passau, bishop of, supports Rudolf of Swabia, i. 93.
Passeflabard, Ranulf, i. 110. *See* Durham, bishops of.
Passeleu, Robert, his mission to Rome, ii. 261, 262.
Pateshull, Simon, has charge of Northampton at the peace of Winchester, i. 463.
Martin de, summons Fawkes de Breauté to be absolved, ii. 268.
Paternus, a Scottish monk of Paderborn, i. 73.
Paternus, S., his church at Llanbadarn, ii. 155.
Patrick, earl of Dunbar. *See* Dunbar.
Paul, abbot of Leicester, dies in 1209, ii. 197.
abbot of S. Albans, dies in 1093, i. 108.
earl of Orkney *See* Orkney.
Paulinus, archbishop of York. *See* York.
of Ledes. *See* Leeds.
Pavia, cardinal of, i. 200, 302.
Peak, castle of, given by Richard to John, i. 371; entrusted to the bishop of Coventry at the peace of Winchester, 463; and in 1193 to queen Eleanor, ii. 29.

Pec, Richard del, has charge of Dublin in 1181, i. 310 ; is put in charge of Bolsover at the peace of Winchester, 463.
Peche, Richard, Robert. *See* Lichfield, bishops of.
Pedreda, council of, i. 88.
Pembroke, Henry II. assembles his fleet at, i. 202; his family land at, 205.
earls of. *See* Striguil, Marshall.
Penda, king of Mercia, i. 12.
Peniscle, in Spain, i. 404.
Peniscule, in Spain, i. 404.
Penn, Edmund Ironside defeats the Danes at, i. 40.
Penwithsteort, doubled by Harold in 1052, i. 67.
Perche, countess of, lost at sea, i. 139.
Rotrou, count of, i. 369 ; carries a message from Philip to Richard, 380.
Geoffrey son of Rotrou, marries Matilda of Saxony, i. 369 ; his rights secured by the treaty of 1193, ii. 38 ; surety given for him in 1200, 178 ; comes with Lewis to England in 1217, 236 ; killed at Lincoln, 237.
Perecastel, part of the Maurienne dowry, i. 209.
Perigord, count of, ravages Poictou in 1192, ii. 23.
Pershore, Brihteage abbot of, becomes bishop of Worcester, i. 52 ; Alfric buried at, 69 ; Agelwin buried at, 72 ; Edmund abbot of, dies, i. 98 ; Thurstan succeeds, in 1085, *ib.* ; Thurstan dies in 1087, 99 ; Wydo abbot of, 121 ; Wydo abbot of, at the inthronement of bishop Simon of Worcester, 145.
Peschiza, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
Peter, cardinal priest, legate to England in 1070, i. 86 ; attends council at Winchester and returns home, 87.
of Flanders, brother of count Philip, renounces his election to the see of Cambrai, i. 217 ; marries the countess of Nevers and dies, 267, 268.
Peter—*cont.*
cardinal of S. Chrysogonus, elect of Meaux, sent to enforce the marriage of Richard and Alesia, i. 304.
archdeacon of Lincoln, brother of archbishop Geoffrey, named to the deanery of York, being then at Paris, ii. 41 ; has the archdeaconry of York, 77 ; forbids the bishop of Lincoln to send chrism to York, 85.
Saint, founded the church of Antioch, i. 8.
the Hermit, i. 113.
of Wakefield, ii. 208, 212.
Peterborough, Medeshamstede :
archbishop Elfric buried at, i. 64 ; Ethelric of Durham retires to, 72.
earl Ralph buried at, i. 73 ; Kinsy buried at, 74 ; Wulfstan educated at, 75.
abbots of :
Kenulf, becomes bishop of Winchester in 1006, i. 29.
Alsius, sent with Ethelred's family to Normandy in 1013, 35.
Thurold, dies in 1098, i. 115.
Godric, abbot in 1102, 122.
Arnulf, made bishop of Rochester, i. 134.
William Waterville, deposed in 1175, i. 255, 291.
Benedict, prior of Canterbury, elected in 1175, 291 ; summoned by Richard to Germany, ii. 33.
Acharius, Zacharias, appointed in 120, ii. 160 ; died in 1210, 201 ; vacant in 1213, 213.
Petri, Petrus, Spanish envoy, i. 281, 282.
Pevensey, Beorn and Godwin command the fleet at, i. 62 ; Beorn drawn away by Swein from, 63 ; William of Normandy lands at, 82 ; Odo besieged in, by William Rufus, 102.
Peverell, William, surrenders Houlme to duke Robert, 110.
William, of Nottingham at the battle of the Standard, i. 162.

Philip I., king of France, i. 184; succeeds to the crown in 1060, 74; drives William the Conqueror from the siege of Dol, 92; supports Robert of Normandy, in his rebellion against his father, 92; summoned to the aid of Robert in 1090, 104; bribed off by William Rufus, 104; summoned again by Robert in 1094; takes Argentan, 110; returns home, *ib.*; his brother Hugh, 113; dies in 1108, 127.

II., king of France, son of Lewis VII., born in 1165, i. 186; marriage for him with one of the heiresses of Boulogne, proposed, 273; succeeds in 1180, 309; has an interview with Henry II. in 1181, 311; promises to aid a crusade, *ib*; quarrels with the count of Flanders, and is reconciled by Henry II., ii. 260.

in 1183, receives his sister Margaret, 322; demands her dowry, 326; meets Henry near Gisors and arranges the question, 326; receives the homage of Henry, 329.

in 1184, Henry II. makes peace with Flanders for, i. 330.

in 1185, Henry II. promises to consult him about a crusade, i. 335; meets Henry and joins in promises to the patriarch, 337.

in 1186, arranges to give Margaret's dower lands to Richard and Alesia, on their marriage, i. 339; marries Margaret to the king of Hungary, 340; demands the wardship of the heiress of Brittany, 341; makes a truce for the winter, *ib.*

in 1187, makes heavy demands on Henry, and besieges Richard and John in Châteauroux, i. 343; makes a truce for two years, *ib.*; strikes up a close friendship with Richard, 344; has a son born, *ib.*

in 1188, insists on Richard's marriage and threatens to invade Normandy, i. 351; meets Henry near Gisors, and prepares for a crusade, 352; levies a tithe for the crusade, 355; mediates between Richard and the count of Toulouse, 356; demands an account of Richard's proceedings from Henry, *ib.*; invades Berry, receives an English embassy, and retires before Richard, 357; defies Henry, 358; proposes peace, cuts down the elm of conference, 359; his barons refuse to support him in the war, *ib.*; takes the castles at Maine, *ib.*; meets Henry at Bonsmoulins, 361; receives the homage of Richard and makes a truce, *ib.*; reports of his ambassadors from Constantinople, *ib.*; John of Anagni sent to arrange peace for him, 363.

Philip II.—*cont.*

in 1189, forms a confederation against Henry, i. 364; has an ineffectual conference with him and the legate, 364, 365; takes the fortresses of Maine, and puts Henry to flight at le Mans, 365; takes le Mans and other places, and comes to Tours, 366; takes Tours, *ib.*; makes a peace with Henry, 367; after Henry's death meets Richard near Chaumont, and makes a treaty with him, 369; his ambassadors arrange with Richard the opening of the crusade, 380, 381.

in 1190, meets Richard at Gué S. Remy and agrees to start at Midsummer, i. 389; death of his wife, 392; meets Richard at Vezelai, and goes with him to Lyons, 394; goes to Genoa, *ib.*; is sick at Genoa, 396; asks Richard for five galleys, *ib.*; arrives at Messina, 408; embarks for Palestine, and returns, 409; interviews of, with Richard at Messina, 410; visits queen Johanna, *ib.*; consulted by Richard on the riot, 411; plays false, 411; on the capture of Messina insists on the removal of Richard's standards, 412;

Philip II.—*cont.*
makes a new agreement with him, and regulations, 412–414; storm during his stay at Messina, 421; is there at Christmas 1190, 429.
in 1191, intercedes for William des Barres, i. 430; his treachery revealed by Tancred, 432, 433; visits Tancred at Taormina, 433; releases Richard from his engagement with Alesia, 434; goes to Acre, 435; prepares for an assault, 444; waits for Richard's arrival, dismisses his engineers, his sickness and recovery, 440; takes the part of Conrad, *ib.*; demands half Cyprus, 446; attacks the cursed tower, 448; proposals for surrender made to, 449; makes another assault on the cursed tower, 450; receives the surrender of Acre, 451; shares the city with Richard, 452; refuses to swear to stay, 453; asks leave to go home, *ib.*; announces his departure, *ib.*; gives his share of Acre to Conrad, sends aid to Antioch, and divides the prisoners, 455; goes to Tyre, and gives his share of the prisoners to Conrad, 456; Richard's account of his desertion, 458; account of his voyage from Tyre home, ii. 9–14; arrives at Corfu, and asks leave to pass through Tancred's dominions, 13; goes to Rome, and calumniates Richard, 13, 14; conspires with the emperor against him, 14; on his return to France demands the surrender of Alesia, 14, 21; forbade his subjects to continue in Palestine, 15; keeps Christmas 1191 at Fontainebleau, 17.
in 1192, demands Gisors, Eu, and Aumâle, ii. 21, 22; threatens to invade Normandy, *ib.*; receives the news of Richard's capture, 24.
in 1193, the emperor proposes to make peace with Richard for, ii. 26; offers Alesia to John, and promises to conquer England for him, 26; receives John's homage, 27; invades Normandy, 28; attempt of the emperor to mediate, 28; gets possession of Gisors, *ib.*; threatens Rouen, 29; the pope threatens him with excommunication, 30; arranges for an interview with the emperor near Vaucouleurs, 33; the interview does not come off, 35; informs John that the devil is loosed, 36; peace made with Richard, 37; marries the sister of the king of Denmark and repudiates her, 42, 43; receives John again, 45.
in 1194, intrigues for the longer detention of Richard, 46; besieges Verneuil, 62; deserts the siege on Richard's arrival, 62; takes Fontaines, 63; conferences of his servants with Richard's at Pont l'Arche and Vaudreuil, 63, 64; captures the earl of Leicester, 64; destroys Evreux, 65; prepares for a pitched battle, *ib.*; flies and loses his treasure, *ib.*; has a narrow escape from capture, *ib.*; makes a new truce with Richard, 66.
in 1195, measures taken by Richard against, 80; negotiates for the ransom of the earl of Leicester, 82; accused of sending assassins to destroy Richard, 82; threatened with an invasion by the emperor, 90; attempts to arrest Richard's chancellor and declares the truce broken, 90; invades Normandy, meets Richard at Vaudreuil and narrowly escapes drowning, 91; arranges terms for peace, 91; meets Richard at Verneuil, 92; burns Dieppe, 93; takes Issoudun, 93; makes a truce over Christmas, *ib.*; marries a German lady, 94; complaints of his Danish queen against him, 95.
in 1196, meets Richard at Louviers, ii. 96; obtains the renunciation of Gisors, and demands Andely, *ib.*

Philip II.—*cont.*
demands the fealty of the archbishop of Rouen, 96; besieges Aumâle, 97; releases the earl of Leicester, *ib.*; takes Aumâle and Nonancourt, *ib.*; is joined by Arthur and his mother, 98; capture of his friend Hugh of Chaumont, 103.
in 1197, Richard forms a confederation against, ii. 107; besieges and takes Dangu, 107; has a narrow escape from the count of Flanders, *ib.*; returns to France, 108; makes a truce of a year, *ib.*
in 1198, renews the war, ii. 125; blinds his prisoners, *ib.*; is defeated by Richard near Gameges, 126; and near Gisors, 127; burns Evreux, 127; makes a truce in November for the winter, 135; keeps Christmas at Vernon, 139.
in 1199, meets Richard on the Seine, ii. 139; makes a truce for five years, *ib.*; fortifies a new castle, *ib.*; offers to destroy it and arranges new terms of peace, 140; informs Richard of John's treachery, *ib.*; on Richard's death, takes Evreux, 143; complaints of the king of Denmark against him renewed, *ib.*; sends Arthur to Paris, 144; captures several Flemish nobles, knights Arthur, and has an interview with John, 148, 149; demands his own rights and those of Arthur, 149; takes Conches, 150; is driven out of Maine, *ib.*; persuaded to keep the truce during the winter, 151.
in 1200, meets John near Andely, ii. 158; arranges for the marriage of his son with John's niece, *ib.*; negotiates about his divorce, 158, 159; his dominions put under interdict, 158; restores Evreux, 160; makes peace with John, 160, 176; makes John promise not to assist Otho, 158; allows the Jews to live in Paris, 162; grants privileges to the scholars of Paris, 163; Margarit offers to make him emperor, 164; renewal of negotiations for his divorce, 168, 169; takes back his Danish wife and obtains the relaxation of the interdict, 169; his children by the German wife, *ib.*
in 1201, renewal of the negotiations for the divorce, at Soissons, ii. 174; he imprisons his wife, 176; raises the sieges of places in Normandy, 182; entertains John at Paris, 184; measures taken for strengthening the peace, 190.
in 1202, takes Gournay and sends Arthur against John, ii. 196.
in 1204, conquers John's states in France, ii. 197; destroys the walls of Rouen, 197.
in 1210, persecutes the Jews, ii. 203.
in 1213, is charged by the pope with the liberation of England from John, ii. 209; prepares for an invasion, *ib.*; quarrels with the count of Flanders, 211; loses his fleet and burns the remains, 211; invades Flanders, *ib.*; expels Ferrand from Flanders, 215;
in 1214, loses great part of Poictou, *ib.*; wins the battle of Bouvines, 216; returns into France without attacking John, *ib.*; in 1215, John applies to him for aid against the barons in vain, 222; receives the malcontents, 225; is threatened with interdict in 1217 and summons his son home, 235; dies in 1223, 252; his transactions with Peter de Mauley mentioned, 260.
Philip of Swabia, son of Frederick I., ii. 118; opposes the election of Otho IV., *ib.*; loses towns in Germany to Otho, 139; defeated by him at Brunswick, 161; crowned king at Mentz, but quarrels with the people and is expelled, 164; loses his treasures, *ib.*; is killed, 200; Otho marries his daughter, 204.

Philip, son of Richard I., kills the viscount of Limoges, ii. 151.
of Poictiers. *See* Durham, bishops of.
Phocas, gives the Pantheon at Rome to pope Boniface, ii. 83.
Pie, William de la, abbot of Glastonbury, ii. 140, 143.
Pikenot, Robert, justice in 1176, i. 256; ambassador to France in 1177, 300.
Pilate, his island of Pandataria, i. 397.
Pin, Jordan del, receives Philip at Messina, i. 408; flies from Messina, 417.
Pinkeny, viscount of, dies at Acre, ii. 20.
Piombino, passed by Richard, i. 396.
Pipard, Gilbert, itinerant justice in 1176, i. 256.
Pipewell abbey, council at, in 1189, i. 377; the bishop of Whithern consecrated at, 378.
Pirou, R. de, a Templar, goes to Jerusalem, in 1177, i. 287.
Pirus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Pisa, Clement III. becomes pope at, i. 436.
Richard passes the port of, i. 396; the bishop of Evreux is sick at, *ib.*
Pisans, at the siege of Acre, i. 445; swear fealty to Richard, *ib.*; join in the attack, 451.
at Messina, quarrel with the Genoese, i. 429.
bankers, allowed to enter Acre, i. 453.
Plains, castle of, fortified by Richard, i. 461, ii. 15.
Planes, Roger de, John's justiciar, killed, ii. 5.
Pleshey, surrendered by Geoffrey Mandeville to Stephen, i. 171.
Plumpton, Gilbert, his narrow escape from hanging, i. 330.
Plutus, Alemannus, captured at Bouvines, ii. 216.
Poer, Robert le, his estates in Ireland, i. 290; his castle of Dunavet, 290; he is taken prisoner by the count of Toulouse, i. 356.
Ranulf, sheriff of Gloucestershire, killed by the Welsh, i. 318.
Poictiers, the younger Henry visits Richard at, i. 266; misfortunes of the vice-chancellor Adam at, 266, 267; Richard returns to, after a campaign in Gascony, 272.
William bishop of, dies in 1197, ii. 108.
Poictou, Richard duke of, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
subdued by Henry II., i. 230; pacified by Richard, 237; war in, 266; Richard sent to, in 1177, 308; quarrels of the barons of, with Richard in 1183, 320; invaded by Geoffrey, *ib.*; Richard ordered to give it to John, 327; to surrender it to his mother, 337; rising of the barons in 1188 in, 355; Richard refuses to compel them to make peace in 1194, ii. 64; visits in 1194, 65; and in 1199, 140; demanded for Arthur by Philip, 149; demanded by Otho, 160; John attempts to secure, in 1206, i. 198; he proposes an expedition to, ii. 212; he recovers part of, 215.
county of, given to Otho of Saxony, i. 427, ii. 98; relation of the counts of Toulouse to, through Johanna's settlement, ii. 166.
wine of, ii. 152.
Policor, taken by Henry VI., ii. 75.
Pomfret, archbishop Thurstan dies at, i. 23; castle of, restored to Roger de Lacy in 1199, ii. 147.
Pons Gentini, battle of Bouvines fought at, ii. 216.
Ponthieu, Robert of Belesme count of. *See* Shrewsbury.
John count of, joins the league against Henry II., i. 215.
William count of, marries Alesia, ii. 92; arrangements made for, in the peace of 1200, 178.
Pontigny, abbot of, mentioned, i. 198.
Pont l'Arche, negotiations at, in 1194, ii. 63.
Pontoise, the boundary of the Vexin, i. 292.

Pontorson, the earl of Chester catches his wife at, ii. 98.
Ponza, passed by Richard, i. 397.
Poppo, pope Damasus, i. 61.
Porchester, the younger Henry detained by weather at, i. 261.
Porrex I., king of Britain, i. 5.
II., king of Britain, i. 7.
Port, Adam du, banished, i. 208.
Portela, Portol, claimed by the king of Navarre, i. 283.
Portis, fortress of, to be demolished, ii. 177.
Portmort, marriage of Lewis and Blanche at, ii. 160.
Porto, Peter, bishop of, in 1111, i. 130; William of Pavia, bishop of, 302.
Peter, bishop of, favours the bishop of Ostia's claim to the papacy, ii. 114.
Portskeweth, Edward's house at, plundered by Caradoc, i. 78, 79.
Portsmouth, duke Robert's army lands at, in 1101, i. 120.
Henry II. lands at, in 1170, i. 187; and 1171, 202; sails from, in 1174, 231; lands at, in 1175, 238; the younger Henry goes thither on his way to Normandy in 1176, 261; great military gathering at, in 1177, 292; Henry II. spends some time in the neighbourhood, 300; sails from, 304.
he lands at, in 1181, i. 312; Richard comes to, in 1194, ii. 61; returns from Stanstede to, *ib.*; and from the Isle of Wight to, 62; sails from, *ib.*
John summons his forces in 1201 to, ii. 182; they assemble and are allowed to go home, 184; he embarks at, *ib.*; the bishops follow John in 1215 to, 223; mentioned, 269.
Portugal, survey of the coasts of, i. 402, 405; cities of, ii. 16.
Alfonso I. king of, forbids the legate to degrade the bishop of Coimbra, i. 350; took six cities from the Moors, *ib.*; his daughter married to the king of Leon, 351; his imprisonment and release, *ib.*; his city of Santarem, 399.
Sancho, king of, his sister married to the count of Flanders, i. 329; Silvia delivered up to him, 379; is attacked by the Moors, 399; defends himself by the aid of the crusaders, 400; returns to Lisbon, 401; makes a treaty with the commanders of the fleet, *ib.*; marries his daughter to the king of Leon, 427; loses the cities won in 1190, ii. 15; is attacked in 1195, 92.
Poterne, James de, sheriff of Yorkshire, seizes the manors of the see, ii. 169; is absolved from excommunication, 181.
Povier, king of Loegria, i. 5.
Preaux, William de, taken prisoner at Joppa, i. 461.
John de, negotiates the treaty of 1193, ii. 37.
Prudhoe, castle, besieged by William the Lion, i. 226.
Pruilli, castle of, taken by Henry II., i. 224.
Puiset, Hugh de. *See* Durham, bishops of.
Hugh de, count of Bar. *See* Bar.
Henry de, son of the bishop, the king gives him the manor of Witton, i. 288; is hostage for his father, 393; gave Hersewell to the monks of Durham, ii. 118; sent by John to Scotland, 184.
Bouchard de, treasurer of York, his promotion opposed by Geoffrey, i. 378; is archdeacon of Durham, 379; cannot obtain installation at York, *ib.*; obtains his stall from Geoffrey, 387; sides with the dean against him, 389; is excommunicated, 390; hinders Geoffrey's consecration, 423; dies in 1196, ii. 103; disposal of his preferments, *ib.*

Pumerai, Jollanus de la, declines the offer of the kingdom of Limerick, i. 289, 295.
Jollanus, brother of Henry de la, abjures the realm, ii. 60.
Henry de la, fortifies S. Michael's Mount against Richard, but dies of fright, ii. 52.
Puy, Adhemar, bishop of, goes on the first crusade, i. 113.

Q.

Quency, Saer de, divides the earldom of Leicester, becomes earl of Winchester, ii. 197; takes charge of Cambridge and Huntingdonshire in 1215, 224; opposes the king, 225; sent to France for Lewis, 226; his castle of Mountsorel besieged, 236; taken at Lincoln, 237; dies at Damietta, 246.
Quittebeuf, not to be fortified by the peace of 1200, surrendered by Philip to John, ii. 176, 177.

R.

Ragenaldus, of Waterford, i. 202.
Ragusa, Richard hires ships to go to, and lands at Zara, near, ii. 21.
Bernard, archbishop of, at John's coronation, ii. 146; at the Lincoln homage, 171.
Raineville, John de, a Templar, messenger from France to Henry II., i. 300.
Ralph, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
bishop of Chichester. *See* Chichester.
bishop of Rochester. *See* Rochester.
archdeacon of the West Riding, goes to Rome to complain of archbishop Geoffrey, and dies on his way home, ii. 77.
Ralph—*cont.*
earl of Herefordshire, nephew of Edward the Confessor, i. 65; assists him against Godwin, *ib.*; defeated by Griffith and Alfgar, 70; dies in 1057 and is buried at Peterborough, 73.
a bishop, and abbot of Abingdon, i. 64; dies, 66.
earl of East Anglia, marries the daughter of William Fitz Osbern, i. 90; rebels and is defeated by Odo of Bayeux, 91; flies to Normandy, *ib.*; his castle of Dol besieged, 92.
Rames, Ramlah, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Ramiri, P., a knight of Navarre, i. 278.
S., has charge of Funes, i. 278.
Ramsbury, bishops of (Wiltshire, Salisbury):
Brihtwold, dies in 1045, i. 60.
Herman, a Lorrainer, succeeds in 1045, i. 60; goes to Rome in 1050, 64; proposes to transfer his see to Malmesbury, 71; retires to S. Bertin's, *ib.*; Aldred administers the see during his retirement, 73; he returns, *ib.*; joins in the consecration of Lanfranc, 87; removes the see of Sherborne to Salisbury, *ib.*
See Salisbury.
Ramsey, abbey of:
bishop Alword retires to, i. 59; seized by Geoffrey Mandeville, 171; miracle at, 172.
abbots of. *See* Aldwin, Wulfsy.
abbey vacant in 1213, ii. 213; Richard abbot of Selby translated to, 216; bishop Silvester of Worcester dies at, 240.
Richard, a monk of, becomes abbot of Selby, ii. 250.
Rancon, Geoffrey of, lord of Pons; attacks Richard in 1188, i. 355; Richard ravages his territories in 1194, ii. 65, 66.
Ranulf, bishop of Durham. *See* Durham.
the chancellor of Henry I., dies, i. 142.
Raphoe, bishop of, i. 203.

Ratisbon, bishop of, his adventure on pilgrimage, i. 77.
Henry IV. marches to, i. 93; Frederick I. sets out on crusade from, 362.
Ravendale (Revedala), conference between Hugh de Puiset and the king of Scots at, i. 225.
Ravenna, Wibert of, antipope. *See* Wibert.
Ravensveart, a house-carl of Tostig, killed at York, i. 79.
Reading, visited by the Danes in 1006, i. 29; abbey of, 61; Henry I. buried at, 157; Reginald of Cornwall buried at, 255; Henry II. visits, 244; he keeps Palm Sunday 1177 at, 286; he holds a council at, in 1184, 331; and meets the patriarch Heraclius at, 334; Longchamp summoned to meet the barons at, ii. 4; council at, in 1206, 198; abbey of, vacant in 1213, 213; bishops consecrated at, 218.
Hugh, abbot of, made archbishop of Rouen, i. 152; Ansger succeeds, 153.
abbot of, ordered to execute the letter of excommunication against the barons in 1215, ii. 223.
Redecok (Radicofani), in Tuscany, restored to the pope in 1197, ii. 113.
Redvers, Richard de, dies in 1107, i. 126.
Baldwin de, holds Exeter against Stephen, but is obliged to surrender, and loses the Isle of Wight, i. 158.
Baldwin de, marriage of his widow, i. 371.
William de, earl of the Isle of Wight, ii. 59.
Redwyn, king of Britain, i. 7.
Regan, daughter of Leyr, i. 5.
Reginald, earl of Cornwall. *See* Cornwall.
Reginus, king of Britain, i. 7.
Reignelm, bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
Remigius, bishop of Lincoln. *See* Lincoln.
Renfrew, Walter Fitz Alan, lord of, ii. 173.
Rennes, Peter of Dinan becomes bishop of, ii. 148.
Reymund de Druua, his service given to William Fitz Aldelm, i. 290.
Reyner, vice-sheriff of Yorkshire, i. 331.
Reyns, Alberic de, governor of Joppa, ii. 19.
Rheims, council held by Leo IX. at, i. 64; another held by Calixtus II. at, 138.
archbishops of:
Henry, dies, i. 268.
William of Champagne. *See* William.
archbishop of, at the translation of S. Thomas, ii. 245; at the council of Lyons in 1225, 276.
conduct of the legate Otto at, ii. 278.
Rhodes, Richard lands in, i. 438; Philip arrives at, ii. 10; conquered by Robert Wiscard, 11.
Rhone, river, the bridge over, breaks down, i. 394.
Rhuddlan, Harold marches in 1063 from Gloucester to, i. 77; Henry II. advances in 1157 to, 184.
Riccall, Tostig and Harold Hardrada land at, i. 81.
Richard II. duke of Normandy, brother of queen Emma, i. 35; receives his sister and her family, *ib.*; dies in 1026, 47.
Richard III. duke of Normandy, succeeds in 1026, and dies the same year, i. 47.
son of William I., killed in the New Forest, i. 118.
son of duke Robert, killed in the New Forest, i. 118.
son of Henry I., lost at sea, i. 139.
chancellor of Maurienne, i. 212.
Richard, son of Scrob, flies with the Normans in 1052, i. 68; devastates the lands of Eadric the Wild, 83.
abbot of Ely, deprived in 1102, i. 122; goes to Rome with Anselm, dies in 1107, *ib.*

Richard, bishop of London. *See* London.
bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
Richard I., son of Henry II. and Eleanor, born, i. 184; receives his mother's lands on the division of Henry's territories in 1170, 189; receives the homage of the count of Toulouse, 209; joins in the rebellion against his father, 213; repents and submits, 233; makes peace, 233–235; goes in 1175 into Poictou to reduce the rebels, 237; takes Châtillon on the Dordogne, 251; keeps Easter 1176 at Winchester with his father, 262; goes to Normandy, thence to Poictou, and reduces the viscounts of Limoges, Ventadour, Chabanays, and Angoulême, *ib.*; and the count of Angoulême, *ib.*; keeps Christmas 1176 at Bourdeaux, 272; besieges Dax, and takes it; takes Bayonne, and marches to the confines of Spain, *ib.*; measures taken by the legate to enforce his marriage, 304; opposition of Henry II. to this, *ib.*; ordered by Henry II. to do homage to his brother Henry in 1183, 320; hesitates about obeying and quarrels with his brother, *ib.*; fortifies himself in Poictou, and obtains help from his father, *ib.*; makes peace with Geoffrey, 326; refuses to receive John's homage for Poictou, 327; in 1184 accepts Baldwin as archbishop of Canterbury, and confirms the peace with his brothers, 332; proposal of marriage for him with a daughter of the emperor, *ib.*; hindered by her death, 333; is in arms against his father in 1185, 336; surrenders Poictou to his mother, 337; project of his marriage with Alesia revived, 339; is besieged by Philip in Châteauroux in 1187, 343; strikes up a sudden friendship with him against the wish of his father, 344; returns to
Richard I.—*cont.*
his duty, *ib.*; Philip insists on his marrying Alesia in 1188, 351; witnesses the assize of the Saladin tithe, 354; is attacked by the counts of Toulouse and Angoulême and the rest of his vassals, 355; takes Peter Seillun, *ib.*; invades Toulouse, 356; anger of Philip against him, 357; marches into Berri, *ib.*; takes William des Barres prisoner, 358; resigns his conquests in Toulouse, 359; does homage to Philip and offends his father, 361; Philip restores Châteauroux to him, *ib.*; is anathematized by the bishop of Albano, *ib.*; in 1189 conspires with Philip to attack Henry again, 364; meets him at la Ferté Bernard, *ib.*; and again between Tours and Azai, 367; terms of peace with him, *ib.*; meets his father's corpse, and blood flows from it, 368; attends the funeral, *ib.*
imprisons Stephen de Turonis, i. 369; is invested as duke of Normandy, *ib.*; meets Philip and makes alliance with him, *ib.*; restores the earl of Leicester, 370; comes to England. *ib.*; provides for John, 371; seizes the treasures of Geoffrey Ridel, 372; and is crowned, 373–375; punishes the rioters at the coronation, 376; receives the fealty of his barons, *ib.*; grants Sadberge to the see of Durham, *ib.*; sells Northumberland to Hugh de Puiset, 377; holds a council at Pipewell and fills up vacant sees and abbeys, *ib.*; nominates justices, 378; obtains the power of remitting vows of crusaders, 379; sells church lands to their owners, 379, 380; holds a council at London, 380; engages to start on crusade, 381; at Canterbury reconciles the archbishop with the monks of Canterbury, 383; sells the Scottish homages, 384, 385;

Richard I.—*cont.*
restores his mother's dower, 386; goes to Dover, *ib.*; and crosses to Calais, 387; reappoints justices, 388; keeps Christmas 1189 at Bur, 389; in 1190 renews his agreement with Philip to start at Midsummer, *ib.*; renews the appointment of justices, 390; obtains the legation for Longchamp, 391; goes into Gascony and takes the castle of William de Chisi, 393; goes to Chinon and issues regulations for his fleet, 393, 394; meets Philip at Vezelai and accompanies him to Lyons, 394; goes to Marseilles, *ib.*; restores Sadberge to Hugh de Puiset, 395; his diary from Marseilles to Salerno, 395–398; from Salerno to Messina, 408, 409; arrives at Messina, *ib.*; sends for his sister Johanna, 410; lodges her at la Bagnara, *ib.*; tries to make peace between his men and the citizens, in vain, 410, 411; takes Messina, 412; his agreement with Philip, *ib.*, 413; claims Johanna's dowry from Tancred, 414; negotiations and treaty with him, 415–417; reports this to the pope, *ib.*; fortifies Mategriffun, 417; his charter of wreck, 418; repairs his ships at Messina, 421; his penitence, 423; his interview with abbot Joachim, 423–426; gives the county of York to his nephew Otho, 426; keeps Christmas 1190 at Messina, 429; quells a tumult among the sailors, *ib.*
in 1191, quarrels with William des Barres, i. 430; forgives him, 431; his extravagance, *ib.*; sends to meet his mother and Berengaria, *ib.*; visits king Tancred at Catania, 432; discovers the treachery of Philip and finally breaks off the engagement to Alesia, 434; treaty with Philip, *ib.*; demolishes Mategriffun, 438; leaves Messina and goes to Cyprus, *ib.*; attacks and conquers the emperor Isaac, 439–442; marries Berengaria, 442; captures the emperor, 443; legislates for Cyprus, *ib.*; captures the great ship of Saladin, 444; arrives at Acre and sets up his engines, 445; is sick, *ib.*; disputes with Philip about Cyprus, 446; is contemned by the French, 448; attacks Acre on July 6, 449; accepts the surrender, 451; divides Acre with Philip, 452; tries to keep Philip from going home, 453; makes Philip swear peace on his departure, 455; divides the prisoners, *ib.*; sends for Philip's prisoners from Tyre, 456; quits Acre, *ib.*; beheads his prisoners, 457; crosses the river of Acre and marches towards Joppa, *ib.*; wins the battle of Arsouf, 458; writes an account of the battle, 458–461; comes to Joppa, has a narrow escape from capture and repairs the fortresses, 461; Longchamp's conduct and fall reported to, ii. 9; determines to stay in Palestine, *ib.*; Philip plots against him at Rome, 13; and defames him in France, 14; gives Joppa to Geoffrey of Lusignan, 15; deserted by the French, 15; keeps Christmas at Latroon, 17.
in 1192, fortifies other places, takes Darum and gives it to Henry of Champagne, 18; gives Cyprus to Guy of Lusignan, 19; goes to Acre and returns to Ascalon, 18, 19; advances as far as Beitnuba, 19; captures the great caravan, *ib.*; relieves Joppa, 20; makes a truce with Saladin, *ib.*; his journey homewards, 21; he is taken prisoner at Vienna, *ib.*
in 1193, is delivered to the emperor, ii. 24; account of his capture sent to Philip by Henry VI., *ib.*; the news reaches England, 25; two

Richard I.—*cont.*
abbots sent to find him, meet him at Ochsenfurth, *ib.*; he argues his case with the emperor and settles his ransom, *ib.*; resigns his kingdom to the emperor and receives it back as a fief, 26; letter of, to his mother, 30; measures taken for raising the ransom, 32; letter of the duke of Venice to, 34; has an interview with the emperor at Worms, 35; treaty of peace with him, 35–37; makes ecclesiastical appointments, 40; Henry VI. gives him the kingdom of Provence, 43; sends for his mother and ministers, 44; day fixed for his coronation and release, 45; keeps Christmas at Speyer, 46.
in 1194, Philip and John conspire to prolong his captivity, ii. 46; he engages the imperial counsellors on his side, 48; they urge the emperor to release him, *ib.*; he is released, 49; gives pensions to his German friends, 49, 50; goes to England by Cologne and Antwerp, and lands at Sandwich, 50; arrives at Nottingham, 52; presses the siege, 53; receives the bishop of Durham, *ib.*; takes Nottingham, *ib.*; hunts in Sherwood, 54; holds a great council at Nottingham, 54–56; goes to Clipston, Southwell, Malton, and Geddington, 56; to Northampton, *ib.*; refuses to give Northumberland to William the Lion, *ib.*; comes to Woodstock, and thence to Winchester, 58; is recrowned, 59; again refuses to give Northumberland to William, 60; goes to Waltham, Portsmouth, and Stansted, sails from Portsmouth to Barfleur, 61, 62; drives Philip from Verneuil, 62; takes Loches, 63; refuses to compel the barons of Poictou to peace, 64; prepares for battle with Philip, who flies, 65; reduces

Richard I.—*cont.*
Poictou and reports his victories to the archbishop, 65, 66; makes a truce with Philip, 66, 67; his treatment of the bishop of Durham, 68; annuls the grants under his old seal, 74; returns to Anjou, *ib.*; gives licence for tournaments, *ib.*; orders the restitution of archbishop Geoffrey, 77; annuls grants made by him as chancellor, 79; keeps Christmas at Rouen, 80.
in 1195, pardons John, ii. 84; and Hugh of Nunant, *ib.*; is solemnly warned by a hermit, and does penance, 85, 86; restores the church plate offered for his ransom, 86; asks for the legation for the archbishop of Canterbury, 87; receives a crown from the emperor, 90; meets Philip at Vaudreuil, 91; invades France, *ib.*; arranges terms of peace, *ib.*; meets Philip at Verneuil, 92; makes a truce over Christmas, 93; keeps Christmas at Poictiers, 94, 95; makes an agreement with the king of Scots about the marriage of Otho, 95.
in 1196, meets Philip at Louviers, and agrees on terms of peace, ii. 96; seizes the estates of the sureties on Philip's resumption of hostilities, 97; has a visit from William Fitz Osbert, *ib.*; invades Brittany, 98; forbids archbishop Geoffrey to resume the government of the diocese, 99; treats with archbishop Hubert about the resignation of the justiciarship, 102; fortifies the isle of Andely, 103; fines Robert de Ros, and hangs William del Espinai, *ib.*; keeps Christmas at Bur, 105.
in 1197, sends envoys to Rome to procure the relaxation of the interdict, ii. 105; arranges matters with the archbishop of Rouen, 106; burns S. Valery, 107; makes alliance with the French barons against

Richard I.—*cont.*
Philip II., *ib.*; invades Auvergne, *ib.*; makes a truce for three years, 108; his assize of measures, 114, 115; keeps Christmas at Rouen, 116.
in 1198, is summoned to elect an emperor, and sends representatives, ii. 117; obtains the election of Otho, *ib.*; asks for a force of knights to fight in France, 118; is refused by Hugh of Lincoln, *ib.*; exacts a carucage of five shillings on the carucate, 121; appoints Geoffrey Fitz Peter justiciar, 122; hears archbishop Geoffrey's cause at Andely, 123; his war with Philip renewed, 125; makes new alliances, *ib.*; fights Philip near Gameges, and wins a great victory, 125; summary of his successes, 126, 127; treats for peace, 128; exacts carucage from the regular clergy, 133; makes a truce with Philip over Christmas, 135; story of his interview with Fulk of Neuilly, 136, 137; fortifies Buttevant, 138; keeps Christmas at Domfront, 139.
in 1199, meets Philip on the Seine, ii. 139; makes a truce for five years, which is immediately broken, *ib.*; agrees on a form of peace, 140; is fully reconciled with John, *ib.*; goes into the Limousin to seize the treasure discovered there, and besieges Chaluz, 141; is wounded by Bertram of Gurdun, *ib.*; prepares for death, 142; pardons Bertram, *ib.*; dies April 6, *ib.*; verses on him, *ib.*; his body buried at Fontevraud, his heart at Rouen, and his intestines at Charroux, i. 17, ii. 142.
Richard, son of John, born in 1208, ii. 200.
Richmond, archdeacons of. *See* Chimely, Eustace, bishop of Ely, Honorius, Roger of S. Edmunds.
Richmondshire, itinerant justices in 1176 in, i. 256.
Rideford, Gerard, master of the Templars, killed, i. 382.
Ridel, Geoffrey, lost in the White Ship, i. 139.
Geoffrey, bishop of Ely. *See* Ely.
Stephen, chancellor to John as earl of Mortain, excommunicated on account of Longchamp, ii. 8.
Rievaulx, Silvanus, abbot of, sent to arrange terms between the elect of S. Andrews and William the Lion in 1182, i. 318.
Rigmere, battle at, in 1010, i. 32.
Rinoso, P. de, ambassador from the Spanish kings, i. 281.
Ripa, portus, i. 11.
Ripon, Roger of, brings forged letters and poison from Rome for Simon of Apulia, ii. 104.
Ripon, the only manor left to Geoffrey in 1194, ii. 69; he gives the deanery of York to his brother at, 41.
Rithwalanus. *See* Wales.
Rivail, king of Britain, i. 5.
Robec, the mill of, ii. 106, 166.
Robert, archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
bishop of Coventry. *See* Lichfield.
bishop of Lincoln. *See* Lincoln.
bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
abbot of S. Edmunds, deprived in 1102, i. 122; dies in 1107, 126.
Losinga, father of Herbert Losinga, an abbot, i. 109.
the deacon, flies with the Normans in 1052, i. 68.
lord of Baketun, fortifies his castle against Stephen, i. 158.
I., duke of Normandy, succeeds Richard in 1026, i. 47; dies in 1035, 53; was father of William the Conqueror, *ib.*
II., duke of Normandy, son of William the Conqueror, rebels against his father, with the aid of Philip of France, in 1077, i. 92; unhorses and wounds his father at Gerberoi,

Robert II., duke of Normandy—*cont.*
93; succeeds to Normandy by his father's bequest, 99; divides his father's treasures for masses for his soul, and releases Ulf and Duncan, 100; is supported by the English barons against William Rufus, *ib.*; is attacked by William in 1090, 104; yields to him the county of Eu in 1091, *ib.*; joins him in besieging Mount S. Michael, 105; and in his expedition to Scotland, *ib.*; makes terms between him and Malcolm, *ib.*; deserted by William of Eu, 109; demands the execution of the treaty with William Rufus, *ib.*; calls France to his aid, 110; goes on the first crusade, 113; pledges Normandy to William Rufus, *ib.*; returns home with his wife, 119; collects a force for the invasion of England at Treport, *ib.*; lands at Portsmouth and encamps near Winchester, makes peace with Henry I., 120; visits him in England in 1103, 122; his subjects revolt to Henry I., 123; he visits him at Northampton in 1106, and renews his quarrel, 124; is defeated and taken prisoner at Tenchebrai, *ib.*; sent to England, 125.

Robert, son of Henry I., earl of Gloucester, heads the rebellion against Stephen in 1141, i. 165; holds Bristol against him, 160; joins the earl of Chester at Lincoln in 1141, 165; his speech before the battle, *ib.*; defeats Stephen there, 165–169; besieges Winchester in company with the empress, 170; is captured, but exchanged for Stephen, *ib.*; is defeated by Stephen near Farringdon, 172.

Robert, master of the schools at York, lost at sea, i. 308.
chaplain of Richard, sent to York, ii. 120.
provost of Beverley. *See* Beverley.
count of Dreux. *See* Dreux.

Robertsbridge, abbot of, sent in search of Richard, ii. 25; finds him, *ib.*; returns, 28.

Roche Corbon, taken by Philip in 1189, i. 366.

Roches, les, taken by Richard, i. 358.

Roches, Peter de. *See* Winchester.

Roches, William des, negotiates a truce for Richard in 1193, ii. 37; carries off Arthur from Philip's custody in 1199, 150; surrenders le Mans to John, *ib.*

Rochester, castle, fortified by Odo against William Rufus, i. 101; promised by the younger Henry to the count of Flanders, 214; Langton refuses to deliver it to John, ii. 225; besieged by John, 226; taken, 227, 228.
city, burnt, i. 152.
cathedral, dedicated, i. 153.
see of, the patronage granted to the archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 217.
bishops of:
Godwin, taken prisoner by the Danes in 1011, i. 33.
Siward, i. 88.
Arnostus, a monk of Bec, i. 88.
Gundulf, i. 88; at the council of London in 1102, 121; at the consecration of Gloucester, 117; dies in 1108, 127.
Ralph. *See* Canterbury.
Arnulf, abbot of Peterborough, elected in 1114, i. 134; consecrated in 1115, 135; assists at the consecration of the bishop of Hereford, 140; and of Norwich, 141; dies in 1124, 143.
John, archdeacon of Canterbury, appointed in 1125, i. 144; is at the council of London in 1127, 148; assists at the consecration of the bishop of London, 151; at the dedication of Canterbury, 152.
Walter, assists at the coronation of the younger Henry, i. 189; at the council of Westminster in 1175, 239; at Woodstock the same year,

Rochester, bishops of—*cont.*
246; at London in 1177, 280; dies in 1182, 319.
Walram, archdeacon of Bayeux, succeeds, i. 319; excommunicates the disturbers of the peace in 1183, 324; dies in 1184, 332.
Gilbert Glanvill, consecrated in 1185, i. 337; preaches at the council of Geddington, 355; comes to England in 1189, 371; mediates between John and Longchamp, 462; is summoned by Richard to Germany, ii. 33; is at John's coronation, 146; and at the Lincoln homage, 171; dies in 1214, 217.
Benedict bishop of, assists at the consecration of the bishop of London, ii. 249.
Rocheta, part of the Maurienne settlement, i. 209.
Rockingham castle, given up by John in 1215, ii. 221; held against Henry III. in 1220, 245; taken, *ib.*
Roderici, Petrus, i. 278.
Roderick, king of Connaught. *See* Connaught.
Roderick Machdunlef killed, ii. 181.
Roger, archbishop of York. *See* York.
bishop of Salisbury. *See* Salisbury.
the larderer, nominated to the see of Hereford, dies, i. 122.
Pauper, son of the bishop of Salisbury, arrested and carried to Devizes, i. 163.
a Templar, made almoner to Henry II. in 1177, i. 293.
Rolleston, Roger, dean of Lincoln, a judge delegate in the Lambeth case, ii. 167; has a vision of S. Hugh after his death, 174; dies in 1223, 252.
Rom, earl of the Magasætas, sent by Hardicanute to chastise Worcester, i. 57.
Romanus, cardinal, his proceedings in 1225, ii. 276–279.
Rome, sacked by Brennus, i. 6; visited by Ethelnoth in 1022, 47; by Elfric, *ib.*; by Canute, 49; by Tostig and
Rome—*cont.*
Aldred, 74; by Lanfranc and Thomas, 88; by S. Anselm, 114; council in 1099 at, 116; Anselm again visits in 1103, 122; council at, in 1111, 129; in 1112, 131; archbishop Ralph goes to, in 1116, 136; archbishop William goes to, 142; again in 1125, 147; the bishops of London and Llandaff go to, 154; archbishop Theobald goes to, 171; Alexander of Lincoln goes to, 172.
taken by Henry IV. in 1080, i. 96; in 1085, *ib.*; by Henry V. in 1111, 128; visited by him in 1118, 137.
visit of Henry II.'s agents to, i. 199–201; prior Honorius dies at, 363; Richard passes near, on his way to Sicily, 396; queen Eleanor visits, 435; coronation of Henry VI. at, 436; quarrel of, with Tusculum, 436–438; Philip II. visits, ii. 13; stay of Berengaria at, 45; changes in the municipal government of, 76.
coronation of Frederick II. at, ii. 247.
appeals to; against Henry of Winchester, i. 176; of Becket against the archbishop of York, 190, 191; of the two archbishops against each other in 1176, 260, 261; of the Scottish bishops, *see* S. Andrews; of Honorius, 363; against archbishop Geoffrey, *see* York; of William Longchamp, *see* Ely; of the archbishop of Rouen against Philip, ii. 96; of Richard against the archbishop of Rouen, 105; of the king of Denmark against Philip, *see* Philip.
Romney, miracle of Eustace of Flay at, ii. 165.
Romsey, Christina, a nun at, i. 99.
Roquemadour, pilgrimage of Henry II. to, i. 190; plundered by the younger Henry, 324.
Ros, in Wales, planted by Henry I. with Flemings, i. 131.
Ros, Peter de, archdeacon of Carlisle, dies in 1196, ii. 103.

Ros—*cont.*
Robert de, has charge of Hugh of Chaumont, ii. 183; is fined for allowing him to escape, *ib.*
Rosamond, removal of her remains from the church of Godstow, ii. 14.
Ross, see of, in Ireland, i. 203.
Ross, in Scotland, see at Rosmarkin, ii. 83.
Gregory, bishop of, dies in 1195, ii. 83.
Reginald Macer, a monk of Melrose, succeeds in 1195, ii. 83; conducts Harold Mac Madit to the Scottish court, 101.
legend of S. Boniface of, ii. 83.
Rotrou, archbishop of Rouen. *See* Rouen.
Rouen, Robert takes up his position at, in 1094, i. 109; the body of Henry I. brought to, 156; Henry II. goes to, after the rout of Breteuil, 220; besieged by Lewis VII. in 1174, 231; he is forced to retire before Henry, 231, 232; Henry is there on Ash Wednesday 1175, 237; his son Henry meets him at, *ib.*; father and son together at, in 1177, 304; Henry receives the surrender of Yvry at, 305; the younger Henry buried at, 326; Richard invested with the duchy of Normandy at, 369; William Mandeville dies at, 380; Alesia kept in the tower at, ii. 21; Philip attempts to get possession of, in 1193, 29; Fontaines taken by Philip, near, 63; the Norman barons assemble at, *ib.*; Richard keeps Christmas 1197 at, 116; arrival of messengers from Germany at, *ib.*; John is invested as duke at, 144; burnt in 1200, 160; Philip pulls down the castle and walls of, 197.
Geoffrey archbishop of, dies in 1128, i. 152.
Hugh abbot of Reading, succeeds, i. 152.
Rotrou, archbishop of, consoles Henry II. on the death of Becket, i. 194; ordered to put Henry II.'s French dominions under interdict, 196; attends a council at Sens, 198; is unable to go to Rome for the king, 199; crowns the younger king at Winchester, 205; receives the oath of Henry II. at Avranches, 206; is present at the reconciliation in 1175, 237; chosen to arbitrate between the archbishops of Canterbury and York, 254; accompanies the Sicilian envoys in 1176, 262; goes to Sicily, 263; goes as far as S. Gilles, 265; is ambassador to France in 1177, 292; has a legacy from Roger of York, 316; dies in 1183, 329.
Walter of Coutances, archdeacon of Oxford, ambassador to Flanders in 1177, i. 275; to France, 292, 296; vice-chancellor, 292; returns to Henry at Woodstock, 298; consecrated to the see of Lincoln at Angers, 326; translated to Rouen, 329; sent to make a truce with Philip in 1186, 341; invests Richard as duke of Normandy, 369; arrives in England, 370; is at Richard's coronation, 373; is at the council of Pipewell, 377; returns to Normandy, 387; joins Richard at Pisa, 396; legislates for the crusaders at Messina, 412; hears abbot Joachim, 426; witnesses Richard's charter of wreck, 419; is sent from Messina as justiciar, 432; takes part in the treaty of Winchester, 462; receives the surrender of Nottingham and Tickhill, 462; and takes charge of Wallingford, 463; summons Longchamp to Reading, ii. 4; produces his commission, is received as justiciar, and confirms the communa of London, 5, 6; receives the surrender of Longchamp's castles, 6; orders him to be treated as excommunicate, *ib.*; is excommunicated by Longchamp, 7; who calls

Rouen, archbishop of—*cont.*
him Pilate, 8; seizes the estates of the see of Ely, 9; sends the bishop of Durham to encounter the legates in Normandy, 23; sends to seek for Richard in Germany, 25; takes measures against John, 27; makes a truce with him, 29; receives Longchamp at S. Alban's, 33; his seal set on the ransom, *ib.*; exacts large sums for the purpose, 43; summoned by Richard to Germany, 44; susperseded as justiciar, *ib.*; is with the king at Mentz, 48; a hostage for him, *ib.*; attends Richard at Pont l'Arche, 63; and at Vaudreuil, 64; ransoms his lands from Philip, 82; Philip demands Andely of, 96; and his fealty, *ib.*; appeals to the pope, *ib.*; forbids Richard to fortify Andely, 103; interdicts Normandy, *ib.*; refuses to relax the interdict, 105; states his case at Rome, 105, 106; consents to receive compensation, 106; his agreement with Richard, *ib.*; invests John as duke of Normandy, 144; buys a confirmation of the exchange of Andely, 166.
archbishop of, at the council of Lyons in 1225, ii. 276.
Rousillon, promised to John with the heiress of Maurienne, i. 209, 212.
Rowelle, Gerard, appeals against the appointment of Peter of Dinan as archdeacon of the West Riding, ii. 88.
Roxburgh, held by William the Lion against Henry II. in 1173, i. 216; surrendered at Falaise, 249; committed to William Stuteville, 288; restored to Scotland in 1189, ii. 384.
Rudac, king of Britain, i. 5.
Rudolf of Swabia, anti-Cæsar to Henry IV., i. 93, 96.
Rufus, William, itinerant justice in 1176, i. 256.
Rufus—*cont.*
Wido, dean of Waltham, resigns his deanery, i. 274; Henry accepts the resignation, *ib.*; is present at the removal of the canons, 296.
Rumo, king of Britain, i. 7.
Rustac, Fulk, Richard sails from Piombino to Porto Ercole in the galley of, i. 396.
Ruteni, Haldius duke of the, i. 11.
Rutland, Peter the forester of, ii. 56.

S.

S. Agatha, miracle of, i. 407, 408. *See* Catania.
S. Christina, in Tuscany, recovered by the pope, ii. 113.
S. Eufemia, in Italy, passed by Richard, i. 408.
S. Lucia, in Italy, passed by Richard, i. 408.
S. Maria des Fosses, visited by Richard, i. 408.
S. Maria de Pulsano, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
S. Maura, Hugh and William de, rebel in 1173, i. 216.
S. Mere l'Eglise, William of. *See* London, bishops of.
S. Osyth's, four canons of, sent to Waltham, i. 296.
William, canon of, made archbishop of Canterbury, i. 142.
S. Abraham, in Palestine, i. 346.
S. Alban's, town of, Stephen arrests Geoffrey Mandeville at, i. 171; discovery of the relics of S. Amphibalus at, 297; meeting of the barons to provide Richard's ransom, at, ii. 33.
Paul, abbot of, dies in 1093, i. 108.
Robert of, an apostate Templar, invades Palestine, but is repulsed by the garrison of Jerusalem, i. 338.

S. Andrew's, bishops of:
Fodok, visits archbishop Thomas of York, i. 23.
Turgot, consecrated in 1109, i. 28;
Robert consecrated in 1128, i. 150, 151.
Richard, dies in 1159, i. 185.
Richard, attends Henry II. at York and admits the dependence of the Scottish church, i. 247; attends at Northampton in 1176, 259.
John Scott, elected to the see; allowed to return from banishment, i. 311; consents to be translated to Dunkeld, but the pope refuses leave, 312; excommunicates the king's friends, 315; his relations banished, *ib.*; the king applies to Lucius III. to depose him, 316; legates sent to make peace, 318; but Hugh refuses to consent, 319; his letters said to be forged, *ib.*; appears before the pope at Velletri, 327; transferred by him to Dunkeld, *ib.*; Urban III. rehears the case in 1186, 341; he goes to Rome, *ib.*
Hugh, nominated by the king, and opposed to John; refuses to resign his claim, 319; appears at Velletri, 327; confirmed in possession of the see, *ib.*; summoned to Rome by Urban III., 341; fails to go, and is excommunicated, *ib.*
Roger Beaumont, brother of the earl of Leicester, consecrated in 1198, ii. 113; sent by John to William the Lion, 147.
S. Asaph, see of, ii. 156.
Godfrey, bishop of, compelled to resign his see, i. 244.
Adam, bishop of, consecrated in 1176, i. 244; attends the council of London in 1177, 280; is at Geddington and Windsor with the king, 287; at Amesbury, 290.
S. Bertin, Herman bishop of Ramsbury retires to, i. 71.
S. Botolf, fair of, ii. 188.
S. Brandan, Cantordis abbot of, i. 252.
S. Clair, sur Epte, taken by William Mandeville, i. 358.
S. Cleric, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
in Tuscany, recovered by the pope, ii. 113.
S. David's, bishops of:
S. David, bishop of Menevia, ii. 155.
S. Sampson, ii. 155.
Wilfrid, dies in 1115, i. 134, ii. 156.
Bernard, chancellor to the queen, consecrated in 1115, i. 135, ii. 156; goes to the council at Rheims, i. 138; assists at the consecration of the bishop of Hereford, 140; of the bishops of Coventry and Norwich, 141; goes to Rome, 142; assists to consecrate the bishop of Chichester, 144; at the council of Westminster in 1127, 148; at the dedication of Canterbury, 152; has a dispute with Llandaff, 153; revives the claim of his see to independence, ii. 155–157; letter of Eugenius III. to, 156.
David, succeeds Bernard, ii. 156; attends the council of London in 1175, i. 239; dies, 268.
Peter, prior of Wenlock, appointed in 1176, i. 268; attends the council of 1177, 280; makes a profession of obedience to the archbishop, 284; dies in 1198, ii. 138.
Giraldus Cambrensis, elected after Peter's death, ii. 155; revives the claims of his see, *ib.*; the archbishop is ordered to consecrate him, 157.
S. Denys, abbot of, i. 198.
abbot of, surety of the peace of 1196, ii. 97.
S. Edmund's, monastery and town of, threatened by Swein in 1014, i. 36; church dedicated in 1032, 52.
standard of, carried before the king's army at the battle of Forneham, i. 223; Richard sends the royal standard of Cyprus to, 440.

S. Edmund's—*cont.*
abbots of:
Baldwin, dies in 1097, i. 114.
Robert, abbot in 1102, i. 122.
Anselm, abbot of, sent to Rome, i. 142.
Sampson, buys the manor of Mildenhall, i. 380; is a judge delegate in the case of the monks of Canterbury, ii. 167; dies, 204; vacant in 1213, 213.
S. Edmund's, Adam of, a clerk of John, arrested by the mayor of London, ii. 50, 51.
Roger of, named archdeacon of Richmond by Richard, ii. 124; installed, *ib.*; his officials expelled after the king's death, 145.
S. Elias, chapel of, near Jerusalem, visited by Richard, ii. 19.
S. Felice, i. 404.
S. Florence, in Anjou, i. 230.
S. George, Lydda, i. 346; bishop of, dies at Acre, 427.
arm of, i. 403.
S. German of Selby. *See* Selby.
S. German des Pres, i. 198.
S. Gilles on the Rhone, i. 265, 266, ii. 43.
counts of. *See* Toulouse.
S. Hilary, Hasculf of, taken prisoner at Dol, i. 221.
S. Honoratus, island of, i. 396.
S. James. *See* Compostella, Leon.
S. Jean d'Angeli, Philip of Poictiers at, ii. 182.
S. John of Lama, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
S. Lazarus, relics of, at Marseilles, i. 405.
S. Leger in Iveline, trial of Philip's divorce at, ii. 168.
S. Leonard, near Grandmont, i. 190.
S. Matthew de Finibus Terræ, i. 398.
S. Megrin, battle near, i. 265.
S. Mevenni, abbey of, forced to restore the relics of S. Petrock, i. 299.
S. Michael, Mount of, in Normandy. *See* Mount S. Michael.
Mount of, in Cornwall, monastery turned into a castle by Henry de la Pumerai, ii. 52; surrendered to Hubert Walter in 1194, *ib.*; treason of Jollan de la Pumerai at, 60.
in Maurienne, abbot of, i. 211.
S. Omer, Tostig takes refuge at, in 1065, i. 79.
taken by the count of Flanders in 1198, ii. 125.
adultery of the countess of Flanders at, i. 251.
S. Paul, cardinal John de, attempt of Celestine III. to secure his election to the papacy, ii. 113.
S. Petrock, adventures of the relics of, i. 299.
S. Remy, Gué; conferences of Henry II. and Philip at, in 1181, i. 311; in 1187, 343; of Richard and Philip, 389.
S. Stephen, island of, i. 396.
S. Valery, relics of, carried off by Richard, ii. 107.
Walter of, his castle taken by William Rufus, i. 104.
S. Victor, abbey of, at Marseilles, i. 405.
church of, at Paris, Arnulf of Lisieux retires to, i. 312.
S. Vincent, cape passed by Richard's fleet, i. 402.
relics of, at Lisbon, i. 400.
Sabina, Centius bishop of, i. 130, 132.
Conrad bishop of. *See* Mentz.
Sabluil, Sabuil, Robert de, one of the commanders of Richard's fleet, sails from Dartmouth, i. 398; arrives at Lisbon, 401; is received by the king and people and makes a treaty, 401; leaves Lisbon, 402; proceeds to Marseilles and Messina, 408.
Sadberge, given to the see of Durham by Richard, i. 377; restored by him after Longchamp had seized it, 395; seized by Hugh Bardulf in 1194, ii. 68; restored by Richard to Philip of Poictiers, 125.
Saffadin, brother of Saladin, sends Richard a horse, i. 461; is in Egypt

Saffadin—*cont.*
with an army, ii. 33; takes Joppa, 109; is defeated and wounded, 111.
is lord of Damascus and Egypt, but his affairs hold out hopes for a new crusade, ii. 192.
Safforia, Saladin retires to, i. 452.
Saffran, encampment of Saladin at, i. 382.
Saintes, taken by Henry II. in 1174, i. 230.
Saladin, sultan of Egypt; employs Robert of S. Alban's against Jerusalem in 1185, i. 338; make a truce, 339; intrigues with the count of Tripoli, 342; prolongs the truce for three years, 343; invades Palestine in 1187, defeats the knights, takes Tiberias and captures the king and the true cross, takes the strongholds, Jerusalem and Ascalon, 344–346; kills Reginald of Châtillon, 346; makes alliance with the sultan of Iconium, and with Isaac Angelus, 361; is challenged by Frederick, 362; releases Guy of Lusignan, 381; fights with the crusaders at Acre, 382; defeates a band of volunteers, 420; is one of the persecutors of the church, 424, 425; his great ship taken by Richard, 444; sends presents to the kings and proposes peace, 446; forbids the Turks in Acre to surrender, 449; his army defeated, *ib.*; dismantles Haifa, 450; destroys the vineyards about Acre, 451; makes new proposals of peace, 452; offers of his enemies, *ib.*; fails to keep the conditions of the surrender of Acre, 456; defeated at Arsouf, 457–461; his caravan taken by Richard, ii. 19; besieges Joppa, *ib.*; makes a truce for three years, 20; dies in 1193, 34; division of his dominions, *ib.*
Salamenec, in Spain, i. 404.
Salef, a river in Armenia, in which the emperor Frederick is drowned, i. 362, ii. 9, 10.
Salerno, arrival of Richard at, i. 398; he leaves, 408; taken by Henry VI., ii. 12; Constantia taken prisoner at, 13; taken by the emperor in 1194, 75.
Salerno, John of, cardinal, visits York, ii. 190.
Salisbury, bishops of. (*See also* Ramsbury.)
Osmund, dedicates his cathedral in 1092, i. 106; dies in 1099, 117.
Roger, chancellor to Henry I., made bishop, i. 121, 122; consecrated in 1107, 125; assists at the consecration of the bishop of London in 1108, 127; of the bishop of Bangor, 139; ordains the elect of Dublin, 141; attends the council of London in 1127, 148; is at the dedication of Canterbury, 152; blesses the abbot of Abingdon, 153; betrays his oath to the empress, 156; is arrested by Stephen and compelled to surrender his castles, 163; his son chancellor, *ib.*; dies, 164.
Jocelin de Bohun, assists at the coronation of the younger Henry, i. 189; is excommunicated, 191; is at the council of Westminster in 1175, 239; at a court at Woodstock, 245; is not at the council of 1177, 280; dies in 1184, 33.
Hubert Walter. *See* Canterbury.
Herbert, as archdeacon of Canterbury appeals against the election of Hubert Walter, ii. 33; is a judge in archbishop Geoffrey's case, 166; is at the Lincoln homage, 171.
Richard, bishop of Chichester, translated to, in 1217, ii. 240; is at the translation of S. Wulfstan, *ib.*; assists at the consecration of the bishop of London, 249.
Salisbury destroyed by Swein in 1003, i. 28; great council at, in 1086, 99; cathedral dedicated at, in 1092, 106; council at, in 1096, 113; and in 1116, 135.

Salisbury, John of. *See* Chartres.
Alexander, archdeacon of, i. 142.
William, son of Patrick, earl of, carries the virge at Richard's coronation, i. 373; is at the re-coronation at Winchester, ii. 59; is appointed to keep the tournament tax, 74; dies in 1196, 102.
William, son of Henry II., married to the heiress of the last earl, ii. 102; swears on John's behalf to satisfy the pope, 210; goes to assist the count of Flanders against Philip, 215; is taken prisoner at Bouvines, 216; takes John's side in 1215, 225; seizes the isle of Ely in 1216, 229; deserts the king, 231; joins the party of Henry III. in 1217, 235; quarrels with the earl of Chester and takes the lead of the king's party, 252.
Salomon, king of Hungary. *See* Hungary.
Saltis, in Spain, i. 403.
Salzburg, archbishop of, supports Rudolf of Swabia, i. 93.
Conrad of Wittelsbach, i. 303. *See* Mentz.
archbishopric of, ii. 24.
Sampson, bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester.
abbot of S. Edmunds. *See* S. Edmunds.
Sancho. *See* Navarre, Portugal, Leon.
Sandwich, the Danes land at, in 1006, i. 29; and in 1009, 31; Swein lands at, in 1013, 34; Canute lands his hostages at, 37; he lands at, in 1015, 38; Edward collects a fleet at, in 1045, 60; and again in 1049, 62; Beorn invited by Swein to, 63; Swein's ships brought to, *ib.*; Edward's fleet at, in 1052, 67; it returns to, *ib.*; Godwin lands at, *ib.*; Tostig comes to, in 1066, 80; Harold collects a fleet at, 80.
Sandwich—*cont.*
Richard lands at, in 1194, ii. 50; Lewis lands at, in 1217, 236; he burns, 236.
Santarem, taken by the king of Portugal from the Moors, i. 350; besieged by the Moors in 1184, and in 1190, 399, 400.
Saphet, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Sardinia, island of, i. 406, 407.
Satalia, gulf of, ii. 10.
Saumur, Henry II. keeps Christmas 1188 at, i. 364; he is visited by the count of Flanders and others at, 366.
Sauvey, castle of, taken in 1220, ii. 245.
Savaric, bishop of Bath. *See* Wells.
Savona, i. 396.
Saxony, dukes of. *See* Henry.
Say, Geoffrey de, summoned by Richard to Germany, ii. 33.
Scalea, passed by Richard, i. 408.
Scarborough, castle of, committed to Roger, archbishop of York, i. 288; taken from Hugh Bardulf by Richard, ii. 54; visited by John and Isabella in 1201, 181.
Scep (Ceuta), in Africa, i. 403.
Scotland, abbot of S. Augustine's, dies in 1087, i. 99.
Scotland, kings of. *See* Constantine, Malcolm, Duncan, Donald, Edgar, Alexander, David, William.
Scots, subjection of, to the English, i. 14, 15, 16, 25, 26, &c.
Scott, John. *See* S. Andrews.
Scylla, rock of, i. 409.
Sebastia, taken by Saladin, i. 338.
Seeurium, the emperor defeated by the Lombards at, in 1176, i. 269.
Seez, Henry II. keeps Candlemas 1170 at, i. 187.
Ralph, abbot of. *See* Canterbury.
John, bishop of, in 1130, i. 152.
Froger, bishop of, excommunicates the disturbers of the peace in 1183, i. 324.
Seffrid, bishop of Chichester. *See* Chichester.

Seillun, Peter, taken prisoner by Richard, i. 355.
Selby, abbey of S. German at, abbots of :
Roger prior, made abbot, against the wish of archbishop Geoffrey, i. 378 ; blessed by the bishop of Durham, 386.
Richard, abbot of, transferred to Ramsey, ii. 216.
the abbot of, resigns in 1221, ii. 250 ; Richard, a monk of Ramsey, succeeds, *ib.*
Robert of Leicester, called a canon of, ii. 266.
Seleham, Henry II. receives the submission of Hugh Bigot at, i. 231.
Selsey, bishops of, Osbriht, dies, i. 31 ; Almar succeeds, *ib.*
Ethelric dies in 1038, i. 54.
Grimketel, elected simoniacally, i. 55 ; ejected and the see held by Stigand, *ib.*
Heca, dies in 1057, i. 73.
Ethelric, a monk of Canterbury, succeeds, i. 73 ; displaced in 1070 and imprisoned at Marlborough, 87 ; Stigand succeeds. *See* Chichester.
Selston, visited by Richard in 1194, ii. 58.
Selvedene, forest of, i. 397.
Semenes, D., has charge of Arnedo, i. 278.
Sempringham, Gilbert of, dies and is buried at, i. 360 ; is canonized, ii. 196 ; the wool of the order seized for Richard's ransom, ii. 32.
Senezi, a Spanish knight, i. 278.
Sens, Alexander III., receives Conrad of Wittelsbach at, i. 304 ; council at, in 1171, 196.
archbishop of. *See* William of Champagne.
archbishop of, at the council of Lyons in 1225, ii. 276.
Serlo, abbot of Gloucester, dies in 1104, i. 123.
Sevenburghers, i. 37.
Severn river, i. 3, ii. 204.
meeting of Canute and Edmund on, i. 43 ; massacre of the people of
Severn river—*cont.*
Worcester on an island in the, 57 ; Harold lands at the mouth of, 66.
Sfilizum, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
Shaftesbury, monastery built at, i. 60.
Canute dies at, i. 52.
Sheppey, flight of the Danes to, in 1016, i. 42.
Sherborn, see of, removed to Salisbury, i. 87.
Roger prior of, made abbot of Burton, ii. 216.
castle of, taken by Stephen from Roger of Salisbury, i. 163 ; surrendered to the empress, 170.
Sheriffs, inquest into the conduct of, i. 188 ; in 1196, ii. 97 ; in 1213, 215.
Sherstone, the Danes defeated by Edmund Ironside at, i. 40.
Sherwood forest visited by Richard, ii. 54.
Shoreham, John lands at, in 1199, ii. 146.
Shrewsbury, murder of Elfhelm at, i. 29 ; men of, attack Worcester in 1088, 102.
fortified by Robert of Belesme, i. 120 ; held by William Fitz Alan against Stephen, 160 ; taken by Stephen, *ib.*
earls of :
Roger, adheres to Robert against William Rufus in 1088, i. 101, 102 ; his son Philip imprisoned, 113.
Hugh, earl of, his castle of Montgomery plundered by the Welsh, i. 112 ; he invades Anglesea and is killed by the king of Norway, 115.
Robert of Belesme, earl of, and count of Ponthieu, fortifies his castles against Henry I., i. 120 ; is declared a public enemy and his castles taken, 121 ; exiled, *ib.* ; is put to flight at Tenchebrai, 125 ; imprisoned at Cherbourg, 133 ; at Wareham, *ib.*
Hugh Foliot, archdeacon of, ii. 241.
Herbert, abbot of, i. 151.
Robert of, sent to Spain, i. 286.

Shropshire, Ethelred winters in, in 1006, i. 29; ravaged by Edmund Ironside, 39; by the Welsh in 1094; 110; earthquake in, 128; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
Sianes, in Spain, i. 402.
Sibilla, in Spain, i. 403.
Sibylla, queen of Jerusalem. *See* Jerusalem.
Sicily, history of, ii. 10–13.
Roger, Wiscard, count of, conquers the island, ii. 11, 12.
Roger I., king of, crowned, ii. 12.
William I., second son of Roger, ii. 12.
William II., king of, son of William I., ii. 12; proposes to marry Johanna, i. 262, 263; receives her at Palermo, 286; his settlement on her, 293; his ambassadors take part in the peace of Venice, 302; his preparations for a crusade, and bequest to Henry II.; i. 414, 415; his death, 388.
Tancred, son of Roger the brother of William I., ii. 12; count of Lecce, i. 388, ii. 12; usurps the crown in 1189, i. 388, ii. 12; imprisons the count of Andria, i. 388; Philip lodges in his palace at Messina, 408; sends Johanna to Richard, 410; Richard demands the dower and legacies, 414, 415; treaty between them, 415–417; Arthur of Brittany is to marry the daughter of, 416; flight of his friends from Messina, 417; rebellion of the Saracens against, 419; his servants entertain Eleanor and Berengaria, 431; Richard visits him at Catania, 432; he reveals the treachery of Philip, 433; receives Philip at Taormina, 433, 434; is attacked by Henry VI. in 1191, ii. 13; has Constantia in captivity, ii. 13; gives Philip leave to pass through his territories, *ib.*; makes his son Roger king, 74; and on his death, his son William, 75; dies, *ib.*; disinterred by Henry VI., 76.
Roger, son of Tancred, married to the daughter of Isaac Angelus, ii. 74; dies before his father, 75.
William, son of Tancred, ii. 75; seized by Henry VI. *ib.*; mutilated and imprisoned, 76.
Sider, Wymund, bishop of (Man), i. 23.
Sidon, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
secured to Conrad of Montferrat, i. 354.
bishop of, dies at Acre, i. 327.
Sienna, Henry's envoys detained at, in 1171, i. 200.
the bishop of Orleans dies at, ii. 109.
Sigeferth, son of Earngrim, killed by Edric Streone, i. 37; his widow marries Edmund Ironside, 38.
Signia, bishop of, at the Lateran Council in 1112, i. 133.
Silvia, in Portugal, i. 350; taken by the crusaders, 379; passed by the fleet in 1190, 399; demanded by the emperor of Morocco, 400; taken by him in 1191, ii. 15; taken and destroyed by the German crusaders in 1197, 110.
Silvius, father of Brutus, i. 3.
Simon, earl of Huntingdon. *See* Huntingdon.
earl of Leicester. *See* Leicester.
de Montfort. *See* Leicester.
of Apulia, a clerk of archbishop Geoffrey, made dean of York, ii. 41; elected by the canons, 41, 42; goes to the king, who forbids appeal to the pope, 42; nominated by the pope, 47; went to Rome, 77; comes to York and is forbidden by the archbishop's servants to enter the church, 82; is received by the canons, *ib.*; attends the legatine council at York, 88; claims the archdeaconry of the West Riding, *ib.*; sent for by Richard to make

Simon of Apulia—*cont.*
peace with Geoffrey, 120; arrives too late and defeats the arrangement, *ib.*; meets Geoffrey at Andely and refuses arbitration, 123; compels the Richmond clergy to receive Roger of S. Edmunds, 124; excommunicates Hugh Murdac, *ib.*; submits to the arbitration of the bishop of Lincoln and defeats it, 152; is admitted to peace by Geoffrey, 167; claims the presentation to the archdeaconry of Cleveland, 181; and the provostship of Beverley, 189; refuses the arbitration of John of Salerno, 190; made bishop of Exeter, 217. *See* Exeter.

Siponto, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.

Sisillius, king of Britain, i. 5.
II., king of Britain, i. 6.

Siward, earl of Northumbria, father of Waltheof, i. 83; sent by Hardicanute to punish the men of Worcester, 57; and by Edward to plunder his mother, 58; summoned by Edward against Godwin, 65; sent to Scotland to depose Macbeth, 69; dies at York, and is buried at Galmanho, 70.
Barne, is with Hereward at Ely in 1071, i. 89; is released by the Conqueror before his death, 99.

Sleaford, surrendered to Stephen by the bishop of Lincoln, i. 163; John falls ill at, ii. 231.

Soissons, the trial of Philip's divorce fixed to take place at, ii. 168; it is heard at, 174.

Soligny, Gilbert of, lost at sea, in 1170, i. 188.
conference of Henry and Philip in 1188 at, i. 361.

Somerled, Reginald, son of, ii. 101.

Somerset, ravaged by Canute in 1015, i. 38; part of Swein's earldom, 65; ravaged by Harold, 66; by his sons in 1068, 84; visited by the justices in 1176, 256; given to John in 1189, 371, 386.

Sore, mountains of, in Spain, i. 406.

Sorges, evil customs of, abolished by Richard, i. 272.

Southampton, defeat of Claudius near, i. 8; Hamelin killed at, *ib.*
plundered by the Danes in 1006, i. 29; in 1009, 31; in 1011, 33; overrun by William in 1066, 82; Henry II. lands at, in 1174, 230; Richard and Geoffrey land at, in 1176, 262; great military gathering at, in 1177, 292.

Southwark, Godwin brings an army to, in 1051, i. 65; and in 1052, 67; Bernard of S. David's ordained at, 135.
terrible accident in, ii. 205, 206.

Southwell, archbishop Elfric dies at, i. 64; Geoffrey ordained priest at, 379; Hugh de Puiset arrested at, 393; visited by Richard in 1194, ii. 56; the bishop of Whithern consecrates the chrism at, 85.

Spelde, castle of, held by Robert of Gloucester against Stephen, i. 160; taken, 162.

Spichel, cape, passed by Richard's fleet, i. 402.

Spinchole, taken by Henry VI. in 1194, ii. 75.

Spine, Hamo, captured at Dol, i. 221.

Spires, Conrad the Salic buried at, i. 55; Henry III. buried at, 72.
Richard's release fixed to take place at, ii. 45; he keeps Christmas 1193 at, 46.
Bruno, bishop of, in 1111, i. 129.

Spoleto, R., duke of, swears on the emperor's behalf to the terms of the crusade of 1225, ii. 259.

Spracling, son of Urse, i. 62.

Staffordshire, ravaged by Edmund Ironside, i. 39; by Robert of Belesme in 1102, 121; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.

Staines, the Danes cross the Thames at, in 1010, i. 32; proposed conference of John and the bishops in 1215, ii. 223; meeting of the bishops and barons at, 224.
Stamford, besieged by Stephen and taken, i. 181; the barons assemble at, in 1215, ii. 219.
merchants at the fair of, plundered by Gerard Camville, ii. 55; London merchants arrested at, 98.
Stamford bridge, battle of, i. 81.
Staneby, Ralph of, attempts to seize S. Cuthbert's keys, ii. 83.
Alexander of. *See* Lichfield, bishops of.
Stanstead, visit of Henry II. to, i. 300, 301; Richard stays there in 1194, ii. 61.
Stavangr, Airic, bishop of, at Swerre's coronation, ii. 76.
Stella, staked by the king of Navarre on the award of Henry II., i. 277, 278.
Stephen, king of England, brother of count Theobald, i. 155; usurps the crown on the death of Henry I., 156; is crowned, *ib.*; promises good government, 157.
in 1136, receives at Oxford news of a Scottish invasion, and makes agreement with king David at Durham, i. 158; keeps Easter at London, quells a rising in Norfolk, takes Exeter, and holds a forest assize in Huntingdonshire, *ib.*
in 1137, conquers Normandy and returns, i. 159.
in 1138, takes Bedford, i. 159; marches northward against the Scots, but is detained in the south, 160; takes Spelde, 162.
in 1139, takes Ludlow, 163; and deprives the bishops of their castles, *ib.*; marries his son to Constantia of France, *ib.*
in 1140, expels the bishop of Ely, i. 164.
Stephen, king of England—*cont.*
in 1141, besieges Lincoln, i. 165; is routed, 168; and taken prisoner, 169; is imprisoned at Bristol, *ib.*; exchanged for earl Robert, 170.
in 1142, put to flight at Wilton, i. 170; besieges the empress at Oxford, *ib.*
in 1143, holds a council at London, i. 170; arrests Geoffrey de Mandeville and compels the surrender of his castles, 171.
in 1144, besieges Lincoln in vain, i. 171.
in 1145, takes Farringdon, i. 172.
in 1146, besieges Wallingford and compels the earl of Chester to surrender his castles, i. 173.
in 1147, wears his crown at Lincoln, escapes from an attack of the earl of Chester, i. 173.
in 1148, consents to the election of Robert de Chesnei to Lincoln, i. 175.
in 1149, goes to York to watch the Scots, i. 175.
in 1150, takes the city of Worcester, i. 175.
in 1151, besieges the castle of Worcester, i. 176; sends his son into Normandy, *ib.*
in 1152, attempts in vain to obtain the recognition of Eustace as king, i. 177; takes Newbury and again besieges Wallingford, *ib.*
in 1153, encamps near Malmesbury in order to fight with Henry of Anjou, i. 179; is prevented from a battle and retires to London, *ib.*; threatens Henry at Crowmarsh, but is again prevented from a battle, 180; meets Henry and enters on negotiations, *ib.*; loses his son Eustace and continues the war, 181; makes peace with Henry, *ib.*
in 1154, meets Henry at Oxford and Dunstable, 183; is slow in fulfilling the terms of peace, *ib.*; takes Drax, *ib.*; dies and is buried at Faversham, *ib.*

Stigand, bishop of Chichester. *See* Chichester.
archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Stigandby, William, his claim to a prebend at York, ii. 79.
Stirling castle, held by William the Lion against Henry II., i. 216; surrendered by the treaty of Falaise, 249.
Stockport, held by Geoffrey du Côtentin against Henry II., i. 217.
Stokes, near Portsmouth, Henry II. at, i. 300.
Stow, S. Mary's, endowed by Leofric, i. 72.
Stow in Lindsey, claimed by archbishop Thomas, i. 23.
Strathclyde Britons subject to the English crown, i. 14.
Striguil, Richard earl of, justiciar of Ireland, dies, i. 268; William Fitz Aldhelm has his lands, 268, 288; William Marshall marries his heiress, 372.
William Marshall, earl of. *See* Marshall.
Struma, John of, antipope, degraded, i. 303.
Stuteville, Robert, taken prisoner at Tenchebrai, i. 125; called Grundebeof, ii. 161.
Stuteville, Nicolas, lord of Liddel, i. 225.
Robert de, lord of Appleby, one of the leaders of the Yorkshire army in 1174, i. 225; claims the estates of Robert Grundebeof, ii. 161.
William, one of the Yorkshire barons in 1174, i. 225; has charge of Topcliffe, 228; has charge of Edinburgh and Roxburgh, 288; sent by Longchamp to arrest the bishop of Durham, 393; made by Longchamp sheriff of Lincolnshire, 462; refuses to besiege Tickhill, ii. 28; has charge of Northumberland and Cumberland under John, 147; advises the bishop of Durham about Berwick, 151; has licence for a fair at Buttercram and Cottingham, 161; finishes his lawsuit with the Mowbrays, 161, 162; has a visit from John at Cottingham, 180; absolved by archbishop Geoffrey, 181; made sheriff of Yorkshire, 182.
Suail, in Spain, i. 403.
Suffolk, visited by the justices in 1176, i. 256; managed by Roger de Cresey in 1215, ii. 224.
Surrey, ravaged by the Danes in 1010, i. 32; and 1011, 33; overrun by the Conqueror in 1066, 82; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
Sussex, ravaged by the Danes in 1006, i. 29; in 1009, 31; and 1011, 33; part of Godwin's earldom, 65; ravaged by Harold, 67; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
earldom of. *See* Arundel.
Swabia, Rudolf duke of, anti-Cæsar to Henry IV., i. 93; killed at Merseburg, 96.
Frederick (Conrad), duke of, leads the German crusaders to Acre, i. 419.
Conrad, duke of, is engaged on Richard's side during his captivity, ii. 48.
Philip, duke of, king of Germany. *See* Philip.
Swerre, Birkbain. *See* Norway.
Sygga, deacon of S. John of Beverley, i. 21.
Syracuse, Richard archbishop of, i. 295.

T.

Tabor, mount, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Tagus, river, i. 400, &c.
Taillebourg, taken by Richard in 1194, ii. 66.
Taissonal, Espanniol de, ambassador of Navarre, i. 281, 282.

Talamone, passed by Richard, i. 396.
Talbot, a traitor, holds Hereford against Stephen, i. 160.
Talevaz, John, count of Ponthieu. *See* Ponthieu.
Tancred, the crusader, ii. 10.
count of Lecce. *See* Sicily.
Taormina, parting of Richard and Tancred at, i. 433; visit of Philip to Tancred at, *ib.*
Tarazuna, John bishop of, ambassador from Spain to Henry II., i. 277, 281, 282.
Tarentaise, Peter archbishop of, i. 211.
Tarente, in Palestine, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Taresia, daughter of Sancho king of Portugal; her marriage with the king of Leon dissolved, i. 427.
Tarragona, archbishopric of, i. 404.
Tarsus, abode of one of the wise men, ii. 9, 10.
Taurino, Peter de, i. 212.
Tavistock, monastery of, Aldred abbot of. *See* York, archbishops of.
Tees, river, ii. 57.
Tekedin, nephew of Saladin, takes Guy of Lusignan prisoner, i. 345; said to be killed at Acre, i. 382.
uncle of Saladin, defeated in Mesopotamia, i. 450.
Templars, slaughter of, at Hittin, 346; take charge of Messina, 412.
Temple at Jerusalem:
Terric, master of, writes to Henry II., i. 347, 359.
Gerard of Rideford, master of, slain, i. 382.
master of, legislates for the crusade, i. 412.
Tenchebrai, battle, i. 124, ii. 161.
Terracina, passed by Richard, i. 397.
Testard, William, archdeacon of Nottingham, carries the York appeal to Rome, ii. 77, 151; is forgiven by the archbishop, 167.
Teste, Henry, commands the German army in Apulia, i. 388.
Tewkesbury, church of, consecrated in 1121, i. 141.
Robert, abbot of, dies in 1123, i. 143.
Benedict, abbot of, blessed in 1125, i. 144.
Alan, abbot of, ii. 167. *See* Canterbury.
Thames, river, i. 3; the Danes in, in 1009, 31; they cross into Wessex, 32; part of Swein's army lost in, 35; Canute crosses at Cricklade, 38; his fleet brought into, above London bridge, 40; crossed by Edmund Ironside at Brentford, 41; Harold's body thrown into, 56; Godwin sails up as far as Southwark, 67; is dried up in 1114, 134; the empress escapes on the ice along, 170; works of William Longchamp on, 391; terrible accident on, in 1212, ii. 205.
Thanet, landing of the Danes in 1009 in, i. 31; Lewis lands in, in 1216, ii. 229; battle at, in 1217, 238.
Thange, in Africa, i. 463.
Theobald, count of Champagne. *See* Champagne.
count of Blois. *See* Blois.
archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Theodinus, cardinal, legate to Henry II., i. 199; arrives in Normandy, 205; absolves the king at Avranches, 206; holds a council there, 207.
Thetford, destroyed by the Danes in 1004, i. 28; and in 1010, 32.
Arfast, bishop of, appointed in 1070, i. 87.
William, appointed in 1085, i. 98.
Herbert Losinga. *See* Norwich.
Theulf, bishop of Worcester. *See* Worcester.
Thil, a city in Armenia, ii. 10.
Thirsk, held by Roger Mowbray against Henry II. in 1174, i. 217; surrendered, 231; demolished, 269.
Thomas, archbishop. *See* York, Canterbury.

Thomas—*cont.*
provost of Paris, his quarrel with the students, ii. 163, 164.
prior of Worcester, dies in 1113, i. 133.
Thorney abbey, vacant in 1175, i. 245; given to the see of Ely, ii. 217.
Ascwy, abbot of, i. 63.
Robert, abbot of, deposed in 1195, and imprisoned at Gloucester, ii. 89; comes on an errand from Rome in 1220, ii. 244.
Ralph, abbot of, dies in 1216, ii. 234.
Thornover, Tornover, Adam of, has the archdeaconry of the West Riding from the king, ii. 99; he compromises with Peter of Dinan about it, *ib.*; agrees to the arbitration of Hugh of Lincoln, 151.
Thouars, Aimer, viscount of, surrenders Chinon to John, ii. 150.
Guy of, marries the mother of Arthur, ii. 151.
Thrum, kills S. Elphege, i. 34.
Thuri, earl of the Middle Angles, sent by Hardicanute to punish Worcester, i. 57.
Thurso, town of Harold Mac Madit, ii. 100.
Thurstan, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Tiberias, taken by Saladin, i. 346.
Tiberius, emperor of Rome, i. 89; Lucius, 11.
Tickhill, castle of, fortified by Robert of Belesme against Henry I., i. 120; besieged by the bishop of Lincoln, 121; entrusted by Longchamp to John de Lacy, but surrendered by treachery to John, 462, ii. 15; surrendered by John at the treaty of Winchester, i. 462; on condition, 463; the archbishop of York offers to besiege, ii. 28; besieged by the bishop of Durham, 29; left in John's hands at the truce of 1193, *ib.*; besieged again by the bishop of Durham, 51; surrendered, 52; prisoners taken at, delivered to the
Tickhill, castle of—*cont.*
king, 53; to be taken to Winchester, 56; charges against Gerard Camvill touching, 55.
honour of, given to John, i. 371.
chaplaincy offered to Paulinus of Leeds with the see of Carlisle, i. 340.
Tigernah, a friend of Marianus Scotus, i. 59.
Tilli, Ranulf de, one of the leaders of the Yorkshire army, in 1174, i. 226; his exploits at Acre, 422.
Tillieres, Gilbert de, his castle of Danville taken, i. 220.
territory of, secured to the lord in 1200, ii. 176.
Toledo, city of, ii. 16; threatened by the Moors in 1195, 91.
Tony, Roger de, lord of Conches, ii. 150.
Topcliffe, fortified by the elect of Lincoln, i. 228.
Torella, Ar. de, i. 278.
Toron, Henfrid or Amfrid of, first husband of the heiress of Jerusalem, i. 420; divorced from her, *ib.*; visits Richard in Cyprus, 441; dies in 1198, ii. 138.
Torphinus, son of Harold Macmadit, promised as a hostage to the king of Scots, ii. 100; captured by the men of Orkney, 101.
Tortosa, in Spain, i. 404, ii. 17.
Tostig, son of Godwin and Githa, retires with his wife Judith to Flanders in 1051, i. 66; is present at his father's death, 69; succeeds to the earldom of Northumbria in 1055, 70; goes to Rome in 1061, 74; joins Harold in a war with the Welsh in 1063, 77; murders Gamel and Ulf, and provokes a rebellion in Yorkshire, in 1065, 79; is outlawed and goes to S. Omer, *ib.*; invades the south of England in 1066, 80; joins Harold Hardrada and falls at Stamford bridge, 81.
Tothill, the letters brought from Rome by Roger of Ripon burnt at, ii. 104.

Totness, i. 6.
Toul, conference between Philip and Henry VI. at, proposed, ii. 33.
Toulouse, besieged by Henry II., i. 185; homage done by the count for, 209; Richard invades the territory of, in 1188, 356; threatened by Sancho of Navarre in 1192, ii. 23; heresy in, 199, 200.
Toulouse, counts of:
Raymond IV. goes on the first crusade, i. 113.
Raymond V. goes on the second crusade in 1147, i. 173; does homage to Henry II. at Limoges, 209; attacks Richard in 1188, 355; capture of his minister Peter Seillun, *ib.*; captures two of Richard's knights, 356; releases them, *ib.*; Richard ravages his dominions, *ib.*; proposals of peace defeated, 359; Sancho of Navarre invades his territories in 1192, ii. 23; entertains Berengaria, 45.
Raymond VI. marries queen Johanna in 1196, ii. 102; his son Raymond born, 108; his wife dies, 150; does homage for her dower, 166; crusade against heresy in his dominions, 199, 200, 201; he is besieged in Toulouse, but relieved by John, 203; war continued, 215.
Touraine, i. 215, 235.
Tournay, Godwin's family take refuge at, i. 66; battle of Bouvines fought near, ii. 216.
Tours, council at, in 1163, i. 185; meeting of Henry and Becket near, 190; Geoffrey sent to study at, 246; threatened by Philip in 1189, 365; taken, 366; conference of the kings and treaty made near, 367; Richard starts on his pilgrimage from, 394; he receives 2,000 marks from the burghers of, ii. 63.
Bartholomew, archbishop of (called William), claims the obedience of Dol, i. 208; gives Richard the scrip and staff, 394; consecrates Geoffrey, ii. 3.
archbishop of, at the council of Lyons in 1225, ii. 276.
question of the dependence of Dol on, i. 208, ii. 153–155.
advowson of the archbishopric secured to Richard, ii. 140.
Tovi, Pruda, Hardicanute dies at his daughter's marriage, i. 57.
Tremerin, bishop of the South Welsh, dies, i. 71.
Trenchemer, Alan, his ship sent for by Richard, ii. 28; he conducts him from Antwerp home, 50.
Trent, river, Swein enters in 1013, i. 34; dried up in 1110, 128; Newark on, 163.
Gebhard, bishop of, in 1111, i. 129.
Tresport, Robert of Normandy collects a fleet for the invasion of England at, i. 119.
Treves, Formalis, archbishop of, at Richard's coronation, i. 373; dies at Northampton, 379.
Trie, conference between Henry and Lewis at, in 1173, i. 222; of Philip and Henry in 1183, 326; in 1188, 351; elm cut down by Philip near, 359; meeting of Philip and Richard near, 369.
Ingelram of, taken prisoner, i. 222.
Trifels, Richard imprisoned at, ii. 30.
Trinovantum, i. 6, 7.
Tripoli, Raymond (called Walram), count of, intrigues with Saladin, i. 342; advises king Guy to risk a battle, 345; escapes unhurt from Hittin, 346; found dead, 347.
Raymond, son of Bohemond of Antioch, called Jocelin, succeeds, i. 347.
Ralph FitzGodfrey dies at, i. 448; Isaac Comnenus imprisoned at, i. 443; visited by Philip, ii. 9.
Troja, the bishop of, ambassador from Sicily to Henry II. i. 262, 263.

Trond, the executioner, sent by Hardicanute to disinter Harold, i. 56.
Trou, burnt by Philip in 1188, i. 358; taken in 1189, i. 366; left in the hands of Philip and Richard at the treaty of Tours, 367.
Troy, descent of Brutus and the British kings from, i. 3, 4, &c.
Troyes, counts of. *See* Champagne.
Trussebut, Robert, claims to carry the dragon at the battle of Arsouf, i. 457.
Tuam, see of, i. 203.
Catholicus, archbishop of, i. 203; envoy of the king of Connaught to Henry II., 252.
Tumar, in Spain, besieged by the Moors in 1190, i. 400; taken in 1191, ii. 15.
Tunbridge, fortified against William Rufus, i. 101; taken by him, *ib.*
Turebrand, kills earl Uhtred, i. 39.
Turgot, prior of Durham. *See* S. Andrews.
Turin, part of the Maurienne dowry, i. 209.
Turketill, surnamed Merenheafd, flies at the battle of Ringmere, i. 32.
son of Neavana, killed by Turebrand, i. 39.
Turkey, ii. 10.
Turkill, a Danish earl, lands in England in 1009, and ravages Kent and Wessex, i. 31; is bought off by Canterbury and ravages Sussex, *ib.*; assists Ethelred against Swein in 1013, 35; his fleet is at Greenwich, 36; has Essex from Canute, 45; is at the consecration of the church at Assandun, 46; is exiled with his wife, 47.
son of Haco and Gunhilda, banished, i. 59.
killed by the Welsh, i. 55.
Turnham, Stephen, conducts Berengaria to Rome, ii. 45; has custody of the see of York for two years, 147; ordered to give it up, *ib.*
Robert de, sails round Cyprus, i. 441, 442; is left in charge of the island by Richard, 443; quells a revolt
Turnham, Robert de—*cont.*
there, 447; arrives in England with the king's harness, ii. 28; recovers Cliff from the see of Durham, 135; surrenders Chinon and Richard's treasures to John, 143; sent by John to Poictou, 191.
Turonis, Stephen de, steward of Anjou, sets fire to le Mans, i. 365; is imprisoned by Richard, 369.
Turres Nuevas in Portugal, besieged in 1190, i. 400; taken in 1191, ii. 15.
Turstan, a housecarl of Hardicanute, killed at Worcester, i. 57.
abbot of Glastonbury, his quarrel and affray with the monks, i. 96; buys his restoration, 97.
abbot of Pershore, i. 98, 99.
Turon, hill near Acre, 381.
Turon as Chavalers, i. 346, ii. 15, 17.
Tuscany, restored to the pope on the death of Henry VI., ii. 113.
Tusculum, Henry II.'s agents at, i. 199; quarrels of the popes with the Romans about, 436–438.
John, bishop of, in 1112, i. 133.
bishop of, friendly to Henry II. in 1171, i. 200.
Nicolas, bishop of, legate in 1213; receives John's homage, ii. 214; deposes the abbots of Westminster and Evesham, 215; his arbitrary measures in appointing abbots, 216; is recalled, 217.
Tutbury, castle of the earl Ferrers at, i. 217; surrendered, 231; earls of. *See* Ferrers.
Tweed, river, i. 384, ii. 57.
Tynemouth, Robert Mowbray flies to, i. 112; monastery of S. Oswin at, *ib.*
Tyre, saved from capture by Conrad of Montferrat, i. 346; Saladin's idol brought to, 361; Frederick's bones brought to, 363; Guy of Lusignan is refused admission to, 381; Richard refused entrance into, 443; Conrad retires to, 445; Richard pretends to claim half of, 446;

Tyre—*cont.*
Philip goes to, from Acre, 455; leaves, *ib.*; Richard sends for the hostages from, 456; Conrad killed at, ii. 18; Amalric lord of, 111.
Tyrell, Walter, kills William Rufus, i. 117.

U.

Uethred, ealdorman of Northumbria, joins Swein in 1013, i. 34; ravages Mercia with Edmund Ironside but is obliged to join Canute, and is slain by Turebrand, 39.
lord of Galloway. *See* Galloway.
Ufeget, son of Elfhelm, slain, i. 29.
Ulf, bishop of Dorchester. *See* Dorchester.
father of Beorn, i. 62.
son of Dolfin, killed by Tostig, i. 79.
son of king Harold, released by duke Robert after his father's death, i. 100.
Ulfketel, ealdorman of the East Angles, encounters the Danes in 1004, i. 28; is defeated by them in 1010, 32; is killed at Assandun, 43.
Ullerwood, castle of, held by Hamo Masci against Henry II., i. 217.
Ulpe, Osgod Clapa's fleet at, i. 62.
Ulric, cardinal, brings the pall to Thomas II. of York, i. 128.
Ulster, the legate Vivian lands in, i. 275.
Roderick, king of, defeated by John de Curci, i. 276.
John de Curci, lord of. *See* Curci.
Umfraville. *See* Dunframville.
Urban II., Odo, bishop of Ostia, pope, opposed by Wibert of Ravenna, i. 106; sends Walter of Albano as legate to England, 110; holds a council at Clermont and preaches the crusade, 113; receives Anselm in his exile, 114; holds a council at Bari in 1098, 116; and at Rome in 1099, 116; dies in 1099, 117; John of Gaeta was his chancellor, 137.
Urban III., becomes pope in 1185, i. 337; allows Henry II. to make one of his sons king of Ireland, 338; sends a crown of peacock's feathers, *ib.*; orders the Scottish bishops to Rome, 341; sends legates to crown John, 342; insists on peace between Henry and Philip, *ib.*; dies of grief on hearing of the loss of the cross, 347.
bishop of Llandaff. *See* Llandaff.
Urse, ancestor of Beorn, i. 62.
sheriff of Worcestershire, resists the rebels in 1074, i. 91.
of Freteval. *See* Freteval.
Ursio, chamberlain of the king of France, negotiates a truce, ii. 66.

V.

Vadum S. Remigii. *See* S. Remy.
Valasse, Robert abbot of, goes to Rome on behalf of Henry II., i. 199.
Valencia, kingdom of, in Spain, i. 407, ii. 17.
city of, i. 404; taken by the emperor of Morocco, 201.
Lupus, king of, i. 201.
Valognes, Henry II. at, in 1175, i. 238.
Valoins, Hamo de, a minister of John in Ireland, persecutes the archbishop of Dublin, ii. 111.
Vals, Robert de, commands at Carlisle in 1174, i. 225; agrees to surrender if not relieved, 226; sent to Galloway with Roger Hoveden, 236; an itinerant justice in 1176, 256.
Richard de, his son Ralph slain, i. 341.
Vandotena, island passed by Richard, i. 397.

Varano, part of Johanna's dowry, i. 294.
Vauberge (Wabridge) flight of William de Breauté to, ii. 265.
Vaucouleurs, interview between Henry VI. and Philip arranged for, ii. 33, 34.
Vaudreuil, to be held by Philip during the truce of 1194, ii. 67; conference of Richard and Philip at, 91; taken by Richard, *ib.*; he stays at, in 1195, 93.
Velez (Velet), J. de, a knight of Navarre, i. 278.
Velletri, the pope hears the S. Andrew's case at, i. 327.
Vendome, conference between Henry II. and Lewis VII. at, i. 189; taken by Henry II., 224; Richard goes to, in 1194, ii. 65.
John, count of, adheres to Henry II. and is opposed by his son Bouchard, i. 224, 225.
Bouchard, son of John, count of. *See* Lavardin.
Geoffrey, count of, wounded by the viscount of Châteaudun, i. 366.
Vendres, port of, portus Veneris, in Languedoc, i. 405.
Venere, porto di, passed by Richard, i. 396.
Venice, conference and treaty of Frederick I. and Alexander III. at, i. 302–304; Richard lands between Aquileia and, ii. 24; letter of the duke of, to Richard, 34.
John, patriarch of, i. 132.
Ventadour, viscount of, surrenders his castles to Richard, i. 266.
Verdun, Bertram de, itinerant justice in 1176, i. 256; sent to Spain in 1177, 286; takes charge of Acre in 1191, 457.
Vere, William de, bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
Robert de, earl of Oxford, opposes John in 1215, ii. 225; deserts him in 1216, 231.
Vermandois, Hugh count of, goes on the first crusade, i. 113.
Vermandois—*cont.*
county of, claimed by Philip on the death of the countess, i. 330.
Verneuil, besieged by Lewis VII. in 1173, i. 217; relieved by Henry II., 220; he makes a statute of debts at, 307; besieged by Philip in 1194, ii. 62; relieved by Richard, *ib.*; conference of the kings near, 66; meeting at, in November 1195, 92.
Vernon, Richard de, is with Henry II. at Breteuil in 1173, i. 218.
town of, to be settled on Lewis and Eleanor in 1195, ii. 91; battle between Gameges and, 125; flight of Philip to, 127; he keeps Christmas 1198 at, 139; conference of the kings at, in 1199, *ib.*; another in 1200, 160.
Verona, Alard bishop of, purifies the churches of Acre, i. 452.
the English envoys find the pope and emperor at, i. 333.
Vesci, William de, one of the leaders of the Yorkshire army in 1174, i. 226.
William de, son-in-law of William the Lion, ii. 170.
Eustace de, sent by John to the king of Scots, in 1199, ii. 145; flies to Scotland in 1212, 207; opposes John in 1215, 225; mortally wounded in 1216, 234.
Vesta, city of, settled on queen Johanna, i. 294.
Vexin, the Norman, claimed as Margaret's portion, i. 292, 326; Philip threatens it, 358; offered by Philip to John, ii. 27; to be settled on Lewis and Eleanor, 91; quitclaimed by Richard to Philip, 96; claimed by Philip from John, 149; question of, settled in 1200, 177; boundaries of, i. 292, ii. 149.
the French, Philip claims the fealty of the archbishop of Rouen for, ii. 96; ravaged by Richard in 1198, 127.
Vezelai, appointed as place of meeting for the crusade, i. 367, 381, 389; Phi-

Vezelai—*cont.*
lip and Richard meet at, 394; Hugh de Puiset meets the papal legates in 1192 at, ii. 23.
relics of S. Mary Magdalene at, i. 389.
Vico, part of Johanna's dower, i. 294.
Vienna, Richard arrested at, ii. 21, 24.
Viennais, part of the kingdom of Arles, ii. 43.
Vienne, archbishop of, chosen pope, i. 138.
see of, in the kingdom of Provence, ii. 43.
Villeneuve, near Magalona, i. 405.
Vintimiglia, passed by Richard, i. 396.
Virgil, baths of, at Baiæ, i. 397.
Virgilius, rector of Mepeham in Kent, his rights preserved in the Canterbury agreement, ii. 168.
Vivian, cardinal, sent as legate to Normandy, i. 201; lands in England and is forbidden to proceed to Scotland without swearing not to harm the king, 264; embarks for Ireland at Whithern, 275; is at Downpatrick and Dublin, 275, 276; lands at Chester, 288; goes to Scotland and holds a council at Edinburgh, 291.

W.

Wake, Baldwin, one of Richard's hostages in Germany, ii. 48.
Hugh, justice of the forests in 1198, ii. 130.
Wakefield, miracle of Eustace of Flay at, ii. 188.
Peter of, his prophecy about John, ii. 208; he is imprisoned, *ib.*; terror inspired by him, 209, 210; he is hanged with his son, 212.
Walcher, bishop of Durham. *See* Durham.
Waldemar, king of Denmark. *See* Denmark.
Walden, castle of, surrendered to Stephen by Geoffrey Mandeville, i. 171.
Waldevus, earl, does homage to Henry II. at York, i. 248; is a hostage under the treaty of Falaise, 249.
Wales, anciently called Kambria, i. 4; Rudac, king of, 5; Vortigern flies to, 9; Arthur keeps Pentecost in, 10; bishoprics in, in the time of Augustine, 12; Edgar's triumph in, 15; conquered by Edward I., 18.
kings of, cease to reign in 1093, i. 107.
rebellion in, in 1094, i. 110; invaded by William Rufus, 112; again in 1097, 114; invaded by the earls of Leicester and Shrewsbury, 115; Robert of Belesme builds a castle in, 120; Henry I. secures by bribery, 121; he plants Flemings in, 131; he has a bishop consecrated for, 135, ii. 156; he invades, in 1114, i. 134; and in 1121, 141; the Welsh join earl Robert against Stephen, 168; expeditions of Henry II. to, in 1157, 184; and in 1165, 186; invaded by Geoffrey Fitz Peter in 1198, ii. 124; interdict promulgated in, 199; appeal from, to the pope against John, 206.
Lewelin, prince of, attacked by John, ii. 203; makes a treaty with him, 203, 206; joins the barons against him, 220.
Wales, North, Cadwallo, king of, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
Griffin, king of, ravages Herefordshire in 1052, i. 66; receives Alfgar in his exile and assists him, 70; takes Hereford and burns the church of S. Ethelbert, *ib.*; makes peace, 71; kills bishop Leofgar, and makes peace again in 1056, *ib.*; assists Alfgar again in 1058, 73; attacked by Harold in 1063 and banished by his subjects, 77; is killed in 1064, and his head brought to Edward, 78; killed Griffin, king of South Wales, 79.

Wales, North—*cont.*
Rithwalan and Blethogent, brothers of Griffin, receive his lands and do fealty to Edward and Harold, i. 78; assist Eadric the Wild in 1067, 84.
David ap Owen, prince of, meets Henry II. at Oxford, i. 289; is his brother-in-law, and swears fealty to him, *ib.*
Wales, South, Statius, king of, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
Griffin, king of, killed by Griffin, king of North Wales, i. 79.
Caradoc, son of Griffin, plunders Portskeweth, i. 79.
Rhys, killed at Brecon in 1093, i. 107.
Griffin, son of Rhys, attacks Henry I. in 1116, i. 135; he elects a bishop of Bangor, 139.
Rhys, son of Griffin, meets Henry II. at Oxford in 1177, and swears fealty to him, i. 289; dies in 1197, ii. 108; disturbances following his death, *ib.*
Walkelin, bishop of Winchester. *See* Winchester.
governor of Dover, surrenders to queen Matilda, i. 160.
Wallingford, burnt by the Danes in 1006, i. 29; taken by Swein in 1013, 35; the empress escapes from Oxford to, 170; Stephen besieges and builds a castle against, 173; and in 1152, 177; relieved by Henry of Anjou, 179, 180.
honour of, given to John, i. 371.
castle of, committed at the truce of Winchester to the archbishop of Rouen, i. 463; surrendered treasonably to John in 1193, ii. 27; committed to queen Eleanor, 29.
Walo, the legate, comes to England in 1216, ii. 230; excommunicates Lewis, *ib.*; directs the succession of Henry III., 233; urges the discontented barons to go on crusade, 235; absolves Lewis, 239; examines into the observance of the interdict, 240; recalled, 241; mentioned, 259, 260.
Walter, abbot of Evesham, i. 123.
prior of Inchcolm, ii. 147.
bishop of Hereford. *See* Hereford.
bishop of Rochester. *See* Rochester.
Hubert. *See* Canterbury.
Theobald, brother of archbishop Hubert, surrenders Lancaster castle to Hubert, ii. 52; is made collector of the revenue arising from the tournaments, 74; his Irish lands given to William de Braiose, 179; and redeemed by him, 180.
Waltham, in Essex, Guy, dean of, resigns the deanery, i. 274; the king accepts the resignation, *ib*; he is present at the removal of the canons, 295, 296.
secular canons removed from, i. 274, 295, 296.
Walter de Gant, abbot of, dies in 1201, ii. 183.
the abbot of, a judge delegate in the disputed election to Ely in 1219, ii. 241.
Waltham in Hampshire, Richard comes to, in 1194, ii. 61; makes peace between Longchamp and Geoffrey at, *ib.*; goes from, to Portsmouth, *ib.*
Waltheof, son of earl Siward, goes with William to Normandy in 1067, i. 83; is privy to the conspiracy of 1074, 90; reveals it to Lanfranc, *ib.*; is imprisoned by William, 91; beheaded and buried at Crowland, 92.
earl of Dunbar, a hostage of the treaty of Falaise, i. 248, 249.
Walwain (Gawain), slain, i. 11.
Warci, R. de, envoy of Maurienne, i. 212.
Ward, William, an officer of archbishop Geoffrey, ii. 147.
Wareham, Robert of Belesme imprisoned at, i. 133; held by Robert of Lincoln against Stephen, 160.
Warenne (earls of Surrey):
William de, earl, founder of S. Pancras, Lewes, i. 143.
William de, earl, on Stephen's side at the battle of Lincoln, i. 168.

Warenne (earls of Surrey)—*cont.*
Hamelin, earl, son of Geoffrey of Anjou, one of the treasurers of Richard's ransom, ii. 33 ; carries a sword at the Winchester coronation, 59.
William, earl, swears on John's behalf to satisfy the papal claims in 1213, ii. 210 ; takes his side in 1215, 225 ; deserts him in 1216, 231 ; has charge of the countess of Wight, 254.
Wargrave, manor of, bought by the bishop of Winchester, i. 379 ; resumed by Richard in 1194, ii. 58.
Warkworth, castle of, taken by William the Lion in 1174, i. 225.
Warneville, Ralph of. *See* Lisieux, bishops of.
Warwick, earl of, at Arthur's court, i. 10.
William de Beaumont, earl of, dies in 1184, i. 333.
Henry, earl of, takes John's side in 1215, ii. 225.
Warwickshire, ravaged by Canute, i. 38 ; S. Wulfstan born in, 75 ; visited by the justices in 1176, 256.
Wascuil, Gilbert of, betrays Gisors to Philip, ii. 28.
Waterford, Henry II. visits, i. 202 ; receives the fealty of the Irish kings and prelates at, 202, 203.
given to Robert FitzBernard, i. 205 ; excepted from the authority of the king of Connaught, 253 ; given to Robert le Poer, 290.
see of, i. 203 ; given to bishop Augustine, 254.
Waterville, Ralph de, one of the enemies of the king at Huntingdon in 1174, i. 255.
William de, abbot of Peterborough, deposed, i. 255.
Watlingstreet, so called from the sons of king Watla, i. 34, 35.
Waynore, wife of Arthur, i. 11.
Welf, duke of Bavaria, i. 93.
Welli, Humphrey de, joins in the escalade of Acre, i. 422.
Wells, bishops of :
Alwin, dies in 1005, i. 28.
Living, succeeds in 1005, i. 28 ; called Eastangus or Aelstanus, 28, 34 ; becomes archbishop of Canterbury in 1013, 34.
Ethelwin, succeeds Living, i. 36 ; abbot of Evesham, *ib.* ; has a contest with Brihtwin for the see, *ib.*
Brihtwin (Brithcuin), contests the see with Ethelwin, i. 36.
Merewith or Brihtwy succeeds, i. 36.
Dudeca, a Saxon, i. 36 ; dies in 1060, i. 74.
Gisa, a Lorrainer, succeeds in 1060, i. 74 ; consecrated by pope Nicolas, 74, 87 ; consecrates Lanfranc, 87.
John, joins in the dedication of Salisbury cathedral, i. 106 ; at the council of Westminster in 1102, 121 ; at the consecration of the five bishops, 126 ; bought the city of Bath, 142 ; dies in 1122, *ib.*
Godfrey, chancellor to queen Adeliza, becomes bishop in 1124, i. 143 ; assists at the consecration of bishops, 144 ; at the council of London in 1125, 145 ; and in 1127, 148 ; at the dedication of Canterbury, 152.
Reginald, archdeacon of Salisbury, goes to Rome for Henry II. in 1171, i. 199 ; employed in the Maurienne treaty, 214 ; writes to Henry from Italy, 228 ; consecrated at S. Jean de Maurienne, 231 ; meets the king at Barfleur, *ib.* ; is at the council of Westminster in 1175, 239 ; at Woodstock, 245 ; at that of London in 1177, 288 ; at Richard's coronation walks at his left hand, 374 ; goes to Normandy in February 1190, 390 ; mediates at the peace of Winchester, 462 ; is elected to Canterbury and dies a fortnight after, buried at Bath, ii. 14.
Savaric, archdeacon of Northampton,

Wells, bishops of—*cont.*
made bishop, ii. 40; is at the conference of Richard and the emperor at Mentz, 48; a hostage for Richard, *ib.*; obtains the abbey of Glastonbury, 40; was cousin and chancellor of Henry VI., 112; sent by him to Richard, *ib.*; mediates for archbishop Geoffrey, 133; is deprived of Glastonbury, 140; claims it again after Richard's death, 143; proposes to transfer his see to, *ib.*; dies in 1205, 198.
Jocelin, succeeds in 1206, ii. 198; returns from exile in 1213, 213; assists at the consecration of the bishop of London, 249; absolves the defenders of Bedford, 267; his cruel speech, 268; his argument with Fawkes, 270.
Wenhunwyn, besieges Maud's castle in 1198, ii. 124; and is defeated by the justiciar, 124.
Wenlock, abbey of, founded by Leofric, i. 72; Peter, prior of, *see* S. David's.
Wenneval (Wendeval), William de, entrusted with Tickhill castle at the peace of Winchester, i. 462; is constable of Nottingham when it is besieged by Richard, ii. 53.
Werburga, monastery of, at Chester, i. 72.
Werewell, the wife of Edward the Confessor, sent to, i. 66.
Werk, meeting of William the Lion and Hugh de Puiset near, i. 355.
Wessex, kings of, i. 12, 13; part of Godwin's earldom, 65.
Westfale, Otho IV. keeps Christmas 1198 at, ii. 139.
Westminster, Harold I. buried at, i. 55; church of, dedicated in 1065, 79; William I. crowned at, 83; bishop Ethelric dies at, 89; William keeps Christmas 1074 at, 91; queen Eadgith buried at, *ib.*; Henry son of William I. knighted at, 99; William II. crowned at, 100; also Henry I., 118; council at, in 1102, 121; Henry keeps Whitsuntide 1109 at, 128; burial of queen Matilda at, 137; council of 1125 at, 145; of 1127, 147; of 1163, 185; the younger Henry crowned at, 189; council in 1175 at, 238; in 1176, 260; meeting at, in 1184, for the election of an archbishop, 332; Richard I. crowned at, 373; the archbishop of York comes to, with his cross erect, ii. 22; meeting of the bishops at, to excommunicate John, 51; John crowned at, 146; peace made between the archbishop and chapter of York at, 166; council held at, in 1200, 168; coronation of John and Isabella at, 169; the archbishop directs the fulfilment of the vow of pilgrimage at, 189; Henry III. crowned at, 244; consecration of the bishop of London at, 249; Pandulf resigns his legation at, 251.
Westminster—*cont.*
Westminster abbey, abbots of:
Wulfnoth, i. 63.
Herbert, elected in 1121, i. 140.
vacant in 1175, i. 245; the abbot of, deposed in 1213, ii. 215; William, prior of Frompton, made abbot, 216; he dies in 1222; Richard succeeds, 252.
Westmoreland, visited by itinerant justices in 1176, i. 256; and in 1198, ii. 128; demanded by William the Lion of Richard in 1194, 56; and of John in 1200, 171.
Wexford, visited by Henry II. in 1172, i. 204; given to Robert FitzBernard, 205; excepted from the jurisdiction of the king of Connaught, 253; given to William FitzAldelm, 289.
Wheldrake, Richard Malbysse, has licence to fortify his house at, ii. 16; the citizens of York prevent it, *ib.*
Whitby, Richard, prior of Kirkby, becomes abbot, i. 291; vacant in 1213, ii. 213.

Whitfeld, Robert de, justice in 1189, i. 378.
Whithern, in Galloway, claim of York to the obedience of the bishops of, i. 291.
Christian, bishop of, attends the council of Northampton in 1176, i. 259; at the council of 1177, 280; refuses to attend the legatine council at Edinburgh in 1177, 291; is suspended, but disregards the suspension, *ib.*
John, bishop of, consecrated at Pipewell, i. 378; ordains Geoffrey of York, priest, 379; offers to consecrate the chrism in 1195, at York, ii. 85; is not received there, but does it at Southwell, *ib.*
Wibert, of Ravenna (Clement), antipope to Gregory VII., i. 96; set up in 1080, brought to Rome in 1083, *ib.*; antipope to Urban II., 106; dies in 1100, 117.
Wic, earthquake at, i. 61.
Wic, in Norway, Nicholas, bishop of, compelled to join in the coronation of Swerre Birkbain, ii. 76; fights against him and is beaten, 109.
Wick, in Caithness, visited by Harold the younger in 1196, ii. 101.
Wicklow, given to Hugh de Lacy, i. 290.
Wicumb, restored to Geoffrey by Richard in 1189, i. 387.
Wido, abbot of S. Augustine's, Canterbury, i. 108.
abbot of Pershore, deposed in 1102, i. 121.
dean of Waltham. *See* Waltham.
of Lusignan. *See* Jerusalem.
Widomar, viscount of Limoges. *See* Limoges.
Wigetoft, Ralph of, confesses to have brought forged letters from Rome, ii. 103, 104.
Wight, the Danes winter in 1006 in, i. 29; ravaged by them in 1009, 31; Ethelred takes refuge in, in 1013, 36; Godwin takes refuge there in 1052, 67; ravaged by Tostig in 1066, 80; visited by Harold, *ib.*; taken from Baldwin de Redvers by Stephen, 158; shower of blood in, i. 298; visited by Richard in 1194, ii. 62; John lands in, in 1201, 184.
earl of. *See* Redvers.
countess of, married to Fawkes de Breauté, ii. 253; committed to the earl Warenne, 254.
Wilfrid, bishop. *See* York.
bishop of S. Davids. *See* S. Davids.
William I., king of England, son of duke Robert; became duke in 1035, i. 53; visits Edward the Confessor in 1051, 66; threatens to invade England, 80; lands at Pevensey, 82, and defeats Harold at Hastings, *ib.*; overruns the southern shires, *ib.*; receives the English chiefs at Berkhampstead, *ib.*; is crowned at Westminster, 83; his oath, *ib.*; goes to Normandy in 1067, *ib.*; returns, taxes the country and takes Exeter, 84.
in 1068 has his wife crowned, and builds castles at York, Nottingham, and Lincoln, i. 84.
in 1069, punishes the Northumbrians and devastates the country, i. 85.
in 1070, taxes the English, and searches out the treasures of the monasteries, i. 86; hold councils at Winchester and Windsor, for filling up the sees, 86, 87; makes Lanfranc archbishop of Canterbury, 87; is at the council of Pedreda, 88.
in 1071, attempts to seize Edwin and Morkar, i. 88; captures the isle of Ely, and imprisons the refugees, 89.
in 1072, receives the submission of Malcolm, i. 89.
in 1073, conquers Maine, i. 90.
in 1074, learns from Waltheof the plot of the earls, i. 90; punishes them and imprisons Waltheof, 91; beheads him, 92.

William I.—*cont.*
in 1077, Robert rebels against him, i. 92.
in 1079, is wounded by Robert at Gerberoi, i. 93.
in 1080, devastates Northumberland in revenge for the murder of Walcher, i. 96.
imprisons Odo of Bayeux in 1082, *ib.*; makes Thurstan abbot of Glastonbury, *ib.*; and removes him, 97.
in 1084, levies a Danegeld of six shillings on the hide, i. 97.
levies troops against Canute of Denmark in 1085, 98; gives away three sees, *ib.*
in 1086, orders the Domesday survey, i. 98; knights his son Henry; holds a great council at Salisbury, and takes the fealty of all freeholders, 99.
in 1087, invades France, burns Mantes, releases his prisoners, divides his dominions and dies, i. 99; he made the New Forest, 117; his settlement of the primacy of Canterbury, 378.
William II., Rufus, king of England:
is wounded at Gerberoi, i. 93; receives England in 1087, by bequest of his father, 99; hastens thither, seizes his father's treasures and imprisons Wulfnoth and Morkar, 100; is crowned at Westminster, *ib.*
in 1088, opposed by Robert's friends, i. 100; collects the English against the Normans, 101; takes Tunbridge, *ib.*; besieges bishop Odo at Pevensey, 102.
in 1090, invades Normandy, i. 104; bribes the king of France, *ib.*
in 1091, obtains the county of Eu, i. 104; besieges his brother Henry in Mount S. Michael, 105; on his return to England, marches against Malcolm, *ib.*; brings him to submission, *ib.*; quarrels with Robert, 106.
William II.—*cont.*
in 1092, rebuilds Carlisle, i. 107.
in 1093, falls sick, vows reformation and makes Anselm archbishop, i. 107; refuses to see king Malcolm, *ib.*; is joined by the count of Eu against Robert, 109.
in 1094, is detained by weather at Hastings, and orders the dedication of Battle abbey, i. 109; goes to Normandy, meets Robert and quarrels with him, 110; takes Bures, *ib.*; exacts the travelling money of the English soldiers and sends them home, *ib.*; returns to England in December, *ib.*; invades Wales, *ib.*
in 1095, conspiracy of Robert Mowbray against him, i. 112; besieges Bamborough, *ib.*; takes it and Robert Mowbray, 113; invades Wales, 112.
in 1096, mutilates William of Eu, and hangs William Daldri, i. 113; imprisons the other conspirators, *ib.*; takes Normandy on pledge of Robert, 113, 114.
in 1097, invades Wales, i. 114; makes Edgar king of Scots, *ib.*; and quarrels with Anselm, *ib.*; goes to Normandy, *ib.*
in 1098, subdues Maine, i. 115.
in 1099, makes Ranulf Flambard bishop of Durham, i. 116.
in 1100, is killed, i. 117; portents in his time, 117, 118; he had three bishoprics in his hands at his death, 118; his reign, i. 16.
William, son of Henry I., marries a daughter of Fulk of Anjou, i. 138; does homage to Lewis VI. for Normandy, *ib.*; receives the homage of Normandy, *ib.*; is lost at sea, 139.
William, son of Henry the younger, born and dies, i. 298.
William, bishop of London. *See* London.
bishop of Norwich. *See* Norwich.
William, king of Sicily. *See* Sicily.
William, bishop of Exeter. *See* Exeter.

William, bishop of Durham. *See* Durham.
William, Saint. *See* York.
William the Lion, king of Scots, his sister the countess of Brittany, i. 186; his brother David at the court of Henry II., 188; does homage to the younger Henry, 189; has a promise of Northumberland from him, 215; is at the head of the treason of 1173, 216; makes a truce with the justiciar in 1173, 223; has a conference with Hugh de Puiset, sells him a truce, 225; invades Northumberland, *ib.*; and sends his brother to Leicester, *ib.*; besieges Carlisle, and takes the castles of Northumberland and Westmoreland, 226; besieges Alnwick, *ib.*; is taken prisoner there, 227; is taken to Normandy and imprisoned at Caen and Falaise, 231; has made peace with Henry before his sons, 234; his treaty of Falaise, 248; he comes to York and renews that treaty, 247; his barons swear fealty to the Henries, 248; attends the council at Northampton, 259; brings Gilbert of Galloway to do homage to Henry, 269; comes to Henry in Normandy to answer his bishops, 311; the pope forbids the compromise, 312; Donald, son of William, son of Duncan, rebels against him, 315; his ministers excommunicated, *ib.*; and himself, *ib.*; is excommuuicated when the archbishop dies, 316; sends to Lucius III. for absolution, *ib.*; the pope's messengers try to reconcile him to bishop John, 318; but in vain, 319; is summoned to a council at London, to promote a crusade, 335; marries Ermengard of Beaumont, 340; receives the castle of Edinburgh as her dower, *ib.*; his enemy Donald killed, 344; he offers to compound for the Saladin tithe, 355; has an interview with Hugh de Puiset thereon, *ib.*; obtains a letter of Clement III. to, exempting the Scottish church, 363; is conducted by Geoffrey of York to Richard at Canterbury, 384; makes a treaty with Richard, recovers his castles, and is freed from the terms of the treaty of Falaise, 385; meets Richard at Clipstone in 1194, ii. 56; spends Palm Sunday at Worksop, *ib.*; at Malton demands the counties of Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Northumberland, *ib.*; is at Geddington, and goes thence to Northampton, *ib.*; Richard refuses his request, *ib.*; treaty for safe and honourable conduct and maintenance at court for, 57; quarrels with the bishop of Durham about lodgings, 58; carries a sword at the Winchester coronation, 59; offers to purchase Northumberland and the castles, 60; after a third rebuff, returns to Scotland, 61; is sick at Clackmannan, 89; proposes to marry Otho of Saxony to his daughter, and make him his heir, *ib.*; treats with Hubert Walter about it, but does not decide, 95; has a war with Harold, earl of Orkney, 100; comes to Nairn, *ib.*; arrests Harold, 101; releases him, *ib.*; sells Caithness to Reginald, *ib.*; introduces the oath of the peace into his dominions, 114; sends to John to ask for the northern counties, 147; refuses to meet John at Nottingham, *ib.*; orders the bridge of Berwick to be rebuilt, 151; is warned by S. Margaret, at Dunfermline, not to invade England, 153; comes to Lincoln and does homage to John, 170, 171; demands the northern counties, is put off and goes home, 171; puts Alan Fitzwalter under sureties, 173, 174; keeps Christmas 1200, at Lanark, 180;

William the Lion—*cont.*
and Easter at Karel, 183; negotiates again with John about the counties, 184; his sister Margaret dies, 189; his first-born son Alexander born and baptized, in 1198, 125; promised a wife by king Philip, 169, 189; attacked by John in 1209, 200; puts himself under John's protection in 1212, 206; his enemy Mac William hanged, *ib.*; dies in 1214, 217; his daughter marries Hubert de Burgh, 251.

William of Champagne, archbishop of Sens and Rheims; as archbishop of Sens, goes to Rome and demands the excommunication of Henry II., i. 190; letter of, to the pope after the death of Becket, 197; his share in procuring the arrangement for the surrender of Verneuil, 218; proposes a conference between Henry and Lewis, 219; acts as surety for Lewis VII. at Malaunai, 232; arranges for a conference at Gisors, *ib.*; is translated to Rheims in 1176, 268; makes a second pilgrimage to Canterbury in 1181, 315; has a legacy from archbishop Roger, 316; mediates between Philip and Henry in 1189, 364; visits Henry at Saumur, 366; mediates between Philip and the emperor in 1193, ii. 33; mediates for peace in 1193, between Richard and Philip, 38; Driencourt and Arques placed in his hands, 39; divorces Philip from his Danish wife, 43; is at a conference at Vaudreuil in 1194, 64; and at Verneuil in 1195, 93; complaint of the Danish envoys against him, 94, 143.

Wilton, taken by Swein in 1003, i. 28.

Wiltshire, ravaged in 1010 and 1011 by the Danes, i. 32, 33; by Canute in 1015, 38; visited by itinerant justices in 1176, 256.

Winchcomb, great storm at, i. 105;

Winchcomb—*cont.*
Godric, abbot of, 70; Godfrey, abbot of, in 1125, 145; Robert, abbot of, dies, and Thomas succeeds in 1221, ii. 249.

Winchelsea, Henry II. lands at, in January 1188, i. 354.

Winchester, Ethelwulf buried at, i. 13; besieged by Swein in 1013, 35; Canute buried at, 53; queen Emma resides at, *ib.*; Harold seizes Canute's treasures at, *ib.*; Edward crowned at, 58; queen Emma plundered at, *ib.*; queen Emma dies and is buried at, 66; earl Godwin dies and is buried in the old minster at, 69; Wulfsy bishop of Dorchester dies at, 83; council in 1070 at, 86; queen Edgitha dies at, 91; Waltheof beheaded at, 92; William Rufus seizes the treasures of his father at, 100; he is buried in the old minster at, 117; Robert threatens, in 1101, 120; the new minster removed outside the walls of, 131; election of bishops at, 134; council at, in 1139, 163; threatened by the empress, 170; battle at, *ib.*; peace made between Stephen and Henry at, 181; coronation of Henry II. at, 185; second coronation of the younger Henry at, 205; Henry II. visited by cardinal Hugeszun at, 254; he holds council there, *ib.*; keeps Easter 1176 at, 262; the Sicilian envoys visit Johanna at, 263; council at, 264; another summoned in 1177, 298; the relics of S. Petrock brought to, 300; Henry II. stays at, 304; and at Christmas 1181 317; the duchess of Saxony bears a son at, 330; Geoffrey bishop of Ely dies at, 372; the citizens perform the offices of the kitchen at the coronation of Richard, 375; pacification between John and Longchamp at, 462; Richard determines to be crowned at, ii. 56; he takes the

Winchester—*cont.*
castle of, from the bishop, 58; he is crowned at, *ib.*; the citizens of, perform the service of the kitchen at this coronation, 60; stay of Richard at, 60, 61; John absolved at, 213; he goes to, in 1215, 228; taken by Lewis, 229; recovered by the legate in 1217, 236; Henry III. keeps Whitsunday 1221 at, 250, 259.
Winchester, Robert, abbot of the new minster at, dies in 1008, i. 115.
Godfrey, abbot of the new minster at, dies, i. 143.
the abbot of, has charge of Adam the vice-chancellor, i. 267.
bishops of:
Elphege II. is translated to Canterbury in 1006, i. 29. *See* Canterbury.
Kenulf, succeeds in 1006, i. 29.
Ethelwold, succeeds, and dies in 1015, i. 38.
Elfsige, i. 38.
Elfwin, Aldwin, succeeds, i. 38; dies 1047, 61.
Stigand, becomes bishop of Winchester in 1047, i. 61. *See* Canterbury.
Walkelin, appointed by the Conqueror in 1070, i. 87; consecrated, *ib.*; attends at the dedication of Salisbury cathedral, 106; dies in 1098, 115.
William Giffard, i. 121; elect of Winchester, refuses to be consecrated by the archbishop of York, 122; and is banished, *ib.*; accompanies Anselm to Rome, *ib.*; consecrated in 1107, 125; assists in the consecration of two bishops in 1108, 127, 128; and at the consecration of archbishop William, 142; is at the council of 1127, 148; is ordered to remove the new minster at Winchester without the walls in 1111, 131; dies in 1128, 152.
Henry of Blois, papal legate, i. 163; brother of Stephen, *ib.*; holds a council at Winchester in 1139, *ib.*;
Winchester—*cont.*
receives the empress, 169; is besieged by her, 170; and sends for the queen's army, *ib.*; holds a council at London for the defence of the clergy in 1143, 171; goes to Rome to ask for the renewal of his legation, *ib.*; negotiates peace between Stephen and Henry in 1153, 181.
Richard of Ilchester, bishop of, is consecrated in 1174, i. 236; at the council of Westminster in 1175, 239; attends a council at Woodstock, 245; attests the treaty with the king of Connaught, 253; sent to Normandy as justiciar, 268; attests Henry's acts at Verneuil, 307; dies in 1188, 363.
Godfrey de Lucy, bishop of, carries the cap at Richard's coronation, 373; is nominated to Winchester at the council of Pipewell, 377; buys Meon and Wargrave of the king, 379; is consecrated, 383; goes to Normandy in March 1190, 390; mediates at the peace of Winchester, 462; is dispossessed of the castle and county of Winchester by Richard, ii. 58; and of the manors he had bought, *ib.*; sent by Richard to expostulate with Geoffrey of York, 133; at the Lincoln homage, 171; dies in 1204, 197.
Peter des Roches, succeeds in 1204, ii. 197; stays in England when the rest of the bishops go into exile, 202; ordered to execute the pope's letters of excommunication against the barons, 223; lays hands on the young king Henry III., 233; is made his guardian, 233, 259; is at the translation of S. Wulfstan, 240; takes the cross, 250; goes to Compostella, 260; excuses Fawkes de Breauté, 265.
Windsor, council at, in 1070, i. 87; Robert Mowbray imprisoned at, 113; the bishop of Durham dies at, *ib.*;

Windsor—*cont.*
Theulf, bishop of Worcester, nominated at, 133; archbishop Ralph elected at, 134; Henry I. keeps Christmas 1126 at, 147; also in 1133, 153.
Henry II. keeps Easter 1170 at, i. 188; holds a council at, in 1175, 252; and keeps Christmas 1175 at, 256; he meets the Spanish envoys at, 277; keeps Christmas 1184 at, 334; John is knighted at, 336; Longchamp proceeds from, to London, in 1191, ii. 5; assize of the Exchequer published at, 179.
castle of, confided to Hugh de Puiset, i. 388; he is compelled to resign it to Longchamp, 393; it is confided, by the peace of Winchester, to the earl of Arundel, 463; surrendered to the archbishop of Rouen, ii. 6; treasonable surrender to John in 1193, 27; besieged by the justices, 28; delivered to queen Eleanor, 29; besieged by Lewis in 1216, 230; relieved by John, 231.
Winidi, Wirtgeorn, king of the, i. 48, 59.
Wirecestre. *See* Worcester.
Wirtgeorn, king of the Winidi, i. 48, 49.
Wiscard, Robert, his history, ii. 10, 11; his war with the two emperors and the pope, 10; he built a tower near Mileto, i. 409.
Roger. *See* Sicily.
Wiscardi portus, ii. 10, 11.
Witham, charterhouse at, i. 339.
Witsand, the English court and king land there in 1185, i. 336; Henry II. lands at, in 1187, 343; archbishop Geoffrey crosses from, in 1191, ii. 3.
Philip of Poictiers at, in 1201, ii. 181.
Witton, manor of, purchased by Hugh de Puiset for his son Henry, i. 288.
Woodstock, death of Robert bishop of Lincoln at, i. 142; election of the
Woodstock—*cont.*
abbot of Abingdon in 1130 at, 153; Henry keeps Easter 1132 at, *ib.*
council at, in 1175, for the election of abbots, i. 245; William the Lion married at, 340; Richard visits, in 1194, ii. 58; Godstow is near, 14.
assize of, ii. 133.
Worcester, Leofsi is buried at S. Mary's, i. 52; murder of Hardicanute's huscarls at, 57; his severity there, *ib.*; earthquake at, 61; monastery of, endowed by Leofric, 72; promotions of Wulstan at, 74–76; property of, claimed from the see of York, 88; attacked by the men of Hereford, 102; S. Wulfstan bids the bishop to his funeral at, 111; Sampson made bishop of, 113; death of the prior of, 133; city and churches burnt in 1113, *ib.*; see of, claimed as subject to York, 244; narrow escape of Gilbert Plumpton at, 330, 331.
John keeps Easter 1200 at, ii. 159; he is buried at, 232.
Ralph of, surrenders Nottingham, ii. 53, 54.
Philip of, surrenders Nottingham to Richard, ii. 53, 54; his lands given by John to William de Braoise; he recovers part, 179, 180.
Worcestershire, Sherstone situate in, i. 40; visited by the itinerant justices in 1176, 256.
Worcester, bishops of:
Leofsi, dies at Kempsey in 1033, i. 52; buried at Worcester, *ib.*
Brichtege, abbot of Pershore, nephew of Wulfstan, succeeds in 1033, i. 52; ordains S. Wulfstan, 75; dies in 1038, 55.
Living, succeeds in 1038, holds the sees of Crediton and Cornwall also, i. 55; is accused of the death of the Etheling Alfred, 56; deprived of the see of Worcester, *ib.*; restored, *ib.*; assists in the promotion of Ed-

Worcester, bishops of—*cont.*
ward the Confessor, 58; dies in 1046, 60.
Elfric, archbishop of York, governs the diocese of Worcester for a year, during Living's disgrace in 1040, i. 56, 57.
Aldred, abbot of Tavistock, succeeds in 1046, i. 60. *See* York.
Wulfstan II. succeeds in 1062, i. 74; his birth and early education, 75; becomes prior of Worcester, *ib.*; is elected and consecrated bishop, 75, 76; makes profession to Stigand, 76; submits to the Conqueror, 82; reclaims the rights of the see of Worcester from York, in the council of Winchester, 88; obtains a settlement of the dispute, *ib.*; resists the rebellion of the earls in 1074, 91; ordains Robert, afterwards bishop of Hereford, 93; defends Worcester in 1088, 103; dies in 1095, 111; appears to the bishop of Hereford after death, *ib.*; canonized, ii. 196; translated in 1218, 240.
Sampson, consecrated by Anselm in 1096, i. 113; dedicates Gloucester abbey, 117; is at the council of Westminster in 1102, 121; dies in 1112, 133.
Theulf, chaplain to Henry I., nominated in 1113 at Windsor, i. 133; consecrated in 1115, 134; dies in 1123, 143.
Simon, a clerk of queen Adeliza, made bishop in 1125, i. 143, 144; inthrones the bishop of Coventry, 152; ordains abbots of Evesham and Gloucester, 153.
Alfred, dies in 1160, i. 185.
Roger, consecrated in 1163, i. 186; goes to Rome on behalf of Henry II. in 1171, i. 197, 199; assists at the second coronation of the younger Henry, 206; at the council of London in 1175, 239; is at the council of Woodstock in 1175, 246; and the council at London in 1177, 280.
Baldwin, saves Gilbert Plumpton from the gallows, i. 330, 331; is elected to Canterbury, 331. *See* Canterbury.
William de Northale, appointed in 1186 and consecrated, i. 340; is at Richard's coronation, 373.
Henry de Soilli, abbot of Glastonbury, nominated to the see of Worcester in 1193, ii. 40; dies in 1195, 94.
John of Coutances, dean of Rouen, succeeds to Worcester, ii. 94; sent by Richard to archbishop Geoffrey to propose terms to him, 133; dies in 1198, 138.
Mauger, a clerk of Richard, succeeds, ii. 138; procures the canonization of S. Wulfstan, 196; dies in 1212, 208; see vacant in 1213, 213.
Walter de Gray the chancellor, consecrated in 1214, ii. 217; translated to York, 227.
Silvester, succeeds in 1215, ii. 232; dedicates his cathedral, 240; dies, *ib.*
William of Blois, succeeds in 1218, ii. 240.
Worcester, Ranulf, prior of, made abbot of Evesham, ii. 216.
Silvester, prior of, becomes bishop, ii. 232.
Worksop, Richard visits, ii. 56.
Worms, council at, in 1077, i. 92; bishop of, supports Rudolf of Swabia, 93; battle near, in 1078, *ib.*
Richard meets the emperor at, ii. 35.
Wulfeage, son of Elfhelm, slain, i. 29.
Wulfgeva, mother of S. Wulfstan, i. 75.
Wulfhere, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Wulfnoth, father of Godwin, i. 30.
Wulfnoth, minister of the South Saxons, accused to Ethelred II. by Brictric, i. 30; burns the king's ships, *ib.*
son of Godwin, hostage in Normandy, released by William I. before his

Wulfnoth—*cont.*
death, i. 99, 100; imprisoned again by William Rufus, *ib.*
Wulfric, killed at Rigmere, i. 32.
Wulfruna, mother of Elfgiva of Northampton, i. 52.
Wulfstan, archbishop of York. *See* York.
Wulfstan, Saint. *See* Worcester.
Wulfstan, made abbot of Gloucester in 1058, i. 73.
Wulfsy, bishop of Lichfield. *See* Lichfield.
abbot of Ramsey, killed at Assandun, i. 43.
an incluse, persuades Wulfstan to accept the see of Worcester, i. 76.
Wulfwy, bishop of Dorchester. *See* Dorchester.
Würzburg, Bruno, bishop of, dies, i. 53; Marianus becomes a recluse at, 75; bishop of, supports Rudolf of Swabia, 93; Henry IV. defeated near, 98; Albero and Mainard bishops of, *ib.*
Wye, in Kent, miracle of Eustace of Flay at, ii. 165.

Y.

Yarmouth, very low tide at, in 1114, i. 134.
York, built by Ebraucus, i. 4; battle of Severus at, 8; earl of, at Arthur's court, 10; held by Osbert, 12; metropolitical dignity granted to, 19; grant of Athelstan to, 13; death of Wulfstan at, 47; death of Siward at, 70; of Kinsy at, 74; murder of Gamel and Ulf at, 79; battles of Harold Hardrada near, 81; gives hostages to him, *ib.*; William builds a castle at, in 1068, 84; archbishop Aldred is buried at, 85; burned by the Norman garrison, *ib.*; devastation of the neighbourhood, *ib.*; Turgot consecrated at, 128; Henry II. holds a council at,
York—*cont.*
in which the treaty of Falaise is confirmed, 247-250; Robert, master of the schools of, drowned, 308; archbishop Roger buried at, 316; assessed for the Saladin tithe, 355; persecution of the Jews at, 391; visit of Longchamp to, 392; Benedict the Jew of, 375; disputes of Geoffrey with the dean and canons, *see* Geoffrey, archbishop of York; visit of Hubert Walter as legate to, ii. 87; council of, 88; he keeps Christmas 1195 at, 95; earthquake at, 180; John spends Midlent 1201 at, 181; visit of Eustace of Flay to, 187; the king of Scots married at, 249.
York, archbishops of:
Paulinus, i. 20, 23.
Chad, i. 21.
Wilfrid, i. 21.
Bosa, i. 21.
John of Beverley, i. 21, 360.
Wilfrid II., i. 21.
Egbert, i. 21.
Albert, i. 21.
Eanbald I., i. 21.
Eanbald II., i. 21.
Wulfsy, i. 21.
Wimund, i. 21.
Wulfhere, i. 21.
Ethelbald, i. 22.
Lodeward, i. 22.
Wulfstan, i. 22.
Oskytel, i. 22.
Ethelwulf, i. 22.
Oswald, i. 22.
Aldulf, abbot of Peterborough, made bishop of Worcester and archbishop of York, i. 22.
Wulfstan, Wulstan II., succeeds Aldulf, i. 22; dedicates Canute's church at Assandun, 46; dies at York in 1023 and is buried at Ely, 47; Brithege bishop of Worcester was his nephew, 52.
Elfric, Alfric, provost of Winchester,

York, archbishops of—*cont.*
succeeds Wulfstan in 1023, i. 22, 47; goes to Rome for his pall, 47; is sent by Hardicanute to disinter Harold I., 56; accepts the bishopric of Worcester in 1040, *ib.*; and loses it in 1042, *ib.*; troubles there during his rule, 57; assists at the coronation of Edward the Confessor, 58; dies at Southwell in 1051, and is buried at Peterborough, 64.
Kinsy, chaplain to Edward the Confessor, succeeds in 1051, i. 22, 64; dies at York in 1060, 74; and is buried at Peterborough, *ib.*
Aldred, Ealdred, abbot of Tavistock, becomes bishop of Worcester in 1046, i. 22, 60; reconciles Swein, the son of Godwin, to Edward, 63; goes to Rome in 1050, 64; makes Godric abbot of Winchcomb, 69, 70; administers the see of Hereford, 71; and that of Ramsbury, 73; makes Ethelwin Oddo a monk, 72; dedicates Gloucester abbey and blesses abbot Wulfstan, 73; goes through Hungary to Jerusalem in 1058, *ib.*; resigns Ramsbury, *ib.*; is elected to York in 1060, 74; resigns Hereford, *ib.*; goes to Rome and receives the pall, 22, 74; consecrates S. Wulfstan to Worcester, 75; crowns Harold, 80; sets up Edgar Atheling as king, 82; submits to William at Berkhampstead, *ib.*; crowns him at Westminster, 83; consecrates queen Matilda, 84; dies of grief in 1069, 85; his boldness, i. 22.
Thomas I., canon of Bayeux, appointed by William I. in 1070, i. 22, 87; consecrated by Lanfranc, 88; restores the property of the church of Worcester, 88; goes to Rome for his pall, *ib.*; consecrates William bishop of Durham, 96; consecrates Scottish bishops, 23;
York, archbishops of—*cont.*
claims the city of Lincoln as in the province of York, i. 23, 106; consecrates Ranulf Flambard to Durham, 116; dies in 1100, 119; his nephew becomes archbishop in 1108, 127.
Gerard, bishop of Hereford, becomes archbishop in 1100, i. 23, 119; attends the council of Westminster in 1102, 121; is ordered to consecrate the bishops invested by Henry I., 122; they refuse, *ib.*; makes his submission to Anselm in 1107, 125; joins in the consecration of the five bishops, 126; dies in 1108, 127.
Thomas II., nephew of Thomas I., elected in 1108, i. 23, 127; joins in the canons made by Anselm in 1108, 126; is consecrated in 1109, 128; receives the pall and consecrates Turgot to S. Andrews, *ib.*; consecrates Scottish bishops, 23; his death in 1114, 133.
Thurstan, Turstan, Turstin, chaplain to Henry I., elected to York in 1114, i. 23, 134; dispute on the obedience due to Canterbury from him, 135; the king refuses to accept him as elect, *ib.*; he goes to Normandy with the king, 136; is at the council of Rheims, *ib.*; and there consecrated by the pope, *ib.*; is at the council of London in 1125, 145; claims equality with Canterbury, 147; consecrates Robert to S. Andrews, 150; raises the Yorkshiremen against the Scots in 1138, 160; is represented at the battle of the Standard by the bishop of Orkney, *ib.*; dies in 1140, 23.
S. William, his tomb, i. 390.
Roger of Pont l'Evêque, crowns the younger Henry in 1170, i. 189; is suspended by the pope, 190, 191; goes to Normandy, 191; his constable Randulf Tilli, 226; he aids to subduing the north, 228; his quarrel with archbishop Richard

York, archbishops of—*cont.*
begins, 386; his clerks at the council of Westminster claim several sees as suffragan, 244; appeal on his behalf to the pope against the archbishop of Canterbury, 244; discussion of his claims before the legate at Winchester, 254; concludes a truce with the archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; entertains cardinal Hugeszun at York, 256; at Northampton in 1176, claims the subjection of the Scottish bishops, 259; struggles with the archbishop of Canterbury at the council of Westminster, 260; accuses the bishop of Ely of assault, 261; is reconciled with him, and makes a truce of five years with the archbishop of Canterbury, *ib.*; his illness in 1177, 280; is at Geddington, 287; takes charge of Scarborough castle, 288; claims on Galloway, 291; his nephew Geoffrey made chancellor, 266; his nephew lost at sea, 308; summons the clergy of S. Andrews to obey bishop John, 315; places Scotland under interdict, *ib.*; makes his will, dies, and is buried, 316; the king forbids the execution of his will, 317; is said to have given the treasurership of York to Hamo, 379.

Geoffrey, son of Henry II.; as elect of Lincoln; takes Axholm in 1174, i. 228; and Malzeard, *ib.*; fortifies Topcliffe, *ib.*; his election to Lincoln confirmed, 246; he resigns his election to Lincoln, and is made chancellor in 1181, 310, 311; is nominated to the see of York in 1189, 372; elected, but opposed by Hubert Walter and others, *ib.*; archbishop Baldwin claims the right of consecrating him, 378; objects to Richard's appointments at York, *ib.*; and is dispossessed, *ib.*; is

York, archbishops of—*cont.*
ordained priest, *ib.*; comes to York, 380; refuses to admit Henry Marshall as dean, *ib.*; conducts the king of Scots to Canterbury, 384; appealed against by Hubert Walter, 386; appointment confirmed by the legate, *ib.*; forbids the bishop of Durham to bless the abbot of Selby, *ib.*; purchases Richard's goodwill, 387; has his estates restored and confirmed, and is reconciled with his enemies, *ib.*; goes to York, and has a new quarrel with the dean, 389; excommunicates the dean and treasurer, 390; swears not to return to England for three years, 391; excommunicates the treasurer of York, 423; queen Eleanor pleads his cause at Rome, 435; is consecrated at Tours, returns home, and is arrested at Dover, ii. 3; is released, complains to the barons against Longchamp, 4; comes to London in Lent, 1192, and carries his cross erect, 22; takes the oath of fealty to Richard, *ib.*; grants Clementhorp priory to Godstow, *ib.*; raises a force against John, 28; accuses the justices of treason, *ib.*; gives the deanery of York to his brother Peter, 41; gives it to Simon of Apulia, *ib.*; gives it to Philip of Poictiers, *ib.*; appeals to the pope against the election of Simon, 42; comes to York in January 1194, and places new clerks in the minster, 46; judges appointed at Rome to hear the charges made by him and the chapter mutually, 47; objects to the archbishop of Canterbury bearing his cross erect at Nottingham, 53; attends the council of Nottingham, 54; purchases the sheriffdom of Yorkshire, *ib.*; complaints made against him to the king, 55; Baugi and Langes restored to him, 61; is reconciled

York, archbishops of—*cont.*
with the bishop of Ely, 60; Hubert Walter, as justiciar, sends judges to hear the complaints made at York against him, 68; he is summoned, and dispossessed of his lands, excepting Ripon, 69; return of the complainants from Rome, 77; purchases the king's peace, 78; his improper use of his father's seal, 79; he is restored by the king, 78, 79; his servants forbid the dean to enter the church, 82; his suffragan refused admission at York, 85; his nominee to the archdeaconry of the West Riding refused by the dean, 88; the canons petition Hugh of Lincoln to pass sentence on, 94; he refuses, *ib.*; he answers the charges of his enemies, and is restored by the pope, 99; is forbidden by Richard to resume the government of the diocese, *ib.*; is accused of attempting to poison the dean, 103, 104; comes into Normandy, and again arranges matters with Richard, 120; but is outbid by the dean and canons, *ib.*; meets his enemies at Andely, 123; they refuse to submit to arbitration, *ib.*; Richard offers to restore him if he will promise to refrain from ecclesiastical censures, 133; pope Innocent III. decides in his favour, 134; John directs the restoration of his estates, 147; he returns to Rome, 148; consents to a new arbitration, 151; Hubert Walter takes part against him, 152; he makes peace with all his enemies in 1200, 166, 167; is again dispossessed, 169; excommunicates the sheriff of Yorkshire, *ib.*; is restored by the king, but ordered to give account of his behaviour, 170; had forbidden his men to pay carucage, *ib.*; his servant imprisoned at Beverley, 180; has a new quarrel with the dean about the archdeaconry of Cleveland, 181; is pardoned by John for 1,000*l.*, 184; receives Eustace of Flay at York, 187; has a quarrel with the dean about the provostship of Beverley, 189; goes into exile in 1207, 199; dies in 1212, 208; see vacant in 1213, 213.

Walter Grey, bishop of Worcester (*see* Worcester), translated to York, ii. 227, 232; marries Alexander of Scotland to Johanna, 249.

York, deans of. *See* Robert Butevilein, Hubert Walter, archbishop of Canterbury, Henry Marshall, bishop of Exeter, Simon of Apulia.

York, treasurers of. *See* John, archbishop of Lyons; Ralph de Warneville, bishop of Lisieux; Geoffrey, archbishop of York; Bouchard de Puiset; Hamo.

York, precentor of. *See* Hamo; Arundel, Reginald.

York, archdeacons of the West Riding of. *See* Ralph, Adam of Thornovere; Peter of Dinan, Peter.

York, Robert of, chosen bishop of Ely, ii. 241; opposed by the archdeacon of Norwich, and loses his election, *ib.*

York, abbots of S. Mary's at,
Clement, dies in 1184, i. 333.
Robert, deposed in 1195, ii. 87.
Robert Longchamp, made abbot in 1197, ii. 105.

Yorkshire, sheriffs of. *See* Robert Stuteville, Ranulf Glanvill, Reiner, Osbert Longchamp, Geoffrey archbishop, Hugh Bardulf, James of Potern, William Stuteville.
visited by the justices in 1176, i. 256; in 1194, ii. 68; managed by John de Lacy in 1215, 224.

Ypres, William of, commands on Stephen's side at the battle of Lincoln, i. 168; maintains his cause in Kent, 169;

Ypres, William of—*cont.*
summoned by the bishop of Winchester against the empress, 170.
Yre, earl of Northumbria under Canute, i. 45.
Ytenea, the New Forest anciently called, i. 117.
Yveri, castle of, surrendered to Henry II., i. 305; peace of, 305, 306.
Waleran of, i. 305.
Yxning, marriage of Earl Ralph at, i. 90.

Z.

Zaccarias (Akarius), abbot of Peterborough, appointed, ii. 160; dies in 1210, 201.
Zara, in Dalmatia, ii. 21.
Zether, a king killed by Swerre Birkbain, ii. 77.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[.—750.—2/73.]

CATALOGUE

OF

RECORD PUBLICATIONS

ON SALE

BY

Messrs. Longman & Co., and Messrs. Trübner & Co., London;
Messrs. James Parker & Co., Oxford and London;
Messrs. Macmillan & Co., Cambridge and London;
Messrs. A. & C. Black, Edinburgh;
and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Calendars of State Papers, &c. - - - - -	3
Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages - - - - -	9
Publications of the Record Commissioners, &c. - -	26
Works Published in Photozincography - - -	31

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

[IMPERIAL 8vo., cloth. *Price* 15*s.* each Volume or Part.]

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the present Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most "complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional "point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the "want of proper Calendars and Indexes."

Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls :—

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 Vols. 1865.

This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, ELIZABETH, and JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. I. and II.), and MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN, (Vols. III.–XII.). 1856–1872.

Vol. I.—1547–1580.
Vol. II.—1581–1590.
Vol. III.—1591–1594.
Vol. IV.—1595–1597.
Vol. V.—1598–1601.
Vol. VI.—1601–1603, with Addenda, 1547–1565.
Vol. VII.—Addenda, 1566–1579.
Vol. VIII.—1603–1610.
Vol. IX.—1611–1618.
Vol. X.—1619–1623.
Vol. XI.—1623–1625, with Addenda, 1603–1625.
Vol. XII.—Addenda, 1580–1625.

These Calendars render accessible to investigation a large and important mass of historical materials. The Northern Rebellion of 1566–67 ; the plots of the Catholic fugitives in the Low Countries ; the numerous designs against Queen Elizabeth and in favour of a Catholic succession ; the Gunpowder-plot ; the rise and fall of Somerset ; the Overbury murder ; the disgrace of Sir Edward Coke ; the rise of the Duke of Buckingham, &c. Numerous other subjects are illustrated by Papers, few of which have been previously known.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. 1858–1869.

Vol. I.—1625–1626.
Vol. II.—1627–1628.
Vol. III.—1628–1629.
Vol. IV.—1629–1631.
Vol. V.—1631–1633.
Vol. VI.—1633–1634.
Vol. VII.—1634–1635.
Vol. VIII.—1635.
Vol. IX.—1635–1636.
Vol. X.—1636–1637.
Vol. XI.—1637.
Vol. XII.—1637–1638.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. ; and WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1871.

Vol. XIII.—1638–1639.

This Calendar of the Domestic State Papers of the reign of Charles I. presents notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers relative to the history of the period to which it refers. Many of them have been hitherto unknown.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860–1866.

Vol. I.—1660–1661.
Vol. II.—1661–1662.
Vol. III.—1663–1664.
Vol. IV.—1664–1665.
Vol. V.—1665–1666.
Vol. VI.—1666–1667.
Vol. VII.—1667.

Seven volumes, of the period between 1660 and 1667, have been published.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603 ; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592 ; and the State

Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

These two volumes of State Papers relate to Scotland, and embrace the period between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are notices of the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860–1867.

Vol. I.—1509–1573. | Vol. II.—1574–1585.

The above have been published under the editorship of Mr. Hans Claude Hamilton; another volume is in the press.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by the* Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. I.—1603–1606. 1872.

This series is in continuation of the Irish State Papers commencing with the reign of Henry VIII.; but, for the reign of James I., the Papers are not confined to those in the Public Record Office of England.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860–1870.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.
Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1617–1621.

These volumes include an analysis of early Colonial Papers in the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862–1872.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.
Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515–1518.
Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519–1523.
Vol. IV., Part 1.—1524–1526.
Vol. IV., Part 2.—1526–1528.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547–1553. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister, at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553–1558. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and

Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest.

A valuable series of Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merits a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. The domestic affairs of England are of course passed over in these volumes, which treat only of its relations with foreign powers.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863–1870.

Vol. I.—1558–1559.
Vol. II.—1559–1560.
Vol. III.—1560–1561.
Vol. IV.—1561–1562.
Vol. V.—1562.
Vol. VI.—1563.
Vol. VII.—1564–1565.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., B.A., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. VIII.—1566–1568. 1871.

These eight volumes contain a Calendar of the Foreign Correspondence during the early portion of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, deposited in the Public Record Office, &c. They illustrate not only the external but also the domestic affairs of Foreign Countries during that period.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1868–1871.

Vol. I.—1557–1696.
Vol. II.—1697–1702.

The above Papers connected with the affairs of the Treasury comprise petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State, grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c. They illustrate civil and military events, finance, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. 1867–1871.

Vol. I.—1515–1574.
Vol. II.—1575–1588
Vol. III.—1589–1600.
Vol. IV.—1601–1603.
Vol. V.—Book of Howth; Miscellaneous.

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland deposited in the Lambeth Library are not only unique in themselves, but are of great importance. Five volumes of the Calendar of these valuable Papers have been published which cannot fail to be welcome to all students of Irish history. Another volume is in the press.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. 1862–1868.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.
Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509–1525
Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain, and the corresponding

portion removed from Simancas to Paris. Mr. Bergenroth also visited Madrid, and examined the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katharine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864–1871.

Vol. I.—1202–1509.	Vol. III.—1520–1526
Vol. II.—1509–1519.	Vol. IV.—1527–1533.

Mr. Rawdon Brown has published four volumes of his Calendar, extending from 1202 to 1533, and has made considerable progress in the fifth volume. Mr. Brown's researches have brought to light a number of valuable documents relating to the various periods of English history, and his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FŒDERA. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. I.—Will. I.–Edw. III.; 1066–1377. Vol. II., Ric. II.–Chas. II.; 1377–1654. 1869–1873.

The "Fœdera," or "Rymer's Fœdera," is a collection of miscellaneous documents illustrative of the History of Great Britain and Ireland, from the Norman Conquest to the reign of Charles II. Several editions of the "Fœdera" have been published, and the present Syllabus was undertaken to make the contents of this great National Work more generally known.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price 2s. 6d.*

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price 2s. 6d.*

In the Press.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. III.—1586, &c.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. Vol. VI.—1603–1624.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. XIV.—1639.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. V.—1534–1554.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. Hen. VIII.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by the* Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. II.—1606, &c.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. IV., Part 3.—1529, &c.

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FŒDERA. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. III.—Appendix and Index.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. Vol. III.—1702–1706.

In Progress.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. IV.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1622, &c. Vol. V.—America and West Indies, 1661, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., B.A., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. IX.—1569, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III., &c., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. (1760–1800), and JOHN RINGWOOD ATKINS, Esq. (1801–1829).

CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS relating to IRELAND, excerpted from the Records preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office; to the end of the Reign of HENRY VII. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, Esq., A.B., Trinity College, Dublin, Barrister-at-Law (Ireland).

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[Royal 8vo., half-bound. *Price* 10*s.* each Volume or Part.]

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an "uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's "royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, "and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional know-"ledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He "would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His "wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the "ancient historians of this realm, and assured His Majesty that whatever "expense might be necessary for this purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. The Chronicle of England, by John Capgrave. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

   Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.

   This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house; and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is printed for the first time.

3. Lives of Edward the Confessor. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.

   The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,686 lines, addressed to Alianor, Queen of Henry III., and probably written in the year 1245, on the occasion of the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author. The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between the years 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. It does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, but is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between the years 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. Monumenta Franciscana; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1858.

   This volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It has been the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed.

5. Fasciculi Zizaniorum Magistri Johannis Wyclif cum Tritico. Ascribed to Thomas Netter, of Walden, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.

   This work derives its principal value from being the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. When written, the disputes of the school-

men had been extended to the field of theology and they appear both in the writings of Wycliff and in those of his adversaries. Wycliff's little bundles of tares are not less metaphysical than theological, and the conflict between Nominalists and Realists rages side by side with the conflict between the different interpreters of Scripture. The work gives a good idea of the controversies at the end of the 14th and the beginning of the 15th centuries.

6. The Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland ; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece ; by William Stewart. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, and was written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends, and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." Strict accuracy of statement is not to be looked for in such a work as this ; but the stories of the colonization of Spain, Ireland, and Scotland are interesting if not true ; and the chronicle is valuable as a reflection of the manners, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed. The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this metrical version, and the student of language will find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern lowland Scotch.

7. Johannis Capgrave Liber de Illustribus Henricis. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been, in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three distinct parts, each having its own separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the Empire, and extends from the election of Henry I., the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, and extends from the accession of Henry I. in the year 1100, to the year 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of King Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world.

Capgrave was born in 1393, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for the history of which period his work is of some value.

8. Historia Monasterii S. Augustini Cantuariensis, by Thomas of Elmham, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* Charles Hardwick, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191. Prefixed is a chronology as far as 1418, which shows in outline what was to have been the character of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norfolk, and most probably with Elmham, whence he derived his name.

9. Eulogium (Historiarum sive Temporis) : Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366 ; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. Haydon, Esq., B.A. 1858–1863.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Malmesbury, in Wiltshire, about the year 1367. A continuation, carrying the history of England down to the year 1413, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially

of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1356 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

The contents of this volume are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in the year 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest in connexion with the period are given in an appendix.

11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* CHARLES A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz.: A Life by Robert Redman; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author; Versus Rhythmici, written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.

12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and early part of the fifteenth centuries.

The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the fourteenth century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the twelfth, thirteenth, and early part of the fourteenth centuries.

13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in the year 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and

comes down to the year 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the kingdom, which are not to be elsewhere obtained, and some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. A Collection of Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, from the Accession of Edward III. to the Reign of Henry VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1859–1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires, and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another. The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us, through the decline of the feudal system, to the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable value to the philologist.

15. The "Opus Tertium," "Opus Minus," &c., of Roger Bacon. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—never before printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon: also a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologiæ.*"

16. Bartholomæi de Cotton, Monachi Norwicensis, Historia Anglicana; 449–1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Archiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially) is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. Brut y Tywysogion; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

This work, also known as "The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. A Collection of Royal and Historical Letters during the Reign of Henry IV. 1399–1404. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events. The period requires much elucidation; to which it will materially contribute.

19. The Repressor of over much Blaming of the Clergy. By Reginald Pecock, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Churchill Babington, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "Repressor" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born

about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and against their general doctrines the "Repressor" is directed. Pecock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Pecock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual mediæval reward—persecution.

20. Annales Cambriæ. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in the year 447, and come down to the year 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, which was also used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Blegewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V. and VI. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861–1868.

The first three volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use. Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before, and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.

The Topographia Hibernica (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in the year 1183, the second in 1185–6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the Topographia of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony, with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon. The Expugnatio Hibernica was written about the year 1188, and may be regarded rather

as a great epic than a sober relation of acts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history.

Vol. VI. contains the Itinerarium Kambriæ et Descriptio Kambriæ.

22. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Wars of the English in France during the Reign of Henry the Sixth, King of England. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861–1864.

The letters and papers contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impériale, and the Depôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the line of policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and such other provinces of France as had been acquired by Henry V. We may here trace, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared to read of its final overthrow.

23. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, according to the several Original Authorities. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* Benjamin Thorpe, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to the year 1154, is justly the boast of England; for no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, either in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In this edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. Letters and Papers illustrative of the Reigns of Richard III. and Henry VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* James Gairdner, Esq. 1861–1863.

The Papers are derived from MSS. in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from these documents is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. Letters of Bishop Grosseteste, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (131 in number) are here collected from various sources, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time. They range in date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066–1200. Vol. III.; 1200–1327. *By* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862–1871.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials,

when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages; the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which the original portions are distinguished from those which are mere compilations. When possible, the sources are indicated from which such compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice has also been given of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. Royal and other Historical Letters illustrative of the Reign of Henry III. Vol. I., 1216–1235. Vol. II., 1236–1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862–1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of them, especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. Chronica Monasterii S. Albani.—1. Thomæ Walsingham Historia Anglicana; Vol. I., 1272–1381: Vol. II., 1381–1422. 2. Willelmi Rishanger Chronica et Annales, 1259–1307. 3. Johannis de Trokelowe et Henrici de Blaneforde Chronica et Annales, 1259–1296; 1307–1324; 1392–1406. 4. Gesta Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, a Thoma Walsingham, regnante Ricardo Secundo, ejusdem Ecclesiæ Præcentore, compilata; Vol. I., 793–1290: Vol. II., 1290–1349: Vol. III., 1349–1411. 5. Johannis Amundesham, Monachi Monasterii S. Albani, ut videtur, Annales; Vols. I. and II. 6. Registra quorundam Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, qui sæculo xv^mo^ floruere; Vol. I., Registrum Abbatiæ Johannis Whethamstede, Abbatis Monasterii Sancti Albani, iterum susceptæ; Roberto Blakeney, Capellano, quondam adscriptum. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., Cambridge and Oxford; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1872.

In the first two volumes is a history of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., written by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of St. Albans and prior of the cell of Wymundham, belonging to that abbey. It is printed from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 13 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the third volume is a Chronicle of English History, attributed to William Rishanger, monk of Saint Albans, who lived in the reign of Edward I., printed from the Cottonian Manuscript, Faustina B. IX. (of the fourteenth century) in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219–231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cottonian Manuscript, Claudius E. III., fols. 306–331: Also an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol by Edward I., 1291–1292, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., attributed to William Rishanger above mentioned, but on no sufficient ground: A short Chronicle of English History, from 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.:

A short Chronicle from 1297 to 1307, Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with an addition of Annales Regum Angliæ, probably by the same hand: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1299, 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1295 to 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: and a fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1285 to 1307, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library.

In the fourth volume is a Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: Annals of Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe a monk of St. Albans, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henricus de Blaneforde, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A full Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer of St. Albans, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and an account of the benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the fifteenth century, from MS. VI. in the same Library.

The fifth, sixth, and seventh volumes contain a history of the Abbots of St. Albans, and of the fortunes and vicissitudes of the house, from 793 to 1411, mainly compiled by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of the Abbey in the reign of Richard II.; from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum; with a Continuation, from the closing pages of the Parker MS. No. VII., in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

The eighth and ninth volumes, in continuation of the Annals, contain a Chronicle, probably written by John Amundesham, a monk of St. Albans.

The tenth volume relates especially to the acts and proceedings of Abbot Whethamstede, and may be considered as a memorial of the chief historical and domestic events occurring during the first ten years of his second abbacy. The Register was in all probability compiled between 1465 and 1476.

29. Chronicon Abbatiæ Eveshamensis, Auctoribus Dominico Priore Eveshamiæ et Thoma de Marleberge Abbate, a Fundatione ad Annum 1213, una cum Continuatione ad Annum 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. Macray, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. I., 447–871. Vol. II., 872–1066. *Edited by* John E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863–1869.

The compiler, Richard of Cirencester, was a monk of Westminster, 1355–1400. In 1391 he obtained a licence to make a pilgrimage to Rome. His history, in four books, extends from 447 to 1066. He announces his intention of continuing it, but there is no evidence that he completed any more. This chronicle gives many charters in favour of Westminster Abbey, and a very full account of the lives and miracles of the saints, especially of Edward the Confessor, whose reign occupies the fourth book. A treatise on the Coronation, by William of Sudbury, a monk of Westminster, fills book iii. c. 3. It was on this author that C. J. Bertram fathered his forgery, *De Situ Brittaniæ*, in 1747.

31. Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. Years 20–21, 30–31, and 32–33. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1866.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, and have been held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and were received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great

legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of the attention of the general reader on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY, 1449–1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in the year 1450. The history commences with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ends with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The whole period embraced is less than two years.

33. HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRIÆ. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863–1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester. The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester, the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth century. In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckam was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; "but he neither can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities." Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century. The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre; and though there are many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole, above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1864–1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. Annales Monastici. Vol. I. :—Annales de Margan, 1066–1232 ; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066–1263 ; Annales de Burton, 1004–1263. Vol. II. :—Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519–1277 ; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1–1291. Vol. III. :—Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia, 1–1297 ; Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia, 1042–1432. Vol. IV. :—Annales Monasterii de Oseneia, 1016–1347 ; Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes, 1066–1289 ; Annales Prioratus de Wigornia, 1–1377. Vol. V. :—Index and Glossary. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1869.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces all the more important chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are ten in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. Magna Vita S. Hugonis Episcopi Lincolniensis. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and, being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs. The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186 ; he died on the 16th of November 1200 ; and was canonized in 1220.

38. Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard the First. Vol. I. :—Itinerarium Peregrinorum et Gesta Regis Ricardi. Vol. II. :—Epistolæ Cantuarienses ; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury ; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199 ; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in December 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records ; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function of metropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. belonging to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. Recueil des Croniques et anchiennes Istories de la Grant Bretaigne a present nomme Engleterre, par Jehan de Waurin. Vol. I.,

Albina to 688. Vol. II., 1399–1422. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864–1868.

40. A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, by JOHN DE WAVRIN. Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding Vol. I.) *Edited and translated by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

This curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV. to England in the year 1471, after the second deposition of Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Vols. III. and IV. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, M.A., late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge. 1865–1872.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation, and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion, is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land. To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. LE LIVERE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVERE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE. *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "Le Livere de Reis de Engletere." Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French.

It is supposed that Peter of Ickham must have been the author, but no certain conclusion on that point has been arrived at.

43. CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1406. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866–1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR HISTORIA MINOR. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067–1253. *Edited by* Sir FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1866–1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also written by Matthew Paris) giving fuller details, which has been called the "Historia Major." The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. LIBER MONASTERII DE HYDA: A CHRONICLE AND CHARTULARY OF HYDE ABBEY, WINCHESTER, 455–1023. *Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by* EDWARD EDWARDS, Esq. 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources, which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from tradition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements, which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments. There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English.

46. CHRONICON SCOTORUM: A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, from the EARLIEST TIMES to 1135; with a SUPPLEMENT, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150. *Edited, with a Translation, by* WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1866.

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked, year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are, the invasions of foreigners, and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT, IN FRENCH VERSE, FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD I. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1866–1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and that he lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum," in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, down to the death of Henry III., and in the third a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars. The language is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. THE WAR OF THE GAEDHIL WITH THE GAILL, or, THE INVASIONS OF IRELAND BY THE DANES AND OTHER NORSEMEN. *Edited, with a Translation, by* JAMES HENTHORN TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin. 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in

the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not himself an eye-witness, must have derived his information from those who were eye-witnesses. The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. Gesta Regis Henrici Secundi Benedicti Abbatis. The Chronicle of the Reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., 1169–1192; known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.

This chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the student.

50. Munimenta Academica, or, Documents illustrative of Academical Life and Studies at Oxford (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. Henry Anstey, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.

This work will supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. Chronica Magistri Rogeri de Houedene. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868–1871.

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (*see* No. 49); but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase; occasionally the two works entirely agree; showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work: it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

52. Willelmi Malmesbiriensis Monachi de Gestis Pontificum Anglorum Libri Quinque. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by* N. E. S. A. Hamilton, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1870.

William of Malmesbury's "Gesta Pontificum" is the principal foundation of English Ecclesiastical Biography, down to the year 1122. The manuscript which has been followed in this Edition is supposed by Mr. Hamilton to be the author's autograph, containing his latest additions and amendments.

53. Historic and Municipal Documents of Ireland, from the Archives of the City of Dublin, &c. 1172–1320. *Edited by* John T. Gilbert, Esq., F.S.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland. 1870.

A collection of original documents, elucidating mainly the history and condition of the municipal, middle, and trading classes under or in relation with the rule of England in Ireland,—a subject hitherto in almost total obscurity. Extending over the first hundred and fifty years of the Anglo-Norman settlement, the series includes charters, municipal laws and regulations, rolls of names of citizens and members of merchant-guilds, lists of commodities with their rates, correspondence, illustrations of relations between ecclesiastics and laity; together with many documents exhibiting the state of Ireland during the presence there of the Scots under Robert and Edward Bruce.

54. The Annals of Loch Cé. A Chronicle of Irish Affairs, from 1014 to 1590. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with a Translation, by* William Maunsell Hennessy, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1871.

The original of this chronicle has passed under various names. The title of "Annals of Loch Cé" was given to it by Professor O'Curry, on the ground that it was transcribed for Brian Mac Dermot, an Irish chieftain, who resided on an island in Loch-Cé, in the county of Roscommon. It adds much to the materials for the civil and ecclesiastical history of Ireland; and contains many curious references to English and foreign affairs, not noticed in any other chronicle.

55. Monumenta Juridica. The Black Book of the Admiralty, with an Appendix. Vol. I. *Edited by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L., Her Majesty's Advocate-General. 1871.

This Book contains the ancient ordinances and laws relating to the navy, and was probably compiled for the use of the Lord High Admiral of England. Selden calls it the "jewel of the Admiralty Records." Prynne ascribes to the Black Book the same authority in the Admiralty as the Black and Red Books have in the Court of Exchequer, and most English writers on maritime law recognize its importance.

56. Memorials of the Reign of Henry VI.:—Official Correspondence of Thomas Bekynton, Secretary to Henry VI., and Bishop of Bath and Wells. *Edited, from a MS. in the Archiepiscopal Library at Lambeth, with an Appendix of Illustrative Documents, by* the Rev. George Williams, B.D., Vicar of Ringwood, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Vols. I. and II. 1872.

These curious volumes, which are of a very miscellaneous character, were, in all probability, compiled under the immediate direction of Bekynton, and commenced before he had attained to the dignity of the Episcopate. They contain many of the Bishop's own letters, and several written by him in the King's name. Besides these, there are letters sent to himself while he was the Royal Secretary, as well as others addressed to the King. This work will elucidate some obscure points in the history of the nation during the first half of the fifteenth century.

57. Matthæi Parisiensis, Monachi Sancti Albani, Chronica Majora. Vol. I. The Creation to A.D. 1066. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrary of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge. 1872.

This volume contains the first portion of the "Chronica Majora" of Matthew Paris, one of the most valuable and frequently consulted of all the ancient English Chronicles. It is now published for the first time. The editions by Archbishop Parker, and William Wats, severally commence at the Norman Conquest.

58. Memoriale Fratris Walteri de Coventria.—The Historical Collections of Walter of Coventry. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, from the MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by* William Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1872–1873.

This work, now printed in full for the first time, has long been a *desideratum* by Historical Scholars. The first portion, however, is not of much importance, being only a compilation from earlier writers. The part relating to the first quarter of the thirteenth century is the most valuable and interesting.

59. The Anglo-Latin Satirical Poets and Epigrammatists of the Twelfth Century. Vols. I. and II. *Now first collected and edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A., Corresponding Member of the National Institute of France (Académie des Inscriptions et Belles Lettres). 1873.

The Poems contained in these volumes have long been known and appreciated as the best satires of the age in which their authors flourished, and were deservedly popular during the 13th and 14th centuries.

In the Press.

A Collection of Sagas and other Historical Documents relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* George Webbe Dasent, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.

Roll of the Privy Council of Ireland, 16 Richard II. *Edited by* the Rev. James Graves, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.

The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vol. IV. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. VII. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire.

Chronicon Radulphi Abbatis Coggeshalensis Majus; and, Chronicon Terræ Sanctæ et de Captis a Saladino Hierosolymis. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham.

Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. Years 21–22. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

Chronicle of Robert of Brunne. *Edited by* Frederick James Furnivall, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law.

Documents relating to England and Scotland, from the Northern Registers. *Edited by* the Rev. James Raine, M.A., Canon of York, and late Fellow of the University, Durham.

Materials for a History of the Reign of Henry VII. *Edited by* the Rev. William Campbell, M.A.

Matthæi Parisiensis, Monachi Sancti Albani, Chronica Majora. Vol. II. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrary of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge.

Registrum Palatinum Dunelmense; or, The Register of Richard de Kellawe, Lord Palatine and Bishop of Durham; 1311–1316. Vol. I. *Edited by* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

Chronica Monasterii S. Albani.—**6.** Registra quorundam Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, qui sæculo XV^mo^ floruere; Vol. II. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., Cambridge and Oxford; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. V. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Rawson Lumby, M.A., late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge.

History of the Reigns of Edward the Third and Richard the Second; from a Manuscript in the British Museum, by an Anonymous Writer. *Edited by* Edward Maunde Thompson, Esq., of the British Museum.

In Progress.

The Metrical Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester. *Edited by* William Aldis Wright, Esq., M.A.

Lives of Archbishop Dunstan. *Edited by* the Rev. John Richard Green, M.A.

Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. IV.; 1327, &c. *By* Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

Monumenta Juridica. The Black Book of the Admiralty, with an Appendix. Vol. II. *Edited by* Sir Travers Twiss, Q.C., D.C.L.

Corpus Historicum Eboracense. Chronica Pontificum Ecclesiæ Eboraci auctore Thoma Stubbs Dominicano ; and other Documents relating to the Primacy of York. *Edited by* the Rev. James Raine, M.A., Canon of York, and late Fellow of the University, Durham.

Life of Thomas Becket ; from an Icelandic Saga, with an English Translation. *Edited and translated by* M. Eiríkr Magnússon, Under-Librarian of the Public Library, Cambridge.

PUBLICATIONS

OF

THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.

ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIÂ SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Henry III. —Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 Vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25*s.* boards, or 12*s.* 6*d.* each.

CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Henry III. —Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY Esqrs. Vols. 3 and 4, folio (1821—1828), boards: Vol. 3, *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 4, *price* 24*s.*

LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), boards. *Price* 18*s.*

ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM. Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18*s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, Vol. 3). *Price* 21*s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, Vol. 4). *Price* 21*s.*

STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 Vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.* each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30*s.* each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817–1834), boards. *Price* 25*s.* each.

*** The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Vol. 2, folio (1819), boards. *Price* 21*s.*

FŒDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c.; or, RYMER'S FŒDERA, New Edition. Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, 1344—1377, folio (1825—1830): Vol. 4, 1377—1383 (1869). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. Vol. 3, *price* 21*s.* each Part; Vol. 4, *price* 6*s.*

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31*s.* 6*d.*; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21*s.*

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21*s.* each.

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42*s.*

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 Vols. folio (1833, 1844). Vol. 1, 1204—1224. Vol. 2, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81*s.*, cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 Vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98*s.*; or separately, 14*s.* each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

*** The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9*s.*

ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28*s.*

ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32*s.*; or separately Vol. 1, *price* 14*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIÂ DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11*s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8*s.* 6*d.*; Vol. 2, *price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Ancient Kalendars and Inventories of the Treasury of His Majesty's Exchequer; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 3 Vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42*s.*

Documents and Records illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

Rotuli Chartarum in Turri Londinensi asservati. 1199—1216. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

Report of the Proceedings of the Record Commissioners, 1831—1837. 1 Vol. (folio 1837), boards. *Price* 8*s.*

Registrum vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis. 1 Vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

Ancient Laws and Institutes of England; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* Benjamin Thorpe, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, 2 Vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

Ancient Laws and Institutes of Wales; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* Aneurin Owen, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44*s.* Or, 2 Vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36*s.*

Rotuli de Liberate ac de Misis et Præstitis, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

The Great Rolls of the Pipe for the Second, Third, and Fourth Years of the Reign of King Henry the Second, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Hunter. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.*

The Great Roll of the Pipe for the First Year of the Reign of King Richard the First, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Hunter. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

Documents Illustrative of English History in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records of the Department of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* Henry Cole, Esq. 1 Vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45*s.* 6*d.*

Modus Tenendi Parliamentum. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 Vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Monumenta Historica Britannica, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late Henry Petrie, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. John Sharpe, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price* 42*s.*

Registrum Magni Sigilli Regum Scotorum in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 15*s.*

The Acts of the Parliaments of Scotland. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson and Cosmo Innes, Esqrs. *Price* 42*s.* Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11 ; *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

The Acts of the Lords Auditors of Causes and Complaints (Acta Dominorum Auditorum). 1466—1494. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Acts of the Lords of Council in Civil Causes (Acta Dominorum Concilii). 1478—1495. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

Issue Roll of Thomas de Brantingham, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25*s.*

Issues of the Exchequer, containing similar matter to the above; James I. ; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21*s.*

Issues of the Exchequer, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI. ; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

Handbook to the Public Records. *By* F. S. Thomas, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price* 12*s.*

Historical Notes relative to the History of England ; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is

placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. *By* F. S. Thomas, Esq. 3 Vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price* 40*s.*

State Papers, during the Reign of Henry the Eighth: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 Vols., 4to. (1830—1852), cloth. *Price* 5*l.* 15*s.* 6*d.*; or separately, *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

DOMESDAY BOOK, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086; fac-simile of the Part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., Director. 35 Parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861–1863) boards. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.* to 1*l.* 1*s.* each Part, according to size; or, bound in 2 Vols., 18*l.*

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each accord-" ing to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor; the present possessor; how many hides were in the manor; how many ploughs were in demesne; how many homagers; how many villeins; how many cottars; how many serving men; how many free tenants; how many tenants in soccage; how much wood, meadow, and pasture; the number of mills and fish-ponds; what had been added or taken away from the place; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor; the present value; and how much each free-man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward; who then held it; its value in the time of the late king; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be " traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, " it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, " nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk, and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

* For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed; Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribble and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 688 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.

FAC-SIMILES of NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS, from WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR to QUEEN ANNE, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey. Price, each Part, with translations and notes, double foolscap folio, 16*s*.

Part I. (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.). 1865.
Part II. (Henry VIII. and Edward VI.). 1866.
Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth). 1867.
Part IV. (James I. to Anne). 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part, for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580–3.

Public Record Office,
February 1873.